Thomas Machell's Collections Towards a History and Topography of Westmorland

Book 2



Edited by

Jane Platt

‘If I could spare time to Methodise these Rude Notes which are contained in my several books of Collections … I would’. These are the rueful words of Rev. Thomas Machell of Kirkby Thore (1647-1698), who died before he could complete his mammoth ‘History and Topography of Cumberland and Westmorland’.
328 years after his untimely death, Machell’s collections toward his History and Topography of Westmorland are published here, for the first time.

Thomas Machell's Collections Towards a History and Topography of Westmorland

Thomas Machell's Collections Towards a History and Topography of Westmorland

Edited by
Jane Platt

CUMBERLAND AND WESTMORLAND
ANTIQUARIAN AND ARCHAEOLOGICAL SOCIETY

Record Series Volume 25
2025

Cumberland and Westmorland
Antiquarian and Archaeological Society
Hon. General Editor
Professor Colin Richards

Thomas Machell's Collections Towards a History and Topography of Westmorland

Record Series Volume 25

Editorial matter © Jane Platt, 2025. All rights reserved

ISBN 978 1 873124 956

Printed by
Titus Wilson Ltd, Kendal
2025

This work has been supported by a legacy from Annette Mary Theresa Harwood, deceased, of Stanwix, Carlisle.

No part of this publication may be reproduced in any form or stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise without the prior written permission of the copyright owner or as expressly permitted by law.

Requests for the copyright owner's written permission to reproduce any part of this publication should be made of the copyright owner through the CWAAS.

This is Volume 2 containing pages from 387 to 980 please refer to other files for Volumes 1 and 3

Contents

List of Figures vi

Abbreviations xxiii

Glossary of some English Terms used in Machell's Text xxv

Glossary of some of the Latin Words used in Machell's Text xxxi

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

Chapter 2: Askham Parish 387

Chapter 3: Asby Parish 399

Chapter 4: Bampton Parish 401

Chapter 5: Barton Parish 407

Chapter 6: Brough Parish 473

Chapter 7: Brougham Parish 527

Chapter 8: Cliburn Parish 543

Chapter 9: Clifton Parish 551

Chapter 10: Crosby Garrett Parish 573

Chapter 11: Crosby Ravensworth Parish Chapter 581

12: Dufton Parish 591

Chapter 13: Kirkby Stephen Parish 597

Chapter 14: Kirkby Thore and Newbiggin Parishes 651

Chapter 15: Lowther Parish 769

Chapter 16: Long Marton Parish 783

Chapter 17: Morland Parish 791

Chapter 18: Musgrave Parish 809

Chapter 19: Ormside Parish 815

Chapter 20: Orton Parish 821

Chapter 21: Ravenstonedale Parish 837

Chapter 22: Shap Parish 847

Chapter 23: Warcop Parish 863

Part 2. Barony of Kendal

Chapter 2.1: Kendal Barony 877

Chapter 2.2: Kendal Town 907

Chapter 2.3: Kendal Chapelries

3i: Burneside 931

3ii: Crook and Winster 937

3iii: Hutton 941

3iv: Ings & Hugill 945

3v: Kentmere 951

3vi: Longsleddale 957

3vii: Natland and Watercrook 961

3viii: Selside & Skelsmergh 969

3ix: Staveley 973

3x: Underbarrow 979

List of figures

This file includes pages 387-980 of Volume 2, please refer to other Volumes for other pages

Preface

Figure 1. ‘Of the British Characters’. I.15. 43
Figure 2. Sketch of the Picts’ Wall. I.35. 57
Figure 3. ‘hec fata resolvent’. I.229. 73
Figure 4. Proposed Title Page, ‘These Armes … will make a pretty Booke.’ I.41. 84
Figure 5. ‘Out of Mr Adam’s Index Villaris’. III.vii. 86
Figure 6. Examples of symbols based on the Index Villaris. III.1. 86
Figure 7. Part of Machell’s Township Chart. III.3. 87
Figure 8. ‘An Hantshire Piper’. I.83. 138
Figure 9. ‘*Speed*’. II.502. 207
Figure 10. ‘Father or brother … you may pace at any entrance as twix a. & b.’ II.530. 212

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

Chapter 1: Town of Appleby and its Parishes

Figure 1.1.1. Appleby Castle. I.57. 219
Figure 1.1.2. Seals ‘sans date’. I.62. 223
Figure 1.1.3. Appleby Seal. I.165. 224
Figure 1.1.4. Sketch of Roman coins. I.172. 231
Figure 1.1.5. ABALLABA Inscription. I.173. 232
Figure 1.1.6. ‘Platforme’ of Appleby. I.176A. 234
Figure 1.1.7. Margin sketch of halberd, with explanatory text. I.308. 257
Figure 1.1.8. Proclamation of James II, 1688. I.178-9. 258
Figure 1.1.9. ‘By the King: A Proclamation for Restoring Corporations to their Ancient Charters, Rights and Franchises, James R.’ 1688. I.182A-183. 259
Figure 1.1.10. Appleby Seal. I.276A. 262
Figure 1.1.11. Common seals of the Borough of Appleby. I.277. 263
Figure 1.1.12. ‘The seale is about as big as a groat.’ I.347. 289
Figure 1.1.13. Coat of arms drawn on a small scrap of paper. I.262C. 292
Figure 1.1.14. Seal of Robert de Veteriponte. I.187. 294
Figure 1.1.15. Seals of the Veteriponte and Machell families. I.261. 295
Figure 1.1.16. ‘This is not much unlike Meschiens, his armes’. I.332. 303
Figure 1.1.17. Appleby Castle Tower. I.183B. 304
Figure 1.1.18. Inscription in Appleby Castle Tower. I.183B. 304
Figure 1.1.19. Sketch placed alongside the words, ‘which strong and fortificall worke’. I.302. 305
Figure 1.1.20. Margin sketch: ‘antiq of Castles’. I.302. 305
Figure 1.1.21. ‘In a field Gules, 6 annulets Or’. I.234. 310
Figure 1.1.22. ‘Richard de Buly … Gules, a primrose, Or, pierced of the field.’ I.235. 311
Figure 1.1.23. Seal of John de Veteripont. IV.31. 311
Figure 1.1.24. Space for the Veteripont seal, containing the pencilled words, ‘Se the seale’. I.236. 312
Figure 1.1.25. Seal of Richard Fitz John. I.237. 313

Figure 1.1.26. Veteripont Seal. I.238. 314
Figure 1.1.27. Margin sketch relating to animal heads hung on the Hart Horne Tree, Whinfell. I.245. 321
Figure 1.1.28. Seal of Roger de Clifford. I.247. 323
Figure 1.1.29. Clifford Arms. I.248. 325
Figure 1.1.30. Reverse of Seal: 'This Seale is of Red wax'. I.253. 330
Figure 1.1.31. 'Seale of Sir William de Threlkeld' c.1341-42. I.253. 331
Figure 1.1.32. Example of Machell's frequent use of a pointing hand as a nota bene. I.254. 332
Figure 1.1.33. 'The Good old Mali-Catuli'. I.328B. 345
Figure 1.1.34. Hilton. 'Over the arched gate of the court'. III.91. 357
Figure 1.1.35. Hilton. 'Over the hall chimney'. III.91. 357
Figure 1.1.36. Crackenthorpe Hall. I.335B. 364
Figure 1.1.37. 'old timber footed … to make the garrets'. I.335A. 365
Figure 1.1.38. Sketch of Roman Fort. III.51. 367
Figure 1.1.39. Roman Camp at Crackenthorpe. I.330. 368
Figure 1.1.40. Roman Camp at Crackenthorpe. 'I have seen this Romane Campe since and have drawn it out elsewhere.' I.330. 368
Figure 1.1.41. Faint pencil plan of the Roman fort at Crackenthorpe. I.331. 369
Figure 1.1.42. Three greyhounds courant. I.332. 373
Figure 1.1.43. Seal sketches. I.646. 375
Figure 1.1.44. 'Machel with Barkar'. I.646. 377

Chapter 2: Askham Parish

Figure 1.2.1. East Window, Askham Church. I.359. 388
Figure 1.2.2. Askham Hall, gate inscription. I.361. 390
Figure 1.2.3. Askham Hall Chapel, East Window. I.361. 391
Figure 1.2.4. Kitchen doorway stone, Askham Hall, I.363. 392
Figure 1.2.5. Coats of arms on Askham Cross. I.362. 392

Chapter 4: Bampton Parish

Figure 1.4.1. Pencil drawing. 'SIGILLUM PATRITII FILII'. I.369. 402
Figure 1.4.2. Thomas Machell to Dr John Mill, St Edmund Hall, Oxford, 20 September 1686. I.370A. 403

Chapter 5: Barton Parish

Figure 1.5.1. Margin sketch plan of Barton Church with tower and interior arches. I.660. 411
Figure 1.5.2. 'Over the Portch on the outside in Stone'. I.673. 412
Figure 1.5.3. Chancel Ceiling, Barton Church. I.671. 412
Figure 1.5.4. A measured plan of Barton Church. I. 671A. 413
Figure 1.5.5. Arms and Monumental Inscriptions at Barton Church. I. 675. 415
Figure 1.5.6. Lancaster Arms. I.380. 417
Figure 1.5.7. Coats of arms, low end of the quire. I.380. 417
Figure 1.5.8. Sketch of the 'through' at number 13. I.380. 418
Figure 1.5.9. Barton Church: 'W.D. 1674'. I.380. 418

Figure 1.5.10. Small sketches: ‘Maybe John Lancaster’. I.381. 418
Figure 1.5.11. Text written in several different directions and text crossed through. I.655B. 428
Figure 1.5.12. Sketch of the Dacre Arms on Barton Cross. I.664. 429
Figure 1.5.13. Dunmallet, Pooley, ‘Bridge’ and Machell’s notes. I.666. 431
Figure 1.5.14. Sketch of Trostermount, now called Hodgson’s Hill, Pooley. I.692. 432
Figure 1.5.15. Sketch Plan of Winder Hall. I.696. 435
Figure 1.5.16. Sketch of Martindale Chapel. I.698. 436
Figure 1.5.17. Martindale Chapel Plan. I.655B. 437
Figure 1.5.18. Coats of Arms: Martindale family and Browne of Matterdale. Margin of I.700. 440
Figure 1.5.19. Lord’s Seat, Bannerdale. I.699. 440
Figure 1.5.20. Sketch of Patterdale Chapel and yew tree. I.706. 443
Figure 1.5.21. Patterdale Chapel Plan. I.725C. 443
Figure 1.5.22. Two escutcheons on the lintel over the door at Patterdale Hall. I.714. 446
Figure 1.5.23. ‘A light touch or scratch of what I remember of Patterdale Hall: a Little hall’ I.715A. 446
Figure 1.5.24. Patterdale Hall Floor slates. I.715B. 447
Figure 1.5.25. An eagle displayed: inked on the left, pencilled on the right. I.724A. 449
Figure 1.5.26. Hartsop Hall Ground Plan. I.725A. 451
Figure 1.5.27. Hartsop Hall sketches. I.725A. 452
Figure 1.5.28. ‘The forme of the lake called Ulse-water.’ II.438. 455
Figure 1.5.29. Small piece of paper affixed to the page. ‘On the Seeling in Plasterworke, in the old dineing Roome at Sockbridge’. I.733. 458
Figure 1.5.30. Plaster work on the partition of the new dining room at Sockbridge Hall. I.725D. 458
Figure 1.5.31. ‘Arms over the Tower Door’. I. 725D. 458
Figure 1.5.32. Plan of Sockbridge Hall. I.725D. 459
Figure 1.5.33. On the ‘Great Hall window’, Sockbridge Hall. I.725D. 459
Figure 1.5.34. Coats of Arms on a ‘great Beam’ in Sockbridge Hall. I.725C. 460
Figure 1.5.35. In Yanwath Hall ‘Outshot window’. I.736. 461
Figure 1.5.36. ‘In Plasterwork over the Dineing-Room chimney.’ I.736. 461
Figure 1.5.37. In plasterwork over the ceiling. I.736. 462
Figure 1.5.38. Annotated plan of Yanwath Hall. I.737. 462
Figure 1.5.39. Castlesteads at Yanwath Wood. I.738A. 463
Figure 1.5.40. Machell’s sketches of Maybrough and ‘Arthur[’s] Castle alias the round Table’. I.737. 465
Figure 1.5.41. Maybrough. Four standing stones; the larger circle contains the Latin word ‘Iugerum’. I.375. 466
Figure 1.5.42. Notes on Hartsop and Patterdale, written up elsewhere and then scored through. I.725B. 467

Chapter 6: Brough Parish

Figure 1.6.1. ‘IHS & M’. I.426. 478
Figure 1.6.2. Elevation of Brough Castle. I.392. 482
Figure 1.6.3. Plan of Brough Castle. I.392A. 483
Figure 1.6.4. Key to Machell’s Plan of Brough Castle. 483

Figure 1.6.5. Sketches. I.395. 485
Figure 1.6.6. Margin sketch. Impression of the old roof of the Roman Tower at Brough Castle. I.396. 486
Figure 1.6.7. Copy of Brough Charter Seal. I.429. 489
Figure 1.6.8. 'Brough Spaw Well'. III.103. 490
Figure 1.6.9. Court Leet and Baron Arms. I.399. 494
Figure 1.6.10. Maiden Castle. I.401. 497
Figure 1.6.11. Route over Stainmore. I.401. 498
Figure 1.6.12. Margin sketch plan of Maiden Castle. I.436A. 499
Figure 1.6.13. Faint lines of a pencilled plan of Maiden Castle. I.436B. 499
Figure 1.6.14. Arms of Sir Alexander Ewbank. I.400. 503
Figure 1.6.15. Arms of Vipont and Ewbank. I.400. 504
Figure 1.6.16. Symbols relating to the marriage of Thomas de Helebeck to Avicia. I.405. 505
Figure 1.6.17. Sigillum Thomas de Helbeck, 26. Ed. 1. [1297-98] I.409. 509
Figure 1.6.18. Arms, top-left margin, I.410 511
Figure 1.6.19. Blenkinsop: Thomas and Katherine's Arms. I.410. 512
Figure 1.6.20. Haverington Arms. I.410. 512
Figure 1.6.21. Arms of William de Blenkinshop. I.411. 513
Figure 1.6.22. Seals: 1. 'Used by Thomas Junior's widow at her will'; 2. 'Used at her sonn's will'. I.414. 517
Figure 1.6.23. Seal of Thomas Blenkinsop. I.416. 519
Figure 1.6.24. Vaux Seal. I.418. 521
Figure 1.6.25. 'Gun britch' and 'levator'. III.107. 524

Chapter 7: Brougham Parish

Figure 1.7.1. Chimney piece in the dining room at Hornby Hall. I.444A. 535
Figure 1.7.2. Matches. I.443. 535
Figure 1.7.3. 'Browham demolished'. I.630. 540
Figure 1.7.4. 'Browham demolished', detail. I.630. 541

Chapter 8: Cliburn Parish

Figure 1.8.1. Cliburn church plan. III.117. 544
Figure 1.8.2. Sketch of the gable end of Cliburn church. III.117. 544
Figure 1.8.3. Plan of Cliburn Hall. Margin. III.117. 545
Figure 1.8.4. Coat of Arms over the door at Cliburn Hall. III.15. 546

Chapter 9: Clifton Parish

Figure 1.9.1. Sketch plan of Clifton Parsonage House. III.121. 551
Figure 1.9.2. Engayne Arms (1.). III.121. 553
Figure 1.9.3. Helynor Ingayne. III.123. 555
Figure 1.9.4. Fallowfield of Great Strickland Arms. III.123. 555
Figure 1.9.5. 'vid. Fig. 3'. III.123. 555
Figure 1.9.6. The letter 'M' in Clifton Church. III.123. 556
Figure 1.9.7. 'Seal on a deed in the possession of T. Sandford'. III.124. 557

Figure 1.9.8. Seal of Richard Lowther. III.125. 557
Figure 1.9.9. Engayne Arms (2.). III.133 562
Figure 1.9.10. Inscription frame 'upon the gable end of Clifton Hall'. III.133A. 563
Figure 1.9.11. Wybergh Pedigree. III.150. 571
Figure 1.9.12. 'In Mr Knight booke'. III.150. 571

Chapter 10: Crosby Garrett Parish

Figure 1.10.1. Directions from Crosby Garrett Church. III.166B. 573
Figure 1.10.2. Musgrave Arms. III.166A. 575
Figure 1.10.3. 'Fairy Beads'. I.539. 578

Chapter 11: Crosby Ravensworth Parish

Figure 1.11.1. Crosby Ravensworth Church. East Window. III.177. 584
Figure 1.11.2. Crosby Ravensworth. Manor House Arms. III.178. 585
Figure 1.11.3. 'A coyn of Richard found … in the street. Feb. 23 1688/9'. III.174. 587

Chapter 12: Dufton Parish

Figure 1.12.1. Arms at Dufton Church. III.162A. 592

Chapter 13: Kirkby Stephen Parish

Figure 1.13.1 'In Hartley's choir which is on the south side of the church'. I.578. 600
Figure 1.13.2. Coats of Arms in the margin. I.579. 601
Figure 1.13.3. Wharton Tomb, pencil and ink drawing. I.573. 602
Figure 1.13.4. Wharton Tomb East End: detail. I.576. 604
Figure 1.13.5. 'Said to be Sir Andrew Hartcley, Earle of Carlile.' 'X.' I.580. 606
Figure 1.13.6. Example of the hand of a later writer who questioned the provenance of the monument above. I.573. 606
Figure 1.13.7. Armorial Glass in Kirkby Stephen Church. I.582. 607
Figure 1.13.8. Crocklem Castle and the Roman Way. III.183. 615
Figure 1.13.9. Fells and route map. III.188. 616
Figure 1.13.10. 'Wilborefell', A Prospect of the fell S. & S. West from Rasett Pikes. III.188. 617
Figure 1.13.11. 'A Memorandum of Hartley Castle'. III.223. 618
Figure 1.13.12. Stone 'howles'. Pencil and ink drawing. I.584. 620
Figure 1.13.13. 'Stone like a tortoise; strange stags horn'. I.569C. 620
Figure 1.13.14. Plan of Wharton Hall. III.202. 625
Figure 1.13.15. Machell's Figure (a.). III.202. 626
Figure 1.13.16. Machell's Figure (b.). III.201. 627
Figure 1.13.17. Machell's Figure (c.). III.201. 627
Figure 1.13.18. Machell's Figure (d.). III.202. 628
Figure 1.13.19. Machell's Figure (e.). III.203. 628
Figure 1.13.20. Machell's Figure (g.). III.203. 629
Figure 1.13.21. Plain shield, Clifford. III.205. 630
Figure 1.13.22. Image at foot of page after 'verry'. III.203. 630
Figure 1.13.23. Wharton Hall Parlour. Musgrave Coat of Arms. III.207. 631

Figure 1.13.24. Angel and Coat of Arms, 'probably Warcops'. III.225. 634
Figure 1.13.25. Coats of Arms. 'This is defaced but it appears like 3 cupps'. III.225. 634
Figure 1.13.26. Plan of Smardale Hall. III.225. 634
Figure 1.13.27. Armorial Glass in the Hall. III.225. 635
Figure 1.13.28. 'The same agane.' III.225. 635
Figure 1.13.29. Armorial Glass in the Gallery end window. III.225. 636
Figure 1.13.30. In Soulby Chapel. III.194. 637
Figure 1.13.31. Seal of Sir Richard de Suleby. I.497. 639
Figure 1.13.32. Small sketch of the Hither Pit. Letters a. to f. denote areas mentioned in the text. III.192. 649

Chapter 14: Kirkby Thore and Newbiggin Parish

Figure 1.14.1. Sketch of the Whelp Descent. I.550. 659
Figure 1.14.2. 'Vault underground … at Coppin Hill'. I.548. 669
Figure 1.14.3. A scrap page typical of those numbered in the 20th century when pasted into the volume. I.561A. 671
Figure 1.14.4. Letter to Machell from A. Smal[…], 1672. VI.222B. 672
Figure 1.14.5. Sketch of Kirkby Thore font cover with added scrap page. I.561. 675
Figure 1.14.6. Image of scroll. I.476. 676
Figure 1.14.7A. Machell's plan of Rose Castle post 1660. VI.662K. 677
Figure 1.14.7B. Detail from Machell's plan of Rose Castle. VI.662K. 678
Figure 1.14.8. 'Earthworks; The road to K. church; The Romane Way towards Apleby'. I.485. 698
Figure 1.14.9. 'Forme pectinatus'. I.528. 701
Figure 1.14.10. 'a & b; 'f.v.': examples of Machell's sketches. I.528. 701
Figure 1.14.11. Study desk. I.563. 710
Figure 1.14.12. Dining-room chimney 'contrivance' and study desk. I.562. 710
Figure 1.14.13. 'The little house on the left as you goe to Penrith'. I.548. 716
Figure 1.14.14. Inscription. I.758. 722
Figure 1.14.15. The Great Seal of England kept by Roger Malus Catulus. I.372. 726
Figure 1.14.16. The Great Seal turned through 180 degrees. I.372. 726
Figure 1.14.17. Machell descent. I.763. 726
Figure 1.14.18. Crackenthorpe Hall Coats of Arms. I.620. 732
Figure 1.14.19. Newbiggin Hall. 'Carnaby quarterd with Crackenthorpe'. Arms of Salkeld of Rosgil. I.649A. 733
Figure 1.14.20. Newbiggin Hall. Brisco quartering Skelton impaling Crackenthorpe. I.649A. 733
Figure 1.14.21. Newbiggin Hall. Crackenthorpe: fleur-de-lys Or; Bird Or on ground Gules. I.649A. 733
Figure 1.14.22. Newbiggin Hall. 'Warcop' Argent on Sable, fess Argent. I.649A. 733
Figure 1.14.23. Newbiggin Hall. Argent a bend chequy Or and Gules. I.649A. 733
Figure 1.14.24. 'On the lower rock at Crawdundell. Sep.19.1690'. III.283. 734

Chapter 15: Lowther Parish

Figure 1.15.1. Lowther Arms 1687 (Or, 6 annulets Sable). III.41B. 771
Figure 1.15.2. West end of Lowther Church, sketched on the reverse of a letter. III.41A. 774

Figure 1.15.3. Lowther Church. III.41. 774
Figure 1.15.4. 'Platforme of Lowther Parsonage'. III.34. 775
Figure 1.15.5. Lowther Arms. III.34A. 777
Figure 1.15.6. Lowther Hall. III.42-43. 778
Figure 1.15.7. Lowther Hall. III.45. 778
Figure 1.15.8. At Lowther Hall. III.48. 779
Figure 1.15.9. Sketch plan of Melkinthorpe Hall. III.34A. 782

Chapter 16: Long Marton Parish

Figure 1.16.1. Margin detail: images of tumuli. I.603. 783
Figure 1.16.2. Arms 'in Martin Church window'. I.601A. 784
Figure 1.16.3. Faded pencil sketches of escutcheons in the windows of Long Marton Church. I.606. 785
Figure 1.16.4. White Burwens..'a. Bulwork; b. the mote; c. another Bulworke like an halfemoon'. I.610. 787

Chapter 17: Morland Parish

Figure 1.17.1. Backhouse Arms. I.613. 794
Figure 1.17.2. Arms at Melkinthorpe Hall. III.263A. 801

Chapter 18: Musgrave Parish

Figure 1.18.1. Musgrave Church. East Window Images. III.273. 811
Figure 1.18.2. Musgrave Church. South Window Images. III.275. 811
Figure 1.18.3. Sketch containing six square plots: 3 above 3, each labelled a, b, c, d. III.282. 813

Chapter 19: Ormside Parish

Figure 1.19.1. Ormside Parish Bounder. III.291. 815
Figure 1.19.2. Sketch plan of Ormside Church. III.292. 816
Figure 1.19.3. Brass at Ormside Church. Sir Christopher Pickering. I.646B. 816
Figure 1.19.4. Margin sketch plan of Breeks or Breaks Hall. III.293A. 818
Figure 1.19.5. Finds from the River Eden at Ormside. III.293. 819

Chapter 20: Orton Parish

Figure 1.20.1. Brandreth Stone. III.301. 827
Figure 1.20.2. Letter, 1673. III.298. 828
Figure 1.20.3. Inscription, Tebay School. III.301. 829
Figure 1.20.4. Ancient Hall house with window 'castle-wise'. III.302. 831
Figure 1.20.5. Engraving. Portrait of Thomas Barlow D.D. I.642A. 833
Figure 1.20.6. 'Found in Sunbiging Tarne'. III.205. 834

Chapter 21: Ravenstonedale Parish

Figure 1.21.1. Sketch of a feature 'a mile & ½ N.W. from Newbigin, the left hand of the way to Appleby'. III.305. 837
Figure 1.21.2. Tern [Tarn] House. Coats of Arms. III.306. 840

Chapter 22: Shap Parish

Figure 1.22.1. Shap Church. Coats of arms. III.313. 848
Figure 1.22.2. Seal 'Ad Shap Abbey'. I.165. 848
Figure 1.22.3. Standing Stones, 'near to Shap Abbey'. I.312. 857
Figure 1.22.4. Gilbert Culwen, sigillum. I.311. 861

Chapter 23: Warcop Parish

Figure 1.23.1.'The Round-Castle near Coupland Beckbridge as the foundation Appears in Its Ruines'. I.317. 864
Figure 1.23.2. Warcop tumuli and 'the Romane Way which leads towards Appleby'. I.318. 865
Figure 1.23.3. 'A ring made of earth and stones'. I.318. 865
Figure 1.23.4. Coats of arms at Warcop Hall. I.319. 866
Figure 1.23.5. Church bells, Warcop. III.327. 867
Figure 1.23.6. Four coats of arms in Warcop Church windows. I.320. 867
Figure 1.23.7. Nevill coat of arms, Warcop Church. I.320. 868
Figure 1.23.8. Warcop Tower window. Coats of arms. I.322. 870
Figure 1.23.9. Margin sketch beside a description of Thomas Warcop of Colby. I.333. 870
Figure 1.23.10. Coat of arms at Burton Hall. III.329. 872
Figure 1.23.11. Coat of arms in the great window of the dining room at Burton Hall. III.329. 872
Figure 1.23.12. Detail on 'the highest stone of the S.W. angle of the great window' of Burton Hall. III.329. 872

Part 2. Barony of Kendal

Chapter 2.1: Kendal Barony

Figure 2.1.1. 'Cunswick, an old Hall.' II.3. 877
Figure 2.1.2. 'In Plaster over the Hall chimney' at Dockray Hall. 'R \ W / S. 1621.' II.359B. 896

Chapter 2.2: Kendal Town

Figure 2.2.1. John Speed's Map of Kendal. II.23. 907
Figure 2.2.2. Machell's Plan of Kendal Castle. Detail. II.26. 907
Figure 2.2.3. Kendal Hospital. Arms. II.26. 909
Figure 2.2.4. Water-Budget. II.31. 910
Figure 2.2.5. View of Kendal Church from the west; small sketch 4cm x 4cm, pasted onto II.30. 910
Figure 2.2.6. Parr's Quire. II.35. 911
Figure 2.2.7. Monument, north side of Parr's Quire. II.35. 911
Figure 2.2.8. Part of the monument of Sir Augustine Nicholls of Faxton. II.35. 912
Figure 2.2.9. In Sizergh or Strickland's Quire. II.36. 912
Figure 2.2.10. Between Parr's and Strickland's quire. 3 coats of arms in stone, one defaced. II.36A. 913
Figure 2.2.11.'North side of the quire: gray marble tomb supported with Hewne Stone.' II.36A. 913
Figure 2.2.12. Coats of Arms. II.359A. 913
Figure 2.2.13. 'And at the corner is this Coate of Arms'. II.36A. 914
Figure 2.2.14. Seal to a deed of gift, 21. Ed. III. 'which is not much unlike this in Strickland's Quire'. II.36B. 914

Figure 2.2.15. Pasted images of monument and inscriptions, c., d. and e, II.37. 915
Figure 2.2.16. Marble monument near the vestry door. II.39. 916
Figure 2.2.17. Memorial to Michael Stanford. II.39. 917
Figure 2.2.18. Seal detail. University of St Andrews. II.41. 918
Figure 2.2.19. Kendal Castle. II.71. 926
Figure 2.2.20. Mound at Kendal. II.369C. 929
Figure 2.2.21. 'Kendal Church. In Strickland, quier window'. II.122. 929

Chapter 2.3: Kendal Chapelries

3i: Burneside

Figure 2.3i.1. Pencil sketch of Burneside Chapel. II.91. 931
Figure 2.3i.2. Thomas Dennison. 'Hook nosed, my kinde & ingeniouse Landlord & informer.' II.91. 932

3ii: Crook and Winster

Figure 2.3ii.1. Plan of Crook Chapel. II.91. 937
Figure 2.3ii.2. Winster Chapel. II.97. 938

3iii: Hutton

Figure 2.3iii.1. Hutton Chapel. II.87. 941

3iv. Ings & Hugill

Figure 2.3iv.1. Chapel at Ings. II.121. 945
Figure 2.3iv.2. Lines on Rowland Wilson, copied by James Robinson, chaplain. II.413A. 947
Figure 2.3iv.3. St Ann's Chapel Ings from the south-east; sketch in red pencil and ink. II.414. 948

3v: Kentmere

Figure 2.3v.1. Kentmere Chapel. II.105. 951
Figure 2.3v.2. Kentmere Hall. Ab Ecclesia Kendal 8m. N.W & by N. II.105. 952
Figure 2.3v.3. 'Kentmer Hall; in the Hall window'. II.105. 952
Figure 2.3v.4. 'No Deer in memory – but trees'. II.106. 953

3vi: Longsleddale

Figure 2.3vi.1. Longsleddale Chapel. II.103. 957

3vii: Natland and Watercrook

Figure 2.3vii.1. Natland Chapel. II.81. 961
Figure 2.3vii.2. 'At Natland, the reverse as the lower in all respects.' II.79. 962
Figure 2.3vii.3. 'Found at Broadflat S. a Capella 12 score, in May 91.' II.79 963
Figure 2.3vii.4. 'Found near Mr Guyes ¼ m. N. a Capella. 16 years since.' II.80. 963
Figure 2.3vii.5. 'A piece of a pot with this broken inscription', and an 'oven' at Watercrook. II.81. 965
Figure 2.3vii.6. Watercrook Roman fort. II.83. 966
Figure 2.3vii.7. 'The Little Altar', 2 ft 1/2 high. II.82. 967

3viii: Selside & Skelsmergh

Figure 2.3viii.1. Selside Chapel and Hall. II.101. 969

3ix: Staveley

Figure 2.3ix.1. Staveley Chapel. II.113. 974

Figure 2.3ix.2. Arms in Staveley Chapel East Window. II.113. 974

3x: Underbarrow

Figure 2.3x.1. Underbarrow Chapel. II.111. 979

Chapter 2.4: Beetham Parish

Figure 2.4.1. Beetham Church. II.276. 981

Figure 2.4.2. 'In the High Quire on the South Side in wainscot: F.D. 1614'. II.267. 981

Figure 2.4.3. 'In the East window of the great Quire'. II.267. 981

Figure 2.4.4. 'In the E. Window of the S. Ile quire. In Text Letters on the first light of the same window'. II.267. 982

Figure 2.4.5. 'Over the S. Ile Q. as you enter by 6 steps Ascending, 3 Bores heads couped'. II.267. 982

Figure 2.4.6. II.267. On the South Side. II.267. 982

Figure 2.4.7. 'In a midle window in the S. Ile.' II.267. 983

Figure 2.4.8. Beetham Church memorials. Foot of II.267. 983

Figure 2.4.9. 'Cherubim' in Witherslack Chapel East Window. II.275. 989

Figure 2.4.10. Witherslack Chapel. Coats of Arms, 1 and 2. II.275. 990

Figure 2.4.11. Witherslack Chapel and East Window. II.277. 992

Figure 2.4.12. Witherslack Hall. II.277. 999

Chapter 2.5: Burton in Kendal Parish

Figure 2.5.1. Small sketch of Burton Church. II.291. 1004

Figure 2.5.2. Burton Church Arms, Sketches 1-5. II.289. 1004

Figure 2.5.3. Arms, Sketches 6-7. II.289. 1005

Figure 2.5.4. 'Arms on the Capital of the farthest pillar.' II.289. 1005

Figure 2.5.5. Leigh Arms. II.289. 1005

Figure 2.5.6. Burton Cross. II.290. 1007

Figure 2.5.7. Orientation diagram from Burton Church. II.291. 1009

Figure 2.5.8. Chapel and Hall at Preston Patrick. II.297. 1011

Figure 2.5.9. R \ L / E, 1666, 'Over the hall door'. II.295. 1014

Chapter 2.6: Grasmere Parish

Figure 2.6.1. Seal stamped with the Fleming Arms. II.124. 1019

Figure 2.6.2. Assessment Stick. II.124. 1020

Figure 2.6.3. Bells at Grasmere Church 1607, with Arms and Inscriptions. II.132C. 1021

Figure 2.6.4. Grasmere Church, 3rd Bell Inscription. II.132C. 1022

Figure 2.6.5. Grasmere Church. Memorials and Arches. II.125. 1022

Figure 2.6.6. 'Dunbal Raise Stones'. II.132B. 1026

Figure 2.6.7. {'Ergo this Coat, had he 2 wives – for Briggs was one of Calmire.'}. II.129. 1028

Figure 2.6.8. Langdale Chapel. II.153. 1030

Figure 2.6.9. The three Shire Stones and the rising of rivers. II.135. 1035

Figure 2.6.10. {'Which Way – Which way'}. II.149. 1038
Figure 2.6.11. Rydal Hall. II.133. 1039
Figure 2.6.12. Daniel Fleming's Signature. II.145. 1041
Figure 2.6.13. Windermere. Islands near Bowness. II.150. 1044
Figure 2.6.14. Ambleside Chapel, ' In the Quier on the right ha[n]d window near to great East window'. II.151. 1045
Figure 2.6.15.'Upon the Dial Post on the Cross in Ambleside'. II.150. 1045
Figure 2.6.16. Inscription on 'Ambleside Chappel Bell'. II.150A. 1045
Figure 2.6.17. Inscription from 'Borwens'. II.152. 1046
Figure 2.6.18. 'A sword at Elterwater Hall'. II.153. 1047

Chapter 2.7: Heversham Parish

Figure 2.7.1. Heversham church. II.161. 1049
Figure 2.7.2. Heversham Church East Window. 'Richard Buskel 1601'. II.161. 1050
Figure 2.7.3. 'In Prestons Seat' and 'three more thus'. II 161. 1050
Figure 2.7.4. 'Above a Capital of a Pillar in the N. Ile'. II.165. 1051
Figure 2.7.5. 'On the E? window of the North Aisle'. II.165. 1051
Figure 2.7.6. 'On a Marble-Grave-Stone in Prestons Pew S'. II.165. 1052
Figure 2.7.7. Benson Family Arms. II.167. 1057
Figure 2.7.8. Upper Levins Hall. II.175. 1059
Figure 2.7.9. Arms at Upper Levins Hall. II.175. 1060
Figure 2.7.10. Scroll 'in the parlour window'. II.176. 1061
Figure 2.7.11. Figures illustrating text. II.177. 1063
Figure 2.7.12. Bellingham coat of arms in wainscot. II.178. 1064
Figure 2.7.13. 'Under Levins Hall'. II.179. 1064
Figure 2.7.14. A & 14B. Arms at Nether Levens Hall. II.179. 1065
Figure 2.7.15. Slip of paper 4cm square: epitaph to an unknown lady who died in August 1582. II.181. 1066
Figure 2.7.16. 'Silver found About Siserge Hall 15 years since'. II.183. 1067
Figure 2.7.17. 'Silver found there at the same time.' II.183. 1067
Figure 2.7.18. 'Silver which came out of Yorkeshire perhaps from about Fountains Abby near Rippon'. II.183. 1068
Figure 2.7.19. Sizergh. Arms on 'a dilicate chimney piece of wainscot' in the dining room'. II.187. 1068
Figure 2.7.20. Arms in the Hall at Sizergh Castle. II.187. 1069
Figure 2.7.21. Detail of the parlour chimney piece (e.); arms under a window of the tower (f.). II.187. 1070
Figure 2.7.22. Plan of Crosthwate Chapel. II.190A. 1070
Figure 2.7.23. Example of Machell's MS. II.190A. 1071
Figure 2.7.24. Calmire Hall. 'Old Ivy Building.' II.191. 1072
Figure 2.7.25. Arms containing 'wantaracks' at Calmire Hall. II.191. 1072
Figure 2.7.26. Calmire Hall. 'Another sort of wantarack'. II.191. 1073
Figure 2.7.27. Crosscrake Chapel. 'The chimney is made in the corner, yard long in the lintal.' II.85. 1073

Chapter 2.8: Kirkby Lonsdale Parish

Figure 2.8.1. 'Kirkby Loansdale Church, Michael gate and Brigg Street.' II.208. 1076
Figure 2.8.2. Altar at Kirkby Lonsdale, used as a door seat. II.204. 1077
Figure 2.8.3. Carus with Curwen descent. V.53. 1078
Figure 2.8.4. Machell's use of small scraps of paper. II. 205B. 1079
Figure 2.8.5. Barbon Chapel. II.201. 1081
Figure 2.8.6. In the margin, sketch of Casterton Hall. II.223. 1083
Figure 2.8.7. Kirkby Lonsdale Church; margin sketch. II.205. 1086
Figure 2.8.8. Arms in the Middleton Quire of Kirkby Lonsdale Church. II.219. 1087
Figure 2.8.9. Second coat of arms. Middleton quire in Kirkby Lonsdale Church. II.219. 1087
Figure 2.8.10. Coats of arms on the south side of the monument in the Middleton quire in Kirkby Lonsdale Church. II.219. 1087
Figure 2.8.11. North side of the monument in Middleton Quire in Kirkby Lonsdale Church. II.219. 1087
Figure 2.8.12. 'In Casterton Piew in the S. Ile – on wainscot.' II.219. 1088
Figure 2.8.13. Redman Arms in Casterton pew in Kirkby Lonsdale Church. II.220. 1088
Figure 2.8.14. Curwen with Carus coat of arms. II.220. 1089
Figure 2.8.15. Samuell Gibson's Christian Tattoos 1. II.231. 1098
Figure 2.8.16. Samuel Gibson's Christian Tattoos 2. II.231. 1099
Figure 2.8.17. Margin sketch, 3cm x 1cm. Middleton Chapel [length]19; [breadth] 8. II.235. 1100
Figure 2.8.18. Middleton Hall. II.241. 1101
Figure 2.8.19. Middleton Hall. In the Dining Room wainscot. II.241. 1101
Figure 2.8.20. Dining Room Middleton Hall: Arms on a wooden tablet. II.241. 1102
Figure 2.8.21A. Elevation. Hawking Hall. II.236. 1102
Figure 2.8.21B. Plan. Hawking Hall. II.236. 1103
Figure 2.8.22. Killington Chapel. II.253. 1110
Figure 2.8.23. Killington Chapel. 'Arms marked (1.)'. II.253. 1110
Figure 2.8.24. Sketch plan of Killington Hall. II.253. 1110
Figure 2.8.25. Killington Hall garret window. II.253. 1111
Figure 2.8.26. Killington Hall. 'Over the hall door now a window.' II.253. 1111
Figure 2.8.27. Hutton Roof Chapel. II.261. 1113

Chapter 2.9: Windermere Parish

Figure 2.9.1. Windermere Church. II.308. 1120
Figure 2.9.2. Windermere Church. Arms in the upper lights. II.308. 1121
Figure 2.9.3. 'In the South Ile Quire on the S. side'. II.308. 1122
Figure 2.9.4. Four Coats relating to the woollen industry. II.308. 1123
Figure 2.9.5. 'Gentlemen and their ladyes' at the foot of the lower lights. II.311. 1124
Figure 2.9.6. On little and middle bells at Windermere Church. II.312A. 1125
Figure 2.9.7. Windermere church. On 'The Great Bell'. II.312B. 1125
Figure 2.9.8. Margin drawing of the Philipson monument in Windermere Church. II.312. 1126
Figure 2.9.9. 'Windermere Water.' II.313. 1130
Figure 2.9.10. Margin sketch. Troutbeck Chapel. II.319. 1133
Figure 2.9.11. Margin Note: Bishop Lyttelton's addition to Machell's text. II.323. 1139

Figure 2.9.12. Borrans-Ring. II.327. 1140
Figure 2.9.13. Margin sketch of St Katherine's Chapel, Applethwaite. II.330. 1143
Figure 2.9.14. Draft sketch of Calgarth Hall, annotated, 'not right'. II.332. 1144
Figure 2.9.15. Arms at Calgarth Hall, annotated, 'Set the[se] off a little wider one from another.' II.332. 1144
Figure 2.9.16. Calgarth Hall. II.333. 1146
Figure 2.9.17. On a silver tumbler, the Arms of Philipson. II.336. 1147
Figure 2.9.18. Philipson Descent. II.338. 1149
Figure 2.9.19. Cormorant seen at Windermere Parsonage. II.336. 1152
Figure 2.9.20. 'Great Holm-house alias White-hall.' II.342. 1154
Figure 2.9.21. Plan of Holm-house (Whitehall). 'This stands wrong way; ergo, Turne It.' I.342. 1154
Figure 2.9.22. Windermere, showing 'Ruffholm, Ladyholm, Henholm, Longholm Maiden Holm'. II.343. 1155
Figure 2.9.23. Windermere. Detail from the larger image on II.343. 1156

Chapter 2.10: Itinerary

Figure 2.10.1. Christian tattoos. II.384A. 1168
Figure 2.10.2. Frontispiece detail from William Camden's *Britannia* (1600 edition). 1176
Figure 2.10.3. Burneside Hall. Margin sketch. II.409. 1180
Figure 2.10.4. 'Armes at Burnaside Hall'. II.409. 1181
Figure 2.10.5. Margin sketch 1½ cm square: calf with two heads. II.412. 1183
Figure 2.10.7. Coathow. Arms in the Hall. II.429. 1188
Figure 2.10.8. Helm Crag. 'Atlas supporting the Hevens'. II.432. 1190
Figure 2.10.9. 'An heap of stones'. II.432. 1190
Figure 2.10.10. Grasmere 'Sess Bills'. II.424. 1191
Figure 2.10.11.'Like an house only at the N. End'. II.436. 1192

Part 3. Further Collections

Chapter 3.1: Directions for those who shall undertake to finish the Antiquities of Westmorland

Figure 3.1.1. 'In folio marked thus'. VI.430. 1197

Chapter 3.2: Correspondence

Figure 3.2.1. Machell's copy of his letter, superimposed on sketches of heraldic shields. II.378. 1204
Figure 3.2.2. Letter to Machell, on which he sketched the west end of Lowther Church. III.41A. 1213
Figure 3.2.3. Letter addressed to Machell in London, later used as a sketch pad. VI.482. 1213
Figure 3.2.4. Evidence of multiple use. I.176B. 1231
Figure 3.2.5. Letter addressed to Mrs Elizabeth Machell. II.36B. 1231

Chapter 3.3: Roman Antiquities

Figure 3.3.1. Roman Finds VI.21. 1233
Figure 3.3.2. Illustration from Thomas Machell's letter to William Dugdale, March 25 1684, 'which was published to my unknowledge & printed at Oxford, amongst your *Philosophic Transactions*, Apr. 20 at p.555.' 1235

Figure 3.3.3. Machell's sketch of an inscription and reference to Dr Martin Lister's note on Paulini. VI.279. 1240
Figure 3.3.4. Vessel Quantities. VI.275. 1242
Figure 3.3.5. Symbols used by Machell on VI.237. 1243
Figure 3.3.6. Pillar Shaft. VI.234A. 1245
Figure 3.3.7. Peripteros: Ground plan. VI.234. 1245
Figure 3.3.8. Four-fold wall, pipe wall, pillar wall and altar. VI.240. 1246
Figure 3.3.9. 'A Platform of an Arched Subterranean Vault at Kirkbythore.' VI.281. 1248
Figure 3.3.10. Vault Detail. 'The figure of it resembled a trunke'. VI.281. 1249
Figure 3.3.11. 'A wall of 2 f[eet] & 2 inch broad with 2 Leaden-pipes joyned at (a); the other, a wall with 6 Projectures for so many Pillars, on each of which wee suppose one hath stood.' VI.286. 1251
Figure 3.3.12. 'And on the second of these Projectures was this Inscription.' VI.286. 1252
Figure 3.3.13. 'Interspaces between Projectures.' VI.289. 1253
Figure 3.3.14. 'The 2nd projecture' inscription. VI.289. 1254
Figure 3.3.15. Seal Ring Stones. VI.246. 1257
Figure 3.3.16. 'A sardonix ring stone with a seale cut up on it found in Bleckatt Burhans, 30 of March 1687/8.' VI.246. 1257
Figure 3.3.17. 'Lapis inventus apud Whelp-Castle. 1688.' VI.244A. 1258
Figure 3.3.18. 'With this Inscription, but (like the Castle) turn'd upside down.' VI.248. 1259
Figure 3.3.19. Fair Copy of Machell's work on Appleby Inscriptions sent to Dr John Mill at Oxford. I.189. 1261
Figure 3.3.20. '16. ad App[leby].' VI.188. 1263
Figure 3.3.21. 'The xxth is design'd by Mr Bainbrig as a fairer copy to preserve the Memory of Those Inscriptions upon the Rocks which are at Crawdundale'. VI.186D. 1263
Figure 3.3.22. Varronius Inscription. VI.193. 1263
Figure 3.3.23. Inscription not known to Camden. VI.195. 1264
Figure 3.3.24. Appleby School; Clifford Inscription. VI.186B. 1265
Figure 3.3.25. Appleby School Inscription; Thomas Smith and Ran[dal] Sanderson 1671. I.198A. 1266
Figure 3.3.26. An urn found at Machell's Bank. VI.202. 1267
Figure 3.3.27. Urn, drawn on a separate piece of paper and pasted onto the page. VI.204. 1268
Figure 3.3.28. Machell Seal and Inscriptions. VI.210. 1272
Figure 3.3.29. Coins. VI.210A. 1273
Figure 3.3.30. Two faces of a silver coin, 'the bigness of a 3d.' VI.226. 1278
Figure 3.3.31. Detail. Frontinus Inscription. VI.186B. 1281
Figure 3.3.32. Further Altar. Detail. VI.248. 1284
Figure 3.3.33. 'An altar (above a yard high) digg'd up at Kirby in Loansdale, circa an. 1684.' VI.257. 1285
Figure 3.3.34. Roman Inscription found between Ambleside and Windermere church. VI.259. 1286
Figure 3.3.35. Fragments of Roman Inscriptions at Tunstall Vicarage. VI.262. 1287
Figure 3.3.36. 'Roaleing stone'. IV.79. 1288
Figure 3.3.37. Margin. IV.80. 1289
Figure 3.3.38. Margin. IV.81. 1289

Figure 3.3.39. Stone at Lazonby. IV.82. 1290
Figure 3.3.40. Part of an Inscription within a discarded draft of Thomas Machell's letter to John Mill, 20-21 February 1687. I.763A. 1292
Figure 3.3.41. Cornelian gem stone seal figure. VI.296. 1293
Figure 3.3.42. Image from a ring stone found in 1691. VI.296. 1294
Figure 3.3.43. Letter to Machell from John Mill, October 1691, with Machell's riposte. VI.185. 1299
Figure 3.3.44. Letter from Machell to Mill, 26 June 1692. VI.187. 1300
Figure 3.3.45. Page fragment containing a letter. I.509. 1303
Figure 3.3.46. Coins. VI.271. 1303

Chapter 3.4: Concerning Heraldry

Figure 3.4.1. Dieu et mon Droit. VI.393. 1321
Figure 3.4.2. 'He would convert Square Heads or Cavaliers into Round Heads'. VI.393. 1322
Figure 3.4.3. Thomas Fawcet's Book. VI.397. 1327
Figure 3.4.4. Thomas Fawcet's Book. VI.399. 1328
Figure 3.4.5. Thomas Fawcet's Book. VI.401. 1328
Figure 3.4.6. Thomas Fawcet's Book. VI.403. 1329
Figure 3.4.7. Thomas Fawcet's Book. VI.405. 1330
Figure 3.4.8. Thomas Fawcet's Book. VI.407. 1331
Figure 3.4.9. Thomas Fawcet's Book. VI.409. 1331
Figure 3.4.10. 'A Baron's Cap'. VI.451. 1332
Figure 3.4.11. Seal of John Goldrington. VI.457. 1338
Figure 3.4.12. Forest Court: 'the eire of the forrest'. VI.457. 1338
Figure 3.4 13. Labourne Arms. VI.462. 1342
Figure 3.4.14. 'Drawings of Backhouse, Windsor and Theodall (alt. Theoball) Coates of Arms'. VI.471. 1345
Figure 3.4.15. 'A Wing Gules erect'. VI.465. 1346
Figure 3.4.16. 'The duble strokes. Clifford'. VI.473. 1349
Figure 3.4.17. 'Laton' Arms. Machell's use of heraldry symbols as shorthand. VI.475. 1350
Figure 3.4.18. Shorthand heraldry symbol. VI.479. 1354
Figure 3.4.19. 'Midleton' Arms: symbols. VI.479. 1354
Figure 3.4.20. Published document beginning, 'For that the Taking of Inquisitions Post Mortem is not now in use…', pasted into VI.499 and annotated by Machell. 1363

Abbreviations

AVB	Authorised Version of the Bible (1611).
AWL	R.S. Boumphrey, C. Roy Hudleston and J. Hughes, *An Armorial for Westmorland and Lonsdale* CWAAS Extra Series 21 (Kendal, 1975).
BL	British Library.
CAC(C)	Cumbria Archive Centre, Carlisle.
CCED	Clergy of the Church of England Database Online: http://www.theclergydatabase.org.uk.
CFH	C. Roy Hudleston and R.S. Boumphrey, *Cumberland Families and Heraldry* CWAAS Extra Series 23 (Kendal, 1978).
CW1, CW2, CW3	*Transactions of the Cumberland and Westmorland Antiquarian and Archaeological Society*, old series (1866-1900); new series (1901-2000); third series (2001-).
CWAAS	Cumberland and Westmorland Antiquarian and Archaeological Society.
Dugdale, *Baronage*	William Dugdale*, The Baronage of England, or, An historical account of the lives and most memorable actions of our English nobility in the Saxons time to the Norman conquest, and from thence, of those who had their rise before the end of King Henry the Third's reign deduced from publick records, antient historians, and other authorities* (London, 1675-76).
Dugdale, *Monasticon*	William Dugdale, *Monasticon Anglicanum, or, The history of the ancient abbies, and other monasteries, hospitals, cathedral and collegiate churches in England and Wales. With divers French, Irish, and Scotch monasteries formerly relating to England* (1655-1673).
Dugdale*, Warwickshire*	William Dugdale, *The Antiquities of Warwickshire* (1656).
English Heritage List	The National Heritage List for England: http://list.english-heritage.org.uk.
Hyde & Pevsner	M. Hyde and N. Pevsner*, Cumbria: Cumberland, Westmorland and Furness: The Buildings of England* (New Haven and London, 2010).
Nicolson, *Misc. Accts*	R.S. Ferguson (ed.), *Miscellany Accounts of the Diocese of Carlisle…by William Nicolson late Bishop of Carlisle,* CWAAS Extra Series 1 (London and Carlisle, 1877).
N&B1, N&B2	Joseph Nicolson and Richard Burn, *The History and Antiquities of the Counties of Westmorland and Cumberland*, 2 vols (London, 1777).
Nightingale*, Ejected of 1662*	*B. Nightingale, The Ejected of 1662 in Cumberland and Westmorland, two vols (Manchester, 1911).*
OAD	Oxford Alumni Database, online at 'Ancestry UK', http://search.ancestry.co.uk
ODNB	*Oxford Dictionary of National Biography*, online version (Oxford University Press): http://www.oxforddnb.com.
OED	*Oxford English Dictionary*, online version (Oxford University Press): http://www.oed.com.
Smith, *Place-Names*	A.H. Smith, *The Place-Names of Westmorland*, Vols XLII (1) and XLIII (2), English Place-Name Society (Cambridge, 1965-66).
Speed, *Historie*	John Speed, *The Historie of Great Britaine Under the Conquests of the Romans, Saxons, Danes and Normans. Their Originals, Manners, Habits, Warres, Coines, and Seales: with the Successions, Lives, Acts, and Issues of the English Monarchs from Julius Caesar, unto the Raigne of King James of famous Memorie* (London, 1611).
Westmorland Place-Names	*Place-Names of Westmorland* (online), edited by A.H. Smith (1967). https://epns.nottingham.ac.uk/browse/Westmorland

English Glossary

Unless otherwise stated, these definitions have been adapted from the online version of the *Oxford English Dictionary*.

Agistment	Rate levied on or profit made from the pasturing of another person's cattle; the action or process of taking livestock to feed at an agreed rate; the opening of a forest for a specified time to livestock.
Alienation	Sale, mortgage, lease or other method of disposal.
Appurtenances	Rights and duties associated with holding land.
Arbitrary tenants	Evictable at the will of the Lord of the manor, who could also alter their fine at will: a 'tenancy at will'.
Baly or Baillie	Another form of the word bailiff.
Berryes	Tumuli.
Bishoprick	Diocese of Durham.
Boons and boon-days	Work done free for the Lord e.g. carting fuel, cutting crops, shearing sheep: as part of the rent.
Brassed (braced)	Interlaced.
Burgage	House or plot of land held by the inhabitant of a town or borough, or a tenure of land in an ancient borough.
Carucate	Measure of land, varying with the nature of the soil, etc., being as much as could be tilled with one plough (with its team of 8 oxen) in a year; a plough-land. The acreage of the carucate varied according to the system of tillage. If the land lay in three arable common fields the carucate, according to Fleta, contained 180 acres; 60 for fallow, 60 for winter corn, and 60 for spring corn. If the land lay in 2 fields the carucate consisted of 160 acres, 80 for fallow, and 80 for tillage. Commonly only the land under plough in any one year was reckoned, the fallow being thrown into common pasturage. Hence in ancient deeds the normal carucate is either 120 acres or 80 acres by the Norman number (5 score to the hundred) and 144 acres or 96 acres by the English number (6 score to the hundred).
Catadupe	Cataract.
Champion country	Variant of 'champaign': a large expanse of open country, as distinct from mountains and woods.
Clean marte	Pine marten.
Composition	An agreement for the payment of a sum of money in lieu of the discharge of some other obligation, or in a different way from that required by the original contract.
Constablewick	Township or tithing under the jurisdiction of a constable.
Copyhold	Tenure of manorial land with obligations to perform certain services for the lord.
Cornage	Feudal service, being a form of rent fixed by the number of horned cattle; horngeld.
Customary tenancy	Holding by copy of court roll under manor custom.
Deer leap	Opening to allow access to deer.
Drengage	Tenure or service of a dreng. A dreng was a free tenant holding by a tenure older than the Norman Conquest, the nature of which was partly military, partly servile.
Dubs	Deep & calm pools within a larger body of water (Machell, II.464); small and stagnant pools of water (*OED* Online).
Easter Book	Account book for recording Easter Offerings: money payable at Easter to the incumbent of a parish by the parishioners.
Escheat	An aspect of feudal law, whereby a fief reverted to the lord when the tenant died without leaving a successor qualified to inherit under the original grant. Hence, the lapsing of land to the Crown or to the lord of the manor, on the death of the owner intestate without heirs.

Escheator	An officer appointed yearly by the Lord Treasurer to take notice of the escheats in the county to which he is appointed, and to certify them into the Exchequer.
Escuage	Chief form of feudal tenure (literally shield-service), personal service in the field for a period of forty days in each year (see also scutage).
Escutcheon	Shield or shield-shaped surface on which a coat of arms is depicted; also in wider sense, the shield with the armorial bearings; a sculptured or painted representation of this.
Fee	Land holding (including the Marquess and Richmond Fees); such fees could divide townships in two.
Fee-farm	Kind of tenure by which land is subject to a perpetual fixed rent without any other services; the estate of the tenant in land so held.
Fee} simple Foe}	Freehold land which can be disposed of according to the wishes of the owner; one of the two (main) legal estates in land – correctly the 'fee simple absolute in possession'. (The other main legal estate in land is a term of years absolute, i.e. leasehold.) Machell appears to have understood 'fee' as derived from 'foedus': a contract or agreement: 'knights' foes.' It is also thought that 'fee' is derived from the Saxon 'fee' (cattle or goods of any kind): Low Latin, 'feudum'. See H.J. Todd (ed*.), A Dictionary of the English Language by Samuel Johnson; with numerous corrections …* (London, 1818), FEC-FEE.
Fine	Amount of money paid for a lease or admission to copyhold land: a premium.
Fine certain	A fixed sum.
First Fruits and Tenths	The First Fruits represented a customary gift or payment to the Church, by the new holder of an ecclesiastical benefice, usually equivalent to the first year's income. Tenths were 10 percent of the annual income, due each year. The Court of First Fruits and Tenths was established in 1540 to collect from clerical benefices moneys that had previously been sent to Rome.
Foul marte	Pole cat.
Freehold	To end copyhold status, freehold could be bought by a lump sum paid to the lord of the manor (see also Fee Simple).
Glebe	A portion of land assigned to a member of the clergy as part of a benefice.
Greenhew	Right to cut greenery for fodder.
Hag	Wooded enclosure; a coppice or copse; a hedge.
Heaven-water	'As heaven-water deals' – watershed; draining divide; boundary.
Hep/Hepp	Shap.
Heriot	Feudal service, originally consisting of weapons, horses, and other military equipment, restored to a lord on the death of his tenant; afterwards a render of the best live beast or dead chattel of a deceased tenant due by legal custom to the lord of whom he held.
Heriotable	Liable to a mortuary fine; paying a heriot in kind as part of the (re)admission fee to the holding.
Hundred	Subdivision of a county or shire, having its own court; formerly applied also to the court itself. Most of the English counties were divided into hundreds, in some counties into wapentakes, and in others, wards. It has been regarded as: denoting a division of a hundred hides of land; as the district which furnished a hundred warriors to the host; as representing the original settlement of the hundred warriors; or as composed of a hundred hides, each of which furnished a single warrior': (Stubbs *Const. Hist.* I. v. §45).
Hurrock	Way cairn. Machell defines a hurrock/harrock, as, 'a little heap for a boundary' [I.184].
Inquisition	Judicial or official investigation or inquiry, an inquest; also the document recording such inquiry and its result.
Kead	Sheep-louse.
King's Books	When the first-fruits and tenths were transferred to the English Crown by Henry VIII, it was enacted that commissioners should be appointed in every diocese to certify the value of every ecclesiastical benefice and preferment in the respective dioceses; according to this valuation the first fruits and tenths

	were to be collected and paid in future. This *valor beneficiorum* is what is commonly called the King's Books; see Sir William Blackstone, *Commentaries on the Laws of England in Four Books* (1753) *(with notes selected from various later editions, and a Life of the Author by George Sharswood, in Two Volumes* (Philadelphia, 1893), Vol. 1 - Books I & II. p.784 para 5.
Knight-service	The military service which a knight was bound to render as a condition of holding his lands; hence, the tenure of land under the condition of performing military service.
Lastage	Charge payable by traders attending fairs and markets; a duty levied at so much per last (commercial unit of weight) of goods bought or sold at a fair.
Lile	Little (e.g. Lile Langdale).
Leun	River Lune.
Li.	Pounds sterling.
Ling	Type of heather.
Lunn	Wood or grove.
Manor court	This could also take place in an inn or house.
Martes	Clean mart = pine marten; foul mart = pole cat.
Martlet	Heraldic swallow, never represented with feet, as swallows appear never to touch the ground: Fox Davies, *Heraldry*, 244-45.
Maunch	Manch – in heraldry, a sleeve, especially a medieval hanging sleeve.
Meal silver	Certain tithes could be altered by paying a modus (see below). The terms hay-silver, oat-silver, hemp-silver and meal-silver refer to the payment of tithes in money. See 'silver' in Joseph Wright, *The English Dialect Dictionary Vol. V, R-S* (London, 1904), 437.
Messuage	Originally, a portion of land occupied, or intended to be occupied, as the site for a dwelling house and its appurtenances. In later use (chiefly in law): a dwelling house together with its outbuildings and the adjacent land assigned to its use. Viz. Its curtilage.
Modus	In full, *modus decimandi*. A method of paying tithes other than the one which is usual or prevalent; especially a money payment made in lieu of a tithe.
Moiety	Part of a larger whole; a small or lesser share, portion, or quantity.
More-game	Moor-game, i.e. grouse, particularly the red grouse.
Mortmain	From post-classical Latin *mortua manus*, *manus mortua* (dead hand). The condition of lands or tenements held inalienably by an ecclesiastical or other corporation. Alienations in mortmain, as being injurious to the rights of the crown and the mesne lords, were forbidden under English law by Act 7 Edw. I, statute 2, 1279, to impose limits on the Church's holding of property, This and other such Acts were known as the 'Statutes of Mortmain'. In practice, such grants continued after 1279, but required prior royal licence.
Multur	Multer, moulter or multure: the payment of a fraction of grain ground to the lord of the mill, or the miller. The proportion exacted was higher for those farmers within the lands of an estate on which there was an obligation to grind corn at a certain mill, than for those who came voluntarily from outwith its jurisdiction: *Dictionaries of the Scots language*, Online.
Noble	Coin worth 6s 8d.
Nonage	State of being under full legal age; minority, youth.
Norroy	The title of the third King of Arms, whose jurisdiction before 1945 lay in England to the north of the River Trent.
Nowt/Neot geld	Rent-payment in cattle; also, a tax levied on cattle.
Oxgang	Measure of land formerly in use in parts of northern England and Scotland, equivalent to an eighth of a carucate; so called because a carucate was the amount of land that could be ploughed by a team of eight oxen in a year.
Passes	Paces; rate of stepping; steps. Machell was aware that his passes were not standardised, see Warcop, I.318.
Peculiar	Ecclesiastical district (usually a parish) outside the jurisdiction of the archbishop, bishop or archdeacon. Peculiars were entitled to hold their own

	courts, hence, before 1858 they proved wills of people who owned property in their respective districts.
Pontage	Toll for the use of a bridge; a tax paid for the maintenance and repair of a bridge or bridges.
Poutes	Young of a game-bird. Modern form: pullet: *Dictionary of the Older Scottish Tongue (up to 1700)*. Online.
Prescription Money	Money paid out according to ancient or continued custom, especially when regarded as authoritative.
Procuration	Payment made by a parish, religious house, etc., in lieu of providing entertainment for a bishop, archdeacon, or other official visitor.
q.	Quarter of a penny: a farthing.
Quarry	Pane of glass, cut into a regular geometric shape.
Quire	Chancel or east end of a church.
Quit claim	*Quiete clamare*. To release or renounce all pretensions to right or title: *Jacob's New Law Dictionary* (1732).
Rag	Piece of hard or rough stone, especially of a kind suitable for paving or building.
Reader	After the Reformation, lay readers were appointed to lead worship and perform minor functions, including pastoral duties, in parishes which had no regular incumbent or minister. This situation persisted for longer in the north of England than elsewhere.
Saltier/Saltire	In heraldry, a St. Andrew's cross. Hence, 'in saltire': crossed like the limbs of a St. Andrew's cross. When the field of a coat, or any charge upon it, is divided by two diagonal lines, crossing each other, it is termed, 'per saltier'.
Scutage	Tax levied on knights' fees; chiefly in a restricted sense, such a tax paid in lieu of military service.
s.d.	Sans date: with no date.
Sesses	Assessments.
Settle	A flat ledge or wall foot.
Shrievalty	Office or jurisdiction of a sheriff. Sheriffs were deputies of the Crown and the main agent of the courts until the 14th century and were therefore of enormous executive influence in each county.
Sike	A small stream of water, a rill or streamlet, especially one flowing through flat or marshy ground, often dry in summer; a ditch or channel through which a tiny stream flows.
Socage	Tenure of land by certain determinate services other than knight-service.
Stallage	Tax or toll levied for the liberty of erecting a stall in a fair or market.
Stang	Pole or stake, a wooden bar or beam. To ride the stang: to be mounted astride a pole borne on the shoulders of two men, and carried through the streets to excite the derision of the spectators.
Stuart	Steward.
Suit and Service	Attendance at court and personal service due from a tenant to his or her lord; also used to describe certain forms of tenure that involve this obligation.
Synodal	Payment made by the inferior clergy to the bishop, properly on the occasion of a synod, and hence at an episcopal or archidiaconal visitation.
Taberdar	Name formerly given to certain scholars of The Queen's College, Oxford, from the gown (tabard) they wore as servitors (pauper puer); still surviving in the name of some of the scholarships at that college.
Tenement	Land which is held of another by any tenure.
Threave	'Thrave': two shocks or stooks of corn (or other pulse), generally containing twelve sheaves each, but varying in different localities; hence used as a measure of straw, fodder, etc.
Through/through-stone	A coffin made of stone; a sarcophagus. Also: a tomb, a sepulchre; a grave; a large slab of stone laid over a tomb or grave; a horizontal gravestone; also, a funerary monument consisting of a horizontal slab supported on columns; a table tomb.

Turbary	Land where turf or peat might be dug for fuel; a peatbog or peat moss. In law: in full common of turbary, i.e. the right to cut turf or peat for fuel on a common or on another person's land.
Usher	Assistant to a schoolmaster; under-master, assistant-master.
Vaccary	Cow pasture.
Viduity	Widowhood.
Vivary	[Latin] *vivarium*: enclosure for keeping deer etc., or a fishpond. 'Vivarium ... in Law … signifieth Parks, Warrens, and Pischaries or Fishings.' See E. Coke, *The Second Part of the Institutes of the Lawes of England* (1642), 100.
Waif and Stray	A waif was an item of ownerless and unclaimed property found on a landowner's territory; a stray referred to a domestic animal that had wandered onto the same land. A grant of waif and stray permitted the landowner to take ownership of such goods or animals if they remained unclaimed after a set period of time.
Yeat	Gate.

Latin Glossary

Compiled by Jane Penman

a capella	from the chapel
ab aula	from the hall
ab ecclesia	from the parish church
anno ejusdem	in the same year
arbor vitæ	tree of life: the evergreen thuja
capital messuage	the chief house on an estate; the mansion-house of a manor
caput baroniæ	head of the barony; the chief seat of a nobleman
coram provincialibus	in the view of locals
cum pertinentiis	with appurtenances
de mense in mensem	from month to month
de quo infra	of which below
de quo quaere	about which enquire
durante vita	in his lifetime
durante vita patris	in his father's lifetime
eadem	the same
eadem anno	in the same year
ejusdem	of the same
eodem	with the same
fictilia	earthenware
forsan	perhaps
ibidem	in the same place
ideo quaere	therefore enquire
in capite	in chief; directly from the crown
infra	below
inter alios	among other people
membranula	skins from which a roll is composed; parchment
mense in mensem	every month / from month to month
miles	knight
ni fallor	unless I am mistaken
nuper	lately
ob	½d. From Latin 'obulus'
Pasce	Easter
penes	in the custody of
placitum inter	plea between
puto	perhaps
quo warranto	by what authority: writ or legal action requiring a person to show by what warrant an office or franchise is held, claimed, or exercised
ratio nominis	reason for the name
rotulus	roll
sc. (scilicet)	one may know; equivalent to the English phrase 'to wit'
sed dub[ito]	but I doubt it
sed parum ad rem	but little to the point
sed quaere/quere	but query this
sine prole (S.P.)	without issue
sine titulo	without title
ut puto	so I think
ut supra	as described or shown above
uxor	wife
valet per annum	worth per year
vidua	widow
viri clari	outstanding men
vix credo	I scarcely believe it

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 2]

[Parish of Askham]

[I.356]

For this see my notes of Ascome parish. Tis writ Ascome S.D.[1] in the Catalogue of Shireves, MS of Westm'land in General, sc. Part V.[2]

[I.359][3]

Askam

[**The Church**]

The church is dedicated to St Peter*, as appears out of Haltons Register.[4] In it there is not any thing remarkable save in Sandford quire, which is on the south side the church behind the pulpit.[5]

Sandford Quire

In it are 2 fair throughs:[6] one huen stone, covered with huen stone above 4 cubits long & 2 & ½ broad,[7] under which is interred Thomas Sandford; this is next to the south window. He died durante vita Patris.[8] The other near the pulpit is almost as large every way, and covered with a fair marble of a brownish colour mixed with blew & some white vanes. \ Under is burrid Long John Sandford / {who was yonger brother of the said Thomas, buried on St John day,[9] 44 yeres since R. English buried in St Peters at Ashby.}[10] It was diged up out of water at the east end of church, at a place called Holly Well, because it descends by steps as into a well, and {Ita[11]} is the place wher they fetch their water wherewith they Baptise: An no question formerly in time of popery, whence they had their water \ on / which they had made holly water in this same place.

The parish[ioners] of Askam were used on Easter Day in the afterenoon to sing hyms and the parishioners of Lowther on the other side the water, there being a brave Ecco to contend with them†.[12]

There are besides in this quire severall grave stones, 2 whereof are somewhat remarkable.
That next the pulpit which is older, haveing a sort of † rose upon it[13] and on the right side a pair of sheres, the best sort of sisers no doubt in old time.

---

[1] 'Sine die': without date.
[2] The List of sheriffs (VI.583-95) contains no reference to Askham, but see Machell's Introduction to Westmorland: I.49, 93, 95, 123; II.487 (reference to a charter SD), 492, 505, for other references.
[3] I.359-367 are also numbered 1-9.
[4] Bishop Halton's Register: John de Halton was bishop of Carlisle, 1292-1324, see CAS(C), DRC1/1. See also, *The Register of John de Halton*, 2 vols, CWAAS Record Series II (Kendal, 1913).
[5] Askham Church was rebuilt in 1832-33 by Robert Smirke (architect of Lowther Castle) on the plan of the medieval church, incorporating some of its features: Hyde & Pevsner, 121-22.
[6] 'Throughs' are flat gravestones. *OED*.
[7] Cubit: an ancient measure of length derived from the forearm; varying at different times and places, but usually about 18-22 inches. *OED*.
[8] He died 'in his father's lifetime.'
[9] St John the Evangelist: 27 December.
[10] Thomas died 27 September 1630, and John who succeeded him was buried on 28 December in the same year. See Frederick W. Ragg, 'Helton Flechan, Askham and Sandford of Askham', *CW2,* 21 (1921), 174-233, at 198.
[11] 'Thus.'
[12] The River Lowther runs between Askham and Lowther in a deep gulley; hence the echo.
[13] A rose-headed cross.

The other, a cross rose in planer worke; on the right side a booke & a pair of sheres \ under it /more rudely cut, as the whole worke indeed is; on the left side an escutshon and under neath A.S. for Ann Sandford. One Bridget Sandford being lately buried there, B.S. for Brigget Sandford is ingraved thereupon.

In the East window was this Coat of Armes:



Figure 1.2.1. East Window, Askham Church. I.359.

{This was taken out of the quire upon the comeing up of the Scots in the Civil Wars,[14] & placed in the west wind[ow] of the Hall[15] for preservation.} {Note that antlers the Bores heads are Or.}[16]

There is upon the timber in the body of the church: E.D., E. D.; T.S., T.S.[17] which stand for Edward Dudley & Thomas Sandford, whos as it should seem have given timber to the reparation of the church.

[14] MS: 'Walls'.

[15] Askham Hall, then seat of the Sandford family. Although much of the material on Askham is devoted to the Sandfords, Machell fails to mention a contemporaneous MS bound into his own research (see MS.VI.540-69), written by Edmund Sandford c.1675. This work was later edited by R.S. Ferguson and published as, *A Cursory Relation of All the Antiquities and Familyes in Cumberland*, CWAAS Tract Series 4 (Kendal, 1890).

[16] The 16th-century Sandford of Askham arms are described as, 'Per chevron Sable and Ermine two boars' heads couped Or.' During the reign of Edward II, Robert de Sandford bore 'Ermine on a chief indented Sable three boars' heads couped Or.' See *CFH*, 294, but see also I.361, where the boars' heads are 'tusked'.

[17] These are the duplicated initials of Edward Dudley & Thomas Sandford. Nicolson and Burn add the date 1593 after the initials, viz. 'The church is a small old building, with two little bells. Upon the timber in the body of the church, are the letters ED, TS, 1593; for Edmund Dudley and Thomas Sandford who probably gave timber for the repair thereof. And upon one of the coupling beams are the letters JB, supposed to mark the timber contributed by John Bradley of Knipe.' *N&B1*, 422. The Dudleys/Suttons (Barons Dudley) were connected by marriage (in 1512) to the Threlkelds of Yanwath. It is this branch of the Dudley family and its connection with the Sandfords with which Machell is concerned. Richard Dudley (d. Temple Sowerby 1593) married Dorothy, daughter of Edmund Sandford of Askham. His son and heir, Edmund Dudley, was therefore Thomas Sandford's first cousin. Edmund Dudley died c.1614. See W. Jackson, 'The Dudleys of Yanwath', *CW1*, 9 (1888), 318-32.

I finde in Edward the 1ᵗ time? there was a chantry founded here by the Askams, Lords and Patrons of this place; maybe this quire is it; my evidence is out of Haltons Register.[18] Robertus filius Henrici Henry. Almanac for 1674. 24‡.[19]

[Machell's Notes: I.359]

*{They bore rushes on St Peters day.}
†(Note this should be extra ecclesiam.)[20]
‡{This is Aska[m]}

[I.360]

In the southwest corner, the Sandfords of Helton bury, which now are degen[erated] into country people but without controversy of same fam[ily]. Under the south window is an arch over a gravestone, upon which is this inscription:

+ WILLS: DE S ANTONE

{In the quire, in digging a grave lately was found a stone coffin, and the covering being a broad through stone, this inscription:

+ IHES DEC CLAWORGH: i.e. Johannes de Claworgh.}

[Vicarage]
The vicaridge house was built by \ Lancelot Hutchinson / there being over the door this inscription:

PAX HUIC DOMVI
LHM.[21]

He is the present incumbent. The impropriation belongs to the Sandfords of Askam, who are allso patrons in 1362. It was a Rectory, a test […][22]

[**Villages and Lordships**]

Villages. 2: Askham, Helton with halfe of Helton Dale.[23]

Lordships. 3: [1.] Askam 2. Hilton, 3. Sattera Parke.
3. Askham, formerly belonging to the Swinburnes, now to the Sandfords.[24]

Q? I have it. Castlesteed in Yeanwath Wood in Barton. X
Q? I have it. A place in Yeanworth Wood called Maudlin Chapple, & a Well called Mag[dalen] or Holly Well.

4. There is 1 millne at Askham, a duble one.
5. A chaple in Askham Hal*.
6. Rarities: the marble quarryes beneath the church, and pearles found of the bigness of a pea in horse mussels which are in Lowther river.

[18] Bishop Halton's Register, see above.
[19] 'Robert the son of Henry; see my Almanac for 1674, page 24.'
[20] Note, this entry should be among those related to the outside of the church.
[21] 'Peace be to this house'.
[22] Names here, but obscured by the binding, appear to be of those who acted, 'as witness the deeds'. In 1680 the Sandford family sold the tithes to Sir John Lowther, see John F. Curwen, *The Castles and Fortified Towers Of Cumberland Westmorland and Lancashire North-of-the*-Sands, CWAAS Extra Series 13 (Kendal, 1913), 239.
[23] The word 'Winder' appears here in the margin, but it is very faint.
[24] MS: 'Askham, formerly belonging to the Swinburnes, now to the Sandfords. ~~There is a fortification near Askham Hall~~.'

7. Manner houses ~~onely~~ \ 1. / Askam,[25] to which there is one demane and one demane at Hilton, where there is a place called Hall-Steeds.[26] There has bin allso a chaple, as appears from a place called Chaple Yeat.

[Machell's Notes: I.360]

*Sed non dum vidi.[27]
{N[ote]} At Helton Tithebarn End is a stone seat where he who comes there is to stay till all the rest come up to him, where they confer about their affairs and so part home. It is looked upon as a great piece of rudness not to performe this cerimony.
Askham Hall. Idonea dates from Helton as I s[uppose].[28]

[I.361]

Over the gate of the gatehouse.
Over the great gate.[29]

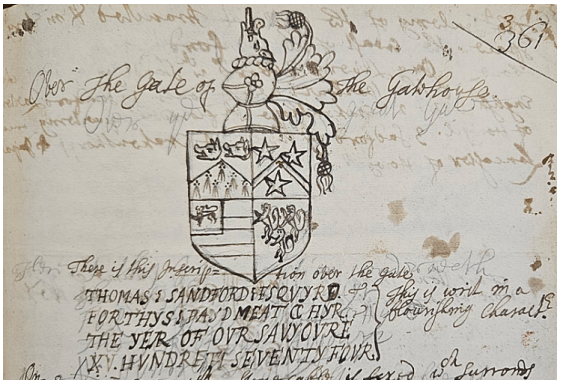


Figure 1.2.2. Askham Hall, gate inscription. I.361.

There is this inscription over the gate; this is writ in a flourishing character

THOMAS | SANDFORD | ESQVYRE.
FOR THYS | PAYD MEAT CC HYR.
THE YER OF OVR SAVYOVRE
X.V. HVNDRET SEVENTY FOVR[30]

On 2 pins upon which a stone cable is fixed which surrounds the arch of the gate; on the one TS; on the other AS, for Thomas Sandford and Ann Sandford his wife.

In the chapple, the East window has 2 lights. In the first is ~~St Simon, I thinke, with our saviour in his hand~~ \ the Trinity; / in the 2nd is the Virgin Mary with Our Saviour. On the wall above the[se] are 2 escutchions in stone.

[25] Askham Hall was enlarged by Thomas Standford in 1574: Curwen, *Castles and Fortified Towers*, 347-49.
[26] MS: 'to which there ~~are~~ \ is / ~~2 demanes and~~ one \ dem[ane] / and one demane at Hilton, where there is a place called Hall-Steeds.'
[27] 'But I have not yet seen it.'
[28] The last word in this sentence is partially obscured by the binding.
[29] The second phrase is in blue pencil; it was probably written on the spot.
[30] This has been inked over an originally pencilled version.

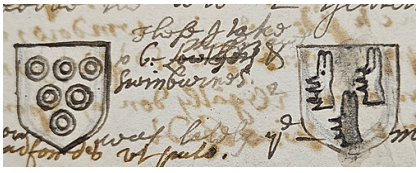


Figure 1.2.3. Askham Hall Chapel, East Window. I.361.

These I take to be ~~Lowthers~~ \ Musgraves / & Swinburnes. This pale must be taken away
In the first window was lately the Musgraves arms impaled by the Sandfords ut puto.[31]

In the Hall

In the East window the midle light is this coat, viz. quarterly: 1. Parted per cheveron Sable & Ermin. 2. Bores heads couped Argent! Tusked Or. \ The paternal coat of the Sandfords. / The 2nd Sable 3 lyons rampand Argent caud[32] inflexed Argent. By the name of English. The 3d, as the 2nd; the 4th as the 5th; the creast[33] on a wreath \ Azure & Sable. / On a close side helmet a borehead couped erect Or tusked Argent gor~~ge~~ \e/d with a falchion of the same.

In plasterworke Southside wall: 3 escutchions

The 1. quarterly of 8.
1. The paternall coate of the Sandfords
2. English
3. ~~Lancaster~~ Crakenthorpe, with a floredelise for distinction
4. Lancaster
5. English
6. Sandford
7. Lancaster
8. Crakenthorpe.

The 2nd quarterly of 4.
1. Sandford
2. English
3. ~~Lane~~ Crakenthorpe
4. Lancaster

The 4th is impaled
The 1t is Sandford quartering English, Crakenthorpe & Lancaster
the 2nd Hutton of Hutton John quartering Barwise

[I.362]

The sealing of the Hall is branched & in every space the crest of the Sandfords. On a livery cubbord which stands in a lodging roome above the parlour are 4 coats: 1t. Sandford quartering English; the 2: Crakenthorpe with floredelies quartering Lancaster of Howgil; 3. Sandford by it selfe; 4. Crakenthorpe[34] impaleing Lancaster of Howgill.

[31] '…impaled by the Sandfords, I think.'
[32] Tails.
[33] Crest.
[34] Followed here by a tiny fleur de lys sketch.

The kitchen back door



Figure 1.2.4. Kitchen doorway stone, Askham Hall. I.363.

This stone stands att jaume of the low end doore as you goe the back way into the kitchen*.

[Chapel]
There is allso on the Chaple, above the East window, which I should have taken notise of before, 2 scutchions – one on each side the litle window – which tho very rude, yet I suppose were intended for Swineburnes, which are \ else / where more elegantly don; as upon their Seale in Edward 3. time: 3 Swine heads. The same coats allso have bin upon the Cross which stood in the midle of the Towne, one upon one side and the other upon the other, thus.



Figure 1.2.5. Coats of arms on Askham Cross. I.362.

[Dining Room]
There is allso upon a mullion on one of the windows of the gatehouse dineing roome – On a scutch. a lyon rampant (maybe) alluding to the Englishes, who tho in their coat they bear 3, yet in their Seale Ancient they bare onely a single lyon rampant

[Stable Door]
There is H.M. in a roundel above the stable door, which was don by one Humphery Musgrave related to this house

[Machell's Notes: I.362]

*The family of the Sandfords. Concerneing it Mr Edmund Sandford informes me that one T. Rud of Sandforth has many writeings concerning the Sandfords.[35]

[I.363]

by their match with Musgraves as you may see in the pedegree; from whome to this day it is called Humphrey Stable.

[35] Edmund was a common name among the Sandfords but presumably this was Edmund Sandford the antiquary, see fn. 15, above.

[Sandford Deeds]

5º Richard 2d [1381-82]. Edmundus de Sandford make a conveyance of all his lands & tenements with appurt[enances] in the villages of Heton Flechan, Ascum et alibi in com. Westmerland Kt.d.[36] ut puto post marritagium.[37] {William s[on] of Sir Edmund & Idonea.}

8. Richard 2nd [1384-85]. Idonea, formerly the wife of Ed~~ward~~\mund/ Sandford, Knight, makes Adam de Crosby & Thomas de Barton for attorneys ad recipiendum serviciam nomine ~~meo~~ \ suo / et nomine Will[ielmi] de Sandford filij et heredis praedicti. Edmundi, Anno regni Richardi, regis Angiae et Franciæ octavo.[38]

9º Henry 4. [1407-08]. William de Hoton in foresta & William de Bolton doe quit clame to William de Sandford Chivalier, totum, usquæ aliquam in hab. potestatem in manerio de Ascome cum molendino ejusdem. Et omnibus alis terris & ten[ementis]. In conveyance dated eodem anno Alan Kirkbride releases to them ½ man[or] & village of Heton Flechan quæ / {fuit Sir Thomae Lengleys}.[39]

10. Henry 4. [1408-09]. Idonea Ughtreth, nuper uxor Thomae Ughtreth, militis.[40] Bound in a bond of 200 for performance of indenture to William Sandford, Knight. {Sir William marr[ied] Margaret.} ~~16.~~ \ 13. / Henry 4th [1411-12]. The manner of Ascome is info\e/fed upon William Sandford, Knight, & Margaret his wife, & their heirs by William de Woodside, capel; Thomas Jackson, & Adam Bro[wha]n. (John Lengleys filius et heres Domini Robert Lengleys, 1399.)[41]

[Will] of Idonea Ougthred

2. Henry 5th 1414. The~~r~~ will then dated; her executors being Robert Brut, armiger, who married Johane, her daughter; & Johan Sandford, filius Sandford, brother of Sir William {Sir William Sandford, son of Idonea; John, son Idonea} \ upon / which will she lyes this imposition:

> …Item onoravi Dominum Willielmum Sandford, filium meum et ipse onoret filios suos et filios filiorum, ut exhibeat et exhibeant presbiteram Idoneum celebrandum in ecclesia de Ascome in perpetuum pro animabus benefactorum nostrorum et omnium fidelium defunctorum sub poena benedictionis meæ vel maledictionis.[42] Apud Cranestie in Com. Northampton.

---

[36] 'And elsewhere in the county of Westmorland.' 'Ktd' is an insecure transcription because the second letter is blotted. Machell used similar letter groups (see a reference to Yanwath in Part 1, Ch.5, Barton, I.734) such as KαT, an abbreviation of the Greek adverb, κα/τω, meaning 'below', or, 'in the lower part'. In this instance, the probable context (the Bottom of Westmorland) is consistent with a reference to 'below', but the Greek abbreviation is unclear and appears to be carelessly written.

[37] 'After the marriage, I think.'

[38] 'Attorneys to receive service in his name and in the name of William de Sandford, son and heir of the aforesaid Edmund, in the eighth year of the reign of Richard, King of England and France.'

[39] 'William de Sandford, Chivalier, in its entirety, as far as he has any authority in the manor of Askham along with its mill. And all other lands and tenements. In conveyance dated the same year Alan Kirkbride releases to them … which was of Sir Thomas Lengleys.'

[40] 'Recent wife of Thomas Ughtreth, knight.'

[41] 'John Lengleys, son and heir of Lord Robert Lengleys, 1399.'

[42] 'Item. I have done honour to Lord William Sandford, my son; and he himself should do honour to his own sons and the sons of his sons. And he should ensure and they should ensure their forbear Idonea is commemorated in the church of Askham in perpetuity for the sake of the souls of our benefactors and all the faithful dead. Under the penalty of my blessing or malediction.'

This was made about the 2nd of Henry 5th [1414-15]. There is a shedule of her Estate in Westm'land, which I hold wo[r]th inserting.[43] Viz.

> MS. "I Dame Edone Sandforth ... (it seems it was made before she marryed Ugtred) ... maketh her remembrance": 'of all my landys in Westm'land the wyche ys myn heritage; That is to say the tone halfe off the towne off Helton Flechne wych the p\a/tenance; That is to say Helton Dall with the Skewegh. Item Land in Carholand; Item Land in Butterwyke; Item the manner of Knype; Item Satrow Parke wyth the browne more;[44] Item the depeynge; Item the Court yard with the Rod-banke and the Schaype Cott;* halfe the mylne of Helton; Item Stockthwaite and

[Machell's Notes: I.363]

*{is an hamlet.}

[I.364]

> Wyth wath; Item 2 acrs of Land in the Whale that lyeth by the beke; Item a Barwayne at Helton towne head. And these parcells above sayd is myne anerytance be my Lord my father, the which my Lady my graname gauffe my fder and to hys hayres; Item I have in Ascome 8 oxgangs of Land and halfe the mylne Cong~~ing~~ynd[45] to the same the wych my Lord my father purchassd of Syr Hew off Lowther and gayffe it to me; Item stockyng the manner and the Lands and the Towne of Ascome, the wych that my Lord my husband and I p\a/chesed* that cost us viij hondreth marks and 50, of the wyche my therd as I had in Syr Thomas Ughtred dayes†. And fore these landes of Ascome the chyld suld be ward gyff the law: will I 'and for noe' nother lands that myne is'‡.

{William, brother of Sir Edmund}

5. Henry 5th [1417-18]. Mention of William de Sandford who paid rent to Idonea, widow of Thomas Ughthred, Chevalier, for a farme holden pro termino annorum⸸.[46]

6. Harry 5. [1418-19]. She was a widow to Ougthred, anno 1420 \ 8. Henry 5. / She made an other will, where in she gives her body to be buried in the church of St Peter Leye and her best habit by name – the principle, which was a mantle||. To Idonea Sandford¶ her best black bed with the appurten[ances]; to the mother of Robert Brette, all her gounes & curtles; to Johane her daughter unam peciam argenti sine cooperculo.[47] If Idonea Sandford dye, provided allwayes that Idonea outlive me. To Idonea all my chifts & juells. I will allso that Robert Sandford, my heir, shall have those 8 oxgangs of land & halfe the milne in Ascome, which my father bought

[Machell's Notes: I.364]

*(Sir Edmund & Idonea purchased Ascome of Syr Robert Swyneborne.)
†(It seems this was made after the death of Sir Thomas, her 2nd husband, after which she reassumed the surname of Sandford & used both promiscuously as in the will she is called Utghtred.)
‡It seemes his father was not lyable to wardship for anything which he had.
⸸This William I take to be \ the younger / brother of Sir Edmund, put him downe so with [blank] insteed of lines.
||(NB) {that daughter of Lady Idonea. Idonea and Johane. Robert Sandford my heir and filius Will. Befor she calls him not son and yet had a son called John.}
¶(I suppose eldest daughter.)

[43] See an exact copy in *N&B1*, 424-25.
[44] This word is blotted, making the transcription unsafe.
[45] Probably 'conjoined'.
[46] 'For a term of years.'
[47] 'A silver object without a cover.'

[I.365]

{Robert obliged to found a chaple}
of Hug de Lowther, upon condition that he shall found one chapple; ad celebrandum missam pro anima patris mei et antecessorum meorum[48] in the chaple of St Mary de Ascome, and if he found one, a certane distribution of 10^{s} pro anima patris prædicti Roberti & antecessorum suorum.[49]
But if he will not doe soe, yet the forsaid oxgangs &c. shall be sold & said denarios inde receptæ ponant ad usum interiendum unum capellam et ad faciende um distributionem supra dictas.[50]
Executors: John Pykwell; John Yorke, chaplain vicar ecclesia S[anc]ti Pet[rus]; John Macel; Robert le Superviser.

9. Henry 5th [1421-22] Robert Sandford is seised of all lands, tenements, rents & reversions & services left by Lady Ugtrich with the appurtenances in the county of Westmorland. Witness inter alios Johane Sandford & William Barton. This John was his brother or uncle.

3. Elizabeth. 1560. Elizabeth Sandforth of Graystoke, in which she onely mentions her ~~sister~~ daughter, Dorath Dudley & Thomas Sandford Esq. whome she makes her executor. I take it to be \ Askham / purchased about the 46th of Edward 3^{d} [1372-73], by Sir Edmund.

Sandford; Idonea: the matches of Sandforth è pedigree
1. Ed\mund / younger brother to William married Idonea, daughter & heir to Sir Thomas English, Knight, which Thomas was son of Robert English, who was son of John, Lord of Little Askeby. And Idonea daughter & one of the heirs of John (~~Lord~~) \ Lord / Morvil, Lords de Hilton & Askam. This Edmund was knighted after or upon his marriage.

[2.] Sir William Sandford, Knight, son & heir of Sir Edmund [and] Margaret 13. Henry 4. [1411-12].

{Sandford, English, with Thornburg}
3. Robert Sandford, son & heir of William & heir to Idonea \ yet liveing / 8. Henry 5. [1420-21]. Ut a testamento patet:[51] marryed Elizabeth Thornburg vixit Robert,[52] 38. of Henry 6. [1459-60].

{With Musgraves & English}[53] {S. Sandford & English with Musgrave}
4. Thomas Sandford, son & heir to Robert, marryed Margaret, daughter to Musgrave.

{S[andford] & Eng. with Cu[rwen]}
5. William Sandford, son & heir to Thomas, marryed Mabell, daughter to Sir Christopher Curwen, Knight.

[I.366]

6.[54] Edmund, son & heir to William, marryed Elizabeth Warcop, daughter to Warcop of Smardale, who bares 3 covered cups Argent with a crescent of the same for distinction.

7. ~~Edmund~~ \ Thomas / Sandford, son & heir to ~~Will~~ \ Ed. / married Grace, daughter to Ambrose Crakenthorpe de Howgil. She had 2 sisters: Margaret and Ciscel. Ambrose was brother to Anthony

[48] 'One chapel to celebrate mass for the soul of my father and of my ancestors.'
[49] '… for the soul of my father the aforesaid Robert and of his ancestors.'
[50] '… and they shall place the said profit of the sale, to the use of founding a chapel, and to making the distribution, as stated above.'
[51] 'As he makes clear from his testament.'
[52] 'Married Robert'.
[53] The rest of this margin comment has perished.
[54] Originally placed after 9, but with a ring around it, probably to show that it was a misplaced afterthought.

Crakenthorp ~~who dyed~~ sonne of [blank] Crakenthorp & [blank] Lancaster, whence they quarter the coate of the Lancaster de Howgill, who dyed without Isue & left the estate to his 3 nieces. The 3[d] brother had Howgill by gif of his mother*.

8. Thomas son & heir to Thomas Beareing married Ann, eldest daughter of Cuthbert Hutton of Hutton John & had Isue Thomas†.

9. Thomas Sandford‡ son & heir to Thomas, married Martha the daughter of John Witherington Knight, who bears quarterly Argent & Gules a bend Sable on the 1[t] & 4. He had Isue Thomas, John, Edmund. Thomas dyed young. Edmund never marryed. But John, the 2, succeded in the estate. 4 sisters: Anne dyed a nun. Elizabeth maryed to Thomas Hilton de Murton Great. Martha, Margaret & Dor[athy] dyed unmarryed.

10. John marryed Mary, the onely daughter of Edward English of Eglinby de Carlile Esq. His Isue, Mary dyed an infant. Thomas, a Captain for the King ~~the~~ Charles the 1[t] in 48. Duke Hambletons was the 1[t] protestant of the family. And ensigne in Carlile to Sir Philip Musgrave, the governers company in King Charles 2 times. He married Elizabeth, the \ eld[est] / daughter of William Orpher de Plumbland Hall (Esq.) alias dict[55] High Close, and had Isue 1. William, 2. John, a merchant, Thomas, dyed a youth. ~~4. Bridget~~ d[yed]an infant. Mary & Elizabeth, twins, living. \ Bridget /. Mat[ilda], d[yed] an infant. Ephraim⸸.

[Machell's Notes: I.366]

*{Hence Sandford. Query English with Lancaster & Crakenthorp. It should be Crakenthorp & Lan.}
†{Hutton. Query: a fess between 3 cushons Argent tasseld Or.} Q[uery] 1. his mone.[56] 2. English. 3. Lancaster. 4. Crackenthorp.
‡{Thomas Sandford of Askam Esq. dyed the 17 of February 1676 & was buryed the 19[th] in Askam church.}
⸸{Or ples Sable a † with a mullet in Dexter port.}[57]
The Thwates matched with the Sandford: se their armes.

[I.367]

A Note of Sir Edmond Sandford

Alice, the onely daughter & heir of Gilbert Lord Sandford, Lord Chamberlain of the Queen Elizabeth and Lord of Hormead in Hartfordshire, was wife unto Robert de Vere, Earl of Oxford, her son & all Earles of Oxford* ever since stiled Lord Sandford. She dyed at Cawfield 9. of September in the 6[th] yeere of Edward 2[nd], anno domini 1612†. Gundred, the daughter of William the ~~of Will the~~ 2[nd] Earl of Warren & Surrey, was wife unto Roger, Earl of Warwick, after whose death she was remarried to William of Lancaster, Barron of Kendal, a virago of a manly currage who cast the garrison of King Stephen out of the Castle of Warwick & delivered it to Henry Duke of Normandy, the son of Maud the Empress, in the year of our Lord 1252‡. Sockbridge & Howgill both Lancasters and younger brothers of the Lords of Kendall⸸. Thomas Sandford of Askham, great grandchild of Sir William Sandford, the 1. Lord Wharton, and Reynold Carnaby of Northumberland marryed 3 sisters of Warcop, de Warcop tower in Westm'land, chevalier‖. The now Duke of Newcastle, the late Lord Witherington's grandmother, were coheir of Sir Reynold Carnaby, and their posterity have his lands to this day. So as the Duke of Bowzar[58] (& Newcastle) stand in the 4[th] degree in Consanguinity, the Lord Wharton, Lord Witherington and Thomas Sandford of Askam Esq. stand in the 5[th] degree to my

[55] 'Also known as.'
[56] Unclear word.
[57] The rest of this comment has perished.
[58] 'Bolsover'. In 1621 William Cavendish (1592-1676), was created Earl of Newcastle upon Tyne and Baron Cavendish of Bolsover. He succeeded his mother as ninth Baron Ogle in 1629. A noted royalist, he fought in the Civil Wars. He became Marquess of Newcastle upon Tyne in 1643 and was elevated to the dukedom of Newcastle upon Tyne in 1665. See Newcastle, Dukes of, *Encyclopædia Britannica*, 11th edn, Vol. 19 (Cambridge, 1911), 470.

Trees[59] illustrious Lord Dukes grace, who therefore allwayes gives a singular respect to Mr Sandford of Askam, who is allso descended on the femal side from Lanc. Lord of Kendall. The creast is sometimes placed in crownes which in former times the servant of this family used to wear in their bleue liveries. De hi[…] quere.[60]

[I.368]

These blew coates used to serve up the boore head with a song on Xt Xmas.[61]

[Machell's Notes: I.367, 368A]

*{This is from a place so calld; nothing to this family.}
†Note: this is inconsistent, for she could never live 300 yers.[62]
‡{? This may be put (if true) in Lancasters pedigree.}
⸸{Of which, query.}.
‖(De hoc dubito,[63] for it is of Smardale in the pedigree which was drawne by Lord Whartons \ Stuart / se this in Whartons pedigre)

[I.368A]

It should seem of the pedigree that the estate came not from the Swinburne but English.
Q. Whether Morvill was Lord? Nisi villæ et manner[ij].[64]

[I.368B]

Matches of the Sandfords of Ascome[65]

Sandford de Askham Esq	Morvil daughter de Helton & Askham	English of Litle Askby
Sandford &	Thomas, dominus Morvil	Joh. English
Sandford &	Idonea, filia Johanis de Morevil	Rob. English of Litle Askby
Sandford &	Sir Thomas English	
Edmund Sandforth, younger brother to William	Idonea English, daughter & heir of Sir Thomas	

[59] Unclear word.
[60] 'Uncertain about this.' The text has perished here, at the page foot.
[61] The Sandford arms contain boars' heads: see I.159 above, and see *CFH*, 294. The remark is reminiscent of part of Walter Scott's poem, *Marmion*. '…Then was brought in the lusty brawn / By old blue-coated serving-man / Then the grim boar's head frown'd on high / Crested with bays and rosemary.' Sir Walter Scott, *Marmion, A Tale of Flodden Field* (Edinburgh and London, 1808).
[62] Indeed! The sixth year of Edward II was 1312-1313. Perhaps Machell read 1312 as 1612.
[63] 'I am doubtful about this.'
[64] 'Nisi': unless; if not. Machell appears to query whether Morville was a titled lord or was merely lord of the town and manor.
[65] This title has been moved from MS.I.368A.

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 3]

[Parish of Asby]

[I.353][1]

Askeby Parish [Notes]

There belongs to the parish church of Askeby
Askby Winderwath, Askby Coatsforth, Asby Little.

I should have thought that it had taken its denomination from Ashes, it being a place where that sort of wood might formerly abound \ and only now groweth / but I dare not verify such conjecture since I find frequently writt in old evidences not Ashby (as now they write it) but Askeby.

{Magna Askeby} {Catellus Anglicus}
Exchambit terras in ~~veldri~~ \ Magna / Askeby, cum Willielmo filio Willielmi Anglici. s.d. (apud Crak[enthorpe]) vel Askham potius.[2]
Askeby Magna is called Askeby Vetus in an Evidence s.d. (penès Sandford).[3]

{Little Askeby manner; English; Sandford}
Little Askeby is a manner & belong'd formerly to the Englishes; for I finde a deed wherein John, the son of Rob Lengleyiss[4] makes over to Henry de Sandford parson of Croseby Garret his manner of Little Askeby, dated att Sandford 34. of Edward 3. [1360-61]*.

Family of Askebyes
Robert de Askeby 27. Henry 3. [1242-43] è cart antiq. penes Com[t] vel Blenkinsop.[5] Family of Askebyes.†

[Machell's Notes: I.353]

*(May be there were som Sandfords at Sandford then. Sed vide in Askham parish.[6] Wheyther seated there.) Hæ è Ca[r]tis penes Sandford de Askham.[7] Se more of Askeby Super in Apleby St Lawrence sub tit Berewyse family.[8] Sed. 0.[9]
†{!} Query: For a Bounder - gleebe - tythe in kind & prescriptions. For more qu? in the following page, where you meet with this make an q[uery] of Mr Musgrave. What Branch he is – what matches & pedigree. See more over leafe where there is the present state of the parish.
See – also – in my V. Booke of Collections, the Several Inquisitions – where you may learne by whom the Lordships were held of old.

[1] Also numbered p.5.
[2] 'Roger son of William Catullus exchanged lands in Great Askeby with William son of William English. Undated (at Crakenthorp) or rather Askham.'
[3] 'In an evidence without date in the custody of Mr Sandford.'
[4] This unclear word has been altered but undoubtedly refers to the family of L'Engleys or English of Highhead, members of which were connected to the Sandfords of Askham: see *CFH*, 204.
[5] 'From an ancient charter in the possession of the Countess or Blenkinsop.'
[6] 'But see in Askham Parish.' Part 1, Ch.2, Askham, details coats of arms and inscriptions related to the Sandford family.
[7] 'These from deeds in the possession of Sandford of Askham.'
[8] 'See more of Asby above in my section on Appleby St Lawrence under the heading Berewyse [Barwis] family'. See Part 1, Ch.1, Town and Parishes of Appleby, I.231, I.303, III.55.
[9] 'But [found] nothing'.

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 4]

[Parish of Bampton]

[I.369][1]

To Bampton Church doe belong Bampton-Cundale and I thinke part of Smardale & Wasdale if they doe not rather belong to Shap parish.[2] I finde one of the name of Bampton (but without a par[ish]) in a deed sans date, whose family I suppose were seated here then and had their name from the place.

Deeds

Christopher Culwen dyed seised of the manner of Bampton Knipe as of fee in his said manner, held of the King[3] in Capite[4] by Knights Service and the rent of [blank] & 10d per Annum for Cornage to the King at the usuall termes. Servicium faciendum sec[u]tum ad com[item] ded[it] dom[ino] Reg[i]. &c. Which Christofer dyed the 6th of Aprill 14. Henry 7. [1498-99]. To whome his son \ Sir / Thomas succeded. 'Et valet per annum 40li. Et quod Henricus Clifford, miles, asserendo predictum manerium de eo teneri per servicium militare recepit redit et servicium manerij prædicti de prædicto Thoma Culwen filio, sed quo titulo ad tunc ignorabant.'[5]

{John Chapman. Roger Chapman}
8. Ed. 2. [1314-15] John, son of Roger Chapman, exchanged Totum de Tene[me]ntum suum et terram cum pertinentiis in villa de Louth[er] qual with Hugo de Lowther & Margaret, his wife, pro toto tenement[o] terris et prato in Bampton Cundalle vocat[um] le Wrindland.[6] That messuage 7 acres of Land & 3 acres of medow sold to Henry s[on] of Simon. 39. Ed. [2.] [1365-66].

Bampton Cundale. Bampton Patrick.
Knipe Antiently & till the 12. of Henry 7. [1496-97] (à Sandford) dub[ito] tamen An non Gnype antiquis et hic a me falc Script[us].[7]

---

[1] Also numbered p.7.
[2] The church was appropriated to the Abbey of Shap about the year 1170, confirmed to the abbey by Robert de Chauncey, Bishop of Carlisle, in 1263, and by Bishop Ralph de Irton and the Prior and Convent of Carlisle in 1287. The abbot and monks of Shap were to serve the church as hitherto, with two or three of their canons, one of whom was to be presented to the Bishop as vicar, another to be responsible in temporals. They were also to maintain a secular chaplain to hear confessions, etc. John F. Curwen, *The Later Records Relating to North Westmorland or the Barony of Appleby*, CWAAS Record Series 8 (Kendal, 1932), 245-55.
[3] MS: 'Kink'.
[4] 'By the head'. Tenure in capite [in chief] was an ancient feudal tenure whereby a man held lands of the king immediately. It was of two sorts, the one, principal and general, or of the king as the source of all tenure; the other, special and subaltern, or of a particular subject: https://dictionary.thelaw.com/capite/.
[5] 'And it is worth 40li per year. Also he renders that which Henry Clifford, knight, received, claiming that the aforesaid manor is held of him through knight's service, and also that the service of the aforesaid manor is held of the aforesaid Thomas Culwen, son; but by what title till then they did not know.'
[6] 'John, son of Roger Chapman, exchanged all his tenement and land with its appurtenances in the village of Louther with Hugo de Lowther & Margaret, his wife, in equal exchange for the whole tenement, lands and meadowland in Bampton Cundalle, called le Wrindland.'
[7] 'Knipe Antiently & till the 12. of Henry 7. (See Sandford records). I doubt however whether this were not Gnype to the ancients, but here written by me as found.'

{Curwen}
Sir Christofer Curwen, Knight; Ed[ward] Curwen Esq., witness at a deed of S[ale] of one T[enement] in Bampton Skowes,[8] sold to Sir Xt,[9] dated at Thornthwate 1. H. 6. [1422-23].

{Beauchamp of Knype s.d. Morvil}
Patritius the Son of Thomas who was Lord of the Manner of Hepp now Shap: conveyd by a Deede s.d. to John de Morvilla & his heires &c. all his Lands att Knype (Kýnpē) which belongd to Roger de Bellocampus cum omnibus pertinentijs & with all his land on both sides the water of Lowther belonging to the said village excepting the mill 'cum secta sua. Rendendo Inde Annuatim, S$^{c.}$[10] &c. IIII sagittas ferri infra nundinas St Laurentij de Apleby apud manerium meum de Heppe pro omnibus servicijs, salvo forinsæco.'[11]
+ Sigillum Patritii Filii. Thomæ – writ about[12] (penes Mr Sandford}.[13]

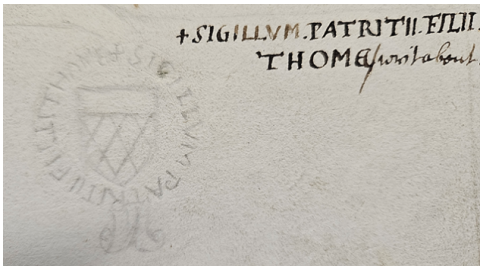


Figure 1.4.1. Pencil drawing. 'SIGILLUM PATRITII FILII'. I.369.

[I.370][14]

[Name of the Parish]

This parish takes its name from the Town of Bampton where the church stands, & worthy remarkd for the birth of Mr Richard Jackson, born near the church at the North Side of it; who was sometime Usher, after Schoolmaster here; whence he remov'd to the free school of Kendal: & from thence for his great ~~renown~~ \ fame / in teaching, was the 1^{t} master chosen to Apleby by Queens College in Oxford after the ellection was confer'd on the College: & the sallary high\ly/ Augmented by many worthy & noble Benefactors once Scollars there. He lyes Buried at Apleby at the East end of the church: ubi vide plura.[15]

[8] Skews.
[9] Sir Christopher Curwen.
[10] Assessments: taxes.
[11] 'Roger de Bellocampus, with all appurtenances & with all his land on both sides the water of Lowther belonging to the said village, excepting the mill with its approach way. Rendering thence annually S$^{c.}$ &c. IIII arrows of iron within the market-days of St Laurentius of Apleby at my manor of Heppe in return for all services, excepting foreign [service].'
[12] + Seal of Patritius, son of Thomas, written about it.
[13] 'The deed is in the possession of Mr Sandford.'
[14] Also numbered p.30.
[15] 'And here see more.' For Richard Jackson see Lionel Budden, 'Some Notes on the History of Appleby Grammar School', *CW2* 39 (1939), 227-61, at 240-1, 261. Jackson was headmaster at Appleby, 1671-1686.

[Machell's Notes: I.370]
A.D. 1693, T. Burneyates, the Oxford Carrier,[16] brought from thence a~~n~~ ~~g~~ muscle with a large pearle in it to Archdeacon Nicholson, which he tooke up there out of the river. Test[ament] W. Nich[olson].[17]

[I.370A]

{Dr Mills Letter}[18]

[Letter from Thomas Machell to Dr John Mill, 20 September 1686.]

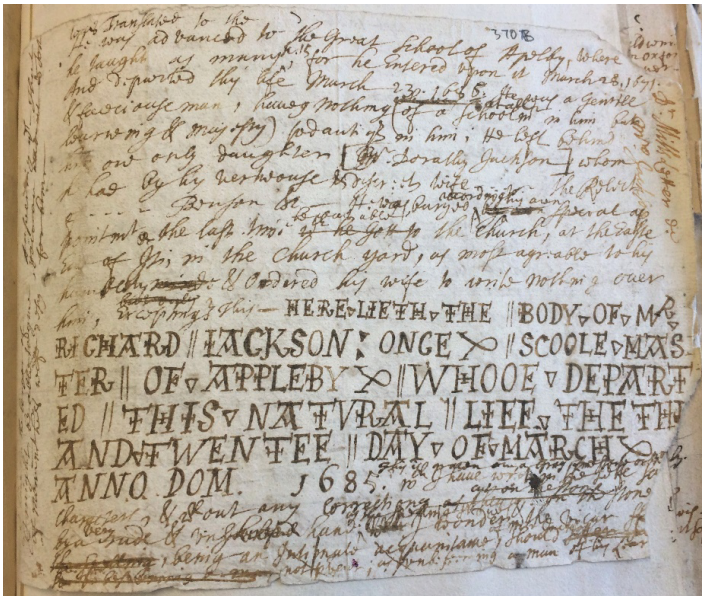


Figure 1.4.2. Thomas Machell to Dr John Mill, St Edmund Hall, Oxford, 20 September 1686. I.370A.

20 Sept. 1686.
{I have bin the longer of answering yours that I might be able to give you an account what sort of monument his wife desi[re]s for him.}
Sir
I have so much regard to the memory of Mr Jackson, that I will not discourage you from your grateful designe of erecting his monument. In order whereunto, leaveing the polite description to yourselfe who can best performe it; I shal only acquaint you – That he was the Son of one Thomas Jackson, a Substancial man once, in the parish of Bampton & County of Westmorland; who, haveing a Soale more large than his purse \ fortunes, / his Son was reduced to such necessity that ~~the same Mr, who~~ he

[16] For Burnyeats, see Machell's correspondence with Dr John Mill in Part 1, Ch.3, Roman Antiquities.
[17] A later addition in different ink. The river is probably the River Lowther at Bampton; mussels were found downstream at Askham: see 1.360. Note that Machell wrote William Nicolson's name as 'Nicholson' twice.
[18] Machell's copy of a letter sent to Dr Mill, Principal of St Edmund Hall Oxford, concerning Richard Jackson.

seemes to have gleaned his Greek & Latin from the Same Sharpe Instructer that Persius, his crow & parret learnd theres.[19]

His fathers 1[t] wife was your own near relation, but he was Son of the 4[th] & last \ wife; / Borne at an house in Bampton Grange on the north side of the church within heareing of the min[ister];[20] & was educated first under one Mr Atkinson; afterwards under old Mr Wilkinson, both of them ~~ministers~~ \ Vicars / and Schoolmasters there; To the latter of which he became Usher, & after his dicease, succeded ~~him~~ as schoolmaster ~~at Bampton free school~~, for about 14 years.
Hence he removed to the Free School of Kendal, where he taught 15 years; & Thence for the Eminence of his learneing \ & modesty, / which was taken notice of in the most famouse university, [I.370B][21]
he \was translated to the / was advanced to the Great School of Apelby, where he taught as many \ Sc. 15 [years] / for he entered upon it March 28, 1671, and departed this life March 23 1685.[22]
He was a Gentill & faeciouse[23] man, having nothing \ ~~which was~~ at all / (of a schoolmaster in him but learneing & majesty) pedantique in him. He left behind him one only daughter (Mistress Dorathy Jackson) whom he had, by his verteouse & discreet wife [blank], the relict of [blank] Benson Esq.

He was buryed \ according / ~~by~~ \ to his / own special appointment the last time ~~when he Gett to~~ \ he was able / the church, at the easte end of it; in the church yard, as most agreable to his ~~humble~~ humblety ~~minde~~. & ordered his wife to write nothing over him \ ~~but only~~ / excepting this:

> HERE LIETH THE BODY OF MR RICHARD || JACKSON: ONCE || SCOOLE MASTER || OF APPLEBY || WHOOE DEPARTED || THIS NATURAL || LIEF THE THREE AND TWENTEE || DAY OF MARCH ANNO DOM. 1685.

This is graven on a Gray lime stone or [through][24] which I have writt in the selfe sa[me] characters, & without any corrections as they are on the stone; \ cut on the stone by a \ very / rude & unskilled hand; \ as the spelling shows; / & I wonder the Vicar, being an intimate acquaintance of Mr Jackson, should not prevent [it] as unbeseeming a man of his Learning.[25]

---

[19] The reference is probably to the Roman satirist Persius, who was widely read in the 17th century, see Shadi Bartsch, *Persius, A Study in Food, Philosophy, and The Figural* (Chicago, 2015). Machell was clearly thinking of the prologue to Persius's satires:

> What teaches the parrot to squawk: 'Hello!'
> And urges the magpie to try human speech?
> It's that master of arts, and dispenser of skills,
> Hunger, expert at trying out sounds nature denies.
> For if there's the gleam of a hope of crafty gain,
> You'll hear crow-poets and magpie-poetesses
> Singing in praise of Pegaseian nectar.

Here, Persius is saying that, as a lowly, plain-talking speaker of truths, he has learnt his craft by necessity through hunger, i.e. singing for his supper. His skills come from wily, native cunning, like an animal that mimics human speech for food. So, the quotation appears to fit Thomas Jackson's son well.

[20] MS: 'Borne at an house \ in Bampton Grange ~~it within heareing of \ the church~~ / on the north side ~~of It~~ of the church within heareing of the min.'

[21] The reverse of I.370A.

[22] MS '168~~6~~5.'

[23] 'Facetious'. Of style, manners, etc.: polished, elegant, agreeable [now obsolete]. *OED*.

[24] Editorial suggestion; the word has perished.

[25] MS: '& / I wonder the Vicar f[perished] ~~the spelling~~, being an intimate acquaintance \ of Mr Jackson, / should ~~suffer Jackson so unbeseeming a man~~ not prevent; as unbeseeming a man of his Lear'.

{If you do resolve to make him a monument, there is one Inconvenience that I must acquaint you with; It is like to be exposssd, as he \ him[self] / was, to Stormes & Tempests, & pass the Censure &c. for it must be on the outside the church.}[26]

[26] Dr Mill, principal of St Edmund Hall, Oxford, showed interest in Richard Jackson because Mill was born in Hardendale in Shap Parish, the son of Thomas Mill (born c.1617-19, died c.1707), a weaver. When the family moved to High Knipe in Bampton parish, Mill was educated at Bampton School. See S. Handley, 'Mill, John (1644/5–1707), Church of England clergyman and college head'. *ODNB*.

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 5]

[I.743]

Collections \ for / Barton Parish in the Westward

[I.654, I.654A]

[Machell's Draft Plan and Queries relating to Barton]
1. Distance.
2. Description– what sort of Building – whence stone, slate &c.
3. Armes \ &c / in it.[1]
4. Scite – How wooded? – How watered? Trees fish fowle.
Other rarityes; how descent.
5. The Names of places & Things remarq.: dem[esne] – field – com[mon].
6. The Descent.
7. The Pedegree.

Query – distance of the church from Penrith Church, Askham, Browham, Clifton, Lowther, Gresmere, Bampton, Kendal. & their bear[ing] also from the chappels of Martindale & Patterdale.

Barton Church standeth from
Penrith Church – S by W – 3 miles.
Browham Church alis Ninechurch – W. 5 miles.
Clifton Church – N.W – 3 miles.
Lowther Church & Askham \ Church / N.N.W. 3 miles.
Bampton Church. N. – 4 miles.
Kendal Church – N. by N. – 18 miles.
Gresmere Church in Kendal – N.E. – 16 miles.
{ex inform [Blank] Pearson Medicinae Profess. et Tho. Webstar, Senescal Curiae de Barton.}[2]

Martindale Chapel in this parish – N. by E. 5 miles.}
Patterdayle Chapel infra Barton – E. by N. 9 miles.} I take them both to lye in one line. TM.[3]

! ! ! Where – Lowther drowneth/looseth it selfe in Emote.

N.B. So many families of which free [blank] the rest arbitrary all holding of [blank] Hall being the manner house – which [I must] describe; to which they doe pay.

{See the Bounder in Gressmer paper, more correct.}

[I.688]

A Free School in the high road from Penrith (I thinke ¾ W. ab Ecclesia, built as appeareth by these fig[ures] over the doer in 1649 – {query: if notes; q. my visit.}

Sth East from the church about a bow shot is a good stone house with a court before it; which doth belong to Theodore Sisson: a Ratable freehold.[4]
Above that Southwards ½ a mile from the church, is ~~Houses~~ a place calld Celron[5] {Celron in Low Winder} which only hath 2 \ in / dwelling Houses. And yet somwhat higher a mile from the Church, stands the Hamlets of Winder – Both so calld because of their high & windy location; which are distinguished by High & Low becase tho both stand very High – High Winder is in the more lofty place

[1] Machell originally ordered point 4 before point 3, but then placed an arrow between them to redress the error.
[2] 'Information given by […] Pearson, Professor of Medicine, and Thomas Webster, Steward of the Manor of Barton.'
[3] Text refers to Martindale and Patterdale chapels.
[4] The 'good stone house' is Kirkbarrow (formerly called Barton Kirk). The Sissons sold it to Simpson of Carleton Hall, Penrith, c.1759: *AWL*, 272.
[5] Celleron.

[Barton Parish]

[I.661]

[Barony]
Barton is vulgarly called a Barony, & so it is writ in their Court Rolls* wherein are first called Tenentes manerijs de Barton Infra Baroniam de Barton:[6] 2. Tenentes ~~infra~~ manerijs de Martindale et Fusedale infra Baroniam praedicta.[7] 3. Tenentes manerijs de Patterdale et forestæ de Grisdale infra Baroniam praedicta,[8] and there are 3 Juries, & a grand Inquest, when they keep their Courtes, which are both Leet & Baron†. Yet I am not satisfyed whether it be not called so only from Baron Dakers holding these m[anors] under him? Hoever, the present Lord thereof, the Earle of Sussex. takes waif & stray[9] in al the said Libertyes, excepting in private Lords demaines.[10]

[Machell's Notes: I.661]

*{a T. Webster Senesc.}[11]
†{?}

[I.662]

{Extent}
This parish extends it selfe in length from the place where Emote & Lowther meet, which is ~~at~~ the NE. point, to the Top of Cammerton Builds[12] in Kirkston in the S.W. to the number of 13 or 14 miles; all along by the Bankes of Emote, the Great Lake of Ulswater & several rills which power themselves until they feed that great Body – And one halfe of the Parish is replennishd with wood to the great admiration of the beholder; the other with rugged and rocky mountaines to the jaless[13] astonishment of the beholder, where the people [in a] very large sense live, as it were, in another world, being (but for the water that invites men up in summertime) a desert & unfrequented place (I had almost call'd it an inaccessible place) and therefore abounding with Foxes & Wild Cats (near as big as they are); with Badgers & Martes; Goates & Great Staggs – as hereafter shal be sheone; And yet even here has bin produced men of prodigious parts & prety.[14]

{Division} {Constablewick}
The parish is divided for the better \ execution of civil affairs / into 5 or 6 Constablewicks – Sc. 1. Emote-bridge. 2. Yanwath. 3. Sockbridge with Tyrrel, Thorp & Celron & (part of Mr Davis's) High Winder.[15] 4.

---

[6] 'Tenants of the Manor of Barton within the Barony of Barton.'
[7] '2. Tenants of the Manor of Martindale and Fusedale within the aforesaid Barony.' Here, a margin comment notes, 'a fusil spindle'. The word is from Old French 'fusel', ultimately from Latin fūsus: spindle; in heraldry the heraldic lozenge originally represented by a spindle covered with tow for spinning. Presumably, Machell was referring to the meaning of the place-name, 'Fusedale'.
[8] '3. Tenants of the manor of Patterdale and Forest of Grisdale within the aforesaid Barony.'
[9] See the English Glossary.
[10] This is repeated, with the addition of a question mark, on MS.I.669: '{?} Barton is said to be a Barony, de quo quære? and so by consequence to have VIII? manners as members of it – However tis \ for / certane \ affirmed / that my Lord of Sussex takes waife & stray all over the Barony excepting in Private Lords Demaines.'
[11] The end of the line is obscured by the binding but the translation is probably, 'as said by Thomas Webster, steward'.
[12] Camerton Bields.
[13] Presumably, 'jealous'.
[14] MS: '& sever Rills, which \ power ~~into it &~~ themselves, ~~until It~~ / feed that great Body – ~~which has excellent Gravels near to the Shoare~~ \ And / One halfe ~~there~~ of the Parish ~~whereof~~ is replennishd with wood to the great ~~satisfaction~~ \ admiration of the beholder / the other \ with rugged and Rocky /mountaines to the jaless astonishment \ of the beholder / where the people \ who are of a very large ~~in a wilderness desert~~ sense / live as it were ~~divided from~~ in another world ~~the rest of mankind in another world and are generally of a large sense in an~~ being (but for the water that invites ~~people up~~ \ men up / in summertime) \ a~~n~~ desert & / unfrequented place. ~~Part of the country. I had almost call'd it an inaccessible place.~~ and therefore abounding with \ foxes & / wild cats near as big as they are) \ with / Badgers, ~~& goates~~ \ & / Martes; Goates & Great Staggs – as hereafter shal be sheone; ~~yet it hath produced more~~ \ And / yet even here has bin produced men of Incredible\ prodigious / parts & prety.' Because much of this passage has been altered and struck through, the transcription is occasionally imprecise.
[15] MS: 'The parish is divided for~~ Civil Government~~ \ the better / execution of ~~National Laws~~ \ Civil affairs / into \ 5 or / 6 Constablewicks – Sc. 1. ~~Yanwath~~ Emote-bridge. 2. Yanwath. 3. Sockbridge with ~~its hamlets of~~ Tyrrel Thorp & {Celron & (part of Mr Davis's)} ~~and~~ High Winder. ~~& Celliron~~;'

High Barton, which \ also / includes ~~Barton &~~ Powley. 5. Martindale. 6. Hartsop & Patterdale. And conteineth in it 6 or 7 manners.

{Manners}
{Sc. Manner 1. Yanewath Manner. 2. Sockbridge Manner (which are in the parish but not in the Barony) 3. Barton Manner. 4. Martindale Manner. 5. Hartsop Manner. 6. Patterdale; query 7. of Winder.}

And into these Manners.
1. Barton alias High Barton, not for distinction from any other ~~part~~ towne \ or place of that name with / in the parish, but only because it stands above (or Higher than) the church ~~or~~ more up the water*, & Extends it self, ~~as far by land as the rill calld~~ westward as far by land as the Rill called Swarthbeck which divides it from Martindale; and by water it continueth in it from the church to [Blank].[16] I can not say properly (tho the name importes \ as much / it) that there is such a Towne ~~there~~ within the manner \ as Barton; / nor indeed anything like \ to a town or / a village \ in it / excepting Pooley; all

[Machell's Notes: I.662]

*(Jo: Patteson).
If High Barton be not all above Pooley, Low Barton well beneath it? Query: if any part of the manners of Barton below the church.

[I.664]

the Rest being straggling[17] Houses, and therefore you may with justly reason wonder why this manner is called Barton, & how \ it / cometh to give name to the church, to a parke near Pooley \ calld Barton Parke, / and to [the] whol parish – of which I shal briefly give thus Conjecture*.

[Machell's Notes: I.664]

*{See on the account. See on the other side.}

[I.670]

For we have moreover at the East End ~~of it~~ \ thereof / where the water\ Rill / run\neth / out out of the Ditches ~~in a little rill~~ a Nab of Ulswater call'd the, Hau-Bar – which ~~showes~~ \ bespeakes / It the scite of the Manner House or Hall as wee call them. And the parke near adjacent \ on the S. Side of it* / confirmes the same \ this conjecture / and seems to have bin contiguouse to it; tho now divided by a Close or 2, & the Highway to Martendale.[18]

{ratio nominis}[19]
And this may help to finde out the reason why this parke & parish is called Barton – namely from the word Bar; which signifyes a strong Gate or Entrance with \ a / Ditche and drawbridge; as the great gates at Yorke are all called Barrs; and so the houses near this Strong Barr (though scattered and dispersd \ abroad / here & there) might be called Bar-town – query: opidum ad Barram[20] {which the Greekes well express by the word ἔπαυλις i.e. ad ~~in Greeke~~[21] ad atrium}[22] \ for our English word Town, / the Towne or Village near the Hall Barr.

[**Barton Church**]

Thus Haveing found out – formd o[u]r reasons for the name of the parish \ of Barr-Towne {or Barton} / let us goe to the Church – which is \ a very / large, but Low Building, haveing a Square plane Batled Steple ~~short & thick~~ with 2 Bells ~~in it~~ \ therein / in the midle of the Ile & 2 Rowes of Pillers on ~~the In Side~~ \ either Side of the Body] / which is in Length from the W. End to the Arch of the quier, about 27 yards, & \ the

[16] MS: 'Swarthbeck which partes \ divides / it from Martindale; ~~and up~~ \ and / [~~up the lake as far as Patterdale~~ \ by water. and continueth It from the church to [Blank].'
[17] MS: 'Strangling.'
[18] The following sentence (not transcribed), written in smaller handwriting in different ink, appears to be an addition, but a blot covers most of the text. It begins with the words, 'out of which.'
[19] 'Reason for the place-name.'
[20] 'Town at the bar.'
[21] There is an illegible scored-through word here.
[22] 'Which the Greeks well express by the word steading or courtyard.'

inside / The Quire ~~it~~ 7.[23]

	Body	Quire
length	27	7
breadth	14	6

In all, XXXIV, & Broad in the Body about 14, \ in / The Quire 6 – at the North Side of the great quier is a porch which belongeth, ~~now to the Lowthers of~~ to Sockbridge \ hall / ~~but formerly to the~~ the Lancasters there / which was built I doubt not by one of \ the Lancasters / of that name who who builded the Tower & Hall at Sockbridge,[24] there being the very same sort of window in that & in this.[25]

[Machell's Notes I.670]

*(being the Chiefe part of the Demane?)

[I.660]

{1. The Patrone}
The Patrone of this Parish is Sir John Lowther of Sockbridge Baronet – who injoyes ⅔ of the wool & lamb[26] and Easter Boke[27] in Hartsop, Sockbridge, Yeanwath & Bridge and hath the tyth corne of Sockbridge also*. Mr Dawes of Barton Kirk has ⅔ of Wooll and Lamb & Easter Reckonings in the part calld High Barton, which was purchased (with the House & Lands called Barton Kirk) by Dr Dawes of one of the Hudsons. Mr Davyes of Winder[28] has ⅔ of the Martindale Wool, Lamb & Easter Booke. The Vicar the Rest [Blank] † has 2 partes of the wooll & Lamb & Easter Boke; & the Reader ~~of~~ at a chappel[29] which they have there, has the other 3rd part for which he payes as an acknowledgement to the Vicar of Barton 4li per Annum; all which deductions do prick very sore on the parsons side‡.[30]

Rate
Barton is a Vicaridge Rated in the First Fruits Office at 11li:1s: 0. Payeth Tenths to the King 1li: 2s: 1qa,[31] and to the Bishop for Procurations & Synnodals [blank]. It ~~is said at first to have bin~~ \ was / appropriated to the Prior & Convent of St James de Carta, in the Diocess of Yorke,[32] in 1318 – by Grant of John Halton Bishop of Carleol⸸; But the Impropriation is ~~in several persons~~ \ in Sir John Lowther of Sockbridge Baronet, & Mr ~~Tho~~ Daws of Barton Kirk I thinke.[33] / And the Vicary it selfe is parted into 3 several Cantons \ if [I] may so call them / whereof the Incumbent has onely one third, if he have so much; ~~the Remainder being in laymens hands~~. I speake not only of Wool & Lamb &c. but even of the Easter Booke it selfe; which pricketh sore on the parsons side.

[The Church]
{The Church ~~as I~~ is dedicated to St Michael the Archangel, a low but Large Building haveing 2 rows of pillars in the body of it; and 2 Iles or allyes extending to the flankes of the Chancel, & lookeing into it under 2 or 3

[23] This passage is difficult to read as the ink has bled heavily from the reverse side of the page.
[24] A margin comment, partly perished, gives similar information: '{and who may seem to have had a great hand in building or repairing the …}'
[25] Some of this passage, particularly the margin comment, has perished.
[26] MS: 'The Patrone: The Patrone of this Parish is Sir John Lowther of Sockbridge Baronet – The Patrone is Sir John Lowther of Sockbridge; ~~whose father Sir Christopher who~~ Injoyes ⅔ of the wool & lamb'. A stray note on MS I.665 also refers to this: '+ who were also \ joynt / Patrones. presenting by Turnes: But now the Patronage is wholly & solely in Sir John Lowther – who also injoyes ~~some repar~~ ⅔ of the wool & Lamb & Easter Booke, in [blank]'.
[27] Easter Book: see the English Glossary.
[28] Winder Hall. See CAS(C), D/Hud/7/4 for Davies and Thomas Dawes of Barton Kirk (1730s).
[29] Martindale Old Church.
[30] MS.I.381 contains a later note on the patron: 'The church is St Michael as they say. Sir John of Sockbridge now sole patron. but formerly belonged to Daws \ de Barton Kirke / in his course \ or turne / as (joynt) impropriators \ with him.'
[31] 1¼ d. Tenths amounted to £1 2s 1¼ d. For the meaning of 'First Fruits and Tenths', see the English Glossary.
[32] In Warter, E. Yorks.
[33] Lancelot Dawes lived at Barton Kirk, now Kirkbarrow, on the main Penrith-Pooley Bridge road: see Hyde & Pevsner, 145. Rev. Dr Lancelot Dawes (1580-1654) MA, DD: Queen's College Oxon; vicar of Barton 1608-54; rector of Asby 1618-54; prebendary of Carlisle Cathedral 1619-54; canon 1619-54). CCED; see also Weston, *Carlisle Cathedral History*, 145. Dawes was also co-founder of Barton Grammar School, with Gerard Langbaine, and Provost of Queen's College, Oxford. See A. Bickley & S. Wright, 'Dawes, Lancelot, Church of England clergyman'. *ODNB*.

arches – And in the midle betwixt the body & Quier \ Chancel / is a fair Stone Tower but with low flat Batlements, \ on the outside / & uncomly Arches on the inside: but for which it might be easily converted into…[34]

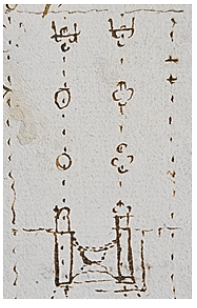


Figure 1.5.1. Margin sketch plan of Barton Church (1.) with tower and interior arches. I.660.

[Machell's Notes: I.660]

*{?}
†{?}
‡{Consider if this may not better be referrd to the Account of the several Townships.}
⸸è Registo Halton penes Episcopum.[35]

[I.379]

Barton Kirk Without: [The Porch]
1. Over the porch. a coate which I take to be 3 bucks heads cab.[36] This I take to be the Bartons, who in all probability were formerly Lords of Barton, whence they tooke the Srname de Barton*.

[Machell's Notes: I.379]

*But query, for I finde they belong to Hartsop-hall, which is in the S. West point of this parish {6[0] Stephen 1141. 1151.}[37]

[I.671A]

This porch has an E. window, the same worke which Sockbridge had over the church porch, which is an addition but very ancient. On a through before the church porch

ANO DOMINI 1615 ON
THE XVII DAY OF JVLY
WAS THE BODY OF
STEVEN SISSON OF CEL
RON BURYED HERE[38]

[34] Approximately three words at the page foot are illegible.
[35] 'See Halton's Register in the custody of the bishop.' MS.I.654A contains more on this source: 'See the Appropriation by John Bishop of Karliol to the Priory & Convent of the monastery St James de Wartera in the Diocess of Yorke for keeping poore Travaillers out of all nations & the loss then sustaind by the Scotch invasion provided they allow a 3r part to a Vicar. AD 1318. They have a pension out of Clifton Church Askham. Haltons K. Reg. 17, 212, 224. 29 also.'
[36] 'Caboched/cabossed': trunked; no part of neck visible, Smith, *Place-Names*, 67.
[37] King Stephen's 6th regnal year was 1140-41.
[38] 'Celleron'. Members of the Sisson family appear to have put down roots in Westmorland when Cuthbert Sisson (d.1609) bought Kirkbarrow from Lord and Lady Arundel in 1583, see *CFH*, 308-09, but there is no mention of Steven Sisson in this entry, nor in Bellasis, *Westmorland Church Notes*, which lists Sisson inscriptions at Barton from 1758-1860, see 97.

[I.671]

Arms & Monuments[39]

The Coates of Armes, ~~which I met with~~ in and about the church are these –

1. Over the porch, which has bin added since the church ~~in stone~~ was builded, but is very Ancient

[I.673]

Over the Portch, on the outside in stone



Figure 1.5.2. 'Over the Portch on the outside in Stone'. I.673.

[I.671]

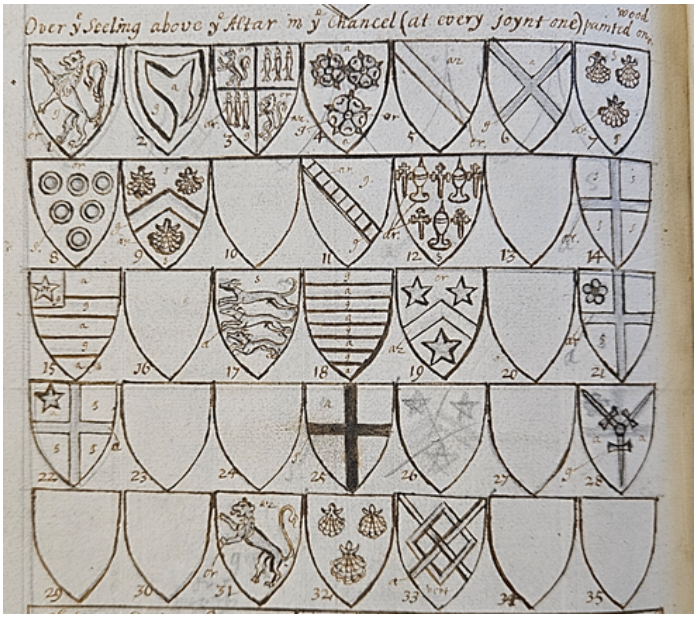


Figure 1.5.3. Chancel Ceiling, Barton Church. 1.671.

[39] The text on Barton Church, below, is a 'fair copy' made by Machell after working on two other drafts (I.379-I.381), which he then scored through. In essence, these drafts are almost the same as the 'fair copy', so have not been transcribed, apart from information relating to the porch (I.379).

Over the Altar upon the sieling of it –
[Second row, second from left] Piercy. Earle of Northumberland quartering Lucy.

[I.671A]

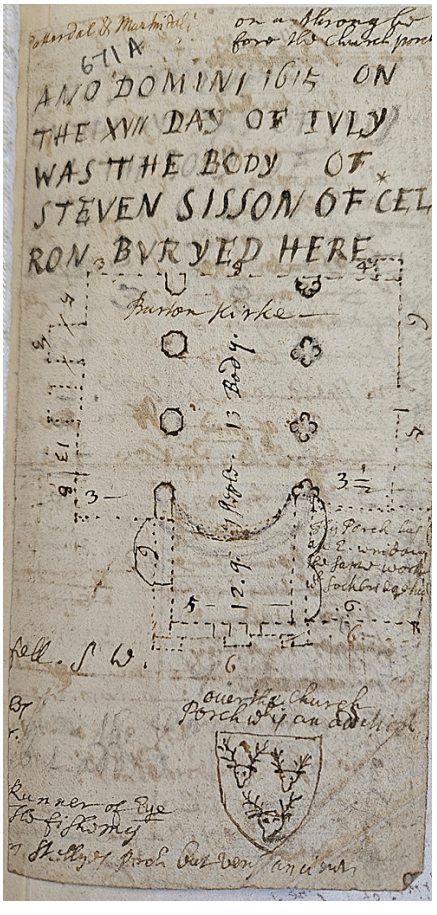


Figure 1.5.4. A measured plan of Barton Church (2.), with the west end at the top, the east end at the foot and the steeple in the centre. I. 671A.

[Machell's Notes: I.671B]
Qu. of Mr Fletcher for a Greek epitaph which was som time in Barton Kirk of Dr Daws.[40]

[I.673]
Over the Seeling above the Altar in the Chancel (at every joynt one) painted on wood.

Those on the right hand (or north side of the quier) are not here in their right scituation; for they stand on the seeling with their bases downwards & their chiefs erected towards the ridge. Those in the midle are in their right position & stand upon the ridge from E. to W., as in the most noble & most honourable place. Those on the left hand (or south-side of the quier) are designedly misplaced here also, for they stand on the seeling with their points downwards toward the wall, and their heads erected towa\rds / the ridge.

[40] Lancelot Dawes: see below. MS.I.668 also refers to a 'Qu[ery] of Lawyer Fletcher for Greek Epit.'

a: The single Coate may import that som of the [blank] to whom it belonged builded the Portch; which lookes very ancient, tho it be an additional \ piece of building / as appears by the casmes betwixt it and the church. The other may seem to be plac'd on the seeling for Ornament Sake, som of them being the Armes of such familyes as had lands in the Parish: & the rest of Nobility & Gentrie related unto them, or much honoured by them; who might perhaps also contribute somewhat to the finishing of it. And I have marked them out with figures, in lineal order, for the Readers advantage; without any regard to dignity or hon[ou]r.

1. Earle of Arundel	8. Lowther	19. Crakenthorp
2. Threlkeld	9.	21. Moresby
3. Piercy E. of Northumberland	11.	22. Orpheur
Quartering Lucy.	12.	25.
4.	14.	28.
5.	15. Lancaster	31.
6.	17. Machel	32. Lord Daker*
7. Strickland	18.	33. Salkeld

The rest quite lost & many of \ the others / defaced.[41]

[Machell's Notes: I.693A]

*{Penes J. Tho. p.48. p.32.}
Lord Daker of the North – quarterly. 1. 9. 3 escallops Argent. 2 chequie Or & Gules.
Lord Daker of the South – beares Azure 6 Lyons Rampant with cauds inflexed Argent.
P.32 at – Lib. oblong. Armor[ial] penes Mr Jo. Thwates de Apleby.[42]
[P.]44. Lord Scayles bears Gules 6 Escallops Argent 3.2.1.

[I.674]

Inscriptions on gravestones within the Chancel

[1] HERE lyes the Body of Mary Dudley daughter / to Christopher Dudley Esq*. and to Agnes / Dudley his wife; who dyed of the Age of 2 years / and was interred October. 28. 1629†.

A Chronograme
Under this stone although her Body lyes –
Yet doth Her Soule sore-up above the Skies.

[2] In the midle near the Altar steps. {All in Capitals.}
HERE lyeth the Body of / Lancelot Daws M[aste]r of Arts / Eldest son of Lancelot / Daws Doctor in Divinity: / Who was maryed to / Mary Whelpdale daughter to Mr William / Whelpdale of Penrith,[43] / & was here interr'd the 9th /day of May in the 35th year / of his Age. / 1653.[44]

[3] On the other Side of the Quier. {All in Capitals.}
Here lyeth the Body of Daniel / the son of Daniel Fleming / of Skerwoth in the County / of Cumberland Gent. who / dyed the 23 of January / 1657. being in age about 37 years.

[4] Upon a Brass plate, on the North Side of the East-window. {In large Italian.}

Hic jacet Francisca Daws filia / Thomae Flecher de Strickland Armigeri / natu maxima, perquam charissima quidem / Et perdilecta Uxor Lanceloti Daws de / Barton-Kirke Generosi. Quae huic mundo / Spe multò melioris, vicessimo tertio Februarij valedixit; Año / Etatis suæ XXIII. Annoque Domini 1673.[45]

[41] Much of the information on this page also exists in draft form: see MS.I.725E.
[42] [Machell's] 'Oblong book. Armorial in the custody of John Thwates of Appleby.'
[43] William Whelpdale, 1576-1652. See Michael A. Mullett, *A New History of Penrith III: Penrith in the Stuart Century 1603-1714* (Carlisle, 2018), 27, 31, 144.
[44] William Nicolson recorded the same data during his visit to Barton church in 1703, Nicolson, *Misc. Accts*, 124.
[45] 'Here lies Frances Dawes, daughter of Thomas Fletcher of Strickland Esquire; she was his eldest daughter and exceeding dear to him, / and beloved wife of Lancelot Daws of Barton Kirke, gentleman; who bade farewell to this

Under this Stone (Reader) Interr'd doth lye
beauty, & vertue's true Epitomy.
At her appearance the Noone-Sun
blush'd and Shrunke-in, 'cause quite out don.
In her Concenter'd did all graces dwell
God pluck'd my Rose that he might take a smel‡
Ile say noe more: But weeping wish I may
Soone with thy dear Chaste ashes com to Lay.

Sic efflevit maritus.[46]
Phineas Briggs – Eborac. Sculps.[47]

[Machell's Notes: I.674]
*Dudley: A lib. Armorial oblong p.102. penes Mr Thwates de Appelby.[48]
†{It should be all in capital letters like of first word. These stroakes /// shew the length of each line.}
‡This expression in reference to God I do not approve of; It seems too irreverent; might it not better be apply'd to death thus – Death pluck'd my Rose onely to take a smell.

[I.675]

Arms & Monumental Inscriptions at Barton Church



Figure 1.5.5. Arms at Barton Church. I. 675.

1. The first is Lancasters Arms inversed ex incuria opificis.[49] They are cut in stone on the Southside of the West-End window; & opposite to them on the other side of it, is an Inscription of close-written characters, which I cannot well reade but guess it to be 'Johes Lancaster'.[50]

world in the hope of a far better one, in the year of her age 23, and in the year of Our Lord 1673.' For Thomas Strickland, lawyer, see I.678.
[46] 'Thus wept her husband'.
[47] 'Phineas Briggs, York, sculpted this.'
[48] 'From an oversized armorial book in the possession of Mr Thwates of Appleby.' MS.I.742 gives the Dudley coat of arms and its source: '{Lord Dudley beares. Argent a Lyon Rampant with his Caud reflexed Vert langued & armed Gules. L. Arm. Pene J. Th. p.63.}'
[49] 'Inversed due to the carelessness of the painter.'
[50] See also I.381.

2. The Second is Lancasters Arms on a Grave-Stone which lyes near the Pulpit on the Southside of the Body of the Church. There is in the midle of the saide Stone a Cross floorye[51] or Rose and on the left side the fashon of Sword; much like unto that which I have described in Ormside-Church and therefore purposely omitt it here.[52] It hath also had an Inscription about it, in large Text Letters, but so much worne out that I can not read them.

3. The third is Stapleton impaleing a defaced coate.

4. The Fourth is Lancaster. They are both placed together towards the East end of the South-Ile, or Alley, under the Springer at the East-end of the old flat Arch which lookes into the Chancel: opposite to which in the midle of it lyeth a Gravestone with a fillet of Brass inscribed as followeth: Here lyeth William Lancaster. Son of Xtofer. On whose soul Jesu have mercy.[53]

5. The Fifth is Lancaster, placed bewixt 2 other blanke Scutchions, just at the Capital of that Demi-octagonal Pillaster or Column which adjoyneth the East-end-wall of the Chancel & supporteth the later but more lofty Arch of Lancasters Quier.

6, 7. The Sixth & Seventh are Lancasters agane, under each Springer of the old flat Arch on the S Side the Chancel, & at the E. end of the S[ou]th Ile; which has bin divided into 2 quiers, in the lower of which, now belonging to Winder, is a monument or chest of white Stone: haveing on the West-end of it –

8. W.D., for William Davyes,[54] who was buryed here in 1674.[55]

[I.379]

Lancasters Quire

In the sealeing over the Aultar are Severall C[oats] of Arms[56] many whereof are defaced, but those that appeare are as followeth:

In the midle close to the window at the joynt, an Escutchion Argent with 3 Roses in [pile][57] Gules. Seeded Or. [That] which is to the North Side is 4^{rly}: 1. Or, a Lyon rampant Az[ure] ~~or Vert~~. 2. Gules 3 fishes salient, i.e. palewise Argent. This I take to be Piercy Earl of Northumberland quartering Lucy.[58] The 3^{d} is Argent a Manch Gules \ Threlkeld. / On the South the quarter is lost. The 2nd Argent a saltier Gules. 3^{d} Sable 3 Escallops in pale Argent (Strikland?).

On the 2nd rale. in the centere – Gules a Bend gobonated Argent and Gules. 2. [Blank] 3. Sable ~~a salt[ier]~~ [chevron][59] Gules betwen 3 Escal[lops] Argent. 4th. Or 6 Annulets Sable \ Lowther. / South side. 1. Sable 2 cups betwene 3 [daggers][60] Argent.

[Machell's Notes: I.379]

*But query, for I finde they belong to Hartsop-hall, which is in the S. West point of this parish.[61]

[51] Fleury.
[52] See I.646B, 648, 649.
[53] No dates are given, but Nicolson and Burn contend that this William Lancaster was the father of Lancelot Lancaster, fl. 33 Henry VIII [1541-42]. See *N&BI*, 401, 405. 'On whose soul Jesu have mercy', is thought to have been a particularly Roman Catholic phrase at this time: see Michael Mullett, *A New History of Penrith II: Penrith under the Tudors* (Carlisle, 2017), 42-3.
[54] MS: 'Stone: with {Haveing on the West-end of it. W. D. for} 8. W.D., for William Davyes,'
[55] See *N&BI*, 405.
[56] MS: '~~On the n. side is Lanc. quire~~. In the sealeing over the Aultar are Severall C[oats] of Arms.'
[57] Here, Machell has drawn an inverted triangle.
[58] MS: 'this I take to be ~~be Dudley and Browham~~ {Piercy Earl of Northumberland, quartering Lucy.'}
[59] This is represented in the MS by an inverted V.
[60] Here, Machell has drawn a dagger.
[61] In the margin here, is a date: {6^{0} Stephen 1141.1151.}

[I.380]

5th & 6th gone.
8. On the 3d Rale. The centere Barre of 8 Gules & Argent. N[orth] 1. 2. 3 gon. On the south – 1. Or a \ [chevron][62] / between 3 mullets ~~Sable~~ vel.[63] Azure \ Crak[enthorpe] / 2. [Blank] 3. Sable a † with a cinquefoyle in dexter part Argent.

9. On the 4th rale (the cent[re]?) Argent a † Sable. N[ote] 1. f. from it [Blank]. 2. 3: gon. fret.[64] Sth side 1. gon. 2. [Blank] 3. Argent? 3 daggers Gules \ Stapleton. /

10. On the 5 rale are remaineing 4 Escutchions but I can make nothing of them.

11. Note Lancasters quire & Ile. On the North Side the Chancell & Church. Upon the piller next the East wall 3 Escutchions and upon that in the midle ~~whereof~~ \ the other / 2 are blanke. Upon a demis octagonal column are 3 Escut[ch]ions, 2 of them Blanke as at fig. the 15. – above the Altar. But on the 3rd is Lancasters armes.

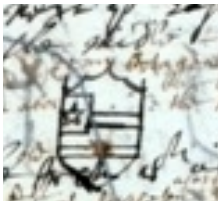


Figure 1.5.6. Lancaster Arms. I.380.

12. Under the \ old / Arch which is at the Low End of the Quire \ nearer the Screen & directly opposed the Lancasters quier on the S. side / are 2 Escutchions. The 1t is Stapleton \ as at f:28* / Impaleing a blanke or defaced Coat; & the Second is Lancaster as before. These 2 are at the \ E[ast] / springer of the great old Arch, which as it seemeth had bin Lancasters quier before the other was added to it.



Figure 1.5.7. Coats of arms, low end of the quire. I.380.

The 1t is Stapleton, peradventure impaleing Lancaster. The 2 is Lancaster. viz. Argent 2 Barrs with a ~~quarter~~ \ ca[n]ton / Gules charged with a mullet Or.

13. On a through in the Ile opposite to the great Arch in text Letters:

Here lyeth \ William Lancaster son of / Xtofer on whose Soule Jesu have mercy.[65]

[62] This is represented in the MS by an inverted V.
[63] 'or'.
[64] Here, Machell has drawn a fret symbol.
[65] See no.4, above.



Figure 1.5.8. Sketch of the 'through' at number 13. I.380.

South Quire.

14. At each end the Arch, Lancasters Arms. In it is a Tombe or Through of whyte Stone, lately erected for Mr William Davyes of Winder, son to one of the Doctors \ Daws / Daughters and one \ Will / Davyes – upon the West End thereof.[66]

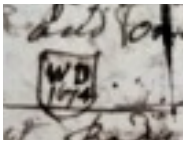


Figure 1.5.9. Barton Church: 'W.D. 1674'. I.380.

15. On the South Side, in the Body near to the pulpit a grave stone with crosse rose. Lancasters Armes on the right & a great Sword on the left side therof as sword & shield: and something about that stone in old great text but so defaced that I cannot read it.[67]

[Machell's Notes: I.380]

*N.B. 28. The Lancasters Armes being upon the pillers & other partes of the Church doe seeme to bespeak them the builders of it {or at the least noble Benefactor in the alteration and repareing of it.}

[I.381]

16. In the west window stone worke, on the Right side (1[t] south) Lancasters Armes inversed – on the other side the name of [Blank] in close {characters?}[68] which I cannot read: maybe John Lancaster.[69]

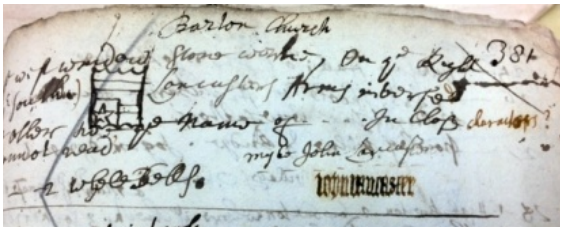


Figure 1.5.10. Small sketches: 'Maybe John Lancaster'. I.381.

[I.373][70]

16. of King James, Lancelot Lancaster of Sockbridge Esq. TB. Vixit 16. of Jac [1618-1619]. He maryed Frances Tankard eldest d[aughter] to T. Tankard de [Blank] in Yorkshire; Sister to Eliz. Blenk[insop] & had no Isue so that the Estate came to Xter Lancaster of Creaktrees Justice of Peace, his brothers son, who tooke to wife Eliz. the d[aughter] of Tho. Tankard Son of Thomas T. by whome he had noe Isue male but severall daughters.

1. Frances m[arried] to Sir Xtoper Lowther Baronett de St Bees & Whitehaven. who payd the other sisters portions & had the Estate. & Hartsop allso.

---

[66] There follows a shield with 'WD 1674' written upon it.
[67] MS: 'that it cannot be read it.'
[68] 'Characters' is written in the margin in different ink, with a question mark after it, suggesting a later correction.
[69] See also I.675.
[70] Also paginated p.9.

2. Eliz. m[arried] to William Hoton de Penrith & Gale.
3. Barbarie m[arried] to One Davyes of Winder
4. Mary m. to [Blank] Hymor de [Blank] Cumberland.

[I.381]

{[Roger de] Lancaster, Emoth}
I find one Lancaster de Emoth*. 6. Edward 4^{t} [1466-1467] – Roger de Lancaster – Brother to Willielmus, last Baron of Kendal by the halfe Blood; for he stiles him his brother in his grant to the Monks of Furness, being a witness thereto. [He] held the manner of Barton in Com. Westmerland by the gift of William his brother, and also of Patterdale in Com. West'. He was Sherif of Lancashire ~~from~~ \ in / the 49. of Henry 3. [1264-1265], and in the 3rd of Edward I. [1274-1275], obteined of that King a Confirmation of Rydale†, \ the which forrest / which is set downe by Meetes & Boundes as also of the whole purparty of Amelsale (nunc forsan Ambleside) & Loughbriggs, (now Loughrig.) with common of pasture betwixt [blank] & Gressemere, with all his cattle - which before that was granted unto him by Margaret de Brus & ~~excellent~~ one of the daughters & coheires of Peter de Brus, & Helewise de Lancaster, eldest \ of the 3 sisters / sister of William de Lancaster \ Barron of Kendal / the 3. of that name ~~Barons of K.~~ who dyed without Isue; Which Hellewise was widow of Rob. de Ros of Warke‡. This Roger ~~had Isue~~ maryed Philippa, \ the / eldest daughter and one of the coheires of Hugh de Bolebeck of [blank] in Com. Northumberland. Dyed in the 19. Edward 1. [1290-1291] leaveing Isue – John, who was summond in the 22. of Edward 1. [1293-1294] (amongst diverse other persons of note) to attend at Portsmouth on the 1^{t} of September, well provided with horse & armes, &

[Machell's Notes: I.373]
*(Sandford. Cartis de Askam) e *Baronagio Angliae*, p.423.[71]
†{forsan de Rydal, see Rot Pipe Cart. 3. Edwardi m. 11}
‡{Query} Tamen if this Roger was not a Bastard Brother of this said Will – see in *Monast. Angl.* Vol. 1, p.708.[72]

[I.374]

thence to sael with his Majesty into France. In the 25. of the said Kings reign [1296-1297] he was concernd in that expedition against the Scots, being of the Retinue of Brian Fitz Alane of Bedale in the County of Yorke; And agane in the 34. As likewise in the 3. 4. & 8. of Edward 2. [1309-1311; 1314-1315], in the 11th of whose reigne he was imploy'd in guarding the Marches of Scotland [1317-1318]. And haveing bin summond to Parliament from the 25. of Edward 1. to the 3. of Edward 2. inclusively [1296-1310], he departed this life in the VIII yeare of King Edward 3. [1334-1335]; then seised of the Manner of Rydale and diverse other Lordships in the County of Westmorland: as also in the Countyes of Northumberland & Essex, leaveing Richard, the Son of Richard de ~~Pair~~ Plaiz his next heire, then XII yeares of age*.

[Machell's Notes: I.374 & I.381]
[I.374]
*Haec omnia e Dugdalli *Baronagio*,[73] to which Sir Dan. Fleming has added this note: Vide – Lib E. folio 34. a. Db. 2. 9 – which are Bookes in his Study which I must see.[74]
[I.381]
17. 2 whele bells.[75]
18. Barton Vicaridge.
Vic[arage] house. It is a new house lately built by Dr Daws. & over the doore is this inscription: LD {i.e. Lancelot Daws} NON MIHI SED SVCCESSORIBVS.[76] 1637.
Mr Harrison, vicar? Enquire.
19. The church is St Michael as they say. Sir John of Sockbridge now sole patron. but formerly belonged to Daws \ de Barton Kirke / in his course \ or turne / as (joynt) impropriators \ with him.[77]

[71] William Dugdale, *Baronage* (see Abbreviations).
[72] William Dugdale, *Monasticon* (see Abbreviations).
[73] 'All of these things from Dugdales *Baronage.'*
[74] Daniel Fleming and Machell, both antiquaries, corresponded over methods and sources considered suitable to expedite Machell's History; Machell borrowed books from the older man. See 'Letter from Sir Daniel Fleming. 9 February 1693/94', Part 3, Ch.2, Correspondence, II.145. See also Editor's Introduction.
[75] The bells were operated by a wheel over which the bell-rope ran.
[76] 'Not to me but unto my successors.'
[77] Machell's numbering system continues on I.381 below.

[I.676]

So much may suffice of Barton Church; which, if wee looke into the Rock from whence it was huen I thinke wee may finde it on Barton Fell, where there is a Quarry of Good hewing-stone, & exceeding white, & easy to be transmitted from thence to the circumjacent partes of the Parish, being West from the Church about 2 miles{near to which place is a tarne called Grisdale, wherein there are Troutes the fishing of which belongs to one Mou[n]sey, a Tenant here.} & there [is] Limestone all over the Lordship.

Haveing don with the church it remanes that wee speake of other place in the manner of Barton

[Vicarage House]

~~About~~ 200 yards \ W. / from the Church, \ a little inclineing towards the N. / stands the Vicaridge House, an Handsom new Building with a portch at the Enterance, and a Study above \ over / it. Erected by Dr Lancelot Daws of Barton, as by this Inscription over the Dooer –

L.D.
NON MIHI SED
SUCCESSORIBUS
1637[78]

[Barton Kirk. Lancelot Daws. Michael Hudson]

And a little beyond (in the same Beareing) is a large (but irregular) Hall-like house calld Barton Kirk (from its vicinity to the Church & Vicaridge) which was builded also (as I conjecture) by the said Lancelot Daws; Borne in this Parish, educated at Queens College in Oxford where he was fellow, and afterward tooke his D[rs] degree at [blank] in Scotland.[79] He was a Learned & Ingenious person; as appears by several \ Bookes / which He publishd Sc.* and left a Plentiful Estate behinde Him; which is much to be wondered at, considering that he was only born to a smal Tenement, and for a long time had no more but this Vicaridge, of about 50[li] per Annum to live upon; out of which he educate a great many children, preferd 6 daughters to considerable fortunes giveing each 400[li] apiece, & several Portions of 60[li] to his poore Relations: which yet I thinke he could never have don had not providence advanced him afterwards to be Rector of Ashby,[80] where he also builded the greatest part of the Parsonage house; & in the End to be a Prebendary of the Church of Carlile.[81] He was alwayes hospitable to Schollars & Strangers, but made his own children live near[82] & frugally. This estate he purchased

[Machell's Notes: I.676]

*'?'[83]

[I.678]

(amongst many more* of other persons) from one of the Hudsons; & it was the birth place of Michael Hudson Master of Arts, sometimes fellow of Queens College in Oxford†; & Chaplaine & Convoy in the Northern Parts to King Charles the 1[st] in the late Civil wars, on whom he attended in his march to Hull; & there by misfortune being taken Prisner, was cast in to the mote & Barbarously murthererd: For whilst he attempted to save his life by swimming to the shore, & put forth his hand to catch hold of the weeds which grew about it, a Butcherly Soljer cut ~~of his~~ \ it of with a / swo\r/d; and then He tacking about agane, & puting forthe the other hand, had that cut of likewise; after all which, he threw himselfe upon his back and swiming in water & blood to the shore with his ~~formost~~ \ head formost as the manner is, / had his braines beaten out with the But of a Musket‡.

---

[78] 'Lancelot Dawes, not to me but unto my successors, 1637'.

[79] See Nicolson & Burn for a similar paragraph: *N&B1*, 405-06.

[80] Asby: Dawes was rector there from c.1617 but in 1647 (during the Civil War), when accused of simony and forced by the (puritan) Committee for Plundered Ministers to choose between the vicarage of Barton and the rectory of Asby, he chose Barton. See 'Dawes, Lancelot (1579/80–1655)'. *ODNB*.

[81] Carlisle Cathedral.

[82] 'Near': 'Niggardly, stingy, mean'. *OED*.

[83] Lancelot Dawes's publications include, *Gods Mercies and Jerusalems Miseries* (1609) with an epistle, dated 27 June, dedicated to Henry Robinson, bishop of Carlisle; and, *Sermons Preached upon Severall Occasions* (1653). For these volumes and Dawes's biography, see 'Dawes, Lancelot (1579/80-1655)'. *ODNB*.

This House (with all the Estates that were purchased by Dr Daws) is now the Inheritance of Thomas Daws, a Schollar at Appelby, whose Pedegre followeth.

				Lancelot Daws of Barton Kirk. Dr in Divinity	=	Amy the daughter of Mr Fairfax, Rector of Cald-beck in Cumberland
1. Lancelot Daws M[r] of Arts, whose monumented inscription is in Barton Church quire, see before fig. [Blank]		=	Mary, the d. of Mr Whelpdale of Penrith; remaryed to Tho. Fletcher of Strickland, Barister at Law	2. William Daws of Barton Kirk maryed –	=	Margaret the d. of [blank] Mawson of Penrith in Cumberland
Tho. of Craketrees in West-morland	William of Timparon Cumb-erland			1. Lancelot Dawes of Barton Kirk, the eldest son of William, maryed Thomas Daws aet [blank]	=	Frances the daughter of T. Fletcher of Little Stricland, Barister at Law; being a co-heiress
Lancelot Daws						

[Machell's Notes: I.678]
*{Creak Trees? Ashby Grange? Regil. Something in Penrith.}[84]
†The College Bokes.
‡Public fame.[85]

[I.373]

{**Places [in Barton Parish**]}

To Barton church doe belong Barton, Bridge aliis Yeamond Bridge \ or Emont or Emote or Emoth / Hartsop, Lowinder, Martindale, Patterdale, Powley, Sokbridge, & Yeanwath.

[I.381]

[Lordships]
There are 3 Lordships with manner houses. Sokbridge. Yaneworth. Powly Hall. Hartsop Hall*.
20. Sockbridge the Ancient Seat of the Lancasters now extinct tho there remaine some of the name. It now belongs to Sir John Lowther junior,[86] who married with a Lancaster?[87] William Lancaster of Sockbridge can give an account of them. Hartsop allso \ being / in Patterdal[e] belongd to them & now to the Lowthers. Lowther has some \ Tenements / in Low Barton.

[84] His biographers report that Dawes 'also bought land in the nearby parish of Crosby Ravensworth, including Regill Grange and half the demesne in the manor of Regill.' 'Dawes, Lancelot (1579/80-1655)'. *ODNB*. See also I.377 below.
[85] Michael Hudson (1605–1648), born in Penrith [? See Machell, I.678] was a Church of England clergyman and royalist agent. He attended Queen's College, Oxford, as 'a poor child' in 1622, BA 1626, MA 1629, fellow 1630 (alongside another Westmerian, the logician, Christopher Airay). While a fellow, Hudson seems have tutored Prince Charles. After receiving various livings, Hudson joined the royalists after the battle of Edgehill, then moved to Oxford to be with the king. By royal order he was granted the degree of DD in 1643, becoming one of the king's chaplains. The king 'usually called him his plain-dealing chaplain, because he told him his mind, when others would or durst not' (Wood, Ath. *Oxon*., 3.233). In 1645 he was ejected from one of his livings for non-residency. His subsequent career as an agent for Charles I was full of danger: he was imprisoned, escaped (allegedly in disguise) and raised troops to fight for the king in Lincolnshire. Parliamentarians besieged him at Woodcroft Castle, Peterborough, fighting him through the house and out on to the roof. 'Although the details of Hudson's actual death in the moat on 6 June 1648 owe more to later royalist hagiography than historical truth, his fanatical generosity in support of his king is not to be underestimated.' See N. Cranfield, 'Hudson, Michael (1605-1648), Church of England clergyman and royalist agent'. *ODNB*. Note that Hudson died near Peterborough, not Hull.
[86] 1655-1700.
[87] The Lancaster male line failed in 1640; Machell queried whether Sir John Lowther's wife was a Lancaster. See *AWL*, 182.

21. Yaneworth, formerly to the Dudleys: quite Extinct. \ Anciently to the Yanewoth. (Sandford W[estmorland) / that Daughter whose mon[ument] I have spoke of; and sold by her father to Sir John Lowther of Lowther now Lord thereof. There are 2 demane: the High & the Low.
Two[88] Villages: 1. Yaneworth where the Hall: the other ~~the~~ Bridge. \ Commonly called Emont Bridge. / Near the Bridge are these 2 famous Antiquities, viz. Maybrough & Arthurs-Castle. {Se §31.}[89]

22. Powley Hall \ in High Barton / belongs to Lord Dakers. To him \ allso / belongs High Barton, Powley, Martindale, & Patturdale.[90]

23. In High Barton is Trostermont† \ some call it Crostormont.[91] / Here was borne Dr Hudson at the house which now belongs to Lancelot Daws which together with the impropriation was bought of the Hudsones‡. Dr Langbane, borne at More-End in High Barton near Powley⸸.

24. Martindale – Dr Daws borne there: a chaple there.[92]

[Machell's Notes: I.381]

*(<u>& forsan Barton Hall: X query</u>)[93]
†{Trostermont in High Barton: a round hill tre[n]ched. Said to be the Castle of Trostermont, one of the[94] alias Crostamont. Note.}
‡q.? {The vicar has ⅓.}
⸸(Dr Airay in Low Barton?)(…)[95] at a place called Seller.[96]
{A free school in High Barton, vid. §26.}

[I.382]

25. Hartsop Hall; to Sir John de Sokbridge.
26. 1 Free schoole in High Barton founded by Dr Langbane: Dr Airy & Daws benefactors.[97]
27. Powley Milne & Bridge. Sogbridge Mill.[98]

<u>Villages & Hamlets</u>
28. 1. High Barton., 2. Low Barton where the Church. \ a manner, the demane [and] Powley; / 3. Sockbridge. 4. Yeaneworth. 5. Eamont. 6. Winder a village. 7. Hartsop Lordship, Martindale Lordship, Patterdale a Lordship.

29. Barton is a Barony \ puto scriptis Sandford?[99] / Powley Dem. is the chief demayne as the Dem. of Barton. To it belongs \ High B[arton] & Low Barton. / The Manner of Hartsop. Manner of Martindale. Manner of Patterdale. Yeamount, <u>Sokbridge & Yaneworth are in the parish, not in the Barony</u>*.

---

[88] MS: '2'.
[89] 'See paragraph 31', has been added to the margin.
[90] MS: 'To him \ allso / belongs High Barton, Powley, Martindale, & ~~part of~~ Patturdale. ~~Some of them belonging to Bar. Lowther & som~~ to ~~Arundell~~.' A deleted note on Lowther and Arundel, property owners in High Barton.
[91] It is now Cross Dormont.
[92] Because the page foot has perished, the bottom line cannot be transcribed.
[93] This section has a cross and underlining in different ink. Perhaps Machell was able to answer his own question.
[94] The text here has perished.
[95] This phrase is blotted, but appears to be KIT. Machell used similar letter groups (see a reference to Yanwath on I.734 in this chapter) such as KαT, an abbreviation of the Greek adverb, κα/τω, meaning 'below' or 'in the lower part'. In this instance, the context (Low Barton) is consistent with a reference to 'below', but the Greek abbreviation is unclear and appears to be carelessly written.
[96] Celleron.
[97] For a similar note, see I.377, I.688.
[98] Sockbridge.
[99] 'Perhaps in Sandford's writings?' Machell's contemporary, Edmund Sandford, wrote, 'A Cursory Relation of all the Antiquities and Familyes in Cumb'land', c. 1675. The MS is contained within Machell's Volume 6. It has been published as: Edmund Sandford, *A Cursory Relation of All the Antiquities and Familyes in Cumberland*, CWAAS Tract Series 4 (Kendal, 1890).

30. In High Barton a parke now disp[arked]. Barton Church appropriate to the Prior & Convent of St James de Carta Ebor Dioces. 1318. Given by \ the grant / John Halton wh[en] Bishop of Carlile, ut è registrario suo Apud Rose penes ep[iscopum].[100]
Barton vic[arage] as cler-value in the Kings booke. 11^{li}: 1: 0: \ 10^{th} / 1: 2: 1: q^{a}.[101]

The parish of Barton, December 22 1674.

[Machell's Notes: I.382]

*Informatione John Patteson.[102]

[I.377]

[Eminent Men]

1. Eminent men hath this parish produced: \ all contemporaries / sc. Gerard Langbane,[103] Dr of Divinity Provost of Queens College in Oxford & whose books & reputation to this day bespeake him a man of Universal Learneing: who was maryed to ~~Widow Potter~~ \ Elizabeth widdow to Dr Potter his predicessor, / & had Isue Gerhard \ Langbane / placed somewhere in Oxfordshire*. He Lyes buried in Queens College Oxon – whose monument gives ~~you~~ this fairther[104] account concerneing him: \ of him: /
Dr in Divinity in Scotland – Vicar of Barton Kirk in Westmorland†.

2. The other was Lancelot Dawes, Vicar of Barton, parson of Ashby Kirk in Westmorland \ and Prebendary of Carlile / where lyes buryed,[105] – haveing left a plentiful Estate \ behinde him betwixt 2 & 300 li p.a. / ~~of his owne acquireing to his deseendants~~ {He bought Barton Kirk, Creaktrees, an estate in Penrith, Askby Grange, Rig}, which is much to be admired considering that he was \ only / borne ~~but~~ to 13 or 14 per annum & for Long time had but that Vicaridge of about 50^{li} & \ educated & / brought up & preferrd 6 daughters \ very gentieley, / to each of which he gave to the value of 400 li besides several portions to his poore relation[s] of about 60 li apiece. \ He was very generous & hospitable to strangers, & charitable to the poore: but made his own children live near & sparingly.[106] /

3. Dr Airay, who was Principle of Edmond Hall in Oxford \ born at Low-Winder in an House which is over the Sike and west from the Hall[107] – which is a Good Tenement held now under Davis‡.

4. Michael Hudson, fellow of Queens College, & Chaplain & Convoy in the northern partes to King Charles 1 in the \ late / Civil warrs; who being taken at or near {unto} Hull (as I have heard) was cast into a mote, where he swam for his Life, & comeing to the Banke, the Hand ~~which~~ \ he / put forth \ to catch hold on som thing / to save his life was cut off by a soljer; after which he Tackd abo[u]t agane, & putting out his other hand ~~had~~ \ he / ~~that~~ cutt off \ that / allso; Then throwing himselfe upon his Back, he swam in \ blood & watter / his blood, & when he greaw faint, comeing to shore, had his brains beaten out with a musket but. And they hedged a Bloody Sacrifice of the Rebells cruelty, & remaines a Example of Fidelity & Loyalty to all posterity.[108] He was Born at Barton Kirk, that Estate being purchased from the Hudsons by Dr Dawes.[109]

---

[100] 'John Halton when Bishop of Carlisle, as evidenced in his registry at Rose in the possession of the bishop.'
[101] MS notes on I.715C provide, 'High Barton: a manor W. ab Ecclesia. a sort of Dale extending from the church to Martindale from which tis divided by Swarthbeck which runns into Ulswater over against. excepting Pooley is a member of it which is a pretty com'[illeg.]
[102] 'From the evidence of John Patteson.'
[103] Gerard Langbaine D.D. (1608-1657), son of William Langbaine; Fellow and later Provost of Queen's College, Oxford; co-founder of Barton Grammar School.
[104] Originally 'farther account', but an 'i' added later in different ink.
[105] Lancelot Dawes 1580-1653/4. See above, and see *CFH*, 85.
[106] Repeated text, see I.676, above.
[107] Adam Airay, B.D. Principal of St Edmund Hall, Oxford, 9 Mar. 1630/1 until his death, 16 Dec. 1658. See H.E. Salter and Mary D. Lobel (eds), 'St. Edmund Hall', in *A History of the County of Oxford: Volume 3, The University of Oxford,* (London, 1954), 319-35, British History online.
[108] Repeated text, see I.678, above.
[109] The line below this, at the page foot, has perished

{Also Fellows of Queens College in Oxford: L. Smith, Law[rence] Smith,[110] Will Lancaster,[111] [Blank] Teasdal.}[112]

[Machell's Notes: I.377]

*Of? {Baldwin near Oxford et quer.}[113]
†{? Send for a draft of his picture & monument}
‡Witnesses Jam[es] Dobson of Wether-melock. King of Patterdale.[114] Christopher Lancaster of Hartsop.

[I.679] [115]

Other places of less note in this Lordship, and yet not to be passed by in silence, haveing given birth to learned men are:
Pot Howskil – Launcelot Smith, Fellow[116] – which were called [of] late Potshowskil.[117]
Bower banke – which is a good House at the E. End of Pooley, & in a manner ajoyneing to it Lawrence Smith, who sold it to his Brother Will the Keeper of Martindale.
Moore End near Pooley – W. ab Ecclesia ½ a mile Dr Langbane where Langbanes yet.[118]
Winder – in manner of W[inder] Dr Adam Airay Principal of Edmund Hall in Oxford; whose father is said to have com out of Kentmere in the Barony of Kendal.

[I.687][119]

[**Barton School**]
[Results of an Enquiry, returned to Thomas Machell in 1673]

Westmorland Barton
For Mr Richard Jackson Schoolmaster of Appleby.
These p. p. p. with hand.

[I. 680][120]

The present estate of the free schoole of Barton in Westmorland, in order to an enquiry beareing date from Oxon, August 16th 1673.

Enquiry First: Who Founders?
Replied: The Reverend Gerrard Langbaine D.D. Provost of Queens Colledge in Oxon, & the Reverend Lancelott Dawes D.D. Fellow of Queens Colledge in Oxon.

[110] Laurence Smith, servitor at Queen's College, Oxford, from1660; BA 1665; MA 1668; rector of Knights Enham, Hants, 1675-1708. Leonard Smith of Appleby, matriculated 1674 aged 18; BA 1678-79; MA 1681; vicar of Newbold-Pacey Warwickshire (in the gift of Queen's College), 1689, *OAD*. See also CCED.
[111] William Lancaster of Sockbridge, matriculated 'pauper' Queen's College, 1670, aged 20; BA 1674-75; MA 1678; BD 1690; DD 1692; provost of Queen's College 1704-17; vice-chancellor 1705-09; originally 'a little petty schoolmaster in Westmorland'; vicar of Oakley Bucks 1682; vicar of St Martin-in-the-Fields 1692; archdeacon of Middlesex 1705; died 1716-17. *OAD*.
[112] Five Teasdells/Teasdalls, from Cumberland (1) and Westmorland (4), matriculated at Queen's College between 1596 and 1685. John Teasdell: BA 1602, became vicar of Appleby (1611) and Lowther (1613). Lancelot Teasdell of Sockbridge MA 1684, became rector of South Weston Oxon (1691) and of Distington Cumberland (1692). William Teasdall of Stockbridge, son of Christopher, matriculated in 1685 aged 16; BA 1690; MA 1693-94. Robert Teasdell of Westmorland matriculated in 1615 aged 17; BA 1617. William Teasdell of Cumberland matriculated in 1572. *OAD*.
[113] 'And query this.'
[114] John Mounsey of Patterdale Hall, see I.714, below.
[115] The contents of this page were written in pencil; they are now too faint to be read easily.
[116] Lancelot Smith, servitor of Queen's College, matriculated 1655; BA 1659; MA 1652, *OAD*.
[117] Pots house gill: a field in the Parish of Barton: *Westmorland Place-Names*. Nicolson & Burn refer to this place as 'Pothowscale': *N&BI*, 407.
[118] Another MS reference (I.677), gives 'At Moore End. West ab Ecclesia ½ a mile Dr Langbane born.'
[119] The page contains a scrap of paper pasted onto it, containing the address of Richard Jackson, who sent Machell the material on Barton, below.
[120] The results of the Inquiry were written in another hand.

2. When Founded?
Replied: In the year of Our Lord God 1649.[121]

3. How Endowed?
Replied: With twenty pounds per Annum which was given as followeth; viz. the said Gerrard Langbaine gave the sume of five pounds and fiveteen shillings \ yearly / out of an estate purchased at Culgaith & the interest of sicety \ fifty[122] / four pounds more unto the said schoole. The said Lancelott Dawes gave twenty shillings to be pay'd out of his part of the tythes of Barton \ yearly / & the interest ariseing from thirty pounds of money. The Reverend Adam Airey D.D, Fellow of Queens Colledge in Oxon, gave the interest of one hundred pounds of money to the use aforesaid; and the Parishioners of Barton gave the interest of thirty pounds for ever, collected among them before the Schoole house was built.

4. What School-master? & succession of masters?
Replied: John Martin A.B. of Queens Colledge in Oxon, first after the foundation of the said Schoole, whom Thomas Preston A.B. of St Johns Colledge in Cambridge did succeed; William Lancaster his successor; & Christopher Mickleston, the immediate predecessour of William Airey present School-Master there.[123]

5. What Exhibitions?
Replied: Noe exhibitions in either University.

6. What Governours, Patrons & Visitors?
Replied: Sir John Lowther of Sockbridge Baronet; Sir John Lowther of Lowther Baronet; Daniell Fleeming of Ridale Esqr; John Harrison present Vicar of Barton; William Dawes senior; Theodorus Sisson; William Smith senior of Bowerbanke; George Mounsey senior; Thomas Winter, gentleman; William Smith of Potshouscale; William Sisson of Crostormount, & William Smith of Brow yeomen, Parishioners of Barton aforesaid.

9. What Libraries?
Replied: Noe libraries therein, or in any town thereto adjoyneing.

Barton June 30th 1676.

[I.682]

The Foundation of Barton School & electing of Supervisors and Governors[124]
{After the Endowment there was also provision for supervisours in these word[s].}[125]
Whereas the Parishioners of Barton have agreed & consented together for the building & erecting of a publick Schoole at Barton: & for that such Foundation cannot subsist & continue without Order & Government to be observ'd in & about the same; It is therefore thought fitt, that for the use of the Parishioners in generall, & for the avoyding of such inconveniences as might happen to arise by the different opinion of a multitude, & for the better ordering and governing of the said schoole: That the seven men herein nam'd & appointed, & their Heirs successively be & remaine as Supervisors & Governors of the Schoole. That is to say, Mr Lancelott Dawes, Mr Francis Sisson, Mr William Davis, Steven Mounsey, William Smith, Lancelott Smith & William Langbane*. & whatsoever they the said seven men, or the Major part, shall conclude & agree upon touching & concerning the benifitt & advantage of the said schoole, the same to be observ'd for good & binding for all others. And forasmuch as diverse well-dispos'd persons

[121] A note in the MS (I.715A) gives: 'Barton: There is a free school, in the high road from Penrith to Pouley, W. ab Ecclesia ¾, founded by [blank] and build, as appears by these figure writ over the door in – 1649.' Another reference, but scored through (MSI.715C), gives, '~~a School free (ab Ecclesia W. ab Ecclesia) ¾ of a mile~~.'
[122] 'Fifty', in another hand.
[123] William Lancaster taught in Barton between 1668 and 1670; William Airey was licensed on 15 November 1672; he taught in Barton until 1691. CCED. Christopher Mickleston (presumably teaching there, c. 1671) has not been found in the bishop's register for that period.
[124] The main text on this page is the copy of a deed and is in a hand other than Machell's.
[125] In Machell's hand, written in pencil.

whose hearts God hath stirr'd up towards the setting forward of so necessary & pious a work, have allready to the good Example of others, out of their Christian care for the Education & Instruction of Youth

[Machell's Notes: I.682]

*{Fo[u]nders & Benefactors} {And to these have been added since I know not, I suppose in a complement.}

[I.683]

in Religion & Learning, chearfully & charitably contributed to that use of the said school. It is thought fitt that the Names of all those who have given any thing to the same, together with the sume or gift so given, to be carefully Recorded & Registered in the Schoole-Book as Authors & Benefactors to the said schoole that the Memory of those who have so generally deserv'd well may not be rak'd up in the Ashes of Oblivion for whom Posterity may have cause to give God thanks.

The Names of all such as have given & contributed to the Use of the Schoole of Barton together with the Sume or Gift so given.

Imprimis. Lancelott Dawes D.D. & Vicar of Barton, gave twenty shillings per annum to be pay'd by his heires out of the Tithes of Barton-Kirke yearly for ever. And also, five & twenty pound in money: the use whereof to be imploy'd to the said School for ever.
Item. Gerard Langbaine D.D. & Provost of Queens Colledge in Oxford gave thirty pound: the use whereof to be & remaine to the use of the said schoole for ever. Also, the said Dr Langbaine

[I.684]

purchas'd a Farme at Culgaith in Cumberland at the value of 20^{li} per annum, ten pound whereof to bind two Apprentises within Barton Parish; the rest to the use of the foresaid schoole of Barton for ever; paying the Lords yearly Rent for the Farme at Culgaith.
Item. given by C. Airay to the schoole of Barton the sume of a hundred pound, the use whereof to go to the schoole for ever. Whereof allowd to Peter Burnyeats for the Carriage the Sume of three pound & for other expenses six shilling six pence; the Rest being in the Hands of the Men whose Names follow. viz.

William Smith of Winder	63 06 00}	
Francis Sisson	12 00 00}	0: 7: 6. not accounted for
Lancelott Smith of Pottshowskell	11 00 00}	
Humphrey Langbane	10 00 00}	

Others contributed to the building of the schoole (& the overplus to be employ'd to the use thereof) besides their Labour in Leading, Wood, & Stones & other materials

Mr Wm Davis	5. 0.0.	Stephen Sisson	2. 0.0.	Edw. Winder	0.13.4.
Mr Franc. Sisson	4.0.0.	Tho. Mark	1.10.0.	Edw. Hodge'son	1. 0.0.
Mr Humph.Wharton	3.0.0.	Wm Harrison of Ellerbeck	5^{li}.	Lancelot Airay	1.10.0.
William Smith	3.6.8.	Wm Dawson	2. 0.0.	Lancelot Prudday[126]	1. 0.0.
Lancelot Smith	3.0.0.	Edw. Browne	1 .0.0.	Jo. Smith	0. 6.8.
Mr Tho. Mounsey	2.0.0.	Tho. Mounsey	1.10 0.	Edw. Rukin	0. 5.0.
Stephen Mounsey	3.0.0.	Jane Richardson	1 .0.0	Rowland Guddall	0. 5.0.
Wm Harrison [perished]		Edw. Lancaster	0. 6.8.	Lanc. Lancaster	0.13.4.
Wm [perished]		Wm Bird [perished]		Wm Nicolson	0. 6.8.
The sume is	[£]46. 6.[127]				

[I.660]

[The Perambulation of Barton Parish]

Bounder

Note. This Parish is Bounded on the East with Browham & Clifton \ & Lowther / being divide from them by the River Lowder, on the SE with Askham & Barton, on the S. with \ part of / Kendal and ~~Winder mer~~ \ Gresmere parishes, / on the W. with Crosthwate \ & Graystock / parish in \ the County of / Cumberland, on

[126] A letter 'e' here appears to have been changed into 'a'.
[127] Of the two illegible amounts, one sum given could be 10 shillings.

the North-west & N – with ~~the Parishes of~~ Graystock & Penrith \ in the said county* / ~~being~~ divided from them by Glenkeün-Beck, Ulswater, & Emote, the perambulation being as followeth – Sc.

{Perambulation}
The tract of ground which belongs to this church.
Beginning over against the Church in the midle of Emote, & thence descending N^wd^ to Skirsgill well, near Yeanwath hall, where \ the Barony of / Graystock ends &\ the Parish of / Penrith begins†; Thence ~~this~~ downe the midle of the said River till Lowder discharge it selfe

[Machell's Notes: I.660]

*{? Q. of Daker.}
†(Query of Daker, where it begins & ends.)

[I.661]

to the head or Runner of Eymote, all the East Side or halfe of Ulswater being accounted in the manner of Barton; But the fishing is in som \ of the / Tenants who pay quit rent for it. Thus, it is now; but (if a man may speake what is rational) it seemeth to me that the side of Ulswater which lyes contiguouse to the manner of Martindale has belong'd to it; but both these being in the same Lords possession, & the Court kept in Barton, it has thence bin reckoned within Barton manner.

[I.655A]

Via & media quibus ad Terminum perducitur[128]

{Terminus a quo} {Terminus ad quem}[129]

Beginning over against the Church in the midle of Emonte and descending thence N.E. till you com at the place where Lowther Beck runnes into Emot where Browham begins.[130] Thenceforward S. up the River Lowther till you com at the Bridge, where Clifton enters. Thence S.W. up Lowther Beck till you com at Yanwath wood head \ a little / beneath Lowther mill. Thence westward (up by the Hedge of Yanwath Demaine till you com at a Grassing which is in Ascom demaine called Pow-dun*.[131] Thence W. up by the wall of Sockbridge Demaine to a close in High Winder called Holl-Gill.[132] Thence directly west by a wall to the Towne of High Winder – Thence S. West~~ward~~ over the fell in a direct line to Cloven Steane on a Browside called Seat-head. Thence S.W. in a streight line to ~~wh~~ an heap of stones called White Rayes. Thence S.W. by a streight line \ lineally/ to \ an heap of stones on / Hewskill-howes. Thence \ directly / S.W. to the Top of Whiteston Moore.[133] Thence S.W. (by a streight line) to a Raise of stones called Lambert-Lad. Thence – S. West (by a streight line) to Sandford Steak wher Askam ends & Barton begins in the point from Barton Kirke? Thence S.W. \ to / a place calld White-Raise. Thence S.W. by a st\r/eight line to Camerton Bield where Barton leaves of as Kendal comes in†.[134] Thence Westward by a streight line to Jack-brigg \ where Kendal leaves, & Wind'mer. / Thence W. by a direct line to a strait place between 2 dales‡ called the Threshward. Thence N.W. to \ Camerton Bield on / the top of Kirkston \ where Gresmere comes in. /

[128] 'The way and means by which it reaches the end.'
[129] 'The Starting Point … The End Point'. Three or four words are illegible here; they could read: '& measurement [?] miles', but the page here has perished.
[130] MS: 'Beginning anenst the church at Emot Side; \ over against the Church in the midle of Emonte / and \ descending / thence N.E. till \ you com at the place where / Lowther Beck runnes into Emot. Where Browham begins.'
[131] MS: 'Thence westward (up by the ~~wall of Askham till~~ \ Hedge of / Yanwath Demaine till you com at a Grassing ~~called Pow-dun~~ which is in Ascom demaine called Pow-dun.'
[132] MS: 'Thence \ W. / up by the wall ~~inclose~~ of Sockbridge Demaine to \ a close ~~called~~ / ~~Hollgill~~ in High Winder – called Holl-Gill.'
[133] A line of text here has been thoroughly crossed through and is therefore unclear.
[134] MS: 'where Barton leaves of \ as ~~Winder~~ Kendal comes in / ~~at the [blank] point from B[arton Kirk]~~ {Query where other parishes com in.}'

Thence Westwards along the Height (as heaven water \ deales /) to / Dove Cragg;[135] Thence W. (as Heaven water deales) to \ ~~Sinke~~/ Glencove. Thence W. by a streight line \ as heaven water deales to Greatrig Head on / the Top of Fairfield. Thence N.W. by a streight line to the head of ~~Gr~~ Grisedale Tarn.[136] Thence N. in a direct line to an heap of stones on Erward Tove or Edward Dove \ where Crosthwate p[arish] \ in Cumberland / enters at the [blank] point. Thence as Heaven Water deales to the top of \ a / Broad Crag ~~top~~ called Elvellin⸸.

[Machell's Notes: I.655A]

{Marking of sheep. Scot[tish] – keeling of sheep. Keela ome – is Read lead or Rud – Keela vert is Black lead –}[137]
A Carne of Stones (in Scotch) is an he\a/p of stones for a memorial.
{Dr Balfour a physitian in Edenburrow, an antiquarian;[138] by Mr William Duglas; lawyer at the bar of […][139]
*{Thereof in Scotland Powdan and Powdonnet.}
†{Query where other parishes com in.}
‡{Sc. Ha[r]tsop & Troutbeck in Windermer}
⸸{Mr Mounsey} {Query of X. Lancaster of Hartsop to Ulswater Head.}[140]



Figure 1.5.11. Text written in several different directions and text crossed through. I.655B.

[I.655B]

{till you com below Wethermelock over against the foot of Ranyas which runneth on the E. Side of it, where the Parish of Daker runs in*.}[141] Thence N. (as Heaven water divides) to Whitston Edge. So on by the same direction to the Lower End of Sticks-Moss. Thence N. (by a streight line) to the head of Glennkeu\n/-Beck† \ where Grastock parish begins to joyn of it. / Thence E. down the Beck into the very midle of Ulswater. Thence agane down the midle of Ulswater & thence down the midle of the said Lake and the River of Emote which runs out of it till you com at the place where you began and where Daker ~~endeth~~ & Penrith adjoyne.

[Machell's Notes: I.655B]

*By Mr Dobson & Th[omas] Atkinson his shepherd, called the Prince of Shepherds by Mr Lancaster of Hartsop.
†{? sayes there is gle[n] Co in the higlands.}

[135] Machell used braces here to show that the information in the last paragraph had been provided by his informant, Mounsey.
[136] A line below this one has been heavily scored through.
[137] In the left-hand margin, written at right-angles to the page. Keel, or ruddle, is red ochre, used especially for marking sheep; it is also the name of the mark thus made; red keel is ruddle, black keel is plumbago: *Dictionaries of the Scots Language* Online.
[138] Probably Dr Andrew Balfour (1630-94): physician; collector of botanical samples; experimenter in science and medicine; prominent member of Edinburgh's learned society; private museum, gallery and library owner; a founder of the Royal College of Physicians of Edinburgh in 1681. See Royal Society of Physicians of Edinburgh, https://www.rcpe.ac.uk/heritage/college-history/andrew-balfour.
[139] The rest of this margin comment is obscured by the binding
[140] It appears that Machell needed to enquire further (of Christopher Lancaster).
[141] Top L.H. margin: the page is damaged; it has been repaired in the past.

[I.664]

[**Pooley**]

{Manerium de Barton. Lord Sussex.}

The village of Pooley at the foot of Ulswater, which is the chief place in the Manner of Barton, taketh its name from being scituate nearer to that great poole and doth but consist of [blank] families.[142] [It] seemeth to be of Late Erection; whether \ the / people \ at first / haveing flocked thither either for promoteing the fishing trade or perhaps for vendeing them: for (by Tradition) it formerly has bin a Little Market, there yet remaneing a fair \ stone/ cross in it \ with stepps or seats all round about it, / with the Dakers armes at the top of which on west side of the [cross] are Dakers Arms. Sc. 3 escallops (and those too have relation to fishing) on the S.W. side of it; which Cross was lately put in \ to / repare by the \ now / Earle of Sussex (descended from Dakers on the mothers side,) \ the Lord of the Manner and of most \ part / of the parish; / as by[143] these Letter[s] cutt on the fan (or Weather Cock as they commonly call it) \ upon the Top of it / may more fully appear:

THOMAS EARLE OF SUSSEX MAY. 2. 1679.[144]



Figure 1.5.12. Sketch of the Dacre Arms on Barton Cross. I.664.

This place \ then / lying at the foote of the lake & head of the river which is called Emot from its isuing here out of the mote,[145] might be very proper for the said Imployments either of fishing or vending \ of fish / &[146] might occasion a concorse of people & to have taken the name of Pooley from its vicinity to that great poole or lake whereon it standeth ~~or from~~ now*.

And another Reason {!!!} of this part of the manner being more frequented \ & so groweing populous / may be from its nearness to the Manner House, whose \ great / estate here \ laid / calls upon to adorne the Countrey. I do not mean that \ pittiful / cott which they call Pooley-Hall \ at the E. End of it, / where they keep their Courtes; a Scandal to the noble Lord who ownes it,[147] the manner being in reallyty the worst ~~house I saw~~ \ in the Town, / whose walls are clay & whose cover, Thatch – But that on [blank][148]

[Machell's Notes: I.664]

*{Consequences: som number of house more than at first.}

[I.663]

The village of Pooley* at the foote of Ulse-water \ which is the chief place in the manner of Barton[149] / taketh its name from being scituate near that Great poole \ or lake / And is a very sweet situation; haveing,

[142] MS: 'The village of Pooley \ ~~which is scituate~~ at the foot of Ulswater / which is the chief place in the Manner of Barton, taketh its name from being scituate ~~on the~~ nearer to that great poole, and doth but consist of [blank] families.'
[143] In the margin of the MS: {'which with the'}.
[144] See *N&BI*, 411.
[145] MS: 'and It is calld This place \ then / lying at the foote of the lake & head of the River which is called Emot from its isuing here out of the mote'.
[146] Here, a blot covers two words.
[147] MS: '~~which is~~ a scandal to that \ the / noble Lord who ownes it.'
[148] The narrative stops abruptly here.
[149] For an earlier draft see I.664.

besides its native Imbellishments of wood & water, a great accession of Borrowed Beauty from Dunmallard Hillin the County of Cumberland:[150] to which it is adjoynd by a \ Stone / Bridge,[151] where formerly was but a Stanke and a plake;[152] ~~which~~ serveing at once both for passage and fishing; and this was placed above the \ Stone / Bridge, not in the manner of a Diagonal (as the new one below) but like ~~the~~ 2 radij \ of a Circle / or Limbes of a Triangle \ tending to / meeting in the Center after this manner, \ /[153] as the remaneing Stones doe yet testify. And it tooke the name of Stanke: a stando from stanching, staying or stoping the water & makeing it stand, so that of old there was a place here calld Pooley Stanke‡. ~~The~~ But the Village it self seemeth to be of Later Erection, the people at first flocking together; either for promoteing the fishing trade or perhaps for vending them.

[Machell's Notes: I.663]

{Pooley gave name to a family.}
*{Sold free 6 or 7 years since by my Lord of Sussexs. i.e. from services & arbitrary fines, to a peppercorn. But Eller Beck, Woodside, above Pooley, was ancient free-hold. Query: if any part of the manors of Barton below the church.}[154]
⸸{Query: what more.}
‡{The proprietors of the New Stanke are – Mr Hudelston of Hutton John in Cumberland; Will Smith of Bower banke, now keeper of Martindale.}
{Beneath Pooley, i.e. Ab Ecclesia, families 11 or 12. In Pooley, families 16 or 17. Above Pooley families 15.}

[I.661]

In Pooley [blank] above Pooley 13 families ~~and~~ they are all lately (except 2 or 3 not of ability) purchased into a sort of freedom & for which they pay~~e~~d 30 years rent to the now Earle of Sussex, for which they are exempt from al Service except Suit of Court, paying only their old rent to their Lord & a Pepercorne in the name; which saves them (being in the nature of Tenancy) from serving in the County Court.
{This water affords – Chars, Skellyes,[155] Troutes, Gray troutes a yard long and as much about Perch, which they call Bass, Eales but not large, for the channel is Stone and Gravel.[156]
The Duck and Mallards build & bread: Lough ducks, \ black / Scaroes[157] & \ gray / Cormorands, Teales & widgeons do frequent.

[Machell's Notes: I.661]

(The story of Lord Whartons at Onbur in Bucks not far from Wickam.)[158]

[150] Dunmallard or Dunmallet, see 1.666.
[151] See N&BI, 411.
[152] Plank.
[153] Here, Machell has drawn two lines.
[154] This margin comment is partly obscured by the binding.
[155] 'Skelly': The freshwater herring. *OED*.
[156] See a similar list in *N&BI*, 407.
[157] 'Black scaroes'. Possibly the European Shag, known in Orkney and Shetland as the Scarfie. It is part of the cormorant family. See M. Cocker and R. Mabey, *Birds Britannica* (London, 2005), 38.
[158] Thomas Wharton (1648-1715), 1st marquess of Wharton, was a son of the puritan Philip 4th Baron Wharton. An MP for seventeen years (1679-96), Thomas Wharton used his first years as MP to encourage Whig opposition to James II's government. Before the Glorious Revolution he was in close contact with army officers, including his brother Captain Henry Wharton, who were conspiring against James. He spent his early life at Upper Winchendon, a Wharton estate in Buckinghamshire, continuing to live there even after inheriting manors in Buckinghamshire, Yorkshire, Cumberland and Westmorland. Machell, a staunch Tory and defender of the Church of England, was not a fan of the Whartons (see Editor's Introduction) so, here, he was probably referring to Thomas Wharton's scandalous youth. Before his first marriage (1673), Wharton was challenged to a duel by a disappointed rival … and lost. In June 1682, Wharton, his brother Henry and some friends were entertained at Bray House in Great Barrington, Gloucestershire. One night, 'after several hours of drinking, the group broke into St Mary's parish church where they rang the bells, cut the bell ropes, broke the cover of the font and the desk of the pulpit, and ripped the church Bible. Then, as the actions (to paraphrase Wharton's later apology) grew worse in the execution than they had been in the design, the revellers relieved themselves in the church. They might have contrived other enormities if the clangour of the bells had not brought out an unamused crowd of villagers who chased them back to Bray House.' J. Kent Clark, 'Wharton, Thomas, first marquess of Wharton, first marquess of Malmesbury, and first marquess of Catherlough (1648-1715), politician'. *ODNB*.

[I.666][159]

[Dunmallet]

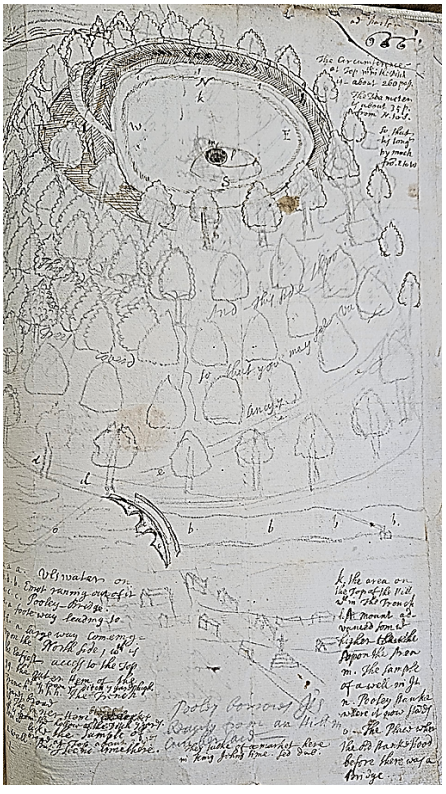


Figure 1.5.13. Dunmallet, Pooley, 'Bridge' and Machell's notes. I.666.

The circumference at Top within the Ditch is about 260 passes. The diameter is about 35 p[asses] from N. to S. so that 'tis longer by much from E. to W.
[Left] This side Thick with Trees coverd. [Right] And – This side thin so that you may see vacencyes.

[Key to the Plan]

aaa. Ulswater on [which Dunmallet stands.]
bbb. Emot running out of it.
ccc. Pooley-Bridge.
e. foote way leading to
ff. a large way comeing upon the North Side, which is the easyest access to the Top.
gg. the Outer Hem of the Trench \ which is from the ditch 7 yards high. /
hhh. The Trench 6 yards broad.
iii. The Inner Hem, which is from the hollow of the Ditch 7 yards;[160]
joyned like the sample of a wall \ broad at Top about 3 yards. / But I see no lime there.
k. The area on the Top of the Hill within the Trench.
l. A mount advanced somewhat higher than the S. upon the Area.
m. The Sample of a well in it.
n. Pooley Stanke where it now stands.
o. The Place where the old Stanke stood before there was a Bridge.

[159] Most of the sketch of Dunmallet is in pencil: only the hill's top ditch and the bridge have been inked.
[160] MS: 'The Inner Hem \ ~~broad it~~ / ~~which looks~~ which is from the hollow of the Ditch 7 yards.'

Pooley borrows its beauty from an hill in Cumberland – They talke of a market here in King Johns time, sed dub.[161]

{Trostermont}[162]

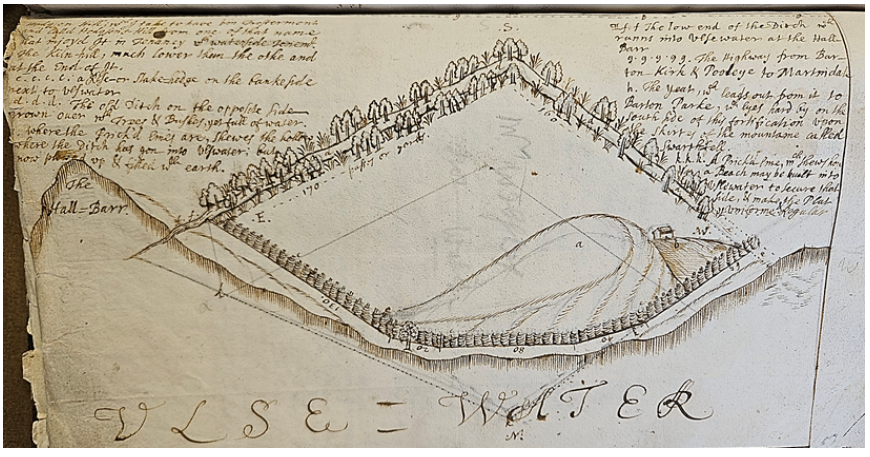


Figure 1.5.14. Sketch of Trostermount, now called Hodgson's Hill, Pooley. I.692.

[I.690]

Bearing ancient and Noble fortifications \ a sight of which I here present you / called Trostermont, or Tristermount; ~~from Tristra~~ {where I could wish a fair manor house, if not rather ~~on~~ bearing upon Dunmallet, tho out of the County. If there be water (as there formerly seemes to have bin) by the sample of a well on the very top of it, I know a great difficulty may be opposd that it is inaccesab[le]; but that might be helpd by a Skew walke or passage, which would make it at once both delightfull & Easy. \ There being / however most excellent gravel, Tristermont may be restored with about as much facility – the ditches thereof being mostly open & yet filled with water – and might be reduced to a Regular ~~near it~~ Platforme by build[ing] a beach[163] into Ulswater where the pricked [line] standeth.}[164]

[I.692][165]

Hodgson Hill, which I take to have bin Trostermont and calld Hodgsons-Hill from one of that name that injoyd it in Tenancy with Waterside Tenement.[166]
The Kiln-hill, much lower than the othe[r] and at the End of it.

c.c.c.c.	A Rise – or Stake-hedge on the bankeside next to Ulswater.
d.d.d.d.	The old Ditch on the opposite Side – grown over with Trees & Bushes, yet full of water.
e.e.	where the prick'd lines are, shewes the hollow where the ditch has gon into Ulswater; but now plowed up & filled with earth.

[161] 'But I doubt it.'
[162] Named Trostermosit or Triestmont on 17th-century maps, and also Hodgson's Hill: OS Map Grid Reference, NY46402332. There are earthwork remains. Gale Bay Moat, Barton, has been described as a probable fortified manor house; a moated site is mentioned in a 14th-century marriage settlement by Sir W. Strickland on his son Thomas. The site is also extant on Machell's plan, above. It consists of a triangular area of five acres with its base on the lake facing NW and its two sides isolated from the mainland by an obtuse angled ditch, 10 yds wide and 894 yds long, with the ends entering the lake: http://www.gatehouse-gazetteer.info/English%20sites/4653.html
[163] MS: Beech: see I.692.
[164] See note k. on the plan above.
[165] Compass points and the measurements in paces are given at the corners; in the centre of the sketch there is a pencilled comment, 'Mr Websters not wa' [the rest is illeg.] Thomas Webster, a steward at Barton Manor Court, was one of Machell's informants.
[166] Waterside Tenement is a farm, now called Waterside House. It is about half a mile south of Hodgson's Hill. See Ordnance Survey 1st edn (1859-1863) Westmorland, sheet VII.

f.f. The low end of the Ditch which runns into Ulsewater at the Hall-Barr.
g.g.g.g.g. The Highway from Barton Kirke & Pooleye to Martindale.
h. The yeat,[167] which leads out from it to Barton Parke, which lyes hard by on the South Side of this fortification upon the skirtes of the mountaine called Swarth-Fell.
k.k.k. A Prick'd line, which shews how a Beach may be built into Ulsewater to secure that Side, & make the Plat uniforme \ & / Regular.

[I.715C]

I could recommend this place to my Lord \ for antiquityes sake / to Build a Manor House upon;[168] or ~~any where~~ \ som other / near to the church \ & / fronting Eastwards, for so it would have a dilicate prospect of that woody vale on the Bankes of Emote. But if there be water, as there seemeth ~~to~~ have bin a well, on the Top of Dun Mallard, tho out of the Lordship – That! with a skew walke …[169]

[I.690]

This Tristermount is thought to have taken its denom[ination] from Tristra – one of King Arthurs Knights ~~as is believed~~, and therefore the rather, because the Round Table – of which order he was – \ is / in this parish – concerneing which I shal speake more fully in ~~it proper place~~ the Manor of Yanewath. Yet this place I confess[170] is now commonly /calld Hodaston Hill. & \ there is / a Tenement near ~~it calld~~ \ thereunto / which bears the name of Tristermont.[171] But the Reason of both may \ seem to / be this: that Tristermont was the 1st Tenement erected thereabout, ~~which might take its~~ \ & tooke that / name from its vicinity to this fortification. And Waterside-Tenement being perhaps \ at first / a part \ or parcel / of it (as tis onely now divided ~~at present~~ \ from it / with a ~~thin~~ slender rise Hedge;[172] or however \ being / a New Improvement[173] by the water side\ and near thereunto, / this hill might be called Hodgsons Hill \ in after Times / from som of that name being owner of it; and the first built House \ might still / retaine the old name of Tristermont tho the Hill had lost it. And this diserves the \ greater / regard, because it is thought to have that name.

But to put the question quite [out] of dout: There is no likelyhood that such a ~~single~~ \ smal / Tenement should be rema[r]ked by all Geographers as Tristermont we alwayes finde is; there must be som mount extraordinary in it & there is no Hill of Note hereaboutes excepting this, which might bear \ challenge / that name ~~or give this denomination~~ as haveing ~~som~~ \ any / resemblance \ & likeness / of a Mount \ or fort. And that which makes it more Remarquable is it[s] scituation on the Banke of Ulswater & its fortification on the other side of it; ~~as you may see in the platform~~ \ into which the water might be / easily rased, as it certanely was with the old Stanke at Stanke, which stood a good[174] above. Nor is this all.

[I.691]

For our English word Town \ certanely / cometh ~~from~~ \ of / the Saxon word Tuwne \ (& so the lawmen yet pronounce it) / which signifyes an Hedge; \ quae in principio sepibus pro muris uterentur;[175] / and was not anciently taken when (as now \ it is /) in a strict sense for a Number of Houses standing together in neighbour row, but for any improvements ~~enclosed~~ with Houses built on them, being in the Liberty of a Manor or Lordship \ Township; / for what is How-Town (hard by in Martindale) but 2 or 3 Houses with inclosures about them? Thus, in Ireland, if they build ~~a farme~~ \ but an / House, with necessaryes \ to it / at a Countrey farme,[176] they call it a Towne: as Garyes Towne, Machels Towne \ & many others / near to Ardale Sc.

[167] Gate: see the English Glossary.
[168] Machell was referring to the earl of Sussex, lord of Barton.
[169] The end of the sentence is obscured by the binding.
[170] MS: 'Yet this place ~~is commonly, I must confess~~ \ I ~~must~~ confess'.
[171] MS: '~~Is called Tristermout by reason of the former objection may probably be that waterside tenement wherein his mount stand might first be taken up by one Hodgson having layd in common & at large before~~.'
[172] 'Rise' is a dialect word for underwood, brushwood or thorns: Joseph Wright, *The English Dialect Dictionary* (London, 1898-1905), 5, 126; see Machell MS.I.692.
[173] Newly enclosed land.
[174] Words here have perished.
[175] 'which in earliest times they used as fences in place of walls.'
[176] 'Necessaryes': things that are indispensable, essential or requisite [as, in this case, farmbuildings etc.]. *OED*.

[I.693A][177]

Now the Reasons why I conclude this place to be Trostermount (for so the Countrey peple call it, & not Crostermou[n]t as writt in the maps) are these that follow –

1. Because there [is] no other mount to be found hereaboutes; nor near to the Tenement calld by that name excepting this onely.
2. Because this is nex adjoyneing to the House & Tenement which is calld Trostermount, being only divided by a stick hedge. & is no more but a single Cott – not worth the notice of a Geographer.
3. Because this Waterside Tenement may be ergo supposed, either to have formerly layd in common at the side of \ the water adjoyneing / this Tenement calld Trostermount \ and gave the name to it, / or to have bin part & parcell of it; being till this day only divide by a \ slender / Rise[178] dike.
4. This may seeme to have bin the Site of the Hall or manor house till let in Tenancy; from the water adjoyneing called Hall barr & from its vicinity to Barton Parke which is still the chief parcell of the Demaine.
6.[179] \ & why / this Bar might give name [to] Hall Bar: a Landing Place, Creeke or Nib of water att the Hall gates – so Barr is so used in the city of Yorke B. where their principal strong and great gates are all called Barrs as Bowder Bar &c.}

Why might not Barton be so called ~~so~~ of old quasi opidum ad Barram, \ as the Heralds speake; / as much as to say the Towne near the Barr, before Pooley was builded & tooke its name from \ the scituation at the poole.[180] /

[I.671B]

T. Webster, Senescallus Curiae,[181] informes me that there were at Tristermount 3 Tenements anciently, Sc. {?} Nether Tristermont (? where the Mount Standeth): Farther Tristermont, a little above, and Crookedike Tenement adjoyneing to them, which were injoy'd by Customary Tenants belonging to Graystock Castle in Cumberland, till they were exchangd for other tenaments in the Barony of Graystock which did belong to the Lord of this manor. And upon that reason, the Rents, which the said \ 3 Tenements / pay to the Lord of Barton, are calld by the name of Arundell Rents, because they formerly did appertaine to the Earle of Arundel, whose Armes are Gules, a lyon rampant and with caud[182] inflexed Or; which you may see amongst the Armes over the Altar in Barton Church at Fig. 1.[183]

[I.696][184]

Winder

There are 2 Winders, the High \ of which in Sockbridge / and the Low \ Winder / ~~both which~~ \ of which in this place. They both / may seem to have bin one manner; but now they are so divided an Parcelld into other Lordships where they answer Court doing Suit & Service, that there ~~now~~ remaneth but 5 or 6 familyes ~~one~~ \ 2 / of which ~~is a~~ \ are / ratable freholds, in that which wee call the Manner of Winder (commonly Low-Winder,) where the Hall standeth. It is a pretty good dwelling House, ~~but far from any regularity~~; S. from the church about a Mile ~~distance~~; & the few \ Customary / Tenants it hath are all of 'em arbitrary. Adam Airay, Doctor in Divinity & Principal of Edmund Hall in Oxford, who built the Tower there, & the Great house over against the Angel; was born at a Tenement over the Sike, standing West from the Hall. about a Stonecast.[185]

[177] This page consists of a scrap piece pasted onto a larger page; it contains text running in four directions and intertwined.
[178] MS: 'Rese.'
[179] Point 5 does not appear.
[180] A further phrase in the MS appears to be 'being scituated at the Poole of […]': the last word is illegible because it is squashed between two lines of text going in opposite directions.
[181] Steward of Barton manor court.
[182] Tail.
[183] See I.671-73, above.
[184] I.693B contains rough sketches, scored through.
[185] An earlier MS note [I.655B] provides similar information.

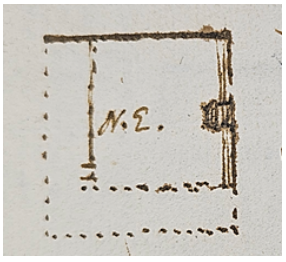


Figure 1.5.15. Sketch Plan of Winder Hall. I.696.

It came to the Davises (as I am told) by purchase (not long agoe) from \ one of / the Stricklands \ whose Armes wee finde placed over the Altar at Fig. 7.[186] / which purchase was made by Mr John Davis, a Master of Art's & som times Schoolmaster of the free Grammer School of Blenkow in Cumberland; {who [blank] Lancelot new builded the house as appears by these Letters above the Hall doer –

LAVS DEO
L.D. AD. 1612.
{? = to Lancaster}

whose descendants are marshalld in the following Pedegree. And now it belongs to Mr John Davyes whose pedigree followeth.

Mr John Davyes
William Davyes of Winder = [Blank] d. of Dr Dawes of Barton Kirk
William Davyes of Winder Obijt 1674 = Elianore d. of Christopher Teasdale of Knipe-hall
[1] William, infans [2] Annas, infans 1689

c. Mr Dobson Steward of Sockbridge[187]

{This place I doubt not, but as it gave name to, so it might belong to a family of the Winders – one of which I finde witness at a Deed Anno 4^0 ~~years in the time of Ed.~~ Richard 2. [1380-1381] of John de Dufton, Chaplain to Eleanore, relict of William de Wibergh, & by the name of Gilbert de Windergh.[188]

[Machell's Notes: I.696]
{<u>In High Winder</u>} q[uery] {115 families vix credo.}[189]
{There are 3 houses in Winder at a place calld Celron; which do Suit and Service at Sockbridge Hall.}

[I.715C]

<u>Low Winder</u>: a manor \ ab Ecclesia S. 1 mile / V or VI families of which 2 are <u>Rateable</u> freeholds. The rest Arbitrary to Mr Will. Davis of Low-Winder Hall, who has a demane belonging unto it.[190] It came to the Davise's, by purchase made from the Stricklands as tis say'd by Mr John Davis a Master of Arts & Schoolmaster of Blenkow.

[186] An identical note has been written in pencil beneath this information and also in the margin. For Figure 7, see I.673, above.
[187] 'With Mr Dobson, keeper of the pedigree.'
[188] The last line of this sentence is obscured by the binding.
[189] 'There are 115 families in High Winder: I scarcely believe it.'
[190] See also I.696.

[I.698]

Martindale {Val Sancti Martini}[191]

{Chappel south-west ab Ecclesia}[192]



Figure 1.5.16. Sketch of Martindale Chapel; its dimensions in paces: l[ength] 22, b[readth] 6, and its bell. I.698.

The manner of Martindale, which semeth so called either from the plenty of Martes that were in it or from an old chaple they have in that place dedicate to St Martyn;[193] which standeth S.W. from the Parish church about 5 \ miles.[194] / {It differs little from a Barne but in the Seates, a Bell hanging at the W. End of it, & a Standing Stone instead of a Font, upon which they place a Bason of water when they Christen their children.} It is a Low and old fashond Building with one bell in it – \ & hath neither a Porch, Ile, nor Piller / simplicitas formae antiquitatis.[195] Nota.

[The Chapel Reader. Narrative I.][196]
~~And here~~ There \ is / little remarquable in or about it, but a neat chappel yard; which by the peculiar care & Industry of one old gentleman \ Sir Richard[197] / the Reader, is kept as clean & neat as a bowling-green; in which particular he is so very \ extreamly / curiouse, that he will not suffer a mole to cast in it but setting all other occasions appart \ aside / he will watch & kill her with his own hand: & if his Cow (which doth sometimes g\r/aze there) leaveing any excrements \ unseamly thing / behinde her, he will take care to remove it him selfe with al possible diligence. And it is his practice every Monday, by times in the morneing, to goe round about the chaple-yard with an hammer in his hand; & if he spies a Stone or a Slate out of due course, or faln down by accident, he will presently mend it; In so much, that the people have not bin troubled with any repares in that stormy place (though they owne the ~~expenses~~ \ charge / to belong to themselves) in \ the compass of 50 or / 60 years ~~compass~~. Heu Pietas! Heu Prisca Fides![198] Within the limits of myne owne memory, all Readers in chappels were called Sirs, and of old have bin writ so, as whence I suppose such of the Laity as received the Noble Order of Knight \ hood / being called Sirs too,

[191] The valley of St Martin.
[192] Machell is describing Martindale Old Church at the foot of Howe Grain, which was rebuilt c. 1633 (Hyde & Pevsner, 513), south-west of the hause. At the top of the hause stands Martindale New Chapel (St Peter's), built 1880-2: Hyde & Pevsner, 512.
[193] MS: '~~N. West from the church a Court [?] miles lyeth~~. The manner of Martindale, which semeth so called, either from the plenty of Martes that ~~are~~ were In In it; or from an old chaple they have in that manner \ place / dedicate to St Martyn.' St Martin (316/336-8 November 397), was the third bishop of Tours. Feast Day (Martinmas) 11 November.
[194] From the parish church of Barton.
[195] 'The simplicity of an ancient form.'
[196] A note relating to the reader on MS.I.699 reads, '{The Reader} He hath a Little house and a Garth belonging it with a stipend of about 6li per annum, laid upon the tenements.'
[197] Richard Birkett, curate of Martindale, 1633-99; see his tombstone in Martindale Churchyard, 'He dyed on the 25th of December in the 95th year of his age anno Domini 1699.' Nightingale, *Ejected of 1662,* 2, 1232.
[198] 'Alas devotion! Alas old-fashioned faith!'

[William Nicolson's Note]

{An additional Note of Bishop Nicolson}

{for Since I can remember there was no't a Reader in any Chappel but was called Sire of old. there were …}[199]

[I.700]

for distinctions sake had Knight writ after them, which had bin superfluous if the Title of Sir ~~were~~ \ had bin / peculiar \ as it seemeth to be now / to them alone. {Here understand me, in English only; for in Latine the word Dominus being proper to a Lord Knight & Gentleman, the word Miles, or Eques, is added for distinctions sake. & to very good purpose.}

But now this Sir Richard is the only Knight-Templar, if I may so call him, that retaines the old stile; \ which / being in other places much \ laid aside and / grown out of use.

{Indowment: Richard Birket the Reader ætat. circiter 74.[200] A great benefactor.}

The ancient Stipend which belong'd to this chappel was XX nobles yearly,[201] out of which Sir Richard has thriven so well that in my Lord Bishop Ranebowes time[202] he was able and willing to give to this Chaple as an Augmentation of the Readers Sallary 100[li] ~~which is well secured~~. And hereupon he got the chappel and for the performance of parochial rights as Chrisening & Burying;[203] the mother Church still receiveing the foes as if they continued to performe them there; and for this Ease which he has procurd them, they gave \ him / allso a little smal fee (of I know not what) \ upon these occasions / besides the Vicars dues & dutyes. ~~And~~ The Chaplaine here is alwayes put in by the Viccars appointment or approbation. {And they may afford him a good reward, for while they buryed their dead at Barton, every Tenant com that would; man & wife, had 3d a piece for attending the Corps, payd in hand at the church stile: which was a great charge to the poorer sorte.}[204]



Figure 1.5.17. Martindale Chapel Plan. I.655B.

[199] This is a margin comment titled, 'An additional note by Bishop Nicolson'. Nicolson clearly intended his interpolation to extend Machell's text, which has a pencilled note below it (still in Machell's hand), which reads, 'But was called Sir – and of old [blank].' Part of Machell's text above the interpolation has been given a pricked line to show dissatisfaction with it, suggesting that Nicolson intended his interpolation to clarify Machell's statement.

[200] 'Aged about 74' when he gave the endowment. According to Birkett's will, the £100 was given by a deed dated 1682: see Richard Birkett 1699, CAC(C), PROB/1699/WX6.

[201] £6 13s 4d.

[202] Edward Rainbow: bishop of Carlisle from 1664 until his death in 1684: Weston, *Carlisle Cathedral History*, 142.

[203] In 1682, Richard Birkett petitioned Bishop Rainbow for the enclosure and consecration of Martindale churchyard; in 1683, another petition requested right of burial. See CAC(C), DRC5.5, a Petition and Instrument of Consecration. The first mention of this church, which was even then an established landmark, is in a deed of gift from William de Lancaster to his half brother Roger de Lancaster of the Forest of Martindale that can be dated between 1220 and 1247: DLons.L5/1/BR/12. Box 451. See also F.W. Ragg, 'de Lancaster', *CW2,*10 (1910), 395-494, at 436-37. It has been assumed that Richard Birkett rebuilt the chapel in 1633, the year in which the Baptism Register for Martindale was also begun; but Machell writes of repair rather than rebuilding, which suggests that the chapel might have been rebuilt before Birkett's induction. There is no mention of the rebuilding in the inscription on Birkett's tomb in the graveyard; neither did Birkett mention rebuilding it when he built a wall at his own expense to enclose the Martindale churchyard before applying to the Bishop (see above) for the consecration of the churchyard and the right of burial there. Birkett highlighted the building of a wall in his petition to the Bishop, who referred to it in his reply (and had even ascertained its dimensions): CAC(C), DRC 5/5. Act Book 1682-92. If Birkett highlighted the building of the churchyard wall, how much more would he have made of rebuilding the chapel? This information owes much to the late Jane Penman's research for her book, *A History of the Martindale Churches: their Pastors and their Flocks* (forthcoming).

[204] 'Charge': the meaning here relates to importance or weight, as in 'having a charge of money about me'. *OED*.

[I.655B]

[The Chapel Reader. Narrative II.]
Martindale Chaple:[205] and old Chaple, remarkable only for the neat keeping of the ch[apel] & chapel yard the heredat[206] of which is to be given to the present Reader; whom they call Sir Richard according to the ancient Stile of the Northern Countrey, who till of late all wayes gave to their Chaplanes & Reader the Title of Sir fixed to their names. But he is now the onely Knight Templar (I may so call them) that is left in the Countrey still reteneing that Title.[207] He is so neat \ & curiouse / ~~about the chaple In & chapl yard~~, that will suffer a slate to fall downe but he putts up with his owne hands; & every Monday in the morning, he goes round ~~& round the chaple yard~~; \ the walls /~~&~~ with an Hammer in his hand & if \ he findes / a stone\ ~~be~~ / out of place or falne \ down / by accident; he mends it himself, \ which is deemd [his] own[208] in so much that the People have not been troubled with any repare. /
If a mole cast in it, he never cieses to watch and attendes till she be taken; & if his cow which grasses som times in the Chaple yard, doe dung therein, he perfectly minde to sweep it away. Hie has served the place [blank] years; and tho his salary, all things considered be by X X [blank][209] – he is growne so rich of it as to be a considerable benefactor [to] the ~~sed~~ Chaple & those that shall succeed him ~~in it;~~ \ there, / having got it consecrated for buriing &c. to with[in] a yard of the chappel walls, for the ease of the people, & left for ever 6^{li} as an augmentation of the sallary for the comfort of the succeding Readers: & the mother church is no way damaged, for the people are bound to pay their full dues for burial &c. as the[y] did.

Machell's Notes: I..655b & I.656]
{*By Mr Dobson & Tho. Atkinson his shepherd, called the prince of shepherds by Mr Lancaster of Hartsop.}
{? sayes there is gle[n] Co in the higlands}[210]
{1 koyn is most on a corner stone.}[211]

[I.704]

[The Chapel Reader. Narrative III.]
The Readers Sallary
He hath a little House by & a Garth or Yard belonging unto it; & 4 dayes mowing which is meeted out – that is to say
In Corneholme 1.[212]
In Wholl Acre 1.
In the Rigg 1.
In Hall-How 1. {ergo an Hall}![213]
All which, with a Rentcharge of eighteen pence got \ of / every Tenement of 10^{sh} Rent; & so proportionably out of other Houses, amountes to XX nobles per Annum.[214]

[I.710]

The Descent of the Manner[215]
This Martindale was of late years in the Hands of Sir Thomas Sandford of Howgil, who had a lease of it from [blank]

[I.671B]

!!! Martindale – in 4 quarters[216]

---

[205] Below the heading is a struck-through plan of Martindale chapel.
[206] 'Heredat', an abbreviated form of 'hereditat': 'he inherits'; in this case, the bishop's grant to Birkett to minister at the chapel.
[207] Knights Templar: see Part 1, Ch.14, Kirkby Thore, I.482-83, I.485.
[208] Problematical interlineation here makes 'deemd' and 'own' unsafe as transcriptions.
[209] See Narrative III: 20 Nobles.
[210] Margin near top LH: very damaged.
[211] Written in the top RH margin.
[212] 1 day.
[213] The potential site of a manor house.
[214] Noble: An English gold coin first minted by Edward III, usually valued at 6s. 8d. (half a mark). *OED*.
[215] A crossed-through note (MS.I.715A) gives, '~~Martindale – query if a manner. The Earle of Sussex~~'
[216] MS.I.671B. Rough notes here are as follows: '1. Howgrane where the chaple at the foot of which by Ulswater Side is an Hamlet of about 9 or 10 famili[e]s called in Speed *Cronicle* the City of Sandwike. With the 2nd 4^{r}. 3. At a Ground,

[I.700]

Martindale is divided into 4 Quarters:

1. Howgrane, in which {the Chappel standeth and wherein Dr Dawes was borne, at a little Tenement called Maud-Slack \ West a Capella / now sold to the Lancasters: He was wontt in his childe hood, to goe unto the hill against which his \ house / standeth & cast ~~little~~ stones downe the chimney into the pot, with several other roguesh tricks; an unhappy boy – but made a good man.[217] {¾ N.W.}
And [Howgrane] hat[h] [blank] families in it, most of them being of the same Tenure with the Tenants of Barton. But the purchase was hard on their sides because before that they payed but only a 2d fine within the forrest & a 4 penny fine in all other parts of the manner; & yet the purchase was at 30 years rent.[218]

{2. Sandwike, at the foote of Howgrane, and by Ulswaterside \ N.W. a Capella ¾; / an Hamlet consisting of about X families, which they will needs say is calld in Speeds *Cron*, the City of Sandwike; but, there is no place here for a City to stand on.

{3. The 3rd is a Grane[219] which runs South out of Sandwike & is called Bowerdale[220] from at west ½ mile.}

[I.699]

4. The fowerth is Fusedale \ N. a Capella 1 mile / which runns up Southwards by Fusedale-beck to the spring-head S.E. from the Chapel 1 mile ½.

[1.700]

I cannot finde any vestigia of a manner house; \ unless Hall-how may direct me to one at the Dale head / the keeper house ~~forresters~~ being the best, which doth belong to the Earle of Sussex. But there were Gentlemen of the name of Martindale to whom this Coate of Armes did belong[221] \ at Fig. 1. / ~~But the c~~ as likewise of the name of Browne as by this Coate \ at Figure 2. / & the names stil remane &c.[222] But the Chief Estate which I can finde did belong to the~~m~~ \ Brownes / here, in this Place. A Tenement of about 10li per Annum called Thrang-Cragg S.W. from the Chapel ¼ of a mile. But they were forresters also & ergo possibly might be Gentlemen, transplanted hither upon that occasion from som other place. Perhaps from Matterdale, for to them this Coat of Arms did belong.[223]

S. out of Sandwik called Bowerdale strike S. wardes up to […] 4. Fusedale which ~~joynes~~ runns \ up / by Fusedale Beck S. which springs […] ~~Swarth beck~~. E. a Capella […].' I.699-700 contains the finished version.

[217] MS I.699 reiterates: '1. – made a Good man.'

[218] MS: 'But the purchase was hard on their sides ~~as~~ because, \ before that / they payed but \ only / a 2d fine within the forrest, & a 4 penny fine in \ all other / parts of the manor ~~without it~~; & yet the~~y~~ ~~payd~~\urchase was at / 30 y rent.'

[219] Grane: 'An offshoot, branch; an arm (of a cross)': *Dictionaries of the Scots Language*, Online.

[220] Boredale.

[221] The Martindale arms are quartered by Musgrave on a shield carved above the entrance to Johnby Hall, dated 1583, with the names William Musgrave and (his wife) Isabel Martendal. See *CFH*, 222.

[222] These figures are somewhat obscured by the binding; see below.

[223] Christopher Browne of Matterdale was buried there in 1677. His arms, Argent three bars Gules over all a bend Azure, see *CFH*, 42. Machell mentions James Browne of Martindale: a captain in Oliver Cromwell's army (I.630, Brougham). This family's part in the Civil War is described in gossipy terms by James Clarke in *A Survey of the Lakes of Cumberland, Westmorland, and Lancashire* (Penrith, 1787), 36-37: 'At How-Town was born James Brown, who, being obliged to fly his country for deer stealing, entered the army under Cromwell, and was by him soon advanced to the rank of captain: He made himself very acceptable to the Usurper, by taking prisoner Sir Timothy Featherstonhaugh at the battle of Worcester. The same Brown had a brother named Richard, whose son James likewise served under Cromwell. Richard, however, being loyal, that he might prevent any others of his sons from entering the service of the parliament, sold How-Town, and purchased a customary tenement at Knott, in the manor of Water-Millock.' The book is described as mixture 'of hearsay and legend … allowing Clarke to expound his often-fanciful theories on their authenticity and their origins.' See https://www.cumbriacountyhistory.org.uk/sites/default/files/westmorland_case_study.pdf, Appendix 1B. If there were two Roundhead family members named James Browne, the family position of the James Browne under discussion on I.630 (Brougham) is not made clear.



Figure 1.5.18. Coats of Arms: Martindale family and Browne of Matterdale. Margin of I.700.

[Machell's Notes: I.700

{Note. 6 bridges repared by themselves.}

[I.654A]

[Martindale Forest]

In the forrest of Martindale there are Tenants bound to assist the Lord in hunting & turne the read Deere on the Tops of the mountains into the forests; whom they call strones,[224] & have for their paines xiii[d] every iiij in drinke &c.[225] They appear upon summons; & if they doe not, they are fineable for it at the Court Baron.

[I.698]

{The Tenants payed a rent of 2s per annum for meal to feed their Lords dogs wherewith they hunted & killed their marts.}

[I.699]

The forrest is bounded about with walls; and is well replennished with ~~a~~ large ~~sort of~~ Read-dear, as also with Goates; & there are ~~also~~ in it Brocks, Martes, & Wildecats, which yield Sport to the Hunters; but none to the Shepherds.

There is a place in the midle Bannerdale called Lords Seat (a chair of stone on the Top an Hill) S. by West 2 miles from the Chappel. And hear they say the Lords usd to sitt & see their greyhounds course the read Deere.

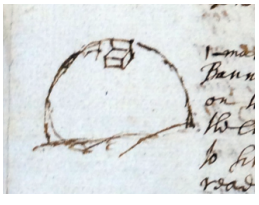


Figure 1.5.19. Lord's Seat, Bannerdale. I.699.

[224] Strones: Nicolson and Burn and the *OED* derive the meaning of this word entirely from Machell; i.e. 'In Martindale Forest, Westmorland, one of the tenants bound to assist the lord in hunting and turning back deer to the forest'. *OED*, and see *N&BI* (410-11), which quotes Machell almost verbatim. This meaning might have sprung from its Scottish form: 'a strone (also stron) is a headland or promontory, especially one that ends a range or ridge of hills, a snub of land'; as in, 'Bold Tushilaw, o'er strone and steep, Pursues the roe and dusky deer.' *Dictionaries of the Scots Language*. Online.

[225] The numbers appear to be XIII, and iiij (13 and 4), but in *N&BI* the numbers given are 8 and 4. See *N&BI,* 411. Machell's representation of 'X 'resembles 'V'; perhaps he made a hurried correction.

[I.704]

The Tenants of Martindale tho Customary were at a fine certaine before their purchase.[226] For those in the forrest were only lyable to a Two penny fine – i.e. for every penny \ rent / they payed 2d, & those which were out of the precincts of it payed a fowerpenny fine And they \ generally / payed ~~moreover~~ a certain rent of 2s per Annum which was called meal silver, for feeding the Dogs which their Lords usd to keep to kill their marts withal.

[I.671B]

[**Martindale: Rarities in Nature**]

[1. The Great Thunder Shower]

The great Thunder Shower 2 or 3 Briggs & a Barne […][227] foundation & all at Sandwike*.[228]
{This till of late (& all Sussex's Estate puto} was in the Crown. i. Sir Thom. Sandford of Howgill Castle had a Lease for Lives of it, jurae uxoris.[229]

[I.699]

*Yet this ~~wee must grant~~ \ must be granted – / That it is no so great as it has bin formerly, for the great Thunder Shower in [Sandwick] ~~besides 2 or 3 bridges~~ demolished a Barne 12 yardes long which stood in this place, & swept away the very foundation of it with 2 or 3 Bridges of Considerable Strength north from hence about ½ a mile.

{At Hellin-Hag by the side Ulswater is an hollow place in the rock like a pott, which (for the most part) hath water in it.[230] It is about a yard in diameter, and as much in depth↓; at the head of which[231] springs Bowerdale Beck W. from the Chappel about a mile.}

[2. Juniper]

On the Top of Pless Fell[232] 3 miles West from the Chaple & said to be in the Libertyes of Martindale, Juniper groweth – And underneath it on Patterdaleside are IX or X familyes, arbitrary Tenants to the E. of Sussex – q[uery] which chaple they use to Bury at &c.

[I.704]

[3. Tarns and wild fowl]

In Martindale there are diverse Tarnes: as Angle Tarne, where Gravyes,[233] Sheldrakes and Seamaws[234] breed; ~~upon whose young ones~~ the Eagles in sommer do frequently prey \ upon the young Seamaws / haveing little or no regard to the old ones. {The like in Ulswater.} Another Tarne on the Top of \ Great / Dod‡ which hath no fish in it but is a refreshment to the wild beasts & is a refuge for wild foole.
There is also great store of Green and Gray plovers & mooregame in it:[235] & ~~also~~ Fieldfairs at the time of the year. But there is scarce a Tree to be seen or heard of in it, unless it be a little Shrub Ewe which growes here

---

[226] 'Before their purchase of the freehold.'
[227] Several words here are obscured by the binding, but note the information on I.699.
[228] The two asterisks in these passeages were placed by Machell to join information placed on two separate pages, each relating to the effects of the thunder-storm at Sandwick.
[229] 'In the right of his wife.'
[230] Kailpot Crags?
[231] At the head of Boredale.
[232] Place Fell.
[233] Discussion of birds at Windermere in *N&B1* (185), is as follows: 'Waterfowl in great plenty resort to this lake, especially in winter, such as Wild Swans, Wild Geese, Duck, Mallard, Teal, Widgeons, Didappers, Gravyes (which are larger than ducks, and build in hollow trees)...' This text has been taken from Machell, II.340. Regarding 'gravy', the following quotation is helpful: 'The Goosander is still called the ' Gravel-duck ' ('or gravy'…) on the shores of the English Solway. I believe that the name refers to the fact that this species often rests on scars of gravel in the bed of the estuary when the tide is out. It may include some further reference to the species obtaining trout in well-shingled pools in preference to a muddy bottom. At all events the Goosander is often called a Gravel-duck.' See H.A. Macpherson, *A Vertebrate Fauna of Lakeland: including Cumberland and Westmorland with Lancashire North of the Sands* (Edinburgh, 1892), 306.
[234] 'Seamew'. In the 17th century: 'sea-maw'. *OED*.
[235] In Martindale.

and there; & Juniper on the Top of Pless-fell W. from the Chappel 1 mile and ½; & som little plantations \ of ashes (or sicamoore trees) / about their dwellings.

{Quarries of Slate}
There is in Pless Fell \ al[ia]s Place Fell / W. from the Chappel about 2 miles ~~indifferent blew slate~~ indifferent good Slate of black blewrish colour ~~which by reason of Ulswater~~ \ by the side of Ulswater which by reason thereof / may be easily brought \ down / into the Countrey. The like ~~is also~~ at Brockcrag; but not so good neither so accessable (for the Countrey), because they Ly farther of from Ulswater \ Sc. a 2 mile and of / ~~are nearer the Chaple side being s.w. from it about 1 mile~~ \ S.W. from the chappel / yet may the[y] be of good use to the neighbourhood.

[I.699]

And at Banerdale within this forrest S.W. from the chappel 1 mile & ½, is a mine of [blank] discovered 9 inch thick; & I my selfe saw in Creüka-beck Wath in the way to Hartsop a veine of Lead-Spar, but in what Lordship I have not yet learned†.

[Machell's Notes I.699 & I.704]

[I.699]
†{? Q[uery] where it stands: what part}
[I.704]
‡{Many round topd fells of that name which are craggy, not picked like others: ergo Explane it.}

[I.706]

Patterdale {Vallis Sancti Patricij}

[Patterdale Chapel]

{St Patric's Well in the Demaine of Pat.}
The manner of Patterdale, Taketh Its name from the Chaple there, ~~dedicated~~ at the High end of Ulswater S.W. from the Church about 8 miles; which I take to be dedicated to St Patrick;[236] and therefore the Rather because There is (in the Highway to Penrith N. from the Chaple about 2 Bow Shots, and halfe as much from Patterdale Hall) a Curiouse Spring Covered ~~over~~ with a broad blew-Slate, and calld by the name of St Patrick's Well.

{Patterdale Chapel description}
This chappel being remote from the church; the weather sometimes very Tempestuous {& water unpassable at P[atterdale] S[pring]} \ may seem to have had Parochial rights from the very beginning. It hath little more of Elegance in it[237] than Martindale Chappel, save only \ a / porch ~~and a little~~ on the S. Side of it, & a little ~~outshut~~ quier \ shuttinge out / on the north ~~side of it~~; which apperteineth to Patterdale Hall and may seeme to bespeake the old proprietors \ possessors of that estate / if not founders \ of; / yet at the least the chiefe benefactours to \ this / ancient fabric.

{The Ew. Tree}
The Antiquity of which may in som part appear from an old Ewe-Tree (now much in decay) whose body extendeth almost to 4 fathem, & whose branches reacheth, in the diameter [blank]

[236] According to T.H.B. Graham and W.G. Collingwood, it is doubtful whether St Patrick was the true patron of some dedications in Carlisle diocese. Patterdale was more probably the 'dale of [a man named] Patrick [or Patraic]' [possibly of 10th century Norse-Irish descent], whence the dedication of the chapel and well. The dedication has also been attributed to St Swithun. T.H.B. Graham and W.G. Collingwood, 'Patron Saints of the Diocese of Carlisle', *CW2*, 25 (1925), 1-27 at 12, 15.
[237] MS: '{But hath little more in it} It hath little more of Elegance In It…'

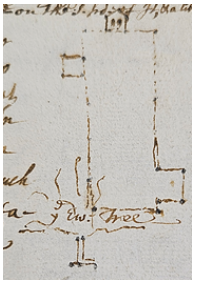


Figure 1.5.20. Sketch of Patterdale Chapel and yew tree. I.706.

{Cross}
But there is nothing else of Remarqe \ in or / about it save onely the fragments of an old cross, curiously-carved.

[I.725C]



Figure 1.5.21. Patterdale Chapel Plan. I.725C.

[Body of the chapel measures] 7 [paces N. to S.] 18 [E. to W.] 5.
[In the quire] Patterdale Hall [seats].
A Beam end with these figures, 1663. There has bin a Beautiful Cross in this place; as appears by a piece[238] which is neatly carved yet standing up; and another part of it lying in the Chaple.
Martindale chaple is yett a very ancient building as appears by an Ewe Tree at the west end of it now much in decay, whose body is near upon 4 fathom \ about. / And the Branches extend to 22 passes; which will make the Diameter of at lest 66 (a vast circumference for a Tree to spread) which stands at the S.E. corner of it.

{The Endowment}
What the ancient endowment of this chapel was, I can not learn; but it hath (now) belonging unto it a Piece of Glebe \ land / with ~~the~~ \ a / Third part of the Wool & Lamb & Easter booke in Patterdale onely, amounting in all to about 18^{li} per annum, for which he payes as an acknowledgement (and to Indemnify the mother church) 4^{li} per annum to the Vicar of Barton for the Time being; who is oblieged to preach at this chappel 4 Times a year. And they have a Sallary of 5^{li} per annum \ besides quarteridge[239] / payd by the neighbourhood out of a School Stock ~~besides quarteridge~~ to any one who shal be imploy'd as a School-master \ there; / which the reader also injoyeth \ himself, according to Canon[240] as an augmentation of his S[alary] / if he be in health & willing to Teach*.

[Machell's Notes: I.706]

About 60 families of which 3 are free but under rate. This must be in the whole.}
*{Richard Grisdale now master, the reader being sick.}[241]

[238] MS: 'Pieces'.
[239] Quarterage: payment made quarterly: a contribution, tax, or other charge paid by a person every quarter. *OED*.
[240] 'According to Canon Law': the 151 canons of the Church of England, 1604-1606. See https://www.anglican.net/doctrines/1604-canon-law/
[241] In the Commonwealth Survey of 1657, Peter Birkett, ordained in 1623, is listed as the reader at Patterdale; he held the living until his death in 1671/2. Nightingale suggests that he might have been related to Martindale's Richard Birkett, who is listed as reader at Patterdale in 1691. See Nightingale, *Ejected of 1662*, 2, 1230; CCED.

[**Manor of Patterdale**]

[I.708]

There are 2 Manners within the precinct of the Chaple: Sc. - 1. Patterdale 2. Hartsop.

[Wild Cats]
In this manner are Great Store of wilde catts; almost of the bigness & colour of a fox but Branded ~~and stroked over with~~ here and there with Blak Strokes a thwart their Bodyes; for the Skin's of which if kild in Season; i.e. they have xii[d] a piece: and as much for their heads, which is payd by the Churchwardens.

[I.707]

It seems the Hunting of the wilde cat was looked upon in former ages as a noble Sporte; for John the Brother of William Lord Ros* who was Constituted by King Edward 3. in the 10[th] his Reigne [1336-1337], Admirall of the Seas from the River Thames Northwards, amongst other Libertyes Granted unto by the said King – had that of Hunting the Fox, Woofe, Hare & Cat through out the Kings Forrest of Northamptonshire†.[242]

[Machell's Notes: I.707]

*(Baron of Hamlake – T.M. puto)[243]
†Note: ergo – wolves then – No wonder wee have \ so many / places called from Cats.

[I.708]

[Martes][244]
They have also in their craggy mountaines great store of Martes which are Excellent furr; (also Badgers and Foxes more than enough){Not to mention foxes}[245] al these Creatures being fatall enemyes to their Ews and Lambs – And it is believed that they \ have / had formerly wilde Bores in this Dale and partes adjacent, from the names of ~~several~~ places taken from Swine: as Grisedale & Stibarrow*, the latter of which is a monstrous strong Rock in this Lordship on the West Side of Ulswater; & in the way to Barton & Penrith – where there is a Strait passage about 2 yards broad, haveing an High hanging-rock on the one side, which threatens passengers to fall upon them \ but above all a Lowther or / Lancaster, if you give credit to Gillimans prophecy.[246] & on the other a deep & steep precipice into Ulswater, which plums in that place (as the people tell me) ful 60 yards. Here a few men may defend the passage against a great army; which the neighbourhood did in 48 {in the late Civil} – for they Mortessed \ boared/ a hole through a \ an oake / tree which stood upon the Brinke of the ~~Uls~~water, & drive a Bar through it into the Rock on the other side.[247] & so posted themselves that they diverted the who[le] Scottish Army from coming amongst them, and turned them off into Bampton Parish where they had a sore Skirmish as shal be declared in due time & place.

And here there hapned 2 very strange Accidents. one of which ~~was~~ \ is / that a Scotch pedler \ 8 / year agoe in the Sommer time {now 1689. St James};[248] he, resting himselfe with his pack upon his Shoulders, and lying & lokeing upon the fish which were sporting (see p.712)[249]

[Machell's Notes: I.708]

*{Stybarrow.}

[I.712]

themselves in the water below; haveing reached too far, was through the weight of his pack behinde him cast down headlong into the \ deep / water, & yet scap'd with life.

---

[242] MS following, in pencil and scored through: '~~But Gillimans prophecy as they will tell you [illeg.] above all a Lowther & Lancaster if that will give credit to Gillimans prophecy~~.' I.708 contains the corrected text.
[243] 'Perhaps. [Signed by] Thomas Machell.'
[244] See the English Glossary.
[245] This comment is almost certainly in William Nicolson's hand.
[246] See I.340 [Appleby] 'Gillimans wife, aliis Mother Shipton, as has bin said, deliverd this rime when she passed over that beck.'
[247] They bored a hole through an oak tree on one side of the road, and through it they drove a [metal] bar into the rock opposite.
[248] St James's Day: 25 July.
[249] The 'ing' ending and bracketed instruction are written in a hand resembling William Nicolson's. Further instruction (II.712) urges the reader to '{Turn back to p.708.}' These pages are brought together in this edition.

The other was in the Late Sharp Winter that one John Dobson (son of James Dobson of Wethermelock), who for that reason has \ caused the Countrey to / repare the way since) fell in \ (~~here~~) / on horse back; \ And whilst /a neighbour (who was there with him & saw him sinke) was lamenting the loss, saying 'alas I shal never see him more!' he popt up \ agane / by the side of the Rock; and getting \ hold / of som shrubs that grew there, he unexpectedly answer'd him ~~agane~~; \ thence / 'yes, thou may com to see mee agane, but will never see my horse agane.' Yet the \ Horse also, / after he came from the bottom \ of the water, / swam to a shallow part of the shore, & so (with Gods help) they were both preserved*.[250]

{Ulswater: Ile of Cherry Holm}
~~And~~ Som part of this water \ (Sc. the W. Side) is said to be / also in the Manor of Patterdale, together with an Ile called Cherry Holme near the head of it; which was so named from a Cherry Tree (in the memory of man) growing therein; being a place of deligh[t] & pleasure, to which they goe with their fishing Boates. And here, at the very head of the Lake; where the River I, comes into the Mote, (whence I take it, the \ stream / below which Isues out ~~of it~~ \ at the foote of Ulswater / is called Imote) are taken at Michaelmas (but out of season) great store of noble & prodigiouse Troutes called Gray-Troutes, as read and as large as an ordnary Salmon: nay som has bin taken a full yard long and as much in circumference†, which tho they swim all over the water, yet I refer them to this place especially, because they are mostly taken here. I have also seen & eaten of them.

[Machell's Notes: I.712]

*From his fathers and his own mouth.
†Mr John Mounsey who tooke them.

[I.714]

{**Patterdale Hall***}

{And hardby this place on the West Side of the abode a Bowshot here of[f] ~~the poole~~ Ulswater and about a bowshot}[251] North from the Chappel, yet a little inclineing to the west, stands Patterdale-Hall, & fronteth towards it. A pretty tite house, \ considering these partes / with a Court & Orchard; and little Terras walke at the doer where you enter the House, ascending to it by 5 or 6 steps. On the West Side of it is nothing \ else / but vast ~~great~~ Rocks & Mountaine, 2 of the Greatest in the North of England (Crosfell & Skidda only excepted) being in this manner†. But those that are adjoyneing this House (especially that \ near / Mosedale beck which lookes like a delicate piece of Arras,[252] & has a walke in the midle of it) – are prettily covered over with wood, in which amongst other sortes of Birds, the Sparrow-hawke delighteth ~~for~~ to bread \ dwell build;[253] / But the Opposit Side is a verry craggy and amazeing prospect; & yet even there (i.e. upon Pless-fell) doth your Juniper grow.

But the principal things I thought worth my notice at Patterdale-Hall were 2 Escutchions over the doer in the 2 Angles of the Lintal Stone – And a pretty rustick sort of Pavement in the Hall floore, made of the Sherds and fragments of Slates pitched on Edge; which, as I doe not dislike it within-doors, for a common roome; so I highly commend It for an Outer court; to those that shal have occasion to use It‡.[254]

[250] MS: '& so (with Gods help) they ~~both escaped~~ \ were both / ~~saved.~~ (b) preserved. {~~Propheey~~}.'
[251] Represented in the MS by a small sketch of a bow.
[252] 'Arras': a rich tapestry fabric originating in Artois, France, in which figures and scenes are woven in colours; also, cloth of arras. *OED*.
[253] Three alternatives are given here.
[254] MS.I.715A gives a scored-through draft of this paragraph, but with a different emphasis. Viz. 'But the principal things I though[t] worth my notice at Patterdale Hall, was 2 Escutchons over the doer in the 2 Angles of the Lintal Stone, and a pretty rustic sort of pavement in the Hall floore, made of the Sherds & fragments of Slates, pitched downe or ad vale by Edge, which looke well here but would better becom an outer Court.' See the Figure on I.715B, below.



Figure 1.5.22. Two escutcheons on the lintel over the door at Patterdale Hall. I.714.

[Mounsey Family]
A great part of this Hall was \ of / or Beautified by Mr John Mou[n]sey in 1677,[255] whom they commonly call King a Patter dale, being \ the most jolly / a free princely man in this part of the Countrey, who lives as it were in another world, and hath no man near him greater than himselfe.

[Machell's Notes: I.714]
*Bring in Sparrow Hawkes when you speake of the wood about the House – & there mention also the bonny Rock with a walk about the midle of it.[256]
†{Catstee-Cam; Elvel–in & Edward Dove.}
‡{George Scot & John Robinson of Troutbeck in the Barony of Kendall did the worke for 6d or 8d a day.}
{Were there viii, ix or x families.}

[I.715A]

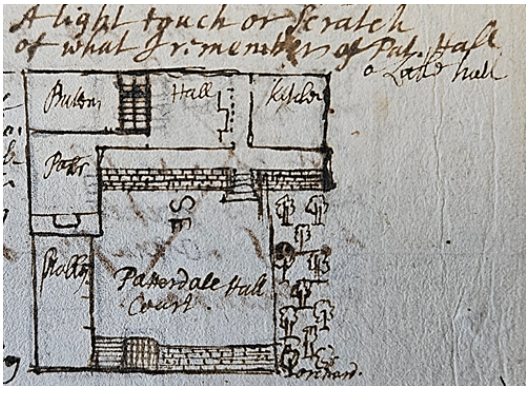


Figure 1.5.23. 'A light touch or scratch of what I remember of Patterdale Hall: a Little hall'. I.715A.

[Mounsey Descent]

1. Thomas Heir of Crosdormont now sold. 2. George Mousey of ~~Crosdormont~~ = Joan Collin of Tongham near Gilford in Surrey
a Tenant Right Stuart at Graystock to Ann Countis of Arundel
|
Cudbert now of Stainton; Franc; Thom; Will; George; John King in Patterdale = Dorathy Harrison of Glencoyne
|
1. John, an attorney; 2. George; 3. William; 4. Thomas; 5. Jonathan; Mary = John Watson of Grised[ale]; Cath. = Jo. Harrison of Bleawth; Joan mar. to Jo. Threlkeld of Nelhouse in Pat.; Dor[athy]

[255] For more on John Mounsey's inheritance, see I.176, below. See also, W.P. Morris, *Records of Patterdale, Historical and Descriptive* (Kendal, 1903).
[256] A note, placed originally on MS.I.713.

[I.715B]



Figure 1.5.24. Patterdale Hall Floor slates. 'These do very well – for an Hall flooer, But would be better for a Co[urt]' I.715B.[257]

[I.716]

The Pedegree of the Mou[n]seys of Patterdale is as followeth. – begineth at the*.

1. Thomas Mousey heir of Trostermont who sold it away			2. George Mounsey Stuart at Graystocke to the Countess of Arundell		=	Joan Collin of Tengham near Gilford in Surrey				
				I						
6. Cuthbert now of Stainton	5. Francis	4. Thomas	3. William	2. George	*1. John Mousey, now living aet 60	=	Dorothy Harrison of Glenkëun			
	5. Jonathan	4. Thomas	3. William	2. George	1. John an Attorney at Penrith		Mary = to Wilson of Grisedal	Katherine = to Harrison of Bleawth	Joan = to Threlkeld of Nelhouse	Dor[othy]

{Glen ridden falsely writt in the map: Glenk roden}
In the manner of Patterdale N. from the Hall about [blank] is a little Gill called Glen ridden from the Scottish word glen, which signifies \ a Gill or Hollow, / and Ridden – the name of the River which rises at Catstee and runns thence Eastwards with a swift & quick stream into Ulswater. It hath som wood growing about it & amongst the rest som Shrubs of Ewes*; and [though] the place be but of smal compass it conteineth in it about 20 families, one of which is a freehold, Sc. Cuthbert Mou[n]sey. The rest are customary, but ~~all at fine certaine~~ purchased to a fowerpenny fine† of Mr Richard Threlkeld of Patterdale & Thomas his son; excepting only 5 or 6 \ of them / who still remane arbitrary ~~to Mr Mousey~~.[258]

These and the rest of Tenants [are] in the manner of Patterdale & doe all Suit & Service at Patterdale Hall to Mr John Mou[n]sey the present Lord, whom wee may call \ properly enough / Johanes de Montibus from the place he lives in (Except for VIII or IX on the East side of Ulswater;[259] 5 which \ do / belong to my Lord of Sussex \ and / are perhaps in \ verge of / Patterdale, ~~together with those in Grisdale but not in the manner~~ but not strictly now in the manner because they do Suit {& Service at Pooley; for the division betwixt this & Martindale is upon Plass-fel as heaven water deales; so that these Tenants are in Patterdale manner but answer for themselves at the manner of Barton, as being Tenants to my Lord of Sussex.)}[260]
The Estate of [John Mounsey's] Ancestours was at Tristermont in the Lordship of Barton, which was sold by his unkle Thomas Mounsey, brother to [Blank]{who was the heir of it;[261] And George the 2nd Brother of

[257] Machell would have preferred to see the tiles in an outer court: see I.714 and I.715A.
[258] 'Arbitrary': see the English Glossary.
[259] MS: '(~~for these~~ \ for / VIII or IX on the East side of Ulswater.'
[260] Because it moves to and fro between body text and margin, and has several interlineations and crossings through, the narrative here has been rearranged to make best sense of the material.
[261] MS: 'The ~~Paternal~~ Estate \ of his Ancestoars / ~~which he was borne to~~, was \ at / Tristermont in the Lordship of Barton \ which was sold by his unkle Thomas Mousey ~~the elder~~ brother to {who was the heir of it.'

Thomas, being Steward at Graystock \ to Ann Countess of Arundell, / left so much behinde him when he dyed, that Joan his widdow purchased this Lordship of Patterdale for John her son in his minority of one Mr Thomas Threlkeld, Lord of Patterdale, in whose name & Family it had continued (as is believed) many hundreds of years;[262] yet I finde no Coat of Armes in the Hall or Chappel of Patterdale relateing to them. But they may seem to be descended of the Threlkelds of Yanewath.[263]

[Machell's Notes: I.716]

*{Query of M[ano]r. How it stands – & if ruf Rock […]}[264]
†{how – 4[d] or?}
{In Kiple-Cove, Read-Tarne & Glenridden: only Trouts}
{William de Lanc[aster] de Kendal gave Patterdale to Roger de Lancaster and Margaret de Ross gave him Ridal. temp. Ed. 1. out of Fleming Pedegree in Dugdale.}

[I.717]

{Glenkeun}
Near to Glenridden V[ale] lyeth Glen keun a little further to the North; as much as to say a glen in a corner, Keun, Coyn or Corner being one & the same. There is a Beck ~~in the head of this~~ call'd by this name, which springs at the very head of this dale, & runneth thence Eastwards into Ulswater (and this is 2 miles N. from the chappel) att the foote of which are 2 or 3 familyes which live in Westmorland i.e. on this Side the River, \ Glenkeun which parteth the Countyes / & so pay all dues and dutyes to Westmorland; yet doe they Suit and Service to Graystock, haveing lands on both sides; for which they pay an Arbitrary fine (& the best good they have in the name of an Heriot) \ to Graystock Castle. / ~~at the times accustomed~~ Yet for their houses & Lands on this Side, they being adjoyneing to the manner of Patterdale may ~~be supposed to have bin~~ seam to have bin bought-of from thence; and by the vicinity of their other Lands annexed to Graystock, which now through Custom is rendered [blank].[265]

[I.718]

Grisedale in Paterdale
Near Patterdale Chappel, at the W. end of it lyeth a little hollow or Gill, which they call Grisedale which (as has bin said) is calld in the Court[266] by Name of a Forrest; thoug[h] a very smal one, for there are but 9 or 10 familyes in it, of the same Tenure with the rest of the Tenants which belong to Barton: {& may seem to be parcel of the manner of Patterdale.} The word Grice or Grise is yet in use amongst northern People to signify swine; & it may well seem to have taken its name from being frequented with the wilde Boares, which are Beasts of the Forrest: {& perhaps there have bin deer \ also / for there is a place in it calld Glemara Park.}

[**Eagles**]

{Of Eagle Crag in Patterdale}
In the very head of this dale is a Rocky mountaine which they call Eagle-Crag because the Eagles are wont to nest; near unto which there is a lead mine.
About the year 1679, one Christopher Dawes, 24 years of age, spying an Eagle in the bottom of this Dale which was feeding on a sheep; and either for want of aer to waft her, or by haveing filld her belly too full, was not able to rise: he struck freely at her with his fell-staff {a sort of pike staff 2 yards long, with a pike of Iron in the End to stick in the ground & secure you from falling when you go up or down a mountain} & broake her wing; upon which she betooke herselfe \ for shelter / to a great stone, and thence made her Salleys as she saw occasion, wounding him in the leggs with her Tallons, & beating him briskely with her

[262] See *CFH*, 234.
[263] MS: 'that Joan his widdow purchased this Lordship for John her son in his minority, of one Mr} ~~But in his minority his mother Jane Mounsey purchased for him this~~ Lordship of Patterdale: of one Mr \ Thomas / Threlkeld \ Lord of Patterdale / in whose name & Family It had continued (as is believed) many hundreds of years; yet I finde no Coat of Armes in the Hall or Chappel, \ of Patterdale / relateing to them ~~or Any other family that livd in these partes~~.' William Threlkeld's marriage to Isabel Hastings brought estates at Yanwath, Crosby Ravensworth, Tebay and Roundthwaite into the family. In 1341, William Threlkeld bore … a maunch … in chief six annulets. In 1344 he sealed a charter with a shield displaying … three maunches (CAC(C)/ DLons/Early Deeds/T22). When sheriff of Cumberland, William's Arms were given as Ermine a maunch Gules. See *CFH*, 339.
[264] Four words follow, but the ink is too faint to allow their accurate transcription.
[265] The text stops abruptly here; no text on surrounding pages continues it.
[266] Court Rolls.

wings. But at last when he had no other shifts,[267] he fel down upon her with his whol body; & tooke her alive.

{Deepdale}
And higher up; Sc. 1 mile S. from the chappel is a place called Deepdale, from the lowness of the scituation, in which are 10 families of Arbitrary Tenants, who also pay their best beastes as an Heriot; & though they be not within the manor, yet they hold of the Lord of Graystock in the County of Cumberland. & 2 miles further S. \ from hence / in an huge Rock which is called Ling-Cove, & stands west from Hartsop about a mile, are large Eagles bred. This place is thought to have bin formerly a manner of itselfe; for there is a Demane, a place call'd the Parke, and another place in it call'd the Hall \ Green / where it is supposed the mannerhouse stood, \ which is / S. from the chaple about 1 mile.

{Of taking another eagle, 1669}[268]
In 1669, one William Thomas of Deepdale Bridge End, being but a youth of 17 years old, Encountor an Eagle on the like occasion, but shee it seemeth was not able to flye by reason her feathers were moulted[269] & spent by {hatching: see p.724.}[270]

[I.724]

{See above p.718; account of taking an Eagle)[271]
hatching her Young ones, for it was about midsomer tide. He chased her several times round a stone; and at last tooke her by falling upon her, but not without som loss of blood.

[I.718]

Mr Mounsey, to whom she was brought alive; & who kept her a week and kild her afterwards by running a penknife into her heart; and gave the Coat of her to Thomas Smyth a Newcastle merchant, for 3lb of Tobacco.

[I.724A]



Figure 1.5.25. An eagle displayed: inked on the left, pencilled on the right. I.724A.[272]

[267] 'Shift': available means of effecting an end. Often in phrase, (to have) no other shift. *OED*.
[268] This heading is written in another hand.
[269] MS: 'mouted'.
[270] The margin heading and note are in another hand (probably William Nicolson's), but the narrative throughout is in Machell's hand.
[271] Written in two different hands.
[272] The eagle 'displayed' is reminiscent of medieval heraldic eagles, well known to Machell.

A sort \ of / eagle called an Iron \ or Earn or Erne[273] / here; in Scotland a Naron, being of a Blackish brown Colour.[274] From the point of one wing to the other – 6 foot 4 inches. From the End of the Becke to the point of the Tale, 3 foot 4 inches.[275]
~~I know not that this belongs to p.723~~.[276]

Hartsop

[I.655b]

[Machell's Initial Notes]
The Hall under a High Banke of wood. Hartsop Wood.
~~Low~~ Nether Hartsop Beck ½ a mile N.E. is the chief hed of Emot & springs ~~as I~~ near Jackbrige in this Lordship. No brig now. Bruder Water 4 miles every way.
Hartsop. A Mart ciesed a wether on the Top of Lingy-Crag\ adjoyning/ an high mou[n]tane, which sat upon his neck, till the wether ran down to Bro\w/n heath in the bottom\ or field/ and there killd him – being ½ a mile.

[I.720]

{In Hartsop – about XXIX freeholds lately purchased of Sir John Lowther of Sockbridge Baronet.[277] & about XI or XII Customary Tenants who pay fine Arbitrary, and for their Heriots the best Sheep they have; as the other did before their purchase; inf. Mr Dobson. Sure he means of all that appear at H[artsop]}
{?}[278]

Manor of Hartsop
In the head of this Dale lyes the manner of Hartsop, which is divided into Nether Hartsop, consisting of about 15[279] familys (near unto which, up in the mountaine at a place calld Jack-Bridge, \ where there is no Bridge now / springs the Chief and Principal head of Ulswater); & Upper Hartsop which is an Hamlet of about 5 families at the South Side, but East Side of Broader-Water,[280] which is a Lake about a quarter of a mile in diameter, & as long as broad, spring at [blank], and thence coming downe by Hartsop Hall in a smal rill which because in this place it extendeth it selfe into a large compass \ Sc. 1 quarter every way / is call'd Broader Water, wherein are Gray-trouts†, Chars &c. as you have in Ulswater, into which (haveing joyned with the Rill that comes ~~down~~ from Nether Hartsop a little below the Village or Town and takeing in several other Becks or Brookes)[281] it runns \ near Patterdale chaple / 2 miles below; and in this course twixt the head of Hartsop & the head of Ulswater, 5 stroane[282] bridges were driven down by the thunder shower.}

{Hartsop hall, a little black ruinous house} [Narrative 1.]
Upon this lake is kept a fishing boate both for profit & pleasure; which belongeth the farmers of Hartsop Hall, which is the \ manor house of this Lordship. / It is a little low ~~dwelling house~~ \ blackish building on the W. Side of the Head of Broader Water, S. from the chaple about 2 miles and \ S.W. / from the Parish Church of Barton 10 miles ~~S.W.~~. {It stands ½ S.W. from Nether Hartsop.} It fronteth Eastward (if it may be said to have any front) towards Upper Hartsop; & standeth under a lofty Banke of wood on the west side, which

[273] Interpolation in another hand.
[274] In Scotland: erne; herne, eyrn (e, eirn-, airne) an eagle (*Dictionaries of the Scots Language*, Online). In England: earn, ærn, arn(e); also, ern, eerne, eren, erne. *OED*.
[275] 'Or Earn or Erne': this addition might have been written by William Nicolson or a contemporary.
[276] In another hand, possibly Bishop Nicolson's.
[277] MS.I.715A contains this note: 'Sir John of Sockbridge his 34. Ten. sold free'.
[278] That is, to do suit there.
[279] The number appears to have been added later, supplanting a line of text which has been almost completely erased.
[280] Brothers Water.
[281] MS: 'and takeing in Several Other Becks or Brookes … in haveing taken into it many other brookes'
[282] '5 stroane bridges.' 'Strone' means, to urinate; a gush or spurt of any liquid: *Dictionaries of the Scots Language* Online. Perhaps Machell meant 'strong' or 'stone'. Elsewhere, he described the bridges as being 'of considerable strength.' Viz. '… for the great Thunder Shower … demolished a Barne 12 yardes long which stood in this place, & swept away the very foundation of it with 2 or 3 Bridges of Considerable Strength north from hence about ½ a mile.' (See I.699). Elsewhere, he tended to distinguish between wooden and stone bridges.

hides a great part of a Rugged fell that over tops it. But there is little \ ~~either~~ / in or about it which may bespeake it a Gentlemans Seate – excepting only – these Badges of Honour,[283]

[I.722]

~~From~~ the latter ~~of the which~~ if it be not the Crest of their \ Coat of / armes, may have relation to the Family of Dakers, whose Armes are 3 Escallops. But the other is certainely the Armes of the family which belong'd to this place; for they are quartered with the Lancasters of Sockbridge at Sockbridge Hall, tho with som little difference, for \ only / there, upon every one of the Staggs heads, is placed a Mound Royal.[284] \ But / here is one also (but that \ if it may be called one, for / they looke liker unto Bezants in this plasterworke charged with Crosses) in the fess point.[285] And what is more strange, in that on the porch at Barton church (which is the oldest there \ by much /) is none mound at all.\ But only 3 Staggs or Hartes heads cabbosed.[286] / However I conclude from this beareing (for want of better Instructions at present) that the family which was seated hear, & transplanted hence to a better Soyle at Sockbridge Hall, was called by the \ Sir / name of Hart-sop*. At the Court Barron which is holden here appear (besides the Tenants of Hartsop) VII Customary Tenants from the Town of A\m/bleside in the Barony of Kendal, & XII from Troutbeck; which I take to be purchased by the owners of Hartsop out of those manors, and in after ages to be fixd to this place through Custom & Curtesy.

[Machell's Notes: I.722]

*{Sed tamen qu.?}[287]

[I.725A][288]

[Hartsop Hall. Narrative 2.]
Hartsop Hall is a little old black building \ under a very high banke of wood called The Parke? / Nothing rema[r]kable in it \ to bespeake it a Gentlemans / but this Coat of Armes, & good Beames & Joystes over the parlour! It fronts E. \ ward / and stands at the upper End of Brother Water[289] at the S. End on the W. Side. There is a place like an oven, but with a little Ledge or Seat, lik[e] a Bedhead, which they [say] was used to hide the Papist Preast!!! if not upon som other occasion.



Figure 1.5.26. Hartsop Hall sketches. I.725A.

[283] See a coat of arms on I.725A, below.
[284] Mound Royal: an orb surrounded by a cross (Smith, *Place-Names*, 229).
[285] Bezant: gold coin struck at Byzantium or Constantinople similar to the Roman solidus; varying in value between the English sovereign, half-sovereign or less; current in England until superseded by the noble, a coin of Edward III. *OED*.
[286] 'Cabossed': borne (as the head of a stag or bull) full-faced; cut off behind the ears to show no part of the neck. *OED*.
[287] 'But, on the other hand, query?' 'Nothing definite appears to be known about this family.' *AWL*, 150-51.
[288] In the margin: two sketch plans of Hartsop Hall; coat of arms on the closet partition; plaster work in the parte loft.
[289] See reference to Broader Water (I.720).



[Key]
a. Hall.
b. Melldoers[290]
c. Chamber
d. Stable
e.f. Butterys
g. Parlour closset h. Parlour.
In the Parlour
In Plaster on the closet Partition. The Same was lately in Glass in the Hall window.

Figure 1.5.27. Hartsop Hall Ground Plan. I.725A.

[I.726]

In the Demaine which belongs to this House, Lead Oare has bin gotten; and in diging for it a sort of mineral of the colour brick.[291] {There are also blew slates extraordnary fine, 3 feet long & 2 broad; which bear water well, in Upperdale S.E. from the chappel about 3 miles; & in Netherdale in the same beareing 2 miles from the chaple; which may be transmitted into the Countrey by boats down Ulswater.} It is preety well wooded considering the place, and amongst other Trees affordes good Store of small sh\r/ubby Ewe, which with due care, would grow up to Trees.
A mile south from Hartsop hall is a place called Aisdale, or Haisdal; from Hais-water*, a Tarne that affordes Troutes, Skellyes & Eales. And in Angletarne Between Hartsop & Martindale† are 2 little hills whear Sea-maws, ducks and other such fowle \ are wont / to build & bread.

[Machell's Notes. I.726]

*{Hawswater in Hawsdale?}
†(query: in which?

[I.725A]

[Upper Hartsop]
At a little distance \ & / the breadth of a medow, lyes Upper Hartsop – of about V familes – in the road from these partes / to Kendal; and Nether Hartsop; consisting of [blank], which both together make [blank], lyes in another grane of fells at the foot of Great Dod? coming in betwixt them.

[I.726]

[Marts]
They have great Store of Marts hereabouts, som of which are very perniciouse, not only to their Lambs but old Sheep too; for not long agoe ~~there was~~ one of them seised on a Good Strong-Weather,[292] leaping unto his neck on the Top of a mountaine \ which is / on the East Side of Nether-Hartsop called Lingy-Crag; & Stooke so fast with its tallents upon him that though he bounced, ran, down the Skar, \ which is ½ a mile high, / yet he never lost his hold; and \ when / he came at a place in the bottom which is called Brown-Leath, there he killd the Weather outright; which is very much for such a small creature to do – yet these unlucky vermin do bring sua commoda secum;[293] for the[y] get large prices \ 6 shillings a piece / for the skins ~~of them~~ .[294]

[290] '*Mel* being an old word which signifies *between*; so the passage betwixt two doors is called *Meldoors*': *N&B1*, 545. See 'mell passage' in William Rollinson, *Dictionary of Cumbrian Dialect, Tradition and Folklore* (Otley, 1997), 107.
[291] MS: 'and \ in diging for It / a sort of mineral in digging for It of the Colour brick.'
[292] Wether: castrated male sheep.
[293] 'They bring their advantages with them.'
[294] MS.I.725A contains another version: 'This place affo[r]ds great Store of \ Clean / Martes; which are Excellent firr, the skines being worth for the most part 6^{s} a piece: But they are a fatal foe to their Lames; yea their larger sheep are obnexiouseto them; for being a very nimble Creature & haveing long clawes, the[y] leap pon the neck \ back / \ shoulder/ of the[m]; & keep their hold till have woryed them; of which there hapned a notable instance [blank] here in this place.' See also Patterdale (I.708).

Of Ulswater & Imote

{The course of Emote or Eyemote}
The head of Emote must be fetched from the Highest or Greatest Spring; and that is at Kirkston Fell* in the Manor of Hartsop, which divides the countyes of Westm'land & Cumberland.
Thence it runns ~~into Broder Water~~ on the East Side of Hartsop hall into a lough called Broader Water. being called Hartsop beck till it comes there, and agane afterwards; haveing received Haiswater into \ it / a little below Hartsop, it carryes the name of Hartsop beck till out of the Lordship†. Others say it springs at Jack Brig, and is called Hartsop Beck till out of the Lordship; that it meets with Deepdale-beck, which comes E. into it from Glencone, & so carryes the name of Deepdale beck till it comes to Goldrel brigg near Patterdale Chappel‡ where Grisedale Beck comes in from the W.; & hence it is called by the name of I (or e as \ wee / commonly use to pronounce it here in these partes) from the streightness of it here; as the River X on which Excester stands is so calld from the figurlet which it hath of that letter.

[Machell's Notes: I.726]

*dub? {?}[295]
†{Query: where the other Hartsop beck comes in by Haiswater; which is said to be the great current & to spring at Jack Brigg?}
‡{?}

[I.727]

Thence N.W. to Sockbridge \ & / so on to Yane[wath] & Bridge, which 2 Lordships wee shall now discourse of, as thence by Brow[ha]m Castle, Nine Churrch & Horneby where it looseth it selfe in the noble River Eden.

[Machell's Notes I.727]

Memorandum to mend the map according to this [following] discription of Ulswater.

[I.728]

Hartsop, Ulswater & Imot
And this is the first fixed name that it hath. Thence it runns Northwards for a Quarter of a mile into the Great lake which is now called Ulswater – perhaps from one Ulfe in the Time of the Saxons: but anciently seems to have bin calld Imote, i.e. the lake of the River I; & the water \ stream / which runneth from \ the foote / of it is called Imote Water to this very day. I know I might deduce from e Lacu,[296] \ as / much as to say, out of the mote; e: Latine signifying out. But it \ is / unbeseeming to make a hotchpotch of English & Latine, ~~for~~ to finde the original of an English ~~River~~ name.

{House Holm}
Hence it runneth (though it cannot but ~~by the effects~~ be seen ~~for~~ to run, being much more like a Sea than a River) to Pooley-Stanke: first of all northwards 1 mile & ½ or nearupon 2 miles till you com at a place where Glenkeun-beck \ run[s] by Bro / ~~Uls~~water, which partes the 2 Countyes of W[estmorland] & C[umberland], ~~&~~ comes in from the west & is just over against the Iland which is called House-holme, \ which is the 3 Iland in this water, / because there has bin an House upon it, as there is likely to be agane; for the Honourable Charles Howard Esquire, has leas'd (or purchased it as I have heard, for the Tythe of Daker or \ rather / the arrears) of my Lord of Sussex, & intend to build and make it a place of delight & pleasure ~~tho it be in Westmorland~~ which without that agreement he could not have don because it is on Westm'land Side.[297]

[295] 'Doubtful.'
[296] 'Out of the lake'.
[297] This appears to be a reference to Charles Howard (1630-1713) the fourth son in the family of nine sons and three daughters of Henry Frederick Howard, fifteenth earl of Arundel (1608-1652). Charles Howard earned a reputation as a gifted garden designer, as Machell's comment on House Holm possibly becoming a place of 'delight and pleasure' under his care, suggests. For Howard's protracted claim to the Greystoke estates against his older brother Henry, sixth duke of Norfolk, see M. Hunter, 'Howard, Charles (1630-1713), landowner and natural philosopher'. *ODNB.*

{But in this course there are 3 Ilands}[298]
1. Cherry Holm,[299] so calld from a Cherry Tree grown in it; distant from the high end of Ulswater \ a mile & ¼ or above / & being on the East Side of Ulswater must belong without doubt to the Lord of M[artindale.]

2. Wall holme over against Stibarrow: so called from a wall it has had about it,[300] som of which is yet to be seen; distant from Cherryholm about 2 Bowshots and \ from the head a mile and ¼ and somwhat more. / This belongs to the Lord of Patterdal, being on the West Side, & near to His Manner.

3. Is House Holm[301] ~~as above~~ – near the East Side & so belonging to my Lord Sussex but now in possession of Mr Howard, Lord of Graystock. This is distant from the High End \ of Ulswater / 1 mile & ½ or maybe 2 miles; and from Wall Holme ¼ of a mile.

From hence the water turnes in a Bow above 2 miles* to \ a / Crag near How-Town. Thence (directly N.W.)† to Dunmallard, 3 miles in length & in breadth about 1 mile – for cert[ain] 950 yards. Thence on the East of Dunmallard, & West of Pooley.

[Machell's Notes: I.728]

*{?}
†{query, if not N.E}

[I.729]

Thence to [a] River which comes out of [blank] called Emote at the foote & head of it, & from Pooley till it is lost in Eden. It runneth Nor west to the manner of S\t/ockbridge; \ commonly Sock / & so on to Yeanwath & Bridge (which 2 Lordships I am next to treat of as the only remaneing partes of this Parish) \ & under Emote Bridge; / And thence by Browham Castle, Nine Church & ~~Yeawat~~ Horneby, where it looseth it selfe in the noble River Eden, haveing divide the 2 sister Countyes from Glenkeun-beck all along to this place. But before I proceed to S\t/ockbridge & Yeanwath, one word or 2 of the fowle & fish which Ulswater affordes.

[I.728]

{It affordes fowle of diverse sortes; as wilde ducks, wild geese somtimes, cormorants which are black, and also several sortes of fish; as Skellyes which are shaped like Herring; Pearch or Bass? Eales, \ Charrs / Troutes, and amongst them the most noble fish cald the Gray-Trout, as big as a Salmon. & there has bin, somtime, Salmons here. But they will not thrive, for in a short time they spend themselves & grow poore and loosey.[302] The fishing of it is in the \ som of the / Neighbourhood on either side for which the pay a certaine Rent to the Earle of Sussex as Lord of Barton &c. – And Mr Howard \ of Graystock / as Lord of the Lands on the other Side.'}

[298] MS: 'In which course it hems in 3 ilands. But in this course there are 3 Ilands.'
[299] 'Holm' has been superimposed over 'Iland'.
[300] MS: '2. The Second is – Sc. near the E. Wall-Holme 2. Wall holme \ over against Stiburrow / so called from a wall it has had about it,'
[301] House Holm is now known as Norfolk Island, named after the Duke of Norfolk.
[302] Lousy: covered in lice.

[II.438]

The forme of the lake called Ulse-water

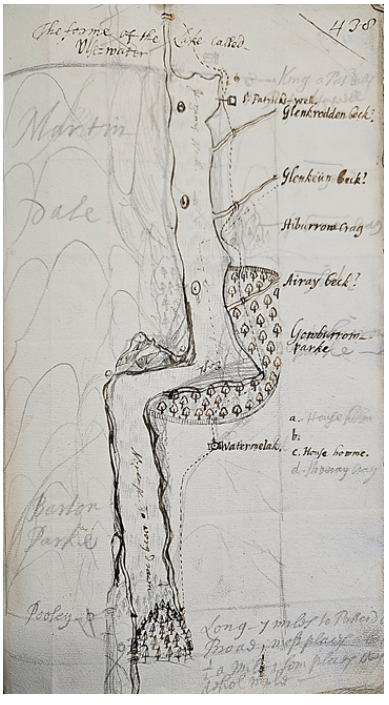


Figure 1.5.28. 'The forme of the lake called Ulse-water.' II.438.

[On the left]	[On the Right]	[Islands]
Martindale	King o Patterdales	a. House holm
Barton Parke	St Patricks well	b. [Blank]
Pooley	Glenkrodden beck?	c. House howme
	Glenkeün beck?	d. Stiveray Crag
	Stibarrow Crag	Watermelak
	Airay beck?	
	Gowbarrow parke	

Long 7 miles to Patterdale; Broad most places about ½ a mile; som places a whol mile
It runs North, East, North-east – ergo wrongly drawn.[303]

[I.725D]

[Sockbridge]

Tis sayd the whole parish \ excepting Patterdale / belongd to the Lancasters of Sockbridge – And that they had free Chase from Emot brig to the Top of Kirkstone fell S.W. \ 14 miles. / And that Martindale & High Barton were given to a younger brother*.

[303] The map contains other errors, which the reader will note.

{Descent}
This was \ purchased / in Reversion after the death \ of Christopher Dudley Esq.[304] / and his wife, by old Sir John Lowther of Lowther, the Rich Arbitray to the present Sir John of Lowther.[305] So the Brigg allso; where is one freehold Mr Rowl. Burrow \ Rector of Browhum & Clifton, /[306] lately purchased.

[Lordship Notes]
There are 3 Vill. in this Lordship – Sc. Sockbridge Thorp & Tyrrell. And High Winder, IV fam[ilies], som of which appere \ at Sockbridge and are free. /
1. Sockbridge – W. from the Hall about a bowshot conteineth in it ~~about~~ XII familes; ~~wher~~ all sold free by the now Sir John Lowther when he came ~~first~~ to years; and so all the other Tenants in the Lordship, & at Hartsop also. The old Rent remaneing. Courts Baron &c. All rateable. Lofthouse – Will[iam] Lancasters an \ ancient freehold at the high End. /
2. Thorp – west ab aula and beyond Sockbridge about the same dist[ance] that Sock[bridge is] from the Hall. IV fam[ilies], all free &c.
3. Tirrell \ is a place wel stor'd with Limestone, which supplieth Penrith / lyes ab aula [blank] & hath about XI [families.]
4. Lancelot of Lancaster = 1. Francis = to Sir Christian Lowther, father […][307] with whom he had Sockbridge, Hartsop & Weatby.[308]
{Lancaster, Fellow of Q[ueens] C[ollege] borne at a house at West Row.}[309]

[Machell's Notes: I.735D]

*de quo qu[aere.]

[I.730]

[Manor of] Sockbridge[310]
The manor of Sockbridge conteineth now in it ~~a~~ the village of Sockbridge; ~~which is almost a Square~~; W. from the church, & conteineth in it about XII families \ all Customary & Heriotable Tenants / ~~who not long agoe had~~ \ till of late that they / purchas'd their freedom of Sir John Lowther of Sockbridge Hall, which is East from Hence about a Bowshot. And here at the very corner house of the West Row, at the South End of it, was Mr William Lancaster borne, somtimes Schoolmaster of Barton Kirk & now fellow of Queens College in Oxford. I take the ancient name of this place to be Stockbrige; so calld from a \ wooden / Bridge ~~that place~~ \ hereabouts, though / there be none now.

{The village of Tyrell, The Hamlet of Thorp, & som part of High Winder!}
2. The Village of Tirell, which lyeth a little South E. from Sockbridge & extendeth almost to the outer gate of Sockbridge Hall, conteineth in it about 10 familyes; \ all purchased free at the same with Yanewath, / & standeth mostly upon a limeston, as all the Rest of this Manner doth: But here it is got in such aboundance & so very fine, that they com as far as Penrith for it; ~~and are~~ \ which Town is supply'd / for the most part supplyed from hence. This Town may seem to have given name to the worthy and ancient family of Tyrill~~s~~ in the Countyes of Oxford & Buckingham: one of which \ name / had the misfortune by [blank][311] which I am the rather induced to believe, because \ I / finde not another Town of that name in England, and am well assured it gave name to a family – Henricus de {Tirill, being witness amongst other neighbouring Gentlemen at a Deed without date. But Sir Radulf[us] de Notyngham, then Sherif of Westmorland, was witness with him, by which perhaps the date may be found – In which Deed one Gilbert de Engayne de Clifton Grants to

[304] Christopher Dudley, the last male heir of the Dudleys: 1607-1660. See *CFH*, 97.
[305] Sold in 1654: *N&B1*, 413. 'Arbitray': 'arbiter'; in law, relating to, or dependent on, the discretion of an arbitrator, or other legally-recognized authority. *OED*.
[306] Rowland Burrow or Borrow was rector of Brougham (1661-1708) amd Clifton (1668-1708). CCED.
[307] A word has perished here.
[308] The MS is too damaged to transcribe accurately here, but contains: 'Eliz = [perished] Hutton 3 Barbery to [perished] Davis of Winder in the B… = Margareta'; see I.373 for another version of this information.
[309] In the left-hand margin. The text here is either faded, damaged or lost.
[310] There is a small square sketch of the Sockbridge area deep within the top left margin of this page.
[311] One whole line is left blank here.

Tho. Niger of Kaliel & that his wife[312] ½ a carucate, which is 7 oxgangs[313] of Land, in Clifton, free from Suit of Court, moulter & pannage,[314] paying therefore the rent ad nat.}[315]

3. Thorp is a little Hamlet ~~of a bout IV families West from Sockbridge~~ \ which / lyes as much \ farther / west beyond Sockbridge as Sockbridge is west beyon the Hall. There are at least 70 places in England which beare ~~the~~ that name; & it signifyeth \ in the Saxon Language / a Towne or Village; thoug[h] this indeed be but a smal one, ~~consisting~~ for it hath only 4 houses in it; but they are all lately purchased free of Sir John Lowther of Sockbridge ut supra.[316]

4. High Winder, another Hamlett of IV familyes, som of which \ onely / appear at Sockbridge ~~Court~~; but are ~~also sold~~ free as the rest. 3 belong to the Lord of Barton and som I thinke to Winder-hall. There is one Airay a freehold here*.

[Machell's Notes: I.730]

*Query: if the Doctors Family.
{query: Hall Hew or Hewafter –}

[I.732]

Sockbridge Hall is the manor house; which standeth North from the River Emot about a Bowshot & as much E. from the Village of Sockbridge – It is not so large nor standeth so well as Yanewath Hall doth; \ for [it] fronteth S. / a little, inclineing to the W. It is scituate upon a descent, in so much that you goe downe 3 descents in the very Court ere you enter the Hall.[317] Yet there is a rare[318] fir tree growing without the Court Wall which renders it somwhat more gracefull.[319] – But if ever this be made a Stately house indede – they must build front to the river of Emote; carry the way in a streight line by the end of the house; and turne the Courtes and as far as the outer gate into Gardines & Orchards. But as it is now, the house is builded with a Little Quadrangle in the midst of it,[320] which as you enter through a smale passage you have the Hall doer opposite to you, over which is a slender old Tower haveing upon it these Coates of Armes. –

On the Seeling in Plasterworke, in the Old Dineing Roome at Sockbridge
Lancaster quartering the heiress of Hartsop Impaleth this quarterly Coat as followeth

1. A cheveron charged with 3 anuletts, between 3 escallops. Tankard.[321]
2. A cheveron charged with 3 floredelices.[322]

[Machell's Notes: I.733]

? q. of Mich. Hudson fel[low] of Queens – if not of this par[ish][323]

[312] Names here are unclear.
[313] Oxgang: unit of land an ox could plough in a ploughing season.
[314] Payment for swine; access to wood nuts.
[315] 'Ad nat' = ad naturam: according to the natural terms at which produce was sold.
[316] As stated above.
[317] Other relevant notes are as follows: MS, I.725D: 'Sockbridge Hall, within a bowshot of Emote, not so large as Yanewath but built with a smale quadrangle, which on the inside is Garreted, all but the side where you enter, and hath a Little Tower opposite to the enterance; where you goe into the Hall. It fronts S. a little declineing to the W. with 3 descents in the Court.'
[318] The word here is indistinct.
[319] MS: \'Yet there is a […] fir tree / Trees growing without the Court Wall which renders it somwhat more gracefull.'
[320] MS: '{But as it is now the house is builded with a} It is builded with a Little Quadrangle in the midst of it,'.
[321] Tankard arms.
[322] A note (MS.I.725) offers further data: 'In the old dineing Roome in 2 panes of Plaster work – 1. Lancaster quartering (? Hartsop as I take it) with a florished MaT & Crist a Lyon Couchant with Tayle turned up betwixt his legs. 2. in another Lancaster with Lyon in Canton.'
[323] See I.678.

[I.733][324]



Figure 1.5.29. Small piece of paper affixed to the page.
'On the Seeling in Plasterworke, in the old dineing Roome at Sockbridge'. I.733.

[I.725D]

a. In Plaster worke upon the Partition in the \ New / Dineing Roome

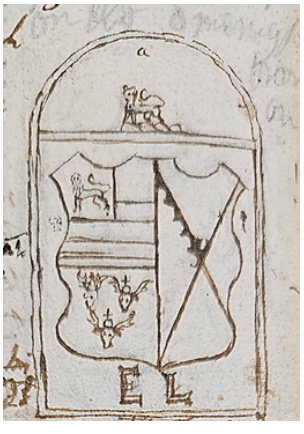


Figure 1.5.30. Plaster work on the partition of the new dining room at Sockbridge Hall. I.725D.

2. [Arms]over the Tower Dooer very ancient (Lancaster impaleing Singleton)

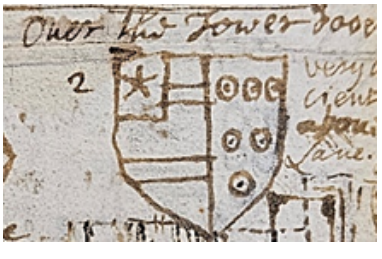


Figure 1.5.31. 'Arms over the Tower Door'. I.725D.

The same in a little window in a quarry[325] in the dineing roome, where the Mullet and an[nulets] are Or; the rest, blanke.

[324] The scored-through sentences in the margins of this page of notes have not been transcribed.
[325] Here Machell has drawn a small diamond shape.

[Plan of Sockbridge Hall]



Figure 1.5.32. Plan of Sockbridge Hall. I.725D.

[Key]
e. The Enterance through a low building
c. a Little Court
d. Kitchen
a. a Little Court
b. The Hall
f. Parlour & dineing room
g. Old Dineing Rom



Figure 1.5.33. On the 'Great Hall window', Sockbridge Hall. I.725D.

On a Smal Square quire in the Great Hall window:
1. Lancaster Argent q[uartered]*
2. Argent [&] Gules; 3 stags heads with a globe & cross; betwixt them a Mound Royal.[326] Hornes Gules.
3. As second &c.
The Impale Argent a saltire ingraled – which is inscribed on a Noble window of 7 great lights and 14 little ones &c. The like work in the church. The same agane in the Dineing room.

[326] Royal Orb.

[Machell's Notes: I.725D]

*query whether a Mullet.

[I.725C]

{Sockbridge in Barton Parish}
On a great Beam in Sockbridge Hall



Figure 1.5.34. Coats of Arms on a 'great Beam' in Sockbridge Hall.[327] *I.725C.*

{f m. Ex Incuria opificis. inversa capita}[328]

[I.734]

Yanewath

The Manner of Yaneworth conteineth in it 2 Pretty Villages, Sc. Yanewath \ & Bridge / which seem so called from their several passages over Imote, of which there are 4 within the compass of this Parish:[329] Sc. Yean Stanke, Yane Stock Brigge, Yane Wath, & Yeane Stäne-Brigg. i.e. one Stanke, one Stockbridge, one Wath, and one Stone bridge; whence these Several Townes Received Several names: Sc. – Pooley Stanke – Stockbridge or Sockbridge; Yanwath or Yane Wath, & Brigg or Bridge, which is so called, KαT,[330] because it is the most eminent passage over this River; for which Reason it is called The Bridge.

{Ab Ecclesia}

[327] The exclamation mark was placed on the third coat because it is upside down, see f.n. below.
[328] 'From the carelessness of the artist, the heads are upside down.'
[329] MS: 'which seem~~eth~~ so called from ~~a wath or forde there Over the water; for it Seemeth formerly, there are 4 passages over Imot which in the Compass of~~ \ from their several passages over Imote of which there are 4 within the compass of this / Parish.'
[330] KαT: Kα/T[ω]. In several places in the MS, Machell follows the phrase 'Barony of Westm'land' with the letters KαT. The vowel is clearly written as the Greek letter alpha. This suggests that all the letters are meant to be read in the Greek (not the Roman) alphabet and that the word is abbreviated from the Greek adverb κα/τω meaning 'below'. Classical Greek authors sometimes used this word in a geographical connection to mean 'lower' or 'south'. It is likely that Machell's meaning is similar and that this is a way of referring to the 'Bottom' of Westmorland. See its use in Machell's Preface, I.148, I.44C.

1. Yanewath is a pretty smal village of about 12 families; all Customary Tenants pay in fine arbitrary*, & doing Suit at Service of Court at Yeanwath-hall, which standeth at the North End of the Town a little on the West Side of it, on a High banke by the River of Imote, opposite to which the chief entrance standeth somewhat inconvenient, for it affords no access to the \ house, / which, ~~if you~~ if the owner desire to have at the best advantage, it might be don by turneing the front to the west side where the Orchard plat is, & carrying the way streight from the wath up ~~from~~ to the Town by the great gates, which ~~if it were mine I should chose to place there~~ \ should be there placed / opposite to the unbuilded ~~of the Court as now~~ \ side[331] as it now / standeth. There is an old Chaple over the gate to which ~~there is an ancient Round fortification at the wood end~~ to which you ascend by a pair of Stairs out \ of / the Court side, in which they have not observed to place the Altar Eastwards but rather contrary. It hath not any Coates of Armes in it. But in the House are these that follow.

[Machell's Notes: I.734]

*{? and if heriotable}

[I.736]

Arms in Yanewath Hall

In the Hall Outshot window



Figure 1.5.35. In Yanwath Hall 'Outshot window'. I.736.

2. Clifford quartering Vessey quartered.[332]
3. Clifford with a fild of 3 Lamb[el].[333]

In the plasterwork over the dineing-room chimney



Figure 1.5.36. 'In Plasterwork over the Dineing-Room chimney.' I.736.

[331] Machell has drawn a small square to the right of 'side'.
[332] The next word is illegible.
[333] Written in faded pencil but probably 'lambel' (label): a narrow band across the shield from which three short bands protrude at right angles (see Figure 3 on I.736); see A.C. Fox-Davies, *A Complete Guide to Heraldry* (New York, 1978), 154.

In plasterwork over the ceiling.



Figure 1.5.37. In plasterwork over the ceiling. I.736.

[I.737]

Yanewath hall is a Tower-house, pleasantly scituated upon the very Banke of Emote, on the S. East side of it; but so near the precipice that there \ is count'd / no handsom access unto the House. It is built with 3 sides of a Quadrangle, hath a delicate prospect when you are at it, and hath the grace of a little Castle when you are distant from it. Over the Gate as you enter are the Remaines of a little chapple, where the Screen is yet standing; And there is one very Beautiful Tower at the South Corner with Turrets & Batlements very graceful to behold.
The Town standeth as I remember N. & S. at little distance above the Hall, & hath about 12 familyes in it {XII fam}.

{The Plateforme of Yanewath-Hall. 1689}



[Key]
a. The Entrance.
bb. The Mel-dooers or passage through towards the Towne.
c. The Kitchen
d. The Hall
e. [Blank]
f. The Dineing-Roome up above Stairs.
ggg. Offices.
h. The Platforme of a wall representing a Tower as you enter on the front.
i. The place where the Chapel standeth over the gate I[t] lookes S.W.
kkk. Stables &c.

Figure 1.5.38. Annotated plan of Yanwath Hall. I.737.

[I.725D]

{Yanewath arbitrary} {Parochia Literatorum}[334]
There is a Place at the End of Yan-wath wood where it joynes upon Askam, about a mile S. from the Hall, calld Castle-Steeds; where Trenches & Bulworkes doe yet appear. And East from thence ¼ of mile by the water side, the foundation appears of an old ruin'd chaple called Magdalen Chapel, as old Mrs Sanford sayeth.[335] XI or XII fam[ilies] purchased from [blank].[336]

[I.738]

There is an ancient Round-fortification called Castle Steeds at Yanewath Wood End, S. from the Hall about 1 \ mile / and near the New-bridge which Sir John Lowther of Lowther builded in [blank] for his own convenience to conjoyn the 2 manners. The Antiquity of it may appear from old Oakes, Elms & Crabtrees which grow on the Rampires and ~~have~~ other wood which has coverd it over, in so much that I labourd through many difficultyes before I could gane this platforme of it.

[I.738A]

Castle-Steades in Yanewath-wood

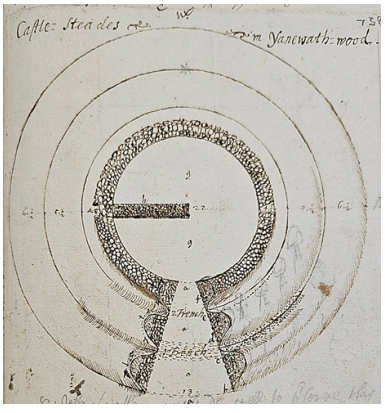


Figure 1.5.39. Castlesteads at Yanwath Wood. I.738A.

[Key]
(a.a.a.a.) The Enterance on the E. Side haveing a Ridge of Stones on either side like a foundation.
(b.) The first Burworke; which is from the rise of the plane to the Crist 7. Passes from the Crist down to the bottom of the ditch 5. From c. to d. the 1st ditch.
(d.) The second Bulworke, which is from the bottom of the ditch to the Crist, 7 Passes or Yardes. From e. to f. the second ditch.
(f.) The 3rd Burlworke with a Ring of Stone like a foundation \ on / it.
(g.g.) The Area being in diameter 22 \ p[asses] / and somwhat hollow.
(h.) A Ridge of Stones, like \ as of / a foundation wall to suppor[t] the Timber*.

Machell's Notes: I.738A]

*{Memorandum: To measure it agane – because I have counted the 1t Trench to 13 Score & 13 passes; which if true it must be oblong. The Best way will be to measure from the Center & over the Bulworks, noting the distance twixt the place of Remarke – as before.}
{N.B. All the Bulworkes seem heaps of stones; tho none appear so but the inmost; the rest being covered with a Green Swarth or Earth for the most part. It is all grown over with \ old / Oakes, Ashes, Aum, Crabtrees & Thorns.}
{Sir John Lowther might doe well to preserve this monument of Antiquity, as makeing it into a Somerhouse or place of Pleasure.}

---

[334] 'Parish of educated men.'
[335] Machell appears to have placed an 's' at the end of 'Mr', but see I.740, where he claims that 'old Mr Sandford of Askam hall' gave him the information 'by tradition'.
[336] MS: '~~In Yanewath there are~~ XI or XII fam. ~~all Customary & Herriotable, till most of them were of late~~ purchased from'

[I.740]

Sir John Lowther of Lowther to whom this Lordship of Yanewath belongeth,[337] & opposite to whose \ ~~Lord~~ / House this fort standeth, might make it a delicate place of pleasure without altering the ancient figure of it; by cutting a vist[a], & planting a walke of Trees from hence to Lowther-hall, and makeing it into Arboures & walkes, with a wall about, as to him shal seam meet: for the soyle is so fertill, & withal so warme by the wood round about it, that I should \ not / dispare of planting a \ little / vineyard here, neither of eateing of the fruits of the vineyard if it were managed to the best advantage by a skilful hand.

{Quarries of very white heweing stone[338]

And there are great encouragements to it, He haveing 2 quarryes of curious white stone which will endure the tooles of the mason, just hard at hand; The one at Hews Crag ~~which is~~ by the water \ side / over against Clifton Church ~~and Hall~~; the other upon the Common of Yanewath and near Lowther bridge: & there is Limestone enough in the Lordship – almost in any place. However, Tirrel is not far remote.

East from this Fort a ¼ of a mile by the water side \ River of Lowther /are the foundations of an old Ruined Chappel; which was calld St Magdalens as I am informed*. Which is all I have to observe in this place.

[Machell's Notes: I.740]

*Old Mr Sandford of Askam Hall by Trad[ition].

[I.194]

Yanewith was held by Sir Lancelot Threlkeld de Johe Baron de Graystock per servicio militare. Viz, per homagium &c. et reditum 8s & 8d per cornagium Johanis; et Johannes Baron de Graystock tenuit idem manerium per confamilia servicia de Henrico Domino de Clifford.[339]

{Bridge or Brigg?}

2. The other Village which belongs to this Lordship is called The Bridge, & by som, Yanewath bridge {?} the reason of which I have given you before.[340] It lyeth E. from the church \ of Barton / and consisteth of about XII familyes all ~~Arbitrary~~ \ Customary / Tenants to Yanewath Hall \ at a fine arbitrary / excepting one; which is Mr Rowland Burrow of Browham, Rector there and of Clifton parish: who \ lately / purchased his \ Tenement / free & has built ~~thereupon~~ a very good house \ upon it in 1687, ~~haveing~~ / with curiouse gardine and orchards about it.[341]

All this village have a Privilege of Turbary upon Barton Fell,[342] for which the[y pay] 2^{d} an House.

There are near this Village (that I may not say – contiguouse to it) 2 ancient & noble fortifications, both of them Round but of different figures.

Maybrough Castle & Round Table[343]

{Maybrough Castle*}

The One, is at the West Side of the Towne – called May-brough-Castle; which has but one enterance like an

[337] C.1654, by purchase from Christopher Dudley (1607-1660), the last male heir of the Dudleys: see *N&B1*, 413.

[338] This is written in ink over a pencilled comment: 'Convenience of quarryes'.

[339] 'Yanwath was holden by Sir L. Threlkeld from John, B. of Greystoke through military service; Viz through homage etc. and a rent of 8/8d through cornage of John. And John B. of Greystoke held the same manor through family services from Henry Lord Clifford.'

[340] See I.734, above.

[341] The house is Mansion House, which has 1686 on the lintel: see Hyde & Pevsner, 711. Near to the text, Machell wrote in pencil, 'The Draught': i.e. space for an intended sketch of the house.

[342] For turbary, see the English Glossary.

[343] The heading has been moved from MS.I.654A.' For Dugdale, see Machell's notes: I.742.

horse shoe on the East Side of it, consisting of one single rampiere of Stones {pibles} heaped up together & grown over with wood: young ashes mostly; out of which (Camden tells us)[344] Penrith Castle was builded.[345]

[I.742]

{King Arthurs C. King Arthurs O Table}
The other at the South end of the Village called \ by som / King Arthurs Castle; But (by som) K. Arthurs Table; ~~where a Parliament sat in~~. The rema[r]kable thing I finde of it upon Record – is that a Parliament sat in this place.[346]

[Machell's Notes: I.742]
*Maybrough Castle – See my Miscell[any] p.236; also MS. Folio part [Blank]. {Also, Mr Dugdalls Visit[ation.}

[I.375][347]
These are by Emote Bridge in the parish of Barton. The Round Table standeth NW[348] from the Chappel of Browham. And Maybrough Castle alijs King Arthurs N.W. from it.

[I.378]
Arthur Castle alias the round Table is upon a Level, mounted above the high banke of Lowther. The entrances are N. & S., & opposite to the S[outh] Entrance about 10 sc[ore] distance is an other rotundo made of pebles about 4 passes in bredth, in hight 1 or 2, which has an Entrance or Space just opposite to the Entrance of the round T[able]. But noe egres. The Diamiter of the circle within the rim is about 4 sc[ore] & 10 of my ordnary walking pases, so that the circumference must be about 14 sc[ore] yards within rim.[349] The enterance of the round table is in Breth about 5 or 6 pases. The old man sayd it was a justing place[350] in King Arthurs Time*.

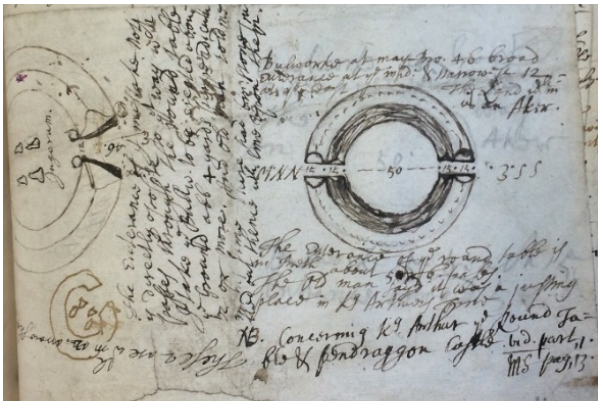


Figure 1.5.40. Machell's sketches of Maybrough and 'Arthur[']s] Castle alias the round Table'. I.737.

[344] See Camden, *Britannia* tr. Holland (1637), 776: 'Not farre from the confluence of Eimot and Loder, where is seene that round trench of earth, which the countrey people tearme 'Arthur's Table', stands Penrith, which is … commonly called Perith: a little towne, and of indifferent trade, fortified on the west side with a castle of the Kings, which in the reigne of King Henry the sixth was repaired out of the ruines of a Romane fort thereby called Maburg…'
[345] MS: 'The One, is at the ~~South~~ West Side of the Towne – called May-brough-Castle which has but one enterance \ like an horse shoe / like an Horse Shoe ~~and~~ \ on the East Side of it consisting of / one single rampiere of Stones {pibles} heaped up \ together / & grown over with wood \ young ashes mostly / ~~The other of~~ \ Out of which (Camden Tells us), Penrith Castle was builded.'
[346] See Machell's Preface, I.34 and II.479, for more on King Arthur and his round table.
[347] This highly damaged page has been partially restored.
[348] Unclear. Machell made alterations to his original direction marker.
[349] A line of text below this one has perished.
[350] 'Jousting place.'

[Maybrough]
The enterance if I mistake not is directly oposite to that way which passes through the round table. I take the Bullw[ork] to be erected above the ground abb[out] 4 yards perpendicular or more. And old man told me in his time there had bin stone pulled out thence with lime upon them. These 2 are within an arrow shot. Bulworke at May-Bro. 46 Broad enterance at the inside, & narrowest 12 at the least. The Land within is an Aker.

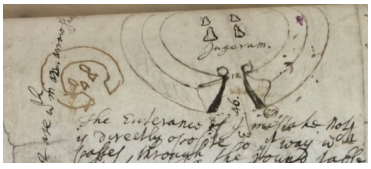


Figure 1.5.41. Maybrough. Sketches of four standing stones. The larger circle contains the Latin word 'Iugerum'. I.375.[351]

[Machell's Notes: I.376]
*N.B. Concerning King Arthur the Round Table & Pendraggon Castle: vid. part 1. MS pag.13.[352]

[Rarities in Nature at Yanwath]

[I.654A]

N[ote] The river which is now called Emot is call'd Aqua de Amoth. in Carta Bricij de Penrith qua dat locum vocat. Sain Wilfry Holme, Abbi et Monact. de Holm Coltram: è Registro de Holm.[353]
There grow upon the Bankes of this river about Yanewath &c. Barberryes naturally; great Eales in Ulswater; as in Haus-water. Rasps naturally on the Banks of Ulswater. Cullenbines[354] on the Bankes of Lowther in Yeanwath wood.

[I.671A]

[**General notes and Informants' reponse to queries**]

{Runner of Eye. The fisheing […][355] skellyes, perch. […]}[356]

[I.671B]

Eagles often prey in somer at Angle tern upon young Seamaws.[357]

[I.715C]

{In Graisdale Loudore also cop[per].}

[I.654A & I.654B] [358]

In the W. Ward – Desiderata or farther Query?
The Descents of Hartsop Patterdale Barton Yean[wath] &c. – Mr Dobson.

[351] 'Iugerum': Roman measurement of 28,800 square feet – just over half an acre.
[352] MS I.382 contains Machell's note: 'Memorandum. The stones at Shap; the stones at Sandford.'
[353] A citation of the register of Holm Cultram as proof of Eamont's being called (in Latin) 'the Water of Amoth'. 'About 1250 [the monks of Holm Cultram] received from Bricius of Penrith the land and pasture of St. Wilfrid's Holm at Bramwray on the Eamont,' See Francis Grainger and W.D. Collingwood (eds), 'Records: The Abbey in the thirteenth century', *Register and Records of Holm Cultram,* CWAAS Record Series 7 (Kendal, 1929), 126-36.
[354] Columbines.
[355] Words here are obscured by the binding.
[356] This and other notes are partly covered by the binding.
[357] Other rough notes include fragments at the right-hand side of the page but obscured by the binding at the end of each line. MS: 'Swarth beck, springs at Leade … and runs 1[t] N. then N.W. into … against Wethermelock. {springs of bow[shot] a capel[la]} {Howgrane … Added 4 … holme 1 … The Value of… In the f … the store of … St Martin… is One R… The most… Chaple (…) with a single … yard, w … If a mo … cow dung …'
[358] I.654A is a scrap page measuring 12cm x 19cm. I.654B was originally part of the same page but at some point it was cut in half. Much text has perished or is illegible.

[I.657B][359]

Qu. Antiq.

1. Quiete ab omnibus servicijs et a seculari servicio et demanda.[360]

2. Si praedictus A. vel heredes sui forefecerint verbo vel opere q[uo]d non sit Blodwita[361] et convicti fuerint dabunt sex denarios et emendabunt cuj forefecerint, et si sit Blodwita et convicti fuerint dabunt xij denarios et emendabunt cuj forefecerint.[362]

3. Faciendo (tamen) forinsecum servitium – (q.?!!!) quantum pertinet duas Bovatas Terræ.[363]

[I.725B][364]

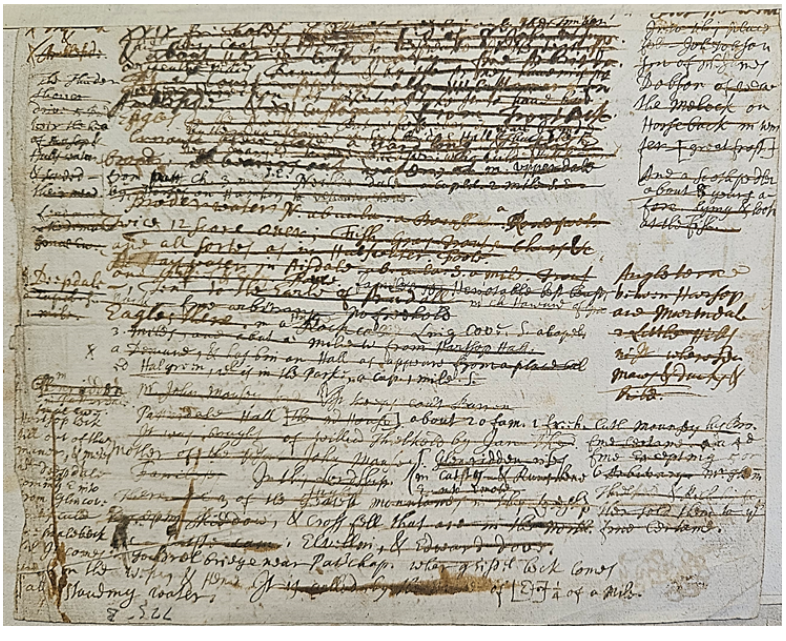


Figure 1.5.42. Page of notes on Hartsop and Patterdale, written up elsewhere and then scored through. I.725B.

[I.725C]

{Yanwath Bridge. Hartsop. Low-Winder. Martindale. Patterdale. Powley. Sockbridge. Yanwath. See the Easter Bookes; query of Halls.}

[359] Latin passage in another hand, apart from the last few words.

[360] 'Free from all services, both from secular services and charges.'

[361] Bloodwit: a fine for drawing blood.

[362] 'If the aforesaid A. or his heirs are guilty in word or deed of that which is not Bloodwit, and have been convicted, they shall pay six denarii and shall make reparation to he whom they have injured, and if it is Bloodwit, and they have been convicted, they shall pay 12 denarii and shall make reparation to him whom they have injured.'

[363] 'By doing foreign service' [the text then changes to Machell's hand, using exclamation and question marks] 'query, as much as relates to two bovates of land.'

[364] A page of notes on Hartsop and Patterdale, written up elsewhere and then crossed through here, as in the illustration. For Machell's Hartsop queries see I.725H.

{Queryes}[365]
Dr Dawes – Epitaph – Greeke – Lawyer Fletcher[366]
How many places in Barton Parish are called Manners in Lord Sussex Court Rolls}
& whether Sockbridge & Yanewath be in the Barony? If it be one? No. } Mr Thomas Webster
Query also how they & wee came to Kirkoswald & Lazonby. }
Prospect of Pooley under Dunmallard.
Som of that ore, which William Smith found? – Jane Jackson.
Whether the Armes in the small Sq[uare] quarry in the great hall window {Sockbridge} be with a Mullet or Lyon. Answer – a Martlet.[367]

[I.725D][368]

{! Hews Cragg very white E. ab Ecclesia 1m. over aganst Clifton! Yanewath Moore fine white Gravel Stone & hewing ston ¾ East ab Ecclesia near Lowther berg Round Table & Castlesteeds & Maybrough. Yan-wath wood large with Oakes}[369]
{Martindale 2 miles a Cap[ella]. Pless indifferent slate […]}[370] Query: of eagles there.
Dr Dawes borne in Martindale \ at Maud Slack a little tenement now sold to the Lancasters /, where many yet, an unhappy boy but made a good man.[371]
A Capella put in by the vicars approb[ation] by Sir John of Sockbridge. The sallary: about £6 per annum laid upon the tenement an house & garth; Dr Richard Birket the present reader.
Martindale, a forrest of red deare & wilde goates – Lord Sussexes.
Brook Crag, a course blew slate ab Ecclesia 4 miles brought with cartes, from Cap[ella] north-east a mile.
Place Fell by Ulswater side, better blew slate, a Capella 2 miles west.
The chief place of the Br. was Thrang-Cragg, from the chappl ¼ S.W. 10li but for […][372]

[I.725F][373]

Further Queries in Barton Parish
1. How it standeth & at what distance from Penrith \ S. by W. – 3 miles / Browham: \ W. 5: /Clifton: \ N.W.3 / Lowther: \ N.W, – 3 / Askham: \ N.W. 3. / Bampton: \ N. 4. / Kendal: N. by N. 18 {right} Gresmere N.E. 15[374] & ~~their beareings~~ from Martindale \ N. by E. 5 from / ~~&~~ Patterdale chaples. E. by N. 9.

2. N.B. How the fishes in the Coat of Arms standeth {palewise – & are Argent in Gules}
\ The Greek Epitaph!! /[375]

3. If Barton be a Barony? {Court Leet & Baron, Stile a Barony in ancient Court Rowles.
1 Manner de Barton infra Baronia de Barton.[376] Manners de Martindale et Fusedale infra Bar. praedict.[377]
There were 3 Tenements – Sc. – Trostermont \ neither and further / Crookedike adjoyneing to them.
Customary Tenants formerly belonging to Graystock – & the Rents are calld Arrundel rents exchanged for other lands in Cumberland in Graystock Barony.[378]

---

[365] Queries: some for Machell himself; others for his informants.
[366] Thomas Fletcher of Little Strickland, see I.678.
[367] A fragment in the bottom right corner here, appears to contain the words, 'row... w... black … shun 2 ordnary cuts.'
[368] All the text on this page of the MS has been scored through.
[369] Top r-h margin.
[370] In the left-hand margin and crossed through; there is more text but it is scored through and damaged.
[371] 'Unhappy' in the sense that he caused 'trouble or mischief', or was 'naughty'. *OED*.
[372] The last word is indistinct.
[373] Almost all of the text on this page of the MS has been crossed through.
[374] Unclear number, crossed through.
[375] Machell needed help with the translation, see I.671B; see also I.725C, where Machell suggests asking Dr Dawes and Lawyer Fletcher (Thomas Fletcher of Little Strickland).
[376] 'Within the Barony of Barton.'
[377] 'Within the aforesaid barony.'
[378] The term 'Arundel rents' refers to rents collected by the earls of Arundel and their successors. Dynastic marriages had resulted not only in an accumulation of titles, but also of land and property, including the manor of Greystoke in Cumberland. For example, Henry F. Howard (1608-52) was fifteenth earl of Arundel, fifth earl of Surrey, and second earl of Norfolk. His father was Thomas Howard (1585-1646), fourteenth earl of Arundel; his mother was Lady Aletheia Talbot (died 1654), a goddaughter of Elizabeth I. See J. Elzinga 'Howard, Philip [St Philip Howard], thirteenth earl of

What Lordships held under it & how? \ Who takes wafe & stray / & their descents of the manners & ped[igrees] of the owners.
Which bookes publishd by Dawes; Langbane?

4. Where lead & copper-ore be in Grisdale at the West En[d] of Patterdale chaple – if any houses \ X[379] / in it & to what Lordship it belongs? To Patterdale but the Tenements are L. Sussex.

? 5. Whethe[r] a Cave in Glencoue, or any other part of the Parish. Or at Edward Doue.
{Manner de Patterdale which (the forrest of Grisdale) \ payes a free rent / – a lead mine in Eagle Crag – the Tenement Lord Sussex. Glemera Parke there about X. 3 Juries, & a Grand jury.}

? 6. Who has the Tythe-Corne of the parish. Query of William Smith. Who the ⅔ of wool Lamb & Easter b[ook] – in the other partes of Patterdale besides Hartsop.

\ Winder hall / ~~How far~~ Barton Parish borders on Daker – a loco ad locum,[380] & if Daker & Skelton be not in the Barony of Graystock?
{From Rampsbeck on the east side of Wethermelack – till you com at Daker beck-foot, where it enter Emote which parish of Daker is not in the Barony of Daker.}

Barton Kirk was the late Lanc[elot] Dawes. The only son or childe of this father – If the Dr did not purchase something at Asby Grange & Regill, & what?
{No.[381] Will. Thom[linson] at Creaktrees – which now belongs them.}

To whom the rest of High Winder– to Mr Davis. Aray a freehold?
besides Celron are Tenants? – 3 Tenants to Sussex.

[I.725G][382]

A view of Winder Hall, The descent of it – Davis pedegre from W. Jo? Davis: Master of Arts & Schoolmaster.

{William Davis = Elleanor. daughter of Christopher Teasdale of Knipe
|
Will. infans Annas infans}[383]

Martindale
How Long Sir Richard has served in Martindale {50?} & disc[ription] of the Descents of Manners.
Was Martindale 4^{d} fine only, 4^{d}, & the forresters 2^{d} fine onely, 2^{d}, before the purchase: – or were 4 & 2 times the rent? – x^{s}
Will Smiths are. {Yes}

{! In Hellin Hag N. a Sandwike ½ a mile a Hollow place in the rock with water in it resembling a pot or head about a yard diameter – and as much deep.}
{Martindale Tenants payd also a Rent of about 20^{s} per Annum meal – to feed his dogs for killing the Marts.}

How far & in what beareing does Maud-Slack where Dr Dawes was borne lye from Martindale Chappel? – {west ¼ of mile.}

How lyes Sandwike from the Chapel?
{N.W. a Capella ½ a mile & more}

Arundel (1557-1595), magnate and alleged traitor'; and G. Goodwin & J. Peacey, 'Howard, Henry Frederick, fifteenth earl of Arundel, fifth earl of Surrey, and second earl of Norfolk (1608-1652), nobleman.' *ODNB*.
[379] X (10) added later.
[380] In places.
[381] This is followed by an unclear interlined word.
[382] Much of this page has been scored through.
[383] All text in this paragraph has been lightly scored through.

How Bowerdale – {W. a Capella – ½ a mile}
How Fusedale – {N. fr[om] Capella – 1 mile.}

By what Statute is 1^{s} per head paid for wilde cats; & who payes it!
Whether James Dobson did not mend the way at Stybarrow upon his sons[384] falling into the water? Don by the Countrey upon complaint.

{! a place called Lords Seate on the Top of ~~a~~n \ little / Hill in the midle of Bannerdale; with a ~~Seat or~~ Chair of Stone called Lords Seat – a Capella S. by W. 2 miles – Here they say the lord usd to sit & see their Greyhounds Course the Read dear.}

Patterdale
Is there any cave about Kiple-Cove? How lies it & Read Tarne from Patterdale Hall? & are they in the manner?
How far is Catstye?

Is the 4^{d} fine in Glenridden only fower pence; or 4 Times the rent?
{It is 4 times the rent.}

If XII families in it, or all Patterdale?
Is it Lingcove or or Glincoue where Eagles build.
{! Before Martindale Chapel was consecrated every Tenant – man & wife had 3^{d} a piece paid at Chapel Stile for their paines.}

[I.725H]

Hartsop
{Twixt Patterdale and Martindale as heaven water deales.}
{Place Fell Tenements which are in Patterdale Manner – but answer for themselves at Barton being Tenants to my Lord of Sussex.}
{?} How many familyes in Nether Hartsop / Upper Hartsop.
Are there Gray-Troutes & Charrs in Broader-water?
Does Kirkston fell in Hartsop divide Westm'land & Cumberland?

Yanewath families?
Are they Heriotable – no. Fine cert[ain] or Arbitrary? yes.
Is it called Yanewathbridge or Emotbridge?
Writ? Yamonbrigg – Every house payes 2^{d} for Turbary on Barton fell. to the Lord of Barton.

Sockbridge
Was not Will. Lancaster schoolmaster at Barton? Yes.
{?} Whether the Armes in the Smal Square quarry in the Great hall-window be with a mullet or lyon?
My inke hornes.[385]

{N.B.} How Lord Dakers came to Kirkoswald & Lazenby, & how the Tenements are sold?
{Was forfeited by \ Leonard / [Dacre][386] by Attorney to the Crown in Queen Elizabeths Time – Granted by Lease to Sir George Dalston in dower with his daughter upon the death of R[387]Dakers 10. of K. 1.[388] The …

[384] MS: 'soons'.
[385] Possibly used when making drawings at Sockbridge Hall?
[386] A word here is obscured by the binding.
[387] The rest of this word is obscured by the binding. It could refer to Randal Dacre, who died without issue in 1634. His tombstone at Greystoke is inscribed, 'Randal Dacre Esq. sonne & hyre to Francis Dacre Esquire, deceased, being the youngest son of the last Lord William Dacre, deceased, being the last hyre male of that lyne; which said Randal dyed at London …' See Burke's *Genealogical History of the Dormant, Abeyant, Forfeited and Extinct Peerages of the British Empire* (London, 1866), 153.
[388] Charles I.

Line. Francis Leonard [Lord] of (Herst-Monceux) the[389] as heir general. & The Earle of Sussex his son.[390]}
Mr Tho [blank] has a ped[igree] & Lawyer Dalston has a booked case of it.
Tenement Sold ~~free~~ in 77 or 78 to a pepercorne fine West'land & 1[d] Cumberland – remaneing a Customary Estates – with grant of woods, green hews & Heriots – due only from a widow only for which she injoy […][391]

[389] This word is partially obscured by the binding.
[390] Francis Lord Dacre (died 1662) had a son, Thomas, who married Lady Anne Fitzroy, natural daughter of Charles II and Barbara, Duchess of Cleveland. Thomas was created earl of Sussex in 1674. As Lord of the Bedchamber to Charles II, he quickly ran through his inheritance and was obliged to sell Herst-Monceaux: Arthur Collins, *A Supplement to the Four Volumes of the Peerage of England* (London, 1750), 500.
[391] The rest of the sentence is obscured by the binding.

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 6]

[Parish of Brough under Stainmore]

[**Machell's Initial Notes**]

[I.389]

{Extent paroch.}
Burgh is ~~a parish~~ of a very large extent by reason of its libertyes upon the great fells or wastes, and is supposed to be 3 score miles in circumference following the bo[u]nders.[1]

[I.438]

For the bounds of the Parish of Brough joyneing on Mickleton in Yorkshire see Ryleys *Pl. Parl* page 658.[2]

[I.389]

{Descrip[tion] Church} The church, to which were appendant 2 chaples, both gon to decay.[3]

{Villages appertaneing & what observable in them}
And to this church doth belong –
1. Castle Brough otherwise called Church Brough, and Anciently Over Brough.
2. Markett Brough, anciently Under Brough.[4]
3. Hellebeck.
4. Oxenthwate. Here is a fine quarry att an hamlett in Stanemore called Oxenthwate, which is supposed the stone which built both the Church and Castle wer fetched and there are Cole pitts which yeald the best Coale in all Europe.[5]
5. Eywbanke or Iubanke.
6. Stanemore, a kinde of ~~a~~ dale where the houses stand remote one from an other.
7. Sowerby juxta Burgh.

{Number of Lordships; of which in particular}
The Lordships in this parish are \ Brough, Ewbanke, Hellebeck, Sowerby, Stanemore. /

1. **Brough, to which belongs both the vills of that name.**

[I.393]

[**Church; Chapels**]

[St Michael, Brough]

The Steeple[6] at Brough Church was built the 4. or 5th of Henry 8. [1512-14], and the stone led from the

[1] MS.III.384 contains another draft. Viz. 'Brough is a Large Parish & therefore the greater by reason of its extraordinary extent upon the fell; it reach from ~~in~~ [blank] in the east to [blank] in the West [blank] mile and from [blank] in the north to [blank] in the South [blank] miles the whole circumference is supposed to be about 3 miles. There are in it these Lordship:1. Upper Brough, which belongs to [blank] 2. Underbrough, which belongs [blank] 3. Helbeck, which belongs to [blank] 4. Stanemore, which belongs to [blank].'
[2] William Ryley the elder [Lancaster Herald] and William Ryley the younger, *Placita Parliamentaria Or Pleadings in Parliament, with Judgments thereon in the Reign of Edward the First and Edward the Second … Containing … Statutes, Ordinances, Provisions, Inhibitions, Forms of Writs on several occasions, Prohibitions, Proclamations, with the Confirmation of Magna Charta and Charta de Foresta. As also of some other Records taken out of the Tower of London which prove the Homage anciently due to the Kings of England from Scotland, and the Establishment of Ireland under the Laws of England* (London, 1661).
[3] MS: 'The church is to which belongs \ were appendant / 2 chaples both gon to decay.'
[4] See *N&B1*, 577.
[5] MS: This passage on Oxenthwaite can be found upside down on MS.I.389, headed 'Barton Parish' but used instead for notes on Brough. MS III.384 contains a precis: 'Oxenthwate, an Hamlett where the quarryes is, whence the stones of the Castle & Church were brought.'
[6] I.e. the tower.

Quarell[7] By Thomas Fudergil, William Jackson junior, Thomas Jackson & William Rud, who were bound to Thomas Blenkinsop Esq. in 10li for performance of that & other Articles relateing to the Steple which Thomas gave allso in his will 1522, iiij marks with lime & other necessaries to the building of an Ile from the end of Our Ladye's Ile unto the revestry.

{Lights: 3 – Lady, Rood, St Michael light}
He caused that window wherein the Blenkinsops Armes now are consisting of 3 lights to be made, where he ordered that a closset should be made before St James. So that it seemes Brough Church had its greatest ornaments about this time There was a singing schoole of Our Ladye's Chaple at Brough at this time allso, & a master that taught.
The north Ile was called Our Lady Ile, or Lady Porch, & the little Quire where the Blenkinsops sat was called the Clousett, wher stood an Aulter to the Virgin Mary in time of superstition & popery.[8]
{The Tower was demolished & the timber sold by Thomas, Earle of Thanet, in 1685 or 1686? when he was repareing Ap[pleby.}

[I.423]

In St Michael att Brough.[9]
(i.e.) 1. the Quire: 2. the Church.
In both. 1. Windows 2. Monastij.
Note. Take 1^{t}. East window. 2. The right-hand side. 3. The left: i.e. south.

In the East window which has 3 lights.
The 1^{t} Virgin Mary; the 2nd the Crucifix; the 3^{d} as I suppose the other Mary. Above the Cruxifix has bin the Armes of Cliffords, a part of the check[10] rem[ains] yett. And writ underneath all in text letters.[11]

> Orate pro a[n]ima Magistri Thomae Ryge quondam vicarii istius Ecclesie et pro animabus parentum benefactor[um] p[a]rochianorum \ suorum / ac omnium fidelium defunctorum quorarum animas prope. Deus an[no] D[omi]n[i] M: CCCC XXIIII[12]

In the window next south side 3 lights:
In the 1. att the Top an Escutcheon Azure with the hands & feet of Our Saviour saltier wise \ Argent / and a hart in fess po[i]nt Gules. They are the 5 Vulnera,[13] in honour of which the pap[ists] keep a festival. In the midle of the said ligh[t] are the Lady Mary with a crowne on her head in blew robe under which some little children ~~praying to~~ \ kneeling before / St Michael and underneath a scrowle from St M. in text: Ora pro nobis St Michael.[14] St Michael is pictured with green wings, a scarlett robe above a white one, as St Mary has allso, and a pair of scales in his right hand; in one scale a catt or a

[7] Quarry.
[8] See *N&B1*: 'Adjoining to which Ile, from the east end thereof towards the vestry was a little quire called the closet', 572.
[9] Machell began with the east window in the chancel and continued south, west and north. See *N&BI*, 572-73, where, in a description of the church windows, it was noted that Machell had 'a peculiar taste that way [and] took a particular account of so much as there was remaining thereof, about the year 1675.'
[10] 'Chequy': a method of partition of a field on a coat of arms: A.C. Fox-Davies, *A Complete guide to Heraldry* (New York, 1978), 98.
[11] 'Text letters'/ 'Textura'. One of a group of typefaces first used in the earliest printed books, distinguished by narrow, angular letters and a strong vertical emphasis; also, the manuscript hand on which these typefaces were based. *OED*.
[12] 'Pray for the soul of Master Thomas Ryge former vicar of this Church; and for the souls of his predecessors, the benefactors and parishioners, and all the faithful dead. Let God be with their souls. 1424.' This date is problematic, as on I.171 (see below) Machell referred to Rigg as alive in 1522. If he had died in the 16th century, then Machell has omitted a numeral: 'C'. In 1703, William Nicolson saw the inscription as, 'Orate pro Anima Magistri Thomæ Ryge quondam Benefactor et parochianorum suorum ac omnium', but did not continue further (See Nicolson, *Misc. Accts*, 48), leaving Nicolson and Burn to remark that the date was illegible 'in Bishop Nicolson's time': *N&B1*, 569.
[13] 'Wounds'.
[14] 'Pray for us St Michael'.

Lyon. Underneath in a Roundell the Resurrection of Xt.
In the midle the Virgin Mary praying in the same Robes with the former & yallow haire, with St Michael as I suppose from his roobes behind her \ with hand erect desjoyned / but that there are no wings; & above her head Our Saviour with a globe in his left hand, butt all much defaced. Something there has bin both under and above uniforme to the other, but are broke & gon.
~~In~~ the 3d. In the midle a Bishop with a Booke in his right hand, a crosier cross in his left. a read cope with golden edge under which blew fringed read & green & under that white. Above his head is an escutcheon with all the instruments of our Saviours persicution, & under neath in a Roundell, Queens College Armes.[15] And upon a sc[r]owle wrapt about the round ~~wreath~~ \ rodd: / Meus Jhe \ est / amor.[16] & the same Inscription \ under though[17] both windows. /[18]

In the 2nd South window \ over the doore / are 2 lights. In the first Virgin Mary \ Virgo Deifera[19] / with our Saviour in her right arme & a sceptre in the left hand. Underneath, this Coat of Armes, Argent a † Sable*; and on a scrowle wrapt about a Rod in [a roundel][20] Karl. Karlil[21] repeated above a T.
In the next St George; what was beneath is go[n] but above is an R, answering the T for Thomas Rige. Underneath both, the same inscription compleat as before.

On the 3d, St Edward the Confessor in the 1t. Nothing on the next. Above both, T.B. Underneath it nothing but the fragments of the same inscription, as above.[22]

[Machell's Notes: I.423]

*q. if Ryggs.

[I.424]

There is besides in this quire on the N. side thereof, a fair through with a Brode marble stone neither pollished nor inscribed where a vaulte has bin sup[posed].
On the south side the Aultar a strait marble stone thus inscribed.

> Here lyes Mr | Gabriel Vin | cent Stuart | to the R[ight] H[onourable] Ann Clifford | Countiss Dow | ager of Pen | Brooke Dorsett | and Montgomery | and Chief | Director of all | Her buildings in the North | who dyed [in] The Romane | Tower of | Brough Castle | Like a good | Xtian the |12th of February | 1665. 1666. | Lookeing for | the Second Comeing of | Our Saviour | Jesus Xt*.[23]

---

[15] Here follows a 1½ cm square sketch of the arms. Queen's College, Oxford, had the advowson, with rectorial rights to much of the parish. See Margaret E. Gowling, *The Story of Brough-under-Stainmore* (Kirkby Stephen, 2011), 44, 100. Robert de Eglesfield, founder of Queen's College, served as an MP for Cumberland in 1328, but at some point he decided to take holy orders. On 28 March 1331, the year in which we first find Eglesfield as a king's clerk, Edward III decided to present him to the first void benefice in the king's gift worth over 20 marks; accordingly, in July 1332, he was admitted to the rectory of Brough, said at the time of his resignation in 1344 to be worth £53 16s. 7d. p.a. Only an acolyte when admitted to Brough, Eglesfield was ordained deacon in December 1332 and priest in February 1333, in each case by the bishop of Carlisle. Remaining in royal service, Eglesfield did not reside in Brough. See J. Kaye, 'Eglesfield [Egilsfeld], Robert [Robert de Eglesfeld] (c. 1295-1349), founder of Queen's College, Oxford'. *ODNB*.
[16] 'My Jesus is love.'
[17] Transcribed as seen.
[18] Some words in this interlineation are unclear. William Nicolson described Eaglesfield's arms, which he saw in a quire window near the image of St Michael, as 'Three Spread Eagles, Gules, in a Field (as I take it) Argent,' *Misc. Accts*, 47.
[19] 'Virgin, God bearer [Mother of God].'
[20] Here Machell used a circle symbol.
[21] 'Karl Karlil' refers to bishops of Carlisle, see *N&B1*, 572.
[22] Some of the text at the page foot has perished.
[23] See Machell on Appleby (I.296), where he denigrates Vincent's work on the church of St Lawrence: '[Lady Anne Clifford] had a \ very / great opinion for \ his / skill in Architecture (as may be seen by his monument att Brough). But he had none att all as appears by his works.'

In Blenkinsop Quire

1. Above the 5 vulnera (In the Little E. window – Father Son & Holy Ghost ut opposite stand Mary.)
2. ~~In~~ the N. window \ has / 3 lights. In the 1[t] Virgin Mary ~~above which~~ or rather St Catherine tho she be crowned for she has in her left hand a Catherine wheale; her hair yallow, her Out robe white, her Inner yallow floored.[24] Above, the Arms of the Blenkinsops quartered.[25] 1. Vert frette Argent, which I take to be Salkeld; the 2[nd] Vass[26] de Vallibus. Argent a Bend boerd Counter Compone[27] Or & Gule.[28] 3[d]. Helbeck, Gule 6 Annuletts Or within a border ingraled Argent (which I take to be Vipont). In the next a Bishop in white with a Cross crosier; above ~~which~~ Blenkinsops armes \ i.e. / Argent a fess between 3 garbes Sable. On the fess a Cres[cent] for descent of the ~~1[t] or~~ 2 house. In the third a maiden saint all in wite powderd with flooredelys. Pinion'd about her Armes. Over the brest.[29]

In the Body of the Church

The 1[t] south window i.e. the upper window in dimond squares, IHS, i.e. Iesus Hom[inum] Sal[vator], in yallow Letters \ all over.[30] / In the underneath has bin 2 saints in either light & some inscription under them but all defaced \ & obliterated & broken. / Betwixt this and the next window is a monument in the wall with a through comeing oute, the supporting side being hansome cutworke.[31] It is reported to be maide for One Brunskill who lived on

[Machell's Notes: I.424]

*Memorandum: writ in Capital Letters.

[I.425]

Stanemore in the remotest part of the parish and \ had / a great many cattle. One time it hapned that his bull fell a bellowing, which in that Country they call cruneing. Whereupon he said to one of his neighbours, hearest thow not how Loude this Bull crewnes; if they should all crewne together {!} might they not be heard from B[rough] hither? He answerd ~~this~~ yess. Well then said Brunskill. I'le make them all crewne together; & he sowld them all; \ & / with the prise whereof he bought 4 bells now in Brough Church* the greatest of which is 15 or 1600 weight.[32]

In the great ally near to the reading deske is a gravestone, and upon a piece of brass ~~with~~ this inscription in text.

> Hic jacet Thom B\l/enkinsop armiger de Helbeck et Katarina uxor ejusdem q[i] q[id].[33] Thms obijt X[0] die julij anno domini MLL[0] LXXIIII[0] quorum animabus pepercit Deus[34]

[24] Flowered.
[25] Here Machell drew a small sketch of the arms' shape.
[26] Two letters superimposed here make the word unclear, but it probably refers to the family of Vaux.
[27] Counter-Compony: a border, bend, etc., which is composed of two rows of checkers of alternate tinctures: https://heraldry.celticradio.net/history.php?id=4.
[28] Here Machell drew a small sketch of checkers.
[29] When William Nicolson visited in 1703, he noted that though the Quire was 'in a position quite unbecoming', there were 'two large and handsome seats' at its entrance: one erected by Thomas Gabetis (died 1694); the other by the vicar, Christopher Harrison, who had placed it there in 1682. As Machell did not comment on these seats, it would seem that he visited the church before 1682. See *Misc Accts*, 47-48.
[30] A Christogram popularised by St Bernardino of Siena in the 15th century. He and his followers often showed IHS on a background of rays of the burning sun. See Don C. Skemer, *Binding Words: Textual Amulets in the Middle Ages* (State College, 2006), 115.
[31] The next [short] word is blotted.
[32] See this tale repeated in *N&BI*, 571.
[33] The meaning of the shortened word is unclear but might be 'quoque', meaning 'also'. In 1703, William Nicolson rendered this part of the inscription simply as 'uxor ejusdem Thome': 'wife of the same Thomas': see Nicolson, *Misc. Accts*, 48.
[34] 'Here lies Thomas Blenkinsop, squire, of Helbeck and Katharine wife of the same Thomas, who died 10th day of July in the year of the Lord 1674, on whose souls God has had mercy.' Quoted in Edward Bellasis, *Westmorland Church Notes I* (Kendal, 1888), 128.

Vereor ne abusive (nisi sit MLL. LXXXIIIJ) for they have not bin so long there.[35]

The Reading Deske there (which is a very hansome one with a canopie over it) was given by one Cuthbert Bucle Lord Major of London†. He was borne upon Stanemore in this Parish and founded a schoole there endoweing it with about 10^{li} per Annum \ & another in Brough, ni fallor[36] – Mr Harreson.[37] / He was a Benefactor to Queens College in Oxon ni fallor; vid. Stows *Cron*.[38] His name is upon the deske thus: by Cuthbert Buckle. Anno domini 1576‡.

2. – In the 2 S. window 2 Lights. In the 1^{t} St Peter {?} & under him the Virgin Mary \ & / ~~and~~ a boy praying ~~with~~ with scrowle from his mou[t]h: mater dei.[39] & under them both: Sancta Maria ora pro nobis.[40] In the next light Our Saviour sitting a chare. All up and down JHS.

3. \ In the 3^{d} which is beyond the pulpit. 3 lights. / In the 1^{t} light. St John. Underneath, St Michael in white with yallow edgeing & yallow wings; in the one s\c/ale a child; in the other a dragon or Devel. In the next, Virgin Mary with Xt in one hand & septer in the other, in white; under, a monke prayeing with this scrowle: fili dei miserere mei.[41]
In the 3^{d} St Xtfer under which somthing defaced. Under itt writt Orate pro a[n]i[m]a D[om]ini Thome Rud Qui istam fenestram fieri fecit↓.[42]

4. – In the fourth south window, all Saints their picture & names & scaleing ladders from the 7 sacriments.

[Machell's Notes: I.425]

*Memorandum: I have an account of the steple building & Bells makeing – q. here they agre?
†(Note, vide Johe. de Vorags A\u/rea Legend.)[43]
‡If this was not the same with the Buckels J.M. of Wender marryed with.
↓{Thomas Rud, they say, was vicar here.}

[I.426]

In the 5th Sth window 2 Lights – In the 1^{t} St John Baptist; In the nex[t,] St John Evangelist with dragon in cup.[44] Under the Baptist, STE JOHE \ i.e. St Johanne. / Above them in a little part of the window Virgin Mary sitting on a throne.
In the 2 lesser lights on each side, the 1^{t}. HIS, the 2nd, M[ary].

In the 6. nothing.
{Ult 6} In the steeple window St John with the cup, & in a little vacancy, Musgraves armes.

Take this range 1t.
5.[45] – In the west end window a great R for Rigge.

[35] 'I am concerned that this is incorrect. (unless it be MLL. LXXXIIII).' Machell's initial reading of the text seems to suggest 'MLL^{0} = millesimo' and 'LXXIIII = septuagesimo quarto': 1074. This could also be read (loosely) as 1274. Machell then corrects the date to 1084 or 1284, but this is equally problematic because the Bellasis transcription of the date (copying Nicolson, *Misc. Accts*, 48) is 1674. Clearly, something is missing from the inscription.
[36] 'Unless I am mistaken.' The Free Grammar School in Brough was founded as a chapel by John Brunskill and Thomas Blenkinsop in 1506, see I.393 and I.431; see also *N&B1*, 573-75.
[37] Machell's informant was Christopher Harrison, vicar of Brough, 1664-95. CCED.
[38] In 1591, 'Mr Alderman Buckle' of London presented a copy of the King's Bible to Queen's College, Oxford, 'though membership of the college is not thereby inferred.' See J.R. Magrath, *The Queen's College*, 2 vols (Oxford, 1921), Vol. 2: 258, 266-69.
[39] 'Mother of God.'
[40] 'Saint Mary, pray for us.'
[41] 'Son of God have mercy on me.'
[42] 'Pray for the soul of Lord Thomas Rud who had this window made.'
[43] Jacobus de Voragine (c.1230-1298), *Legenda Aurea* (The Golden Legend): 13th-century book on the lives of the major saints. The first dated editon was published in Barcelona in 1494.
[44] In a chalice.
[45] MS: 'Ult 5'.

On the North Isle.
4. – The 1ᵗ window toward the west end, 2 Lights. In the first a saint defaced; in the second, with Inscription, St John Cryzostem.[46] He has a furr about his neck, a read cope with […][47] sep.[48] upon a blew vesture. Up & down, IHS & M in distinct panes.

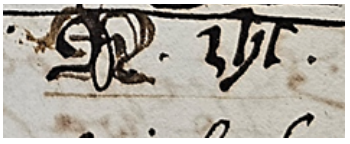


Figure 1.6.1. 'IHS & M'. I.426.

3. – The 2nd window 2 Lights. In the 1ᵗ these Lett[ers] in text: Petere may \ be / St Peters picture. In the second, St John of Beverlay in text underneath his picture.[49] \ Here & there / ~~He~~ sparsim[50] M and IHS.
2. The 3d. 2 lights. In the 1ᵗ the Angel Gabriel saluteing the Virgin who has bin placed in the next light; from his mouth a scrowle inscribed, Ave gracia plena dominus tecum.[51] In the next has bin the Virgin Mary, the Holy Ghost ascending, and Xt with a cross descend[ing], the picture quite defaced. But the scrowle, confusedly changed, leaves this inscription – e~~x~~ce fiat mⁱ scdm vʳtm tuu {i.e. ecce fiat mihi secundum voluntatem tuum ...}.[52] Above all in the interspace an escutcheon Or, with a hammer & pair of pincers Sable.
1. In the 4th. 3 lights, the 1ᵗ St John Baptist. 2nd has bin (ut puto)[53] the Virgin Mary with a ball in her hand and underneath a little crucifix. In the 3d St John with the Cupp. In the 2 greater vacancyes, the 1ᵗ. Argent, the cross over which the spear & spunge saltierwise betwixt 2 whips saltierwise on the right & 3 dyce in 3 angle with 3 nales Sable, the rest Or. The other Argent Crowne of Thorne staves & money Or. Sparsim JHS. M.[54]

In the Vicarage House[55]
{Robert Eglefield}
On each side the Gate right hand IHS, & under that T.R. for Thomas Ryge, who built it and the wall on the other side, M. In the parlour the College Arms[56] & an Eagle with this Le[m]ma[57] – nosce te ipsum.[58] St Ellens picture with a chaple & crosses. In the hall, Bishop Rob. Armes impaled to Carlile.[59] 1. Carlile. 2. Azure a pike bendwise Argent on a fess of the 2nd a red rose between 2 roundlets Gules; eagles in severall parts.[60]

---

[46] Lived AD 347-407. Archbishop of Constantinople.
[47] See the Eastern Orthodox cross in Figure 1.6.1, beneath.
[48] As St John Chrysostom died on 14 September 407, 'sep' could represent a shortened form of 'sepultus est': 'he was buried'. In the Eastern Orthodox Church the feast days of St John Chrysostom are 14 September, 13 November and 27 January; the 'sep.' here might also refer to this saint's September death and feast day.
[49] St John of Beverley d. 721, was bishop of Hexham, then of York. https://beverleyminster.org.uk/saint-john-of-beverley/.
[50] 'Here and there.' Machell provided the translation as an interlineation.
[51] 'Hail Mary full of Grace; the Lord is with thee.'
[52] 'Lo, be it unto me according to thy will.'
[53] 'As I think.'
[54] 'Here and there, JHS. M.'
[55] When William Nicolson visited the house in 1703, he described it as, 'still low, moist and smoaky', Nicolson, *Misc. Accts*, 48.
[56] Queen's College, Oxford, see below.
[57] 'Lemma': motto appended to a picture. *OED*.
[58] 'Know thyself.'
[59] Henry Robinson, bishop of Carlisle, 1598-1616.
[60] The text has perished at this point but Nicolson & Burn continue it as, 'being the arms of Eglesfield', *N&B1*, 573. This agrees with Machell's margin comment, 'Robert Eglefield' [plus two illegible words] on I.426, above. William Nicolson described Eaglesfield's arms (in a quire window near the image of St Michael) as 'Three Spread Eagles, Gules, in a Field (as I take it) Argent,' Nicolson, *Misc.Accts*, 47.

[I.171]

Vicar of Brough

John de Marton	3^{0} Rich.2	[1379-80][61]
Joh Hugon Vic. perpet.	3^{0} Henry 5	[1415-16]
John Pennener	2^{0} Hen.6	[1423-24]
Thom. Rud	25. H.6	[1446-47]
Rood	2 Ed.4	[1462-63]
Thom. Rigg 1522	4^{0} H. 8	1532[62]
John Conyers ~~Rector~~ Parson	14. H.8	[1522-23]
Mr Tompson V[icar]	H.8	1536[63]

[I.389]

The famous R[obert]. E[aglesfield] Chaplaine to Q[ueen] Philippa cousine[64] of King Edward 3. who was founder of Queens College in Oxford, was once Rector there.[65]

[I.422]

[Notes on Tithes]

{Brough. See more sub Tit. Apleby} Ad Rectoriam[66]

This Account was sent up to Queens College at Oxon By Mr Hexteter[67] as I take it Mr Richardsons predicessor 1623 concerning the Tythes.[68] Sc. In kinde all the wooll Lamb Corne and 4^{li}: 13^{s}: 5^{d} per Annum by an ancient prescription for the corne of Helbeck and hay of All Stanemore. About the same time wool was sold as I remember for 8^{s} a stone: And Tythe Lambes for 2^{s} 6^{d} a peece. {Tell Mr Harrison of this.}[69]

This paper is now in Dr Haltons custody: Provost of Queenes. April 26. 1678.[70]

---

[61] Also recorded by John F Curwen, 'Parishes (East Ward): St Michael, Brough', *The Later Records Relating to North Westmorland or the Barony of Appleby*. CWAAS Record Series 8 (Kendal, 1932), 94-109.

[62] Henry VIII's 4th regnal year was 1512-13.

[63] Robert Thompson, incumbent from 1535: see John F Curwen, 'Parishes (East Ward): St Michael, Brough', *Later Records,* 94-109.

[64] Philippa of Hainault, wife of Edward III, was also his second cousin.

[65] Robert Eaglesfield founded Queen's College, Oxford, in 1341; he was rector of Brough from 1332 to 1344. He did not live in Brough, though he visited the hospital of St Nicholas, Carlisle, in 1335: J. Kaye, Eglesfield [Egilsfeld], Robert [Robert de Eglesfeld] (c. 1295-1349). *ODNB*.

[66] 'Concerning the Rectory.'

[67] David Hechstetter BD was vicar of Brough from 1611 until 1623. CCED. He matriculated at Queen's College, Oxford, in 1594; BA. 1596-97, see *OAD*. The family came to Cumberland as mining consultants from Augsburg: W.G. Collingwood, *Elizabethan Keswick: Extracts from the Original Account Books, 1564-1577, of the German Miners in the Archives of Augsburg*, CWAAS Tract Series 8 (Kendal, 1912), 120-25.

[68] William Richardson was rector of Brough from 1623 until his death in 1664. The Commonwealth Survey of 1657 relates the following: 'That the right of presentation to the church is in the Provost and Fellows of Queen's College, Oxford. That Mr. William Richardson is present incumbent there and hath for his maintenance the glebe land which is worth £10 by the year and the tithes of calves with all other small tithes and dues within the parish of Brough which are worth £16 by the year. That all the rest of the tithes within the said parish do appertain to the said College and are worth £60 by the year.' See www.british-history.ac.uk/n-westmorland-records/vol8/pp94-109.

[69] Christopher Harrison MA was vicar of Brough from 1664 until his death in 1695, having been previously preacher at Crosby on Eden. CCED. He was admitted servitor at Queen's College, Oxford, in 1649, BA 1651, MA 1653-54, fellow 1654, incorporated at Cambridge 1658: see *OAD*. See also Bishop's Register: CAC(C), DRC1/4/245: Institution of Christopher Harrison to Brough.

[70] Timothy Halton, (bap. 1633, d. 1704), was the second son of Miles Halton (1599-1652) of Greenthwaite Hall, high sheriff of Cumberland, and his wife, Dorothy (1608-1697), daughter of William Wybergh. He was baptised at Greystoke in 1633, educated at Blencow Grammar School, and in 1649 entered Queen's College, Oxford, where his tutor was Thomas Smith, later bishop of Carlisle. He was a friend of Joseph Williamson (1633-1701), later Secretary of State, and Thomas Lamplugh (1615-1691), later archbishop of York. Halton was elected provost of Queen's College on 7 April 1677. See A. Hegarty, 'Halton, Timothy (bap. 1633, d. 1704), college head'. *ODNB*.

[I.185]

[**Chapel: Further Brough**]
There was a chaple att Brough in Henry 3. time as I take it, for Sir Michael Harcla is witness. And it should seem to have bin founded by Thomas de Musgrave (as appears from these words if they may denote any more than patronage)
Thom. fil Thomae Musgrave salutem. Sciatis me &c. dedisse. Deo et beat[e] Mar[iae] Virg[inis] & capellæ meæ de Burgo sub Stanemor, & Dom[ino] Will[iamo] de Askaby capellano et successoribus suis ibidem. Deo servientibus quos ego et Heredes mei ad predictam capellam presentare voluerimus om[n]es terras prata &c. subscripta.[71]

The Late Chapple was founded by Thomas Blenkinsop Esq., who gave the ground, & John Brunskale, who built the same, as appears [in] the licence of Will. Bishop of Carlile for erecting of the same, dated 1496, 19 June.

[I.393]

It was founded intentionally 1493, 7. Henry 7. by Thomas Blenkinsop Esq., who gave the Tenement whereon it stands, called Gib Garth, to John Brunskale upon condition that he should build a Chaple there att his owne proper cost & an Hospice or harbour with 2 Bedes in it for Strangers (or pilgrims) and other poore people and maintane and repare the same for ever, paying to him & his heires 2^{d} rent at Pentcost yerely; and upon defalt of repareing & mantaineing the said Chaple, Harbour & Beds, as before specifyed, that the Tenement should revert to Thomas and his heires as formerly. It was build to the honour of the Blessed Virgin & St Gabriel the Archangel, & consequently dedicated to them allso, as is apparent from the foresaid writeing.[72]

[I.413]

{St Marys Chaple at Brough founded}
\ T.B. Esq. / He gave a tenement in Brough called Gibgarth to John Brunskale, upon condition that he should build thereupon a chaple in Hon[our] of the Blessed Virgin Mary & St Gabriel the Archangel: reseveing to him selfe & heirs 2^{d} rent at Penticost if demanded ~~upon~~, and allso that he should build an hospitum with 2 Bedds in the same to harbour strangers & other poore people, \ all / which were to be kept in repare {!!! !!!} by Brunskale & his heires; otherwise to revert to him & his heirs: dated 1493. Regnald & Robert Warghethecop Esqs witnesses inter alios. 7. Henry 7. [1491-92] vixit 17. Henry 7. [1501-02]. {He dyed about 1. Henry 8.} [1509-10].

[Machell's Notes: I.185]

[Further notes on the Chantry Chapel, above]
And there was a little hospitall allso, which was built for poore travaliers relief, because of the Storme Tempest &c. which were so frequent upon Stanemore, & they who putt to their helping handes & were pen[itent] were to have 4 dayes pardon. The chapple allso was built in consideration of the church being so remote from the Through Road Towne, that priest might be &c.
9. Ed. 4. [1469-70]. T. Mauchel – Thomas Lancaster came then about? (at least was then) \ to / att Brampton.

[I.390]

Burgh Subtus Stanesmore [Lordship and Castle][73]

{Lordship of Brough: wat villages in it; what the demane & manner house?} {who inhabitants?}

[71] 'Thomas son of Thomas Musgrave. Greetings. Let it be known that I etc. have given to God and the blessed Virgin Mary and my chapel of Brough-under-Stanemor & to Lord William of Askaby, chaplain, and his successors there, servants of God (whom I and my heirs have willed to present to the aforesaid chapel) all the lands, meadows etc. listed below.'
[72] Presumably the writing referred to was the deed of gift of Gibgarth; for evidence relating to the history of this chapel, see Gowling, *Brough-under-Stainmore*, 70-71; Gowling quotes 1506 as the date of its endowment by John Brunskill as a 'separate institution [from St Michael's Church] …connected with the holy well of St Winifred.'
[73] 'Brough is commonly expressed by the description of Brough under Stanemore, to distinguish it from the same name, of which there are many', *N&B1*, 577.

{8. Edward 2. [1314-15] est ibidem unum castrum &c.}[74]
There is there One Castle, with[in] the precinct of the trenches whose Herbage valet per annum, vj^{s} viii^{d}. ~~Cl~~ iiij \ xx /[75] Acres of demane land, 22 whereof at the least are each of them worth per Annum 9^{d}, & they amount to vj^{li}, xiij^{s}, iiij^{d}.[76] {?} lx Acres of medow, Each whereof valet per Annum xij^{d} per Acre, et est Summa lx^{s}. 2 Parkes whose Herbage cum Omnibus &c.[77] valet per Annum Cls;[78] Allso free Tenents who pay by the yere X^{s}; and Other free Tenents who pay per Annum 17^{s} 2^{d}.

There are allso 20 Oxgangs of Land worth 4^{s} per annum an Oxgang, and they amount to iiij^{li}. And x Tofts Cotterell[79] which are yerely worth 6^{d} per Toft, & summa est 5^{s}; And One Bakehouse which is worth with the measureing of the corne of the village 40^{s}. And One watermill burned & valet per Annum vj^{li}, xiij^{s}, iiij^{d}. Allso the Constableship is worth per Annum 40^{s}. Allso the profitts of the faires are worth per Annum x^{s}. There are Allso there 52 inferiour Burgages, 24 Tofts & one halfe; And they Are Burned, Each whereof valet per Annum xij^{d}. & they amount to 24^{s} 6^{d}.

Allso there are there upon Stanemore, Vaccaries which are Burnt, each whereof, with the middow ajoyning, valet per annum 10^{s}, and they Amount to C^{s} (so that there wer 10 vaccaries). Allso Alane de Cabergh Nicholas de Musgrave & Geofray de Tesedale Hold there 4 closes of new improvement & red[dit] per Annum Cxv^{s}, ~~&~~ q$^{a.}$[80]

{Agistamentum}[81]
And the Adjoyst[82] there is valet per Annum xi^{s}.
The pleas & perq[uisites] of the Court:[83] xiij^{s} iiij^{d}.
Summat[im] Totalis: xlix^{li} xviij^{s} iiij^{d} q^{a}. utrum de tot[ali] & demidi dubitat? [84]

ex ead[em] escæt cap Apud Ap 8. Edward 2. [1314-15]: in Tur London[85]

Sowerby Juxta Burgh[86]
Ibidem unum Capitale messuagium &c. There is there one Manner-House, which is worth by the yere: 0: 1: 0

xx/v[87] Acres of Land de Demane worth per Annum viii^{d}[88] an Acre & summa est	2:13: 4
xvi Acres of ~~dem~~. medow, worth in the yere per Acre, 18^{d} and summa est	1: 4: 0
2 Free Tennents who pay per Annum	0: 0: 7
xvj Oxgangs of Land quar quel valet per Annum 5^{s}.[89]	4: 0: 0
x messuages Cotterell, each whereof valet per Annum xij^{d} & summa est	10:10: 0

[74] Inquisition Post Mortem, Robert de Clifford, 8. Ed. 2. 1314-1315. 'There is there one castle etc.'
[75] This number represents four score = 80.
[76] £6 13s 4d.
[77] 'With all its appurtenances.' Another reference to parks in MS I.262B, provides, 'A place called Brough Parke of the dem[ain] lands belonging to Brough Castle, 1637, p.212. L[iber] 3.' For evidence of deer parks (including Brough Park) in Brough Parish, see Haydn Charlesworth, 'The medieval Parks of Brough-under-Stainmore', *CW3*, 18 (2018), 169-90.
[78] '150s.'
[79] Tofts Coterell: Homesteads and lands of cottagers. *OED*.
[80] 115s ¼d.
[81] Grazing.
[82] Agistment?
[83] Manor Court.
[84] In sum total, £49 18s 4¼d. It is uncertain whether this refers to the whole or the half.
[85] From an eschaetor's survey of Brough Parish taken in 8 Edward II (1314-1315), now in the Tower of London.
[86] Sowerby near Brough.
[87] The arithmetic only works if the sum represents 80 acres at 8d per acre (= £2 13s 4d) but the numbering suggests 25 acres. However, the price of viii per acre is unclear.
[88] Partly crossed-through numeral.
[89] 'Worth each year per annum.'

1 water mill, worth per Annum 2: 0: 0
And there is there 1 vaccarie worth per Annum 1: 6: 8
Summa est: xi^{li}, xv^{s}, vij^{d}

Ex Eodem Escheato? sed utrum de toto an de demid[io] Dubit[o].[90]

[I.389]

Brough Castle

And the Castle is the manner house, which (as Apleby) has bin a seat of The Morvills, after of the Viponts and in particular of Idonea de Labourne, 2 daughter of Robert de Vipont, to whose portion it fell, and that time is said to have bin in its prime. But after was governed for the most part by a Constable which Constablewik in [blank] time, was vallued upon inquisition att 40s. And one del Stanes had the place of old under the Cliffords. But in the yere [blank] it was passed to T.B.[91] de Helbeck Esq. \ & his heires / as way of lease for 500 yeres, so that it was never very much inhabited by these noble familyes which were owners of till of late that it was rebuilded by the Lady Ann Clifford, last of that name, who repared this & all her other Castles and lived in them all by courses; by that means distributing her benefitts and spending Her money with a great equality in all part of the country. And least it should falle to Ruine Agane, and the Glory thereof be quite Extinguished, I have presented you with a draught and plattforme.[92] But Quod nitet interius nulla Tabella [infert].[93]

[I.392]

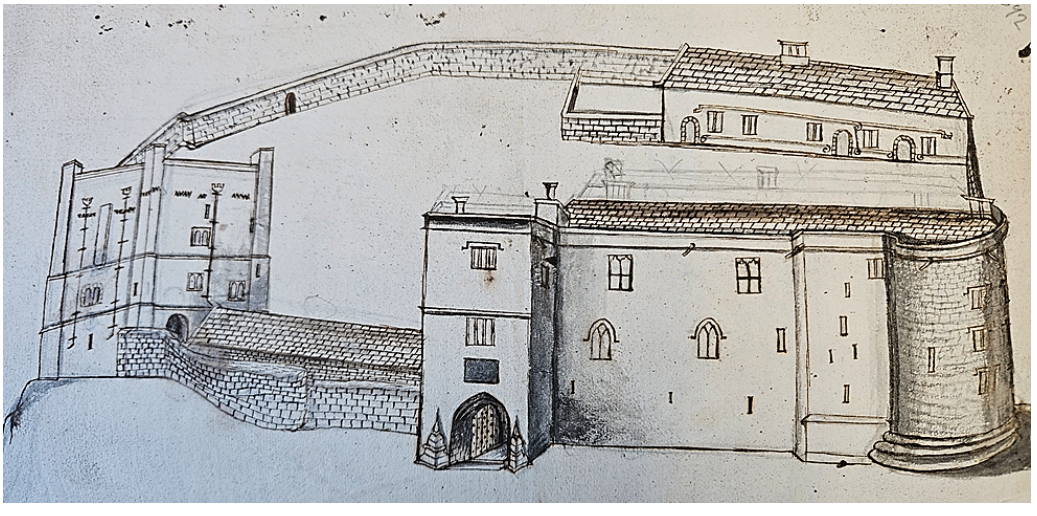


Figure 1.6.2. Elevation of Brough Castle. 1.392.

[90] 'But whether this concerns the whole or the half I am not sure.'
[91] Thomas Blenkinsop.
[92] For Machell's elevation and plan, see I.392, 392A.
[93] ''What shines within no picture can represent.'

[I.392A]

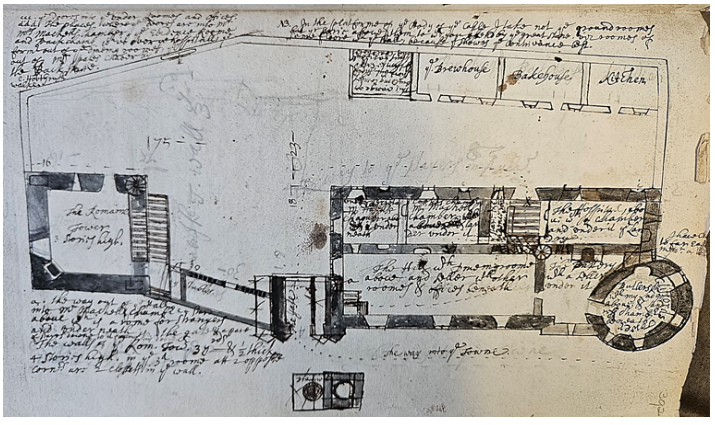


Figure 1.6.3. Plan of Brough Castle. 1.392A.

[Key to Machell's Plan of Brough Castle]

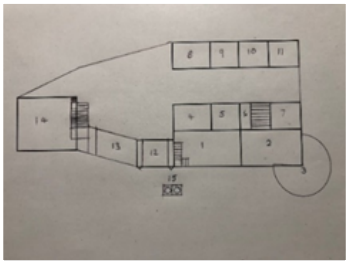


Figure 1.6.4. Key to Machell's Plan of Brough Castle (above).

[1.] The Hall with Dineing roome above and seller with other roomes & offices beneath.
[2.] The Buttery with a seller under it.
[3.] Cliffords Tower: Butlers ch[amber] with my Ladyes above & Landress chamber beneath.
[4.] Undersecre[tary] Mr \ W. / Hasells chamber abo[ve] with one underneath.
[5.] Cookes chamber (Mrs Machells ~~with a~~ chamber) ~~above~~) & larder under it.
[6.] The stare & Evidence room[94] above.
[7.] The Hospitall above with a chamber, and under it the Lau[n]drye.[95]
[8.] This range of Building comes short, but should, I think, extend thus far without this coale hole.
[9.] The Brewhouse.
[10.] Bakehouse.
[11.] Kitchen.
[12.] The Gate.
[13.] The Stables.
[14.] The Roman Tower, 3 storyes high 16 yards.[96]
[15.] Draw-well.

[94] The archive and strong room of the castle.
[95] There is a virtually illegible sentence in the margin here.
[96] 16 yards square.

The Romaine Tower, 3 Stories high
a: The way out of the Hall into Mr Machells Chamber è a stare,[97] above which is a rome for strangers, and underneath is the gate & a pare of stares downe to it from his doore.
[b.] The walls of the Roman Tower 3 yards & ½ thick, 4 stories high. In the 3^{d} roome att 2 opposite corners are 2 clossets in the wall.
ccc: The doores into the under roomes and offices.
ddd: The places where the doores are into Mr Machells Chamber, the evidence roome and Back chamber which is over the hospitall, the former out of the dineing roome, which out of Mrs Pates chamber by the Back stare.[98]
e. Hobthrush Walke.

[Machell's Notes: I.392A]

'About the T. Wall 3 Yards'; 'The Way to the Mayors Aula.'[99]
N.B. In the platform of the body of the Castle I take not the ground rooms but the storie above them, to which you ascend by the great stare, viz. rooms of same floore with the hall, because that showes the contrivance best.

[I.394]

The Castle within the walls cannot be extended, by reason that the cost bestowed thereupon exceeds the profit*.
There was then a Garden without the Castle, the Herbage whereof was extended to 1^{s}[100] per Annum†. In the 13. yere of Henry 8th 1521, the Ancient Castle of Brough under Stanemore was by a causualty sett on fire 2 yeres befor the death of Henry Lord Clifford, surnamed the shepherd, a little while after he had kept a great X^{t}mas there, so as nothing was left but the bare walls.[101] And so it lay, till built agane by the Lady Ann Clifford, Countiss D[owager] of Dorsett &c. [who] built it agane on the Old Foundation, so as she lodged 3 nights together ther, i.e. 16, 17, 18 of September, 1660: 1^{t} night in Cliffords or the Round Tower, the Other 2 in \ Tower called the / the Romanes.

[Machell's Notes: I.394]

*{1. Edward 3.} (N. It seemes they were all putt in repare then.)
†This should be Browham.

[I.395]

The outworkes are square, 7 s[core] & 10 passes in lenth, 5 sc. in bredth, measureing upon the top of the workes. Some other at the south end.
The court is about 91 passes in lenth. Considering allso the thickness of the walls = whereof the maine castle take up in lenth 28 p.; the stables 30; one side of Tower 16; Twixt the stable end an Tower wall 14 p.; the distance twixt stable end next Castle & the Castle about 8. {add 2}

Castle	28	}
Gate	5[102]	}
Stable	30	}94*
To the Tower	14	}†
Tower	16	}

The Bredth of Court from the Inside of the Court wall to the Outside of the gate, 41. Thus, from the outmost part of foreside the gate to corner of the Castle 18; from thence to the wall 23‡.

[97] In Lady Anne Clifford's accounts of 1665, Henry Machell (uncle to Thomas) is described as steward of Lady Anne's house and gentleman of her horse: see Jessica Malay (ed.), *Anne Clifford's Autobiographical Writing, 1590-1676* (Manchester, 2018), 226.
[98] Frances Pate was Lady Anne Clifford's senior gentlewoman. She was left £50 in Lady Anne's will. Another gentlewoman attendant was Susan Machell (sister to Thomas). See Malay, *Lady Anne Clifford's Autobiographical Writings*, 227.
[99] Written in pencil.
[100] The numeral '1' is partially obscured by a line.
[101] Machell was referencing Henry Clifford, born c.1454, whose youthful history was the stuff of novels. See Part 1, Ch.1, Town and Parishes of Appleby, I.254 (Generation 8 of the Cliffords).
[102] The numeral '5' has been superimposed on another numeral.

The tower walls are 3 yards thick. 4 sc[ore] & 15 steps up to the leads.
Walls thick in the round tower aboute 2 yard & ½.

[Windows: Coats of Arms]

Helbeck
Azure on a cheveron Argent 33 foyls Sable between 3 woulfes head Chiped Or.
Wife: Rayner of Lincolnshire, Ermin on a chief Azure. 2 starrs of 6 points Or.
Has 2nd Ewbanke coats Sable, 3 cheveronells in bass brased Or. On a Chief 3 harts. Crest a draggon head Or on a crownett Gules langed \ of the 2nd G[ules]. /
1. Blenkinsop Impaleing [blank], writ underneath Thomas Blenkinsop [blank] and Margaret, his wife, 158[blank]
In the midle higher Light, Blenkinsop quartering as at the church[103] Blenkinsop & Salkeld, 1586. ~~The House~~ Over the gate, 1588; over the great roome chimney H.- B. 1589.[104]

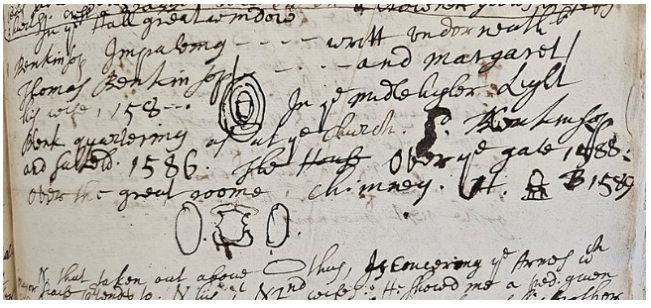


Figure 1.6.5. Sketches. I.395.

Note. That taken out above thus,[105] is concerning the arms which Major Scaife pretends to, & his 1t & 2nd wifes. He showd me a pedigree given in by his Brother of Winton last Visitation to Dugdale, Norroy,[106] as far as his brothers could remember, 4 or 5 generations. And he noted upon't that Mr Dugdale said the Scaifes had bin Gentlemen for 5 or 600 yeres {query a D[omi]no Dugdall}. That the[y] payd 25s fees to the said Sir Thomas Dugdale. The[n] he payd 26d for that Extract. Now I have heard on the contrary: that Mr Dugdall declared that he never ~~knew~~ \ heard / of a Gentleman of that name, & dismissed Major with a check, for he had that command under Oliver Cromwell in that Horrid rebellion & Civil War.[107]

[Machell's Notes: I.395]

*I tooke the whole to be but 91.[108]
†Rest no more; it is in a Direct Line.
‡Observe all this in drawing the platform over agane.

[103] The next word is blotted.
[104] There follows a roughly sketched coat of arms.
[105] See the small sketch in the figure above.
[106] William Dugdale was Norroy, King of Arms.
[107] On 13 July 1680, the Justices of Westmorland sent a letter to the Lord Chancellor protesting against the appointment of Arthur Skaife as a Justice. They remarked that Skaife 'was extraordinarily active in arms against the Crown, was a purchaser of Crown lands, and is a very different kidney from the gentlemen who have been put out.' A draft of this letter is excerpted in J.A. Bennett and R. Ward (eds), *The Manuscripts of S.H. le Fleming Esq. of Rydal Hall* (London, 1890), 169, with an accompanying note stating that, after the receipt of the letter, Skaife was 'turned out'. For more on Major Arthur Scaife and the Civil War, see Gowling, *Brough-under-Stainmore*, 67, 76-7.
[108] The sum in the table totals 93.

[I.396]

When the great Breach in Cæsars Tower ther[109] was made up by the Countiss of Penbroke, the Lady Ann Clifford, 16 [blank][110] in the highest story about 3 foote & ½ from the floore, (Sc. Brest high) was a whole ~~discovered~~ to be seen exactly in the midle betwixt the out & inside of the wall, about 9 inches diameter & plastered smoth within with lyme & sand and this was supposed by the workmen to have gon all along the sides of Tower from corner to corner. But of what use it was they could not conjecture; may be it was for to whisper & give notice from the opposite corner (in which there are clossets) of the approach of an enemie. But there were none in the Turrets or any other place that \ the workmen could discover. T. Yare one of the carpenter[s].[111]



Figure 1.6.6. Margin sketch. Impression of the old roof of the Roman Tower at Brough Castle. 1.396.

And they say allso that old Roofe had not bin made neither flat nor Ridged, but with a gutter quite contrarie way, & appeared & doth still appeare from the table of stone to cast of the water from the walls to the Roofe (i.e. to receive water in case of a siege?).[112]

[Hobthrush Walk]

There is a place calld Hobth\ r /osh Hole, in the Court Wall of the Castle, Noreast & not far from the Tower, so named they say from a spirit that used to walke there, concerning which they relate many

[109] Machell probably meant the 'Roman Tower' at Brough. 'Caesar's Tower' is at Appleby.

[110] Lady Anne Clifford had the castle restored during 1659-62. See Gowling, *Brough-under-Stainmore*, 70.

[111] T. Yare was Machell's informant.

[112] The received view is that a roof of this form was installed by Lady Anne Clifford, but Machell's text and the structural evidence together show that the succession of roofs was as follows: 1. c.1130s: steeply pitched with central ridge well down below the parapets, with built-in roof-crease (which can only be original). 2. Later Middle Ages: replaced by a central-valley roof, as shown by the 12 corbels on North and South, which can only have carried wall-purlins carrying the tops of rafters descending to the valley. This is the 'olde roof', as described to Machell after the event by Lady Anne's workman (or others reporting their former findings) of which he identified traces, and of which - clearly intrigued - he added a reconstruction drawing in the margin of his MS (I.396, above). 3. April-September 1660 (for this date see Malay, *Lady Anne Clifford's Autobiographical Writings*, 152-53): a wholly new roof, very low-pitched, installed at higher level, allowing for a new floor (a fourth level; third floor) to be added underneath it but still within and below the parapets. New windows were cut through the East and West walls to light it, and access to it hacked through from the original newel. The interpretation offered by the on-site interpretation (visited 5 May 2023); the published guidebook: Henry Summerson, English Heritage Guides: *Brougham and Brough Castles* (London, 1999); and website (accessed 9th May 2023), appears, therefore, to be incorrect. However, Machell's view that the reason for the 'olde' roof's form was to collect water is unfounded – any form of roof can be designed to do this. The 'table of stone', which he would have seen within the newly re-roofed building and partly obscured, must refer to the original tabling of the 1130s. I thank Dr Edward Impey FSA FRHistS, Master and Director General Emeritus, Royal Armouries', for sending this summary of his research, after visiting the site on 5 May 2023 (ed.).

stories, & this amongst the rest, That wen the people, who had corne in fields ready to be Inded,[113] if you brought a gift to this Hobthrosh walke, the[y] would be sure without further trouble to have it all in their barn by the next morning.

[I.427]

Ad Brough

The Old Charter of Brough[114]
Sent to the Earle of Thanet by Thomas Machell Rector of Kirkbythore, 24 Feb. 1684

{Carta R. Ed. VI}
Edwardus Sextus dei gratia Anglie Francie et Hybernie rex fidei defensor et in terra eclesie Anglicane et Hybernie supremum caput. Omnibus ad quos presentes littere pervenerint, salutem.
Inspeximus Litteras patentes domini E- nuper regis Anglie progenitoris nostri factas in hec verba, Edwardus dei gratia rex Anglie dominus Hybernie et dux Aquitanie, archepiscopis episcopis abbatibus prioribus comitibus barronibus justiciariis vicecomitibus prepositis Ministris et omnibus Balivis et fidelibus suis, salutem, Sciatis nos de gracia nostra speciali concessisse et hac carta nostra confirmasse dilecto et fideli nostro Roberto de Clifford quod ipse et heredes sui imperpetuum habeant unum mercatum singulis septimanis per diem Jovis apud Manerum suum de Burgh subtus Staynmore in Comitatu Westmerl' et unam feriam ibidem per quatuor dies duraturam, videlicet per duos dies prox' ante festum sancti Matthei Apostoli et in eodem festo sancti Matthei, et per unum diem prox' sequentem, Nisi mercatum illud et feria illa sint ad nocumentum vicinorum mercatorum et vicinarum feriarum, Quare volumus et firmiter precepimus pro nobis et Heredibus nostris quod predictus Robertus et Heredes sui imperpetuum habeant predicta mercatum et feriam apud Manerum suum predictum cum omnibus libertatibus et liberis consuetudinibus ad hujusmodi mercatum et feriam pertinentibus, Nisi mercatum illud et feria illa sint ad nocumentum vicinorum mercatorum et vicinarum feriarum sicut predictum est. Hiis testibus venerabilibus patribus H. Lincoln Episcopo Cancellario nostro: R. Episcopo Sarumi, Johanne de Elcham, comite Cornub., fratre nostro Carissimo: Rogero de mortuo Mari, Comite Marchie. Willo de Monte Acuto: Olivero de Ingham, Hugone de Turpliton seneschallo Hospitii nostri et alijs. Dat per manum nostram apud Northampton secondo die Augusti Anno regni nostri quarto. INSPEXIMUS etiam litteras patentes domini R. nuper regis Anglie progenitoris nostri de confirmatione facta in hec verba. Richardus dei gratia Rex anglie et Francie et Dominus Hybernie omnibus ad quos presentes littere pervenerint salutem, INSPEXIMUS quandam cartam domini H. fil Regis Johannis quondam Regis Anglie progenitoris nostri factam in hec verba. Henricus dei gratia, Rex Anglie dominus Hybernie Dux Normanie, Aquitanie et Comes Anjou. Archepiscopis Episcopis Abatibus prioribus Comitibus Baronibus Justiciariis vicomitibus prepositis ministris et omnibus Balivis et fidelibus suis, salutem Sciatis nos concessisse et hac carta nostra confirmasse dilecto et fideli nostro Reginaldo fil Petri quod ipse et Heredes sui imperpetuum habeant liberam Warrennam in omnibus dominicis terris suis Manerii sui de Wyghton. Dum tamen terre ille non sint infra metas Foreste nostre Ita quod nullus intret terras illas ad fugandam in eis vel ad aliquid capiendum quod ad Warrennam pertineat, sine licentia et voluntate ipsius Reginaldi vel Heredum suorum super forisfacturam nostram decem librarum. Concessimus etiam eidem Reginaldo quod ipse et Heredes sui imperpetuum habeant apud predictum Manerium suum de Wyghton unum ~~mercat~~ mercatum singulis septimanis per diem Jovis, Nisi mercatum illud sit ad nocumentum vicinorum mercatorum. Quare volumus et firmiter precipimus pro nobis et Heredibus nostris quod predictus

[113] Brought in.
[114] See William Whellan, *The History and Topography of the Counties of Cumberland and Westmoreland* (Pontefract, 1860), 730, which refers to Edward VI confirming the grant made by Edward III in 1330, hence the transcript of the Inspeximus Charter of Edward VI (26 February 1549) seen here. See also W. Douglas Simpson, 'Brough-under-Stainmore: The Castle and the Church', *CW2*, 46 (1946), 222-83, where Simpson notes (228) that details of the 1330 charter are to be found in the Calendar of Charter Rolls Vol. IV, 186, and that there is evidence for the market's earlier existence, as appears from a bond registered on 1 August 1281, citing the Calendar of Ancient Deeds, Vol. IV, 26 No. A6332. [For charter rolls see *British History* online.)

Reginaldus et Heredes sui imperpetuum habeant liberam Warrennam in omnibus dominicis terris suis Manerii sui de Wyghton Dum tamen terre ille non sint infra metas Foreste nostre

[I.429]

Ita quod nullus intret terras illas ad fugandum in eis vel ad aliquid capiendum quod ad Warrennam pertoneat sine licentia et voluntate ipsius Reginaldi vel heredum suorum super forisfacturam nostram decem librarum, et quod habeant ibidem unum Mercatum singulis septimanis per diem Jovis, Nisi Mercatum illud sit ad nocumentum vicinorum mercatorum sicut predictum est. Hiis Testibus venerabile patre Waltero Eborum Archepisco: Magistro W. de Kilkenny Archidiacano Coventr: Radulpho fil Nicolai Johanne de Lexington, Roberto de Muscegros, Roberto Walerand: Radulpho de Wanney: Willo de Chaenny et alijs. Data per manum nostram apud Shyreburn Septimo die Januarij anno regni nostri Vicessimo sexto. Nos autem concessiones confirmacionem voluntatem et preceptum prædicta et omnia et singula in Carta predicta contenta rata habentes, et grata et pro nobis et Heredibus nostris quantum in nobis est, dilecto et fideli nostro Stephano Leserop[…] Chivaler fil Richardi Leserop[…] Chivaler, et Militente uxori ejus, Ac dilecto Armigero nostro Thome Brounsfete et Margarete uxori ejus nunc tenentibus Manerij predicti tenore presentium concedimus et confirmamus, prout carta predicta rationabiliter testatur, et prout prestatus Reginaldus et Heredes sui ac alij tenentes Manerij predicti hujusmodi Warrennam et mercatum hactenus racionabiliter habere et tenere consueverunt. In cujus rei testimonium has litteras nostras fieri fecimus patentes. Teste me ipso apud Westmonasterium octavo die Novembris Anno Regni nostri quarto decimo. Nos autem Cartas et litteras predictas ac omnia et singula in eiusdem contenta rata habentes et grata, ea pro nobis et Heredibus nostris quantum in nobis est acceptamus et approbamus ac Carissimo consanguineo nostro Henrico Clifford Comiti Cumbr' ut consanguineo et proximo heredi predictorum Roberti de Clifford et Thome Brounfleete nunc tenentibus predictorum Manneriorum de Burgh et Wyghton et Heredibus suis tenore presentium ratificamus et confirmamus prout Carte et littere predicte in se racionabiliter testantur: et prout idem comes et Heredes sui tenentes Maneriorum predictorum hujusmodi libertates, et liberas Consuetudines hactenus racionabiliter habere et tenere consueverunt In Cujus rei testimonium has litteras nostras fieri fecimus patentes Teste meipso apud Westm' vicessimo sexto die Februarij Anno regni nostri tertio

W. Ermysted
Exam per nos
W Ermysted }
Willus Brytyn } Eticas[115]

[115] 'Edward VI by grace of God king of England, France and Ireland, defender of the faith, and supreme head of the English and Irish church. To all to whom this present letter shall come, greetings.
We have consulted patent letters of the Lord Edward, lately king of England and our forbear, which read as follows: Edward by grace of God king of England lord of Ireland and commander of Aquitania, to the archbishops, bishops, abbots, priors, earls, barons, justices, sheriffs, royal officials and to all bailiffs and their subjects, greetings. Know that we, through our special grace, have granted and by this charter of ours have confirmed to our beloved subject Robert de Clifford that he himself and his heirs in perpetuity may have a market every week on a Thursday at his manor of Brough under Stainmore in the County of Westmorland and a festival in the same place of four days duration, that is, for the two days immediately before the feast of Saint Matthew the Apostle and at that same feast of Saint Matthew, and for one day immediately following, unless that same market and that festival be to the detriment of neighbouring merchants and neighbouring festivals; wherefore we wish and we have issued firm instructions on behalf of ourselves and our heirs that the aforesaid Robert and his heirs may have in perpetuity the aforesaid market and festival at his manor aforesaid with all liberties and free customs pertaining to a market and festival of this kind, unless that market and that festival be to the detriment of neighbouring merchants and neighbouring festivals, as has been said previously.
With these witnesses: the venerable fathers H. Bishop of Lincoln our Chancellor; R. Bishop of Salisbury; John de Elcham, the earl of Cornub, our most dear brother; Roger of the Dead Sea, the Earl of Marchis, Will[?] de Mount Acutum; Oliver of Ingham; Hugo of Turpliton steward of our Hospital; and others; dated by our hand at Northampton on the second day of August in the fourth year of our reign. We have consulted also for confirmation patent letters of Lord Richard lately King of England our forbear, which read as follows: Richard by grace of God king of England and of France and Lord of Ireland, to all to whom these letters shall come, greetings: we have consulted a certain charter of Lord Henry son of John former king of England our forbear, which reads as follows: Henry, by grace of God king of England lord of Ireland commander of Normania, Aquitania and earl of Anjou to the Archbishops Bishops Abbots Priors Earls Barons Justices Sheriffs royal



Figure 1.6.7. Copy of Brough Charter Seal. I.429.

officials and to all Bailiffs and their subjects, greetings. Know that we have granted and by this our charter have confirmed to our beloved subject Reginald son of Peter that he himself and his heirs may have in perpetuity free warrening in all his demesne lands of his manor of Wyghton, as long as those lands be not within the boundaries of our Forest in such a way that no one may enter those lands to hunt in them or to catch anything that pertains to warrening without the licence and will of Reginald himself or of his heirs on penalty to us of ten pounds. We have granted also to the same Reginald that he himself and his heirs may have in perpetuity at his aforesaid manor of Wyghton a market every week on a Thursday, unless that market be to the detriment of neighbouring merchants. Wherefore we wish and we have issued firm instructions on behalf of ourselves and our heirs that the aforesaid Reginald and his heirs may have in perpetuity free warrening in his demesne lands of his manor of Wyghton and a market every week on a Thursday, unless that market be to the detriment of neighbouring merchants. Wherefore we wish and we have issued firm instructions on behalf of ourselves and our heirs that the aforesaid Reginald and his heirs may have in perpetuity free warrening in all his demesne lands of his manor of Wyghton as long as those lands be not within the boundaries of our Forest in such a way that no one may enter those lands to hunt in them or to catch anything that may pertain to warrening without the licence and will of Reginald himself or of his heirs on penalty to us of ten pounds, and that they may hold there a Market every week on a Thursday, unless that Market be to the detriment of neighbouring merchants as has been said before. With these witnesses: the venerable father Walter Archbishop of York, Master W. de Kilkenny Archdeacon of Coventry, Radulph son of Nicolas, John of Lexington, Robert of Muscegros, Robert Walerand, Radulph of Wanney, Will? de Chaenny and others. Dated by our hand at Shyreburn on the seventh day of January in the twenty sixth year of our reign. Moreover, we have granted and confirmed, by the meaning of the present document, the grants, confirmation, will and instructions aforesaid, holding as ratified and acknowledged the contents in the aforesaid Charter, all and singly, both on behalf of ourselves and our heirs, as far as in us lies, to our beloved subject Stephanus Leserop[…] Chivaler son of Richard Leserop[…] Chivaler and of Milicent his wife, and to our beloved Squire Thomas Brounfsete and Margaret his wife, now tenants of the aforesaid manor, just as the aforesaid charter duly records, and just as the lessee Reginald and his heirs and other tenants of the aforesaid manor have been accustomed hitherto to have and to hold warrening and a market of this kind. In testimony of which matter we have caused these letters of ours to be patent. Witnessed by myself at Westminster on the eighth day of November in the fourteenth year of our reign. Moreover, holding as ratified and acknowledged the Charters and aforesaid letters, and the contents of the same all and singly, we accept and approve them on behalf of ourselves and our heirs, as far as in us lies, and to our dearest relative Henry Clifford earl of Cumbria, as the relative and immediate heir of the aforesaid Robert de Clifford and Thomas Brounfleete, who now occupy the aforesaid Manors of Brough and Wygchton, and to his heirs, we ratify and confirm [them] by the meaning of the present document just as the aforesaid Charters and Letters in themselves duly record; and just as the same earl and his heirs who occupy the aforesaid manors have been accustomed hitherto duly to have and to hold the liberties and free customs of this kind. As testimony of which matter we have caused these letters of ours to be made patent. Witnessed by myself at Westminster on the twenty sixth day of February in the third year of our reign.'

[IV.33]

{Castletowne}
At the Bridge End next to Market Brough near the way which leads you into the wath there is a little spaw[116] well, about 1 foot and a ½ diameter, which hath formerly been much frequented and resorted unto. It will, with a little gale putt there into,[117] turne into the colour of clarrett wine which the river-water which runns within a yard of it or thereabouts will in no wise performe. \ The top stone of the well is that I suppose att the next house back doore. / There is the like att Pendraggon Castle about the same distance from the River Eden on the left hand as you go to Pendragon over the Bridge.

[III.103]



Figure 1.6.8. 'Brough Spaw Well at the N. side of the E. end of the bridge as you goe to the Church Town.' III.103.

[IV.33]

{Brough Town Bridge}
Upon Brough T[own] Bridge on the side towards the mill and castle are 2 Coates of Arms, which are Here sett downe and underneath these figures, […][118]

[Carle-Steayne]
The Market-place goes from the Bridge up to a Little Cross, a little on this side whereof as you goe up the Towne towards Stanemore is a great coble stone supposed to be 100 st[ones] weight, which they calle the Carle-Steayne for this reason because (as they say) there was a great lusty fellow who undertoke to carry that about the street upon condition it might be made free as far as he went with it: and haveing carried it about that part on both sides beyond the Bridge, and comeing up with it thus far on the right hand row, it burst him there, whereupon they tell me the houses so far on that side are free and the other not. Sed de Hoc q. plura?[119]

Opposite to the † on the right hand as you goe for Stanemore on the Back Side of the House, is a little ro\u/nd well covered over with a milstone, up at the eye of which the[y] take their water and this is

[116] The word 'spawe' is a variant of 'spa': a medicinal or mineral spring or well. *OED.*
[117] 'Gale' is the bog-myrtle, Myrica Gale, also called sweet gale. Gale-beer can be made from twigs of sweet-gale. *OED.*
[118] Here are placed two blank shields.
[119] 'But enquire more into this.'

called St Marys or St Winifrids, and many have com'd on pilgramage in time of Popery, and the Vicar of Brough had a Diploma from the pope to receive the oblations of all pilgrims there. This may be true, for Mr Har.[120] sayes he has seen the Diploma, & I have seen a writeing wherein is declared that a Chapple and Hospitall for pilgrims was founded there by Mr Blenkinsop of Helbeck and one Brunskale, the former whereof gave Land and the other building.

[I.548]

{Brough} Moss akin to Buckshorne – maden hair at Gill Brigg in Brough {an Amulet: against the heart burn.}

[I.392A]

[Lordships]

The manner or demane of Helbeck

A Great Part of Brough (under re[n]tel) belongd to the Blenkinsops: 16. Elizabeth [1273-74]; viz. 20 Burgages held by Ann, Countiss of Cumberland, as of her ~~demane~~ \ manner /of Brough by fealty & yerely rent iiij^{d} in fre sockage, & 5 Messuages. C. acres of land; 3 Acres of medow; 40 Acres of pasture with the appurtenances specially belonging to & usuall enjoyd with the said messuages, with certane Lands in E[a]st Stanemore Held of the Crowne in fre sockage, worth per Annum 26^{s} 8^{d}.
The Manner or demane of Helbeck cum pertinentijs[121] and one Messuage or Tenement & 4 Acres of land; 10 Acres of medow, 20 Acres of pasture in East Stanemore. Held of the Countiss of Cumberland by the service of 1 Knights fee & 6^{s} rent to the said Countiss for Cornage*.

[Machell's Notes: I.392A]

*{N[ote] This is strange, when Tenent de Rege per seviture militare[122] were not included in the grant. Allso the Corne mill of Helbeck; 29 messuages; 30 gardens; 300 Acres of medow; 200 of pasture; 40 of more.[123] May be he means Orton.

[I.184]

The Boundary of the Lordship of Helbeck
As it was rid by Thomas Blenkinsop Esq., 19 day of August, 22. of King James, 1624, as I have seen it subscribed to by 11 witnesses there present. Beginning at Christcroftgate by Salmon House.
From Christcroftgate (which is at Brough towne end towards Helbeck) adjoyneing to Salmons House. Thence following the street to Lowgillgate adjoyneing to the streat from Lowgillgate to Whittbeck to an hedge leading through Nettlepott, an soe following to an hurrock {a little heap for a boundary} of stones upon Yornatt How Head. From thence to an hurrok of stones betwixt Yornatt How Head lineally leading to a place called the White Stones, from thence to an hurrok upon the old street {which goes to New Castle from Warcop & other places} crossing the winderigg, and so to the high end of Johnson Skar. From thence to an hurrock of stones upon Little Turplacks {a green hill so called} & so to the Hare Cragg. From thence lineally to a crooked seale in the Force Beck. From the crooked seale to a place called the Hirds House upon the east side of Cunnepott-beck.[124] And from thence lineally to a place called the Dry Sykes; and so to Swindall Head. From thence following to Brough Bridge as it is marked forth with walls, hedges and other fences, and so returneing to the place of beginning called Christ Croft.
In the presence of us {Knight; gentlemen} Edward Osbaldeston, Henry Machell, Edward Warcop, Francis Osbaldeston, Will Blenkinsop, Thomas Nicolson, Thomas Nicolson Junior, Thomas Waistall, John Cragg, Will Johnson, Michael Waistall, Arthur Collinge.

Compertum eft per quandam Iquisitionem captam apud Kirkby in [blank] in Westmorland 18 die maij anno R.R. Henri 7^{i} 19^{0}.[125]

[120] Christopher Harrison, vicar of Brough.
[121] With all its appurtenances.
[122] 'Tenants of the king by military service.'
[123] 'Of moorland.'
[124] Connypot, meaning 'rabbit pit'. See *Westmorland Place-Names*: Brough.
[125] 'It was found in a certain Inquisition taken at Kirkby in Westmorland, in the 19th year of the reign of Henry VII, 18 May [1504].'

Coram Edwardo Redemayne et Willielmo Hudeston Armigeris, commissionarijs ejusdem Domini Regis, virtute litterarum patentium ad inquirandum pro dicto Domino Rege de diversis articulis in eadem Commissione contentis et specificat[is] aliter ejsdem commissionarijs in hac parte directis, & eadem inquisitione consuet[e] ac in favore \vel Commissione / domini Regis rato nutis per sacramentu[m] duodecim &c.[126]

Quod Thomas Blenkinsop was seised as of his demane as of foe of & in the manner of Helbeck with the appurtenances in the county of Westmorland & dyed seised thereof; & that he held the said manner of our Lord the King in capite by knights service & per the rent of 6 shillings per annum ad cornagium dicti Domini Regis, at the termes of paise & Michael the archangel yerely to be payed;[2] and allso by service ad faciendam sectam ad com[itatum] dicti domini Regis com' Westmorland de mense [in] mensem at the Kings Castle in Apleby in the County aforesaid yearly to be held.[127] And that the foresaid manner with the partinences is worth by the yere beside \ above / reprises £40. And that Henry Lord Clifford had & rec[e]iv[e]d all the Increase and p[r]ofit of the said manner during the minority of T. but by what title they knew not. & that he received the profits of the marriage of Thomas the son, by usurpation of our Lord the King &c. This was appealed in Chancery & the right of Lord Clifford ma[in]taned: se the same roll.

[I.394]

In the Lordship of Helbeck were 22 tenents: Rent fin[e] 19^{li}:12: ix.,[128] beside moulter farme not fineable;[129] boone dayes of mowing & shereing with boone coles, beside rent on Helbeck fells for Common there by one William Rud of Sandford, for which he payed 20 yeres rent for a fine. These all belonged to the Blenkinsops of Helbeck, till sold by [blank].

In the Lordship of Brough were 25 tenents fineable rent: 11^{li}: 5: 10,[130] beside multer farme not fineable, Boone shereing, Boone Coales.[131] These allso belonged to the Blenkinsops de Hellbeck, and the Totall of the Boone days shereing by the tennants of Brough & Helbeck, 53. The Total of the Boone dayes mowing due by Helbeck tennants & one of Brough, 21. The Totall of the Boone Coles due by the tennants of both places \ loads /41.

[I.171]

[Notes on Helbeck]
There was iron got in Helbeck intak, and a forge att Brecanber, both in the demane of Hellebeck.

Tomgillbeck hill att Swindale (in which \ lead & coles) / in Helbeck Lordship. This is Swindaell Beck in Under Brough. Comes out of Tarne Close in Helbeck Lordship upon the fells beyond Helbeck Hall, N.N.E. The other springs in Allgill in the Lordship of B. f. Mr Blenk[insop.]

{Regill in Crosby Ravensworth; Slegil in Morland; Ellergil in Gaisegil; Tybay; Raisegill}

There were \ 2 / allabaster pictures \ well cutt / \ painted / \ & gilded / found in the garden of John Water the elder, being the next \ dwelling / house but one to Brough Towne end toward Helbeck, which as

[126] 'In the presence of Edward Redemayne and William Hudeston, Esquires, commissioners of the same Lord King, by virtue of letters patent to make enquiry on behalf of the said Lord King concerning various articles contained and specified in the same Commission, addressed to the same commissioners in this part, and in the usual manner surely willed by the same inquisition in the favour of or by commission of the lord King, under oath 12 etc.'
[127] '... and allso by service of paying suit at the court of the said lord King [in the] county of Westmorland from month to month at the Kings Castle in Apelby ...'
[128] £19 12s 9d finable rent.
[129] Moulter or multure was the payment of a fraction of grain ground, to the lord of the mill or the miller. The proportion exacted was higher for those farmers within the lands of an estate on which there was an obligation to grind corn at a certain mill than for those who came voluntarily from without its jurisdiction: *Dictionaries of the Scots language*, Online.
[130] £11 5s 10d.
[131] For the meaning of boons and boon days, see the English Glossary.

now, Geofray Aiskells, Sadler. 1. was a Crusifix; the other St Michael goreing the divell; 3. Ascention & Resurrection; 4. The Sokeges[132] visitation of Christ in the manger.

What other Lordships in Brough Parish

{Sowerby}
Upon the sale of Sowerby[133] (the deed[134] of which hath bin in my hands & is now by my means by the gift of Mr Frances Blenkinsop, in the Hands of the Honourable Lady Ann Clifford, Countiss of Penbroke) Dominus Robert Clifford was oblieged and granted the same by his writeing to Sir Thomas de Hellebeck, Knigh[t], reasonable sustinance dureing his life, viz. for him selfe cum uno Armigero et \ tribus equis / et 3'bus Garcionibus: [with] one Squire \ & 3 horses / & 3 Groomes (nisi potius boyes.)[135] But in the deed of saile it is onely expressed cum 3'bus equis.[136]) And allso with 2 robes & 2 cell[ata] befitting a knight, to [be] payd yerely{?}[137] for the performance of which on Lord Roberts behalf, his manner of Winton was lyable to distraint. And this pention comes under the notion of a foefarme*.[138]

[Machell's Notes: I.394]

*N.B. Compare with this the notes out of the deed in Blenkinsops pedigree.
{29 messuagia ac medietas of a watermill[139] in Coatsflat, with certane S[blank]

[I.396]

Ewbanke Hall
Ewbanke or Iewbanke[140] Hall, att a place upon Stanemore called Ewbanke, was formerly the seat of & gave name to a family so called, some of the name yett remaneing but in no great repute, being but as countrymen. The estate was sold to the Cliffords & now remanes in the possession of the Countess of Penbroke who was Daughter & sole heire of George \ Clifford / Earl of Cumberland. The Ewbankes Arms you may se blason above on the other side the lease. The Countiss was wont to say that the 1^{t} of That family came in with the Conqueror.

[I.399]

[**Scots Jurisdiction**]

It cannot be that Westmorland and Cumberland were under the Scotch jurisdiction in the Conquerors time*. For William the Conqueror \ King of England, Duke of Normandy / founded the Nunery near Croglin which belongs now to the Grahams of Nunery, in the 2 yeare of his reigne†[141] with freedome of Toll all England Over, and that they might have all liberties and Bloodwites in like manner, sayes the Charter: As is granted to Our monastery of Westminster: & with free warrant for Court Leats and Baron‡. Of Our free good will and grant as may it thinke or Eye may it see or pen may it write.[142]

---

[132] Sophoi: Greek word meaning wise men (sages). See Part 1, Ch.20, Orton, I.640.
[133] Brough Sowerby.
[134] MS: 'dead'.
[135] 'Or rather, boys.'
[136] 'With 3 horses.'
[137] The sallet (also called celata) was a combat helmet: Arthur Fox-Davies, *A Complete Guide to Heraldry* (New York, 1978), 312, 314.
[138] Fee-farm: see the English Glossary.
[139] 29 messuages and half of a watermill.
[140] Written by Machell as 'Iewbanke' or 'Jewbanke'.
[141] This is the Convent of Benedictine Nuns at Armathwaite, Cumberland. Like others of his time, Machell incorrectly traced the foundation of the nunnery to an early date, but it noe appears that, following the depradations of Scottish raids, the nuns 'reinvented' the date of their founding charter to 1189, see f.n. below.
[142] This charter is now recognised as a forgery, even though it was confirmed in 1480 by Letters Patent of Edward IV. By this so-called charter, William Rufus was supposed to give the nuns land near the nunnery, comprising 216 acres in the forest of Inglewood on the north of Tarnwadelyn [close to High Hesket, Cumberland]; common of pasture throughout the forest; sufficient wood for their buildings; an annual rent of 40s. from the king's tenements in Carlisle; and freedom from toll throughout the whole of England. But the earliest notice of the nunnery's existence can only be dated to c.1200 in a charter of Roger de Beauchamp to the priory of St. Bees, where it is stated that the land he gave to that monastery was near the land of the nuns of 'Ainstapillith' [Ainstable]. After the nunnery had suffered heavy losses during the Scottish wars, Edward II granted them pasture for their cattle in Inglewood Forest. In 1331 they were excused the payment of £10 due to

[Machell's Notes. I.399]

*{Yes; in 1072 i.e. the 7. William the Conqueror he gave Cumberland to Malcolm king of Scots}[143]
†I fear it is a mistake for William Rufus.

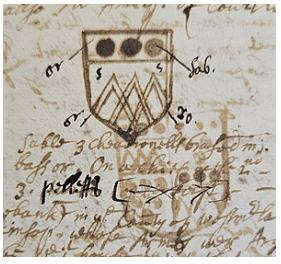


Figure 1.6.9. Court Leet and Baron Arms. I.399.

‡Note hence also the Antiquity of Court Leat & Baron: Sable 3 chevronells brased in the bass Or on a chief of the 2nd 3 pelletts.

[I.403][144]

Audi[145]
Quæ de sepulturâ dextræ manûs et Gladij Regis Scotorum, Eugenij filij Aidani, in Morâ Lapidea (i.e. Stanemoor) habet J. Fordun in *Scoto Chron lib. 3*. cap. 33. Nam ut in futurum Regni Gentes ipso Defensore, licet mortuo, nunquam careant, Ligijs majoribus sub fide juratâ præcipiendo Testamento constituit, quòd, ad eorum firmam de cetero Tutelam, in extremis ad Austrum Regni finibus, eo defuncto, dextram statim ab humero decisam, ac signo leonis bellico decoratam, habentem manu gladium, sepelirent. Hujusmodi tamen Regiæ manus Sepulturam Eugenio Regi Congalli filio, non isti, Chronica quædam adscripsit. Arbitrio Lectoris, an isti debeat adscribi, an alteri potius, relinquatur.[146]

[III.93][147]

Burgh subtur Stanesmore

These are the boundes of Stainmoore[148]
First it begins at the cheife of Hernehill, & from thence to Backstonefell & soe to HughSete Morvyll and from thence to Ferrerwith-sike and soe to the white stone of Esegill & from thence to Aygill poole & soe to the Rere-crosse & from thence to Yelissike Head & soe over to Soutergillhead & from

the Crown because their lands and rents had been greatly destroyed by the wars. The total ruination of the nunnery and its need to recoup its losses appears to have been the reason for the forged charter. See 'Houses of Benedictine Nuns: The Nunnery of Armathwaite', in J. Wilson (ed.) *A History of the County of Cumberland: Volume 2,* Victoria County History (London, 1905), 189-192.

[143] The interlineation and marginalia, written in different ink from the rest of the page, are clearly additional.

[144] This page has been completed in a clear and regular hand which is almost certainly William Nicolson's.

[145] Beginning with 'listen', Bishop Nicolson's note may be translated as, 'J. Fordun in his *Scoti Chronicon Book 3*, Chapter 33, has some material about the burial of the right hand and sword of the King of Scots (Eugenius son of Aidan) in the Moor of Stone i.e. Stanemore. For, so that the future races of the realm need never lack him as defender, though he now be dead, he so decided (the greater part of his liege subjects' loyalty being sworn to him in writing) that further to confirm his custody of them in the far south of his realm, that they should bury his right arm, at once after his death, in the ground, and his warlike seal [or standard] of a lion, with his sword in his hand. However, another chronicle ascribes this to Eugenius son of King Congall, not to him: let it be left to the judgment of the reader whether it should be ascribed to him or rather to the other.' See William F. Skene (ed.), *John of Fordun's Chronicle of the Scottish Nation,* tr. Felix James Henry Skene (Edinburgh, 1872), Book 3, Chapter 3, 110-12.

[146] MS: From 'habet J. Fordun' to 'relinquatur' is underscored.

[147] This text on 'the boundes of Stanemore' is written in another hand.

[148] There are two texts with the same meaning on this page; both relate to the Bounds. The first is written in Latin (not transcribed); the second is written in English and transcribed above. III.93-III.97 is written in a hand that is not Machell's; its use of 'Ff' to signify 'F' has not been adopted here.

thence to Caldfell-howe & soe goeinge up by Philipp Sike unto the ~~said~~ end[149] towards the west of Mickil-fell & from thence to the end towards the north of Litle Fell, from thence to the cheife of West Swindale, and soe discendinge to the bounder of Helton &c.

[III.95]

The bounder of Stainmoore ridd by the R[ight] Honourable Thomas, Earle of Thanett Island, &c. in his owne person, the 11th and 12th dayes of September in the 36th yeare of our soveraigne Lord Charles the Second, &c. Anno Domini 1684.

1. Beginning at Winton Brigg Stones.
2. From thence up the sike near the southend of Winton Mill to Fletchers Close Nooke.
3. From thence up Whingill Beck to Whingill Head.
4. From thence along a little wall called Winton (Ringdike) to Stainbank-Head.
5. From thence to a grey stone neare the east end of Coatgarth House.
6. From thence alonge Langrigg Skarr to a gray stone within Hartley Yate.
7. From thence to Raven Scarr.
8. From thence up Hernegill Beck to Hernegill Side.
9. Thence to a great stone on Low Grayrigg.
10. Thence to a great stone on High Grayrigg.
11. Thence (up the north end of Greenside) by the Mayor Potts.
12. From thence to an hurrock of stones on Bassen Fell Side.
13. From thence to a meare stone on the southside of the nine-standers.[150]
14. From thence to an hurrock of stones an the midle of Benty Bats.
15. From thence to an hurrock of stones at the south end of Benty Bats.
16. From thence (directly east) to the two becks meetinge in Whitsundale.
17. Thence to a little tarne called Brownber-Tarne.
18. From thence directly to Hugh Seate Nabb.

[III.96]

19. From thence to Cocklake Rigg.
20. From thence to Tackland Tarn.
21. From thence to Yard Loupe.
22. From thence to Drygill-Head.
23. From thence to two Graystones on Taylor rigg.
24. From thence to the white stone in Easgill.
25. From thence over Blacksike Brigg to Aygill Poole Foote.
26. From thence to a gray stone in Whartgill Head.
27. From thence to a white stone in White Bancke.
28. From thence to Reare crosse.
29. From thence to Beldhow Hill.
30. From thence to Risebrigg-Sike.
31. From thence to Mickledod.
32. From thence to great ragged stone where Blackbeck and Bowder beck meete.
33. From thence to the eastend of Pined Hill.
34. From thence to the head of Potters Reede.
35. From thence to the foote of Brordstone-Greene.
36. From thence to a great stone at the eastend of Dowcragg.
37. From thence to a great cloven stone in the Bowght of Dowcragg.
38. From thence to the head of Rowton Sike.
39. From thence downe Rowton Sike to the foote thereof.
40. From thence to an hurrock of stones at the east end of Lee Fell.

[III.97]

41. From thence to the foote of Mastersike where it meets with Forcebeck.

[149] Here are two star symbols, signifying a gap in the text.
[150] 'Nine Standards'. See S. Walker, *Nine Standards: Ancient Cairns or Modern Folly?* (Kirkby Stephen, 2008).

42. Thence all alonge up Mastersike to an hurrock of stones in the Bowght[151] of Mikle Fell.
43. From thence to the head of Birksike.
44. From thence downe Birksike all alonge till it meete with Mazebeck.
45. From thence up Mazebeck till it meete with Swarthbeck.
46. From thence to an hurrock of stones on Arneside rake.
47. From thence to an hurrock of stones at the north end of Litle Fell.
48. From thence to the head of Cicygill Sike.[152]
49. From thence downe Cicygill Sike to the head of West Swindale.
50. From thence downe Swindale Beck to Swindale Foote neare Hilton Towne End. […][153]

[I.401]

{Spitle}[154]
At Spitill on Stainmore is the fragment of a Cross, by us called Rere Cross; by the Scotts Rei Cross[155] (as one would say the Kings Crosse) \ or rather a Lapis Nulliaris,[156] and there is another in the street above Bowes / and another, at Spittle house in the same street, which Hector Boetius (a Scottish writer)[157] recordeth to have bin a mere stone betwixt England and Scottland – But certaine the man was too kinde to his Country – for wee never read that ~~Scotts~~ Malcolme King of Scotts (in whose time, according to Boetius it should have bin erected) had any ~~thing~~ \ part / of Westmorland much less the whole; nor indeed, if wee come too particulars (tho it be said that he had Cumberland) shall wee easily finde that he had any more than 12 villages there.[158] My reason is, because when he had an Advantage of King William Rufus att Chester in the west, the English fleet being scattered & ~~destroyed~~ \ shaken / by a violent Tempest, & the Army destroyed by Hunger & cold, yett he demanded no more upon Articles of Peace than those 12 villages which he formerly held of the Conqueror in Cumberland; & I thinke he would ask no less than he had title too). \ There is a place in Cumberland, I thinke at Plumpton, called The 12 Townes Rent.[159] /

[IV.34]

[Oxenflat]
Colepits in Brough parish 6 m[iles]? from the Towne, a fine quarrie whence the stones of the Castle.

---

[151] A 'bought' is a sheep or cattle fold: Joseph Wright, *The English Dialect Dictionary* (London, 1898-1905), 1, 355.
[152] Cicygill? Possibly Strice Gill, Skirrygill, Siss Gill in Musgrave: See Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 74, 359.
[153] A set of initials, which are difficult to decipher, has been placed here.
[154] Spital.
[155] See John Speed, *The Historie of Great Britain Under the Conquests of the Romans, Saxons, Danes and Normans* (2nd edn, 1623), 9, 442: 'But Malcolme wisely considering the current of warre, and that the occasion thereof was not for his owne subjects, but for a sort of forraine fugitives, beganne to thinke,that the wrongs there in done to another hee could hardly brooke himselfe, and sent therefore to William, proffers of peace; whereunto lastly the English King inclined, and hostages delivered upon further Conferences, what time (as I take it) upon Stane-more, not far from an homely hostilerie called the Spittle, a Stone-Crosse (on the one side of whose shaft stood the picture and armes of the King of England, and on the other the Image and armes of the King and Kingdome of Scotland, upon that occasion called the Roi-crolle) was erected, to shew the Limits of either Kingdome; some ruines of which Meere-marke are yet appearing; for King William, granting Cumberland unto Malcolme, to hold the same from him, conditionally that the Scots should not attempt anything preiudiciall to the Crowne of England, (for which King Malcolme did him homage, saith Hector Boetius the Scottish writer).'
[156] 'A Stone of No Importance.'
[157] Hector Boethius wrote *Scotorum historiae a prima gentis origine libri xvii* (Paris, 1527): see N. Royan, 'Boece [Boethius], Hector (c. 1465-1536), historian and college head'. *ODNB*.
[158] MS: '(tho it be said that he had Cumberland) ~~any more than 12 smale villages~~ shall wee easily finde that he had any more than 12 villages there tho it be said that he had Cumberland) ~~any more than 12 smale villages~~ shall wee easily finde that he had any more than 12 villages there more than 12 villages there'. See the *Chronicle* of Hector Boethius, translated into Scots: William Stewart, *A Buik of the Croniclis of Scotland or a metrical version of the History of Hector Boece II* (London, 1858), 501: '…peax this time was maid, Northumberland with Ingland suld remane, and Cumbria and Westmurland agane to King Malcolme tha suld again restoir.'
[159] See Machell's Preface, I.42, in which he remarks, 'London or Oxon Lib. – p.5b. *Ypodigma Neustriæ* by Walsingham, concerning 12 Towne in Cumberland granted to the Scot, query an 12 et nihil amplius.' ['Whether 12 and no more.']

[IV.73]

{Oxenflat herewith the quarry}
In Stanemore dale are 3 or 4 Houses called Oxsenflat formerly, as is \ probable / supposd Oxenthwate; which place gave name to a family whereof the last as I suppose, whose name was John, haveing no Isue gave to Thomas Derby son of Thomas Derby \ Parson of Browham / 4 messuages & 20 acres of land in Brou[gham] anno 50. Richard 2. [1381-82].

[I.401]

[Antiquities in Brough Parish]

Below Rerecross Crosse upon the High way stood a little fort of the Romans built square,[160] which att this day is called Maiden Castle; but wherefore or upon what occasion I am utterly ignorant.\ Yet it may be Roy-Cross, not from this occasion, but rather from an ancient tradition of a combat here betwixt 2 Kings, or one at lest, with another Champion whose name was Rothinger, whom Westmer King of this countrey, slew – whence this: Here King Westmere sloe King Rothinger. /
\ Or rather it was reard as a meare stone, (for to that end it serves betwixt the 2 Countreys – & thence calld rere Cross either because in the riere of Westm'land – or because it was rered upon that account. /

A Brough (in times past called Brachium) the VI cohort of the Ne\r/vians lay in Garrison. And not long since the Statue of Aurelius Commodus the emperour was digged up,[161] which statue of his may then seem to be erected when he priseing himselfe more than a man, proceed so far in folly that he commanded himselfe to be called the Romane Hercules, son of Jupiter, for he was portraied in the Habit of Hercules, with his right hand Armed, Holding a Clubb: & this hath appeared by a mangled inscription found lying under the same statue: Speed of the West Rideing of Yorkshire.
{Not[e] that Speed take this all out of Camden & placeing it after Maiden Castle, one would thinke it were Brough under Stanemore. But it is by Bainbridge[162] in Richmondshire. §7.}[163]



Figure 1.6.10. Maiden Castle. 1.401.

[Machell's Notes: I.401]
{Not one of the IIII Great Roman ways, see Blounts *Nomo Lexicon*, sub. tit. Watling St.}[164]
{Some more of this way in my notes for Ogleby.}[165]

[160] Machell drew the shape of a square here.
[161] Lucius Aelius Aurelius Commodus, 161-192. Roman Emperor 177-192.
[162] MS: 'Bant bridge'.
[163] As Machell notes, this is taken from Camden on Richmondshire: see *Britannia* tr. Holland (1637), 728D-E.
[164] Thomas Blount, *Nomo-Lexikon, A Law-dictionary and Glossary: Interpreting Such Difficult and Obscure Words and Terms, as are Found Either in Our Common Or Statute, Ancient Or Modern, Laws. With References to the Several Statutes, Records, Registers, Charters, Ancient Deeds, Manuscripts, and Law-books, Wherein the Words and Terms are Used* (1670).
[165] John Ogilby was the king's cosmographer from 1671. His publication of *Britannia … an illustration of the kingdom of England and dominion of Wales: by a geographical and historical description of the principal roads thereof* (1675), was chiefly a road atlas based on contemporary and collaborative research. It was followed by *Mr Ogilby's tables of his measur'd roads … with other remarks … to which is added, A true account of the*

{Roman Campe: Here King Westmer slow the king Rothingar see MS, part 1t. When after aiges begin to consider how our young prodigal Gentlemen by coming up to London & playing the foole there destroy their estate: they will rather thinke that the ancestors erected this as a ne plus ultra to eldest sons, who except they be sober ou[gh]t never to travil beyond this.}

[I.436A][166]

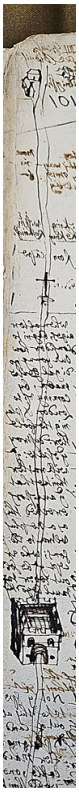
Of Maiden Castle upon Stanemore

The Transverse from S. to N. within the Bulworkes to the 1[t] Throne trench 10[sc] by 10 [paces]. The Diameter 35 & thence to the opposite Bulworke 35. Note: The Throne is situate in a super eminent place.

Of Hills & Enterances

2 fair enterances & hills equidistant on the west side; 2 fair ones and one supposed on the south side with Hills before them. 2 fair Enterances And Hills apparent on the North; one sup[posed] on the east side the Highway.

Note: This Campe should seeme to have bin made before the Roman settlement in this Ile, to witt in time of their wars: And the Roman Way being made after they came to a settlement was brought through it, by which means there were breaches made, and it became somewhat defaced as appears att this day.



The North Side Diment[ions]

From the turn[167] to the 1[t] enterance 3 score [paces] the enterance 12. Thence to the 2 enterance, 50, the enterance 9. Thence to the Great Breach through which passes the Roman way (called the Street) 3 score & 4.

Thence to the Way it selfe 18. But nothing of an Hill except that little hollow by the way side may be thought to have bin one. Thence a Thwart the Roman Way 20 [paces]. Thence to the Turne, 3 sc[ore paces] – where now is a Breach. In all [blank] The turne is 12 [paces across.]

The Left Hand or West Side

To the 1[t] ent. 3 score; The ent. 12. Thence to the 2[nd] entr – 5[sc] – 10; The ent. 12. Thence to the Turne 30. In all [blank]. The Turne it selfe [blank]

The South Side from West to East

Thence to a Breach where no Hill appears 16. Yet there is something like the vestigia of one near the Corner. The Breach it selfe 6. Thence to the open place where the way comes through 23. Thence to the way 9 – The Way it selfe 18. Thence to the 1[t] ent. 24 – The Ent. 12. Thence to the 2[nd] ent. 3 sc – 15 – The Ent. 12. Thence To the Turne 30. In all [blank]. The Turne it selfe 30. Thence the Right hand or East side where I began …}[168] Thence

{Thus to the 1. enter 3 score – 12. The ent. 12. To the 2[nd] 3sc. 12 (over against which [is] the mount) the enterance 12 &c. as before.}

Figure 1.6.11. Route over Stainmore. 1.401.

markets and fairs, &c. collected in his survey (1676). *Britannia* marked the first major advance in cartography in England since the Tudor period. It was republished in 1698. See C. Withers, 'Ogilby, John (1600-1676), publisher and geographer'. *ODNB*. See also the Editor's Introduction.

[166] On MS.I.384, a note reads, '2 Hils & Entrace Equi-dist on the left 2 fair one upon the south from S to N. To the 1[t] throne trench 10 sc[ore] & 10 [paces] the circum 35 there to the bulw. 35. From S to North 40. from right to left 80. Bulwork broad 7.'

[167] Here Machell has traced a curve with his pen.

[168] Two words here, at the page foot, are very unclear.

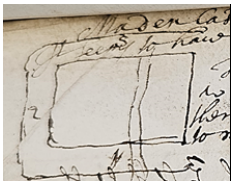


Figure 1.6.12. Margin sketch plan of Maiden Castle. I.436A.

{Maiden Castle is somewhat oblong. From north to south, diam. 40 [paces]. From east to west, 50; the bases of the Bulworke in breth, 7. It seems to have had a wall or trench, \ at a little distance / on all sides except the west where is deep descent. The Way seem to have bin carried about it on the E. side. to N. There is an Heep of stones about 12 sc. north from the Castle in the Highway, supposed a Berry.[169] And there is another beyond the Spittle in Yorkshire. This Spittle, now an alehouse, belonged formerly to Marrik Abby,[170] which is at the foot of Swadell.[171] Capt. Danby has a record out of *Doomsday Booke* of the bounds of Yorkshire.}

[I.436B]

Maden Castle (upon Stanemore). An oblong,[172] from east to west 50 passes; from N. To S. 40. The Basses of the fort in Breth 7. The Hight – about 3 (?)

The Campe

It has this forme, and the dimentions as followeth.

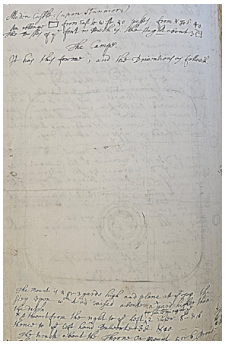


Figure I.6.13. Faint lines of a pencilled plan of Maiden Castle. I.436B.

The Mount is 2 or 3 yards high and plane att the top*. The step upon which it is raised aboute ½ a yard higher than the ditch. The trench about the Throne or Mount, 5 or 6 broade. The ½ yard pace upon which it is raised, in bredth 5 or 6†; the Mount 13 or 14 Diam[eter]. From the throne trench to the † ten.

From S. to North the Right ha[n]d or Easterly Bulworke is thus: to the 1^{t} entr. 5 sc. 10, the entrance 12‡. To the next entr. 3 sc. & 7. the entrance, 12. To the 3^{d} entrance 3 sc. & 6, the entrance 12. Thence to the Turne 40. And the turne it selfe twenty.

---

[169] A barrow. *OED.* A fortified enclosure: https://historicengland.org.uk/listing/the-list/, e.g. Berry Castle (Somerset), Berry Ring Hill Fort (Staffordshire).

[170] Marrick Abbey, former priory of Benedictine nuns, Swaledale.

[171] Swadell = Swaledale. 'The spittle ... was a charitable institution, and belonged to Marryke Abbey in Yorkshire; and after the dissolution the tenants applied it to the purpose of an inn. But since the turnpike was made it is become useless in that respect, as there is no need for the traveller to halt between Brough and Bowes; for whereas it took up six hours in travelling thirteen miles, the same can now be performed with more ease in an hour and a half.' *N&B I*, 578.

[172] Here Machell drew a rectangle, ½ cm x ¼cm.

[Machell's Notes: I.436B]
*A thwart from the right to the left \ to same begining at the / 2 Enter[ance] 8 score – &16 [paces] thence to the left hand Bulworke 3 sc. & 10.
†This I take [to] be the diam[eter] from E. to west.
‡Note a mistake here, stand in a rectangle.
Note, The Antiforts or hills which are copped, are about 12 [paces] in diam[eter] answering to the enterances from which they are distant about 12 or 13. The b[ases of the] bulworkes in bredth 9 with a little wing […] entrance, but […][173]
{N.B. On the S. 2 hills. On the left-hand \ west / 2. On the right i.e. E. [blank]}

[I.431]

The Two Scholes in the Parish of Brough[174]

There are two Free-schooles in the Parish of Brough in the County of Westm'land: the one in the towne called Market-Brough and the other in \ the / forrest of Stanemore.

[**Brough Free School**]
That in the towne of Brough was founded by John Brunskals of the same place. He by the assistance succour & ayde of Thomas Blenkinsop Esq. and other benefactours \ (which Thomas gave a tenement) / about the year 1506 founded an Oratory or chappell dedicated to our Lady St Mary the mother of Christ, and to St Gabriel the Archangell w[h]o by the sufferance of our Lord God did shew many faire and diverse miracles as a chart under the hands & seales of Roger Bishop of Carlisle,[175] and Richard the Abbot of Shapp dos expresse and affirme.[176] Two priests were founded to sing & to pray in the said chappell for evermore for the soules of all the benefactours of the said chappell that were departed from the world & for the welfare of them that were alive. The one of the said priests, was to teach Grammar, the other to instruct children willing to le\a/rne songs freely without any sallary from them. The foundation of this chappell was assented into & confirm'd ~~by~~ both \ by / the Bishop of Carlisle and the Archbishop of Yorke, and yet afterward opposed by the minister of Brough; who conceived himselfe much prejudiced thereby, and particularly in respect of the oblations which were given from him to the said chappell; whereupon he sett up the crosse & light\ed / up candles in the chancell at midtime of the day, caused the bells to be rung, and cursed with bell book & candle all those that should ~~give any~~ receive any oblations of ~~those that~~ \ such as / resorted to the said chappell or should give any encouragement unto the same.[177] Brunskales the founder \ informes & / complaines at York ag[ainst] the Minster. \ ~~One~~ / Mr Rasebeke obtaines a sharp citation against him, ~~censureing~~ \ styleing / him ~~as~~ hominem perditum & sufflatum diabolico veneno[178] for opposeing soe good a worke; notwithstanding which Mr Rasebeke appeales ad sedem Apostolicam,[179] and an agreement

[Machell's Notes: I.431]
{See my notes. Tis there in 1493. T.B. Esq.[180] prearticled with John Brunskale Anno 7^0 Henry 7. [1491-92] for the building of St Marys chapel, T.B. Esq. gave a Tenement in Brough call'd Gibgarth to John Brunskale: upon Condition that he should build thereupon a Chaple in Honour of ~~TM~~ the Blessed Virgin Mary, & St Gabriel the Archangel; reserving to himselfe & his heires 2d Rent, payable at Penticost if demanded: And allso that he should build an hospitium with 2 beds in the same, for harbourings strangers & other poore people. And that they

[173] This sentence has partly perished.
[174] Body text on this page was written by Machell's informant, Richard Jackson; interlineations are Machell's.
[175] Roger Leyburn, bishop of Carlisle, 1503-1508: see David W. V. Weston, *Carlisle Cathedral History* (Carlisle, 2000), 142.
[176] See *N&BI*, 574, for a partial transcription of this information.
[177] This was the ceremony of excommunication.
[178] Translated in *N&BI*, as: 'an abandoned wretch and inflated with diabolical venom' (574).
[179] Translated in *N&BI*, as: 'to the Pope' (574); literally: 'to the Apostolic Chair'.
[180] Thomas Blenkinsop.

should be kept in repare by the said Brunskale & his heires forever […][181] revert to him & his heires.[182] Dated 1493. 7^0 Henry 7. In pursuance of which […][183]

[I.432]

\ was / made betwixt the founder & him by a composition of twenty shillings yearly to be paid to Mr Raisbeke and his successors, the ministers of Brough. Thus, then the chappell it continued till the time of the Dissolution of Abbeys and Chanterys under Henry 8^{th}. ~~Ask which t~~ And the priest then that taught to sing being removed \ & his office taken away; / the other that taught Grammar was thought fitt to remaine as master of a \ free / schoole and by Commissioners Sir Walter Mildmay[184] & Robert Keybury Esq. order was taken, and maintenances provided & settled for this purpose. Soe that there is now a salary of 7^{li} 11^{s} 4^{d} paid yerly to the Master of the School by the Kings auditours, they receiveing all the rents & revenews which formerly belongd unto it as a chappell – and \ which was / given unto it by its founders and benefactours.

This is all the Endowment which at present it hath,[185] saveing only a convenient ~~house~~ dwelling house and a garden, which was given by Mr John Beck, one of the scholars of it. But it was formerly very bountifully endowed by severall noble & Generous benefactors as the Erles of Cumberland \ Henry & Thomas / Edward Musgrave Esq~~uire~~, of Hartley \ Esq. & / William Musgrave the son of Richard of Brough – Thomas Blenkinsop Esquire, Hugh Newton & severall others, w[h]o gave lands in Brough, and Stanemore, & Morton, & Yanewath & Mekil-Strickland,[186] & Bampton & Cundale & Mekil Ashby, all in Westmorland, and in Penrith in Cumberland, and West Laton in Yorkshir, & Bernards-Castle in Yorkshire, the Bishoprick of Durham.
There are no exhibitions at all belonging to it, nor any libraries, but only some few bookes given of late ~~by~~, which are not very considerable. The governours of it when a chappell was here: Abbot of Shapp & his successours, and since it is supposed

[I.433]

that power is in the King – Severall ~~you~~ \ well / learned masters there have been of it. At the time of the foundation of the chappell the two chaplains wer Robert Hutchinson & William Chapman – Mr Daniel Exhetter. John Benson.[187] Since the Dissolution John Beck,[188] and after him another of that name, and Mr Thomas Wilson &c.[189] It has been formerly in good repute, tho now by reason of licensing ~~repp~~ \ a M[aste]r unlearnd & / unfit for it, gone into disrespect & decay.[190]

This information I had from Mr Christopher Harrison vicar of Brough under Stainmoor.[191]
Richard Jackson.[192]

[181] Words here have perished.
[182] Translated in *N&BI*, as: 'the land to revert to the said Thomas and his heirs.' See 574.
[183] Words here have perished but in *N&B1* they are given as, 'He, the said John Brunskill, founded an oratory or chapel'. See 574.
[184] Sir Walter Mildmay (1520/21-1589) was an administrator and founder of Emmanuel College, Cambridge. See L. Ford, 'Mildmay, Sir Walter'. *ODNB*.
[185] MS: '~~Et the endowment of this schoole is~~ This is all the Endowment which at present it hath.'
[186] Great Strickland. 'Mekil, mikil, meckle mickle' = Great or large in size, bulk, or stature; also designating a particular place, building, etc. (now only in place names). *OED*.
[187] The names of Exhetter and Benson were added in Machell's hand.
[188] Curwen referred to a 'John Boke' 'Grammar school and Incumbent', in the *Valor Ecclesiasticus* of 26 Henry VIII, 1535. See *Later Records*, 94-109.
[189] Thomas Wilson (deacon) was curate and schoolmaster at Brough School from 1664-67. CCED.
[190] Between 1681 and 1692 five successive schoolmasters taught at Brough school. CCED.
[191] This sentence has been written in an entirely different hand from the rest of the passage on Brough Free School. Christopher Harrison was vicar of Brough under Stainmore from 1664 until his death in 1695; before 1664 he had been a preacher at Crosby-on-Eden. CCED.
[192] Machell's informant, a schoolmaster at Appleby Grammar School, 1671-84. CCED.

[I.433B]

The 2nd Schole in the Parish of Brough [Stainmore]

[I.434][193]

Sir Cuthbert Buckle Knight (late Lord Major of the Citty of London) in his Last Will and Testament dated the 28th day of June 1594*, gave one Annuity of 8li per Annum to be issueing and payable out of the Estate at Spitle (which then was his) for and towards the maintenance of a School-Master to be imployed to instruct children on Stainemoore to Read Write Cypher and cast account; he was borne on Stainemoore and got his Learneing near or about the place where the school now is.[194]

The schoolhouse was builded about the year 1607 at the charge of the neighbors & inhabitants of Stainemoore. And they paid six pounds for 3 Roods of ground for the school to be builded on,[195] and for the schollers libertie,[196] and gathered other money amongst them for a standing stock for maintaining it, so that the building & upholding ever since was at theire charge save that when it was last repaired – id est Anno 1673 – the Right Honourable the Countess of Pembroke gave 3li towards the same. There has beene no other benefactors so far as I know.

Mr Robert Bovell was the first schoolmaster for he began in 1608 and continued till about 1652. Mr William Waller succeeded him and continued about 6 years or thereabouts.[197] And ~~my self~~ \ Thomas Wastell / entered in 1659 and continued since which is about 17 yeares.[198]

I finde other two schoolmasters mentioned which received 14li of the Annuitie; but I suppose they were before the schoole was builded, and had it out of the Arreare which was recovered in the Chancery Suit. There Names, Cuthbert Aiskell, & Edward Waller.

The Executrix & Supervisors appointed by the said Sir Cuthbert used all the meanes they could to prevent the sallary and utterly to defeat Stainemoore of the benefit of the said Sir Cuthberts Will, which caused a great Chancery Suit, and was recovered by Decre[e] there in Easter term in the 43. of Elizabeth [1601], before the Honourable Sir Thomas Egerton Knight, Lord Keeper of the Great Seale of England ~~And~~ \ in[199] / the High Court of Chancery.[200]

[Machell's Notes: I.434]

*1593. Sir Cuthbert Buckle, Vintoner; son to Christopher Buckle of Brough in Westmorland.
Lord Maior for part of the year & Sir Richard Martin, goldsmith, the rest.
Mudy *Chron Successe* p.606.[201]
Hereby hee seemeth to have dyed Lord Maior in 1693.[202]

[I.399]

[**Brough: Families and Descents**]

[Ewbank]

1. Thomas \ de / Iewbanke (lord of Iewbank) in the County of Westm'land, marryed the daughter of Sir John Blenkinsop; whose Armes wer Argent \ a frete between / 3 garbes banded Sable (This I take to be the 1t house & not that of Hellebeck) and they had Isue.

[1.] Sir John de Iewbanke, Knight

[193] Apart from the title and interlineation in Machell's hand, the text on this page was written by Thomas Waistell, schoolmaster at Stainmore School from 1671 until at least 1689. CCED. Machell added Waistell's name in an interlineation, to explain Waistell's use of 'my self'.

[194] Cuthbert Buckle, born Stainmore, was Lord Mayor of London in 1593, dying in 1594 during his mayoral year: Vanessa Harding, *The Dead and the Living in Paris and London 1500-1670* (Cambridge, 2002), 209, 252.

[195] 3 roods = ¾ of an acre.

[196] The children's play ground.

[197] William Waller was recorded in 1670 as schoolmaster of Kirkby Stephen Free Grammar School: CAC(C), DRC5/3 (Correction Court Act Book).

[198] The dating suggests that Waistell sent his report to Machell circa 1676.

[199] This word is in Machell's hand.

[200] Sir Thomas Egerton (1540-1617) Lord Chancellor, became first Viscount Brackley. See J. Baker, 'Egerton, Thomas, first viscount Brackley. *ODNB*. Waistell's hand ends here. Buckle's executrix (his wife, Elizabeth) and son contested his will unsuccessfully. See CAC(K), WDD/11, title deeds and other papers relating to Stainmore Free School (from 1601).

[201] Anthony Munday (bap. 1560, d. 1633), *A Briefe Chronicle of the Successe of Times, from the Creation of the World to this Instant* (1611).

[202] '1693' is clearly an error. He died in 1594.

2. Sir John de Iewbanke Super Stanesmore in Westm'land, Knight, marryed Julian, the daughter of Thomas Lowther, Knight, whose Armes were Or 6 annulets Sable, and they had Isue:

1. Robert de Quo Infra[203]
2. John
3. Thomas
4. Mary
5. Ann

3. Robert \ de / Iewbanke Esq, marryd Jane the daughter of John Musgrave Esq. whose Armes were Azure 6 Annuletts Or; and they had Isue:

1. Sir Richard de quo infra
2. A[n]thony
3. Margaret
4. Jane

4. Sir Richard de Iewbanke Knight: married Isabell the daughter of Sir Thomas Curwen, Knight, whose Armes were Azure a chiefe Or, over all a lyon rampant Argent gutte Gules, and they had Isue 3 sonns.

5. Thomas de Iewbanke Esq. marryed Margaret the daughter of Sir John Huton, whose Armes were Argent Barry of 6 Argent & Gules on a Canton Sable, a † Argent. And they had Isue:

1. Leonard
2. Henry
3. Ralphe

6. Leonard de Iewbanke Esq.marryed the daughter of Thomas [H]untershells Esq. who bore for his Armes [blank] and they had Isue:

1. John
2. William

John de Iewbanke

[I.400]

7. John de Iewbanke Esq. married the daughter of Alexander Mashings Esq. ~~and had Issue~~ whose Armes were Gules, 3 [?] Azure, Argent & Gules[204] and they had Isue:

1. Sr Alexander
2. [Blank]

8. Sir Alexander de Iewbanke[205] Knight, marryed the daughter of Sir Hugh Balioff (pro Balioll forsan) of Barnard Castle, whose Armes were Gules a saltier Argent, over all 2 swords in pale hilted Or. and they had Isue:

1. Daughter and sole Heire.

9. [Blank] the daughter and sole Heire of Sir Alexander Iewbanke, Knight, was marryed to Robert Lord Vipont. Lord of Westmorland, whose Armes were Gules 6 annuletts Or. And they had Isue: 2 daughters and Heires*.



Figure 1.6.14. Arms of Sir Alexander Ewbank. I.400.

[203] 'Robert, of whom below.'
[204] Machell drew a tiny sketch of the coat, which appears to show an inescutchion within a bordure.
[205] Name repeated in interlineation above.



Figure 1.6.15. Arms of Vipont and Ewbank. I.400.

[Hilton]
Sir Alexander Hilton Knight marryed one of the daughter & heirs of Robert Lord Vipont. ultimo Edward 3. 1377. And had Isue Sir William*. This was Hilton of Hilton Castle in Bishoprick, whose Armes were Argent 2 barrs Azure, sed de Hoc q?[206]
{Hilton of Hilton Castle: pedigree of 29 or 30 Generations + before the Conquest. Mary maryed to Robert.}
{Sir Robert Hilton Knight had Isue William and Robert†. William Hilton Esq. at the Conquest marryed Benedict, the daughter & Sole Heir of Germaine Tyson, who bore Vert 3 Lyonsells rampant Argent crowned coller & Lined Or in […][207] foysted[208] CC.[209] Robert 2nd Son of Sir Robert marryed the daughter & heir of Richard Bacon Esq. in Westmorland & so it tooke the name of Hilton Bacon‡.}

Dalton of Yorkshire, Azure, a Lyon rampant ~~reg~~ gardant Argent langued armed & membred Gules, married Dorathy, the daughter of William Hilton Esq.

Horseley of Horseley married Elianore an other of the daughters, and his Armes were Argent 3 Horse heads errased Argent. Bridled Sable.

Richard Conyers \ Esq / beares Azure a manch Or. He was Lord of Harden.

N.B. Sir William Hilton of Hilton, Knight, 22. of Richard 2. [1398-99], marryed Jane the daughter & sole Heire of Robert Stappleton Esq.⸸, whose Armes were Argent a Lyon Rampant Sable langued membred and Armed Gules. And they had Isue Sir Robert, Jane & Margarett. This Jane might allso have quartered her mother Coat, who was daughter & heire of [blank] Redware Esq. and bore for his Armes 3 dagges meeting with their pumells in fess and pointing to the angles of the scutchion Gules. And the foresaid Sir William Hilton was son of Sir Alexander who marryed with one of the Heiresses of the Viponts, whence he may allso Quarter Vipont.

[Machell's Notes: I.400]
*{? vide Robert Vipont in Apleby.} I cannot finde (by their evidences) that any of the Viponts matched with this Heiress of the Iewbankes, nor can it be, except Robert the last was 2c[210] maryed, 29. Henry 3. [1444-45]. & here are proven 8 generations upwards.[211] N.B. I doubt of this. Therefore, for the confirmation or disproofe, se the last Heire male of the Viponts de Apleby Castle. Se Hilton pedigre penes of Robertum de Morton for the date of this pedigree, which cleare somthing as to this doubt.}
†This cannot be, for Robert had but 2 daughters wee read, betwixt whome the whole barony of Westm'land was divided.
‡In another hand late writ & very improbable.
⸸If this be the Stapleton of Edenall as I thinke it is, se a pedigree of them for X or XI generations.
Sir Ralph Lumley bore Argent a chevron Gules between 3 martlets Vert.

[206] 'But check this'. See *CFH*, Hilton, 158-59.
[207] The next two words are unclear; they appear to be '3 ange'.
[208] 'foysted': inserted.
[209] Counter-charged?
[210] Twice.
[211] MS: '& Here are proven Her 8. Gen. upwards.'

[I.402]

{Hellebeck}	
Thomas de Hellebeck	Temp. John [1199-1216].
{wido fil Thomae \ de Hellebeck, /	3.[212] Johanis Reg. [1201-1202]
{Ds wido de Hellebeck	Temp. Johan
{Robert de Hellebeck	Temp. John \ 11. Henry 3. / [1226-1227]
{Robert de &c.	23. (27?) Henry 3.
{Thomas de Hellebeck	26. Henry 3. [1241-1242]
{Thomas de Hellebeck miles	36. Henry 3. [1251-1252]
Thomas de Hellebeck	14. Edward 1. [1285-1286]

Collected out of MS Booke of evidence (penes Commitissam – Cumb[erlan]d as I remember).[213] ~~Robert de Hellebeck~~ The\re/ were of the name remaneing, 19. Edward 1. [1290-1291], for then I finde one Simon de Hellebeck a Tenant in Brough to Idonea de Labourne. 1 of the Daughters & coheirs of Veteripont.

[I.405]

In order to a Pedigree of the Helbeck

1. Thomas de Helbeck, son of Thomas de Helbeck; he was Lord of Helbeck and gave some parcell there to Edmund his son & Isabel de Shikeburne, but this Edmund was not his Heire. This was in the time of Sir Michael de Hardclay. In a bord[ure].[214]
2. Thomas son of Thomas de Helebeck, married Avicia, the daughter of Adam de Hennecaster & Isolda his wife as should seem from the said Isolds ~~giving~~ releaseing her clame to 1 messuage and 2 Oxgangs of Land in little Strikland.

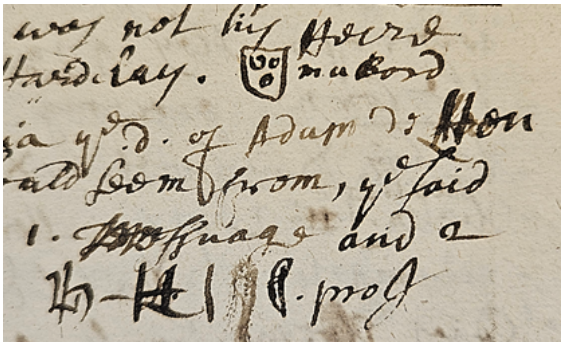


Figure 1.6.16. Symbols relating to the marriage of Thomas de Helebeck to Avicia. I.405.

3. Isabel Shikeburns lease 28. Edward 3. [1354-1355] H. J. Dom. Thoma de Hellebeck, Henry de Warthecop, Gulfride de Tesdale, Henrico fil Hamundi, Henry de Melmorby.
4. Thomas de Hellebeck married Avice & had with her by inheritance Lands in little Strikland, Overton & Silokwater, to all which Rich[ard] de Musgrave quitts clame. H. J. Dominus Michael de Harcla, Johe de Rossegill, Thomas de Derwentwater militibus; Roberto de Morvil tunc vicecom Westmorland, Adam de Haverington {Harington}, John de [blank], Sir ~~Thomas~~ de Hellebeck.

[212] A blot occurs before the numeral '3'. If 3. John, the regnal year would be 1201-02.
[213] 'From out of a book of evidences belonging to the Countess of Cumberland, as I remember.'
[214] Here there is a sketch of a coat of arms less than 1cm square, containing three annulets.

5.[215] Thomas de Hellebeck, the son of Hammon held Lands in Richmondshire & Westmorland by a Knights service; Thorp pro quarta parte militis & Hellebeck & Suarrabi et Hascam quæ est excambium pro Burd per idem servitium iisdem terris pertinens.[216] This is ancient.
6. Sir Thomas de Helebeck had a daughter caled Alice married to Robert, eldest son of Sir Richard son of Henry de Suleby when he was under aige; and Sir Edward settled upon his sonn all his land att Apleby, his demane. Rent Homage & services.
7. Adam de ~~Hellebeck~~ a wit[ness] at Slegil sd. Thomas son of Thomas, gave to his daughter Margaret, Hoton Super Wyske.
8. Sir Thomas had a sister named Dionysija, married to [blank] de Nubigin, & she had a brother called Robert, & they had a daughter (ut puto) named Isabel, married to Patritrit de Castle Car\r/ock of whome they gave Nubigin Rasebeck Keld ~~with~~ \ also / Cowflat with ½ the fulling mill.
Sir Thomas de Helebeck & Alan de ~~Helleb~~ Clerke (? 29. Edward 1.) 1302.
(27. ut put) Henry 3[d] [1242-1243], witnesses to Agnes de Lancasters comp. Radulfus de Notingam, Vice Comite Westmorland. Robert de Askeby, John de Morevill, William de Derwentwater. Dominus Willielmus de Goldrington, William de Warthecop, Roberto de Renegil.

[I.406]

{Brantun}
11. of Henry 3. [1226-1227]. Thomas de Musgrave & Isabel his wife aggrement with William de Morvill, about Morvils grindeing at their mil of Brampton ~~for their tenure of an oxgang of land late of Walter de Morvill~~ who confessed that he ought to grinde there. Whereupon they granted to the said William \ multuram Bladi / free moulter of all the Corne growing upon 14 Oxgangs of land in Brampton to him & his heires. S. X. Bov[atæ] quæ fuerunt Richardi Tanlibon (or Tanliaton \ Tanliston /!). 2 q.f. Walteri Morevil, I½ q.f. Thome de Branton. Paying to T[homas], Isabel & heirs yerely for the multer aforesaid duas eskepas multuræ Auene, et 2 eskepas siliginis*;[217] ½ at Pase,[218] the other att Michaelmas. To them or the Heires of Isabel, Domini Richard de Danecurt, Robert de Verter[i] ponte fil[ij] Domini Ivon[is] de Verteriponte, Walter de Strikland, Robert de Hellebeck†.

It seems by this that the Musgraves married an Heiress from B., whose name was Isa[bel] forsan Brampton; and probably Richard Talibon an other whose daughter was probably married to Walter Morvil, father of William, by whome had XII Oxgangs of Land.

{Fothorg\ill/}
I finde that Henry Clifford Junior Knight, Son & Heir apparent of Henry Clifford Knight \ then / was Lord Clifford, gave to one Rowland de Fothergill his servant, a yerely rent or Annuity triginta et 3[a] solidorum 4 denariorum Sterlingorum 4[0] Henry 8. [1512-13].[219] This may show the begin[ning] of Fothergill.

{Warcop of Colby}
Sir Thomas Wharton bore a plane maunch. 22. Henry 8. [1530-31].
T. Warcop of Colby & Barnaby his son & heire apparent 33. Henry the 8. [1541-42] charged with T. B. de Hellebeck, 1 Tenement in Sandford and a parcell of land & medow in Ellerker apud Crakenthorp, of the yearly rent of 3s 4d. for a tenement in Colby.

[Machell's Notes: I.406]
*{Maybe Scepps: as Squire from Esqr. Q. quotiens}[220]

[215] MS: This passage begins with a scored-through phrase which is partially illegible, thus not transcribed,
[216] 'Thorp for a fourth part of a knight & Hellebeck & Suarrabi and Hascam, which is in exchange for Burd, for the same service pertaining to the same lands.'
[217] '10 bovates which were of Richard Taleboyes […], 2 of Walter Morevil, 2 of Thomas de Branton, paying to Thomas, Isabel and heirs yearly for the multur aforesaid, 2 skepps of […] multur, and 2 skepps of winter wheat: half at Easter, the other at Michaelmas.'
[218] Easter.
[219] 'Triginta Solidum et 3' = 33 gold coins of the Roman empire [originally worth about 25 denarii each, or, later, one shilling each] and 4 denarii sterling.'
[220] 'Query, how often?'

†Note: Ivo de Veteripont lived here then. May be a son ~~Robert~~, or John de Veteripont. sed de hoc dub????[221]
I thinke Lord Dakers has & had ½ of the mill called Coatflat in Overton in Henry 4 time & maybe ½ of the manner of Orton?
{NB} Where Homages is due, the Land is holden by Knights service. *Coke upon Littleton*. 5 Chap. de Sockage. Grand Sergeanty is \ not / Knights service but no tenure in sockage. I must either read *Coke upon Littleton* before I write, or have beside me Cowells *Interpreter*.[222]

[I.407]

Witnesses at the Deeds of the Blenkinsops de Hellebeck
Thomas deed to Will. D°[223] Michael de Hartla, D^no^ Roberto de Musegrave, Johane de Helton, Roberto de Loncaster*, Richardo de Musegrave, Henrico de Warthecop.
Isolda de Heneca[s]ter. Test. Michaele de Hartla,[224] Williamo de Strikeland, Johan\e/ de Rossegille, militibus. Roberto de Morvile, Richard de Musegrave, Johane de Helton, Henry de Wardecopp, Johe de Cracanthorp, Willielmo de Eadem,[225] Adam de Derwentwater, Adam de Haverington.
Isabel de Slikeburne in the 28. Edward 1. [1299-1300] Let to farme to Robert, the son of Thomas de Hellebeck 2 Oxgangs of land in Hellebeck, paying to her & her Heires 9s per annum. Witness Sir Thomas de Hellebeck.
Lanhetons Quit clame to Thomas de Hellebeck. H. T.[226] D° Willielmo de Bampton Vic. Westmorland, D° Robert de Askeby, D° Johane de Morevil, D^no^ Richard de Suleby, Thoma de Musgrave tunc Senescallo Westmariæ,[227] William de Warthecop, Johe de Burton, Hugo Carpenter, Richardo filio Beatrice,[228] William de Soureby.
Robert Franceyes gift of 2 oxgangs in Ascome. H. T. Rad[ulphus] de Notingam Clerico vic. Westmarie. John de Askeby, John de Renegil, Grekborio de Wale.
To the \ Marriage / Agreement twixt the son of Sir Richard Sal[keld] & the daughter of Sir Thomas Hell[beck] D^no^ Willielmo de Dakir, Johane de Morvill, Thoma de Musgrave tunc vicecomite Westmarie,[229] Henrico de Sandlay, Willielmo de Wartcop, Willielmo de Soureby
Thomas, son of Thomas de Hellebeck, gave Hoton Super Wyske to Margaret, his daughter (a man[or]) It seemes his father married one Agnes to whome he found de dote[230] 5 marcs (a great joyture!) out of the said manner.[231]
Donisya Newbigin. H.T.[232] Willielmo filio Herm […][233] tunc vicecom Westmerie, Thoma fil Gospatritij, Thorfin filio Roberti, Roberto fratre ipsius Donisyæ, Roberto filio Petri de Sulleby, Henric de Cundale, Roberto de Raysegil, Johe de Morvilla, Gilberta de Engayn, Johane Taleboys, Herm le Nair, Hugone Ulfe, Yvone le Mercer – s.d. HT. D^ns^ Michaele de Harla & Johane de Rossegill m[iliti]bus. Johane de Helton, Richard de Wartecop, Henrico de Wartecop, Alano de Keldelyth, Roberto filio Thomas de ~~Regd~~ Raydal. D° Roberto de Askeby, D° Thomas de Hellebeck, Thoma de Musgrave tunc vicecom. Westmerie, Alexander de Newby, Simon de Dufton, Thoma de Goldrington, William de Daekyr in Closeclif, Thoma Templeman, Ada filia William, filij Araldi de Barton. s.d. the

[221] 'Sed de hoc dub.' 'But of this I am doubtful.'
[222] Edward Coke, *The First Part of the Institutes of the Lawes of England. Or, a Commentarie upon Littleton, Not the Name of a Lawyer Onely, but of the Law it selfe* (London, 1628). Often referred to as *Coke upon Littleton*, it is a commentary on Thomas Littleton's treatise on land tenure. John Cowell, *The Interpreter: Or Booke Containing the Signification of Words: Wherein is Set Forth the True Meaning of All, or the Most Part of Such Words and Termes, as are Mentioned in the Law Writers, or Statutes of This Victorious and Renowned Kingdom, Requiring Any Exposition or Interpretation. A Work not Onely Profitable, but Necessary for Such as Desire Throughly to be Instructed in the Knowledge of Our Laws, Statutes, and Other Antiquities* (1607).
[223] Domino: Sir.
[224] Variant of Harcla.
[225] 'William of the same place.'
[226] 'With these witnesses.'
[227] 'Then Sheriff of Westmorland.'
[228] 'Richard son of Beatrice.'
[229] 'Then Sheriff of Westmorland.'
[230] 'For dowry.'
[231] Sarcasm here: 'Big Deal!'
[232] Witnesses.
[233] Following the word 'Herm,' Machell has written, '(form)The stroke is onely to show the name.' Machell has underscored 'Herm' but no other stroke is visible.

Daughter of the wife of Robert Fossatoris de Laissinbij.
Anno 1302. A French deed of Robert de Cliffor[d].

[Machell's Notes: I.407]

*{Note. Lon.}

[I.408]

{29. Edward 1. [1300-01]}. H.Test. Sir Michael de Hartclay, Sir Thomas de Hellebeck, Sir Robert de Engleys, Sir Robert de Askeby chevaliers, John de Helton, Henric de Warthcop, Gilberto de Querton, Nicolas de Musegrois, Thoma Bouchet de Souleby.

Pedigree of Helbeks
{Hammon, Thomas; Sir Thomas*}
Thomas, father Sir Thomas he passed the Lordship to Richard Blenkinsop & Isabel so that nec ego nec heredes mei,[234] so that it should be in theirs not his h[eir].
1. Hammon: he had Isue Thomas
2. Thomas de Hellebeck son of Hammon married as I guess from Rulos Surrender the daughter of Rulo.[235] He had Lands both in Richmondshire and Westmorland. Torp per quartam partem militis,[236] & Hellebeck and Suarrebij[237] & Hasc'um[238] which was an exchange for Buro[239] by the same service belonging to those lands. He had Isue Sir Thomas de Hellebeck.[240]
3. Thomas, son of Thomas de Hellebeck, afterwards Sir Thomas. He marryed Avicia, daughter of Adam de Henecastre & Isolda his wife, and bore for his Armes 3 Annulets within a Bordure ingraled; vixit 1302, 29. Edward I. And had by her Lands \ 1 messuage & 2 oxgangs / in Little Strikland, Overton & \ in / Sillock Water {or Wath} to all which Richard de Musgrave Quits Clame. Teste interali' D° Michael de Hardcla.
He had \ 3 / sons Thomas and ~~Willia~~ \ Edmund† / {All} and ~~3~~ 4 daughter: Alice an Isabell \ & Margaret & Agnes ut puto. Edmund, the 2nd son, was marryed [to] Isabel de Slikeburne \ a widow 1326. March. / And had some lands in viledges granted by his father in the Lordship of Hellebeck, who had Isue Edmund.[241]
Alice was married to Robert, eldest son of Sir Richard, son of Henry de Suleby, befor he was at aige, haveing as I conceive, for her portion 110 markes. Upon which marriage Sir Richard de Suleby settled all his demane Lands ~~tenants~~ \ Rents Homage / & Services there unto belonging, which he had in Apleby. Isabell the 2nd daughter was married to Patritius de Castlekarock & had her dowry Lands at Sunbigin, Rasebeck, Keldelith, & Coatflat, with ½ of that fulling mill. 3. Margaret had for her portion the mannor & Lordship of Hoton Super Wyske (? in Yorkshire) intaled upon her heires males, otherwise to revert upon him & his h[eir].
4. Thomas, eldest son of Sir Thomas, married Isabel daughter of [blank] & had Isue Isabell as I suppose, for Thomas makes over his whole estate to Richard \ de / B[lenkinsop] & Isabel his wife.

[Machell's Notes: I.408]

*{Memorandum. To preface with those Hellebecks I finde witnesses in my long booke. But the first I finde mentioned \ there enterd in this parish / in the evidences \ ~~ad finem~~ sup[ra]? / is Hammon.}
†Write the Isue as the other is writ.
{26. Edward 1. [1297-1298]. Sir Thomas de Hellebeck sold Sowerby to Sir Robert Clifford for 115 marcs. The said Sir Robert being oblieged to give to Sir Thomas 2 of his Knights Robes every yere durante vita, & in time of war with the Scots; to carry him with him. And in time of peace ~~Secum tenere~~ dictum Dominu[m] Thomam ad

234 'Neither do I nor my heirs': deed of resignation.
235 This sentence has been transcribed as seen.
236 'Torp by a quarter of a knight's fee.'
237 Sowerby.
238 Askham.
239 Brough.
240 Here, Machell has written an unclear phrase, which appears to be 'v.II'.
241 Here, Machell wrote the numeral '6' in the margin.

omnes adventus suos secum tenere cum tribus equis ubicunque fuerit. D[ic]tus Dominus Robertus in Anglia secum tenere forfect[um] ~~in C~~ C.li.[242]

[I.409]

4. ~~Thomas of Hamon~~ \ by his first wife[243] & / had allso (by a 2nd wife* as it should seem \ may he had / but this wife / Dyonisija, married to [blank] de Newbigin and an other allso whose name was Robert \ vixit XI. Henry 1. [1110-11]. / He farm'd a messuage & 4 oxgangs in Hellebeck \ (of his nece) / Isab. Slekb.
Alane, 3 son of Sir Thomas, was a Clerke & had for his maintenance to him & his heires 1 messuage & 4 oxgangs of Land given by the said Sir Thomas in the vil. & Lordship of Hellebeck. He lived till the 5. Edward 3. [1331-32]; he had Isue, a son called Allan, vixit 1349: 23. Edward 3.†.
Agnes, 4 daughter as I suppose, was married to William de Lancaster, and recoverd all her lands in Strickland in Kendall of T. Hel. & Isabel his wife, for defalt of her porti[on] which in her widowhood she surrendered to them for a ~~yerely exhibitio~~ \ annuity / of 5s dureing life, about the 27. Henry 3. [1242-43].

5. Isabel, daughter & heir as is supposed of Thomas de Hellebeck son of Sir Thomas, marryed to Richard \ de / Blenkansop, upon whome and his wife the whole mannor of Helebeck with all its appurtenances was settled & to their Heires after them, jure hereditario.[244] Excepting the lands & Tenements held by Isabel de Slicburne & Edm[und] her son, and one messuage in the possession of William the son of Hugo, of the yerely rent of 10^{s}, which Alan de Hellebeck payed for the 4 oxgangs of land which he holds in the said manor.[245] The seale is 3 Annuletts, & a file of 3 lamb[el][246] (which shoes his father liveing) about which is writ a mix character: SIGILLVM THOME DE HELLEBEC. But I cannot certanely say that ther is any border ingraled.
{26. Ed. 1. [1297-1298]}[247] {Sir Thom de Hellebeck who sold Sowerby to Rob Cliff[ord] father dead ut puto.}[248]



Figure 1.6.17. Sigillum Thomas de Helbeck, 26. Ed. 1. [1297-98]. I.409.

[Notes on] Pedigree of the Blenkinsops of Hellebeck[249]

{Robert, Richard & Isabel} The Storie
It is reported that Richard Blenkinsop who married Issabel was one time ~~walking~~ \ rideing that way / with his greyhound / ~~with~~ \ following h sliped away there from & rann into an house in ~~Hellebeck~~ \

[242] 'And in time of peace, the said Lord Thomas in all his appearances to keep his men with him, along with three horses, wherever he was. The said Lord Robert kept with him in England a forfeiture of £100.'
[243] He had Isabel 'by his first wife.'
[244] 'According to the law of inheritance.'
[245] The word 'manor' replaces Machell's illegible word.
[246] Lambel = Label: a charge consisting of a narrow band across the upper part of the shield, having three (or sometimes five) short downward projections with a rectangular or dovetailed outline, most often borne as a temporary mark of cadency distinguishing the arms of an eldest son during the lifetime of his father. *OED*.
[247] Nov.1297-Nov.1298.
[248] In the MS, all the margin comments on this page occur twice.
[249] See I.405-408 and I.409-18.

Brough / whither he following found the dogg laying his head upon the young gentlewomans lap & the makeing much of it. upon this he fell in love with her and at last marryed her. This is ~~constantly~~ \ frequently / reported to this very day.

1. Richard de Blenksop tooke to wife Isabell the daughter of Thomas de Hellebeck & Isabell his wife; I finde them marryed Anno 1^0 Edward 1^t. [1272-1273]. He lived in the 10. ~~Ed~~ Edward 2. [1316-1317]. He was Coroner of Westmorland Anno 1320, i.e. 13. Edward 2. vixerat 18. Edward 2. P[uto] et 20.[250] Vixerant una cum Isabel Sclikburne[251] Anno 1326, i.e. 1. Edward 3. R.B. Dom de Hellebeck, 2. Edward 3.[252] He had Isue. Isabel was Lady de Hellebeck (vidua) 5. Edward 3. Ergo her Husband dyed then abouts.[253] Richard Blenkinsop Coronator Westmariæ 19. Edward 2. [1325-26].

2. {Thomas & Ellen}
{dilecto Vallerio (seu Valletto) nostro R.B.}[254]
Thomas de Blen~~k~~\c/ansc/op. 5. Edward 3. [1331-1332]. T.B. 1349: 23. Edward 3. There was one Robert de Blenkinsop whome I take to be brother (or rather uncle) to this Thomas (maybe his father's elder Brother for those Blenkinsops of Hellebeck bear a crissant for difference) to which Robert Ed. King of Scots (i.e. a Baliol) gave all the Lands & tenements of Ughtartyre,[255] with all the Appurtenances to the value of 20 marks per Annum: which Lands came into the hands of the said King Edward by the for-fature of Sir John Saniclere,[256] a latte Enemy & Rebbell to the said King‡. Dat apud villa S^{ti} Johanes de Perth ~~King~~ 27. Septe. Anno Reg 7^0 13. Edward 3. i.e. 1339.[257]

[Machell's Notes: I.409]

*{whose name Agnes de Skrevyn; vide}
†{The writ formerly had 40. Edward 3d.} [1366-1367]
‡If so be, this were not Crowne lands or previously[258] bestowed.

[I.439]

Brough parish vid. pedigree of Helbeck

Carta pro marcat & ferijas Apud Burgh subtus Stanemore per Edward 3. Aug. 2. reg. ejus 4^0

Edwardus dei Gratia Rex Angliae Dominus hiberniae et Dux Aquitannie, Archiepisc. Episcop. Abatibus, prioribus, Comitibus Baronibus Justiciarijs, vice-comitibus prepositis ministris et omnibus Balivis, & fidelibus suis salutem: Sciatis nos de ~~de~~ gratia nostra ~~nostra~~ speciali conscessisse et hach Carta nostra confirmasse dilecto o fideli nostro Roberto de Cliford, quod ipse & hereded sui imperpetuum habeant vanum marcatum singulis septuimaris per diem Jovis, Aput manum suum de Brough subtus Stainmore in Comitate Westmorland, & unam feriam ibidem par quattuor Dies Duratur. viz. par duos dies proximos Antefessum ~~habeant unum mercatum singulis~~ Sancti Matheij Appostuli, & qui in eodem festo Sancti Matttheij & par unum diem proximum, Nisi marcatum illud & feria illa sint ad nocumentum vicinorum Mercatorum & vicinarum Feriarum &c. His Testibus Henry Lincoln episc. Cancellario nostro, R Episcopo Sar. &c. – et alijs. Datum per manum nostrum apud Northampton 2^{d0} die Augusti; Anno Reg. nostri $4^{0.}$ Confirmd By King Edward 6. – Queen Elizabeth regni. Ejus 44. 21 Decembris.[259]

[250] 'He was alive in 18. and, I think, 20. Edward II (1324-1327).'
[251] 'They were alive at the same time as Isabel Sclikburne.'
[252] 'R.B. was Lord of Helbeck in 2. Edward III (1328-1329).'
[253] 'Isabel was Lady of Helbeck, widow in 5. Edward III (1331-1332); therefore, her husband died around then.'
[254] 'To our dear Vallerio (or Valletto) R.B.' 'Richard Blenkinsop'. Presumably this is a quotation from Machell's source.
[255] Possibly, 'Auchtertyre'.
[256] Sinclair.
[257] [Document] 'dated at St John's town of Perth, 27 September 1339 (13 Edward III).'
[258] 'Previously' replaces a word obscured by the binding.
[259] 'The King to Robert Clifford. A weekly market on Thursdays in his manor of Brough-under-Stanemore; and one fair there, lasting four days, namely the two days nearest the Feast of St Matthew the Apostle (21 September), the feast day itself, and the day immediately after it; unless that market and fair should damage

[I.410][260]



Figure 1.6.18. Arms, top-left margin. I.410.

{Ellen de}
T. \ de / B. de Johanna, filia Ada[m] Geteman totam placeam suam in Burg: 14. Edward 3.[261] He was at full yeres 'un[i]t[at]e no[vi]ssime',[262] which I suppose is the 19. Edward 3. [1345-1346]; as appears from his Lett of Attorney for possessions de Heleb[eck]. {He had office Thomas de Blenkinsop. Will. Capellanus.}[263] He had at the same Lett of Attorney, 6 Annulets within a bordure ingraled and writt about thus: S. THOME DE BLENCANSOP, 24. Edward 3. [1350-51]. 28. Ejusdem. 29. Edward 3. [1355-1356] all his Lands [&] Tenements in Hellebeck, Overton, Souleby and Brampton were given to Him by Joh[n] Raynald Vicar of Burgh & William de la Ferm', Chaplane, to hold for his life, paying to them \ & their Heires / yerely 12d. Thomas fil Richard de Blenkinsop: 32. Edward 3. in Burgh.[264] His wife was Ellen vid. Thomas, 41. Edward 3. [1367-1368].[265] \ She had 30s by compotus[266] for jointure per Annum out of the Demane. /

{Thomas & Katherine}
3. Thomas Blenkinsop, son of Thomas, had all the Lands & Tenements which were infeoffed upon ~~Them~~ \ The Vic[ar] and Chap[lane] of Brough / By T.B., his father, by a deed dated 43. Edward 3. [1369-1370] to him and Katherine, his wife. \ He had a brother? William, a Chaplane in 9. Rich. 2.[267] / This Thomas de Blenkansopp had the office of Constable of Brough Castle granted to him & his heires in the 4. of King Richard 2. [1380-1381] for the space of 600 yeres, with all its appurtenances, easments & commodityes. By Roger de Clifford, Lord of Westmorland, as appeares by his deed or charter dated at his Castle of Brough, Sunday before the feast of St James the Apostle, Anno K. Richard 2[t] quarto[268] from which date the lease tooke its force. T.B. 8. Richard 2. T.B. 12. 18.[269]

other such nearby; etc. Witnesses: Henry, Bishop of Lincoln; our Chancellor; R, Bishop of Sarum etc.' This is a calendared version of the two market charters of Brough (1330-31). The full Latin text was sent to Lord Thanet in 1684/5 and is to be found on I.427-9, above. See 'Charter for Market and Fair, 2. August 4. Edward III (1330-1331).'

[260] MS: '{~~This I sup. was his wife her seale}~~' A small coat of arms has been scored-through here.

[261] 'T. de B. had from Johanna daughter of Ada[m] Geteman all her place in Burgh, 14. Edward III (1340-1341).' 'Ada' is unclear.

[262] ''Newly in agreement'. The supposition is that Machell copied these two words verbatim from the document.

[263] Capellanus: chaplain.

[264] 'Thomas the son of Richard de Blenkinsop [is found in a deed of] 32 Edward III in Burgh.'

[265] Widow of Thomas.

[266] Compotus: a calculation, a reckoning; an account; a record of accounts. *OED.*

[267] 1385-1386. MS (omitted): ~~there was One William Blenkinsop \ 9 Richard 2 / of whome I have taken notice, which might be brother to Will to this Thomas~~.'

[268] 'Sunday before 25 July 1380 (the 4th year of King Richard).'

[269] 'Thomas Blenkinsop was alive in 8, 12 and 18 of Richard II: 1384-1395.'

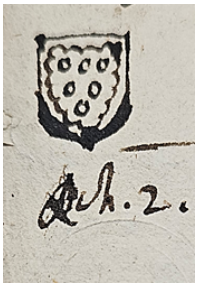


Figure 1.6.19. Blenkinsop: Thomas and Katherine's Arms. I.410.

In the 19. of Richard 2. [1395-1396], the said Thomas de Blenkinsop de Hellebeck ~~infeofed~~ possessed his son William, and Maud the daughter of Richard de Salkeld in diverse Lands & Tenements in the village of Overton. His son, Robert de Blenkinsop & Richard Talbot de Burgh bein attorney, 19. Richard 2.

{1. William 2. Robert 3. Isabell 4. Richard. All lived 3. Henry 5. [1415-1416]}
{5. Margaret, who lived 12. Henry 6. [1433-1434]}
{6. Catherine married to Robert de Langton son of Mr Gulfrid de Langton, who had Lands & mannors in Yorkshire, Richmondshire} \ & Bishoprig about the 9. Richard 2. [1385-1386].
Thomas the father of William bore for His Armes: 6 Anulets within a Bord[ure] ingraled.



Figure 1.6.20. Haverington Arms. I.410.

It should seem that he marryed a daughter much about this time whose name was Isabel to Sir ~~Will~~ \ Nicolas de / Haverington Knight; for he & his wife were possesed of Lands and Tenements in Hellebeck, till the[y] released the same, Anno Richard 2^{d} 13^{0} [1389-1390], upon Consideration of a Bond of 100 marks \ portion puto,[270] / 40 whereof were received, as appears by his \ re/lease on Friday next before the feast of \ the Nativity / St John Baptist, 14. Richard 2. [24 June 1390], Haveringtons sea[l] thereto annexed as a frett of 6 with a file of 3 Lamb[els] and writ abot[271] S NICHOLAI DE HAVERINTON. I suppose He lived at Farleton (or Ffarlton) in Lonesdall. for bothe the writeing are dated there.

{William & Maud 19. Richard 2. [1395-1396]}
4. William son of Thomas ~~Blen~~ de Hellebeck married Matilda, daughter of Richard de Salkeld, and had settled there upon him \ by his father / the 20^{th} part of his whol demane in the village of Overton, [I.411]
with one place in the same village caled Rasegillhall, with lands, medows and closes adjacent. 16 Tenements being of T[enure] ad voluntatem[272] reserveing the Mill & mouter.[273] Dated 19. Richard 2. They had also Anno 8^{0} Henrici 4. [1406-07] severall lands Tenements in the Lordship of Hellebeck with Housebote & Haybote, i.e. wood allowd for moderate reparation of their Houses & ~~Harness as~~ carts & the like: as doth more particularly appear from a deed of that date. They were marryed durante vita patris, whom I finde yet living 2. Henry 4.[274] [I also find] Thomas Blenkinsop Esq. William his heire & Robert – 3^{d} Henry 5. [1415-16]. This the 1^{t} time that I finde him writt Squ[i]re.

[270] 'For a portion, perhaps'.
[271] The MS then contains an inscription which has been scored through and repeated.
[272] 'Tenure at will.'
[273] Multure.
[274] 'They were married during his father's lifetime, whom I find yet living, 1400-1401.'

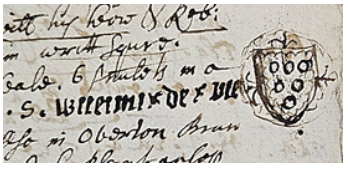


Figure 1.6.21. Arms of William de Blenkinshop. 1.411.

William de Blenkansop bore allso on his seale 6 Annulets in a Bordure ingrald and the circumscription, S. WILELMI ˣ DE ˣ BLENKENCOP ˣ 3^{0} Henry 5. [1415-1416]. He had Lands allso in Overton, Branton, Musgrave & Apleby. ibid. I meet with one John Blenkansop pentioner in the Abby of Shap presented by that fraternity for Holy Orders to John Bishop of Carlile. 1426. Henry 6. 4^{0}.[275] The words are: vestre diocesie clericum & presentem Exhibitorem.[276]
{Henry 5}
It seemes that he had a Brother also, whose name was ~~Thomas~~ \ Richard / who had for his maintenance 3 messuages, 3 Oxgangs of Land in Sunbigging durante vita; which were to revert to John de Preston Justice of P[eace] \ one of the Kings Justices / & John de Preston of Warcop. (Justiarius domi[n]i Regis[277] to which Joh. of Warcop to other quitted his clame. 6. Henry 5. [1418-1419]). He had allso all the Burgages with woods wastes of Roger Bowett of Brough, 2. Henry 6. [1422-1423], which were granted to William Blenkinsop, elder Brother of Richard & heirs male in reversion by John Preston of Warcop: & upon default of his heirs males, to Richard & his heirs male forever? 12. Henry 6. [1433-34]*.
T.B. 36. Henry 6. [1457-58] {?}†.
Richard letts his lands which he had of the g[ift] of their father \ Thomas / in Brough Orton Brampton & Crakenthorp, for the life of Richard. 23. Henry 6. [1444-1445].

An Abstract of the family of Blenkinsop
{1. Edward 1.} [1272-1273].
1. Richard (to whome Robert is sup[posed] brother) married Isabel de Hellebeck. Daug[h]ter & heir of Thomas: by whome he had Isue Thomas de Blenkinsop.

{5. Edward 3.} [1331-1322].
2. Thomas son & heir of Richard married Ellen de [blank] By whome he had Isue Thomas de Blenkinsop, & William, who was a Chaplane. Walter?

{43. Edward 3.} [1369-1370].
3. Thomas \ de / son & heir of Thomas \ Sc. he is writ Esq. 3^{0} Henry 5. [1415-16]. He was Constable of Brough & married Katherine [blank] By whome he had Isue. 1. William. 2. Robert. 3. Isabel. 4. Richard. & 5. Margaret.[278]

{19. Richard 2.} [1395-1396].
4. William son & heir of Thomas. married Matilda, daughter of Richard de Salkeld & had Isue: Thomas & ~~William~~ Richard.[279]

{25. Henry 6} [1446-1447].
5. Thomas \ Esq. / son & heir of William \ Blenkinsop Esq. / farmed of his father (25. Henry 6.) the

[275] William Barrow was bishop of Carlisle from 1423 to 1429. The other possible contenders are John Ross (or de Rosse), bishop from 1325 to 1332, and John Kirby, bishop from 1332 to 1352, these particular bishops living a century earlier than Machell's MS suggests. See Bishops of Carlisle 1292-1556, British History online.
[276] 'Clerk of your Diocese and present appearer.'
[277] 'Justice of the Lord King'.
[278] MS: 'He ~~maryed Katherine~~ was Constable of Brough & married Katherine [blank] By whome he had Isue. 1 William 2 Robert 3 Isabel 4 Richard & 5 Margaret. ~~& Thomas Called Thom Blenkinsop senior wife Katherine~~.'
[279] In the margin of the MS at this point is: '{vixerat 28. Henry …}' but the page has perished.

manner place & manor of Helbeck for terme of life. rent 10 m^{rcs} {per Annum} ~~I suppose he marrye about that time but with whome I know not.~~ He is the 1^{t} that tooke name of Blenkinsop without de annexed: & tis observable that in same writeing[280] William the father is writ, de, & Thomas the son without it. But both writ Esqs. it is 1^{t} too in English.[281] He had Isue, Thomas. He ~~I thinke~~ it was that had lands at Kirby Super Wiske 40^{s} rent: his wife estate there.[282]

[Machell's Notes I.411]

*N[ote:] this Richard was son of William and Matilda his wife \ 5. Henry 6. [1426-1427]. / Whether if this an other Generation.

†If this was T., father of William, he must 106 yeres old.

[I.412][283]

5. Thomas Blenkinsop de Helbeck (the 1^{t} time I finde it so writ) was possessed of the manner of Raysegil hall with the demane &c., with Lands & Tenements in the village of Overton & village of Tebay &c. which he passed to William Birbeck, vicar of Overton, & Rch. Warton, Chap[lane]. 33. Henry 6. [1454-1455]. Howbeit I finde him a witness 25. ejusdem. And William Blenkinsop Esq. lett to farme unto Thomas Blenkinsop Esq., his son, 25. Henry 6. [1446-47], His mannerplace of Helbeck with many lands & closes thereto belonging for time of his life: yealding & paying to the said William yerely \ for the mannor &c. / X marces. {N.B.} This T. Blenkinsop Esq. (for now I observe de to be left out) had Lands & Tenements in Kirkeby Superwyske of 40^{s} rent, 36. Henry 6. [1457-1458].[284]

{Edward 4} i.e. 2. Edward 4. [1462-1463].
The manner of Raysegill hall & the demane with all their lands Overton & Tebay were infeofed upon Thomas de Hellebeck and Katherine his wife by the Donation of William Birkbeck vicar of Overton & Rowland Warton, chaplane to them & their heirs forever. 33. Henry 6. [1454-1455]. This I take to be son & Heir of Thomas.

{5.} T.B. son of William forsan lived at ~~Stillington~~ \ de Hellebeck / in Yorkeshire, vixit 8. Edward 4th. [1468-1469]. Hence collect. T.B. senior – Brother to William – married with Katherine ~~his wife~~ & had Isue William, upon whome after the death of his father and mother the Lands at Slegil* in the Hamlett of Newby were setled for his life, after which the[y] were to revert to T.B. Blenkinsop junior, Cosan to T.B. aforesaid: & in case he dyed without heir that then they should remane to Catherine and her he[i]re lawfully begot in per[pe]tu[ity]. This T.B. Senior seeme to have had the desposal of his nephew, for I finde to him bound Richard Salkeld de Colby & Rowland Vaus Esq. in 100^{li}, for performance of Mar[riage] Covenants between T.B. Junior and Margaret, the daughter of the said Richard Salkeld.

{6.} T.B. Esq., son of ~~Will~~ \ Thomas maryed Katherine (Curwen or Leigh may be)†. & had Isue[285] 1. Thomas. 2. William, who ~~lived~~ with him & his mother, were infeofed in Lands in Slegill a[nd] Hamlett of Nuby for their lives successively, yet so that after the decease of William it was to revert upon Tom B. junior, co[n]sanguineo et Heredi dicti Thomæ?[286] son & heir of the said Thomas \ the / senior; and in case he dyed without Heirs that it should come to ~~Marg~~ Katherine & the heir of her Body lawfully begot. Dated 10. Edward 4. [1470-1471]. It seemes all this while, old Thomas was living, haveing some lands in Helbeck, Brough &c. remaning in his hand. 25 Henry 6. [1446-1447].[287]

---

[280] Four interlineated words are difficult to read here; they have been omitted.
[281] Machell placed an asterisk here but there is nothing in the margin to indicate a note or further comment.
[282] The page has perished here.
[283] Text on I.412 provides another version of I.411, as does most of I.413.
[284] The following crossed-through sentence, '~~He had a son ut put. Thomas B Esq, witness with him 1461~~', has been omitted.
[285] MS: '& had Isue & Had Isue'.
[286] 'The blood-relative and heir of the said Thomas.'
[287] MS: 'It seemes all this while old Thomas was living, haveing some lands in Helbeck, Brough & remaning in his hand ~~& William lived at Rasegil & Let the Demane & much of Helbeck to T. His son~~ 25 Henry 6.' See below (I.413).

{7.} T.B. junior, son of T.B. senior & grandchild to T.M. ~~Catherine~~ \ Margaret / daughter of Richard Salkeld de Corby, with Richard & Rowland Vaux Esquire were bound in a Bon[d] of 100 li to performe the covenants 19. Edward 4. [1479-1480]. And

[Machell's Notes: I:412]

*{Memorandum: X Acres of Land […][288]
†He was senior in respect of his altery[289] \ both lived at Hellebeck; howbeit old Thomas was alive / for they are poss[ess]ors in trust for his son.

[I.413]

the next yere following I find T.B. of Helbeck Esq. gives to Thomas B. the son of Thomas Blenkinsop his son, & Margaret his wife, daughter of Richard Salkeld, some lands he had still reserved & kept in his owne hands, part in Hellebeck & Brough part in Sandford: viz. 13 Acres of med[ow] with all his Lands, Tenements & Rents with their appurtenances in Murton. Bolton, Asbycotysforth, Asby Winderwath & Ormshed. 1 yerely rent of iij^{s} & 4^{d} issueing out of a Tenement in Colby &c. – X Ac. pat. in. C. 10. Edward 4. [1470-1471].

6. Thomas Blenkinsop \ Esq. / son & heir of Thomas married Katherine the daughter of [blank] and upon it had Raysegil hal with its appurtenances 33. Henry 6. [1454-1455]. He had Isue Thomas {? John} and William, whome he infeofed Land in Slegil for his life of the decease of his father & mother, the revertion being in Thomas, ~~his son~~ Consang. et heres dicti Thomæ.[290] They are both witnesses, 1461. i.e. 2. Edward 4. by the name of \ Thomas / Senior & Thomas Junior.

{9 Edward 4. 1469}
7. Thomas son & heir of Thomas Blenkinsop Esquire marryed Margaret, daughter of Richard Salkeld de Corby \ 9. Edward 4. [1469-1470] / vid. sup. (7)[291] and had Isue.
He married Margaret, daughter of Richard Salkeld of Corby & Tryarmaine; whose other daughter Katherine was 1^{t} marry to Sir [blank] Curwen, & afterward to Richard Ducket Esq. They had Isue Thomas Blenkinsop & ~~Margaret~~ \ Cristibel / Blenkinsop who was married to Robert Helton of Helton. & John (ut puto) who is one of the Donors in the infeofment of 1 Tenement in Hilton; 4 in Dufton; 1 in Bongate with Hodgeclose; a rent of 4^{s} per Annum out of a burgage in Apleby pos[sess]ed by Joan Lowson widow of Edmund: to the said Robert de Helton & Christobel his wife: & their heires legetimate. There is John allso a witness & J. a son*, 8. Henry 8. [1516-1517]. John Hilton, whome I take to be father of This Robert, received C^{li} in part of a greater payment of Margaret Blenkinsop viduæ, 8. Henry 8.

7. Margaret had Isue by Thomas as appears by her will 1522.
1. Thomas. 2. Gorge. Annuity of 40s. 3. [& 4.] John & Gabriel designed for the university. 5. Christobel married to Robert Hilton. All her sheep & 2 kine. 6. Ann, Portion 100 marc \ 2k. / 7. Esabel. All seem to be marryed but Ann.

8. Thomas married Elayne forsan Leigh; for John Leigh with others was made feofe in trust by him. They had Isue – from Margaret: William / 1. Thomas. 2. Bar[bara] 3. Dorathy.[292]

[Machell's Notes: I.413]

*1. must be put where the father, & other with the son.

[I.414]

{<u>Thomas Blenkinsop & Margaret Salkeld: 9. Edward 4.</u> [1460-1470]}
Thomas Blenkinsop, son & heir of Thomas Blenkinsop Esq. \ sirnamed Junior / in his fathers &

[288] Followed by five illegible letters.
[289] The word 'altery' is unclear, but the sense of the word is 'of age'.
[290] 'Kinsman and heir of the said Thomas.'
[291] 'See above, 7.'
[292] Two scored-through dates, '~~1396-1460~~', appear here, at the page foot.

Grandfathers life time marryed Margaret daughter of Richard Salkeld de Corby about 9. Edward 4th. [1469-1470]. I take her to have bin an Haress probably both to Salkeld & Vaux, for Rowland Vaux Esq. stands bound with Richard Salkeld in a bond of 100li to Thomas Blenkinsop senior in relation to the marriage of Margaret Salkeld to Thomas Blenkinsop junior. And the Blenkinsops quartering the Vauxes coat with whome I find not they had any match, & Rowland Vaux being conserned in this Marriage makes me believe that Salkeld had marryed his daughter & heir whose daughter & cho-h[293] this Blenkinsop marryed; and ergo the rather because I finde in the widowhood of Margaret: she & her sister, dame Katherine Culwen then wife of Richard Ducket Esq., had Sir Thomas Daker Lord of Daker & of Graystock bound in a Bond of 100li for sufferance of their peaceable entrance occupation & injoyment of all and every parcel of the Lands & Tenements of the moiety of Trevermane & Morthuate[294] in Cumberland; dated 13 of May Anno 2. Henry 8. [1510].

{St Maryes Chappel}
This Thomas prearticled with John Brunskale Anno 7. Henry 7. [1491-1492] for the building of St Maryes Chaple as before, and left his wife Margaret a widow about the beginning of Henry 8., his son being underage in the Custody I thinke of Lord Daker, for he clamed money for his marriage as appears from the Condition of the foresaid Bond. They had Isue
1. Thomas of whome in the next section.
2. George \ ~~afterwards a Priest~~ / to whome his mother left out [of] her owne lands or Brugh Close an annuity of 40s, & 4 m[arks] his Brother left him per annum. \ He came to be priest & to this Sir John & his Brothers T.B. the eldest gave 4m. a pece annuity. /
3. John [&] 4. Gabriel \ mort. 1581 / \ Thomas gave 40s annuity / Both designed if docill[295] for the university.
5. Christbell married to Robert Helton de He[l]ton, whose portion was above 100 m[arks] beside several tenements as before: ~~her mothers whole stock of sheep with 2 cowes & their calves at herd.~~
6. Ann who had 100 marcs by will for her marriage. \ She was married [to] Christopher son of John Crakenthorp of Newbiggin & had 100m. in land Joynture with the revertion of the whole estate intaled upon the heires male: which was 40 mar[ks] per Annum in Westmorland & Cumberland, Anno 1523. 14. Henry 8. /
7. Esabel or Isabel: who I thinke was married.[296]

Thomas sirnamed Junior dyed as is said about the 1t of Henry 8. [1509-1510]. Margaret his widow: 1522: i.e. 13. of Henry 8.

{Thomas Blenkinsop & Ellen}
Thomas Blenkinsop Esq. son of Thomas sirnamed Junior did very much prosecute that particular Intrest, tooke Care about the repare of the church of Brough, the building of the steeple &c. {19. Henry 7. [1503-1504]}. But in the 16. Henry 8. [1524-1525] was imploy in the Kings warrs against the Duke of Albany and set forward 19. of October in the said yere; leaving all his land, \ as well those which he had by his mother as paternall Estate / of all which he was then possessed, to his wife & \ Sir / Thomas Rigg Vicar of Brough, till such time as his heire came to Aige, to be imployed for marriage of his other children and payment of debts. John Leigh, Gawen Eglesfield & others being feofees seised of his Lands for performance of his will, most of which was writ with his owne hand very legible & schollerlike. He tooke to wife Ellen daughter of [blank] ~~forsan~~ Leigh about 2. Henry 8. [1510-1511]. [297]

[293] Co-heir.
[294] Triermain and Moorthwaite.
[295] Apt to be taught; ready and willing to receive instruction; teachable. *OED*.
[296] There follows a note relating to the Crackenthorps: {'Crakenthorp Henry who had Isue Xtopher Ann Frances &? John Crakenthorp who had Isue Xtopher Ann Frances & John?'}
[297] In the left-hand margin, running at right angles to the page at this point are two seals with comments: {'At her will'} {'At her sonn's \ 1t / will'}.

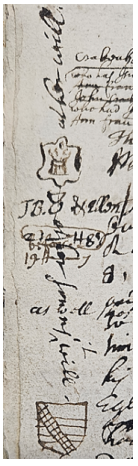


Figure 1.6.22. Seals: 1.'Used by Thomas Junior's widow at her will'; 2.'Used at her sonn's will'. I.414.[298]

[I.415]

In recompense of his good & Laudable service to Henry Earl of Cumberland Lord of Westmorland, Skipton & Vescy & Gardian of the west marshes[299] of England towards Skotland, he was gratifyed at the Donation of the said Earl Henry with the Custody wardship & marriage of William Skarbu\r/gh,[300] son & heir of Richard S[karburgh] gent. of Gloseburn in Yorkshire. 17. Henry 8. [1525-1526] T.B. Esq. payd 10^{li} per Annum to Sir William Bastoign in the County of Bedford Knight out of Little Corby & Warwyckbriggs in the right of dame Elizabeth, his wife*. He lived to make an other will Anno 1536 at Newcastle and if he dyed there as is supposed, he was buried in the Austin Fryers {X}[301] within a clorsett[302] before the <u>rood</u> {27. Henry 8. [1535-36].} It seemes his wife and some of his children dyed before him. \ He was under shireve of Westmorland and actual Constable of B C[303] XXI. Henry 8. [1529-1530]. / He had

1. Thomas son & heire of whome in the next section.
2. Barn\ab/as as I suppose – who dyed in his minority.
3. [Blank] f. Agnes: who was marryed to John Wharton, whose daughter Agnes Wharton was then about to be marryed with [blank] son & heir of Robert Helton son of Richard Helton, to whome he gave towards her marriage XX^{li}.
4. Dorathy married to –
5. Richard Blenkinsop, a servant the right Honourable Henry Earl of Cumberland. 32. Henry 8. [1540-1541].

{<u>T.B. & Magdalen Musgrave, 24. Henry 8.</u>} [1532-1533]

9. Thomas Blenkinsop the younger, as appear by Articles twixt T.B. the Elder Esq. & Sir Edward Musgrave, was marryed to Magdalene youngest daughter of Sir Edward Musgrave of <u>Hartley</u>†, betwixt 24 of November & the Feast of the Translation of St Thomas the apostle, 24. Henry 8. [1532];[304] haveing settled upon him 20 marks per annum to them & their heires for ever in consideration of 100^{li} portion. And that in case of His fathers marriage, that young couple should live

[298] Note the wheatsheaf.
[299] The western marches of the borderlands.
[300] The centre of this word is blotted.
[301] A large cross: a sign used by Machell to mean, 'wrong' or 'check this'.
[302] Closet: 'a private chapel, or reserved area of a church, for the use of a lord, monarch, etc.; (also) a private pew. Now obsolete'. *OED*.
[303] Brough Castle.
[304] The feast of St Thomas the Apostle was originally celebrated on 21 December.

either at Corby or Helbeck pro ut melius videret expedire.[305] He gave 26^{s} 8^{d} towards the building of the Bridge att Brough: whence it is that his Armes are placed there upon, together with the Cliffords att whose cost I suppose it was compleated in ~~whole or in part~~ 1558; This gift being made by will in 1545 upon his goeing to serve the Kings majesty against the Scots. He was possesed of Raisbeck \ in the Lordship or parish of Orto[n] / & in case he should dye in that Expedition left his Brother Richard Blenkinsop, his 2 uncles \ George & / John ~~and George~~ priest, together with his cosan Sir Richard Leigh priest, in trust to take up the rents there of which were 13^{li} or thereabout which were to be imployed to the best advantage towards the profit & use of all his smale Children daughters, for as many of them as came to yeres. He gave to his sister Dorothy 3^{li} \ 11s / 8d[306] to be payd at her setting up house when her father in law dyes. & to Anne Helton (forsan Agnes daughter of Wharto[n]) when she setts up house at Barton,[307] 40s. \ He had Isue /

1. Thomas whose wardship he desired might be purchased by his good Lord Harry Earl of Cumberland & Grace his wife, from [whom] he feard not to meet with favour.[308]

[Machell's Notes: I.415]

*Might not this Elizabeth be a 3^{d} sister of Salk[eld]? {She was dead 24. Henry 8. [1532-1533]}
†{è obligat;[309] she was liveing 13. of Elizabeth [1570-1571]}

[I.416]

Thomas had issue {his wife dyed before him.}

1. Thomas, a child when his father went to wars & therefore he desired that his good Lord Henry Earl of Cumberland & Grace his wife would purc\h/ase his wardship into their Hands.
2. John: Illegitimate, to whom he lef all his lands in Traddallmane with yerely 40^{s}. Mathew, stuard to Lord Wharton. \ Charles a servant to the Countiss of Cumberland. /

{2. Charles son to whome his father gave an annuity of 10^{li}. 3. & youngest Mathew. 5 marks per Annum.}

~~3~~. He had many smale daughters – 5.
3. [Blank] marryed to William Farrand of Carleton \ hall / near Skipton Esq., whose armes are [blank]
4. Margaret to Hugh Machel of Crakenthorpe Esq., about 18. of Elizabeth [1575-1576].
5. [Blank] To Thomas Bellingham of Gathorne near ~~Warcop~~ \ Askby / Esq.
6. [Blank] To John Eglanby[310] of Carlile in Cumberland Esq. whose armes are [blank]
7. [blank] the youngest to Lancelot Pickering of Crosby Esq.

{~~10. Eliz. Vixit, mortuus est 11. Eliz […]~~ obijt. 4 maij 13. Elizabethae 1571. Thomas junior was then 34.}[311]

They were all under aige in 1576 \ 18. Eliz. / & the father was dead then. I finde Pickerings acquit[tance] 4. Quene Elizabeth for part of portion: 1562. Each of them, portions 100^{li}. Inde dub? 40 forsan.[312]

{Thomas & Margerie 2^{0} and 3^{0} Philip et Marie [1553-1556]}[313]

10. Thomas son of Thomas Blenkinsop Esq. marryed in the time of his father (who notwithstanding his former will made upon his goeing against the Scotts returned agane in saifety) with Margarie one of the daughters of William Wykecliffe ~~Esq.~~ of Wykeliffe in the County of Yorke Esq., in the 1 & 3^{d} of Philip & Mary, haveing settled upon them for terme of their lives & to their heires after them \ beside the revertion of p[ortion] / an estate of the clear yearly value of 13.vj^{s} 8^{d} ~~besides the revertion of~~. By Thomas Blenkinsop the Elder, whereof all the lands which he had in Corby ~~should~~ \ were to /

[305] 'Whichever was more convenient.'
[306] Unsafe transcription; '11s' is an unclear interlineation: the rest is clear.
[307] Barton or Burton: 'u' and 'a' are written very similarly in Machell's text.
[308] The next sentence begins 'Mary d.' but the text here, at the foot of the page, has perished; some margin comment is also illegible.
[309] 'By an agreement.'
[310] Aglionby.
[311] '~~10. Elizabeth lived; she was dead by 1571, aged 11.~~'
[312] 'I doubt this; 40 shillings perhaps.'
[313] The reign of Philip and Mary lasted from 1554 to 1558.

be parcel or part and that whilest the[y] lived in the house with him they were only to receive 10^{li} per Annum, the residue of the foresaid Estate remaneing to Thomas their father in consideration of their Boording with him* ~~upon Consideration of~~, which Articles of marriage, William Wikelife Esq. did pay to the said Thomas Blenkinsop Esq. 200^{li}. The land he setled upon them were his whole part & proportion of the castle or Manner of Corby with the appertinences in the County of Cumberland, and all his lands Tenements & hereditaments whatsoever with their appertinences in Corby aforesaid, and in Warwykebrigs Cal\w/d-cotes[314] & Cald\w/cote Bankes, Eglanby, & Murthwate, excep ½ the fishing of Corby upon the River Eden, & 3 parts of ½ the watermill of Corby divided into 4: and allso all & singular Burgages, messuages, Lands & tenements in the City of Carlile in the County of Cumberland aforesaid, 2. & 3. Philip et Mariæ [1555-1556].



Figure 1.6.23. Seal of Thomas Blenkinsop. I.416.

John Leigh of Isham Cumberland. Tho. Rookeby of Mortham \ com / York Esq. expounders of Articles & all doubts arriseing in the said covenants.
His Isue [Version 1]
1. Thomas whome tis sayd dyed an infant.
2. Henry of whome in the next section.
4 daughters. to whome he allotted for portion 66^{li} 13^{s} 4^{d}.
5. Fraunces his son. 10^{li} annuity except his mother then with child should bring forth a son, & if so either was to have 6: 13: 4 Annuity durante vita.[315]
6 [Blank] a daughter. She was to have 66:13: 4 as the rest of her sisters had. è Testa. – 15. Elizabeth.[316]

[Machell's Notes: I.416]

*{Thomas dyed about ~~Anno 15~~ 16. Elizabeth [1573-1574].} {Margarie was alive 41. Elizabeth [1598-1599].}

[I.417]

The Isues of Thomas & Margery [Version 2]
1. Thomas who tis said dyed an Infant.
2. Henry, of whome in the next section.
3. Fraunces to whom was left an annuity of 10^{li} per Annum.
4. Barbary married to Mr Robert Ward of Bows in the County of Yorke whose Armes were ~~were~~ Vert a Crosse flore Or charged with a crescent Gules, for distinct[ion].
5. Katherine married to John Warcop of Warcop \ T[ower] / County of Westmorland Esq. whose Armes you have elsewhere.
6. Magdalen} ~~mar~~ \ dyed / unmarryed att a great Aige.
7. Joan }
8. Elizabeth, who dyed ~~very young~~\ unmarryed / livd in 12. of King James [1614-1615] then 27 yeres of aige.

[314] Caldcoats.
[315] 'Annuity during his lifetime.'
[316] 'From his will 15. Elizabeth' [1572-1573].

{Henry Blenkinsop & Elizabeth Tankard}
11. Henry Blenkinsop de ~~Blenkinsop~~, sonn & heire of T.B. Esq & Margarie his wife being under aige was a ward \ in custody of Sir Simon Musgrave / and there was payd for the fine of his marriage 40^{li} ~~sterl[ing]~~ for the payment of \ 10^{li} / whereof Sir Simon Musgrave of Edenall Knight, Ingeram of Plumpton & William of Moreton were bound in bond 21. Elizabeth [1583-1584]. He marryed Elizabeth the daughter of Thomas Tankard of Burrowbrigg in the County of York, Esqr. haveing with her 500^{li} portion, upon which agrement all the paternall Estate of the Blenkinsops were intaled upon the heires males forever. \ And 46li per annum Joynture upon her for life. / This was don in the 26. of Elizabeth [1583-1584] about which time they were marryed. He sold his part of Corby with other his land in Cumberland to the Lord William Howard and others joyned with him for 770^{li}, Anno 3^{0} Jacobi [1605-1606] {He dyed 18 January 1613 – 47. Jacob.} Lancelot Lancaster of Sokbridge marryed Frances Tankard who was Eldest daughter of Thomas Tankard and sister to Elizabeth Blenkinsop. The Tankards Armes are Argent a cheveron between 3 escallops Gules charged with 3 annulets Or.

There Issue[317]
~~1. Thomas~~
1. Katherine. who dyed unmarried at a great aige.
2. Dorathie a nunne att Lis\b/on in Portigall.
[3.] Jane. married to One \ T. / Bird of Colby in Westmorland.
4. Thomas son & heir of whom in the next section.
5. Fraunces. who was never married and is now liveing.
6. Elizabeth. who dyed in Yorkeshire unmarried.
7. Margarie married to Rober Cawell of Bought in Lancashire, Gent.
12. Thomas son & heir of Henry Blenkinsop Esq. and Elizabeth his wife was under Aige when his father dyed, and by that means became ward to the Countiss of Cumberland: for whose composition was payd 200 m^{rcs}. He was a very hansome & proper Old Gentleman att the writeing hereof. He was marryed On Midsomer day 1618 to Ann Osbaldeston, daughter of Sir Edward Osbaldeston Knight of Osbaldeston in the County of Lancaster. whose Armes were Argent a mascle[318] between 3 annuletts Sable. And that Her portion was 600 li & her jointure 60li per Annum with the whole Estate in revertion upon the heires male. This Thomas passed away all the lands in Orton & Slegill to The Tenants & others.
Their Isue
1. Frances [blank] of whom hereafter.
2. Henry. who dyed an infant.
3. Mary. who dyed about 20 yeres of Aige.
4. Elizabeth who dyed about 16.
5. Thomas, an ingeniouse Gentleman for any sort of mechaniks.
6. John who dyed an infant.
7. Henry who dyed an infant.

[I.418]

8. Ann. unmarryed.
9. Dorathie. –
10. Katherine. –
13. Frances Blenkinsop. son and Heire of Thomas Blenkinsop Esquire and Ann his wife, is now liveing with his father but not as yett marryed.

As to my Conjecture of quartering Vaux
16. Edward 2. [1322-1323], Rowland de Waus[319] son & heir of Robert de Waus of the coun\ty/ of Carlile; which Rowland was of Tryarmane, had to wife Johanna [blank] which Rowland of Tryarmane gave to Rowland de Waus son of Randulph de Waus of the County of Somsett for the Terme of his

[317] This is the first occasion on which the spelling of the word 'issue' is as we would expect. Probably Machell's note-writing style encouraged him to abbreviate the word to 'isue', elsewhere.
[318] A blot covers the symbol placed here, which is possibly a mascle.
[319] Circled in the MS.

life, all his part of his lands & Tenement at Pury and Fod[d]ingdon, besides Babecary in the County of Som[er]sett,[320] paying to \ rendering / Rowland de Waus de Tryarman & Johanna his wife h. ex. ass. 6li. Ster[ling] yerely, for 5 yeres. and rendering after 5 yeres expired to Rowland & Johanna &c. 10li ster[ling] Annuatim att Purij. & sic quandam Johannam his wife.[321]
28. Edward 3. [1354-55]. Rowland de Vaus gave to Rowland \ and / his son the Manner of Torcrossoke; which manner was conveyed by Richard de Richmond to Sir Andrew de Harcla Earl of Carlile. Anno 1322. (15. Edward 2.) witness to Harcla Richard de Denton Knight? (& later allso) Thomas de Neuby (sed com. Cumb. ni fallor \ dat / Carlile).[322]

43. Edward 3. [1369-70], Tryarmane Enfeofd for life upon Johanna, Rel[ict] Rch. de Vaux for life. Then to come unto John de Vaus son of Rowland the Brother of Rich. & his heires.

50 Edward 3. Ranulph de Dacre, don. de Westm'land releaseth all clame of the manner of Kirkoswald to Johan, widow of Rich. de Vaux.
{12. Hen. 6. Rowland Waux Armigerer lett land in William Holme dated at Carlil.}



Figure 1.6.24. Vaux Seal. I.418.

The Coats of the Blenkinsop Matches, some whereof tho possably Authentique enough[h], I can not prove by evidence.
1. R.B. & Isabell Hellebeck The Coat ported per pale. i) Blenkinsop. the 2nd Gules, 6 annulets within a bordure ingraled Or.
2. T.B. with Margaret Salkeld: The 1t Blenkinsop. the 2nd Vert a frett of 8 Argent.
3. T.B. with Katherine Vaux: The 1t Blenkinsop. 2nd Argent a Bend checquer Or & Gules by her name of Vaux. But this I doubt of, rather supposeing that [Blank] Salkeld who was marryed to [Blank] Blenkinsop was daughter & co-heir[323] of Richard Salkeld by [Blank] His wife; which wife was daughter & heir to Rowland Vaux. For Thomas her son was the first that I meet with who bare the Armes quartered as they are in the window of the Quire in Brough church, placed there by his appointment.
4. T.B. & Katherine Wharton: The 1t Blenkinsop – 2nd Sable a maunch Azure.[324]
5. T.B & Ellen Leigh. The 1t Blenkinsop – 2nd Argent 2 barrs Azure over which a bend counter compone Or & Gules.
6. T.B. & Magdalen Musgrave. 1t Blenkinsop 2. Musgrave.
7. T.B. with Margarie Wikelif. The 1t Blenkinsop, 2. Argent a chevron between 3 crosscrosslets Gules.

[320] The medieval manors of Pury (later, Perry) and Foddington lie in the parish of Babcary, Somerset: see *Victoria County History – Somerset*, Vol. 10, Babcary, 101-21.
[321] 'Annually at Pury & thus for as long as Johanna, his wife…'
[322] 'But unless I am mistaken, County Cumberland, date Carlisle.'
[323] MS: 'choree'.
[324] The word is represented by 'az'; rest of it is obscured by the binding.

8. Henry Blenkinsop with Elizabeth Tankard. 1[t] Blenkinsop, 2. Argent a chevron between 3 escalops Gules charged with 3 \ annulets Or. /
9. T.B. with Ann Osbaldeston: 1[t] Blenkinsop, 2[d] Argent a lozenge[325] between 3 hartes Sable proper.

[I.431A][326]

[Further notes on Heraldry]

{These Broughs I doubt had nought to do here}[327]
Hic jacent Johanes de Brough armigeri & Katerina uxor ejus, qui Johanes obijt x[0] die mensis Januarij Anno millesimo CCCC[o] xij[o] quorum animabus propiciet Deus Amen.
Hic jacet Willielmus Burgh, filius et heres Johanis Burgh qui obijt qua[r]to die Novembris Anno Domini [M]CCCC xlij; et Matilda uxor eius que obijt xij[0] die mensis November Anno Domini [M]CCCC XXXII; et Willielmus Burgh Armiger filius et heres praedicti Willielmi qui obijt ultimo die mensis December Anno Domini M[0] CCCC lxij[0] et Elena uxor ipsius Willielmi filij Willielmi praedicti qui obijt xx[0] die mensis Junij, Anno Domini Millesimo CCCC xliij[0] quo[rum] animabus propiciet Omnipotens Deus.[328] The 'n' a saltier chargd with 5 swa[n]s, a fess ingralld.[329]

[I.438A][330]

And in Poland, they have their Castelians Captaines or governours of cityes, of whom there be there 87 which are under their respective Palatin:[331] Casimir king of Poland being Elected to the crown Anno 1645, did by a Dispensation from the Pope marry the Relict of his Brother & predecessor, Ladislaus a French Lady, p.28.[332] & Sobieski he made his Grand Marshal.[333]
Casimirs Resignation Speech – I would say more, but I am hindred through want of memory, & that tenderness of my heart which suffereth me not to speake fa[r]ther to you but with Tears.
Oathes: The Polander tho pap[ist] put this clause in the End of their oath of confederacy for preservation of the King & Kingdoms 'I will truly & sincerely observe this &c. in brotherly unity, without any mental reservation or hope to be dispensed therefrom. So help me God.'
Sable, the name of some sort of sword in Poland. General Sobieski going[334] to incounter the Turkes marched with his drawn s[word].[335]
Will de Ireby tunc de Westmorland Tho: fil Thome, Henrico de Su[leb]y

[325] Machell drew a lozenge symbol here.
[326] Small scrap page. On its reverse (I.431B) are three rough sketches of coats of arms and the text: 'Ad Brough sed non subsaxeto; Ingraled twixt 6 floredeluces as first. 3 as second 4; Over the porch now Sir John Lawsons; These I think are in Ca …rig Church.'
[327] Written at right angles to the rest of the text.
[328] 'Here lie John de Brough Esq, and Katerina his wife, which John died 10th day of January in the year 1412. God shall have mercy on their souls Amen. Here lies William Burgh, son and heir if John Burgh, who died the 4th day of November 1442; and Matilda his wife who died the 12th day of Novermber 1432; and William Burgh Esq. son and heir of the aforesaid William, who died the last day of December 1462; and Elena the wife of the same William, son of the aforesaid William, who died the 20th day of June 1443. Almighty God shall have mercy on their souls.'
[329] Written at the foot of a damaged scrap of paper, this final sentence is very unclear.
[330] Small scrap page, 9½cm x 12cm, torn from an address sheet of a letter. On the reverse is part of an address, 'For Thomas Machell of Kirkby Thore', with a note in Machell's hand, 'In his hand &c. ibidem 98.'
[331] Here, Machell referred to his source, 'p.20 of Sanderbey Redde vinus marriage.' but the letters are blotted and unclear.
[332] John II Casimir Vasa, 1609-1672, was king of Poland and grand duke of Lithuania from 1648 until his abdication in 1668, after which he lived in France, where he joined the Jesuit order. See Daniel Stone, *The Polish-Lithuanian State, 1386-1795* (Washington, 2014), Chapter 10.
[333] John III Sobieski, a war hero who was eulogised by William Wordsworth in 'Siege of Vienna Raised by John Sobieski', was elected king of Poland and grand duke of Lithuania in1674. He died in 1696. See 'Catholic Encyclopedia', https://www.newadvent.org/cathen/14061c.htm.
[334] MS: 'being.'
[335] See n.348: on Sobieski.

[I.438B][336]
Forinsecum servicium quantum pertinent ad illam medietatem. Hijs Testibus Tho. filio […][337] tunc Vic. Karliol William de Ireby, tunc de Westmaria; Thoma filio Thome. Henrico de Soulby; Rogero de Bellocampo; Roberto de Hellebeck; Johe de Ormesheved; Willo filio Simonis; Simone parsona de Burgha; Simone Brithon; Johe filio Johanes de Helton; Alano filio Richardi Leingth\w/m. et alijs. Hujus Origo extat in Libro Pergam' – in camera cartam' de castro de Apelby.[338]

Note: There were 2 Robert de Veteriponts – 1ᵗ sheriff Anno 10. Regis Johis. [1208-1209]. This must be either – in the time of King John – for the 1ᵗ Robert lived till the 12. Henry 3. [1227-1228] then John [de Veteripont] to the 26. [1241-1242]. Then Robert to the 49. [1264-1265] e ult[imo] Veteripont – or in the time of Henry 3rd.

[**Accidents and Calamities**[339] **in Brough Parish**]

[III.75]

Bondgate[340]
Anthony Stephenson & his wife found a man in the last great snow save one in a gill above Burton & Hilton {in Burton Lordship about 15 years ago} calld Greena Gill, lying & moaning in the snow; who gave this account concerneing him selfe. That he came from Durham to the Nether pit on Stanemore to see som of his acq[uaintance] working there: & thence intending for High Ubanke he missd his way or was misled for a \ whole week / together \ twixt Sunday & Sunday / never resting eating nor sleeping \ all the while; / nor knowing whether it was night or day all that time but that \ there / was something like a black dog sometimes running befor him. His legs were so perishd with the cold that they wer ~~both~~ cut of just under the knee about 3 monthes after.

{A millston carried over Wharton Park wall without injureing it}

[III.105]

[A breech of a gun in the throat of Cuthbert Comston]
(On the 18. of March 1688) Cuthbert Comston of Brough Sowerby, a blacksmith by traide, ætatis circa 50,[341] having a swelling like a boyle on the knot of his t\h/roat, {?} came to Dr Ubancke of Market Brough, January 3. 1688, to desire his advice; who, trying with an instrument, found that there was a piece of iron in it, and at length after much search & inscission in that desperate place, discovered it to be the britch[342] of a gun for evulsion of which he put a peg through the britch skrew hole to prevent its regression[343] & then contrived the instrument, which I call a levator from the use he made of it, to thrust betwixt the gula [and] \ aspera astena or wind-pipe / & bretch the notches on the end, being to secure the said gula, thropleˢ[344] artery from retireing backwards whilst he made an inscission on the left side, cutting 2 fixfaxes[345] & several other vessels & veines, & cut so far into the

[336] Scrap page, 9cm x 14cm. 'Extracted from a deed relating to foreign service, with witnesses: Thomas, son of John the present Sheriff of Carlisle, William de Ireby then of Westmorland, Thomas son of Thomas, Roger de Bellocampo, Robert de Hellebeck, John de Ormesheved, William son of Simon, Simon the parson of Brough, Simon Brithon, John son of John de Helton, Alan son of Richrd Leingtham, and others: From a Book in the charter room at Appleby Castle.'
[337] A blot obscures two words here.
[338] 'Foreign service as much as applies to that half. Witnesses as follows … The original of this exists in a book pargum in the document room of Appleby Castle.'
[339] For this phrase, see 'Method' in Machell's Preface: I.42A, I.154, I.127, II.533.
[340] The title is 'Bondgate', but the event occurred on Stainmore.
[341] 'About 50 years old.'
[342] Breech.
[343] MS: 'of \ a / gun, for ~~extracting~~\ vulsion / ~~of which~~ he ~~to good~~ put a peg through the britch skrew hole to prevent its regression.'
[344] 'Gula': gullet, thropple or thrapple = windpipe. *OED*.
[345] MS: 'being ~~to prevent being~~ to secure the said gula \ thropleˢ artery / from ~~slipping &~~ retireing backwards whilst he made an inscission on the left side, cutting ~~the~~ \ 2 / fixfaxes.' 'Fixfax': the thick tendon in the neck (usually of cattle or sheep). *OED*.

esophagus that both meat & drinke were emitted at it, {? Creed barly}[346] which were brought away by the

[III.106]

ciringe[347] in dressing.
{Then taken out}[348]
An[d] on the 18 March he got it out in the presence: Rich.Wastall and his daughter; Richard Burton & his wife & 2 sons; Robert Nicholson; Michael Hodgson, and severall others of Brough.

{A fillet of lead protrude[d] every day farther & farther}
And several persons of good credit & quality saw the small end of the britch while it was in \ his throat / & stook out like a boane: sc. Mr Fox \ Mr Harrison / Mr Ferdinando Hudleston of Peckwel in Yorkshire, Mr Gal[frid] Hay of Brough Castle & Mr Pale of Brough, Mr Hugh Row {43 years practice} & severall others.

{14 weekes fed of a Ciringe}
And that which is more to be wondered at, the patient had this distemper on him & knew \ not / what it was nor how he came to it, from ~~Easter~~ \ the / Tuesday before Whitsuntide. Only by the cure the occasion was discovered; for in shooting at an hare, which it seems he had kild for they found blood & garbage, he was beaten backward, his right struck out or rather in, & the gun britch lost, which he knew nothing of till the doctor found it. It had passed in this interval round about his neck beyond the veterbra & so under the left ear, till it fixed upon his throat [see Figure below].

a. The figure of the gun-britch in its full proportion, weighing ijss & half a drachm {2 ounces ½; ½ a drachm.}[349]
b. A levator made of wood by Dr Ubanke, being \ somewhat / convex ~~& hollow~~ on the bacside of it & concave or hollow on the foreside with 7 or 8 nicks at the end.

[III.107]



Figure 1.6.25. 'Gun britch' and 'levator'. III.107.

[Additional Material attached to Brough Parish]

[I.397]

A Relation of a Spirit which appeared last X^tmas in Langedale parish of Stainthrop[350] near Barnard Castle in the Bishoprik of Durham, 1674.[351]

---

[346] 'Creed barly': as in 'to cree wheat or Barly &c., to boil it soft (1691)', thus, soft barley emitted from the oesophagus. The sceptical reader might wish to take 'creed barly', with its question mark, to mean 'belief, barely'. For both meanings, see *OED*.
[347] Syringe.
[348] This margin heading appears on III.105.
[349] 'Drachm' a Greek coin; also, 'a weight approximately equivalent to that of the Greek coin: in Apothecaries' weight = 60 grains, or ⅛ of an ounce, in Avoirdupois weight = 27⅓ grains or 1/16 of an ounce'. *OED*.
[350] MS: 'Stanithrop'.
[351] According to Henry Mayhew's conversations with nineteenth-century street-sellers of chap-book literature, people, particularly women, greatly enjoyed seduction and murder stories: see Barry Reay, *Popular Cultures in England, 1550-1750* (London and New York, 1998), 51-52. For the popularity of sex and courtship in chap-books of the 17th century, see Margaret Spufford, *Small Books and Pleasant Histories: Popular Fiction and its Readership in seventeenth-century England* (Cambridge, 1981), 156-93. There are many modern studies of late-17th-century ghost stories; see, for example, Jo Bath and John Newton, 'Sensible Proof of Spirits: Ghost Belief during the Later 17th Century', *Folklore 117*, 1 (2006), 1-14.

It was the Appartition of one (Francis) whose maden name was Ripton. She marryed a young man whose ~~name~~ was \ called / William Sidgeswick in the Langedale \ aforesaid / and by him had 2 or 3 children whome he left very young to the care & custody of Frances his wife when he dyed, upon her resolveing & promising not to marry any more, His estate att that time personall & reall being vallued att the rate of 500^{li}, which he did not question but she would imploy to the best advantage of herself and children.

Howbeit she marryed some time after to the son of Captane Cutbert Appleby the chief man of that dale, and dyed before any settlement was made upon \ those / her children by her first husband, haveing allso left hid under a spar or ribb of the house, 20^{li} tyed up in a nightcap with a taylours messure, which \ she / hid and kept private from her 2nd husband in her life time, to help her children with, in case he should not take sufficient care & make competent provision for them.

Butt after she was dead it seeme he tooke butt verry little notice of her smale chil[dren] but ~~compacted with his father so as to~~ deprived them of all rather than increase and augment their fortunes. Whereupon his late wife appeared unto one Dawson, formerly a servant of hers in her 1^{t} husbands times, & bid him not be afraid, for she was such an one and would not harme him, butt told him that ~~her husband was not kind to~~ she had hid so much money in the place aforesad, with the other circumstances I have related, & bid him acquaint her brother Ripton of it, or take it himselfe, and se that it was imployed for the advantage of her children.

But the man it seemes, metting with her husband first,[352] told him the storyes, and [when] Ripton went to seek for the money, it was gon; and Thomas Sigeswick, her 1^{t} husbands brother, comeing there accidentally, saw the measure laying upon the parlour, which made suspect His brother Appleby had seised on it, which proved very true; for the spirit appeared to the man agane and told him whatt her husband had don but bid tell him that if he would not restore it ~~& take more care of~~ she would make him have hott keeping of it, & if he ~~did not tell him~~ \ should not tell her husband / she would te\a/re him in pieces \ as smale as flesh to pott. / And he thereupon forewarned her husband, who was allso often times frightend from that time forward with flashes of fire about his house and elsewhere; yett he kept his hold and would not confess nor part with the money.

[I.398]

For in this manner they continued till Christmas that he went to feast att his father house. And att night he ~~refused to~~ disclared that he would not goe home upon any termes to his owne house; which his father wondered att & having[353] heard of these flying storyes & observing his sonns timerouseness, sayd unto him, 'Certanely, son you have don som mischief or other, in wronging your late wife or \ her / children, that make [you] so afraid; what is it?' But the other denyed. ~~In the mean time~~ & the Spirit appared that same night to Dawson agane, and told him that he who was her husband was with others att cards in his fathers house. and they wanted light, but she would give them light enough; and so left him & went to her husbands house wher the children were by the fier and she stayd some time & bid them nott be affraid.

All this while the company continued carding, & att 12 a clock they parted and went to bed; his son refuseing, as I said before, to goe to his house tho near att hand: \ which his father wondered att &c. / And there was a woman who had a young childe in bed in the house, who by her childes frowardness was awaked out of sleep, & saw a great light pass by her window 3 times. one after another. with some intermission; & the 3^{d} time shone so clear upon them that saw both her child & selfe in bed. Whereupon, being sore frighted she knocked – but that would not awake the house. Therefore, she arose and gott them up as speedily as she could; but in the mean time, the barn which was near to the house was sett on fire which they endeavoured to quench butt in vane, for it kindled att one part whist

[352] MS: '1st'.
[353] MS: 'have'.

they were att an other, and lastly the house was fyered allso and burned, stick & stower,[354] little or nothing being saved that was in it – and it was the finest house in all the dale.

The next day she appeard to the foresaid {Dawson} agane, for they were growne familiar, and told him she had fired the house, but that now they would meet upon such a day & take care for settlements upon her children. After which she hoped she would rest & truble them noe more, which was don accordly, and all things have bin very quiet since.

[354] 'Stick and stower': all the parts or materials of a thing, especially a building or other structure, the whole of a thing; also used adverbially: totally, completely'. *OED*.

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 7]

[Parish of Brougham]

[I.440]

The Lordship or Manner of Browham – antique Burgham – was of old but one Entire Manner but became div[id]ed in to severall parcells Sc. in the time of King John or Henry 3rd.
1. Into 2 equall partes. By Gilbert de Burgham, who gave halfe of the village of Burgham \ cum pertinentijs &c. in molendino et alijs / {Advocatus ecclesiæ},[1] to his Lord – Robert de Veteriponte – of whom he held it in Drengagio~~m~~, that the other halfe might be free from that service.[2]

[I.441][3]

[Manors and Demesnes]

Thomas Brouham Esq. was possessed of Browham in the 41. of Elizabeth [1598-1599].
Note there are 2 Demanes and manners of Brouham. 1. of The Hall in Browham Towne; the other of the Castle, but noe more. \ Mr / James Bird ~~has~~ late bought of Tennants and added much Land to \ his owne tenement, well walled about / which he calls a demane.[4]

Est ibidem unum castra' &c. {8. Edward 2.} [1314-1315]

There is there one Castle with \ xx / viii Acres of Land[5] worth per Annum 4d an acre.[6]	
And the same doth amount	2:13:4
4 Acres of Medow \ 24. in the 19. Edward 3. [1345] / 12[d] per Acre worth by the yere	2: 0:0
There are noe messuages there, but onely 3 Coterell.	
(For Do. Robert non fuit Dom vilae)*[7] & each of the Cotterells valet per Annum 1s.	0: 3:0
1 watermil & valet per Annum 20s.	1: 0:0
1 Parke Inclosed, whose herbage is worth per Annum	5: 0:0†
And the Herbage without the parke (cum Agistamento et alijs proficijs in Bosco de Quinfel)[8] is worth by the yere	19:13:4
1. Turbarye, & valet per Annum 4s.	0: 4:0
Allso the pleas and perquisites of the Court valet per Annum	0: 13:4‡
Summa est	18:17:0⊥
1. Edward 3.[9] [1327-28].	
\ xx / viij[10] & 18 acres of Arable Land (Acr. xd per Annum) et summa est	7: 8:0
\ xx / iiij[11] acres \ & xiiij / of demane-medow (Acre 1s per Annum), et summa est	4:14:0
2 Free Tenements in Drengage (in drengagio) et valet per Annum &c.	0: 3:0
placita et proficua Curiæ valent per Annum	1: 0:0!

[Machell's Notes: I.441]

*{Lord Robert è Lord of the village.}

[1] 'With its appurtenances etc. in the mill {with the advowson of the church}.'
[2] For drengage, see below.
[3] Also numbered p.11.
[4] Note that 'Mr' appears to have been added later to James Bird's name: he was not considered worthy of the title, 'Esq.'. In MS.I.480, 'The demesne walled' appears in the margin.
[5] 8 score = 160.
[6] For a history of Brougham Castle, see James Simpson, 'Brougham Castle', *CWI* , 1 (1870), 60-70.
[7] '(For Lord Robert was not lord of the vill)'.
[8] 'With agistment and other profits in the wood of Whinfell'.
[9] MS: '1. Edward 3 ~~Thus seemes to have bin putt in repare, for It is not extended for this reason: custos qui ponitur &c.~~'
[10] 8 score.
[11] 4 score.

†(Note it belongs immediately to Brougham but Brouham to Apleby.)
‡Note hence that by Court here at Kings Meburne &c. is meant (I suppose) Court Baron.
⸸N.B. ut tot. And demid. dub.[12]

[1.442A]

Another Filed[13]

		s	d
Vacationis[14] Tempore 1679:	Thomas Machell Clericus con[tra] Michaelem Robinson et Gulielmus Jackson.		
	Pro confec[t]ione Remissionis Judicis a quo et cetera cum eadem per post	02	9
Term Michaelmas 1679	Pro feodo procuratoris	05	00
	Pro Citac[i]one et cetera cum eadem per post	01	07
	Pro Procuratorio et exhibic[i]o[ne] eiusd[em]	02	10
	Pro Cer[at]o accito Citac[i]onis et p[er] con [silium]	01	6
	Pro Confecione articuloru[m] et admission[e] eorum	03	6
	Pro Copijs eorundem et imposic[i]one Regi	02	6
	Pro Feodis Advocati et procuratoris	15	00
Term Hilary 1679	Pro Citac[i]one pro parte	01	03
	Pro Cer[at]o accito et p[er]con[silium]	01	6
	Pro Juramento d[omin]orum Robinson et Jackson	01	02
	Pro copia eoru[ndem] consens[a]	01	00
	Pro tri[bu]s comput[is] con[tra] testes	01	03
	Pro tri[bu]s per post	03	03
	sum[m]a 02	19	1[15]

Johan Tessadale,[16] widow, seisd in her demaine as of fee of & in 4 messuages 100 Acres of Land in Browham in the county of Westm'land & of the 3 part of the said Town & manner of Browam, gave it by deed, Henry VI. [1422-1461] to Henry Bird & Johan his wife, daughter of the said Johan who had Isue John who had Isue William Temp. Henry 8. [1509-1547].[17]

[12] N.B. 'As the total and a half? I'm not sure.'
[13] This set of figures is in a different hand.
[14] 'Belonging to an old vaccary.'
[15] With thanks to Richard Brockington for assistance with some of the legal terms used in this invoice, the translation is as follows:

For completion of the judges written grant by whom etc., with the same, as follows		02	9
For the Procurators fee		05	00
For summons etc. with the same, as follows		01	07
For the Procurator and his maintenance		02	10
For sealed citation of summons and per counsel		01	6
For completion of articles and their admission		03	6
For copies of the same and lodging them with the King		02	6
For the fees of the Advocate and Procurator		15	00
For summons on behalf of the party		01	03
For sealed citation of summons and per counsel		01	06
For the oath of Masters Robinson and Jackson		01	02
For an agreed copy of the same		01	00
For three accounts against witnesses		01	03
For three as follows		03	03
Total	02	19	01

[16] Joan Teasdale: see *AWL*, 32.
[17] This paragraph is in Machell's hand.

[Drengage relating to Brougham]

[I.440]

{Drenges & drughes were Lord & Freehold restored to their estates after the Norman Conquest[18] ~~upon their~~ doing som sort of Drudgery for them. T.M. For this, take 1[t.] Sir Edward Cookes note below and then this whol account.}

Now the service of Drengage (Latine: Drengagium vel servitium Drengarij) was a kinde of vassalage; yet not ignoble (as Spelman observes from this expression in *Domesday* - Tit. Lestresc. Roger Pictaviens. Neuton: 'Hujus manerij aliam Terram xv homines quos Drenches vocabant pro xv manerijs tenebant.'[19] Whence, sayes hee, The Drengi, Drenges or Drenches, were 'genere vassalorum non ignobilium, cum singuli qui in *Doomesday* nominantur singula possiderent maneria.'[20]
But if there had not bin somthing of trouble \ inconvenience / in this sort of Tenure, it is not likely that Gilbert de Burgham, would have purchased off at so dear a Rate as halfe of the Manner. Ergo quaere?[21]

Yett it is to be noted concerning this service that 'eorum omnes eorumve Antecessores, qui è Drengorum classe erant, vel per Drengagium tenuere, sua incoluisse patrimonia ante adventum Normannorum.' Spelman.[22]
For the Drengi, sayes an ancient MS, were Tenentes in Capite – such as at the coming of the Conqueror, being put out of their Estates, were afterward upon complaint unto him, restored thereunto; for that they being before Owners thereof, were neither in Auxilio nor Consilio against him, of which number was Shar\ne/burn of Norfolk.[23]

Sir Edward Cooke *Upon Littleton*: fol. 5[th] b., sayes Dreuchs are 'fre Tenants of a manner;'[24] misprinted doubtless for Drenches (the Typographical error is very obviouse, for in ancient Charters they made no difference twixt n & u), ut in Cartis Machellorum.[25] And I doe not doubt but they were freeholdes, yett there is something more than so in it; somthing ~~service~~ \ of Drudgery / which seems the reason why one part of this manner \ was / given for the liberty and freedom of the other.

And wee have a sleight instance \ here of / in one Gamilbere, who was bound by this service to shooe the Kings Horse: 'In Cukeney manebat quidam homo qui vocabatur Gamilbere et fuit verus Dreynghe ante Conquestum, tenuit duas Carucatas terræ de Domino rege in Capite pro tali servicio de ferrando

[18] Drengage was the tenure or service of a dreng. A dreng was a free tenant (specially) in ancient Northumbria, holding by a tenure older than the Norman Conquest, the nature of which was partly military, partly servile. See Maitland, 'Northumbrian Tenures' in *English Historical Review. V*., 632. *OED*. Ferguson observed that a mere trace of Drengage is to be found in Cumberland, two tenants only, but it existed in Durham and Northumberland. See R.S. Ferguson, *A History of Westmorland* (London, 1905), 94.
[19] 'In this manor 15 men whom they called Drenches held other land -15 manors, in fact.'
[20] 'A type of vassal, but not ignoble, since individuals who are named in *Domesday* possessed individual manors.' Though Machell references Sir Henry Spelman and *Sir Edward Coke on Littleton* in these passages, the explanation he gives of drengage and its examples may be found almost verbatim in Thomas Blount [1618-1679], *Nomo-Lexikon: A Law-Dictionary, Interpreting Such Difficult and Obscure Words and Terms, As are Found Either in Our Common or Statute, Ancient or Modern, Laws. With References to the Several Statutes, Records, Registers, Law-Books, Charters, Ancient Deeds, And Manuscripts, Wherein the Words are Used* (London,1670). Blount quotes from Spelman, Dugdale and *Coke on Littleton* in this text, see DR-DU.
[21] 'Check, therefore.'
[22] 'Yett it is to be noted concerning this service that all of them or their ancestors who belonged to the Drenge class or who held their tenements through Drengage had cultivated their patrimony before the advent of the Normans.' See Henry Spelman, *Glossarium Archaiologicum* (1687; 1st edn, 1626, completed by William Dugdale, 1664), 184. Machell writes 'eorum', while Spelman writes 'eos'.
[23] For this period in the history of the Sharnburn Family, see 'Historia Familiæ de Sharnburn', *The English Works of Sir Henry Spelman* (2nd edn, London, 1727), 189-90.
[24] See Thomas Coventry, *A Readable Edition of Coke upon Littleton* (London, 1830), Ch.IX, Section 73.
[25] 'As in the Machell charters.'

Palefredum Dom. Regis super quatuor pedes de Cluario Dom. Regis quotiescunque ad Manerium suum de Mansfield jacuerit, & si inclaudet[26] Palefridum Domini Regis, dabit ei Palefridum quatuor Mercarum.'[27] *Mon. Angl.*[28] 2 2se fol. 598 a. {?}[29]

[I.442]

[Brougham Castle]

Roger de Clifford, 9 hereditary shireve of Westmorland, built the greatest part of Browham Castle* next to the East, wherein his Owne Armes & his wives cutt in stone are joyned together. His wife allso – who was Maud Beacham daughter of Thomas Earl of Warwicke – in time of her widowhood built and repard much about this Castle, for it was her Joynture†. She lived much here & made Mauds Poole which retaines her name to this very day.[30]

The Scotts had don so much mischief in these parts about in the time of King Richard 2 or before‡, that this brave Castle of Browham and demane thereto belonging was given by Jurors who were Gentlemen of Great Quality and Trust (as William de Threlkeld Knight, William de Wherton, Thomas de Warthecop de ~~Lamersett~~ Lambersete, John Mauchael, John de Lancaster de Brampton, John de Helton de Burton & alijs), to be worth nothing \ per Annum / att all; {whereas formerly Cs. per Annum}[31] because, say they, it lyeth alltogether wast by reason of the distruction of the country by the Scotts: and that the whole profitt of the Castle and manner aforesaid is not sufficient for the Reparations and saife keeping of the said Castle for that present yere, which was the 4. of Henry the 4. [1402-1403], the Inquisition being taken att Apleby November '37, upon the Death of Matilda Beauchamp,[32] who was sometime wife to \ Lord / Roger Clifford.

[Machell's Notes: I.442]

*{Brougham Castle see more in Apleby.}
†p.293. L.D.
‡(vide Speed de Hoc)[33]

[II.480]

[Notes on Roman Antiquities]

Pleasantly situate on the Bankes of Emote after it has received Lowther to convey it away to the River Eden.

[26] This should be 'inclandet', but Blount's *Dictionary* gives 'inclaudet'.
[27] 'In Cukeney there lived a certain man who was called Gamilbere and was a true Dreynghe before the Conquest; he held two carucates of land from the Lord King in Chief for such service, for shoeing the palfrey of the Lord King, all four feet, at the forge of the Lord King whenever he lay at his manor of Mansfield, and if he should lame the palfrey of the Lord King, he would give him a palfrey worth four marks.'
[28] William Dugdale, *Monasticon*: see Abbreviations.
[29] Machell has questioned the citation but it is correct according to Blount's *Nomo-Lexikon*, 'Sir Edward Coke, *on Littl*[*eton*] fol 5. b. sayes, Dreuchs are Free-Tenants of a Mannor: misprinted doubtless for Drenches. In Cukeney manebat quidam homo, qui vocabatur Gamilbere … & si inclaudet Palefridum Domini Regis, dabit ei Palefridum quatuor Mercarum.' *Mon. Angl*. 2. p. fol. 598.a.
[30] MS. I.394 contains another short reference to Brougham Castle gardens: 'There was then a Garden without the Castle, the Herbage whereof was extended to 1s per Annum. This should be Browham.'
[31] 'formerly [worth] 100 shillings per annum'.
[32] Matilda also known as Maud. She died in 4. Henry IV [1402-03]. See *N&B1*, 280.
[33] 'See Speed on this'. John Speed, *The Historie of Great Britain Under the Conquests of the Romans, Saxons, Danes and Normans* (2nd edn, 1623): 'The Scots entring about that time with fire, and sword into Cumberland and Westmorland, and the forrest of Inglewood, drove away much Cattle, slew the Inhabitants, rifled the booths and houses of Perith in the Faire time, killing and taking many, and driving away the rest.' See 732 (15).

At this Castle of Browham the River of Low[ther] & Emot meet. A little above which, near Browham, it continues betwixt the bridges of Emote and Lowther the distance of a Quarter of a mile. \ Near Clifton Cross* / are great heapes of stones which I thinke have bin Sepulcares used by the Romanes.[34]

{Brovonacum: whether ever at Browham or at Lowther}
~~If I be not mistaken~~ The Roman way passes from hence to Browham, formerly Brovonacum which has bin very large as as the rubbish plow'd up all from thence ~~up~~ to the Castle & so along ~~where~~ the Demaine. For they digged up the stone wherewith the wall was maide att any place where they had occasion, & there […][35] they found these 2 \ famouse / monuments which are sett in the wall; there was allso \ found as I was informed / a large white stone ~~which was~~ writ ~~upon~~ from End to End but unluckily \ [un]happily / Broake by a careless ~~masson~~ \ waller / {?} who to further his worke, beat it all into pieces ~~with his hamer~~.'

[Machell's Notes: II.480]
*Se Dugdale *de Warwickshire* C.1. Knight Low.[36]
{Berryes[37] – Clifton.}
{The figure digd up who by his shymar or roabe seems to be a p[riest] or a bishop: Coles *Dict.*}[38]

[I.445]
That stone which was found near to Browham Castle and is erected in the fence walls of the Demain resembles Julius Crispus,[39] son of Constantine (called the Great) by Minervina, ~~who was~~ his concubine*.[40] ~~yet~~ He is said to have bin baptised \ at Rome / with his father Constantine, & made Cesar by him, concerneing whose \ Baptism / Sabellicus relate (~~who is~~ an historian of great \ approv'd / ingenuity)[41] that the glorious font, ~~which was~~ errected ~~at Rome~~ for that purpose, continue there in being till his time.
His father afterwards put him to death, \ the reason whereof was not made known / & this peradventure might have bin his monument; for a large long white stone, all ingraven with Letters, was digged up in the same place with it; which while som \ admirers / were ~~admireingly~~ gazeing upon it, was dashed all in pieces by the rude hand of an unlettered waller, who, consulting only his owne private gane, ~~hath Robbed the public of so great a treasure~~ \ in haistning his worke / hath brought such a Loss upon the public, \ these especially that delight in Antiquities / as may be lamented, but never can be repared agane.

[Machell's Notes: I.445]
*{See Speed p. 260, §7. 261 §18. as may better appear by this Inscription, stampd upon his coyne when his father was pleased to create him Cæsar; supposed to be at the same time, that they were both Baptised at Rome, in that stately font which Sabellicus speakes \ as / said to be erected for that very purpose, & which was remaneing in Rome till his time.}

[34] This is a precis of the passage in the MS, as many interlineations and crossings-through have been found difficult to analyse.
[35] '& there' has been scored through and an illegible interlineation substituted.
[36] William Dugdale *Warwickshire*.
[37] Tumuli.
[38] Shymar: 'a short vest, formerly a bishop's long robe.' See Elisha Coles, *An English Dictionary, explaining the difficult terms that are used in divinity, husbandry, physick, phylosophy, law, navigation, mathematicks, and other arts and sciences …* (London,1684), SIG-SIN. See Part 3, Ch.3, Roman Antiquities, VI.267, for more on this figure.
[39] MS: 'Resemblance of Julius Crispus.'
[40] MS.IV.81, also contains this passage. It is entitled, 'Antiquityes found on Browham Castle Demane'.
[41] Marcus Antonius Coccius Sabellicus (1436–1506) was a Venetian historian known for his universal history, *Enneades sive Rhapsodia historiarum* (1498).

[**Nine-Church**][42]

[I.441]

To Nine-Church doth belong Browham, Browham Castle, Hornby Hall, Moorehouses, Woodside.

[I.442]

The parish church now standing and lately Repaired (or rather Rebuilt) by the Countisse of Penbrooke, is called Nine Church. Concerning which name there are severall conjectures*.[43] But the most probable is from Ninianus†, to which saint there are several churches \ & chapels / dedicated in Scotland ~~which tho in Latin~~ but called in their tongue St Ringing,[44] in Latin Ninianus, as Mr Bruce, Curate of Pamber in Hantshire and a Scotchman, inform's me‡.[45] The Town was depopulate \ & demolished after the Countiss of Penbrooke dyed, / by James Bird of Browham an attorney at Law (who bought the Tenements) about 1679⸸.[46]

[Machell's Notes: I.442]

*See my Note de Westm'land in Generall to Oglebyes Queries. Note. d.[47]
†Vide ibidem[48] \ and my little booke of Westm'land.
‡{???} {St Ninian: 1ᵗ Bishop of Galloway è Spotswood.}[49]
⸸Q. of E. Sleddall; see the pedigree.

[II.479][50]

Nine Church: [the name]

I was of opinion that Nine Church took its name of St Ninian, and to that effect sent a letter to Archdeacon Musgrave, afterwards Dean of Carlile,[51] desireing him to enquire of his friend, one Mr Savage,[52] sometime parson there, what he could say of it. And received an answer dated from Edenall December 15, 1673, in these words:

ad altera[m] Itunæ ripa[am].[53]
Your apprehension of Nine Church is right, for not onely his name, Sc.

---

[42] St Ninian's Church, Brougham.
[43] When attempting to ascertain the age of the first Ninekirks chapel, Canon Bouch had a similar difficulty. 'No instance of a medieval use of the name Ninekirks has so far been found. Its first known occurrence is in an entry in the episcopal register of 1583, noting the appointment of an incumbent to "the rectory of Browgham alias Ninekyrkes". The first known attempt to explain the name is found in Thomas Machell's manuscripts, volume I, 442: "The parish church . . . called Nine Church concerning which name there are several conjectures—see my note. d. Westmorland in general to Oglesby's queries. But the most probable is from Ninianus to which saint there are several churches dedicated in Scotland." Unfortunately, the note under reference has not yet been found (all who have had the joy and the exasperation of toiling through the six wonderful but ill-arranged and usually almost, and sometimes wholly, illegible volumes, will sympathise), but its substance seems to be given in the following entry in the Hill MSS. (v. 3), which must suffice for the time being: "Machell when speaking of Ninechurch says it had that name from St Ninian, a Scotch Saint, according to tradition or from that church being eight times demolished and rebuilt the nineth time." C.M.L. Bouch, 'Ninekirks Brougham' *CW2,* 50 (1950), 80-81. That even the incomparable Canon Bouch missed the passage is not at all surprising.
[44] St Ringan.
[45] Andrew Bruce, priested 1674, curate of Pamber, diocese of Winchester, 1667-1717. CCED.
[46] MS: '1670 9'. See I.630 for a plan of Brougham before the demolition.
[47] For Machell's collaboration with the cartographer, John Ogilby, for the purpose of creating a questionnaire to send out to informants, see the Editor's Introduction.
[48] 'See the same source as above.'
[49] John Spottiswood (Spotswood), *The History of the Church of Scotland: beginning the year of our Lord 203, and continued to the end of the reign of King James VI.* (1655).
[50] Much text on this page has been overwritten and is very difficult to read accurately.
[51] Thomas Musgrave, Archdeacon of Carlisle, 1669; Dean in 1684; died in 1686. CCED.
[52] Arthur Savage, ordained Deacon at Rose Castle, 1637; Rector of Brougham, 1643 to 1662. Also, second prebendary Carlisle Cathedral and Rector of Caldbeck from 1665 until his death in 1701. CCED.
[53] 'On the other bank of the Eden.' The church stands in a bend in the River Eamont, close to its confluence with the River Eden.

[II.480]

De Ninianus, but his picture also, was seen by Mr Savage on the partition betwixt the chancel & body of the Church, who refers you to the *Aurea Legenda*,[54] for an account concerneing that same*.

[II.479]

{Cl did he so vix credo}[55]

Non procul a Nine Church a Hypogeum Mirificum magno labore excavatum vidimus, ubi Gygantem nescioquem habitasse somriaru[n]t accolæ. Januaque dehinc ferrea ad Carleolu' translata fuisse asserunt par e Camd[en] p.150.

Bona e[t] de gygantibus digressio p.248.

Huc annect[ere] mereor etiam Pagan[a] magna ossa apud Orton reperta, et oblong[um] illud mon[umentum]{P?} In Perith church yard inclaruisse comprobant Romanorum num[m]i pavime[n]ta ~~tessillata~~, et marmora inscripta subinde effossa quæ cum in ignaros inciderint, non minimo antiquitatis damno com[m]inuta perieru[n]t. sed de Kirkbythore:

{cl} Inscriptiones etiam saepius effodiuntur quas tamen nobis invidet rusticorum imperitia. de Silcester, 135.

Dicit se vallu[m] militare juxta Comibleton in suthria Bensbury vocatu[m] forma orbicular[i] constructum vidisse, 155. Monumentu[m] Saxonicum ut creditur.[56]

[II.480]

[Machell's Notes I.480 & I.518]

*{This was before the church was pulld down & rebuilt by A.P.}[57]

[I.518] Qu. in the Registry at Carlile; whether it be the church or chapel at Browham which is dedicated St Wilfridd.[58]

[I.442B]

{**The Foundation of Browham Chappell**}

An agreement of the Spiritual part and Temporal part for the great ease of the parson of Browham & the parishoners* – That from thenceforth all manner of Sacraments of the church shall be administered at the chappell of Browham except Burial and on X^{t}mas Day in the morning – song & mass, & then after to goe to the Church to the high-mass & offering – & so 3 day mass at the Church. & 2 of the last at the Church with mattens, & so on.

~~On~~ Easter Day in the morning, mattens with Resurrection, & one soling[59] mass for servants & old aged persons, & sick p[ersons]; all the Residue to goe to Church[60] to the high-mass, & so mass on the

---

[54] Jacobus de Voragine (Archbishop of Genoa), compiled the <u>*Legenda Aurea*</u> (*The Golden Legend*), which detailed the lives of the Saints). Published in 1470, it was translated by William Caxton (1st edn, 1483). For a modern edition, see F.S. Ellis ed. (Edinburgh, 1900, 1922, 1931). St Ninian is <u>not</u> found in Caxton's edition, but, as early publications on the lives of the saints had very similar titles, Savage might have been referring to a volume by John of Tynmouth (d. 1290?) and Wynkyn de Worde (d. 1534?), <u>*Nova legenda*</u> *Anglie. Sanctilogium Angliae, Walliae, Scotiae, et Hiberniae* (1515), 29. See an updated Latin edition: *Nova legenda Anglie* (*Vol.II*): as collected by John of Tynemouth, John Capgrave (1393-1464, Wynkyn de Worde and Carl Horstmann (Oxford, 1901): chapter entitled, 'De Sancto Niniano Episcipo et Confessore', 218-24.

[55] '{That he did so I scarcely believe.}'

[56] 'Not far from Nine Church, we saw an amazing Hypogeum, carved out with great labour, where the inhabitants fancied that some giant or other had lived. And its iron door, they claim, was moved from there to Carlisle. The same in Camd[en] p.150. Also, a good digression on giants at p.248. I ought to connect with this as well the huge bones from Pagan times found at Orton, and that long monument in Penrith church yard. Roman coins testify that it was famous,[as do] tessellated floors and marble inscriptions excavated there which, since they fell into the hands of the ignorant, have been broken and destroyed even though the damage done by time was minimal. But of Kirkbythore: Inscriptions are quite often dug up which, however, the ignorance of the country folk keeps from us: 'Of Silcester', 135. He says that he saw a military wall near Comibleton in Suthria, called Bensbury, constructed with a circular design, 155. A Saxon monument, so it is believed.'

[57] Anne, Countess of Pembroke: Lady Anne Clifford.

[58] This sentence is in Machell's hand.

[59] Mass of Consolation.

[60] The parish church.

Monday at the Church; Tuesday & Wednesday at the chapel. At the X Days 2 dayes procession at the chapel & 2 at the Church. At Whit Sunday [&] on Munday, mass at the Church; on Tuesday & Wednesday at the chapel. On Sundayes & every principle feast & double feast – mass at the Church. All single holidays – mass at the ch[urch] with mattens & eveing-song. Mass on the week-dayes at the chapel when parson or his chaplain is disposd except Wednesday & Fridayes in Lent; & then at the Church.
The parson shal finde 2 sureties afore St Wilfrey[61] on his own proper costs, as appeares by a Composition registred in a Port[io]n[er]s[62] booke; for the which services Thomas Reading Lord of the manner of Browham gave & Granted unto the chapel of Browham & the Parson of the church & his successors – one Tenement as it lyes at the west end of Browham with the Garthes above the chapel within the precincts of the wall & no farther; with the woods & the wasts & all the commodityes within belonging; with one acre of Land Arable on the south side as the plow head goes & no farther, upon condition that the parson & all his successors perform &c. Or else to Revert. These being witnesses:
William Engane & Maud his wife; William Hill Chaplain; Thomas Briton, parson of the church of Caldbeck; Thomas Mercer, chaplain; John Weston, chaplain, William Hornby, Henry Sheeling de Browham, Stephen Meyburne chaplain, Thomas Whinfel chaplain, Henry Kirkby chaplain, Parson of Marton; John May, vic. of Morland; Edward Shelly, parson of Browham; Richard Tyndall; John Tyndall; Simon Hawell; William Haywell, with many others then present.

[Machell's Notes: I.442B, I.444A, I.447]

*{Memorandum that Mr Bird sayes he has the original.}
[I.444A] Q. of Christopher Bartons wife of Dokera,[63] whose maiden name was Casades. What Mr Bird had of her about Armes.
[I.447] & there is a place by the Chapel near the waterside called Hell Dungeon, which I should see – being informed thereof p[er] Du[d]ley Walker, Curate of Troutbeck.[64]

[Hornby]

[I.442]

{Names. Hornby}
I finde William de Hornby witness att a Deed att Crakanthorp Hall which concernes the Crakanthorpes 49. Edward 3. 1375.

[I.447]

I suppose Hornby Hall may have ~~bin~~ formerly belongd to a family of that sirname; for I finde William de Hornby Executor amongst others, to William de Sandford 49. Edward 3. [1375-1376] (è Cart. apud Askam).[65] \ It contin[u]ed in the name of Birkbeck till about 1695, that Katerick made an end of it by gameing & foolery.[66]

[61] St Wilfrid's day (12 October).
[62] A portioner: person who receives a share; in the Christian Church, the term relates to any one of two or more incumbents sharing the duties and revenues of a benefice. *OED*.
[63] Dockray.
[64] Dudley Walker: curate at Troutbeck, 1663-1701; curate at Grasmere, 1701-1712, Chester Diocese, CCED.
[65] 'In a deed at Askham.'
[66] Machell was correct in describing Catterick Birkbeck (bap. 1668) in this manner. He failed to obtain his deceased wife's fortune, lost money to a cardsharp, and continually involved himself in lawsuits. He borrowed money from Thomas Benson, a Penrith Quaker, assigning Hornby to him as security, and finally sold Hornby to Thomas Dalston of Penrith, who had been his guardian during his minority. By 1699 he was in the Fleet Prison, where he seems to have passed most of the rest of his life. His will was made in 1722, and proved in 1733. See Robert Birkbeck, *The Birkbecks of Westmorland and their Descendants* (London, 1900), 27-29.

[I.448]

Hornby is an Hall, the seat of the Birbecks: a worthy & ancient family of which was Mr Simon Birbeck, minister of Fawcet, a Learned man who writ diverse Bookes – one of which was dedicated to his kind nephew, Lancelot Machel of Crakanthorp Esq.[67]
In the House is much curiouse carvd work, especially the Chimney piece in the Dineing Roome*.[68]

[Machell's Notes: I.448]

*è lib. Pock[et][69].
{Quaere: of Procter Bir[beck] for. the Pat[ent] of A[rms] Test. E.M.}

[I.444A][70]

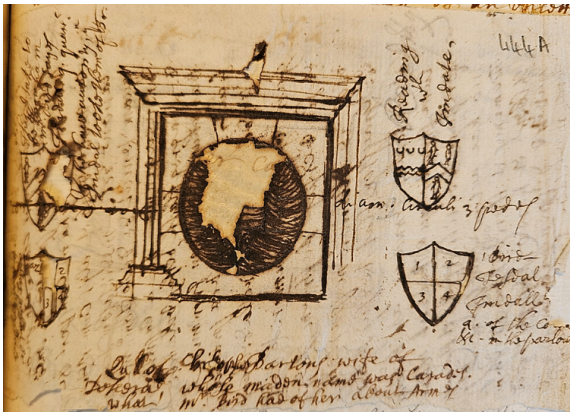


Figure 1.7.1. Chimney piece in the dining room at Hornby Hall. I.444A.

[I.443]



Figure 1.7.2. Matches. I.443.

Cosan Birbeck of Horneby has matched 11[families] as 1ˢᵗ Birbeck. {with:}[71]

[67] Simon Birbeck or Birckbek (1583/4-1656), of Hornby in Lancashire, was a student at Queen's College, Oxford, from 1600 (MA 1607; BD 1616). He remained at Queen's College as a fellow and was ordained, after which he became a noted preacher and disputant. In 1617 he was made vicar of Gilling and the chapel of Forcet in Yorkshire, through his patron: his kinsman, Humphrey Wharton. His work, *The Protestant's Evidence* (1634), argued the historical continuity of contemporary Church of England doctrine. See R. Bayne & R. Armstrong, 'Birckbek, Simon, Church of England clergyman and religious controversialist.' *ODNB*.
[68] See the illustration on I.444A.
[69] 'From my pocket book.'
[70] The reverse of this page [I.444B] contains Latin text concerning 'Gilbertus de Burgham'. As it is incomplete and much damaged (the ink from the illustration on I.444A having leaked into it) it has not been transcribed.
[71] 'Cousin Birbeck of Hornby has matched eleven [families] as first Birbeck [impaled] with'

1. Clifford, base born[72]
2. Salkeld, de Rosgill
3. Denton, de Cardew; haveing 3 martlets in chi[ef]
4. Sandford de [Blank]
5. Wharton de Kirkbythore
6. Lancaster de Sockbridge
7. Lancaster de Brampton Westmorland
8. Lancaster de Bra[mpton]: cohearre in[73] puto dub.[74]
9. Labourne de [blank] Com. Lancastriensi, whose armes are an escutcheon Ermin (3.2/3.2) with a Border S[able] charged 6 Owles Argent 3 in chief two in ~~fesse~~ fess, & 1 in bass.
10. Poole de Peak in Com. Darb[y] whose armes are in a field Azure a Chever[on] betwixt, 3 (D^{ts})[75] Cressents Or.
11. Caterig[76] de Caterig brig. Com. Ebor: a co-heiress, with whome he had the estate.

[I.441]

[Whinfell Forest]

Memorandum: That I heard it credibly affirmd by Persons of Quality that the Bretheren in Whinfell forrest[77] wer of such huge bulke that two gentlemen on Horseback might have rid, one of one side and the other of the other side, well mounted, & held up their switches, the topps whereof could not be diserned by either of them on the other side the tree (7 or 8 fath.).

There was an other tree lately blowne downe, to wit in the memorye of most men now liveing, which was hollow within & decayed on it one side, so that there was a very fare enterance into the stump where 9 men on their horse bakes ~~stood~~ were all at once; where 2 \ were / men of good Credit and Quality, viz. Sir Thomas Wharton, whome I heard relate it, and Sir Philip Musgrave: both of them grave and juditiouse persons.[78]

[I.442]

At Whinfel are 600 Acres of wood in Herbage and sale of underwood worth per Annum 7^{li} 3^{s} 7^{d}.

[On Trees]

[I.448]

In the *History of the West Indies* there is mention made of a Tree whose trunk or Body was 87 f. about; which is 29 foote Diameter.[79] And Mr Smyth in his *Improvement of England*, London \16/73,[80] is of opinion that there have bin trees as great in England; haveing heard of an Oake fell'd in Hantshire about 1664 conteineing in timber & wood 50 load*; of an Arme of an Oake not far from Horsham in Sussex \ where one of my name & family lives &c. / blown downe by winds in 64, conteineing 13 Loade of wood & Timber; And on the 26 June eadem Anno[81] in the Forrest of Ales-

[72] A tiny sketch of a coat of arms has been placed here.
[73] A tiny sketch of a coat of arms has been placed here.
[74] 'But I think doubtful.'
[75] Symbol unknown to this editor, perhaps meaning 'decrescent' (crescent pointing to the right).
[76] Catterick.
[77] Brethren: large trees in Whinfell forest. See II.483.
[78] Machell cross-references this information in MS I.448: '{Whinfell Forest.} There was a tree blown down in hollow of which 8 or 9 Gentlemen on their horse-back were all att once: see – elsewhere.'
[79] Gonzalo Fernandez De Oviedo y Valdes (known as Oviedo), *La Natural hystoria de las Indias* (*The Natural History of the West Indies*) (1526-35), printed in English (1555-56). See a translation by Sterling A. Stoudemire (University of North Carolina Press, Chapel Hill, 1959).
[80] John Smith (or Smyth), *England's improvement revived; plainly discovering the several ways of improving all sorts of waste and barren ground and of enriching all earths, with the natural quality of all lands; and the several weeds and plants which naturally thrive therein observed &c.; together with the manner of planting all sorts of timber trees and underwoods, experienced in 30 years' practice. 6 vols* (London, 1670).
[81] 'In the same year.'

Hoult, he measur'd an oake then standing 36 f. compass at 5 f. distance above the ground, the Diameter whereof is 12 foote.

[I.447]

Cesars Tower at Apleby had formerly bin built with very Good Timber, but when the Late Countess of Penbroke (Last of the Cliffor[d]s) went about to Repare it, shee could not finde Timber sufficient for Dormers, & ergo was forced to build ~~in~~ a wall in the very midle of those most spacious Rooms, with 2 stacks of chimneys {which bespeaks Mr Vincent – her Stuart & chief sur[veyor] of her buildings. / & she intitled him upon his grave stone in the parish of Brough.} A very ignorant & unfaithful man who could not take time to sea[r]ch an se to Joynt his timber therein, which meas[ured] short.[82] Howbeit I have bin informd that

[Machell's Notes: I.447 & I.548]

*(q: How much a Loade?) {As much as 5 or 6 horses can draw – F. Godson; but write to know it.}
[I.548] Browham: Lang Lowpe. Hartshorn: great oake.

[I.448]

Ferdinando Hudleston of Millum Esq;[83] had 2 Trees in that ~~said~~ Lordship, in each of which was 32 yards of Timber in Lenth; which Trees they say grew upon the Top of an Hill. Such as these might have serv'd Mr Vincents Turne, & saved a Good house. But the Greatest in bredth that wee have had lately was in Whinfeild.[84]

Mr Smyth is of opinion that som of our oakes have stood from the 1ˢᵗ Creation of the world; and that many ~~of them~~ \ for certain / have ~~certainly~~ continued from the next sommer or spring after the Deluge – for which he gives his Reasons, from p.77 (which is in the latter end of his III Booke or chapter) beginning thus: It is my opinion that there are Oakes – to the 80th page at the words – Many more proofes &c.*. He thinkes those Fir-Trees \ found in the ground / in Lancashire & Shropshire (because none grow there) to have bin left at the General Deluge. Blown down when the earth was \ molifyed, or / soften'd by that strong winde, Gen[esis] 8. V[erse] 11; when the tem[pest] left blowing & waters fell, they sanke in the mud. So the See by its Tides cast sand & cover'd them. Ibid. This may be applyd to the great oakes found. But it may be solved without going so far {for why might [not] firrs grow naturaly there as well as in Scotland? Or have bin planted as they are with us now at B. K. H. &c. & grow over with moss & c[ommon] earth &c.}
{But Evelin talks of firs in Cumberland},[85] ~~and this is~~ \ in confirmation of which may be added that there is a place there / {a place call Old Fir Banke}[86] \ not unlikely upon that occasion.' & I myself ~~have~~ found fir vessels of great antiquity; and bigger than wine pipes in a well \ at K[irkby Thore] in W[estmorland], where they served insteed of the wall on the / inside thereof.}

[Machell's Notes: I.448]

*Which if thought necessary (as it is pleasant) may be tran-scrib'd.[87]
There are stones pitched on Browham Common. Draw them out, & see what I have said in Shap.
– All the Countiss \ monumental / Pillar[88] – & many other remarques of Antiquity. See my pocket Book & vide the stones.

[82] For Machell's poor opinion of Vincent as an architect, see Part 1, Ch.1, Town and parishes of Appleby, I.296; see also Part 1, Ch.6, Brough, I.424.
[83] Ferdinando Hudleston (1577-c.1645) of Millom, Knight of the Shire for Cumberland, 1623-24. *CFH*, 171.
[84] Whinfell.
[85] John Evelyn, *Sylva, or a Discourse of Forest Trees* (1664), Book 2, Ch.3, Section 12.
[86] This place is in Westmorland (i.e. Firbank and Firbank fell), unless the reference is to Firtlefeild in Egremont, Cumberland: see *Westmorland Place-Names*.
[87] Machell's citation of pages in John Smith's *England's Improvement Revived* (London, 1670), Vol.3, 77-80, is entirely accurate; he was clearly familiar with the book in question.
[88] That is, all the faces of the pillar.

[I.445]

Bird of Browham

[**Pedigree: Notes**]
Imma: iuxor [blank] daughter of James Bird of the Hill & Pinfold, Browne Cot & Hair's Tenement, & 2 Tenements at Moore Houses which were afterwards John Pattesons, whose son Thomas sold it to Ja[blank].[89]

[I.447][90]
Bird of Browham has gott a large pedegree entered in Dugdal; beginning at Henry Bird – who had Isue William \ Bird / of Little Croglin in Cumberland &c. out of an old parchment pedigree wherein there are matches but noe farther place of Aboade mention'd till you come to [blank][91]

[I.628]

[**Pedigree**] {Secretum}[92]

James Bird	= Dorathy. The 3rd daughter of John Sanderson of Penrith, Tanner.	
Immanuel Bird of the House next to the Pinfold house on the left hand as you goe to Penrith*.	= maryed a daughter & choheir of one James Bird of The Pinfold, who [b]ought also The Hill House, the cottage which Browne farm'd, and Huers Tenement & 2 Tenements at Moore Houses, all which he purchased & gave to his daughters – Sc. Bird & Patteson†. But what the other had I am not informed.	The other 2 daughters were maryed, to Pattison, and another to Bradley of Knipe.
Thomas Bird of the next house to the Pinfold; a small cottage with a rood of Land belonging to it, which was all the Estate he left to his son⸸.		

I have no account of his descent & parentage or place of his Birth, but that he was a Lucky Bird & began his fortunes in the world \ [la]boris abilis[93]/ with three hen chickens‡.
And this being the original of Mr James Bird. Query whether three hen chickens had not bin a more proper Coate for him than 3 demi Lyons. But that he is a Bird of Prey; He had the Confidence to boast of the Antiquity of his family to old Sir John Lowther, a wise & sober Gentleman (~~& the great advancer of the Lowthers Estate~~) affirmeing to him that there were Birds at Browham ever since the

[89] See I.628 for more on James Bird. He was lawyer and, later, steward to Lady Anne Clifford, purchasing her third part of Brougham Hall and manor after her death in 1676, thus becoming the first person to hold the entirety of the building since the medieval de Brougham family. Mark Thomas, *A History of Brougham Hall and High Head Castle* (Chichester, 1992), 10-14.
[90] Also numbered p.12.
[91] See Dugdale's pedigree of Bird of Brougham in Joseph Foster (ed.), *Pedigrees Recorded at the Heralds' Visitations of the Counties of Cumberland and Westmorland made by Richard St. George, Norroy, King of Arms in 1615, and by William Dugdale, Norroy, King of Arms in 1666* (Carlisle & Kendal, 1891), 11. In this pedigree, the Birds emerged from Little Croglin, but from c.1295 the head of the family lived in Perith (Penrith). Birds first appeared in Brougham in the 17th of Henry VI. [1438-39]. These details were taken by Dugdale from a family 'vellum' detailing the Bird descent. According to Dugdale, proof, in the form of original records, was only available to him from the date 1587.
[92] 'In secret'. The pedigree is drawn out on a sketch of a fruit tree.
[93] 'Capable of work.'

Conquest; to which Sir John gravely replyd, 'Yes, I believe it, an longer too; yea, ever since Adam' – meaning of featherd fowl.[94]
{1691}? Sept. circa 20. James, the eldest son & heire of James, hangd for cutting his wifes throat in Kinsington Fides near London.[95]

[Machell's Notes: I.628 and IV.125]

*Query what it was worth.
†{Ed. Sled[dal] May 6. 1688.} {The other 2 daughters were maryed to Pattison and to Mr Bradley of Knipe.}[96]
‡{Teste Thomas Meason of Moorhouses, per Ed. Sled[dal].}[97]
⸸Witness Immanuels \ 2 / sisters, now poore widdows in the Hospital of Appleby: per Edward Sled[dal].
IV.125. [Note on the Threlkeld descent in Cumberland with this addendum]
{Mem[orandum]. I gave this Note to James Bird of Browham an Attorney, who entered it into his Booke of Evidences. But never mentioned from whome he had it. Tulit alter ho[no]res. It was when he first kept court at Apelby Castle for the Earle of Thanet.}[98]

[Editorial Addition][99]
'The Speech of James Bird, Gent. Who was Executed at *TYBURN,* on Friday the 18th Day of September, 1691. for the willful Murther of his Wife *Elizabeth Bird.'*

'Mr. Sheriff.
I Know it hath been expected by this Company, that I should give some particular Account to the World of this Fact for which I dye: It is from God alone from whom I must expect a Pardon, and God only knows how far I am concern'd in it; so I shall not trouble my self with any Publick Declaration of the matter here, but this far I take my self obliged to let the World know, That it hath been Deposed by Mr. Willis, That my Father should desire me to get my Wife made away; but I do protest, solemnly, and as ever I hope for Salvation in and through Christ's Merits, That my Parents were no ways concerned in it; nay, so far were they from knowing of it, that they did not know that I was Married to her, till I was carried before the Justice of Peace.

It hath been also urged by several, That my Father's Severity had caused it, but those are altogether false Suggestions, for my Father hath been always a Kind and very Indulgent Father to me. Another thing is, That my Father had made away, or given his Estate from me; but that is not true, for I saw his Will, after he had Information given him of my Marriage, and I found that he had given his Estate to me, leaving but very small Portions to the rest.

[94] MS: 'Yes, I believe there have bin Birds there \ it an longer ~~than so,~~ too; yea / yes ever since Adam, meaning of featherd fowl.'
[95] Added in pencil.
[96] MS: 'The other 2 daughters were maryed to Pattison; and another to \ Mr / Bradley of Knipe.}'
[97] 'Witness: Thomas Meason of Moorhouses through Ed. Sled[dall].'
[98] 'Tulit alter ho[no]res': 'Another took the credit'. Machell is quoting from Suetonius' *Life of Virgil*, Ch.1. The story went that Virgil had composed some lines in praise of Augustus and placed them by night over the gate to the emperor's palace. Augustus enquired who the author was but Virgil was too modest to speak up and an inferior poet, Bathyllus, claimed them and was handsomely rewarded. Provoked, Virgil wrote the verses again on another part of the palace and below them the lines: 'Hos versiculos feci, tulit alter honores' – 'I wrote these verses, another took the credit.' He then wrote the beginning of another line but left it incomplete. Augustus asked Bathyllus to fill in the gap but he proved unequal to the task, and eventually Virgil completed it, in lines that were an indictment of the dishonest Bathyllus. See William Nicolson's references to Bird as agent to Sir John Lowther of Sockbridge in 1704: *Misc. Accts*, 124.
[99] *The speech of James Bird, gent Who was executed at Tyburn, on Friday the 18th day of September, 1691. for the willful murther of his wife Elizabeth Bird* (London, 1691). The speech has been added to the body text because of Machell's very clear interest in the iniquities of the Bird family.

Mr. Sheriff, I shall not make any Reflections upon any Magistrate; I pray God that they may not deserve any.
As for the Witnesses that swore against me, particularly, as to what Mr. Holdernes swore, I have so much Charity for him, as to believe that he did see such a Man walk up and down the Field in the Grass; and I must say, That they deposed nothing, as to that, but what was really true, And I must do Justice also to the Constable and my Father, that as I am a dying-man, the Crevat was the same that I was taken in, and there was not any Art or Skill used, (I dare say it upon my Salvation) to take out any Blood that was in it.

Mr. Sheriff, I shall not Reflect upon the Judges of the Court, though perhaps they were a little hard; and as to any one else that was accessary to the Murther, I know of none: But Mr. Sheriff, Let not any one seek Vengeance, elsewhere, but let my Blood satisfie for it: And let the Queen and the Judges be satisfied in what I have said, as I hope they will; and that is all that I have to say, Mr. Sheriff, as to this matter, only I desire the Prayers of all good Christians.
And Mr. Sheriff, If any thing be made publick concerning me, I desire that you would do me Justice in it.
Then he Prayed again for himself, and immediately after he was turned off.'[100]

[I.630]

Browham demolished

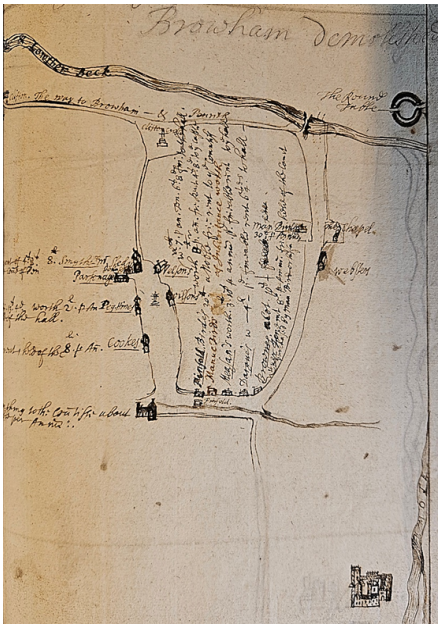


Figure 1.7.3. 'Browham demolished'. I.630.

{The Title – Because this Town is now demolish'd, I have taken occasion to draw an Imaginary Platform of it; partly by memory & partly by the best of information which could be gott of one who formerly lived in the place: these Tenements – all purchasd off about 14 or 15 yeares since in 2 or 3

[100] Printed for W. Humphries (London, 1691), see *Text Creation Partnership* Online.

years time by J. Bird. The houses demolished one after another & turn'd into walls, by which he is made a great improvement but is becom like a pelican or an owle in the desert}*.[101]
I have taken occasion to draw a Plan of this Town though not worthy notice but for it being lately demolished.

[Key]
1. Mr Birds House. 30li per Annum.
2. Brownes about 10s [and] Huer Tenement 8li per Annum freehold of the Court; purchasd by Mr Bird or his family.
3. Dargue's w[orth] 4li paid fineable rent 6¼ d to Hall.
4. Measan's worth 3li 10s per Annum paid fineable rent to the Hall.
5. [Im]manuel Birds. Of Inheritance worth [blank]
6. Pinfold [house near] Birds. 20li – a noble free rent to the Countiss Penbrooke.
7. The Pinfold.
8. [House paying] something to the Countiss about a noble per Annum.
9. Cooks [paid] free rent held of the C[ountess]. Worth 8li per Annum.
10. Peg Hines. Worth 2li per Annum – rent fine 13s 4d – held of the Hall.
11. Parsonage.
12. Smythes or Mr Sleddalls. Worth 8li per Annum – free rent of 4s 8d held of the Countiss of Penbrook.
13. Nelsons – worth 7li per Annum; Tenement is of 6s 8d fineable rent to the Hall.
14. Wilsons. Worth 8li per Annum – free rent 4s 8d to the Castle.

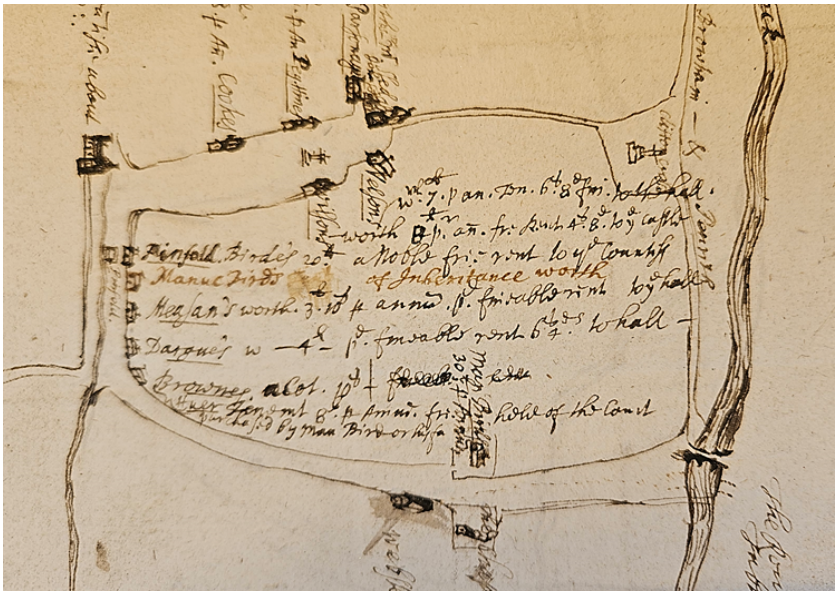


Figure 1.7.4. 'Browham demolished', detail. I.630.

N.B. – All the free Rents were paid to Browham Castle, & all the fineable to the Hall, before the Countess of Pembroke purchased it. The Hill House held one Acre Tenant right rent; all the rest free

[101] Psalm 102.6. 'I am like a pelican of the wilderness: I am like an owl of the desert.' Verse 8 reads, 'Mine enemies reproach me all the day; and they that are mad against me are sworn against me.' (*AVB*). Machell was not a fan of Mr Bird…

hold, paying a Rent to the Countiss of about a Mark per Annum†. The Hall ~~bought by Mr~~ house & other Tenement, were wo[r]th 50^{li} per Annum but 500^{li} debt upon them, which J.B. tooke upon himselfe with all the Land paying out to his father for life, 10^{li} per Annum‡.
One Hodge[102] of Browham Hall had 2 daughters Co-heires, one maryed to Browham, the other to Hodgson, from whom it was bought by one Wright, a farmer at the Castle houses & manager of [the] foarge. Alexander his son sold it to James Brown of Martendale, Capt[ain] for Ol[iver] who …[103]

[Machell's Notes: I.630]
*{This Account taken from Mr Ed. Sled[dal] (an inhabitant som time there) Nov. 26. 1686. The Hill House consisted of an chamber, a fore house,[104] meldoers,[105] &c. & a Bire.}
†For a farther inform. about the rents see Court Rolls.
‡{The Hall. Ex inform. Mr Ed. Sleddal, Nov. 26. 1686.}

[102] The word is blotted.
[103] The rest of the page has perished. For James Browne of Martindale (possible son of Richard Browne of Thrangcragge) see Richard Browne's will: CCA(C)PROB/1630/WX18, and see I.700 (Barton).
[104] A 'fore-house' is an outer apartment by which a house is entered; in Scotland, the but of a but-and-ben. See *Dictionaries of the Scots Language*, Online.
[105] The 'mell-door' or 'amell-door' (amell = between) in a Cumberland or Westmorland farmhouse is the space or passage between the inner and outer doors. The word 'mell', in the sense of a boundary, is commonly used in these counties: see Robert Ferguson, *The Northmen in Cumberland and Westmoreland* (London and Carlisle, 1856), 167. 'Mellom' means 'between' in Norwegian.

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 8]

[Parish of Cliburn]

[I.449][1]

[Machell's Initial Notes]

To Cliburne Church Belong: 1. Cliburne; 2. Winderwath, & maybe Whinfell Parke if not rather to Ninechurch. Aske Gilmore?[2]
The family of the C[l]ibornes: Robert de Cliburne, testis [a]pud cart. d. 1320.[3]
The Town is divided into 2 parts. one called Cliburne Talboyes. the other? Enquire of Thomas Moore.
[III.113]
A chaple \ once / at Winderwath on the S.W. side of the Hall.[4]
[III.117]
{Intelligent Informers}
Thomas Moore, Richard Dalton, William Lambert

———————

[III.117]

[**Parish of Cliburn**]

[Name]
Cliburne may seeme to \ take its name from the brooke that runes by it under a cliff or rock whereon the towne stands.[5] Query, Aquae ad Clivem,[6] though the water now beareth the name of Leeth & formerly Lowth from its lowness there.[7]

{Value}
Cliburne is a little Rectory in the donation of the patron, bishop of Carliol, which is rated in the First

	li
Fruits Office	9: 1: 4.
& payeth xth yearly unto the king	0: 16: 1¼
And to the sayd bishop for Procurat[or] & Synodal	0: 3: 0

[The River Leith]
The water Lowth runs on the w. end of the towne. Now calleth Leeth.[8] It springs near ~~Strickland~~ \ Shap & runns downe by ~~Guruns~~, ~~Keld~~, Thrimby \ Grange / Chapel where great store of craw fish[9] […] {Above Thrimby Grange, the best craw fish and most plent[iful]} [to] Great Strickland Mill near Hackthorp end; so, twixt Melkinthorpe & Great Strickland Hall – commonly calld Melk[inthorpe]

---

[1] Also numbered p.13.
[2] Recent notes on the manor's history describe it thus: 'The manor of Cliburn comprised two divisions: Cliburn Talebois and Cliburn Hervey, named after their owners; subsequently held as one manor by the Cliburn family from the 15th century until sold (1654). Manor and demesne were bought from Edward Lee by Sir John Lowther 1667 and descended in that family. The detached portion at Winderwath was a separate estate, passing from the Cliffords to Thomas Braithwaite before 1612, then passing to the Wyvill family before 1658 until they sold it in 1787 to Hasells of Dalemain.' https://www.cumbriacountyhistory.org.uk/township/cliburn.
[3] 'Robert de Cliburne was witness to a deed dated 1320.'
[4] 'Medieval chapel at Winderwath, recorded 1343.' https://www.cumbriacountyhistory.org.uk/township/cliburn.
[5] MS: 'Cliburne may seeme to \ take its name from the rock or clif at the south-east thereof / over the stream or burne which runeth under it. to take its name from the brooke that runes by it' [followed by 1½cm illegible, scored-through text] 'under a cliff or rock whereon the towne stands.' There is an almost illegible margin comment beside this text. MS: 'Q. Clif bur cour … Cliburne}' [followed by 4cm, also illegible, scored through.]
[6] 'Query, once [called] Clivis.'
[7] Nicholson and Burn derive the name from Cleburn or Cleyburn: a brook running through a course of clay. *N&B1*, 457.
[8] MS: 'The water Lowth runs on the w. ~~side of~~ \ end of it / the towne. ~~The river Leith~~. Now called Leith.'
[9] Crawfish: crayfish. 'Middle English, craveys. 1500s, crafyshe. 1500s, craues, craves, cravish. 1600s, crawfish. 1700s, cra-fish'. *OED*. 9cm of illegible text following this word has been omitted.

Hall – Cliburne, Gilshaulin,[10] Cliburne Mil, where Livernit receives it. ~~Its bigger than Shap where you meet it.~~

{Divis[ion]}
It is onely 1 Constablewick, which consistes of 2 Lordships: Sc. Cliburn & Winderwath.
Cliburne is divided into Cliburn Harvy – which is the freeholders – and Cliburne Talboys – the Hall & tenants.
Davy Dicks Divel.[11]
{John Cooper W., Jo Bolton W., Will Warton W., Richard Moore W.,
Isaak Meekes, Thomas Lambert, Thomas Browne, under W.
Edward Worceman & Thomas Dalton under W.}
All under the Earl and som allso of the Hall. Thomas Brown under tenant.

[III.113]

		s.	d.
Both partes pay Nowtgel[d].[12]	Talb[ois]	12	4
	Har[vy]	8	10

{**Church**}

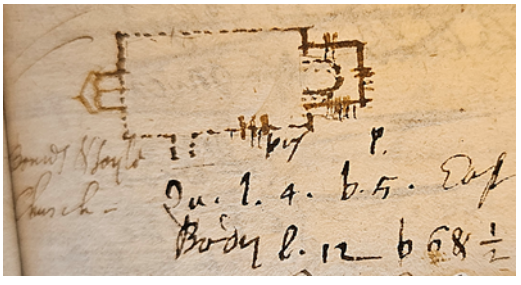


Figure 1.8.1. Cliburn church plan. III.117.

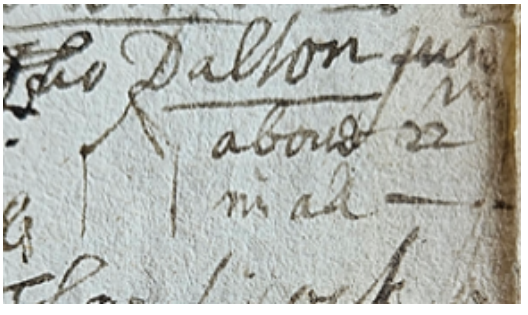


Figure 1.8.2. Sketch of the gable end of Cliburn church. III.117.

Quire: length 4, breadth 5 p[aces], East end window twix 4 & 5 inches broad, in height 39 inches.
Body: length 12, breadth 6 & ½ [paces]. A semi-circ[ular] plane arch betwixt, & no pillars. 2 bells.
Above 22 [paces] in all.[13]

[10] Gilshaughlin.
[11] Richard Dalton, one of Machell's informants: see III.119, below.
[12] This is written over 'Oxgeld'. Both mean a rent-payment in cattle; a tax levied on cattle. *OED*.
[13] In the MS, this sentence is placed alongside a tiny drawing of a gable end.

{Incumbents}
{Mr May – a Prebend;[14] Mr Fleming;[15] Mr Tully, Prebend of York;[16] Mr Ardrowe, Prebend;[17] Mr Fenwick;[18] Mr Spooner;[19] Mr Shepherd.[20]}

The parsonage house stands adjoyneing the churchyard on the N. side the churchyard at 20 yards distance; an old house but a pleasant situation on the banke of Leeth.

St Michel's Die Thankes. There feast was on [St] Michael Day.[21]

[III.117]

{Towne; Fam[ilies]}
The towne is extended from N. to S., & conteineth in (with the outhouses upon the Ling) about 42 familyes ~~in Cliburn & Cliburn Ling~~.

[Cliburn Hall]



Figure 1.8.3. Plan of Cliburn Hall. Margin. III.117.

III.115

Cliburne Hall was rebuilded or rather augmented with a piece of new building, as is clearly visible to the eye, by Mr Richard Cliburne, the owner thereof, in 1577; of which this inscription in golden letters imbossed upon a stone, & the coates of armes above the Hall dooer, not graved but only shadowed with painteing, doe remain as a monument.

[14] William Meye (Mey) MA, rector Cliburn 1587; Prebendary Carlisle Cathedral: canon of second canonry (1595-1625) and treasurer, 1610; died 1626. CCED.
[15] Richard Fleming MA, rector Cliburn 1626; died 1639. CCED.
[16] Timothy Tullie: ordained 1638; rector of Cliburn 1639; rector of Middleton-in-Teasdale 1660; prebendary of York Minster (Givindale); died 1700. CCED. During the interregnum Timothy Tullie conformed to the puritan religion of the Commonwealth, becoming a sequestration commissioner for Cumberland in August 1656. Nightingale, *Ejected of 1662*, 1, 173-75.
[17] John Ardrey BA, rector Cliburn, 1664-73. CCED.
[18] John (or William) Fenwick, rector Cliburn, 1673-87. CCED.
[19] Nathaniel Spooner MA, rector Cliburn, 1687-89. CCED.
[20] Richard Shepherd, rector Cliburn, 1689-1739. CCED. A close friend of Thomas Machell, he was an executor of Machell's will, see R.S. Ferguson, 'Wills relating to the Dean and Chapter Library at Carlisle. Wills of Rev. T. Machell, Bishops Smith and Nicolson, and Joseph Nicolson', *CW1*, 4 (1880), 1-12, at 4. The epitaph to Shepherd in the chancel at Cliburn is as follows: 'H.S.E. [Hic Sepultus Est] Reverendus Vir Richardus Shepherd, Hujus Parochiæ Per Annos 50 Rector, Parvuli scilicet Gregis Pastor fidelis, vigilans, Veræ Religionis cultor assiduus, Qui primævæ Pietatis, Probitatis, Charitatis, Præclarum Exemplum Posteris Relinquens. Obiit 11° Oct. A.D. 1739, Æt[ate] 86'. Edward Bellasis, *Westmorland Church Notes I* (Kendal, 1888), 174.Translated as, 'Here lies buried the Reverend Richard Shepherd, Rector of this Parish for 50 years, faithful and vigilant Pastor albeit of only a little flock, an earnest promoter of true religion, who died leaving to posterity an outstanding example of antique piety, probity, and charity, on 11th October A.D. 1739, aged 86'.
[21] 29 September.

Rychard. Clebūr. thus. they. did. me. Cawle.
who. in. my. time. bealded. this. haule.
The. year. of. Our. Lord. God. who. list.
For. to. neam. 1577.
R. d. mayson.[22]

And in the 2 Angles of the Lintal over the doore, are the quartered coates single: Sc. 1. The paternal '~~opposite~~ on ~~the~~\ your / right hand.', and 2. Cross on the left.[23]



Figure 1.8.4. Arms over a door at Cliburn Hall. III.115.

Succession of proprietors.
Tim[othy] (son of Edm[ond] son of Thom[as]) sold it to Mr Colli[ng]wood, a Bishoprick Gentleman,[24] who sold it to Mr Roger Soray,[25] who yet lives at Broughton Tower in Cumberland; a part soljer, who exchanged it with Mr Ed. Lee of Broughton for Broughton Tower; which Lee mortgaged it to old Sir John Lowther of Lowther, whose grandchilde now injoys it.[26]

[Cliburn Parish]

4 Lords, Sc. John Lowther, Lord of the Manner; Earle. 2 tenants by tenant right & all the freehold[ers] \ appearing there to / answer at Woodside court.

[III.113]

It seems by the Lord[ship] & all the freehold[er]s appearing at Woodside that they hold of the forrest of Oglebird.

[III.117]

Cliburne Harvy
[The freeholders of Cliburne Harvy] were ten[an]ts to the Warcops & bought themselves free of one of the Warcops, being the freeholders above mentioned. These answer at Woodside & al the rest of the freeholders, even the Lord himselfe (by which it appears to be part of the Forest of Whinfell).

Added: Midtowne Tenements, freehold 10 acres bought by Mr Edm. Cliburne of John Warton. Som sold of agre. Hugh Licock \ or Hughs Tenement / sold by the same, and same property \ both 20 / by Common.[27]

[22] But see 'Rychard Clebūr thus they me cawl Wch in my tyme hath bealded ys hall, the yeare of owre lorde God who lyst for to neam 1567. R.D. Mayson', in Francis Haswell, 'Cliburn Hall', *CW2*, 12 (1912), 126-30, at 127. See also *N&B1*, in which the inscription is said to have been copied from the inscription over the hall doorway at Newbiggin, 460; and see Michael Taylor, 'On some of the Manorial Halls of Westmorland', *CW1*, 2, (1876), 251-59, at 256. Machell's version differs, particularly in the date and the word 'list', which could equally well be read as 'left'.
[23] Above the panel are the initials R.C. and a cartouche of the arms of Cliburn quartering Kirkbride, referring to the marriage of Robert Cliburn with Emma, daughter of George Kirkbride of Kirkbride, in 1507: Haswell, 'Cliburn Hall', 126-27.
[24] I.e. a gentleman from the Durham diocese. Until 1882, the diocese stretched from the Tweed to the Tees (Northumberland and County Durham), plus Alston in Cumberland. Before 1837, Crayke in Yorkshire also belonged to it: Durham University, https://libguides.durham.ac.uk/asc-churches-and-religion/bishops
[25] Sawrey.
[26] See this information in greater detail in Haswell, 'Cliburn Hall', 128-30.
[27] This has been a difficult passage to unwrap; readers might wish to arrange it differently.

An Lycocks lands, bought free of the B[irbecks] of Hornb[y] & now sold freeholds parcells. {Thomas Lycock a freehold which was ne[…][28] but purchasd of Birbeck.}

Item: Winderwath. 1 Hall. Gilshauglin. one farme house belonging Mr Dalston, sold of the demaine. Where Appelby Market was somtime kept: Sc. in the year [blank] som of the Clib[urnes] or Wha[rco]ps or perhaps of the Fal[lowfields] being then Maior of the town and the P[lague] rageing therein.[29]

[III.1I8]

B[ounds] {Compare & X}[30]

[Bounder. Version 1.]
E. & S. \ & W. / bounder with Morland. On the north [with] a part of Lowther, Clifton & Browham. Beginning ~~under the church~~ \ where Browham parish joynes / at Entery Nab a little above the wath into Whinfell.
Thence westwards up the Entery Sike to Peetmoore shaw \ Peatmoreshaw. /
Thence norwest on the outside of Whinfell Wall to Parke-yate.
Then N.W. by the ~~same~~ wall to Meburn-Moss-Neuke*.
Thence S. by the outside of the said \ moss / to Brighill † \ a cross cut in the ground / and thence W. by a casten ditch to a place \ on the midle called Yeake-Tree Hill.
Thence W. by the same ditch to Sandwath Cross at Menkinthorp Field Neuk \ where Clifton parish ~~comes in~~ & Lowther parish & Cliburne meets. /
Thence ~~eastward~~ \ S. / down Sandwath Sike to Cliburne Crooks.
Thence \ E. / downe the water of Leath to \ the / foote of Gilshaughlin \ at Pilgrim Sike Foote. /
Thence S. up […][31] \ Pilgrim Sike to the head of Mickle-Gill. /
Thence S. up the said sike to Edmond Steemsons at Woodside.
Thence S. up the said sike \ where Morland parish comes in / to a place called the † in the Streat betwixt Morland & Strickland Magna.
Thence S. […][32] \ up the highway which leads to Nuby / to Addison Closes.
Thence E. downe Melay-Sike to a bur trey bush[33] in Greengill Sike \ set for a bounder. /
Thence E. cross the church way from Strickland to Morland to a great \ stone calld / the Greystone in Heening.
Thence N. by a wall till you com at Walker well.
Thence N. by \ an / earthen hedge to Abey-yeat.
Thence N. the said hedge to a yeat \ at the S. / south side of Leath-water which is commonly called / Jack Gap.
Thence E. downe Leathwater to Cliburne Mil and \ so / to Livernit.
Thence N.E. downe \ the river / Livernit to the Entery Nab where wee began.[34]
But note, at Jud-Crooke, close on Bolton side, the water is in this parish. & Readpot Close on this side with som other lands adjoyneing is claimed by Bolton in Morland parish. Note also that the manner of Winderwath by its known meets & boundes (though cut-of by Whinfel) is in this parish.[35]

[28] A word here is unclear.
[29] See *N&BI,* 460. For Machell's other references to Appleby market's temporary removal to Gilshaughlin in 1598, see I.293 and II.481. See also Henry Barnes, 'Visitations of the Plague in Cumberland and Westmorland', *CW1*, 11 (1891), 158-86, at 175-77.
[30] Two bounders presented here were offered by Thomas Moore and Davy Dick, alias Richard Dalton.
[31] 11cm of text here is illegible.
[32] 3cm of text here is illegible.
[33] Elder-tree: burtre, burt-tree, burtree, bourtre, boretree, bortery. 1700s to 1800s Scottish: bourtree, bourtree bush. *OED*.
[34] MS: 'Thence N.E. downe \ the river / Livernit to the Entery Nab ~~Robinson Foote on which which are on chaume side of the water but Bal of~~ where wee began.' The binding is close to the text here, making it difficult to decipher the words. Version II (III.119 above) is more legible.
[35] See III.120 and I.449 for similar information.

[Bounder Informants]
{Thomas Moore 71. A rider in [the] Cliburne[s] time. & the E[arl of] Thanet who gave him 2s. And Davy Dick 67 ætatis.}

[III.119]

[Bounder. Version 2.]
Cliburne is bounded on the E., S. & W. with Morland parish, & on the North with som part of Lowther, Clifton & Browham, the perambulation being on this wise:
1ˡ you begin at the Entery Nab, a little above the wath into Whinfell, where Browham parish adjoynes on the North side.
Thence you goe westwards up the Entery Sike to Peatmoreshaw.
Thence N. west on the outside of Whinfel Parke wall, to \ a gate called / Parkeyeate.
Thence N.W. by the said wall to […][36] Meaburn Moss Neuke by the township of Meaburne, which is so called from being farmed.
Thence southwards, by the outside of the said Moss, to a cross which is only cut in the ground, called Brighilcross.
Thence westwards by a casten dike till you com at a place on the midle of the ling called Yeaketree-Hill.
Thence W. by the said dike (or ditch) to another cross cut in the ground, called Sandwath Cross where the parishes of Cliburne, Lowther & Clifton meet altogether at Melkinthorp Field Neüke (& q. of Browham).
Thence southwards, down Sandwath Sike to Cliburne Creüks.
Thence eastwards down the water of Leath (alias Cliburne-Beck) to the foote of Gilshaugeleing {alias Gilshelvering from a Rubish shelvering Skar}[37] where Pilgrim Sike cometh into it.
Thence southwards up Pilgrim Sike to the head of Mickle Gill, & so on to Steemsons House at the Woodside, where Morland parish adjoynes.
Thence southwards up the said sike, to a place which is called the Cross in the Streat, which is between Great Strickland & Morland.
Thence southwards up the highway which leads ~~eth to~~ \ towards / Nuby, to Addison-Closes.
Thence eastwards, down Melay-Sike to a Burtree bush in Green-Gill-Sike.
Thence eastwards, cross the church way from Strickland to Morland, to a great stone called The Grey Steane in Heening.
Thence northwest, by a stone-wall, to Walker-Well.
Thence northwards, by an earthen hedge, to Akay-yeat.
Thence N. by the said hedge, to yeat or gate at the side of Leethwater, which tis commonly called Jack Gap.
Thence eastwards, down the water of Leeth, to Cliburn Mil where it taketh Livennet.
Thence N.E. taken the river Livennet to the Entery Nab where you began.

{Attested by Thomas Moore ætatis 71, who rid this bounder both heretofore in the time of the Cliburnes; as also of late, with Thomas, Earle of Thanet, who gave him 2s.}[38]
{Attested also by Richard Dalton, commonly called Davy-Dick, ætatis 67.}

[III.120]

But note here that Jud-Crooke Close (on Bolton side the water) is in this parish; and Read-Pot Close on this side Livennet, with some other lands adjoyneing unto it, are claimed by Bolton in Morland parish.
But that which is most to be wondered at, is the upper end of Whinfel Forrest \ which is said to be in the parish of Browham & / intercepteth this, ~~pr~~ and cutting through, as it were in the midle, so that Winderwath, tho it be in the parish, is ~~quite~~ out of the bounder, being nowhere contiguous or adjoyneing to Cliburne. But the boundes of the forrest \ which runns thro 2 parishes / & the greatness of the Lords & owners of it, who were patrones of Browham, may seeme to have ~~caused this altera \~~

[36] 4cm of scored-through text is illegible here.
[37] See *Westmorland Place-Names*, Cliburn, which includes the seventeenth-century name 'Gillshaflinge': 'Gil' = ravine; and 'Shauchling or Shaflinge': 'infirm in gait', related to Scots dialect, 'shauchle'.
[38] '2s' is indistinct.

~~made great strange~~ / made this strange alteration \ innovacon, / & drawn the whol forrest into that parish wherein they had the greatest interest, & custom now hath confirm'd it unto them. So that – Here wee must note that the manner of Winderwath, by known meets & boundes (though cut-of by Whinfell) is in this parish.

[III.117]

{Curosityes of Art or Nature}

[II.460]

{! Cliburn Ling}
Cliburne Ling – a fine plane moore where theres a horse course, formerly so famous that when they would commend a good horse, indeed they usually say, Hees as good an horse as ever ran oe're Cleberne Ling.[39]

[III.113][40]

A horse course on the Clib[urn] Ling – 2 miles long Turnstoope.[41]
As Go[o]d as ere ran, 'ore Cliburne Ling.

Trougil[42]
A Shaw* a little S, from the church, is said to have bin haunted with faries; & Davy Dick[43] sayes he has heard them battle al the night ooer; where there is a place also, call'd Guy Gurlin Haw,[44] a cave which will hold 20 horse, and another almost as big, where they say were iron doers.
{And they tell a story of one of the Lamberts, that when he was plowing near to that place, he heard something cry: I ha broken my peele;[45] & finding a peel ly[ing] in the furrow†, he naled [it] together & threw it down agane where he found it. And when his plow brought him, he returnd to the same place agane [and] he found it was gon, & a great loaf of bread layen in its place, as a gratuity for this frie[n]d[ly] office, which I leave to the relaters &c. my op[inion].}

There is an irregular rume, sort of anear unto Whinfell, wherein som foundations of wall do appear – a mile E. from the church[46] […] which stands upon an hilly nab which is almost compassed, except the N. side, with the water of Leath.

Cleane & foule Martes on Burke Rean[47] ¼ [mile] from the church by Leath Side.
Great store of read stone all over the parish.
Blew & white clay, excellent, at Common Holme ab Ecclesia ¼ west. The tenants: arbitrary.

Clib[urn]-Shaw by the mil – a small warren planted by Davy Dick[48] – & there 3 hillocks of stones and earth {which some call Coves}, 2 on the right hand of the highway which leads from hence to Apleby, & one on the left.[49]

---

[39] MS: 'they would commend a good horse \ indeed / they usually ~~say doe it proverbially thus~~ \ say / hees \ as good an / ~~the best~~ horse \ as / ~~that~~ ever run oe're Cleberne Ling.'
[40] This page has been altered and added to several times; it displays a minimum of three changes of ink.
[41] 'Turn-stoop': the turning post or pillar in a horse race; from 'stoop': a post or pillar. *OED*.
[42] Trough Gill.
[43] Richard Dalton, one of Machell's informants: see III.119.
[44] Perhaps this was in the deep valley of Gilshaughlin Gill.
[45] Peele: a shovel or shovel-shaped implement. *OED*.
[46] MS: 'There is ~~one~~ an irregular rume, \ sort of a near unto Whinfell / wherein som found of wall do appear a mile E. from the church ~~near Whinfel by Lord Seat~~' [followed by 2cm of illegible scored-through text].
[47] Birkrane or le Birkgilly Birkrane, see *Westmorland Place-Names*.
[48] Because rabbits are not native to Britain (they were introduced by the Normans) they were initially badly adapted to the climate, so artificial warrens or 'pillow moulds' of dry, drained soil were made and enclosed to keep out predators, see Jeremy R. Robinson and Kevin Grice, 'Cunswick Hall: An archaeological and historical survey of a Lakeland manor', *CW3*, 18 (2018), 149-68, at 153-56, particularly Figure 6, an illustration of a medieval warren from Queen Mary's Psalter [BL, Royal MS, 2B, VII].
[49] 'Cove' or 'couve': in Old English, an inner chamber, bed-chamber, cell. *OED*. The MS repeats this sentence, but it is crossed through.

Ann, wife of William Warton, now living, had 3 children at birth, daughters, 12 years agoe.

[Machell's Notes: III.113]

*{May 13. 90. Shaw? as Peatmoss-Shaw, Cliburne Shaw. Hanging Shaw?}[50]
†(Query? What said of it.)
7 yards a perch.[51]

[50] Shaw: a thicket, a small wood, copse or grove. *OED*.
[51] Official measurement (2022) gives a perch as 5½ yards or 16½ feet or ¼ of a surveyor's chain.

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 9]

[Parish of Clifton]

[III.121]

[Machell's Initial Notes]

The parish of Clifton taketh its name from the town or village where the church standeth, which is seated ~~up~~ at the high end thereof, & the end of an hill at the N.W. end of it.

{Intelligent Informers: Schoolmaster, Gentlemen, Shep[herd]}

Clifton is a little Rectory in the gift of the bishop of Carleol for the time being, valued in the First Fruits Office at: 8: 3:4
which payeth tenths every year to the king: 0:16:4
And procurations &c. to the bishop: [blank][1]
There are some prescriptions for [blank][2] in this parish; the rest is payable to the church in kinde.

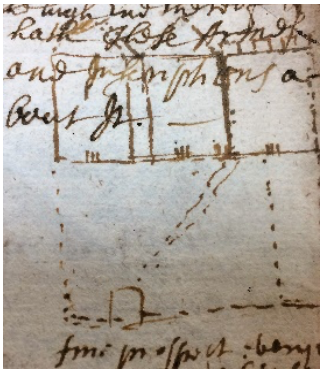


Figure 1.9.1. Sketch plan of Clifton Parsonage House. III.121.

{Parsonage house – a little mean building yet much betered by Mr Burrow – at the N.W. corner within 10 yards puto.}[3]
{Fine prospect every way for wood & fields at the N. west corner of the church yard.}
{Highway only twixt the outer C[ourt] & church yard.}
{Note. A Roman monument.}

{Clifton Manner. Bounds & Soyle}
Begin in the midle \ of Lowther Beck / over against the \ west end of / the church, thence northwards till you come at the foote of a close called Broadwath.[4] Thence N.E. to the Close Neuke. Thence S. up the ~~said dike of~~ \ Broadwath Dicke / to Midle Close, formerly call'd Lowther Brig Close. Then S. by Midle Close Dike to Clifton Cross. Thence E. up Howrig Lonen to Howrig Yeat. Thence E. to the 3 great steanes upon Gledhill at Green Sikes. Thence E. to the passage over the fosse at Cliburn Race Foote called Sandwath. Thence S.W. up the said sike to Gilbrow. Thence agane S.W. up the sike to

[1] In 1535 Synodals were valued at 3s, Procurations 2s. 8d: see John F. Curwen, *The Later Records Relating to North Westmorland or the Barony of Appleby*, CWAAS Record Series 8 (Kendal, 1932), 296-301.
[2] Prescriptions for grain (£7), hay (5s), lamb and wool (13s 4d): see Curwen, *Later Records*, 296-301.
[3] Roland (or Rowland) Burrow (or Borrow) was rector, 1668-1707. CCED.
[4] MS also gives, 'Beg[in] in Lowther Beck, directly W. from the church. Thence N. down the river.'

Trainsat[5] Head at {Hackthorpe Field Nooke (not to the Moss)}. Thence N.W.by a gill & row of stones to Scotclose Neuke. Th[ence] N.W. by Clifton Field Dike to Skelling. Th[ence] N.W. between Skelling & the Wings following Lowther Dike till you com at Lowther Beck ~~over against~~ above ~~the~~ a great Skar on Yearwith Side called Clifton Fitts near Clifton Well.
Testament: Thomas Boake & Henry [Penrith] […].[6]

{Divis[ion]}
It is but one constablewick, together with Clifton Dikes. One manner and one parish.
1. How many, & who ancient freeholds?

{Church & School}
Church Body. Length 13; Breadth 5.
Quire. Length 10; Breadth 4.
With a quire added to the N. side: long 8, breadth 4 […][7] having a long & low arch betwixt them which belongs to the Hall.
Rale & ballaster & som good wanscot, som with ballasters about them.
Sc. Wibers in the Body.[8] The Rectors & Bird in the quire.[9]

{Hath these armes and inscriptions about it}
Armes: Engane; Fallowfield,[10] but one esc[allop][11] which is yellow in a black [Blank]

{Hall}[12]
The Hall is a tower \ house N.W. ab Ecclesia about a stone cast, with 2 additional pieces of building fronting with their gables to the church front.[13] Farther of from the Tower is an ancient ~~table of~~ stone above the high~~est~~ window \ cut by hand / with letters defaced, \ which formerly had an inscription upon it / & 2 Geniis, one on either side of them. There are only in it 2 Escutcheons of Iron on[14] the hall doer; another on the starecase doer of the Tower in which the r[in]g hangs for ~~turne~~ lifting up the Latch or Sneck; and there are cut the Enganes Armes, Sc. 6 cross-crosslets[15] & a fess Indented is stamped on it but not cut through like the rest, which may seeme to import that som of the Enganes built the tower or at least the 2 part of the house.
In the Dineroome, in a Piece of old wainscot over the chimney, som Anticks & birds carved in friese,[16] & amongst them Enganes Armes.

[5] Known as Trainford Brow. Tranthwayt, 1378. Tranthwaite, 1733. A crane-haunted clearing. See *Westmorland Place-Names*.
[6] Some text in this sentence has perished; for the full names of Machell's informants relating to the bounder see III.129.
[7] A word here has perished.
[8] The family of Wybergh. For their origin and connection with the Engaines of Clifton Hall, see *CFH*, 375-6.
[9] Bird family (1683): see Edward Bellasis, *Westmorland Church Notes I* (Kendal, 1888), 176. On visiting the church in 1703, William Nicolson commented, '… (the present Incumbent) Mr Burrow … has made one good Seat for his own family, and allow'd Mr Bird (tho he has no Estate in this parish) to erect another for the occasional use of his.' See *Misc. Accts*, 68.
[10] A shortened word here is very faint.
[11] A word has perished here, but it appears that one of the escallops was missing, See III.123, below.
[12] This is preceded by another margin heading: '{Town. Fam[ilies]}', which is blank.
[13] MS: 'The Hall is a tower \ house N.W. ab Ecclesia about a stone cast, with 2 additional pieces of building ~~fronting~~ with \ their / gables, & in that which is ~~more remarke~~ \ to the church front.'
[14] MS: 'on on'.
[15] Machell has here drawn an image of cross crosslets fitchées.
[16] Anticke: a grotesque or fantastic ornamental representation of a person, animal, or thing; decorative painting or sculpture consisting of the interweaving of human and animal forms with flowers and foliage. *OED*.

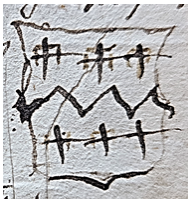


Figure 1.9.2. Engayne Arms (1). III.121.

{Curiosity}
{Marble rock in High Or, S.W. ¼ of, & then 9 W. […]}[17]
{Limestone in the fields next to land the S.W. ab Ecclesia – ½ m.}
{Rare Huen stone N.W. ab Ecclesia, ½ a q. over against Hews Crag; also, gri[n]de stones very large, & grane stone flags & slate of a white thread […][18] all by Lowther Bankes.}
{Wild cats & brockes in the rocks by the water.}[19]

[Further Notes]

[III.155]

{Ratio Nominis}[20]
The parish of Clifton taketh its name from the towne of Clifton where the church standeth, and that, from the cliffs or rocks near adjoyneing upon the bankes of the River Lowther \ q. oppidum ad clivem[21] / for there are 2 of principal note: ~~for~~ the one is of marble out of which doth isue 6 or 7 springs, which are impregnated with medicinal qualityes, and ~~yet~~ \ are / yet commended for cureing several sortes of diseases; the other is of curiouse white huwing stone of a very great \ fine / the like of which I have [not] seen in any other part of this country \ except the Heights in Ormside Parish 3 miles from Appelby / 3m. distant ab Ecclesia.

{Ecclesia}
The church standeth at the head of the towne, at the N. end thereof, and hath very Little in or about it, which may deserve our observation but that it is well seated within, \ the altar railed / and the rafters ~~are~~ \ all of them / cupled at top, one into another, which is rare in these parts.[22] Yet wee may not pass by these armes and monuments.
The parsonage house joynes the church yard at the N. East corner; a small pauper building but suteable to the preferment.[23]

{Divisio. Speciatim cum observ[atione].[24] So many free; rents arbitrary; all tenants to Clifton Hall.

[III.156]

{Clifton Hall}
All the tenants did formerly belong to Clifton Hall, which standeth at the N. end of the towne on the west side thereof & near to the church. This anciently belong'd to the Engaynes[25] and came to the

[17] The rest of this sentence has been obscured by the binding.
[18] Some text here has been obscured by the binding.
[19] Brocks: badgers. Compare with the extended text on III.130 See the similarity in *N&BI*, 414: 'Clifton is said to have been so called from two very remarkable cliffs above which it stands … one, of hard stone like marble, about half a mile south-west from the church; and the other, of a fine free stone, about half a mile west from the church, and is called Cat-Scar, from a number of wild cats frequenting that place formerly.'
[20] 'Reason for the name.'
[21] 'The town by the cliff.'
[22] MS: 'which is ~~unusual~~ \ ~~very~~ rare / in these parts ~~this part of the nation~~.'
[23] MS: 'The parsonage house joynes the church yard \ at the N. East corner, / a small pauper building but ~~large~~ \ suteable / enough for \ to / the preferment.'
[24] 'Especially with due observance.'
[25] MS: 'It anciently belonged to This anciently belong'd to the Engaynes'. For the origin of the Engaynes/Engaines in Burgh by Sands, Cumberland, see *CFH*, 102-03.

Wibers by marriage of one Elleanore Engane, whose armes are both in the house & church. In Registro de Holm inter cartas de Edenhall, I finde mention of Gilbert, son of Robert de Engayne de Cliftonâ;[26] Whose seat it hath bin, & how descended from family to family.

[Curiosity]
June 11: I found in Lowther Wood by the rivers side, to my admiration, very fair blew collimbines in great abundance,[27] the natural product of the soyle; and was informed that there were great plenty \ both / of blew & white one, by banke sides of the said river in the Lordship of Clifton, & there are blew ones, as I saw myself, on the other side in Yanwath Wood.
Memorandum: There are in Yeanewath Lordship, on the bankes of Emote near to the Hall \ and likewise at Skirsgill / great plenty of barberryes which grow there naturally in the woods;[28] & so there are raspes on the bankes of Huls Water,[29] as they informed me at Skirsgill. Temp. supra. dicto.[30]

[III.122][31]

[B. Draft Narrative.] Of Clifton Parish

{Ratio nominis}[32]
The parish of Clifton taketh its name from the town or village wherein the church standeth[33] \ at the N. end thereof, / which is but a little inellegant building on the outside, yet \ ~~pretty~~ / very neat & well seated within, having rale & ballasters before the altar.[34]

{1.} Church

Long	Body	13	In all: XXIII [paces]
	Quier	10	
Broad	Body	V	
	Quier	IV	

The porch or quier on the N. is long VIII; broad 4. A tympanum with 2 little bells.}

{**2. Patrone**}
And on the north \ side / behind a long arch, is a quier or porch which belongs Clifton Hall,[35] whose first proprietours may seem to have bin the founders of the church[36] \ al /though the patronage be (at this time) in the bishop of Carlisle.

[3.] The things remarkeable in and about it are these \ before yo[u] / that follow

[III.123]

[i.] The Chancel
In Clifton chancel are 3 little windows in the E. end, in the 1[t] whereof is the picture of a woman with a dejected countenance and hands a crossd, \ having yellow hare, blew coat & white mantle with \ golden yellow bace, / under which \ is / this coate of armes and inscription upon it.[37] The field Gules. The Charge Or. The Inscription: Helynor Ingayne.

[26] 'In the Register of Holm [Cultram] among the Edenhall deeds, I find mention of Gilbert, son of Robert de Engayne of Clifton.'
[27] Columbine plants are also known as Aquilegia.
[28] The berries of the Berberis Vulgaris.
[29] Ullswater.
[30] 'At the abovesaid time'.
[31] MS. III.157 and III.158 contain short notes relating to Clifton: '{A good method}'; '{Clifton Dugdal. Clewrth Hall.}'
[32] 'Reason for the name.'
[33] Virtually illegible text [11cm] has been scored through here.
[34] Virtually illegible text [10cm] has been scored through here.
[35] Virtually illegible text [7cm] has been scored through here.
[36] MS: 'of it of the church.'
[37] MS 'above it \ upon it. /'

vid. Fig. 1.

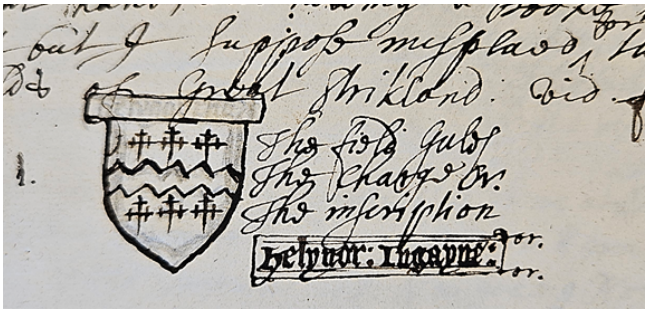


Figure 1.9.3. 'Helynor Ingayne'. III.123.

In the 2 or midle window a crucifix much defaced.
In the 3[d] a boy or man leaneing his cheek upon his right hand and holding a booke in the left \ read coat, yellow mantle / and above that but I suppose misplaced \ for it should be underneath, / the armes of the Fallowfields of Great Strikland: The field, Sab[le]. The charge, Or. Vid. of 2.

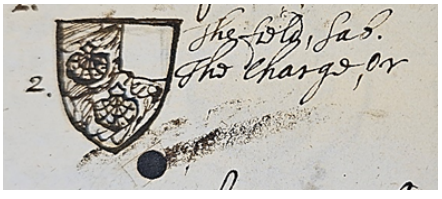


Figure 1.9.4. Fallowfield of Great Strickland Arms. III.123.

[ii.] [Stones]
[Fig.] There is a round stone layes loose in the quire, which is supposed to have bin the top of the cross; And a piece of \ it / sett up at the east end of the church in the yard, supposed to be the neck \ & body; / that head having the same sort of letters upon it. I can read one side the round stone these words: hic iacet Nicolas; but nothing on the other: vid. Fig. 3.[38]



Figure 1.9.5. 'vid. Fig. 3'. III.123.

If the neck doe not answer the body of the cross, it has bin a piece of an old grave stone*.

[Through Stones]
There is also a through stone with a cross upon it an[d] a chalice on one side thereof; & something else now obliterated on the opposite side on the north side Communion Table.

[38] C.M.L. Bouch refers to the loss of this crosshead in 'The Church and Churchwardens accounts of Clifton, Westmorland', *CW2*, 49 (1949), 156-65, at 161.

On a through stone before the quire doore is in[39] great Roman character: J. Svton Bachelor of Arts. of the Aige of 21. Dyd the 4. of May 1619.[40]
In the church yard on the north side the chancel is a little slaite through stone with a crosse flowry and a sword on the left side thereof.

[Machell's Notes: III.123]

*Query: If the church be dedicated to St Nicholas, & if so note that the burying places of the martyrs were used of old for their assembley, and hither they brought their children to be baptized. {These places and areas they called martyria}. *Episcopalia* of H. Compton, Bishop of London: Letter to his Clergy 1686. Letter 1.[41]

[III.122]

{iii. Dedication to St Nicholas}
The last [thing remarkable] may seem to be the head of the cross which sometimes stood in the church yard till men grew so zealous \ that I may not say furiouse / against ancient rites that they thought they could not follow their \ right /j[udgment] unless they first of all take up the cross in a litteral sense. The inscription which you see here upon it is HIC JACET NICOLAS,[42] from whence I collect the church may be dedicated unto St Nicolas, tho I dare not affirme that Holy Marty[r] was buryed here, notwithstanding wee read that the martyria or burying places of the Holy Martyrs were used of old for their public assemblyes and thither their children were wont to be brought, that they might be baptiz'd*; which was the original of many churches, where the word martyrium doth signify not only martyrdome but a church or temple dedicated to martyrs. Altar impersitum cinenbus martyris †[43] Enough to ground my conjecture upon.

And these are all the things remarkeable in Clifton church, save onely in Weber's[44] Quire and the Church quire there is a great text M writ {in read},[45] here and there single by itselfe, which has bin don when the church was plastered; in the painteing there being also branches in red in both places but drawn by a rude and unskilfull hand. \ I doe suppose it stands for Mary, in commemoration of the Blessed Virgin. /



Figure 1.9.6. The letter 'M' in Clifton Church. III.123.

[Machell's Notes: III.122]

**Episcopalia* \ Honourable viz. / Henrici Compton Episcop[i] Lond[inii], quibusdam epistolis clero Dictatis episcop[ali], edit[a] Londini 1686.[46]
The 'Episcopalia' of Henry Compton Bishop of London, in certain letters written to the bishops clergy, published at London 1686.
†*Digest e Dict*. Gouldmanie.[47]

[39] MS: 'a'.
[40] This is quoted in *Bellasis I*, 182: 'J. Sutton, Bachelor of Arts, d. ye 4 of May 1619.'
[41] Henry Compton (1621/2-1713), *Episcopalia, or, Letters of the Right Reverend Father in God, Henry, Lord Bishop of London, to the clergy of his diocess* (London, 1686). This is a collected edition of the letters and addresses of Henry Compton, bishop of London. See Andrew Coleby, 'Henry (1631/2-1713), bishop of London'. *ODNB*.
[42] Here lies Nicolas.
[43] 'These places and areas they call martyria.'
[44] Wybergh.
[45] MS: '{in read} ... ~~in red~~.'
[46] '*Episcopalia* of H. Compton, Bishop of London: Letter to his Clergy 1686. Letter 1.'
[47] Francis Gouldman, *A copious dictionary in three parts: I. the English before the Latin; II. the Latin before the English; III. the proper names of persons, places, and other things necessary to the understanding of historians and poets* (London, 1664).

{Mr Dugdall also visited this church, 1664: Sc. his booke (ergo in the Heralds College, London) whether he have anything that I have omitted.}

[III.122]

{4. Parsonage House}

At the N.W. point of the \ Quier or / Chancell (at about 12 yards distant \ from it / ~~or little more~~) stands the Parsonage house: a smal timber building which hath little more but its large and fair prospect to commend it unto us; yet has of late bin somewhat improved by Mr Burrow, the present rector.

{Value and dues out of it}	li. s. d.
This parsonage is rated in in the First Fruits office at	8: 3:4
and payeth yearly, tenths to the king	0:16:4

And to the bishop for procurations and for synodals.[48]

[III.124]

[5. The Manner and Descent; Engayne]

Williamus Wiberge maryed Eleanore, daughter & heir of Gilbert de Engayne de Clifton, Edward 3.[49]
Engham de Clifton bore for his coate these armes, 9[0] Richard 2. [1385-1386].
È sigillo apud cartam penes T. Sandford \ de Ask[ham] /Arm[iger].[50]



Figure 1.9.7. 'Seal on a deed in the possession of T. Sandford'. III.124.

[III.125]

Afterwards, som debates ariseing concerneing the bounder on Lowther side, twixt Richard Lowther of Lowther Esq. & Thomas Wibergh of Clifton Esq., it was agreed by mutual indentures betwixt the said partes made 15th April {5[0] Elizabeth 1563} and mutually signed & seald to each other; whereof I have seen Mr Lowthers part, with his hand \ name / subscribd, & this seal appendant to it, wherein it was agreed betwixt them:



Figure 1.9.8. Seal of Richard Lowther. III.125.

1. That whereas the 2 Lordships adjoyne at \ a place which is called / Tramfits, they shall there be markd by a cross made & graven in the earth, called Tramfit Cross; and in goeing northwards from

[48] See above, III.121.
[49] For a brief overview of the descent, see the Cumbria County History Trust: 'Manor of Clifton given by Sir Hugh de Morville to Gilbert Engaine in reign of Henry II; carried by marriage of Eleanor daughter of Gilbert Engaine to William de Wybergh of St Bees 1365; descended in Wybergh family until c.1920.' https://www.cumbriacountyhistory.org.uk/township/clifton.
[50] 'From the seal of the deed in the possession of T. Sandford, Askham, Esq.'

the said Tramfits Cross unto the north part of Neither Skellands,[51] where the said Lordships are, & shal be divided by one old ancient Rayne.[52] And from the north part of the saide Nether Skellands (following the said Rayne between the said Nether Skelland and Clifton Field towards the west unto the foote of Overskellands; and from thence following the hedge betwixt) lieveing Eshelay Moore, unto Buckholm*,[53] & so lineally N. by the hedge of Buckholm as the same is now staked, hedged & geathered unto a double ditch, set & made above Cattcrag†, to be fenced by the ~~owners of~~ Lowthers forever. And further covenant & agree together for themselves, their heires, Executors and assignes, that each of them in their own Lordships will permit & suffer so much of the Moore as layd then unclosed to lye so forever, and not to inclose any part of the Moore, waists or Common of Lowther or Clifton, but that it shall lye as free common of pasture for the beastes & cattle of the Inhabitants of both,[54] the Townes & Lordships as well of Clifton as of Lowther from henceforth for evermore, without let, interuption or disturbance of either party &c. {to which indenture} they interchangeably subscribed their names & affixed their seales.

{Yawenwith, Tirell}
A deed whereby Gilb. Engaỳne de Clifton does grant to one Thomas Niger de Kalo, & Christian his wife \ & to their heires / (which I suppose ergo the daughter of Gilbert) ½ a carucate of lands, which is 4 oxgangs, free from suit of court moulter & pannage,[55] paying the rent dues R[a]dulf de Notyngham, tunc vicecom Westm'landie‡; Domino Thoma de Hellebeck; Domino Roberto de Haskeby; Domino Johe de Morvill; Domino Roberto de Yawenwith; Odardo de Bruham; Henrico de Tirell et alijs.

{12. Edward 2.} [1318-19]}
Robert de Askeby & Margaret his wife gave to Gilbert son of Richard Engayne of Clifton a toft & croft & all their land there, to be held for terme of the life of Margaret De Askeby, their daughter. Rent: a rose, on the nativity of St John Baptist[56] \ ! / T.[57] Domino Hugone de Lowther; Domino Jo. De Rosgil, militibus; Hen. De Warthcop; Gilberto Engayne of Clifton. \ Teste G. Eng. De Clifton, ergo not the same. /

[Machell's Notes: [III.125]

*{?}
†{A crag in Yea[n]wath Wood so called from wild cats frequenting it in former times.}
‡{? Date}

[III.128]

Anno 8[0] Edward 2. [1314-1315]
A fine & recovery in crastine Sancti Martini apud Westmorland,[58] at Westminster between Gilbert Engaỳne, quer[entis],[59] & Richard de Wethermelock, vicar of the church of Arturet – de forc[iamentum],[60] concerneing the manner of Clifton with the appurtenances excepting vj messuages & 120 acres of land in the same manner, by which it is settled upon the said Gilbert for term of life; afterwards to Gilbert his son & Joan his wife & their isue, for want of which \ to the right heir of Gilbert, / Gilbert Engayne does grant the remainder of a moietie of the manner of Clifton to Will Engayne, his brother (as I understand it) after the death of Gilbert, their father. Tis a French deed, sans

[51] 'Skelland': land on the shelving terrain (old Norsk). There is a Skelland Pond in the parish of Lowther, see *Westmorland Place-Names*.
[52] A rain[e] or reyne: a strip of land, a ridge; a division between fields or between strips of land in a field. *OED*.
[53] Buckholme Wood, Lowther, see Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 184.
[54] MS: '~~of both~~ of both …'
[55] For carucate and oxgang, moulter and pannage, see the English Glossary.
[56] Rose-Rent: a rent of a rose on the Feast of the Nativity of John the Baptist: 24 June.
[57] Witnesses.
[58] 'On the day after the Feast of St Martin' [11 Nov.]; therefore the event occurred on 12 Nov.
[59] Plaintiff.
[60] Deforce: a legal term, meaning to withhold (property, especially land) by force or violence, as from the rightful owner. See Giles Jacob, *A New Law Dictionary* (London, 2nd edn, 1732), DE. It appears, therefore, that Richard of Wethermelock was in unlawful possession.

date, but attested by Sir Thomas du Stirkland, Sir Hugo du Lowther, chevaleres; John Fils Robert du Stirkland, ~~Sir Hugo du Lowther~~: ergo this is about Edward 2.

{Temp. Edward 2. vel. 3.}
A settlement made of ~~the~~ \ his whol / village of Clyftone by Gilbert, the son of Gilbert de Engayne.

{Gilbert de Engayne
|
William Gilbert, fil. Gilbert = Joan
|
Henry de Engayne = Joan d. of Robert Lowther
of Halton in Northumbria}

[III.129]

{6. The Boundes of the parish: **The Perambulation}**
Clifton is hem'd in on the \ N. & / E. with the parish of Browham, on the south with Lowther, and on the west with Yanewath in Barton parish.
1. Begin in the very midle of Lowther Beck over against the W. end of the church near to Cat-Skar on this side of the water & Hug[h]s Crag on the other.
Thence N. \ wards / down the midle of the beck till you com at \ the foote of a large / ~~a~~ close below Lowder \ Bridge / and over against the Round Table in Yamont: being call'd the Breadwath.
Thence N.E. to the said Close-Nooke, and thence southwards up Breadwath-Dike till you com at a close formerly called Lowther-Brig-Close but now Midle-Close*.
Thence southwards by Midle-Close-Dike to {Clifton Cross} where Clifton & Browham & the bridge-lonens meet.
Thence eastwards up Howrig-Lonen to Howrig-Yeat, & so on to the 3 great steans upon Glead-Hill at a place call'd Grene-dikes.
Thence agane eastwards to a passage over a little sike at Cliburne Ling Foote, & near the Race Post call'd Sand Wath.
Thence S-West up the said sike to Gillbrow, & so on \ (still up the said / sike) to Hackthop-Field-Neuk at Trainfat-Head†. Thence N. west by a gill & row of stones to Scot-Close-Neuk.
Thence westward, by Clifton-Field Dike to Skellins.[61]
Thence N. west ~~betwixt~~ (between the said Skellins and a place called The Wings (gallicè Le-Wings)[62] by Lowther-Dicke, following the \ hedge / till it adjoynes the River of Lowther above a great skar on Yeanwath Side called Clifton-Fitts; & near to another on Clifton Side call'd the Hee-Skar i.e. High Skar.
Thence into the midle of the River Lowther & so down the river till you com at the place where we began‡.

[Machell's Notes: III.129]

*Query: if it cross not the way a Capel[la] a pont.[63]
†{q. why not to the †?}
‡This perambulation given in by old Thomas Boake æt. 90, and He[n]ry Penrith, his son in law. This they give it in now, but an ancient Bounder (in a deed sans date) caryes it farther on Lowther Side "versus campum de Hackthorpe usq[ue] Tramfit Cross"[64] & a later agreement twix Richard Lowther of Lowther Esq. & Thomas Wiberge of Clifton Esq. {which beareth date the 15th April 5[0] Elizabeth [1563] confirmes the sames & fixe the boundes for succeeding ages in these following words.}[65]

[61] Skellands.
[62] 'In French, Le-Wings.'
[63] There is a note written here, in pencil in another hand, which translates 'a Capella a pont' to 'from the chapel to the bridge'.
[64] 'Towards Hackthorpe Plain as far as Tramfit Cross.'
[65] See the bounder in Latin, below.

[III.128]

[Bounder, 15 April 1563.]
To Henry, his son and Johan his wife (the daughter of Robert Lowther of Halton in com[itatu] Northumbrie) & the isue of their bodyes lawfull to be begotten; for want of which, to Reverte to him & his right heires. Hijs testibus: Joha[nn]e Berwic; Joha[nn]e de Harryngton; Joh[ann]e, filio Roberti de Str [Blank] Joh[ann]e de Bradley et alijs, wherein is this Bounder per has scillicet divisas. C.[66]
Incipiend[o] apud pedem de Bradwathe v[er]sus Croseholme
Sequend[o] metas inter Browham et Clyftone ex parte australi usqu[e] ad viam apud Browham Bank End
Et sic sequend[o] dictam viam usqu[e] ad tres magnas lapides apud Graydike Greyndikks (on Clifton Moore)
Et sic a dict[o] Greyndikks sequendam dictam viam ex parte australi usqu[e] ad Sandwath (at Cliburn Ling End)
Et deinde sequendo [quenda]m torrentem qui currit ex parte occidental[i] inter territoriam de Melkanthrope et Cliftone-more usq[ue] Thornegat, Newnhowe
Et sic sequendo dictum torrentem versus campum […][67] de Hackthorpe usq[ue] Transit Crose
Et a dict[o] Transits C. ad Borialem partem de Nether Skellands
Et sic sequend[o] metas inter Nether Skellands et campum de Clyftione ex parte occidentali usq[ue] ad pedem de Over Skellands
Et deinde linealiter sequend[o] metas inter Lewings et Eshele moram distendend[o] in aquam de Lowther
Et sic per medium dicta[e] [a]quae usqu[ue] ad pedem de Bradwathe prædict[o] Habend[o] &c.[68]

{**7. The Division**}
The division into Manners, Townes & Hamlets of Clifton, & 2 other improvements or rowes of houses dispersd here & there upon \ the hedges or ditches of the More, whence they are called Clifton Dikes and are divided into the 2 partes, the High & Low Dike.

[III.130]

[**Clifton**]
Clifton is a considerable village of XXV familyes or thereabouts. It lyes on east side of the River Lowther. It taketh it name from those rocks or cliffs near unto and above where it standeth quasi villa ad Cliburn, that is to say, the Town by the Cliff,[69] there being 2 very remarkable cliffs, one of marble, out of which there springeth 7 medicinal wells that will [cause] vomit, and purge by urine, especially if you drink freely of them; & will cure sore eyes, ulcers & scabbs.[70]

[66] 'By these dividing points. To wit …'
[67] Latin text (3cm) has been crossed through here.
[68] 'Beginning at the foot of Bradwathe towards Croseholm, following the boundary-marks between Browham and Clifton on the south as far as the road at Browham Bank End. And so following the said road as far as three great stones ... at Greendykes. And so from the said Greendykes following the said road on the south side as far as Sandwath (at Cliburn Ling End). Thence following [a certain] torrent that runs from the west between the lands of Melkinthorpe and Clifton Moor as far as Thornegat, Newnhowe. And so, following the said torrent towards Hackthorpe Field as far as Tramfit Cross. And from the said Tramfit Cross to the north part of Nether Skellands, and so following the boundary-marks between Nether Skellands and Clifton Field on the west, as far as the foot of Over Skellands. Thence in a straight line following the boundary-marks between Lewings and Eshele Moor, extending to the Water of Lowther. And so along the centre of the said water to the foot of Bradwathe aforesaid. To have & to hold etc.'
[69] An almost identical paragraph on this page is as follows: MS 'The parish conteines but one Lordship in it ~~of Clifton which conteineth in it about 25 families~~ \ being /… Clifton is a village on the East side of the River Lowther, which takes its name from the rocks \ or cliffs / above which it stands quasi villa ad Cliburn…'
[70] See *N&BI*, 420: 'Dr Todd makes mention of a fountain near the bank of the river Lowther in this parish, of christilline limpid water, strongly impregnated with steel, nitre and vitriol, which was of great benefit to persons afflicted with ulcers and fore eyes, and scorbutic complaints.' Dr Todd was Hugh Todd, archdeacon of Carlisle Diocese, see Part 3, Ch.2, Correspondence, from I.481.

{Marble & medicinal waters S.W. ab Ecclesia ¼ of a mile}
1. A slender spring or current of light water, good for the eyes.
2. & 3. Have the greatest current, the one being smooth the other ruff.
4. A little slow rust spring & the 5. much like it.
6. A murmuring spring which coms down the rocks & is smooth like the second, but much sweeter water.
7. is the sweetest of all, & a quick spring, being emitting where the Skar is faln in. This standeth paralel to the S.E. end of the town of Clifton, \ a ¼ m. S. W. from the church / and of a more which is called High Skar, where now there lyeth a large piece of marble, big enough for a \ through or / gravestone & wherein there groweth great store of liverwort & maden haire \ with which the limestone that lyeth above in the town fields[71] {S.W. about ab Ecclesia about ½ a mile} may seem to impregnate ~~the water with their several vertues~~ the veines of water which breath and blead out of this \ ~~very~~ / rock.

{White hewing stone, grindstones, flag & slates N.W ab Ecclesia ½ q.}
The other cliff is of excellent good hewing stone,[72] som of it being extraordinary white, & the rest here & there struck with a dash of pale read or blew, but all of it hath a very fine \ great / grane and will rise in \ large / stones. There are also in it both slates & flags of a whiteish read colour; so sound & fine withal that they get the best & largest of them ~~flags~~ to make grindstones ~~of~~ which are thought the \ best in the / North of England. And this standeth also on the bankes of Lowther, \ but / paralel to the N.W. \ end / of the Town of Clifton, and is called Catt-Skar, from being formerly frequented with wilde kats. And this I take to have bin the mother of the Church & Hall, so I doe not doubt but one ~~or both~~ of these ~~famous~~ cliffs has bin the Godmother of the village of Clifton, and gave name unto it.

This town extendeth itselfe from S.E. to Norwest, which end being the higher hathe the Church & Rectory & Hall placed there at a very small distance one from another; for the Hall standeth N.W. from the church about 100 yards as I take it, there being but the breadth of an highway betwixt the church yard & the Hall fould \ outer court. /[73]

Long	Body	13	Passes
	Quire	10	in all XXIII[74]
Broad	Body	5	
	Quier	14	

{There is also a quier on the N. side behind a long porch which belongs to the Hall & is l[ength] 8; broad circa 4.}
The situation is pleasant enough, were it not for a little descent from the church to the gate, for it ~~hath~~ stands on[75] a large prospect of wood & fair fields on every side. {And there are 2 trees, the one sickamore, the other a walnut of \ incredible / bigness, which shewes the benignity of the soile, and if groves & walkes might be made here…[76]
The Rectory or Rectors house is a little mean ~~forest worke~~ building, but much bettered by the present

[71] Similar MS references on this page have been removed from this edition, e.g. MS: '{There groweth on it plenty of liverwort and madenhare}' 'Limestone in the field S.W. ab ecclesia ½ a mile.'
[72] MS: 'The other cliff is of excellent \ good hewing / ~~hewing~~ stone, ~~fit for hewing~~ & ~~walling~~.'
[73] MS: 'This town extendeth itselfe \ ~~standeth on a riseing banke~~ / ~~in length~~ from S.E. to Norwest, which end being the higher hathe the Church & Rectory & Hall placed there, at a very small distance one from another; for the Hall standeth N.W. from the church about 100 yards, as I take it, ~~The church is obscure on the outside, but pretty neat & well seated within, have ingrale and ballasters before the altar.~~ there being but the breadth of an highway betwixt the church yard & the Hall fould \ outer court.'
[74] This information occurs in the margin.
[75] MS: 'on on'.
[76] Machell's horticultural ideas have been obscured by the binding here, but see Sir John Lowther's land at Yanwath, where Machell envisaged the changes he could make to the grounds in Part 1, Ch.5, Barton: Yanwath, I.740.

incumbent, Mr Rowland Burrow. It stands from the N.W. point of the Quier about 10 or 12 yardes, & hath a large & pleasant prospect.

[III.131]

{Manner House}
Clifton Hall which is the ancient manner house, [is] pleasantly seated were it not for a sort of descent down to the house. It standeth on an hill fronting S. East towards the church, and hath a fair [blank][77] It \ consists of a Tower & 2 other buildings, which front with their gables towards the church / & has bin builded at 3 several times: the Tower first, the midle building next, & the outmost the last. And tho they talke much of the ancient ~~court~~ house \ of Elianore Engaynes – which was made of spiles[78] / {by which they mean sheathes daubed with morter ~~or clay betwixt~~,[79] whence there are no vestigia of the foundations}~~very~~ \ which, as they say, stood / in Coat Garth on the same side but at the contrary end of the town where there yet is the fashion of an old fish pond fed with a spring;[80] which place is parcel of the old demane of lands – Yet I am persuaded that the tower was builded by som of the Engaynes before her time; being induced thereto by an iron scutch[eon].[81] \ And the same arms agane / carved in wood upon a piece of old wainscot friese which was lately over the dineing roome chimney in the said tower but now is removed; the figures of which you shall have by & by.

[III.133]

The second part may seem to be built by som of the Engaynes,[82] because there is an iron scutchon like to the other, in which the latch \ ring / of the out doer hangeth, \ having the armes of Engayne upon it, / tho I grant it might be translated hither from som other part ~~of the house~~.



Figure 1.9.9. Engayne Arms (2). III.133

The 3rd, which is builded in the same forme, may seem erected by som of the Wibers because it is newest; tho there is not any part of the house which hath the armes of Wiber upon it.[83] But there are several blanke escutchions above the little loope window intended for arms, and a very ancient Roman inscription placed above them. At each end of it is a Romane genius.[84] But alas! The letters are so much decayed \ eaten out by the teeth of time / that though they appear pretty fair at a distance \

[77] MS: 'Clifton Hall, which is the ancient manner house, pleasantly seated, ~~but~~ \ were it not / for a sort of descent ~~unto it~~ \ down to the house. It standeth on /~~on the top~~ an hill, ~~which yields a large prospect of well wooded fields all round about~~ \ fronting S. East towards the church and hath a fair,' The sentence stops abruptly here but the information continues on the next line.
[78] 'Spile' (northern dialect and Scottish): a splinter, chip, or narrow strip, of wood; a spill. *OED*.
[79] 'Sheath': to cover (a ship, a door, roof, etc.) with a sheathing of material e.g. '1627 … casing the hull [of a ship] under water with tar, and haire, close covered over with thin boards fast nailed to the hull'. *OED*.
[80] MS: '…an old fish pond ~~which hath a good spring running into it~~ \ fed with a spring /.'
[81] MS: 'Yet I am persuaded that the tower was builded by som of the Engaynes before her time ~~or else by he[r]selfe before her marriage~~ being induced thereto by an iron scutch ~~with the armes of England~~ \ ~~affixed to the latch of the stair foot doer / upon the doore latch as you goe up the stairs into enter the Hall & the old tower. And by Englands armes~~.'
[82] MS: 'The second part \ ~~also of whose~~ \ ~~end of~~ / ~~gabel stands to the front~~ / may seem to be built by som of the Engaynes.'
[83] MS: 'The 3, \ which is builded in the same forme / may seem ~~erected thereof~~ \ erected by som of the Wibers because it is newest; / tho there is not any part of the house which hath the ~~Wibers~~ armes ~~upon it~~ of Wiber upon it.'
[84] MS: 'But there are several blanke escutchions above the highest window thereof; \ little loope window intended for arms / and a very ancient Roman inscription placed above them; ~~and~~ at each end of it \ is / a Romane genius ~~as this figure sheweth~~.'

I found them like painted letters; for yet could / not discover so much as one word \ when / I got a ladder and \ had / taken the paines to climbe up myself and came nearer unto them.[85]

[III.33A][86]



Figure 1.9.10. Inscription frame 'upon the gable end of Clifton Hall'. III.133A.

[Machell's Notes: III.133A and III.133B]

Make these duble.[87]

[III.133B] Mount it up to the inner corner.[88]

[III.131]

[Clifton Dykes]

Clifton Dikes, which is divided into the High-Dikes: being a row of stragling houses in the dikeside, extending S. from the sike at Clifton Town End towards Lowther Hall & consisting of \ about / 9 familyes; and Clifton Low-Dikes, which are built on an hedge beginning at the foresaid sike & turning eastwards & then northwards & the N. West by Howrig Street, wherein are conteined XII or XIII. And all these, except Remye's tenement and some ancient freeholds, were purchased free of the late Sir John Lowther of Lowther, Baronet, at 50 years purchase rent. But \ were customary tenants at an arbitrary fine / before they were mortgaged to the said Sir John \ & did suit & service / to Clifton Hall. {And 2 corner houses in the skirts of the Lordship: Sc. 1. Browhow at Cliburn Brig End? 2. Howcasl, now demolished, instead of which is an house calld Stub Close.}

[III.137]

{Clifton-High-Dikes}

The 2. place in this Parish & Lordship is Clifton-High-Dikes, which beginneth at the S.E. end of the village of Clifton where there is a sike that crosseth the streat and extendeth southwards by the dike side towards Lowther Hall, conteineing [in] it about 9 families of stragling houses.

{Clifton Lowdykes}

The 3. is calld Clifton-Low-Dikes, which beginneth at the same ~~end~~ \ place / beyond the said sike but extendeth eastwards & then twines about towards the north until it comes into Howrig Lonen \ Streat; / in which[89] there are xii or xiii families dispersd here & there.

{? The Moore Houses}

Lastly there are 2 little houses, set as it were for clames & bounders in the skirts of the parish: one cald Brown-Howe, near to Sandwath at Cliburn Ling End which is mentioned in the perambulation; and the other, How Karle which is lately demolished and instead thereof is an house newly builded, which is called Stub-Close.

---

[85] Machell also wrote (MS.III.133B), 'This is upon that gable end of Clifton Hall under the little loop window opp. the front side opposite to the church. The letter[s] appear pretty faire at a distance, but when I got a ladder & I climed up to it, I could read nothing.'

[86] Scrap page, 9½cm x19cm.

[87] Written in pencil below the centre of the sketch.

[88] A pencilled note.

[89] In Clifton Low-Dikes,

{**The Tenure**}
And all these familyes together with the tenants of Clifton, whether free or customary – the latter of which are called Natives in their ancient writeings (of which the reason shal be given elsewhere) – ought sute & service to Clifton Hall and payd several bouns, one of which was to goe to St Bees with man & horse to fetch salt from thence or other necessarys, once every year; for which most of them would compound with the balif for halfe a crowne when he went to warne them, which would be som time in deep of winter. But som would rathe[r] choose to goe, and then they had 12d \ apiece /of the Lord[90] and bread & chease when they returned. Henry Penrith (who with his father-in-law, an ancient man)[91] gave this account, was the last that went \ upon that occasion / & carried salt from St Bees to Lowther at the command of the late Sir John Lowther; who presently, after falling in suit with the customary tenants abou[t] a fine upon the death of Mr Thomas Wiber who had mortgaged them to him many years before & never redeemed them, sold them all free \ excepting one Remy / for 50 years purchase: that is ~~to say~~ 50 times double their \ ancient / Rent, which Rent still remanes to the Lord in being*.[92]

[Machell's Notes: III.137 and III.139]

*{?}
[III.139][93] Add here the bounders
~~Ancient freehold~~
~~Q. de … Brough Bolton. Testis Briget Teasdale sold it & built the Hall. Her weight~~
~~Thomas = Katherine Wilson~~
~~Ch. Sets Bolton to~~
~~at the Dor Helton wid~~
~~70 his aut Geoffrey = Isabel Pattrickson~~
{Dor = Helton miles}

[III.135]

[**Christopher Airay**]
And these are all the things that I know of in the village of Clifton that deserve observation excepting only that it was the birth place of my worthy kinsman, Mr Christopher Airey,[94] sometimes fellow of Queens College in Oxford. And in his youth (whilst Taberder there) the ingeniouse author of ~~the~~ *Fasciculus Logicorum*, whence he removed to be parson or vicar of Lemmington in Hampshire, where he maryed & had several children, both sons & daughters \ whereof John / the eldest of which, was brought by me \ ~~at my own cost~~ / in Queens College ~~being my kinsman for his and my grandmother on the mother side being 2 sisters of the name of Smyth~~ \ for my mothers sake, being related unto her, she and his father being sisters children.[95]

[90] MS: 'of the lord ~~of the lord~~.'
[91] Henry Penrith's father-in-law was Thomas Boake, described by Machell as aged 90: see above, III.121.
[92] According to Graham Fairclough's analysis, 'Twice married and twice widowed, the right of inheritance remained firmly in [Elianor Engayne's] hands until at her death it passed to her son by her first marriage (in 1364) to William Wybergh, then of St. Bees. His heirs held the Hall until late in the nineteenth century … The manor, however, with the exception only of the Hall and its demesne, was mortgaged in the middle of the seventeenth century by Thomas Wybergh to Sir John Lowther in exchange for a series of loans of money amounting by 1654 to £846 10sh … [The] Wybergh … family were apparently in a difficult financial situation (perhaps worsened by the Civil War, in which Wybergh's Royalist sympathies caused him to be … fined as a delinquent) for most of the seventeenth century: perhaps until 1706, when an agreement between the grandsons of Sir John Lowther and Thomas Wybergh finally settled the long dispute over ownership of the manor in Lowther's favour, in exchange for a "gift" of £400 to Wybergh.' Extracted from Graham Fairclough, 'Clifton Hall Cumbria. Excavations 1977-79', *CW2*, 80 (1980), 45-68, at 46.
[93] Scrap page, 26cm x 17cm. The scored-through text has been written roughly in pencil.
[94] MS: '…village of Clifton ~~Takes its name from the town of Clifton where the church stands~~ \ that deserve observation excepting only that it was the birth place of my worthy kinsman / ~~In this towne was born~~ Mr Christopher Airay…'
[95] Christopher Airay (c.1600-1670), *Fasciculus praeceptorum logicorum: in gratiam juventutis academicae compositus & typis donates*, published anonymously in 1628 (2nd edn, Oxford, 1633): see also John Stephens, 'Airay, Christopher'. *ODNB*.

Christopher Airay = Elizabeth Smyth of Browham
|
Christopher = Ann, maryed to Jo. Harisō.[96]
|
John.

John Sledall Gent = Jane, sister to Elizabeth Smith
|
Tho. Ob. s. p. Roger. Edward.
Lancelot Machell of Crakenthorp Esq. = Elizabeth, d. of Thomas Sledal & Jane Smyth, his wife
|
Hugh. Thomas. Lancelot.
Machell de Crakenthorp

[C. Evidences: Deeds and Pedigrees]

[III.139]

Extractes è Cartis Wi~~rg~~\ber/iorum de Clifton in Westmorland[97]

[III.140][98]

Locorum Cartorum Virorum[99]

Out of my manuscript folio concerneing the heraldry of W[estmorland] & C[umberland]

{33. Edward 3.}
One Thomas Dengayne, dominus de Blaterwick in festo Santi Dustani, Anno 33. Edward 3.[100] sealed with a fess between cross-crosslets fitchées, 4 of which were above the fess, 3. 2. & 1 beneath it*.

[Machell's Notes: III.140]

*MS T.M. p.113.

[III.141][101]

{21. Edward 3.} [1347-1348]
Gilbert, son of Gilbert Engayne, grants to Henry, his son, and Joan, the daughter of Robert de Lowther de Halton, & the heires of their bodyes viii messuages xiii oxgangs* of land, with the appurtenances, in the village of Clifton, which the said John de Lowther held for 6 years next ensuing, paying to him a rose rent on St John Baptists Day &c. Ĉ[102] Johe de Berwis, Johe de Haverington, John fil Rob. De Stirkland, Jo. de Bradeli, Rob. Buteler et alijs.

{31. Edward 3.} [1357-1358]
Gilbertus fil Gilberti Dengayne grants to Lord Roger [Clifford] Lord of Westmorland, by indenture the services of John Richardson, [Blank] Grymkyll, John Grymky'll de Clifton, Gilbert Johnson,

[96] Harrison? The letters of the shortened word are unclear.
[97] 'Extracts from the Deeds of the Wyberghs of Clifton in Westmorland.'
[98] It is helpful to read this and the following pages on manorial descents and property inheritance alongside *N&BI*, 416-19; Nicolson and Burn plundered Machell's information (as they admit in *N&B1*, 416: 'Several of these instruments were copied by Mr. Machel from the evidences at Clifton Hall'). They then added the fruits of their own research because, as Machell lamented (MS. III.147), 'Here 84 years ev[idences] are wanting.'
[99] This page, the previous page, and others to III.149, originally contained a running-heading, spread across the top of each page, viz. 'locorum, cartorum, virorum' [of the place, of the deeds, of the men]. It has been retained here, but deleted elsewhere.
[100] The feast of St Dunstan, 19 May 1359.
[101] Scrap page, 26cm x 17cm.
[102] Witnesses.

Rytorson[103] de Clifton, & John Storaur cum eorum corporibus et eorum sequelis {ergo Natiur}[104] for the lifetime of the said \ Lord / Roger & to the heires of the said Roger for the lifetime of the said Gilbert if the said Lord Roger dye before him. Ĉ. Thoma de Clifford, Tho de Sandeford, Hugone de la Waur, Will. de Corbrig, Henrico de Mallerstang et allijs.[105]

[Machell's Notes: III.141]

*{N.B. 2 oxgangs to a tenement.}

[III.143][106]

{38. Edward 3.} [1364-1365]
Die lune proxima ante festum Santi Marci Evangeliste,[107] William Engayne gives to William* de Wybergh, one moite of the manner of Clifton &c. which he had by the grant of Gilbert his brother for his life time to have & hold the same dureing the life of the said Gilbert. Ĉ. Domino Thoma de Stirkeland; Domino Will. de Thrilkeld militibus; Henrico de Thrilkeld tunc. Vic. West.;[108] Thoma de Sandford et alijs.

On the feast of the invention of the Holy Cross†,[109] Gilbert Engayne releaseth & quitteth‡ clame to William de Wybergh his heires & assignes, all his right & clame in ½ of the Manner of Clifton with its appurtenances &c., which William his brother had by his gift for the terme of the life of the said ~~Will~~ Gilbert. He grants also to the said William, omnes bondos et nativos ~~suos~~ meos \ bondage men / et eorum sequel[as],[110] sayeth he as well by his owne propart as of the propart of the said William, S. test. sed sigilest appeus.[111]

Die lune proxima ante Dominicam in Ramis Palmarum,[112] Gilbert the son of Gilbert Dengayne of Clifton in the County of Westmorland gives to William Wibergh an Elianore his wife and to their heires & assignes, one yearly rent of 24li sterling⸸ out of all his Lands & Tenements in the village of Clifton & in any appurtinences whatsoever thereto belonging in equal portions one halve at Pentecost, the other at St Martins in the winter.[113] To hold the same forever with power of distress for arrears. Ĉ Will. de Threlkeld; Thoma de Stirkeland, militibus; Henrico de Threlkeld, tunc Vice. West.; Tho de Blenkinsop; Thoma de Sandford; Robert de Ormesheved; Wilo de Crakinthorp; Wilo de Warthcop; Willo de Horneby; Thoma de Eterby p'sona ecclæ de Burgham.[114]

[Machell's Notes: III.143]

*William {?} de Wybergh
†{?}
‡{?}
⸸{q. the rent of Clifton.}

[III.144]

The Pedegree of the Wibers of Clifton, extracted out of their ancient evidences. T.M.*

William Wybergh, the 1ˢᵗ of this family, maryed = Elianore, the d. & heiress of Gilbert de Engayne of Clifton

[103] Unclear word.
[104] 'Both in their own bodies and those that belonged to them; therefore, Natives.' This was the service of drengage: see English the Glossary.
[105] See W.R. Whatton, 'On the Ancient Tenure called Drengage', *The Gentleman's Magazine, July 1821*, 30-34, who quotes these deeds (using *N&B* as his source) at 32-33.
[106] Scrap page, 26cm x 17cm.
[107] 'On the Monday before the festival of St Mark the Evangelist.' (The festival was on 25 April).
[108] 'Then Sheriff of Westmorland.'
[109] On the legend of its discovery by St Helena, mother of the Emperor Constantine, in c.327: see Alban Butler (1711-73), *The Lives of the Saints* (London, 1866) Vol. 5: 'May'. The feast day was held on 3 May.
[110] 'All my bondmen with all belonging to them.'
[111] 'No witnesses, but the deed is sealed.'
[112] 'On the Monday before Palm Sunday.'
[113] 11 November.
[114] 'Parson of Brougham Church.'

She seemeth to have bin remaryed to: = Thomas Lowther of Askom. It seems by this she maryed agane to Thomas Lowther of Askom.

|

Thomas Wybergh of Clifton Esq., 17. Edward 4. [1477-78]

|

Thomas Wybergh Leonard Wybergh (Chaplains)

William Wybergh, son + heire apparent of Thomas Wiber Esq. maryed (17. Ed. 4.) = Margaret, the daughter of John Wharton Esq. of Kirkby Thor

[Machell's Notes: III.144]

*q. if they came out of Kentmere?

[III.145]

{39. Edward 3. [1365-1366]}
Gilbert fitz[115] Gilbert Engane obliges himselfe in 20 levers[116] of silver to Richard the son of Richard, fits Stephen (forsan Stephenson of Clifton) to which a white seal with a coat of armes but not discerneable.

{Gilbert D'engayne de Cli[fton]

|

William Wybergh = Elianore Engayne}

{40. Edward 3 3^0 Maij [1366]} {Natives}
Gilbert D'engayne gives to William Wybergh and Elianore his wife & the heires of them lawfully begotten, his whol halfe of halfe of the manner of Clifton in Dominico & in Servicio eum servivijs liberorum Tenentium et cum nativis et eorum sequelis ad dictum meietatem medietatis prædicti maner' pertinentis, and with 7 messuages and 14 oxgangs or bovates of l[and] with their appertinences. Ĉ. Domino Jac. de Pykering milite; Henrico de Threlkeld, &c.[117]

{40. Edward 3.} [17. October 1366]}
Ad fest. Sancti Laurence[118] a French deed importing that Gilbert Dengayne gave to William Wybergh the 4th part of the manner of Clifton, and the 4th part of the miln at Clifton &c. for the terme of the life of the said Gilbert.

{47. Edward 3.} [1373]
At the feast of St Martin in winter,[119] a French deed importing that Adam de Corry tooke to farme of William de Wybergh & Elianore his wife, their manner of Clifton for vii years.

{4. Richard 2. [1380-81] Natives}
John de Dufton, Chaplain, gave to Elianore, who was the wife of William de Wybergh & Thomas de Lowther ~~cartae desiderantur spatium 87 annor[um]~~ of Ascome[120] his man[or] of Clifton cum Redittibus et servicijs liberorum; & nativis* et eorum sectis et sequellis & with the miln, with meadows woods etc. which he had of the gift of the foresaid Elianore to have all the foresaid, to their

[115] Fitz: Anglo-Norman word for 'son' in patronymic designations, in which it was followed by the name of a parent in the uninflected genitive. Some of these survive as surnames, e.g. *Fitzherbert*, *Fitzwilliam*. *OED*.
[116] From Livre: any of a number of coins or units of account used in France from the 8th-18th centuries. *OED*.
[117] 'Gilbert Dengayne gives to William Wybergh & Elianore his wife, & the heirs of them lawfully begotten, his whol halfe of halfe of the ma[nor] of Clifton in Demesne service with the service of the free tenants, and with the natives in their followings that belong to the said half of the half of the aforesaid manor, and with the mes[suages] and 14 oxgangs or Bovates of L[and] with their appertinences. Witnesses: Lord James of Pykering, Knight, Henry of Threlkeld etc.'
[118] MS: 'Ad fest. Sancti Laurence ~~Ad fest. Sancti Laurence~~.' At the feast of St Lawrence. [10 August].
[119] 11 November.
[120] Nicolson and Burn agree that in 1380-81 Elianore was a widow, having been married twice: *N&BI*, 417.

heirs & assignes of le cap. Lord of the fee etc. with general warranty to the said Elian[ore] & Thomas, their Heires and assignes for ever. T[estibus] d[omi]no Gilb[er]to de Culwen milite, Hugone de Salkeld, Joh[ann]e de Bradeley, Gilb[er]to de Wyndergh, Henrico Watson, etc.[121]

[Machell's Notes: III.145]

*{Natives. {~~1, 22, 14, 9 38~~} {18, 14 [?] 36}

[III.147]

Engaynes seale de Clifton apud carte penes Thomas Sandford de Askam.[122]
{14. Richard 2. Oct. 4. [1390]}
William Engayne[123] gives to William Ferrour[124] of Clifton all his lands & tenements, meadow, wood, pasture &c. in the village of Clifton, to have & to hold of &c. forever, with general warranty. Ĉ. Domino William de Threlkeld; Domino Xtho de Moraceby: militibus alijs, with the same seale as the first.

{14. Richard 2. 6. October [1390]}
Thomas de Lowthre de Ascume releaseth to William Ferrour of Clifton all his right &c. – which he had &c. – in all lands & tenements &c. which the foresaid William had of the gift & feofment of William Engayne in the village of Clifton &c.

{17. Edward 4. 14. of May [1477] Dryngage acre}[125]
Edward Wherton, Rector of Merton,[126] & William Marshall, Chaplane, gave to William Wiburgh, son & heire apparent of Thomas Wybergh of Clifton, Esq. and to Margaret his wife, the daughter of John Wherton of Kirkby Thore Esquire, 2 tenements in Clifton with lands & meadows adjoyneing to them in the tenure of Thomas Raper at \ our / will, with their appertenences. One acre of land in Clifton called Dryngage acre {!} with its appurtenences, & one parcel of demane land in Clifton called Over Scalebergh &c.; All which were lately had of the gift of Thomas Wybergh. To have & to hold. And the foresaid tenements, lands &c. to the foresaid W. Wybergh & Margaret his wife & the children lawfully begot betwixt them; and for defect thereof to remaine to the foresaid T. Wiber & his heires forever. Ĉ. Lancelot Threlkeld milite; T. Wherton armiger &c.

{15. Henry VII} [1499-1500][127]
T. Wybergh armiger in an obligation to stand to an award about som lands in Clifton controverted by Lord Dakers.

[Machell's Notes: III.147]

	~~8~~
~~H. 4~~	~~14~~
~~H. 5~~	~~9~~
~~H. 6~~	~~36~~
	~~17~~
This should not be crossed out.	

Here 84 years ev[idences] are wanting.

[121] '~~The deeds are missing for a period of 87 years~~ of Ascome his man[or] of Clifton with rents and services of the free tenants; & with the natives and their suits of court and followings & with the miln, with meadows woods etc. which he had of the gift of the foresaid Elianore to have all the foresaid, to their heirs & assignes of le cap. Lord of the fee etc. with general warranty to the said Elian[ore] & Thomas, their Heires and assignes for ever. Witnesses Lord Gilbert of Culwen, Knight, Hugo of Salkeld, John of Bradeley, Gilbert of Wyndergh, Henry Watson, etc.'
[122] 'Engayne seal of Clifton on a deed in the possession of Thomas Sandford of Askham.'
[123] Uncle of Elianore, see also *N&BI*, 418.
[124] Second husband of Elianore, see also *N&BI*, 418.
[125] 'Drengage Acre'.
[126] Edward Wharton, rector of Long Marton.
[127] 1499-1500. A line of illegible scored-through text (5cm) follows here.

{Edward 5. Richard. Desideratum.}[128]

[III.148]

{Wybergh}	William Wybergh \ Esq. / son of William Wybergh of Clifton Esq.: 2^0 Henry VIII	= Margaret [Blank]
	|	
	John Wybergh, son & heir of William: 5. Henry VIII	
	|	
{? Jeffry Wiber}	Thomas Wibergh, son & heire of John and cosan & heire of William: anno 5^0 Henrici VIII. Tooke tow.[129] He is writ ~~esq~~ gentleman 25. Henry VIII, but Esquire afterwards: Sc. 37. of Henry VIII, 4. of Edward VI & the 1^t of Queen Mary, & anno dom. 1558.	= Elizabeth the daughter of Jeffray Lancaster of Melkynthorp, gentleman {He is writ sometimes Wyberght, sometimes Wybergh: Sc. a. 37. Henry VIII!}

[III.149]

{4^0 Maij 2. Henry VIII} [1510]
Thomas Wybergh, Leonard Wybergh, chaplains, and John Vaux, Gentleman, release clame to William Wyberght, son of William Wyberght of Clifton in the county of Westmorland Esq., for terme of life in 3 tenements in Clifton.

{15 Maij 5. Henry VIII} [1513]

William Wybergh of Clifton Esq.	= Margaret
|	
John Wybergh & William {3 more}	6. H. 8.
|	
Thomas Wybergh, s. & h. of John & c. & heire of William[130]	= Elizabeth Lancaster of Melkynthorp

A covenant of marriage between William Wyberght of Clifton Esq. and Geffrey Lancaster of Melkynthorpe, gentleman.[131] That Thomas Wybergh, cosan & heire of William Wybergh and son & heire of John Wyberght, son & heire of the foresaid William Wyberght, shall wede Elizabeth Lancaster, daughter of the said Jeffray – X^{li} portion.

{March 25. 8. Henry VIII [1534]}
An award ~~betwixt~~ of the right honourable Henry Earle of Cumberland betwixt Sir John Lowther, Knight, & Thomas Wibergh, Gentleman; that he should keep his inclosed groundes, any pretences of Sir John Lowther notwithstanding.

{1. January, 37. Henry VIII. [1546]. Thomas Wyber Esq.}
Thomas Wyber~~gh~~ of Clifton in the county of Westmorland Esq., lets a lease of all the High Close to Roger Lancaster of Clyfton, Gent. And Edmond Smith, yeo[man].

{14. Feb. in anno 4. Edward VI. [1550]. Thomas Wyber Esq.}
Henry, E[arl] of Cumberland (whose seale appendant is a draggons head issuing out of a coronet, as is

[128] Desired, because there is a gap in the evidences.
[129] 'Tooke tow' is joined with a curved line to the word 'gentleman' in the adjacent column.
[130] The descent is placed in a margin.
[131] Before this sentence there is 2cm of scored-through illegible text.

yet used) exchangeth 2 roodes of land in the High Close with Thomas Wyber of Clifton Esq., for 3 rood of waistland on the sou[th] part of Clifton.

{13. Feb. 1^0 Marie. [1554]}
Thomas Fallowfield de Magna Strykland,[132] armig[er], et Edward Fallowfield, fil[ius] et heres gener[osus] ten[ura] et fir[ma] oblig[ati].[133] Thomæ Wyber de Clifton, armiger; et Edward Birbeck de Horneby Esq. in 200 marces to keep them harmless from an other bond.

{14. December 1558. Thomas Wyber}
Thomas Wyber of Clifton Esq. letteth Brownhow to John Cowper for certain years.

[III.150]

An addition to the pedigree by the information of old Thomas Boake ætat. 90.[134]

Thomas Wyber = Matilda (daughter of Jo. Irton) whose unckle Mr Irton* of Isell gave her a portion.
|
1. Thomas Wyber (of Clifton Hall) = daughter of [blank] Salkeld
2. William — Ann W.
3. Redman — Katherine: wife of Captaine Nysbut, a Scot
4. John
5. Anthony

|
1. Thomas Wiber, an attorney at law = Mary, the daughter of Lancelot Symson of Penrith, an attorney at law by [blank] d. & h. of Musgrave of Musgrave Hall in Penrith aforesaid
2. Readman — Isabel
3. William — Elizabeth
|
1. Thomas Wiber ætat. 4^r ann. 1689
2. Mary

[Machell's Notes: III.150]
*Argent a fess Sable & in chief 3 martlets Gules.
Barrs of 6 Or & Sable upon the second and last bar. 3 mullets of the first. Lib. Arm. Penes J.T. p.21. But in my booke, which I got of old Fawcet, it is Barrs of 6, Or & Sable. There are mullets of the 1^t upon the second & 4^{th} bar, which difference mayhap by blazoning at large thus: he beareth bars of 6, Or & Sable; 3 mullets of the 1^t. But in Mr Knight booke, which I most incline to because the armes there quarter Engaine & ergo certainly belong to this family, namely:

[132] Great Strickland.
[133] 'Thomas Fallowfield of Great Strickland, Squire, and Edward Fallowfield his son and heir, Gentleman, bound by an agreement on their holding and estate.'
[134] This pedigree contains additions (in round brackets), taken from a pedigree: MS.III.153, which has not been transposed because it is identical to this one, apart from the additions.



Figure 1.9.11. Wybergh Pedigree. III.150.



Figure 1.9.12. 'In Mr Knight booke … the armes there quarter Engaine & ergo certainly belong to this family' III.150.

[III.153]

{8. <u>The descent of manner</u>} {See Inquisition temp. Edward 3. [1327-1377].}
I am to enquire whether there was not a family here of the name of Clifton befor Engayne came; which family seems to have held in drengage & to have passed off some certane lands to be free of \ from / that slavery, ~~for~~ which tho the Wibers came to injoy by purchase or otherwise in \ after / ages; yet the name stil continued; for in the settlement upon the marriage of ~~the marriage of~~ Thomas Wiber of Clifton Esq. & Margaret, the daughter of John Wharton Esq., Lord of the manner of K[irkby Thore] there is mention made \ amongst other things / of one acre of land in \ the Lordship of / Clifton calld Drengage Acre {ex inf. autograph penes Thomas Wiber, dat 14. May, 17. Edward 4. [1477].}[135]

[III.154]

So much concerneing the parish of Clifton, which is but one constablewick, having 2 constables belonging there: one out of Clifton & another out of Clifton Dikes.

[135] Ex autograph in the custody of Thomas Wybergh, dated 14 May Edward IV [1477].

[Machell's Notes: III.154]

Query of whom descended Geffry Wiber, the attorney at law?[136]

{Brownhow at Cliburn Ring; Gilbrow at Melkinthorp Town End ~~and~~ Sub Close (How Carle\s/, formerly a dwelling).}

{Cat Skar is in Clifton outer the […][137] and a little lower on the […] side is Hews Crag.[138] The other Hee Close Skar}

{~~Brow hal~~: Roll – Hodgson – Tabot H. sold it.}[139]

[136] See pedigree, III.148.

[137] The text here has perished.

[138] Hughs Crag: see III.129, 'Perambulation', above.

[139] A short paragraph below this one gives the following, 'Court Ga[r]th where [3 words illegible] at S. corner of the Town – a pond near it.' The words (placed at the foot of the page) are very faint.

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 10]

[Parish of Crosby Garrett]

[III.166B]

Crosby Garret



Figure 1.10.1. Directions from Crosby Garrett Church. III.166B.

[Machell's Initial Notes]

Schoole.
So called from the place where the church standeth &c.
Soyle in general.
Manner of tythe.
Glebe.
Val[ue] of land.
It is bounded on the N. with [Blank].
Little Musgrave a part of this parish which cannot com to the church, but there [is] another parish.[1]
N.B. A close at the W. e[nd] of the glebe belonging to Great Musgrave ~~to on~~ the other side of Eden, called Step Ends does belong \ pays / to this parish of Garrat.

[I.453][2]

To Crosby Garrett church belongs Crosby Garrett, Little Musgrave &c. I should have thought that it had bin Called Garrett from the Hill on which the Church stands: but I finde it in old evidences Crosby Gerrard. Query? whether the church be not dedicated to some Saint of that name.[3]

[III.166A]

Crosby consists of about 40 families: freeholds III, some by indenture at 8^{d} fine, the rest arbitrary \ and 3 stragling houses. / has had a demaine – as appears by the groundes calld the <u>Maines</u> {as Brough Manes, Sowerby Manes, Kaber Manes} west ~~side~~ end of the church. But no Hall ever heard of. They talke of the Crosbyes having bin anciently Lords of the place. But tis certaine the Musgraves have long injoyd it by the armes on the Quier. It now belong to John Davison of Blakestone in Bishop,[4] Esq., who had a mariage by Mary, daughter & heir of Sir Richard Musgrave, eldest son of Sir Philip, who purchased it before of his father. Court Barron \ in / any house of the lordship –has weifs, strays & boons &c.[5]

---

[1] Crosby Garrett parish comprises the townships of Crosby Garrett and Little Musgrave, but they are separated [thereby forming a 'detached parish'] by the intervening chapelry of Soulby. See Samuel Lewis, *A Topographical Dictionary of England comprising the several counties, cities, boroughs, corporate and market towns, parishes, and townships* … 7th Edn (London, 1848), 734.
[2] Also numbered p.14.
[3] See *N&BI*, 530, for textual similarities.
[4] Bishopric of Durham.
[5] For the meaning of the terms 'waif and stray', and 'boons', see the English Glossary.

[III.166B]

The Perambulation

Crosby Garret is bounded on the north & east with Kirkby Stephen parish, on the S. with Raveonstondale parish, and on the W. with Orton, Little Ashby & Warcop parishes.
Beginning at Waterhouses, thence \ S.E. / down the highway (which leads from Ashby to Kirkby through Soulby cow pasture) to Crosby mill; Thence S. up Smardale beck to Smardale stone-bridge, where Russendale[6] parish comes in, joyning to this and Kirkby Stephan. Thence W. (up a little runlet or rill of water called Scale beck) to a rock calld Cowlin stone alias C\r/oblinstones. Thence S.W. through Hufell mire, streight over to the beginning of moss to old dike-steed.[7] Thence S. west by the said dike \ steed / till you com at Raset Sike*. Thence W. down the said sike till you come at Blew Tarne[8] alias Sunbiging Tarne, a ¼ of which is due to this lordship – Thence N. \ where Orton found ~~in~~ & Asby com in by a streight line to Keldhead where Ceüke Beck springs. Thence N.E. down the ~~Keld Beck~~ said beck to Waterhouses where wee began.

And note as above:
{Divisions I} There are 2 Lordships in this parish: Sc. Crosby & Little Musgrave.
In Crosby is the church & a school in it, part being set of[f] by that purpose by Dr Potter, bishop of Carleol.[9] It seems calld Crosby from an high cross at a place calld Langcross, 3 twelve score [paces] E. from the church in Kirkby way.[10]
The church dedicated to St Andrew is a pretty stone building but without a steeple, on the top of an high mount or hill.[11]

{Church}[12]
{Body 13, quire 10: Long.
Body 10. Qu. 6: Brod.
neat low but substantial pillars.
Arch[es] betwixt, 3 circular.[13]
Musgraves Armes in stone, old – west End of the quire.}[14]
{James Scaife.}[15]

[Machell's Notes, III.166B]

*{Note here that Crosby clames Raset Pike &c.}
{Succession & family of Musgrave.}
{How many freeholds in W[arcop] & quote Lord Whartons tenements.}[16]
An account of Stean Rase.
Query of Marshalls priviledge in Kirkby [Stephen] and the L[…][17] stone in the church.

[6] Ravenstonedale.
[7] MS: 'streight over to the ~~old dike~~ \ ~~end of~~ beginning of / moss to old dike-steed.'
[8] Blea Tarn.
[9] Barnabas Potter, bishop of Carlisle from 1629 to 1642: David Weston, *Carlisle Cathedral History* (Carlisle, 2000), 142.
[10] The road to Kirkby Stephen.
[11] The church is indeed on top of a steep hill. It has a small 13th-century tower (an enclosed belfry) corbelled out over a middle buttress: see Hyde & Pevsner, 307.
[12] Information relating to the church is written in pencil and obscured by the right-hand margin.
[13] The text here has perished in a fold of the paper, but see below.
[14] This last phrase is placed near the binding and is partly illegible.
[15] Machell's Informant.
[16] This note is written at right-angles to the page: some unclear words have been omitted.
[17] Unclear word.

[III.166A][18]

[The Church]

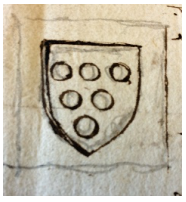


Figure 1.10.2. Musgrave Arms. III.166A.

At the N. end, on the side of the Town.
The Church \ is / dedicated to St Andrew (on which day their feast was kept).[19] It is a pretty \ tite / building on the top of a very high hill or mount, ergo sometimes calld Crosby Hill, but in writeings Crosby Garret; perhaps upon the said occasion, the tops & highest rooms in houses being called garrets. There is no steeple, but 2 little bells hung in [blank]; a clock in the church; one row of pillars with 3 circular arches – the pillars low but thick & substanciall & well carved on the capitalls. It is long in the body: 13 passes, broad 10; the quier long, 10, & broad, six; the seates in the quier well wainscoted & the altar raled. At the east end of [it] on the outside above the window are Musgraves armes which looke almost as old as the church. It stands ~~east~~ \ W. / from \ K[irkby Stephen] 2 miles; from Apelby S.E. 6; from Brough S.W. 4 miles. / {Bea\c/on hill S.W. ½ mile ab Ecclesia.}

{The parsonage house is S. west just under the hill within a stone throw.

[Tithes]
{Hay money for corn tithe. Sad!}[20]
{Nout Geld & sergiant oates[21] by som; all but demane.}

[Chapel]
There has bin a chaple on this side the water directly west from Smeardale Hall[22] distant ½ a quarter, at a place called Chapple Well, which springs in the chaple [garth].[23] It will cuer ever[y] scab on man or horse. T.[24] The ruines of which [chapel] do yet appear \ about 1 yard high in som places: 17 long, 5 brod. The well springs on the S. side at 6 yards distance on the right hand the way to Smerdale. / But no houses near it, which makes me suppose it to have bin an hermitage. There are steps over to it from Smardale Hall.

[School]

The schoole is a little piece taken of \ the church / at the W. end of north Ile, & enclosed with good wainscot raile & ballister, which is rather an ornament to the church than otherwise; which was formerly don by the permission of Bishop Potter. The endowment, being 5^{li} 6s and 6d per annum, was

[18] Scrap page, 37cm x 21cm, folded into the volume
[19] 30 November.
[20] A very poor exchange.
[21] Nout geld was a manorial rent, originally paid in cattle, but often commuted. Sergeant corn was a feudal levy paid in corn. *OED*. It was typically paid by all customary and freehold tenants: Michael Bush, *The Pilgrims' Complaint: A Study of Popular Thought in the Early Tudor North* (Abingdon, 2009). Nicolson and Burn refer to it as 'the serjeants oats or bailiff corn', *N&B1*, 292.
[22] Smardale Hall.
[23] MS: 'There has bin a chaple \ on this side the water directly west from / Smeardale Hall \ distant ½ a quarter ~~at the beckside within this lordship in~~ \ at a place called ~~Chapple Garth~~ / Chapple Well, which springs in the chaple.'
[24] Perhaps Testis, i.e. witness.

settled upon it by one Mr Fallowfield, Rector of Crosby,[25] and several others in the town & parish in manner following:[26]

[III.165]

To the School of Crosby Garret

Imprimis Anno Domini 1629.[27]	
\ Given the / 12[0] April, by Richard Fallowfield, }	
Parson of Crosby Garret 3[li] : use to goe to the maintenance of a schoolmaster there}	3. 0. 0.
and when there is no schoolmaster, to be given to the poore. }	
The said 3[li] remaine to the said use for ever. }	
Item by	
{Henry Robinson to the same use	0. 6. 8.
Thomas Wilson	0. 13. 4.
James Skaife by an order to the same use	0. 10. 0.
Margaret, wife of James Richardson	0. 6. 8.
Margaret Skaife	0. 13. 4.
Thomas Johnson by order the same of	1. 0. 0.
Ed. Skaife	1. 0. 0.
John Skaife, parish clerke	0. 10. 0.
The overplus of the schoolhouse moneys by consent	0. 6. 3
Humphrey Bell	1. 0. 0.}

1648.
Given by John Symson of Sandford to the use of the school at Crosby-Garret and Warcop, 5s per annum, to be paid one year to Crosby and another to Warcop, due \ to be paid / every Candlemas out of the lands of Rob. Peart & Bartholmew Skaif of Sandford. And for want of a school at Crosby the said 5s to be payed to Warcop. And for want of a school at Warcop to be payed to Crosby Garret. The first year of the payment to Crosby was in the year of our Lord, 1648.

1662. April 26.
Given by [Blank] Richardson at his death to the use of the school, 2[li], & for repareing the wooden bridge in the way to Smerdale, 1[li].

1664. June 7.
Given by James Richardson, balif, by his last will & testament for keeping a school master for advanceing learneing, 2[li].

1667. April 8.
By Reginald Robinson in his last will &c. unto the schoolstock & poore of Crosby Garret, 10s: Sc. 5s to either.

1668.
Per John Skaife by his last will &c. to the school stock, for advanceing learneing, 1[li], & to Smerdale wood-bridge, 10s.
1668. February 6.
By the general consent of all the inhabitants of Crosby Garret (except James Bell, Thomas Taylor, Thomas Robinson of Pots & Henry Robinson) to the schoolstock of Crosby Garret for the advanceing of good learneing, 4[li] 4s,[28] which they received of George Richardson of Mazin-slack for his

[25] Richard Fallowfield, rector of Crosby Garrett from 1595 to 1636. CCED.
[26] MS: 'which was formerly don by the permission of ~~Endowmt~~ Bishop Potter. The endowment, ~~whereof was settled~~ being ~~about~~ 5[li] 6s and 6 per annum, was was settled upon it by one Mr Fallowfield, Rector of Crosby, and several other in the town & parish in manner following.'
[27] Most of this table is reproduced in *N&BI*, 532.
[28] 4 guineas.

priviledge in the fell or common of Crosby Garret, and for a little parcel of ground for a garth beside his house. & it is the desire of the said inhabitants that the said summ be imployed for the maintenance of a schoolmaster at Crosby Garret for ever. 1676.

[III.166]

1676. July 6.
Given by Elizabeth Robinson, widow, & Reynald Robinson, administrators to the above said Henry Robinson to the schoolstock of Crosby Garret &c., 5s 4d, being the whol which the said Henry Robinson received & reserved of his part of the sum received of the said George Richardson &c. {See more & below.}

1682. April 17.
Given by Reynald Robinson (younger brother of the foresaid Henry) unto the schoolstock &c. by his last will &c., 10^{li}, & 10^{li} more \ the use thereof / to be distributed every Easter to the poore of the parish.

1683. April 17.
Given by ~~George Robertson~~ \ James Bell / by his last Will & Testament, 50s to the use of the schoolstock and 50s more to the poore.

1676.
William Robertson by his last Will & Testament 10. 0. 0.

1684.
Given by Thomas Bowland by his last Will & Testament &c., 40^{li} to the use of the teaching schoolmaster of Crosby Garret forever, and 40^{li} to the use of the poore.

Out of the Register Booke

The use of the whole stock now, at 6^{li} in the hundred, comes to	5^{li} 4s 0d.
To which add Sandford every other year	0. 5. 0

And they agree give him quarterage, 1s 6d per annum towards his table.
Which I mention at large as an honourable memorial of their pious intentions; & to \ be / a precedent of the like munificence for advancement of learneing in other places.

Schoolmaster: Richard Lademan,[29] who succeeded Edw. Cleseby, who succeeded Christopher Granger, 24 years master.[30]
Mr Dento[n], rector, succeeded ~~Musgrave~~ \ Edmond Maleveres[31] / who succeeded Fallowfield.

[III.163][32]

{Little Musgrave Lordship}

There is a \ little / demane belonging to it. They have built a little house on part of a purchased tenement, where they keep Court Barron and have weif & stray. Boones &c. accustomed.
They say that Little & Great Musgrave were both one lordship till Sir Phillip dyed – that he gave Little Musgrave & Soulby to his son, Sir Christopher.[33]

[29] Richard Laidman was licensed schoolmaster on 3 June 1691; Edward Cleasby was schoolmaster from 1678 to 1689. CCED.
[30] Christopher Grainger was schoolmaster at Crosby Garret from (at least) 1664 to 1675. CCED. CCED records for this school begin in 1664.
[31] Edmund Mauleverer (or Mauliverer) succeeded Richard Fallowfield in 1662 but resigned in 1663. Machell noted the appointment of Thomas Denton (1663-91) but failed to mention that Denton succeeded a parliamentary appointee, Christopher Jackson: see *N&BI*, 531; see also Bishops' Registers, CAC(C). DRC1/4: 'Maulverer's surrender of Crosby Garrett to Bishop Stern' (p.238), and 'Denton's admission and institution into the Rectory of Crosby Garrett, November 1663' (p.239); see also CCED.
[32] Great and Little Musgrave entries are both on this page.
[33] Sir Philip Musgrave, 2nd Baronet (1607-1678).

{There is a bottom sometimes standing with water that comes down from Bleatarne to Little Musgrave, where it is somewhat mossy, so might give name from the 1ˢ intack draining the moss. No Hall in memory. N. east from the church about 2 miles.}
There is a bridge between Little & Great Musgrave: Sc. at Great Musgrave.

{Families & Houses}
Families: 11 \ or 12 / families, of which freeholds, 1 freehold (besides the Lord), the rest arbitrary to Christopher Musgrave of Hartley Castle who hath also a little house here, 2 storyes high (covered only with straw), which was purchased lately by Sir Philip Musgrave. The lands perteineing serve for a demaine but where the old Hall & old demaine stood is not now known. {3 houses on the east side & 9 or 10 on the west.} And 3 stragling houses: Plulands,[34] Ulbanke,[35] Tuet Hil.[36]

[Things Remarkable]

[III.166A]

[Stone]
{Quarries of limestone which rise as large as a table. Cowling stone; rud huen.}[37]

[III.163]

[Fairy Beads]
[1.] Pitts of rud near Tuet Hill N.W. with fairy beads,[38] mostly read clay; & som blew & white clay in the mires under the blew.

[I.539]

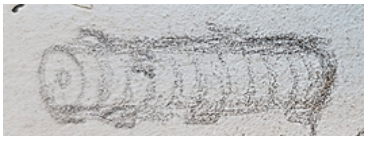


Figure 1.10.3. 'Fairy Beads'. I.539.

[2.] {The krest[39] of a Tobaco pipe stopper[40] and reserved for that use, which have knots like bristles of a Rudd snagged of, & therefore greatly resemble wood. But grow in small joyntes fixed one to another like an heap of cakes, ~~whence~~ which without much[41] force may [be] divided; & therefore th[ey] call em Fairy bedes.}

[III.163]

[Great Store]
Crosby Common feeds sheep in winter & fats them in sommer, & is such sound earth that they never rot on it.

---

[34] Plowlands.
[35] Hull Bank.
[36] Towfit Hill.
[37] See 'a rock calld Cowlin stone alias C\r/oblinstones.' III.166B.
[38] Fairy beads: the disc-shaped ring-like stem ossicles of fossil crinoids (encrinites). *OED*. 'The remains of encrinites are in some places so abundant as to form thick beds of limestone… and when these, hard as marble, are polished they present a most beautiful surface …The little joints of the stems are often found detached, with a hole through the centre; these are known as Fairy Beads, and as St Cuthbert's Beads; and when strung together were used as a rosary': William and Robert Chambers (eds), *Chambers's Information for the People, 5th Edn, Vol. 1*. (London and Edinburgh, 1874), Geology, 28.
[39] The word is indistinct. It is possibly a variant of 'crest', the head, summit, or top of anything. *OED*. But query this (as Machell often remarked).
[40] Machell is probably referring to a pipe tamper. The first recorded examples were made in the 17th century. Although wood and bone examples are common, 'It would be surprising if, apart from the materials mentioned, almost anything that could be cut, moulded or generally fashioned had not at some time or another been made into tobacco stoppers that now lie neglected, their purpose unknown.' Roger Fresco-Corbu, 'Stoppers for the Pipe Smoker', *Country Life*, 8 June 1961, 1343-45.
[41] MS. 'must'.

{Great store of crawfish (!) in Crosby mil beck near the mill. & more plenty in Ceüke beck.

[Birds]
Bitterns that build in the bog called Sods, W. of the town.
Sparrow hawks build in Milflat wood S.E. 1 mile.}
Wild duck build in Sunbigines Tarn, Smerdale Gill.
Morecocks on Crosby Fell.

{About 20 years [ago], Lancelot Lancaster sayes that he was [asked] by a neighbour to shoote a strange bird which was feeding on a dead horse in Sods Close, which ~~he broke~~ beat all the doggs off from the horse. He broke his wing with shot, but could not take hold on him till he pressed his wing down with the but of his gun – and so tooke him up & tyed up his bill. He was as bigg as a goose \ & much like one / but his beake was like a bitterns in shape, only thicker & shorter – of the colour of a goose bill.[42] His neck was as long as a goose neck but as thick as a mans leg, being extended with the carion that he had devoured. The colour of his neck & body \ & tale / was white, his wings very black. His legs coulered & webd like a goose. {John Wilson, living, took it for an eagle and calld him to kill it.}[43] {Memorandum that Thomas Hutchinson of Little Musgrave killd an osprey of[f] the Quire of Great Musgrave. It had one foot with the talons like an hawk; the other webbd; above 50 years since.}

[III.164][44]

The same men, Hutchinson & Wilson, saw a white raven, as white as milke, which they could not believe to be one, tho he[45] had the shape, but yet his crookeing as he flew convincd them – 20 years since.

[III.166A]

[Bones]
{A little flat at Hen-Fell yate on the right hand as you go to Kendal, S.W. ab Ecclesia. Bones found in it \ about 4 yards about / Eadem temp. Richard Granger.[46] \ & west from this ¼, Raset Pike,[47] clamed here bones as many as filld his breches to Eden Hall by Sir Philips man.[48] Michael Scots made Apr'an string.}[49]
{A man in Crosby calld Lancelot has 24 fingers & toes compleat & perfect. The redundance is in the little toes.}[50]

[42] MS: '… but his beake was like a bitterns \ in shape only / ~~but~~ thicker & shorter & ~~yallow like~~ \ of the colour of /a goose bil.'
[43] Perhaps (noting the next sentence) this was an osprey.
[44] MS.III.165 contains the following struck-through numbers: {7.84, 5.82, 6.83, 7.84, 8.87, 9.88, 9.76, 1.27, 2.9.8, 3.62}.
[45] MS: 'the'.
[46] 'At the same time': informant: Richard Granger.
[47] Rayseat.
[48] A complicated margin-note, which could perhaps read: 'Bones found in it at the same time [as] bones found west from this a quarter [of a mile at] Raset Pike, as many as filled his breeches, [and taken] to Edenhall by Sir Philips man: ex inf. Richard Granger'.
[49] 'Michael Scots made Apr'an string.' This is difficult; some readers will understand the meaning of it, but this editor does not. Was Machell referring to 'a prang', i.e. a forked tool like a hay-fork (see *OED*) to carry the bones? Alternatively, was the string from around the knees of someone's breeches used to carry the bones to Edenhall? Many thanks to Haydn Charlesworth for the last (highly imaginative) theory.
[50] 'Redundancy': superfluity, excess; abundance. *OED*.

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 11]

[Parish of Crosby Ravensworth]

[I.457]

Crosby Raven
{See a description inter quaeres}[1]

[**Machell's Initial Notes**]

{Parts of Crosby}
To Crosby Ravensworth Church belong Crosby Ravensworth \ with / Banke and Row, Birbeck Fells, \ Salter Ing houses / Maulds Meaburne, & Regill.

The Church is dedicated to St Lawrence (Mr Sanderson)[2] – & the impropriation was purchased by the Bellinghams of Gathorn in the time of Henry 8. or Edward 6. But Sir Philip Musgrave of Musgrave & Hartley has the presentation to the vicaridge. On the east this parish is the parish of Askby, west Shap, north Morland, south Oreton.

The name
Robert de Crosby conveys land in Gasegill Field lyeing betwixt the Rivilett of Hellergil & Southepoll; this in the time of Richard de Blenkinsop who lived Anno 1. Edward 1. [1272-1273].

Lordships 1. Regill \ & Regill Grange / [2.] Mauds Meaburne. [3.] Crosseby.

{Meabourn} {Thornburrow family}
I finde one Rowland Thorburrow de Meaborne Esq. But whether it be of Meaborne \ Kings, / or if soe whether of this which is Mauds M. or of Kings Meaburn \ in Morland parish / [I] have not yett determined; neither in what Kings Reigne have I sett downe in my notes except Temp. Richard 2. [1377-1399]. Circa forsan 9. ejus Regni, sed q.? if the Act for esquires was made so soon.[3]

1. {Regill}
Reagill was anciently writt Renegill & gave name to a family. Robert de Renegil, 27. Henry 3. [1242-1243] {test. è cart. Antiq.}[4] Regill with the g\r/ainge belonged formerly to Shapp Abby; & now since the desolution, to the Whartons ~~Barrons~~ of Wharton Hall, Barons of this kingdome.

2. Mauds Meaburne, belongs now to the Lowthers.[5] Dr Addison \ borne there. /

3. Crosseby Ravensworth, Banke & Row, which \ are / parts of the same Lordship, belong[ed] formerly to the Pickerings (there is a parke there). Afterwards to the Lowthers of Lowther, & old Sir John bestowed it in Dower with his Daughter to Mr Dodsworth of Yorkeshire; & he dyeing lately Anno [blank][6] gave it to one Baly the son of Mr Baly of Penrith, a practitioner in physick who lived att Penrith & was commonly called Dr Baly; which Baly was his servant; & behaved himself so well that tis ~~master~~ thought he could not bestow it better.

[1] 'See a description among the queries.'
[2] Machell's informant. For confusion relating to the dedication of the church see *N&B1*, 495.
[3] 'Around his 9th year [1385-86]. But query if the Act for 'Esq' [as style] was made so soon.'
[4] 'Witness: an ancient deed.'
[5] In 1587 the Lowthers tried to build a Court House on Meaburn Green, but the tenants, led by one Bess Fletcher, pulled it down and attacked the builders. J.T Relph, *Chronicles of Crosby Ravensworth* (Crosby Ravensworth, 1992), 25.
[6] Sir John Lowther lived from 1605 to 1675.

[I.458]

No chapels.

In this parish are these villages – 1. Crosby Ravenswath; 2. Maulds Meaburne 3. Gilse, a little village. 4. Oddendale, a dale. 5. Harberwen, an Hamlet of 9 or 10 houses. 6. Wickerslacke, an Hamlet of 8 or 9. 7. Regill, a little village, whereto Grainge [is] the demaisne. 8. Drivevers[7] – an hamlet of 4 or 5 – & Gathorn Hall belonging to the Bellingham[s] – Mr John Lowther maryed the Heiress – & Craketrees, a single house freehold of 40^{li} per annum, which ~~as I remember~~ belonged to Lancaster. Mrs Lancaster a widow lived upon it in the time of King James [1603-1625], her eldest son then liveing upon an estate which he had at Sockbridge; by whome I suppose it was sold to Dr Dawes, & so was Regil-Grainge much about the same time by Mr Thomas Wharton, who or whose ancestour had it of the House of Wharton.

{The Rectory}
There is 5^{li} 10. 8^{d} paid since the sale of the kings foe[8] farme Rents by James Bellingham of Leavins Esq. out of the Rectory of Crosby Ravensworth: è Lit. à M^{ro} Jacson de Schol. Apelbiæ: Dat. May 12. 77.[9] {?} q. What foe farme Rents.

[III.171][10]

I.
Crosby Ravens.

Crosby is a vicaridge in the diocese of Carleol rated in the First Fruits Office at 7. 13. 4., payeth tenths 15^{s} 4^{d} & for procurations & synodals [blank][11]

{1.} Parish Bounder

{East}*
It is bounded on the east with the parish of St Laurence Apelby, ~~from which tis divide~~ beginning at Seat Hill and thence proceeding to Gathorne groundes \ in a direct line / till you com at the wall calld Harding; thence by hedges and walls till you com at a Sike which runns by Gathorn Hall {½ a mile below it} where Asby parish begins; so up the sike till you com at Gathorn-Ash-Trees; thence up the moore in a streight line to the 2 standing stones; thence up Ashgate to an hill called Lingy-Low, & so to Scar-Top, a little S.E. from Pickering Close†. On the south it is bounded with Orton parish beg[inn]ing at the Scar-Top aforesaid & so directly westward by the S[c]arr Top as heaven water divides till you com at the 4 or 5 great stones which are a little westward from Bousfield hamlet. Thence by a direct line over the more, to Sprotkeld ~~House~~; thence (following the way directly over the moore) to \ an house called / Higher \ or Over / Scales {one house so called}. Thence downe the lane to Birkbeck and so up the water of Birkbeck till you com at an hamlet called Scoutgreen inclusively‡. So up to the force, an from the force by the wall to Gibson-Hill; thence directly over the fell to the Cloven-Stone on the top of Stakely & thence directly \ westward / over the moss & through the midle of Demmingfield Close \ called Demming Dubs / to the other sike; thence up the said sike till ~~Kendall road~~ \ the road twixt Shap & Kendall / cross the said sike {where Shap parish begins.}

{West}
On the west \ it is bounded / with the parish of Shap from the said sike, following the said road down toward Shap to a place called Broken Cross; thence directly northwards to Wastell Beck; thence down

[7] Dryevers.
[8] Fee Farm: see the English Glossary.
[9] 'Taken from a letter from Mr Jackson of Appleby School, dated 12 May 1677.'
[10] Also numbered p.1. Pages III.171 to III.178 are slightly smaller than most pages in this volume (29cm long as distinct from 30cm; 18cm wide, as distinct from 19cm), suggesting that they once formed one of Machell's 'little books'. Their marginalia are too close to the binding to read clearly.
[11] Synodals 4s and Procurations 2s 8d (totalling 6s 8d): 'Valor Ecclesiasticus', 1535; see John F. Curwen, *Later Records Relating to North Westmorland or the Barony of Appleby*, CWAAS Record Series 8 (Kendal, 1932), 302-24.

the said beck to Wastel Foot, where it enters Birkbeck; thence by a way to the house calld Beck Head within this said parish; thence along the wall belonging

[Machell's Notes: III.171]

*?
†{Clerke Birkbeck sayes they goe beyond the bounds of.}
‡{Memorandum: the foote of Birkbeck fell is in the parish of Orton, though in Crosby Lordship.}
{~~Sprot, hare, fary-stones, freeholds, course of river Livennet head~~, fairy stones}
{Crosby. Patrone Sir Philip Musgrave, sayes Dug[dale's] booke, but query? if not a mistake (for I take Mr Belingham) for Crosby Hall}.

[III.172]

to the grounds of the said house and div[id]eing them from Gaud busk grounds till you com at an highway called Galloway Gate (which heads from Regil towards Kendal);[12] so northwards by the said way till you com at Annawell* in the parish of Shap. Thence \ agane / on the said way till you come at ~~a sike about 6 score yards of called~~ Fawmer Skar; thence directly north to Newintake-house \ inclusively; / thence by the walls about the grounds of the said house inclusively till you com at Sand pot ~~by~~ \ at / the starting stone of Stricklandhead Rase; so ~~directly~~ downe the said Rase till you \ com / to Castlehows house at Regil-Skar; thence westward ~~by a wall~~ on the road twix Apelby & Shap till you com to Trainrig-Beck; thence down the said beck till you com at a stone on the more with a † upon it where the Lordships of Regill, Newby, Shap & Little Strickland do all meet together.

[North]
It is bounded on the north by Morland parish from the said † by &c.†[13] to Kiveriggs Stone; thence eastward on an hill Dowpin-Side, by a long row of stones \ directly after / to Lile-Intack at Threeplands; thence by the wall of the N. side of the Lile-Intack, to Threepland-Gill-Sicke; thence down the said sike to Lowend-Well; thence eastward by an hedge till you com at Regil-Mask; & so on by the same hedge down Regil-Mask (to page 177).[14]

Machell's Notes: III.171]

*{The[y] say is calld from an old woman calld Annas who was drowned [in] it, which is said to eb & flow.}
†(?)

[III.177][15]

inclusively till you com at Lowmore; thence from the Dike-nooke directly east by the way \ which leads from Maske-end / to High Whitbur \ till you com at Livennit; / thence ~~from High Whitbur~~ down Livennit to the foote of Lile-beck – Thence up Lile-beck to Crabstack-grassing. Thence by an Hedge on the N. Side of Crabstack-grassing till you com at an Highway (which leads from Kings-Meaburn to Dryvivers yeat). And so up the said way till you com at Seat-hill where wee began*.

[2. The Church]

{Body 31; Quier 13}
This church lyes S.W. from \ the town of / Appelby at iiij miles distance.
The church &c. \ dedicated to St Leon\ard /, is white huen stone / & is a fair building with a tall steeple or tower, having 3 good bells & a clock in it. The body of the church is in length about 31 yards \ broad 15,[16] / with 2 iles & 2 small pillars & 4 pillasters on either side; & resemble a † by 2 other arches riseing off pilasters[17] afore the quier doer, which opens the view into the 2 iles. The Quire is about 13 yards long.

[12] Galloway Stone: The name suggests a link with Scottish drovers and might have been be a marker for droves crossing Crosby Ravensworth fell, heading south. See Peter Roebuck, 'Cattle-droving through Cumbria after the Union: the Stances on the Musgrave Estate, 1707-12', *CW3,* 12 (2012), 143-58, at 143-44.
[13] Here, a 6cm gap suggests a blank space to be filled in later.
[14] This page reference appears to be in Bishop Nicolson's hand.
[15] Also numbered p.3.
[16] The numeral '5' has been superimposed over another numeral, possibly '3'.
[17] MS: 'pillallaster.'

In the East window are these Coates of Armes
1. Parted per pale: 1. Argent a saltier \ manch[18] / Gules; 2. Ermine a chiefe & frette Gules; which I take to be Threlkeld & Thornburrow.
2. Parted per pale: 1. Defaced, 2. Thornburrow ut supra.[19]
3. In a small quarry lately put in – Bellinghams arms \ of Gathorne Hall / (now also of Levins \ who are ~~now~~ the patrones & impropriators in right of that house) / Sc. Argent, 3 bugles Sable tipd Or, lined Gules.



Figure 1.11.1. Crosby Ravensworth Church. East Window. III.177.

On the north side of the quier under an arch betwixt the Lords quier & it, is a fair through erected of Hewn stone on the sides, with Escutchions upon it but no arms \ at all; / & a large gray ma[r]ble on the top 3 yards long & a yard & quarter broad, \ which seems to be the founders.

The church yard is very spaciouse & level \ conteineing about 2 acres & / sett about with trees; & there are 2 stone coffins \ in it / which ~~appears out of the ground~~ \ peepe above / ground, one on the N. & the other on the South side, \ which hath bin the fashion of burying here. / {2 crosses in it, one of them opposite to the quier and the other east from it near the low end of the church yard. And talke of another; from which multiplicity of † it might take its name, Crosby.} And a fryery adjoyneing the N. side of the church yard.[20]

[Machell's Notes: III.177]
*[Informants] Mr William Wilkinson; Lanc. Thwaites.[21]
{Out of the Haltons & Kirkbyes Register, p.141: I finde anno year 1311 Pontificatus,[22] that John Abbot of Whitby and his convent had then obt[ained] the parish church of Crosby Ravensworth to their own proper use & would thereby[23] intruede into the chu[rch] & manner of Oreton & the houses and close of the Prior and Convent of Coningsheaved & the great & smal tithes thereto belonging.}[24]

[III.178]

[3.] {The division into manners}

There is in this parish 4 constablewicks: 1. Crosby Ravensworth; 2. Maulds Meaburn; 3. Banke & Raw; 4. Birkbeck Fell; yet but 3 entire Lordships.

[18] 'Manch' has been written directly above 'saltier' in different ink.
[19] See the Latin Glossary.
[20] 'There is a tradition of a friary having adjoined the eastern end of the churchyard, and there appears to be remembrance of it in the names, Monksgarth, Monks-barn, and Monks-bridge', C.J. Gordon, 'Crosby Ravensworth Church', *CW2*, 8 (1908), 203-33, at 207.
[21] These two men gave Machell the bounder information. William Wilkinson was vicar of Crosby Ravensworth, 1685-1708. CCED. In 1696, he joined the anti-Jacobite 'Association' for the protection of William III: Curwen, *Later Records*, 302-24.
[22] 'In the pontificate of' [following word illegible]. The pope in 1311 was Clement V.
[23] This word is unclear; 'thereby' approximates to the meaning.
[24] The monks of the abbeys of Whitby and Conishead argued over the appropriation of Crosby Ravensworth church by the Abbot and Convent of Whitby. In June 1311, a tithe dispute relating to Orton, claimed by the said abbot in right of the abbey's impropriation of that church, was agreed with the prior of Conishead. The Bishop of Carlisle then absolved the prior of Conishead from the sentences of excommunication and interdict which he had incurred. See the Register of Bp. Halton, CAC(C), DRC/1/1, 141. See also, Curwen, *Later Records*, 302-24.

Lordships or manners: Sc. Crosby, Mauds-Meaburn \ or Mauldis / & Regil, \ & 2 small hamlets / adjoyneing to them as if the former had bin members of it & belonging to it […][25] Bank and Raw*.

Crosby, where the church stands, is a considerable village \ of itselfe, pleasantly standing in a woody gill, / haveing the church, a free school & the manner house. In it a stone bridge & 2 milnes. The school is a neat little handsom new building at[26] the E. end of the church yard, 2 storyes high &c.

The Manner house \ Hall / is a fair Tower house \ overshadowed with Trees / ~~The enterance~~ [It] had formerly a mote round about it & it is hard by the church. In the Tower where you enter are 2 fair windows \ one above the other, / ~~with neat work about them, and this~~ \ of no vulgar workmanship.[27] / Ballasters at the Top insteed of Battlements, and Coate of Armes above the arched dooer†.
And at the turneing end of a Rolle which runns above the Arch over the dooer are these letters ingravd \ ~~but / lately cutt in the old~~ worke: ID FD, for John Dodsworth & Frances Dodsworth, who repared the said Tower & cut these letters in the old worke, which by the coate seems to have bin erected long since by some of the Pickerings.
In the upper room is an Impaled Coate of Lowther with Fleming: Sc. Or, 6 anulets Sable Gules, a fret Argent, with their ~~propr~~ \ mantles & / crists, and in a scrowle under neath \ are these figure denoteing the year / 1617 {when that glass was placed there & perhaps that new building added, 1617.}



Figure 1.11.2. Crosby Ravensworth. Manor House Arms. III.178.

This house is said to be haunted with a spirit which is onely discovered by ~~its operations~~ \ the effects of it, / as knocking at dooers & opening them, opening the casements, displaceing of trenchers; which it one time did: laying them in thres triangular wise al over the flooer. Mrs Dodsworth, the present lady thereof, affirmes that it tooke her on\c/e by the finger when she was in \ her / bed. But no harme is don by it, nor was it ever visible to any but to one Mary Mather, about 60 years since, who (go back to page 173)[28]

[Machell's Notes: III.178]

*Gentlemens houses?
†Courts le[e]t & bar[on]?

[III.173]

is sayed to have seen it in the shape of a man. And the \ first / beginning of this disturbance was said to be occasioned thus. There came a young gentleman that clamed the estate, & laying there al night, his clothes were found in his chamber next morning but his body was gon.[29] And it was supposed that he was murthered, being never seen more. And there is this probability in it; that when Mr Gabettas

[25] Several words here are obscured by the binding.
[26] As this word is blotted, the transcription is approximate.
[27] This passage is repeated, with added information, in *N&B1*, 499.
[28] This note is in Bishop Nicolson's hand.
[29] MS: 'There came a young gentleman that ~~layd~~ clamed ~~to~~ the estate \ & laying there al night / ~~and~~ his clothes were found \ in his chamber next morning / but his body was gon.'

sub sherife of Westmorland[30] farmed[31] the house & filled up the mote afore the court dooer about 25[32] years since, the bones of a man was \ were / found in the banke, which being so near to the church yard, it cannot be thought that a man who dyed his own natural death should be buryed there.

Other hamlets belonging this Lordship are:
Gilce,[33] about 7 houses \ 1 mile S. from the church. /
Olendale alias Odendale[34] \ 1 mile S.W. / about 8 houses.
Harberwen 1mile W., 4 houses.
Blasterfield, a single house 1m. S.
Birkbeck-Fells, 20 houses, 2 miles & ½ S.W.
\ And / the Lodge – a single house 1 mile S. which \ the / last has bin formerly of the demaine, & well stord with deer. But now is sold of and a freehold estate of 120 li. per annum. {Blacklocks} There is black game in it.

{[4.] Rarityes}

In the grounds belonging to the Hall, Sc. Bowlands, an hare was shot \ som few years ago / which ~~had~~ gave milke at 3 pups, one in her bag, downed,[35] & 2 knitt;[36] which Lanc. Thwates, a young man now living & an excellent rural poet, disbelieving, was convinced of the possibility of it by killing one himselfe 12 years agoe on a Whitsunday Eve at \ a place / Milbanke

[III.174]

(with a Grahame), which gave milke at 2 pups, had 2 downed over which movd and were quick, & 3 that were knit like little \ young / mice.[37]

[5.] And other remarquable?

The river Livennet springs in this Lordship at Crosby Gill Head \ about / 1 mile and ½ S. from the church at a place calld Blackdub, where King Charles 2 ~~got his din~~ \ sat down & dined / when he brought in the Scots ~~about~~ \ 16 /51 and dra[n]ke of that water.[38] It hides itselfe here & appears agane at 40 yards distance; thence it runns to Crosby \ where a stone bridge calld Monke bridge.[39] / Thence to Mauds Meaburn near to the Hall. ~~Of Cap. Lowther~~ Thence by Kings Meaburn \ where / a wood bridge. ~~Thence~~ \ Thence by Wood Head to / to Cliburn Mile, where a wooden [...][40] Thence into Eden by Julian Bore[41] in the forrest of Whinfell.

[30] Thomas Gabetis. See the 'Catalogue of Sheriffs', in Machell's Preface, VI.595.
[31] Leased.
[32] The second numeral is blotted.
[33] Gilts. Originally this name would have appeared to be 'the Gills' – 'the ravines', and to have referred to the usable land below the exposed limestone between Crosby Gill and Ravens Gill or to Ravens Gill itself. But the later forms seem to indicate a manorial name: Gillses etc., from the surname Gills; this would account for the adaptations to Gilce, Gilts, which have been influenced by dialect. A gilt or gilse is a 'young sow'. See *Westmorland Place-Names*.
[34] Oddendale.
[35] Downed: covered with fur.
[36] Knit: having been conceived. *OED*.
[37] European brown hares are able to develop a second pregnancy while the previous litter is not yet delivered. 'This super-conception increases their reproductive success.' Source: 'Superconception: European brown hares, while pregnant with one litter, can start a new pregnancy', *Science Daily*, 22 September, 2010.
[38] The monument, carved by Thomas Bland of Reagill, is on Crosby Ravensworth Fell. On it is inscribed (in upper-case): 'Here at Black Dub the source of the Livennet King Charles the II regaled his army and drank of the water on his march from Scotland August 8 1651'.
[39] Monk Bridge, over the Lyvennett, to the north of the Vicarage: see Curwen, *Later Records*, 302-24.
[40] This word is partly obscured by the binding; presumably Machell was referring to another wooden bridge.
[41] Bower.

[6. Freeholds]

Freeholds: about 41, & most of them ancient yet doubtless purchasd.
Mr Robert Scaife of Blasterfield.
In Crosby: The Vicar; Lanc. Iön: under val.; James Fayrer; Tho. Lamb; Ed. Lamb; James Lamb obijt; James Wilkinson; Henry Dent; Will Thwaites pater; Lanc. Thwaites & Lanc. Thwaites of Holm Yeat; John Wilkinson; William Addison; John Iőn.

[Machell's Notes: III.174]
{A coyn of Richard found when I was there in the street: Feb 23 1688/9.}[42]

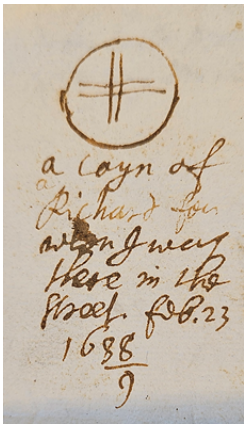


Figure 1.11.3. 'A coyn of Richard found … in the street. Feb. 23 1688/9'. III.174.

{? Query if there be not a campe or something like one in Youe-Close in Crosby demaine.}[43]
An uping stone called […][44]

[III.175][45]

Thomas Fa\y/rer; John Robinson; ~~Robert Scaife of Blasterfield~~.

About 20 in Birkbeck fels: {old all ~~purchased~~}

In Odendale: John Thwaites; Richard Iőn; Tho. Gibson; Tho. Dixon; Tho. Atkinson; Anthony Atkinson; John Rig: under val.

In Herberwen: Anthony Smith; Ed. Atkinson; James Kitchen; Lanc. Haton.

In Dalebankes: James Langhorn; Will Fa\y/rer; the heiress of Slakes.

[42] 'There' i.e. Crosby Ravensworth.
[43] Ewe Close: '… an ancient rectangular embanked enclosure and settlement site (certainly in use during the Roman period) on the course of the Roman road', *Westmorland Place-Names*. MS.III.176 repeats Machell's query about the camp.
[44] Scored-through text measuring 3cm is illegible here.
[45] Also numbered p.6.

[7.] The descent of the manner}

Lancelot Pickering*, son of Thomas, sold \ the Lodge†, being 120 li. per annum, to Mr Wilson / of Dallin Tower, who gave it in marriage with his daughter to Curwen Ralisons father.[46] And \ who repared the tower estates before he sold the manner to Sir John Lowther of Lowther about 44 years ago, who gave it [in] mariage with his daughter, Frances Lowther, to Mr John Dodsworth. He was a younger son of the Dodsworths of / Watless in Yorkshire, 4 miles from Richmont, who had isue: John, & Frances who dyed young.
And John the elder being an Oxford scholar went from there to the Ins of Court & afterwards dyed at Watless, leaveing this ~~whol~~ estate to Mr Frances Bayly \ 2 / son of Dr Baly of Penrith, sometime his servitor, & steward afterwards: \ a noble gift of a master to a servant. / Which Frances maryed one Mrs Mary Purl\e/y,[47] a Lincolnshire gentlewoman, by whom \ he had isue: / Margaret Baly, the now heiress thereof. The said Mary, her mother, was remaryed to \ one / Mr Robert Dodsworth, a Lincolnshire gentleman and ministers son, who holds \ it now / in the right of his wife, & has isue with her: George, John \ Rob. Obijt / Charles & James, twins.

[Machell's Notes: III.175]

*He maryed a Londoner.
†{Query of lodge.}
{A medicinal well near Sales in Birbeck Fell for sore eyes, scurvy &c., & seems to com of an iron mine. Slate, limestone & freestone all over.}

[III.176]

II

Mauds Meaburn [Notes]

½ mile N.E. the Hall is the manner of Meaburn Hall, a parke replenished with deer.[48]
{Lowther armes in glas?}
Captain Lowther brought pheasant into this country but has lost them all.
His tenements are generally freeholds, in number about 50 or 60.
And here was Dr Adison born, Dean of Lichfield. {Dr Adison born at Mauds Meaburn Hill.}[49]
{Here are coals within a bowshot; quarryes of white freestone, slate.}

{Descent}
It was purchased by \ Gleed[50] Sir John Lowther / in 8 tenements as they say, which make the demanes; and there was one Fletcher, next neighbour to the Hall, who built himselfe a fine house, part of which stands yet in the court, calld Fletchers Hall; who broke himselfe by it, & so sold his estate to the said Sir John. From him it descended to old Sir John \ the rich /and by him given to his 2nd son, Mr Richard Lowther, the now owner of it, who maryed Barbary, daughter of Mr Pricket of Rissel Castle in Yorkshire, by whom he had isue: 1. Richard, 2. Mary, 3. Frances: ob. s.p.[51] 2. Robert, Christopher, Mary.

[46] Robert Rawlinson, father of Curwen, see below.
[47] See *N&B1*, 499.
[48] This information is at the foot of III.175, but more properly belongs to III.176.
[49] Lancelot Addison (1632-1703), born at Maulds Meaburn; son of Lancelot Addison, 'a minister of God's word'. Matriculated at Queen's College Oxford 1650-51; BA 1654-55; MA 1657; DD 1675; prebendary of Salisbury 1678; dean of Lichfield 1683, *OAD*.
[50] Having a cast in one or both eyes; squint-eyed. The word can be transferred to character: *to gang gleed*: to go wrong. *OED*. Sir John Lowther had a reputation for being grasping in business dealings, see C. Phillips, 'Lowther, Sir John, of Lowther, first baronet (1605-1675), landowner and local politician'. *ODNB.* During the reign of James I, dissension was particularly strong between the Lowthers and their tenants in Crosby Ravensworth, 'the lords claiming an absolute estate in the tenements and the tenants insisting on [their] inheritance according to the custom of the manor. After various litigations [the] lords and their tenants came to a compromise.' See *N&B1*, 501, which quotes the terms of agreement.
[51] All three of whom died without issue.

{~~Crosby~~: acres by estimation onely, Mr Bellingham, patrone & impropriator?}
{A freehold ¼ west ab Ecclesia. A demolished chaple at Crake-Trees \ in the Lordship of / [Blank] Dr Dawes bought of Christopher Lancaster, Justice of the Peace: s.p.? Or by him of Pickering. 30. H.8. [1538-1539]. Q. It a freehold}

[III.174]

An up[p]ing stone called my Ladyes Moat,[52] {in Meaburn Lordship} erected by Anne, Countess of Pembroke 30 years since, where she could see 3 of her own castles. Here was a parke at Crosby Gill, ~~replenished~~ with deer belong to Crosby Hall – but now to Mr Curwen Rallison.[53]

[III.176]

III

[Reagill Notes]

{1mile N.} Regill is a manner where a <u>ruind chaple</u>, as by the names of <u>Chappel</u>gards & Chaplela[n]ds. It belongs to my Lord Wharton, where they have long bin Lords. One Mr Thomas Wharton sold ~~one ½ of~~ Regil Grange, which is supposed to be the manner house, & ½ of the demane, to Mr Lancelot Dawes, who had isue, William, who had isue, Lancelot, who had isue ~~she~~ by Fran[ces] daughter of Lawyer Fletcher & of Little Strickland, Thomas the heir & Lancelot. The other ½ sold to Gleed[54] Sir John Lowther and now it belongs to Meaburn Hall.
{Regil town is about ½ of a mile from the Hall or Regill Grange, and about a mile & ¼ from the church. Here was Mr Randal Sanderson born, who gave 6 score li.[55] & hereby erected a free-school for that Lordship.
{<u>Freeholds</u>} Mr Nicholas Thomlinson of Threeplands; Will. Wilkinson; Henry Wilkinson; Thomas White; Thomas Harrison.

{IIII}

Bank [Notes]

{12 score E., Banke \ 4 houses / is tenant right belonging to Gathorne Grange – the house of Mr Bellingham, which is in Asby Parish where they do Suit & Service. The Row at Brig End, E. 3.}[56]

[52] I.e. a mote, raised up for viewing or mounting.
[53] Curwen Rawlinson, see *N&B1*, 499-500.
[54] Second use of 'gleed'. See above.
[55] £120.
[56] The rest of this margin comment is obscured by the binding but appears to mention church lands. According to *N&B1*, Bank and Row belonged to the Threlkeld branch of the Pickerings but was sold to the Bellinghams of Over Levens, who sold it to Colonel James Grahame/Grahme: *N&B1*, 501-02.

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 12]

Parish of Dufton

[I.461][1]

[Machell's Initial Notes]

To Dufton parish church belongs Dufton. Dufton gave name to a Family: Simon de Duftona. Cotemp. & testis cum Thomas de Helebeck & Thomas de Muse-grave Vicom. West. s.d. sed circa 36. Henry 3.[2]

Sir X[t]opher Clapham tooke a Lease of the Lordship of Dufton (Temp. Oliveri Tyran?)[3] for 99 yeares, wherein the clause of waste being omitted,[4] ~~& the~~ he cutt downe all the wood called Dufton Wood, and sold it as I have bin informed, for more than the whole purchase cost him \ whole estate was worth. /

The Lordship seemes to have belongd to the Grastocks Barons of Graystock, & from them to have passed to the Dakers of Kirkoswald in Cumberland {Gen. de Dacres vide Inter Clifford in Apelby}[5] by reason of an heiress of the Grastocks matched into that familye. See the Armes in the church & at Kirkoswald Castle over the Gates, where they are quartered.

[I.276A]

Remarke [that] in Dufton Lordshipp, Precincts of three Dioces: viz. Bishopprick,[6] Chester & Carlisle, and three Lordships and three Parishes doe meet at a place calld Cauldron Snout in Tees Water.

[III.162A]

[The Church]

Ad Dufton church:	The body – L[ength] circa 10. B[readth] 8.
	The quier – L[ength] circa 8½. B[readth] 7.
	Little bells.
	Stales.[7] 2 yards full + Hecks[8] least.[9]
	high-backs ½ yard.
	Pasturage – a yard.[10]
	Low pars[onage]18 yards & 12 broad.

Parsonage S.W. ab Ecclesia about 40? at the foote of the banke on which the church stands.

[Comments relating to the images on III.162A]
Arms at the] 1[st] corse next the screne [Top left] Azure Gules.
And another of this second three escallops. [Centre right]
A Recapit[ulatio]: I have shewne you that

[1] Also numbered p.17.
[2] 'Witness with Thomas de Helbeck and Thomas de Musgrave, Sheriff of Westmorland [in a deed] sans date but c.36 Henry III (1251-52).'
[3] 'In the time of the tyrant, Oliver [Cromwell]'. During the Commonwealth, 1649-1660, no regnal date was applied. However, Oliver Cromwell assumed the title of 'Lord Protector' in December 1653. He died in September 1658; his son Richard was proclaimed Protector the next day but resigned in May 1659.
[4] There appears to have been no explicit ban in the lease on 'wasting' the property.
[5] 'General information on the Dacres, see among the Cliffords in Appleby.'
[6] Diocese of Durham.
[7] 'Stales': stalls. Old English: stal; Middle English–1600s: stalle; 1500: stale. *OED*.
[8] 'Heck': the lower half of a door; also, an inner door. *OED* .
[9] Unclear word.
[10] 'Pasturage' looks like 'passage' at first sight, were it not for Machell's indication that the word is abbreviated. William Nicolson discussed a suit brought by the patron and others, relating to the rector's 20-year 'claim to some pasturage', see Nicolson, *Misc. Accts*, 48-49.

3. Gules a dolphin Argent
Gules 3 escallops Argent. H. Lancaster with Lyon
Sable a single escallop & HONI SOIT QUI MAL Y PENSE
On the […[Or an escutcheon, an hand holding a dolphin. […][11]



Figure 1.12.1. Arms at Dufton Church. III.162A.

[III.161]

Dufton Parish

One constablewick consisting of Dufton; one vil. calld Keescliff:[12] \ but one row of houses, / the tenants of which belong to Mr Burton of Brampton,[13] but answer in the court of Dufton; & 2 or 3 houses at a place cald Birkdale, all within this Parish & Lordship. One gentlemans house lately erected: Dufton Hall. A school.

[Dufton Town] {Spring}
Tis a well built town & indiffirently Regular, having a venell of water which comes in near to head of the towne \ where the new Hall standeth / & so runns down the street to the low end thereof, where the old Hall hath stood. & serves all the town with water runing just before their dooers. And there is this remarkable in it; that after the current comes down from the fell, it seems in the crofts to run against ~~banke~~ \ fall / contrary to nature; & yet the bankes which containe it on both sides, & the current it selfe, is there very shallow.

[Machell's Notes: III.161]
{These are fell bred & forrest like people, not halfe so civilisd as the rest.}
{Get the will.}
{There was never man rid through Keescliff but he broake his neck.}

[11] The page foot has perished here and the text is tiny. As a result, the transcription here is incomplete.
[12] Keisley.
[13] See Long Marton Parish.

[III.162A]

[Knock]
Knock stand E. & W. At the east end are iiij tenements thought to have bin Knock Gill Hall. The being the fashion of a ditch & ramp[art] about the ground whereon it stands. And the other lands which belongs to them extendeth themselves as far as Knotgill, and are yet calld the Demain Lands. There is also a place calld Chaple F[l]at, where it is said Knock Chaple stood, p[arish] D[ufton] ch[urch].

[III.159]

The Boundary of Dufton

This parish is bounded on the south west with the Lordship of Brampton in Marton parish (being divided from it with the River Troutbeck from Millelay Foot at Brampton Pows (where the 3 Lordships of Marton, Brampton & Dufton meet, and not far from the Parsonage house of Long Marton), ascending eastward up the said River till you com at Flakebrigg by Espland Foot which is in the way that leadeth twixt Dufton & the Burrow of Apleby & near Brampton Hall.
Thence on the S. & the south east with Flakebridge Wood \ in Bongate parish, / from which tis divided by the said River Troutbeck (called here Burthet-Beck)*, till you com at a place called Murton-Knows. \ It bordereth pon Morton Lordship. / Thence agane with ~~the Lordship of Murton~~ the said parish, \ being divided from it / by the said Troutbeck (\ which / is called here Keyseley Beck) \ until you ascend to / Hi-keup-head where the said river springs & thence agane with the ~~said~~ Lordship of ~~Dufton~~ \ Murton / till you com at Masebeck[14] at a place which is called Dobson Mea Foote,[15] \ being divided from it / by a streight line or band of stone which is called Hirds. Thence again by Masebeck aforesaid, descending eastwards to Swathbeck-foote, where it comes into Masebeck. Thence agane on the south easte with the great Parish and Lordship of Brough, being divided from it by the foresaid Masebeck to Birkesike Foote where it comes into Masebeck.[16] Thence agane on the south easte with the parish of Rumabald Kirk†, being divided by Masebeck to a place which is called Caldron Snout where 3 countyes, 3 bishopricks, 3 parishes & 3 Lordships meet‡. On the East & North easte it is bounded all along with Midleton parish ~~from Caldron~~, \ in the Bishoprick of Durham, / being divided from it by the River Teas, ascending northwards up the said river from Caldron Snout to \ the foot of / Crooke Burne ~~fel~~, where it runns into Teas ~~ther~~ \ where / 3 countyes meet \ together. / {Sc. Westmorland, Bishoprick, Northumberland.} Thence agane on the N.E. with a place calld Tine Head

Machell's Notes: III.159]

*{T\h/wait, q. Birch Thwaite}
†{Reinbaldi Ecclesia}[17]
‡{Sc. Westmorland, Yorkshire, Bishoprick, Carlile, York & Durham; Dufton in Westmorland, Rumakirk in [Blank],[18] Midleton in Bishoprick.}

[III.160]

in Alstan parish in the County of Cumberland (or Northumberland)*; being divided from by the Teas aforesaid, still ascending northwards till you com at the foot of a little rill called Fel Troutbeck, which is the very N. point of this parish.}
Hence on Nor'west it butts upon Milburn \ Chapel Fell / in K[irkby Thore] parish, being divided from it by ~~the rill calld~~ Fell-Troutbeck \ aforesaid / till you com a t a place called Moss Burne \ or Mose Burn / Foot, where it enters \ Lile-Tees / ~~Troutbeck~~. Thence agane on the N. West with the Lordship \ of Knock / in Marton parish, from which tis divided with the (River?) Mosburne, \ ascending westwards up the said River / till you com at a rock calld Overhurth; whence by a streight line \

[14] Maizebeck.
[15] Dobson Mere Foot.
[16] MS: 'Thence \ again / by Masebeck \ aforesaid / descending eastwards to ~~Trout b~~ to Swathbeck-foote, where \ it comes into / ~~enters~~ Masebeck. Thence agane on the south easte with the great parish and Lordship of Brough, being divided from it ~~with the river~~ \ by the foresaid / Masebeck \ ~~aforesaid~~ / to Birkesike Foote where it comes into Masebeck.'
[17] Romaldkirk: the church dedicated to St Rumwald or Romald. See *Westmorland Place-Names*. Machell suggested that the church might be dedicted to St Reinbald, an 11th-century German saint.
[18] Anciently in Yorkshire, now administered by County Durham.

ascending westward / to an harruck[19] of stones upon Knock Fell called Knock-aäld-man†. Thence by a streight line descending westward to ~~a place~~ Swindale-Beck-Head. Thence by Swindall beck descending westwards to Knock Gill. Thence agane ~~descending south-west~~ by Swindale Beck (which is here calld Knock beck) descending S.W. down the said Rill to Marton Park Head over against Dufton church. Thence on the west ~~which the Lo~~ it is bounded upon the Lordship of Marton in Marton parish, & divided from it by the said Swindale Beck (which is called here Marton-Parke-Beck) till you com at the place called Millelay-foot, where wee began.
March 22. 1686. Will. Atkinson.[20]

[Machell's Notes: III.160]

*{q. which?} Northumberland, sayes Towen.
†{This is denyed by Rob Thornton of Knock who [says] it is quite out of their Lordship. Swindale Beck sp[ringeth] here near Rundall Tarne,[21] & runeth westward \ downe the gill] / to behind Knock Town. Thence \ S.W. / down Knock Gill by Dufton church, so to Dufton mill and thence into Troutbeck at Milelow[22] Foote.}
{Query: of its bounds p[er] Towan.}

[III.161]

{**Rarityes**}

(Rarityes in nature)
Junipers at Flaskey; a pasture belonging to Dufton betwixt Dufton Pike and Knock Pike: it \ see in the mergin. /
In Dufton wood, at the point of Windy Banke Brow, builded an osprey which had eeles & troutes & other fish & rabits in the nest when I was a boy.[23]
{A forrest called Meldon, which is a great fell next Teasdall \ forrest / divided by Tease.[24]

[Wells]
There is a petrifying well {upon Meldon} called {the Black Well of Meldon}[25] whose water is so extreamely cold that a man (they say) can not hold his hand in it,[26] while you go [to] the doer. It lyes N.E. to Dufton church – that corner of the quier pointing to it – & it turns all the moss for 40 yards to stone, which is like to / Smithy-sinders \ or pumice / or rather sponges, but whitish in colour.[27]
There is another well beyond Hikeup Head at ½ a mile distance E. from that place, which they call Marle Well. It tastes of iron \ this would prove medicinal / & tinges the bankes & places adjoining with a rusty colour. As like […]}[28]

{Pretiouse stones; milstones; coale}
There are also good milstones got there at Milston Sike, above \ twice / 12 score [yards] from it \ & great store of free stone & flaggs. /
Also coale unwrought, which serves for lime kill[n]s; & great store of lead as got in these mountanes, and smelted at a miln near to the church a little above it.

[19] A way-cairn, appearing in Machell's MS in several forms including hurrock and harrock (Machell's representation of the letters 'u' and 'a' being identical much of the time).
[20] This is probably William Atkinson, schoolmaster at Dufton between 1664-65 and perpetual vicar of Morland from 1680/1; he died in 1721. CCED.
[21] Rundale Tarn.
[22] Millaley.
[23] 'When I was a boy' has been added in different ink.
[24] Otherwise known as Meldon Hill, Dufton.
[25] MS: 'There is a petrifying well on Meldon called petrifying. {There is a well called the Black Well of Meldon.}'
[26] Two unclear words here appear to read, 'I [...] sond times.'
[27] As this passage has been written next to a ragged margin and is partly overwritten, the transcription offered is tentative. Beneath the same passage there is an unfinished sentence: 'It is 4 miles from the [blank].'
[28] This is followed by approximately 32 words of well-scored-through text.

{Generall}
{In Browham the great tree – p[articulars] nature &c. & Harts horn tree in Whin fell; chimney piece in Hornby dineing roome.}[29]
Wild ducks nest at Crack at Snittlemire and at St Nicolas (mire). Bogg.
Raspberryes \ & hind berryes / at Scale Houses in Murton Demaine.[30]
Bleaberryes at Meal Fell.[31]
Temeberryes[32] in the spring head at the S. end of Flakebrigg by \ the / Murton-beck side.
Crackthorp: epithimum, golden globes, burd eene,[33] melilot[34] ~~hart,~~ add[er]stong[ue].[35]
(No elmes naturally in this county but I suppose it exottick.) Awme or witch hassel.[36]

Langton, J[oh]n Hill sayes, was a Lordship forfeited by rebellion: all the men hang'd: ~~the man~~ where Wright lived on his own doer cheekes. Dakers Roade.[37] The army came up to that moore but never crossd Eden.

[29] For the chimney piece at Hornby Hall, see I.444A (Brougham); see also, Michael Taylor, 'On some Manorial Halls in Westmorland', *CW1*, 04 (1880), 392-99.
[30] The hindberry is a northern name for the wild raspberry, cf. German 'himbeere'. *OED*.
[31] The blaeberry: the common name in Scotland and the north of England of the bilberry or whortleberry. *OED*.
[32] This word appears to read as 'temeberryes' but the actual berry has not been ascertained.
[33] Birds eye: the name of a plant. Used chiefly with reference to plants having flowers with a distinctive central marking; cf. eye. *OED*.
[34] Plants of the genus Melilotus, characterised by trifoliate leaves and long racemes of small flowers, usually yellow or white, which smell of newly mown hay when dry, and are sometimes grown as forage and green manure, and as bee plants; especially the yellow-flowered M. officinalis, the dried flowers of which were formerly used in making plasters, poultices, etc. *OED.*
[35] As 'hart' is placed next to adder's tongue (a fern) Machell might be referring to the hart's tongue fern, though 'hart's trefoil' is another form of melilot.
[36] Even before the ravages of Dutch Elm Disease, the English elm (genus ulmus) was more common in southern England and the Midlands than in the north. As the wychelm or witch hazel (ulmus glabra) is hardier, it has always been able to grow further north than other varieties. See Della Hooke, *Trees in Anglo-Saxon England: Literature, Lore and Landscape* (Woodbridge, 2010), 262-63.
[37] For more on this reference to Dacre's Raid (for example, 'The owner of Wrights house they say was hang'd on his own dooer post, & many more of them.'), see Part 1, Ch.1, Appleby Town and Parishes, I.341.

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 13]

[I.496]

[Parish of Kirkby Stephen]

[**Miscellaneous Notes and Queries**]

[III.190]

A free school at K.
All pay noutgeld: query.
{An acre 22 broad & 11 scale long. Meadow 13. 4d; Arable [blank] Pasture 15.
Kirkby Stephen hath {Waif & stray afore their tenant, all but Weatby, where my Lord of Thannet.}
[III.221][1]
Query of Will. Barnard, a bonderman.[2]
~~Russendale. Hare birth~~

{Name}
The church dedicated to St Stephen giveth name to the town.
The parish of Kirkby Stephan takes its name from the towne where the church standeth.[3]

{Bounds} It is bounded on the [blank]
{Division; constablewicks} Within this large circumference are conteined
? Manner Sc. Kirkby Stephan, next [blank]
{School; church} locus ad Ecclesiam Stephani, which is [blank]
{Schoolhouse & masters}
{Vicaridge house; Incumbents} Near to this [blank] stands the vicaridge house.
Things remarkeable in the manner
Where [blank] free [blank] customary [blank]
{Rarityes of the manner}
{Lords & manner houses
{The Lords. The manner house & chief lord. The chief [blank]}
TP his armes & pedigree.

———————

[IV.529]

[1.] [How Kirkby Stephen became a Vicarage] e Registro de Wed'hal[4]

It seemeth that Kirkby Stephen and Morland were both Rectories \ till / in the time of Hugo Bishop of Karliol about the beginning of King Henry the 3rds reigne {anno 1220}. That Hugh Bishop of Karleol \ de assensu / gave & confirm'd them (de assensu capitali Karleolens' ecco),[5] {and the chapels thereto appertaneing, belonging together with all their appurtenences} to God & the church of St Maryes Yorke, & \ to / the monkes serveing God there, & \ to / their successors. To have and enjoy them to their owne proper use and behoofe for ever. Yet so that the church of Kirkeby Stephan – with its appertinences, was to be imployed to the proper uses of the moncks of Yorke, for the support of poore people, and strangers (Sc. peregrinorum) \ or pilgrims as some / which perhaps would rather have it translated); And the church of Morland with its appurtenances, to the proper use of the moncks of Wederhal (which is a cell of the said church of St Maryes Yorke) for their support. And that when

[1] Beneath the ink on this page there are pencilled notes relating to the dimensions of Kirkby Stephen church.
[2] 'Reference to Will Bernard of Kirkby Stephen as a 'bonderman', occurs on MS.III.181. Since the word, 'bonderman', was first noted in the nineteenth century, Machell probably meant 'bounder-man': a man who sets or marks out boundaries. *OED*.
[3] MS continues: '{Value}It is a vicaridge rated in the 1ᵗ fruits office at [blank] pay first [blank] tenth [blank] & synodals {Patrones} The patrones [blank] ~~The incumbents~~.'
[4] For these Wetheral Priory register entries, see J.E. Prescott (ed.), *The Register of the Priory of Wetherhal*, CWAAS Record Series I (London, 1897).
[5] 'With the assent of the bishop of Carlisle.'

these churches should become vacant by the death or removal of the rectors then in them of the said churches, who at that time were incumbents there; it should be lawful for the foresaid moncks to retaine them freely to their proper use; with\out/ the disturbance or contradiction of any one whatsoever […][6] Yet so that they should appoint therein suitable vicars (Vicarios idoneos nobis,[7] sayth he; et successoribus nostris presentandos);[8] yet so that they should place therein well qualified vicars to be presented to him and his successors – who should receive, each of them, out of the profits of their several churches for ever – C. shillings;[9] and be oblieged to take upon them the cure of soules from the hands of him & his successors

[IV.530]

and be oblieged et de spiritualibus [pro]videre.[10] Which, because it is an excellent piece & shews the stile of that Age it was writ {Circa anno 1220}, I thinke fit to subjoyne.

Confirmatio (Hugonis) ep[iscop]i Karl[eolensis] Sup[er] Ecclesiis de Kirkeby Stephan et de Morland cum capellis ad eas pertin[entibus]
Hugo dei gratia Karl[eolensis] ep[is]c[opus] Omnibus Xti fidelibus has Literas inspecturis et audituris s[a]l[ute]m in d[omi]no.
Quoniam ex officio nobis injuncto subjectorum nostorum, et maxime religiosoru[m] tenem[entorum] utilitati providere Et eorum bona augere et confovere, Noscat universitas vestra quod nos divina ducti pietate, de assensu capitali Karl[eolensis] Ecclesiae, concedimus et presenti pagina confirmamus Deo et Ecclesiae Sanctae Mariae Ebor[ac]um, et monachis ibidem do[mino] servientibus, et in posterum servituris, Ecclesias de Kirkby Stephan et de Morland, cum omnibus capellis ad eas pertinentibus, et cum omnibus aliis pertinentiis suis in proprios usus ipsorum, habendas et possidendas in perpetuum. Ita Sc[iatis] Quod Ecclesia de Kirkeby Stephan cum suis pertinentiis cedat in usus proprios dictorum monachorum Eboracum ad sustentationem pauperum et peregrinorum. Et –
Ecclesia de Morland cum suis pertinentiis in usus proprios monarchorum domus de Wederhale. Quae est Cella Ecclesiae Sanctae Mar[iae] Eboracum, ad eorum sustentationem.
Decedentibus vero, ut cedentibus parsonis et Rectoribus predictarum Ecc[lesi]arum, qui nunc in eis sunt constituti. Liceat praefatis monachis libere et sine alicujus contradictione ut impedimento eas sibi in usus proprios retinere.
Ita tamen quod in eis vicarios idoneos constituant nobis et successoribus nostris praesentandos qui

[IV.531]

{Circa annum 1220} de proventibus ipsarum C Solid[os] singuli ipsorum de singulis Ecclesiis praecipiant in perpetuum. Curamque animarum a nobis et successoribus n[ostris] percipere et de spiritualibus providere teneantur. Ut autem haec nostra consessio et confirmacio perpetue firmitatis robur obtineat, hoc praesens scriptum Sigilli n[ostri] inscriptione duximus commun[io]re. Hys testibus – domino J. Abbate de Fontibus. R. Decano; & magistro J, Romano Canon' Eboracum
Act xiij kal novembr'Anno Incarnationis Domini. M.CC.XX[0].[11]

[6] A line of largely illegible text follows here.
[7] 'Vicars suitable for us.'
[8] 'and who can be presented to our successors.'
[9] £5.
[10] 'Be obliged to provide for spiritual things also.'
[11] Confirmation of Hugo, Bishop of Carlisle, over the Churches of Kirkby Stephen and Morland, along with the chapels affiliated to them. Hugo, Bishop of Carlisle by grace of God, to all Christ's faithful who shall see or hear these Letters: greetings in the Lord. Since, through the office enjoined upon us to provide for the benefit of those subject to us and most especially the religious houses, and to increase and cherish their goods, know ye all that we, guided by divine mercy, with the full assent of the Church of Carlisle, grant and by this document confirm, to God and to the Church of St Mary at York and to the monks there who serve and who in future shall serve the Lord, the Churches of Kirkby Stephen and Morland, with all the chapels affiliated to them, and with all their other appurtenances, for their own uses, to have and to hold in perpetuity.Therefore know ye that the Church of Kirkby Stephen with its appurtenances is to give precedence for their own uses to the said monks at York for the maintenance of the poor and of travellers. And – the Church of Morland with its appurtenances, [likewise] for their own uses to the monks of the house of Wederhale, which is a daughter-house of the Church of St Mary at York, for their maintenance. And as they fall vacant, as the parsons and Rectors of the aforesaid

Thus, Kirkeby Stephan became a vicaridge,

[IV.531A & D]

{Cart. 28 or 31 as latelyer noted; fol. 19}
and all the grants, collations & confirmations of churches, pensions, rents, possessions, procurations and other Benefits in the Diocess of Karleol. And specially the Confirmations of the churches of Kirkby Stephan & Morland made to the Abbot & Convent of St Maryes Yorke, as is conteined (in authenticis) in the authentic Grants of the venerable father Hugh Bishop of Karleol, are confirmed by Bishop Bartholomew, Prior of St Maryes Karleol and the convent of the said church. Hiis Testibus Magistrro A. de Kirkby tunc offic. Karliol; A. de Esptric Decano Cumberland; Odard clerico, S. Subpriore de Wederhale; et alijs.

[IV.531A]

Anno domini 1261, 44. Henry 3.
Pope Alexander iiij non[is] Julij, Pontificatus sui anno iij^{0} . About which time these forsaid grantes seeme to have bin made – granted by his Bull to the Abbat & Convent of St Maryes Yorke.[12] That in the churches & chappels which were canonically annexed to them for their proper use & wherein there were no taxed vicaridges, nor perpetual vicars had been instituted within the memory of man; but were served by their own chaplains – That they should continue to do so still; & That no vicaridges should be taxed out of them or perpetual vicars instituted into them against their wills ~~unless in small places~~ nonwithstanding any

[IV.532]

Indulgence Granted to any by the apostolic see, or hereafter to be granted of taxing \ perpetual vicaries & instituteing perpetual vicars / churches & chapels, which religious men have for their own proper use when in the precincts of their cityes or diocess; Or any Letters or Indulgences from the said See obtained or to be obtained (nisi eadem impetrande de Indulgentia hujusmodi plenam et expressam fecerint mentionem)[13] unless they make full & express mention of a Libre indulgence of obteineing the same {?} Which he concludes with a Comination against any one \ all those / that shal infringe the said Conformation, or boldy oppose it; That they shal incur the high indignation of Almighty God & of his Apostles St Peter & St Paul. Datum Anagnie iiij Non. Julij. Pontificatus ejus anno vi^{0}.[14]

But this notwithstanding, the Abbots of Yorke were stiffly opposed about the Taxation of the church of Appelby if I be not mistaken. But query if they were not anciently Taxed, and not within the verge of this Grant?

[III.211]

[2.] Kirkby Stephan Church, its dimensions & porches {July 4^{0}}

The church, dedicated to St Stephen, giveth name to the Towne – And is [a] large ~~building~~ \ but humble building / with a Lofty Tower of good astler worke[15] with a clock & [blank] Bells in it. The Body of the church \ in the midle ally / is about ~~35 yardes~~ \ ~~or 37~~ 37 / in length \ besides the Tower / with 2 Rowes of round pillars, 6 in a Row, round & plane of a midling size; and the 2 Iles are about

churches who now are constituted in them retire, the aforesaid monks are to have licence, freely and without anyone's contradiction as an obstacle, to retain them for themselves for their own uses. In such a way, however, that they establish suitable vicars for presentation to us and our successors, who {about the year 1220} from their revenues are to receive, each of them from the individual churches, 100s in perpetuity. And they are to be bound to recognise and undertake the care of souls, from us and our successors. Moreover, so that this our grant and confirmation may forever have security and validity, we have made this present document more public by the impression of our seal. Witnesses were these: Lord J. Abbot of Fontes, R. the Deacon; & master J. Roman, Canon at York. Act 13, Kalends of November, in the Year of the Incarnation of our Lord, 1220.'

[12] 'In the year of the Lord 1261, 44. Henry 3. Pope Alexander IV on the 4th July, in the third year of his Pontificate. About which time these forsaid grantes seeme to have bin made - granted by his Bull …'

[13] '… unless in petitioning the same they make full and express mention of an indulgence of this kind.'

[14] 'Dated: at Anagnia, four days before the Nones of July in the sixth year of his Pontificate.' Anagnia is an ancient town south-east of Rome. The Nones of July was the seventh day of that month.

[15] 'Astler:' a former usage of the word 'ashlar'. 'Ashlar-work' consisted of masonry constructed of square hewn stones, as opposed to 'rubble-work'. *OED* .

35. & on the N. side Ile is a Quier projecting, which belongs to Smerdale Hall. {Long 6; broad 7: i.e. from S. to N.} The whol bredth of the body from one side to the other is [blank].
{In the 3rd window counting from the doer – at the top in one of the corners is a plane manch.}[16]
{Cliffords armes in the E. window midle light.}

{Hartley Quier}
The Quier is in length 15 passes or yards; In bredth 7? Haveing on South, Hartley Quier, which extends in Length from the screen or body of the church Eastward 9 and in Bredth 8 \ which lookes through one Arch onto the great Quier[17] / wher in[18] are 2 monuments, one under an Arch in the S. side wall, with Musgraves Armes on the pitch of the Tabling,[19] & \ a blew / marble Through (as they call them here) \ with Musgrave Armes upon the Edge of it / with this inscription [blank]
The other in the \ midle of the /screen which divides it from the Quier. Sc. a man in armour with a sword at his right side ~~& his dagger~~ on his left \ something like a broken spear or truncheon, / under his head an old fashon'd helmet[20] & a Lyon couchant at his feet, Laying upon a Table of stone erected like a through having sides of niched worke (this is all of Huen stone) & has bin \ long / taken for Sir Andrew Hartleys effigyes;[21] but ~~by~~ \ I have discover'd it / this Escutchion[22] on the hilt of his Dager. I discoved it to be one of the ~~Musgraves~~ {rather Clifford & Vipont} And above, on the Timber are Musgrave \ Armes / impald Clifford, & Musgraves armes impaleing {?} And in truth this may seem to have bin builded by som of the Musgraves upon their Accession to Hartley Castle.

[I.578][23]

In Hartleys Quier which is on the south side of the church:[24]

Hic. jacet. Ricardus Musgrave
Miles ~~Mus~~ Int Elizab* uxorem suam et + Thomam filium et + hæredem eorum qui obijt
ix[0] die Mensis Novembris Anno Domini
M[0] CCCC[0] lxiiij[0]. Cujus animæ propitietor {?} amen.[25]

{Note. The g in Musgrave is like a Text a, without the transverse stroake: & so is the q. in qui.}



Figure 1.13.1. 'In Hartley's choir which is on the south side of the church'. I.578.

Under the rim or edge of the stone are 6 Annulets. Above the arch is Musgraves Armes: Sc. 6 annulets supported by a Lyon Seiant,[26] and a Pelican feeding her young ones. And on the side of the Table stone, which is marble, Musgrave Armes within a plane shield.

[16] 'Maunch': a charge representing a sleeve, esp. a medieval hanging sleeve.
[17] Chancel.
[18] In the Hartley quire.
[19] Or 'Tablings'.
[20] 'an old fasho\n'/d hel~~d met~~\ met'.
[21] See *N&BI*, 541, for a similar description.
[22] Here there is a tiny sketch of an escutcheon.
[23] This page contains pencilled text overwritten in ink, as if a note page had been worked up later. Not all the pencilled text has been recorded here as it is either too faint or placed too far into the page gutter.
[24] Written in pencil with the added comment, 'se p.290 or p.209.'
[25] 'Here lies Sir Richard Musgrave between Anna his wife and Thomas their son and heir, who died on 9 November 1464, on whose souls may God have mercy {?} Amen.' See *N&BI*, 541.
[26] 'Sejant': in a sitting posture; especially of a quadruped; sitting with the fore-legs upright. *OED*.

In the roofe are:[27]

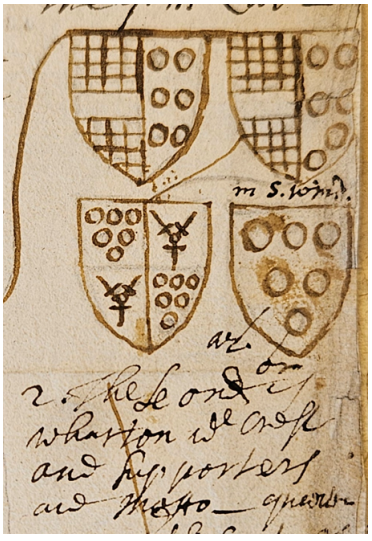


Figure 1.13.2. Coats of Arms. The top right is labelled, 'In S. Window'. The ground of the bottom-right shield is labelled 'Azure', the annulets, 'Or'. I.579.

On Lord Whartons Mon[ument]
1. At the W. end are 3 Coates of Armes: Sc. Wharton quartering $^{1}{}_{1}$} Thre Lyons rampant in chiefe & \ a quarterly coate; Sc. 3 Escallops in Bass†.
The second ‡.[28] The third as the second. 4th as the 1t. Then Wharton agane with an orle. Then the other.[29] Thirdly Bend. 4. A quarterly Coat with 3 garbes in the first quarter.
Fifthly a saltier in the undercourse. 6. A Bend between 6 martlets. 7. \ Or / a fret \ 2. / 8ly. \ Argent / 2 Lyons passant\ Gu[les.] / 9tly. \ Argent / a Lyon Rampant (Gu[les.])

[Machell's Notes: I.578 & III.222]
*{Tis Elizabeth in the Pedegree; see my book.}[30]
†{Note I think the escallops are rather ermins.}
‡{? What in the 2nd!} {2. The second is Wharton with crest and supporters and motto – quartering a quarterly Coat.[31]
1. Three Lyons rampant in chiefe, & 4 escallops in bass, 2. Quartering a Bend &c.
3. The third is Wharton quartering the same quarterly Coates […][32] Note that here ar onely 3 ~~escallops~~ \ ermins / impaleing a Coate of Quarters: Sc. 1. a Lyon Rampant; 2. 3 Bends. 3. a Chiefe and Saltier.[33] 4ly (in the Lower Course) on a fess 3 florrdelus;[34] 5. A Bend twixt six martlets.}
[III.222]: Query: monuments, inscriptions & armes above Hartley quier. In Lord Whartons. William Wharton of Mallerstang. Piper + walke.

[27] Here, Machell has drawn a distinct line leading to his sketch of four coats of arms, although the top right is labelled, 'in S. wind[ow].'
[28] Here there is a tiny descriptive sketch. An orle is a narrow bordure following the outline of a shield but not extending to its edge. *OED*.
[29] MS: '{?} ~~These Impaleing a Coate of' …~~ {?} ~~sc. 1. a Lyon Rampant; 2. another~~.' This scored-through text is barely legible.
[30] According to Nicolson & Burn, the inscription (which Machell seems to have found difficult to decipher, see Fig. 1.13.1) presented as 'Elizabetham': *N&B1*, 541.
[31] MS: 'quartering a quarterly Coat ~~of 3 Lyons Rampant in chief … d quartering a Bend~~.'
[32] A word here has perished.
[33] Saltire: see the English Glossary.
[34] Fleur de lys/lis. 1600s: flower de luce (plural, luces). *OED*.

[III.211]

{Wharton Quier}
On the opposite side is Wharton quier, much of the same bigness but divided by a screen under 2

[III.212]

Arches with a piller in the midle, in the center of which is placed a large Through with the Armes & Quarterings of Lord Whartons family on ends & sides of It {& round about the edge is this inscription} [blank].[35] And above on the table is [blank] Wharton[36] with his 2 Wives, one on the right hand & the other on [blank]. This monument also is \ but / of huen stone: materiam supe[rab]at opus.[37] And all about are[38] seates of wainscot, rale & ballasters, locked up; that I could take an exact account of it.[39] Beneath this Quier is a vault to Bury in and Tis said before the makeing of It, that they buryed under a great marble Through near the church doer; and there is this probability of it that on Edge of the Tab[l]e, about the midle of it, is an Escutchion with a manch upon it; which shews however, that it has belongd to som of Whartons.
Nor is it any derogation to them to be buried, since it shews their humility; & beside till of late it was not permitted to Bury in the church no not in the church yard.

[I.573][40]

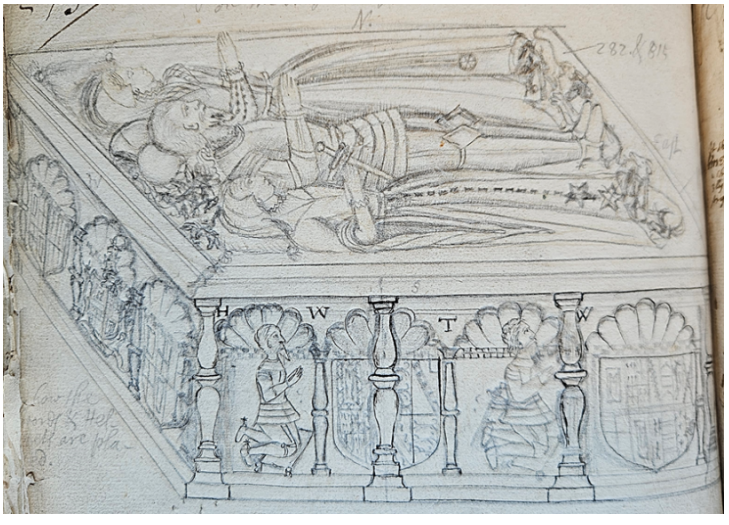


Figure 1.13.3. Wharton Tomb. 'In Wharton Quire which is on the N. side of the chancel. How the swords and helmets are planned.' I.573.[41]

[35] 'Thomas Whartonus jaceo hic, hic utraque conjux; Elionora suum hinc, hinc habet Anna locum. En tibi, terra, tuum, carnes ac ossa resume; In coelos animas, tu Deus alme, tuum.' See *N&B1*, 540.
[36] Thomas, first Lord Wharton: see *N&B1*, 540.
[37] Quotation taken from Ovid, *Metamorphoses* 2.5. The context is a description of the Palace of the Sun, which is made of precious metals, stone, ivory etc.; but when Vulcan engraved an image on the palace doors, 'materiam superabat opus': 'the work transcended the material.'
[38] MS: 'and'.
[39] Written as seen, although perhaps Machell meant 'that I could not take an exact account of it'.
[40] MS.I.572 contains a tiny drawing of a head, similar to the figures on the tomb on the Figure on I.573.
[41] The numbers 282 and 815 appear to the right of the drawing. Note the praying hands, which do not exist today, the arms having disappeared from the elbows down. In 1871, Rev. J.F. Hodgson described the tomb as 'pitifully mutilated', due, he thought, to a 'sudden and violent catastrophe such as the falling of the roof of the chapel', severing all the hands and forearms from the bodies: J.F. Hodgson, 'Kirkby Stephen Church' (read there in 1871), CW1, 4 (1880), 178-249, 206.

[I.574A][42]

In Wharton Quire, which is on the north side
A large Monument \ on / the Table of which (being 2 yards square) are 3 figures: of a man & 2 women at length*. This is supported \ with / VIII Ballisters, one at each corner & two & two on either side, S. & N.[43]

At the west end are 3 Coates of Arms, Sc.
I. Whartons with the Accession of the Bordure Invecked &c. Quartering a Quarterly-Coate, wherein the 1t \ [&] 3 / is 3 Ermins in Bass and 3 Lyons rampant in chief†. The 2 \ & 4 / Quarterly (Gules & Argent) a Bend \ Bendlet or fillet / Or &c. Then Wharton agane in the 3rd Quarter, & the Quarterly Coate \ agane / in the 4th. These (as Whartons \ quarterings /) impale another Coate of 9 quarters: 5/4: Sc.
1. (Azure within a Bordure Ingraled) a Lyon rampant (Or)‡.
2. (Gules within a Bordure ingraled) a Lyon rampant (Or).
3. A Bend sinister, bendy.
4. A quarterly Coate with 3 garbes {Gules, 3 garbes Or} in the 1t quarter?
5. (Gules), a saltier (Argent).
6. In the Lower Row (Argent) a Bend between VI martlets (Gules).

[Machell's Notes: I.574A & I.574]
*Sc. of Thomas the 1t Lord Wharton & his two wifes. About which is writ on the edges thereof begining at the west end: Thomas Whartonus.
†{It should have bin Ermin, in a chiefe Azure; 3 Lyons rampant Argent.}
‡{These are the Armes of Ann his 2nd wife: Sc. Ann the daughter of George Earl of Salop. Note. But they are in the ped[igree] Gules: a Lyon Rampant in bordure Or. Q. if not Bendy of 10 – as at Wharton Hall. fig. 3. This for dignityes sake is placed 1t – allthough the Armes of the 2nd wife – on a rafter at her head where she lyes on his left.}

[I.574]

7. (Or) a Frett (Gules).
8. (Argent) 2 Lyons passant (Gules).
9. (Argent) a Lyon Rampant (Gules).

II.

In the midle of this west-end is Wharton with its Quarterings as before; only differing in this: That here (in the Quarterly Coate which he Quarters) are 4 Ermins: whereas the others had only three. But both are errours \ in the Graver / for the field should be Ermin. This is also adorned with Crist & supporter (as in Bloomes *Guillams* which may be drawn out at any time)[44] and with the motto, which at Wharton hall appears to be this:

PIEA SVR EN FAYTS DARMYS {or LE SYR &c.}[45]

III.

Wharton with his Quarterings, as before (but with 3 Ermins only in the 1t quarter of the Quarterly Coate) impaling a Coate of 5 Quarters: Sc.
1. Argent. A Lyon Rampant S[able] (which is Stapletons); {The armes [of] Elionor, a 1t wife}; the

[42] The text here is written in ink over text in pencil, now obscured.
[43] A second tomb of Wharton and his two wives is to be found in the village church at Healaugh near Selby in Yorkshire, where the manor house also belonged to the Whartons. Sir Thomas Wharton's will ordered his body to be buried at Healaugh but W.F. Hodgson argued that his actual resting place is the tomb in Kirkby Stephen Church, see Hodgson, 'Kirkby Stephen Church', 244-45.
[44] Richard Blome, *A Display of Heraldry: manifesting a more easie access to the knowledge thereof than hath been hitherto published by any, through the benefit of method; whereunto it is now reduced by the study and industry of John Guillim, late Pursuivant at Arms.* (5th edn. London, 1679).
[45] The motto is, 'PLEASUR EN FAYTS D'ARMYS': Pleasure in feats of Arms: see Edward Bellasis, *Westmorland Church Notes II* (Kendal, 1889), 138.

sec[ond] wife of Wharton;[46] & the rest are the quarterings thereto belonging. {These I take\ are / to be the Lord \ Wharton / & his 2 wifes.[47] They [blank]}
2. Thre[e]-bends.
3. A Chiefe & Saltier.
4. (In the Lower Course) \ Argent / on a fess \ Azure / 3 floredeluces \ Or. /
5. Argent, a Bend, between 6 martlets \ Gules. /

[I.576]

On the S. side – supported with 4 ballisters whereof 2 are at the Corner – are 4 niches, & in the 1[t] an old man with a \ long / picked[48] forked beard in Armour & Sword, being The Lord Wharton kneeling upon a cushion in a praying posture – with his \ fetherd / helmet before him and above it, H.W. at each triangle.
2[d]. Whartons armes as before quartering a quarterly coate, of 3 Lyons Rampand and 3 ~~escallops~~ \ Ermins / in the first; Quarterly, a Bend in the second. The 3[rd] as second: the 4[th] as the first – impaleing a Quarterly Coate of three hounds […][49] courant in the first, a bend in the second: \ with a cant[on] in sinister point / a Bend charged with a crescent in the top between 6 martlets: \ the 3.[50] / The fourth as the first*.
3. An old Knight with a picked beard not so much forked, & a side helmet before him, above which is T.W.†.
4. Wharton (as before) impaleing a quarterly coate of 8.[51] The first being a bend: The second a fess between 2 cheverons: The 3[rd] a Lyon Rampant crowned. The 4[th] a saltier ingraled: The 5[th] 3 fishes: The sixth 3 barrs: The 7[th] powdered floredeluces: the 8[th] an eagle and childe.

The East End[52] hath 3 scalloped niches, over which a S[croll] in which is writ as followeth –



Figure 1.13.4. Wharton Tomb East End: detail. I.576.

GENS Whartona genus. Dat honores dextera victrix
In Scotos. Stapletona domus mihi quam dedit uxor
Elionora facit ter bina prole parentem.
Binam adimunt teneris. Binam iuvenilibus annis.
Fata mihi. Dat nomen avi mihi bina superstes.
Anna secunda uxor celebri est de Gente Salopum.[53]

[46] This phrase is unclear.
[47] This sentence is written very faintly in the margin.
[48] 'Picked': having a sharp point; spiked. *OED*.
[49] An interlineation here appears to be, 'or nigh', but it is unclear.
[50] 'In the third quarter.'
[51] Machell's no. 4 contains tiny sketches of five of the heraldic symbols mentioned in the passage.
[52] The east end of the tomb in Wharton's Quire.
[53] 'The Wharton family triumphs by its strong right arm against the Scots, and the house of Stapleton gave me my wife Elianor, who brought forth six children; two of them died young, two in youth; two survive me; Ann is my second wife from the famed family of Shropshire.' Quoted in *N&B1*, 541.

[Machell's Notes: I.576]

*{For Henry Wharton knight who marryed Jane the daughter & heir of Thomas Maleverer of Allerton – says my Pedigree – but makes him younger brother of Thomas Lord Wharton, & son of Thomas the 1ᵗ Lord Wharton.}

†{for Thomas Whartons eldest son (says my Pedigree) of Thomas the 1ᵗ Lord Wharton, by Elionora Stapleton his 1ᵗ wife; who maryed Ann the daughter of Rob. Ratclife of Sussex: Argent a Bend, graled Sable.}

[I.577]

On the north side [of this tomb]

Appear 4 Ballisters to support the great Table stone, one at each corner and 2 in the midle space betwixt them. Here ar 4 niches also and in the 1. a Coate quarterly: The 1ᵗ a fess fusilly. The 2ᵈ 3 Barrs with a Canton in chief point: Third as second: 4ᵗʰ as 1ᵗ {These must be the armes of Will. Pennington, who maried Johanna daughter of Thomas Lord Wharton} impaleing Wharton, quartering a quarterly coate as before. The 1ᵗ\ 3 / Lyons & \ 3 / Ermins*.

2. In the next [niche], a Gentlewoman praying versus orientem (as they are all)[54] with her booke open before her and above, in the triangles,[55] J.P. ~~which seems to be by her dress one of his wifes~~ for Johanna†.

3. In the Third [niche], 1ᵗ Musgrave ~~quartering~~ \ 2ⁿᵈ / a Quarterly Coate of 3 daggers in the first & 3 annulets in the second &c. {?} These must be the Armes of Sir Richard Musgrave, who maryed Agnes the 2ⁿᵈ daughter of Sir Thomas Wharton. Thirdly ~~Mus~~ the same quarterly coate agane; & 4ly a Cross flory impaleing Wharton, quartering the quarterly Coates (as before) of the Lyons & ~~escallops~~ Ermins &c.

4. [niche]. Another lady praying as before, haveing buttons downe her sleves in severall rows (the other haveing lace, and both, ruffs about their hands & necks). And above is A.M., perhaps for Agnes, the daughter of Thomas Lord Wharton‡ 38. Henry VIII [1546-47], married to Ri. Musgrave son of Will.[56]

About the stone on the Edge thereof begining at the west end is writ

{w. side}† THOMAS Whartonus Iaceo HIC. hic utraque conjuns
{s. side} Elionora suum hinc. hinc habet Anna locum
{e. side}[57] En tibi terra tuum. carnes ac ossa. Resume
{n. side} In coelos animas tu deus alme. tuum.[58]

On the Friese of the screne above the Ballasters are several plane manches as at fig. 3.

[Machell's Notes: I.577]

*N.B. A note that in all the Coates the Manch is charged upon a projecting piece invecked which stands higher than the Border.

†{Uxor William Pennington: see my Booke of Pedigrees}.

‡See M Ped[igree], (but the M.\ now / are not le[gible].

[I.580]

Opposite to this, under an Arch in the South wall of the said Quier

Under the Arch Betwixt the Chancel and Hartley quier; said to be Sir Andrew Hartcley, Earle of Carlile. X.[59]

---

[54] 'Facing east, as are they all.'

[55] Instead of writing text, Machell here inserted a triangle symbol.

[56] MS: 'And above is A.M., perhaps for ~~AgNus~~ {A.M. Agnes: the daughter of Thomas Lord Wharton, 38 Henry VIII} married to Ri. Musgrave son of Will.'

[57] In the margin here is a small sketch resembling a bow.

[58] [West side] 'Thomas Wharton here I lie and here my wife' [South side] 'Elianora has her place, as does Anna' [East side] 'See. Earth receive again these flesh and bones' [North side] 'Thou Lord gently receive these souls into thy heavens.' See *N&B1,* 540.

[59] The 'X' demonstrates disagreement. Both the cross and the passage that follows have been formed by a different hand, a reminder that later antiquaries consulted Machell's MS while it was housed in Carlisle Cathedral library. One possible contender is Bishop Lyttelton (bishop of Carlisle, 1762-68), who, for example, borrowed Machell's MSS Volumes 3, 4 and 6 between 31 July and 15 August, 1764. See CAC(C), DCHA/5/6/1/15. Library Register 1703-1873.

X. Harcla Earl of Carlisle was degraded from his Earldom & Knighthood & afterwards beheaded for High Treason. Tis not likely therefore that his sword would have been represented on his monument, much less his Coat of Armour on his Breast. In Heylins *Help to History*,[60] we have a coat of arms very different from this ascribed to Andrew Harcla: viz. Argent, a cross Gules with a martlett in a canton Sable.[61]

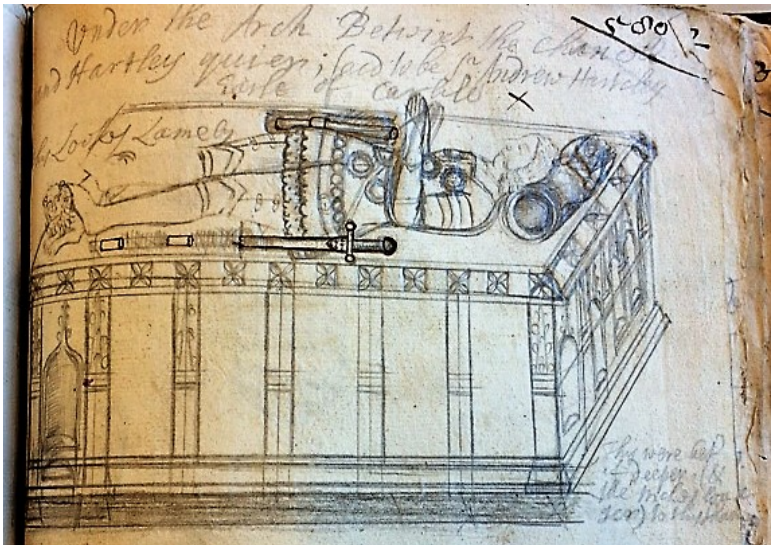


Figure 1.13.5. 'Said to be Sir Andrew Hartcley, Earle of Carlile'. 'X'. I.580.[62]

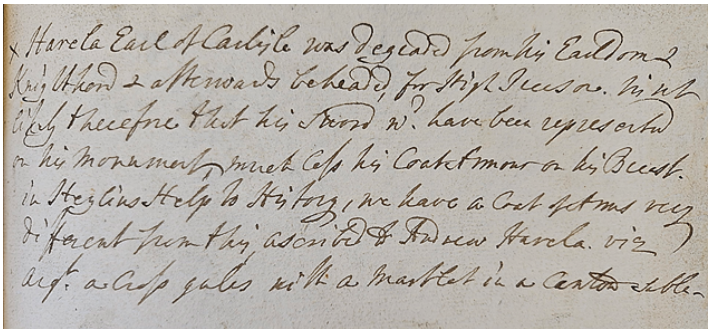


Figure 1.13.6. Example of the hand of a later writer who questioned the provenance of the monument above. I.580.

[60] Peter Heylyn (1599/1600-1662), historian, Anglican polemicist; supporter of Archbishop Laud: Ἡρωολογία *Anglorum; or, A help to English history. Containing a succession of all the kings of England, the English, Saxons, and the Britons, the kings and princes of Wales; the kings and lords of Man, and the Isle of Wight. As also, of all the dukes, marquises, earls, and bishops thereof. With the descriptions of the places from whence they had their titles. Together with the names and ranks of the viscounts, barons, and baronets, of England, by Peter Heylyn, D.D. Prebendary of Westminster* (1641).

[61] The other hand ceases here. From stylistic evidence, J.F. Hodgson assigned the tomb to Sir Richard Musgrave, d.1469. Traditionally, the occupant had killed the last wild boar on Wild-boar Fell, and, when the tomb was opened during the rebuilding of 1847, the tusk of a wild boar was found. Two bodies had been interred, but only one within a lead lining. Hodgson imagined the unwrapped figure to be Musgrave's wife. See J.F. Hodgson, 'Kirkby Stephen Church', 200-03.

[62] 'X' refers to comments made in pencil, below.

[Machell's Notes: I.580]

This looks lamely.[63]
This were better if deeper (& the niches longer).[64]

[I.582][65]

[Armorial Glass in Kirkby Stephen Church]

[Key]
In the quier
1. East window.
2. South window.
3. On Wharton Skreen.
4. South window in the church.
5. On the Northside the vestry enterance.

Over the steeple doer[66]
1. Clifford Lord of Westmorland.
2. Forsan Craven & Musgrave quarterly.[67]
3. [Blank] of Smardall hall.
4. Musgrave and Ward.
5. Wharton & [blank] for Salop. Perhaps for the 2nd wife but that it [is] a Lyon Rampant within a Bordure.

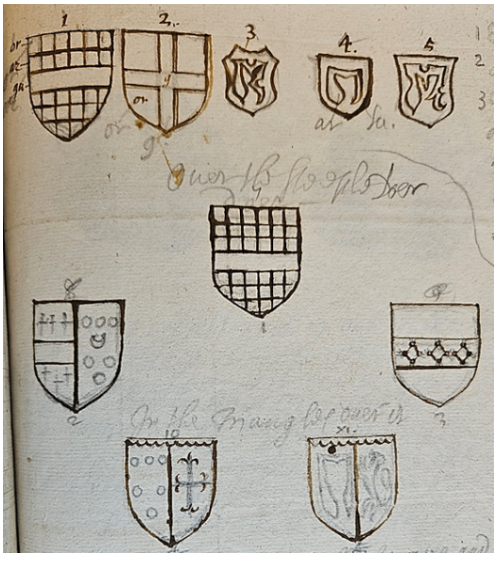


Figure 1.13.7. Armorial Glass in Kirkby Stephen Church. I.582.

[63] Written above Machell's unfinished sketch of the right leg. 'Lamely': 'in a lame manner; with halting steps or limbs; haltingly; imperfectly, defectively, inefficiently.' *OED*. Did Machell mean that his sketch of the limb was imperfectly drawn, or that the limb itself was defective? Presumably, the former.
[64] Pencilled comment relating to the bottom right of the monument. The last three words [not transcribed] are, 'to this […]'.
[65] MS.I.581 contains a sketch of an unattributed coat of arms (not shown here).
[66] The 'steeple' is the tower.
[67] This is an editorial suggestion, based on almost illegible material.

In the triangles over it[68]
This, by the impaleing of Musgrave and Ward, shows that the steple was built since that match, for about that time, which was in the Reigne of Henry 7.; or more likely in Henry the VIII time at the desolution of the Abbyes: And these gentlemen whos Armes are here placed were the builders or chiefe Benefactors to it.

_____

[III.221]

[3.] {Market}!

Kirkby Stephan with the manner affordes a market towne & the most considerable buildings It is a market towne by Grant &c. and conteineth in it [blank] families.

[I.569]

Roger (2 son of Robert de Clifford, Lord of the Honor of Ableby, who allso came to the same dignity after the decease of his Brother Lord Robert Clifford) in his Brothers life time, obteined of King Edward 3., 2 weekly marketts & 2 fares for the Town of Kirkby Stephan.[69]

[III.180][70]

The market (they say) was on Fridayes at Kirkby, till changed in Queen Elizabeths time to Monday.

[III.190]

Munday Market; Fair: Whitsunday & Luke.[71] A fair 2 dayes afore St Luke; another on St Luke; another every Whitsun Wednesday & Thorsday.[72] And for Thorsday, two dayes till St Luke. & generilly beasts all the year.[73]

[IV.537]

{Ad Kirkeby Stephen ad Reg. de Wederhal}[74]
{Anno Reg Regis Ed. XX^{0}. anno gre. 1291}Hugone de [blank] Cressingham clro Will. de Ormesby et alijs justiciarij Itinerantibus.}[75]

{Fol. 121 b.}
The Abbat of St Maryes Yorke was summond to answer to our Lord the King in a Quo warra[n]to habere clamat mercatum in Kirkby Stephan sine Licentia et voluntate D[omi]ni Regis et progenitorum suoru[m] Regum Anglie etc.[76] And the Abbat came by his attorney & sayd that he did not clame to have any mercat in the said village. And Thomas de Culwenne & the rest of Jury upon Enq[uiry], found for the Abbat: That he did \ never / not hold any mercat there nor receive any profit by the said marcat. Ideo q[uo]ad hoc ad p[re]sens inde sine die etc.[77]
But this action I suppose was wrong, laid upon a mistake of \ Kirkby Stephan for / Kirkby Lonesdale; where he held a marcat and cast the king in it at the same Assise, as may be seen in K. Loansd.
N.B. Here note the Assises were then after Michaelmas; I suppose because, being a leisure time & after the corn & hay was in, the people might better attend the judges at the generall session of Assise.

[68] See nos 4 and 5 above, Steeple Door.
[69] This is recorded in *N&B1,* 544; a footnote gives 'Dugdale MS' as the source.
[70] Material taken from a page of rough notes in Machell's Vol. III.
[71] St Luke's Day is 18 October.
[72] MS: 'Weds. Another every Whitsun Wednesday & Thorsday.'
[73] *N&BI*, 544, provides a clearer picture: 'And King James the first, by his charter [10 March, 3rd year of his reign] granted to George Earl of Cumberland (instead of the aforesaid market and fairs) one market on Monday in every week, and two fairs yearly: one on the Wednesday, Thursday and Friday after Whitsuntide, and the other on two days next before the feast of St Luke and on that feast day.'
[74] See Prescott (ed.), *The Register of the Priory of Wetherhal*.
[75] 'In the 20th year of the reign of Edward […] in the Gregorian year 1291, Hugh de Cressingha[m] being chancellor with de Ormesby and other circuit justices.' (Edward I reigned from 1272 to 1307).
[76] 'By what authority he claimed to hold a market in Kirby Stephem without a licence and at the will of the Lord King and his forefathers the Kings of England etc.'
[77] 'Therefore, this matter [was adjourned] thence for the moment, with no fixed date for resumption.'

[4.] Kirkby Stephen School

[III.179]

! A free school at Kirkby. Mr Rawlet late minister writ several books?[78]

[III.198]

Concerning Kirkby Stephen School 1676
Westmorland. Kirkby Stephens & Parish
These and the notes of Apleby school to be restored to T. Machell fellow of Queens College in Oxford.[79]

[III.195]

The Free Grammar School of Kirkby Stephen[80]
Founded by Thomas Lord Wharton Barron of Wharton the County of Westmerland as appears by the Letters Pattents made the 22th day of November in the eight yeare of Queene Elizabeth [1565]; by which letters pattent she gives power to the said Thomas Lord Wharton to settle the said schoole out of his Rectorey and impropriation of the parish of Kirkby Stephen; and the revenues of the said schoole to be 26li 6s 8d.,[81] paid, but the same to be sett and paid by the said Thomas Lord Wharton as he shall thinke fit to nominate and appoint as also to make fit and wholesome Statutes and Constitutons for the said Schoole as may be thought fit by the bishope of the diocese of Carlile.

And afterwards the said Thomas Lord Wharton vizt in the tenth year of the said Queene [1567-68] makes Constitutons and Statutes for the said schoole and appoints 12li in the \ yeare / to be paid yearely out of the said Rectory at Whitsontyd and Martinmas by eaquell porthens to the Schoolmaster for his wages and power to appoint and make choyce of one of his schollers for an Usher who shall have xxvjs viijd and paid him out of the said rectory and 6li 6s 8d a yeare to the poore of the Parish and Towne of Kirkby Stephen aforesaid and for repaier of the schoole and 6li 6s 8d to two schollers of the said schoole as exebitions to mentaine them at eather universetey of this Land. Two said schollers first to be chosen out of sutch schollars as are or was borne of the Lord Whartons lands and for want of sutch schollars then to two of the said schoole to be chosen by the Lord Wharton or the schoolmaster for the time being and no schollars to have the said Exhibition above the space of seven years*; nor aney Usher to continue above the space of the \ said / yeares.
But of late yeares things have been otherwise ordered and the former Constitutions not regarded but 20li a yeare paid to the Schoole master and nothing to the poore of the said parish or towne nor aney thing paid to aney schollars as an Exhibition at eather Universetey so that there hath beene for many yeares 6li 6s 8d paid detained by the now Lord Wharton and is at this day contrary to the letters pattent aforesaid for the letters patent settles 26li 6s 8d to be paid to the use of the School master and the poore of the parish and repayer of the School-house and no otherwise; and this to be paid to the Governors of the said Schoole and they to pay the same to the Schoole master and poore as sett downe by the said Lord Wharton in his Constitutions.

Scholmasters
The first was one Mr Edward Minyes borne at Castlehill neare Eadenbrough in Scottland who fled hether in the time of Edward the sixt for his religion, being then of the Reformation as appears by a writing I have by me, he being my great grandfather by my mother.
After him one Mr Hinth, but for the rest I finde nothing of them till 1622 that Mr Richard Barlow was elected School master.
Jan.1t 1629 Mr William Shaw elected.

---

[78] *N&B1*, 538: 'In 1673, John Rawlet, M.A. was instituted [to Kirkby Stephen parish] on a presentation by the same patron [Philip Lord Wharton]. This Mr Rawlet was author of a volume of divine poems; and of a book yet well known by the name of *The Christian Monitor*. His character as a most exemplary pious and good man remaineth to this day.' He was vicar from 1673 to 1680. CCED.
[79] Only the last sentence of this passage is in Machell's hand.
[80] 'A History of Kirkby Stephen Free Grammar School', written in 1676 using original documents and sent to Machell at Queen's College, Oxford, by George Fothergill, 'Clerk of the Peace of the County of Westmorland'.
[81] See *N&B1*, 542.

June the 28th 1630. Mr William Morland elected.
December 17th 1633. Mr William Williss elected who contained till the yeare 1674.
Now Mr Samuel Shaw who was elected 1675.[82]
I find little to be reported of any of them while School masters; onley the first eminent for knowledge in the Grammer and that he had great store of gentlemens sons his schollers out of Westmerland and the adjacent countreye whereof he tabled at least xx in his owne house.

Governors†
Sir Philip Musgrave of Hartley Castle, Baronett; Richard Musgrave Esq., his heire apparent; John Rawlett, now vicar of Kirkby Stephen;[83] Christopher Harrison, Vicar of Brough;[84] John Ardra, Rector of Musgrave; [85] Thomas Denton, Rector of Crosby Garret;[86] Robert Skaif of Winton, Gent.; and George Fothergill of Tarn-house, Gentleman.
No libraryes nor manuscripts belonging to the said Schoole, nor neare adjoyning that's publiq.[87]

This account I had from Mr George Fothergill clerk of the peace for the county of Westmorland. Turn over.[88]

[Machell's Notes: III.195]

*{exhibition for 7 years.}[89]
†{Alter the order.}

[III.197]

An Exhibition granted by Mr John Knewstubb[90] for two schollers in the Colledge of St John the Evangelest in Cambridge; [deed] dated the 7th of October 1623, betweene the said John Knewstubb of Cockfeild and John Garden of Mayland in Essex of the one p[ar]tie and the Master, Fellows and Schollers of the said Colledge on the other p[ar]tie; they give to the said Colledge an annuity of eleaven pounds yearely to be payed forth of certaine lands called Squires, Squeers or Squers in the parish and feilds of South Minster and Steeple in Essex, to be disposed on as followeth: twenty shillings yearely to the Colledge & 10li for the Exhibition of two poore Schollers commonly called Subsissers,[91] to either of them 5li; the one a Scholler borne and brought up in the parish of Kirkby Stephen and of Mr Knewstubbs name and kindred, next, of kindred only; and for lack of such, any other that hath beene of one whole yeare in the Schoole of Kirkby Stephen and for lack of such, any other to be taken forth of the Schoole of Appleby, the nomination of which scholler to be allwayes by the Vicar and Schoolmaster of Kirkby Stephen for the time being, in a letter subscribed with both their hands and sent to the Master and Felowes of the said Colledge and the said 5li to be paid yearely till the said Schollers be of the time and standing to take the degree of Master of Arts and shall be capeable or have for their better maintenance any Schollership in the said Colledge […][92] And the

[82] According to CCED, Samuel Shaw was vicar of Kirkby Stephen from 1681 until his death in 1700. Another schoolmaster not mentioned by Fothergill was Robert Bulfield or Burfell, who was master from 1673-75, after which he became a schoolmaster in Carlisle. CCED.
[83] Vicar, 1673-81.
[84] Christopher Harrison was vicar of Brough, 1664-95.
[85] John Ardrey was rector of Musgrave, 1671-84. CCED.
[86] Thomas Denton was rector of Crosby Garrett, 1663-91. CCED.
[87] The style adopted suggests a response to Machell's questionnaire.
[88] This sentence is written in Machell's hand.
[89] The margin comment is in Machell's hand.
[90] *N&B1*: 'This John Knewstubb was born at Kirkby Stephen, fellow of St John's College [Cambridge] and rector of Cockfield, where he died in the year next after establishing these exhibitions.' Nicolson and Burn go on to list Knewstubb's publications and monumental inscription, *N&BI*, 543.
[91] 'Subsizers' or 'subsizars': At Cambridge University, this was an undergraduate receiving financial assistance from their college. Some colleges, including St John's, Trinity, and Emmanuel, distinguished between sizars and subsizars. Subsizars were not entitled to specific endowments, but were maintained by Fellow-Commoners and Fellows. Originally the subsizar was required to perform various domestic services within the college. The category eventually fell out of use, although not before the middle of the 20th century. *OED*.
[92] Here, some scored-through text (3cm) is illegible.

other 5[li] to a Scholler borne in the Parish of Cockfeild in Suffolk or else such of the Schoole of Sudbury, or else in Bury in the said Countey[93] with the like conditions for his kindred.[94]

[Machell's Notes: III.197]

{Exhibition 5[li] till 7 yrs.}[95]

[5. Kirkby Stephen Parish]

[I.496]

To Kirkby Stephen Church belong Kirkby Stephen. Hartley, Keyber,[96] and the Outsides: Mallerstang, Smardale, Souleby, Wateby, Wharton, Winton.

[I.568][97]

[A. Value.]

Winton anno 8 Ed.2. [1314-1315]

Est Ibidem unum Capitale messuagium &c.	
There is there one manner house downe 19. Ed. 3.[98] worth per Annum	0: 1: 0
xxv Acres of Demane land, worth 6d per Acres Annual, S.e,[99]	2:10: 0
xx Acres of Demane me\a/dow, each worth per Annum 1s, su est	1: 0: 0
Hee (Sc. Robert de Clifford) hath allso there Foreland and wast which is worth by the yere	0: 5: 0
There allso free Tenents which pay per Annum	0: 6: 4 {ob q[a])
xxviij oxgangs of Land quor quod lib valet per Annum 5s, S.e	7: 0: 0 {7li}[100]
x messuages cotterall quor quod lib valet per Annum 1s, e.s.	0:10: 0
2 water Milne Burnt, quod valet per Annum	4: 0: 0
Ex Inq[uisition] Cap apud Apleby anno superdicto summa	xv[li], xij, 4d – ob q[a]
Vid Apleby	

{8. Ed. 2. [1314-15]}

There is there One Messuage Capital or Mannor house which is worth per Annum	0: 1: 0

19. Ed. 3.

70 Acres (19.Ed. III) of Demane Land att 4d per Acre; valet per Annum	0:16: 8 {ac. 67}[101]
2 acres & ½ of medow quarum quelibet Acra,[102] valet per Annum 16d, sum est	0: 3: 4 {idem}[103]
A certaine marish[104] held by Henry de Warthecop quod valet per Annum	0: 8: 0
{pasture called Kirkbycorne} 36 oxgangs of Land quarum quelibet	

[93] Bury St Edmunds.
[94] The contents of III.197 were copied almost verbatim by N&B; see text and acknowledgement in *N&B1*, 543: 'From an account in Mr Machell's collection, in the handwriting of Mr George Fothergill of Tarn-house, who was then one of the governors of the school.'
[95] Note in Machell's hand.
[96] Kaber.
[97] Also numbered p.22.
[98] 1345-46.
[99] 'Suum est.'
[100] The 0 in the shilling column has been heavily drawn to cover a numeral beneath, now illegible.
[101] 67 acres in the time of Edward III.
[102] 'Of which each is worth.'
[103] 'The same.'
[104] Marsh.

valet per Annum [blank] & sum est	9: 0: 0 {32}
x Messuages Coterellorum,[105] each worth	
per Annum 1s, et sum est	0:10: 0 {40 cott.}
1 water milne, et valet per Annum vi^{li}	6: 0: 0 {20s}

[Mallerstang] {Pendragon} {8. Ed. 2.}[1314-1315]

Allso there is there in the Vale of Mallerstang	
One castle which is called Pendraggon ~~worth per Annum~~	
1 vaccary, held by Andrew de Hartlay[106] & red[it][107] per Annum	0: 0: 6
6 vaccaryes more, which are worth per Annum 20s a piece, & sum est	6: 0: 0
Allso Joyst[108] there, is yerely worth 6^{li}	6: 0: 0
1 Turbarie ibidem. valet per Annum 6s 8d	0: 6: 8
Allso the pleas & perquisites of the Court amount yerely to	0:13: 3
Note Here Pendragon & Kirkby Stephen: sum est	xxix^{li}. xix$^{s.}$ vj^{d}.

(0[109] both under one [blank] But whether this be the whole or ½ dub
Ex eodem escheato {1. Ed. 3.}[110]

[III.222]

[B. Division.]

Constablewicks	Chaples	Gentlemens Houses
Mallerstang	Chaple	Pendraggon
Wharton & Neatby[111]	Wharton Hall	Wharton Hall
Kirkby Stephen	Church	
Hartley	Castle	Castle
Soulby	0	0
Smardale	0	Hall
Wateby	A school	
Winton	A school shut	Scaife
Keyber & the outsides	0	0
Q. Rookeby	0	0

[III.181]

[C.] The Bounder*

West-pit House to Water-Houses exclusively 10. It is bounded on the N. with Musgrave \ & part of Brough / parishes; on the East, with the remainder of Brough in Westm'land / ~~Ruma Kirk~~ & Bowes parish[112] in Yorkeshire; and on the S. with Grinton & Aiskar[113] parishes in the said county;[114] on the West with Gastil in the said County;[115] and Russendale & Crosby parishes in Westmorland, the Perambulation of which goeth thus:

Perambulation

[105] Cottars' houses.
[106] A blot covers the last letter.
[107] The return per annum.
[108] Agistment.
[109] The 0 is followed by a blot.
[110] 'From the same escheat.' Escheat: document relating to the lapsing of land to the Crown or to the lord of the manor, on the death of the owner intestate without heirs. *OED*.
[111] Nateby.
[112] MS: 'parish~~es~~'.
[113] Aysgarth.
[114] Marginalia here are partly obscured by the binding.
[115] Garsdale.

Begin at the foote of the river Below[116] where it enters Eden near to ~~Mr~~ Blands House, which is in Little Musgrave & a ¼ of a mile above the church. Thence \ E. / up the river till you com at the head of Heaning Wood[117] where Brough parish coms in {all the while divideing it from Musgrave parish}. \ Thence up the said river / till you com at the foote (of that water which runns under Buckle Bridge†.)[118] Thence S. up the said water till you com at Woofa Gill-head‡ where Potter-beck comes into it. Thence E. ~~till you~~ up Potter-beck till you \ com / at the foote of the hill calld Moulds by the said water. Thence S.E. to the top of the said hill, & so on by the coale-way to Westland Pit House, commonly calld the Hither Pit House, where Brough & Bowes & Grinton parish meet[119] (all this wile divideing it from Brough) {& thence S.} up then [blank]⸸.
Thence westward in a direct line to Browneber-Edge‖. \ And so / ~~thence~~ lineally to the \ the midle of the / Nine Standers on Caudber Edge;[120] thence S. on Caudber Edge till you com at \ an hurrock voc[atur][121] / Caudber ~~Standers~~ Standerd; thence W. down Lady Dike till you com at Lady Bog; & so on in a streight line to \ an hurrock of stones calld / Hollow-mill cross.

[Machell's Notes: III.181]

*Kirkby Stephen. Will. Bernard – a bo[u]nder-man.
†Called?[122]
‡{Query, as writ of Will. Shat.}[123]
⸸{Enquire of Robert Moss of Hĭggerscale.}[124]
‖Here Swadal clames to Brownbur Edge \ as Hewdal / and Winton clames to Wittsundale head, which is ½ a mile one into another.

[III.182][125]

(a.) Thence agane W. to a gray stone at a place calld Fells End; \ thence S. to Uldal gill head; / thence agane W. to an hurrock of stones on the top of Fells End; thence S. on Mallerstang Edge as heavens water divide to the top High Seat. This Swalldal clame.
(b.) Thence S. lineally from Uldal Gill head to High Seat Top. Thence as heaven water divides, to Hugh Morvils* Seat.Thence S. to a standard ½ a mile of; where Grinton \ Aiskar / & Kirkby parish \ meet / – all this while divideing it[126] \ from the said / Grinton ~~parish in~~ \ in the county of / Yorkeshire. Thence from the said Standard, lineall[y] descending \ W./ to Lile Helgil head (~~where Eden springs~~). Thence W. in a streight l[ine] to a stander of stones at the South end of ~~Litle Baughil~~ \ Swarth Fell / where Aiskar & Gastil \ & Russendale / meet (on ~~Baughel~~ \ Swarth Fell / Edge.) / Thence[127] to a place called Galloway-gate \ ~~where Gastil & Russendale meet~~. / Thence N.W. (by a streight line) to the S.

[116] River Belah.
[117] MS: 'Thence \ E. / up the river till you \ com / [3cm crossed through: illeg.] ~~and so up the water~~' at the head of Heaning Wood'. Haining Wood, see Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 61.
[118] In 1594, Sir Cuthbert Buckle, Lord Mayor of London and a native of Stainmore, left £20, 'to mending of highways between Mayden Castle and Bayllye Bridge.' This is the low road from Stainmore to Kaber and Belah Bridge. Buckle's Bridge is probably now called Oxenthwaite Bridge: *Westmorland Place-Names*.
[119] MS: 'where Bro ~~then directly~~ ugh & Bowes & Grinton parish meet'.
[120] The nine standards (standers) are a set of boundary markers on a hill (Nine Standards Rigg on Hartley Fell) between Winton and Hartley. Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 29.
[121] 'called.'
[122] Here, there is an unclear margin comment, 'Lo[r]d Ten[emen]t there'.
[123] Woofergill is on Stainmore, close to the river Belah, near High Ewebank: Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 60; OS Ref. NY 85349 09433.
[124] 'Heggerscale', Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 5.
[125] Machell used inverted commas to surround this text from the page top down to the place named as 'Dowfin Stye'. From this point, the text (except the last two lines marked (d.)) is scored through. This edition's transcription disregards all scoring-through here. The letters (a.), (b.), (d.), and the inverted commas, suggest that Machell was copying text written by his informants.
[126] Dividing the boundary.
[127] The direction (N.S.E or W.) is covered by a blot.

end of Wilbright Fell.[128] Thence (by the \ N. West / edge of the said fell) to an upping stone†[129] calld the Countiss-Mount \ on the nab / at the E. end of Wilbert-Fell†.[130]
[c.] Thence N. (over the edge of the said fell) to Whitewalls. Thence agane N. (by a streight line) to Dowfin Stye. Thence again \ N. / (lineally descending) to ~~Coalgill~~ \ Langil / -head. Thence N. down the old Cartway till you com at Tarnmire hole near Tarnhouse. Thence W. (~~by~~ down the Tarnmire Sike) to the till runs.
Thence N.W. (in a direct line) to Scandal Beck head, Thence agane N.W. down Scandal beck from the [blank].[131]
(d.) From S[ou]th Runnkeld N. in right line to the Build {a shield for sheep} on Astfell[132] Edge: Thence N.W. as heavenwater divides, to

[Machell's Notes: III.182]
*{Calld?} {H. was to finde out a hill out of which 3 rivers sprang – for his pen[ance]. & so sat down there. T.}[133]
†{These marks are right.}[134]
{Q. if Will Wallers of Stanemore at Swinstaywath has found an image of stone lately there.}

[III.189]

a little Hillock or Hurrock of stones called Hound-Tuft: thence N.W. (on the edge of Astfel) to Russendale High-parke-gate. Thence W. to Gerrards-cross in the parke wall. Thence W. (by the parke wall) to Smardale bridge where Ravenstondale Parish & Crosby Gerard meet. Thence down the river to ~~Soulby~~ \ Crosby/ miln*. Thence ~~west by the way~~ \ N.E. to Soulby mill / by the way down the said river† – & thence W. to Waterhouses[135] by the outring of Soulby Cow pasture til you com at Gallansy Yeat& so up the Lonen stil westward till you com at Waterhouses \ were Asbby parish coms in. / Thence N.W. to ~~Oglebrow~~ \ Ugly Brow,[136] / all along down Waterhouse beck till you com at Uglybrow where Musgrave parish comes in.
Thence N. to High-Hobkins house by Graskill Closes hedge & to Graskil House (belonging to Will. Robinson); thence N. by a streight line to Great Howgill Sike at the place where Apleby way crosses. Thence N. (down the said sike) to Low Hobkins house.[137] Thence \ N. / by ~~a streight line~~ the outside \ ring / of Low Hobkins grounds to a place called Dubber Dike, where a sike runneth out of this Parish. Thence N. (to the W. corner of) Musgrave Intack. Thence N. (by the ring dike of Musgrave Intak)[138] till you com at Sandrig Sike; then N.E. (by the same dike) till you com at the low end of Long Selmer, where that dike ends.
{Thence S.W. down Langil to Slapewath, Scandal beck; thence W. (down the said water) to Scandal-brig: Thence [by] Birkby Way to Terne-we\a/tho\a/ld: Thence S. ~~down the~~ (by a streight line) to the

[128] Wild Boar Fell. Known also as Wilbrichfell; Wilberfell; Willbor-fell.
[129] Upping-stone: a horse-block, a mounting-stone. *OED*.
[130] Just below the summit of Hugh Seat are the remains of a stone pillar (the Lady's Pillar), inscribed with the characters, 'AP 1664': Anne Pembroke (Countess of Pembroke).
[131] This paragraph is scored through and placed within a rectangular box drawn strongly in ink.
[132] Ashfell.
[133] Hugh Seat is named after Sir Hugh de Morville, one of the four knights who murdered Thomas Beckett in Canterbury Catherdral in 1170. Sir Hugh, as Lord of Westmorland, was also the lord of the manor of Mallerstang. Hugh Seat is situated just above the source of the River Eden.
[134] Here the inverted commas end and the scoring-through begins, continuing to the page foot.
[135] MS: '~~Thence W. by the way \ N.E. to Soulby mill / down the said river~~ & thence W. to Waterhouses'.
[136] 'Ugly', from Old Norse 'uglu': owls.
[137] MS: 'Thence N. \ ~~up~~ / to ~~an house called~~ High-Hobkins House ~~by~~ by Graskill Closes hedge to ~~Apleby gate & so~~ to Graskil House (belonging to Will. Robinson); thence N. to ~~Low Hobkins house~~ by a streight line. ~~Thence N. down the sike~~ to Low Hobkins house.'
[138] A margin comment is obscured by the binding here.

Watersmoote[139] at Ingfoot Close, which belongs to Tern House; thence N. up the said water to Southaning Keld from whence it springs.}[140]

Thence \ S. / (by an hedge) to the N. corner of Hard Dales dike; thence N.E. by another dike to a mossy pasture called Sods.[141] Thence E. (by Noble dale Hedge) to Blands Yate. Thence E. by the out Hedge of Blands pasture to Eden. Thence N. down Eden to the foot of Below,[142] where we began.

[Machell's Notes; III.189 and III.194]

*{??} {w. Len. Wharton}[143]
†{~~Query of John Barnes of Soulby Arch~~[…][144] ~~Franke, John Harrison~~}
[III.194}! Query. William Waller of Swinesty near Brough for the bounds and an image of stone.
Query for Kirkby Stephan bound[er] at Soulby: of John Harrison or John Barnes, & do Winton fre[s]h!

[D. Hills, Fells and Pikes]

[III.180]

[Crocklam Castle][145]
On the N. side of the church, Crocklam Castle (a round hill) plane on the top, being about 1 acre of ground now held in tenancy under Apleby Castle. Tis ½ a mile S. by S. from the church.

[III.183]

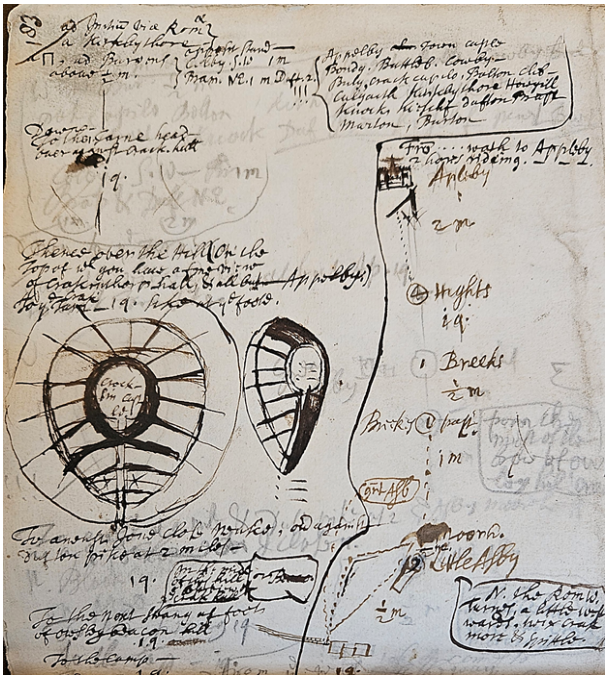


Figure 1.13.8. Crocklem Castle and the Roman Way. III.183.

[139] The beginning of this word is obscured by the binding.
[140] Machell placed this paragraph (another section of the bounder) in the margin here, though it is not obviously linked with the body text. As some of it is obscured, the transcription is not entirely secure.
[141] In the margin: 'to Sodds'.
[142] River Belah.
[143] Witness.
[144] The rest of the name is illegible.
[145] Croglam, Croklam or Croklenn Castle: earthwork with a circular embankment; see Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 9.

[III.188]

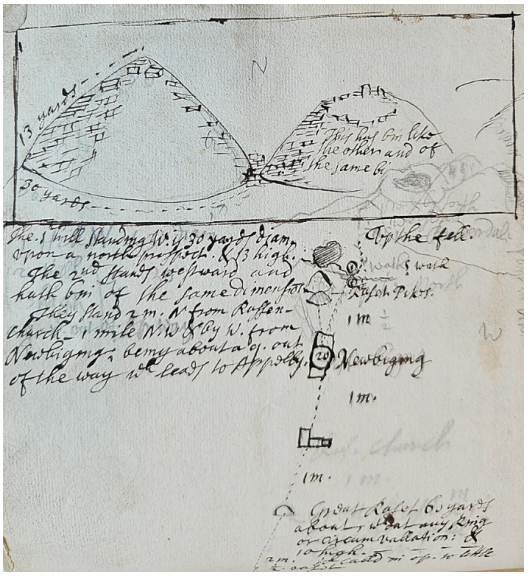


Figure 1.13.9. Fells and route map: Fells south and south-west from Rayseat. Wildboarfell, Bouderdale, Newbiggin, Great Raise. III.188.

The 1[t] hill standing W. is 30 yards diameter upon a north prospect & 13 [yards] high. The 2[nd] stands westward & hath bin of the same dimension. They stand 2 miles N from Russen[dale] Church,[146] 1m. N.W & by W. from Newbiging; being about a q[uarter] out of the way which leads to Appelby.

Up the fell

|

? wath

|

Raset Pikes

|

1 mile

|

20. Newbiging

|

1 mile

|

Russendale Church

|

1 mile

|

Great Raset 60 yard about without any ring or circumvallation; & 10 high – so called in opposition to Little Raset

|

2m ½

|

Kirkby Stephen

[146] Ravenstonedale Church.

A Prospect of the fells S. & S. West from Rasett[147]

Wilborefell; Weesdale[148] S.W. & by S.; Bowderdal S.W.



Figure 1.13.10. Wilborefell, A Prospect of the fell S. & S. West from Rasett Pikes. III.188.

[I.569]

When Wildbore Fell has \ got / a cap
Westmorland \ will have / a swat.[149]

Spoke concerneing a Cap of mist arriseing upon the top of the said mountaine, which by observation, betokens raine.

[III.179]

When Wilber Fell has a Cap –
Kirkby Stephan bewar of a Clap – Sc. wett

They observe here when Mallerstang Force yells upwards it will be raine – when down the river, fair – when in the midle, a breack or alteration of weather. Obser[ve]d at Wharton.

[III.190]

[6. Lordships]

In this parish are 7 or 8 [Lordships]

A. Kirkby Stephan

which has 2 Lords, keep 2 Courtes, both Leet & Barron, severally, so that it may be called 2 Lordships by decentabant,[150] Sc. Lord Thanet & Lord Wharton. And Sir Christopher Musgrave has some tenants there who answer at Hartley. To Lord Wharton, 2 freeholds: William Marshall & Franc[is] Blenkinsop. It is said that Marshall has privilege of wood in Flake[brigg], & deer in Whin[fell], & to keep a cuple of hounds.

[147] Rayseat.
[148] Weasdale.
[149] MS: 'Westmorland ~~beware of~~ \ will have / a swat.' 'Swat' is a Northern dialect name for 'a heavy fall'. *OED*.
[150] 'Suitably be called.'

B. Hartley

[Notes]
S.E. [ab Ecclesia] ¾. Freeholds, none. Tenants 8[d] fine purchased W. About 26.
{And de Harclay[151] tenuit H[artley] et Smardale, 8. Edward 2. [1314-15.]}
Helgilhow from Hartley E. ¼ mile II; Coate Garth, 2 single house N.E. 1 mile; Castle Demaine parke with deer; Court Baron; bounds.{Read freestone, coale, limestone.}[152]{Millstones.}

[Machell's Notes: III.190 & III.180]
Only speckled marble: query.
Houses in Kirkby. Waif & stray, Lord Thanet. Kirkby house to Lord Thanet.
[III.180] Kirkby [Additional Notes]
{There is many familyes – about 160.}
There is one Marshal a freehold[er] who has a grant from my Lord Thanets ancestours, which I would see {Q.?}
{Here was a capital messuage or manner house: 12. Edward 1. [1283-84] III V.5}
The Musgraves has but about 6 tenements exchanged for. One Ledells Tenement under purchased free[hold] of Sir Thomas Wharton in the ill times of Sir P. Musgrave.[153]
Lord Thanet: halfe the towne, a Court Baron customary \ XXIV. /
Lord Wharton: the remainder, a Court Leete, XVIII \ purchased by indenture to a 10d. fine. /
Memorandum: to enquire if they h[ear]d Lord Whartons tenants were ever free, by being [tenants of] Church lands, from answering in any other courts in the county.
Query of a religious house at Tinklar Hill, where tis sayd a market or general meteing of chapmen was formerly kept. T.?
Query of Bench – in my com pli of W.[154]

[III.233]

[Hartley Castle]

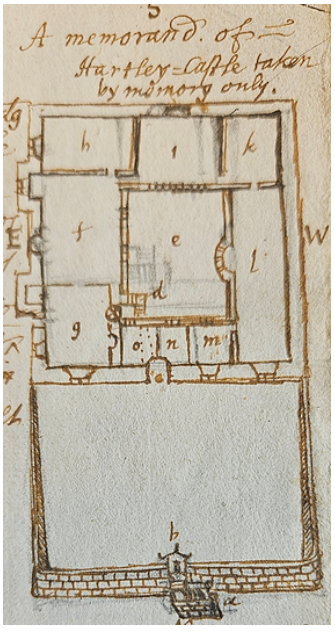


Figure 1.13.11. 'A Memorandum of Hartley Castle'. III.223.

[151] This phrase is written in tiny script, making its transcription unsafe.
[152] The rest of the phrase is obscured by the binding.
[153] See Machell's description of the fortunes of Sir Philip Musgrave during the Civil War and Cromwell's Protectorate on I.590, below. See also A. Marshall, 'Musgrave, Sir Philip, second baronet (1607-1678), royalist army officer and local politician'. *ODNB*.
[154] Written as seen.

A memorandum of Hartley-Castle taken by memory only.
a. The Enterance into the outer Court up by a Stair.
b. The Outer Court
c. The Enterance through an Arched Porch into an Inner Court or Quadrangle
d. The Stair (with Ballasters up to the Hall)
e. The Inner Court or Q.
f. The Hall, under which: g. The Buttery. The Kitchen marked g. Celler's &c.
h. The Chappel.
i. The Dineing Roome.
k. The withdrawing R.
l. The Gallery
m. n. o. Lod[g]ing Roomes.

{An august building}
Hartley Castle is a noble old building upon the edge of a fell and overlookeing the village of Hartley, the town of Kirkby Stephan and many other \ countrey / villages; with fair fields & meadows which lye thereabouts. And on the back side is Hartley-Parke, well replenished with dear, which extends itselfe up unto the fells which are exceeding \ rich / in lead mines, but it lies more frequently in bellyes than veines, which makes it more difficult to be discovered.[155]

[I.586]

Harclay Castle was the seat of the Hardclayes.

Michael de Hardclay. 6. or 9. of King John [1204, 1208]	}	Clifford
John de Hardclay. 13. of King John [1211-1212]	}	
Michael de Hardclay, knight. Temp. Henry 3. [1216-1272]	} obsev'd è Cartis per T.M. vel Machell	Machell[156]
Michael de Hardclay. 22. Henry 3. [1237-1238]	}	
Michael de Hardclay. 14. Edward 1. [1285-1286]	}	Blenkinsop

[I.584]

Nest of Howles as it were hatching
These stones were digged up out of the Lead mines in the Lordship of Hartley, with several of the same sort. In the upper part they very much resemble howles, both in the shape [and] colour, but the ground work is a contexture of Bright Spangling Long Stones some like Cristall, but some more dull with intermixture of yellow. Iam penes sunt Dominus Philip Musgrave apud Edenall in Cumberland ubi ipse vidi.[157] Here, nature has framed an \ ingenious / emblem how to get Riches; namely by Learning; for the Noctua, the Howle or Night-Bird sitting upon these pieces of spar, seemes to hatch Lead, and a wholly Belly of it was found in the place where these stones were taken.[158]

[155] See John F. Curwen, *The Castles and Fortified Towers of Cumberland, Westmorland, and Lancashire North of the Sands*, CWAAS Extra Series 13 (Kendal, 1913), 207-08.
[156] Observed by Thomas Machell in charters relating to either Clifford, Machell or Blenkinsop.
[157] 'These have long been in the custody of Sir Philip Musgrave at Edenhall in Cumberland, where I myself have seen them.'
[158] See Robert Plot, *The Natural History of Oxford-shire: being an essay towards the natural history of England* (1677). 'Plate 3. Stones relating to Air, or to the Watery Kingdom, no.7: an owl's head shape seen in flint.'



Figure 1.13.12. Stone 'howles'. Pencil and ink drawing. I.584.

[I.569B]

March 28 1694

1 – A stone of the colour and like of scales of a Tortoise – long – 8 – inches, broad 6 in ½; in weight [Blank] found on Hartley fell in the hollow parts around glistering seames.

2 – A strange Stags horne, curled like rock-worke & in the velvet head, as appeard by som pieces of skin plucked of, thick at the riseing of the brow antler xi inches in circumference high, following the process of bending – 26 inch onely – the brow Ankler branched out 6½ inch and was in circumference 9 inch & ½ and almost as thick at the end – thick above the branch of the brow ankler, xi inch in circumference The up[per] Ankler branchd 5 inch and in circumf. ix. thick above said Ankler x [inches], & about 9 under the Top Branch – where a point is cut of. Found about Wharton Hall – & now in cust[ody] of Dr. T[illars].

[Machell's Notes: I.569A] [159]

The horne & stone at Dr Tillars: The first – got of a man at Neatby. the 2 – at Hartley Fell.

[I.569C]



Figure 1.13.13. 'Stone like a tortoise; strange stags horn'. I.569C.

[159] Scrap page measuring 16cm x 21cm.

[III.190]

C. Mallerstang[160]

[Notes]
A chaple S. [Ecclesia] 3 miles. Free[holds] none. Arbitrary, about 50 or 60*. Lord Thanet. Pendragon demolishd by him about 1685. {Millstones.} No demaine. Court Baron at Snasefield. Corn at Mallerstang Foot. N. from the castle is one Tumulus of Stones but no gutter about it. A chaple. S. ¼ E. from castle. A well ½ mile E. the castle[161] cald Comekirk well cures the scratches or any itch: Len. Wharton.[162]

[III.192]

Mallerstang [has] a chaple where school is taught. The inscription over the school. Indowment of both, if any be bore. {No freeholds} A castle.

[II.480]

[Pendragon Castle]
It is supposed to have bin built in or before the time of Uter Pendragon, and this for those times a very elegant & well

[II.481]

con[t]rived piece, being tower in castle and having a gallery quite \ all along / about the top of the castle. The windowes are so contrived on the highest romes, ~~as that you may escape~~ \ as to prevent / the danger of arrows; and the walls are att least 4 thicke, whose forme & plat is here represented. See my oblong pocket booke.[163]

[III.215][164]

The Bounder of Mallerstang
Ridd by the Right Hon. Thomas, Earle of Thanett Island &c.in his owne person the 17th day of September in the 36th yeare of the raigne of our Soveraigne Lord Charles Second &c. Anno' Domini 1684.
1. Beginning at Water yate Skarr.
2. Thence through Sopkeld otherwise Killingclose to a place where a crab tree formerly stood & was marked by Henry Lord Clifford, great grandfather to George, late Earle of Northumberland, as his Bounder, neare which place in the yeare of Our Lord 1651 when these bounders were ridd for the Right Honourable Ann, late Countess Dowager of Pembroke, stood an ash tree, which upon that occacon was marked with A.P. as a bounder marke.
3. Thence through Ash Bank (which is alsoe part of Sopkeld) where an house formerly was built, through which house the Bounder went.
4. Thence to the foot of Naitgill.
5. Thence up Naitgill by Ravenskarr to Kitchingill Foote.
6. Thence up Kitchingill to Tailebrigg Sike.
7. Thence up Tailebrigg Sike to the row of caves.
8. Thence to the Ginglinge cave.
9. Thence through Lamps mosse to a gray stone in Carelesse-Bank on the North-East of Fell end.
10. Thence to the ~~end the~~ \ lower / end of Seavyman in Ulgill Head.
11. Thence to the North end of High Seate.
12. Thence as Heaven Water deales to the South end of High Seate.
13. Thence over Little Sleddall Head to Gregory Chappell.
14. Thence alonge Gregory band to an hurrock of stones at Langill Head.

[III.216]

15. Thence to the hight of High Seate Morvell.
16. Thence as Heaven water deales to the Skarth of Skailes.

---

[160] MS: '3. ~~Pendragon~~ Mallerstang'.
[161] MS: 'a castle.'
[162] Several margin comments here, including a query related to the river Eden, are obscured by the binding.
[163] For Uter Pendragon see also, I.31-33. A fuller description of Pendragon Castle can be found at the end of a draft letter from Machell to Dr John Mill (Part 3, Ch.3, Roman Antiquities, IV.82).
[164] This page is not in Machell's hand [It is possibly the neatest bounder description in all 6 volumes. Ed.]

17. Thence up Capell-May-Sike.
18. Thence downe Capell-May-Sike to Withow sike.
19. Thence to White Birke.
20. Thence up Stubbing rigg to Midle gill otherwise Smithygill Howe.
21. Thence up an hurrock of stones at the East end of Swarthfell called Swarthfell-Pike.
22. Thence to an hurrock of stones on Galloway Gates.
23. Thence as Heaven Water deales to Bland Stone.
24. Thence to an hurrock of stones on Scandall-Head.
25. Thence to the pike on Wildbore Fell.
26. Thence to the top of Mickle ark
27. Thence alonge Stony gate to Mere Pott.
28. Thence to the great cave in Greenelowhead.
29. Thence to the head of Fothergill beck.
30. Thence downe Fothergill Beck to Eden water.
31. Thence up Eden water to Wateryeate Skarr.[165]

[I.568]

The Forest of Mallerstang belongs to the Castle of Pendraggon in which castle are \ certane / edifices or buildings which cannot be extended by reason the cost on them bestowed exceeds the profit of the same. In the forrest are diverse vaccaries and other profitts of herb, which are in the hands of tenents att will and by the yeres att the Termes of St Martin & Pentecost: 30:0:0.
Notwithstanding in the yere 1333, Edward Baliol King of Scotland came from thence into Westm'land in a friendly manner to Robert Lord Clifford as before in the relation concerneing him wee have specifyed, and

[I.569]

lodged with him in his Castles of Apleby Browham Brough and Pendraggon; yett some 3 yeres before the death of Robert Lord Clifford, which was Robert the 2nd in 1341, this Castle of Pendraggon in Mallerstang was Burned By Scotts who were of the contrary party to \ King / Edward aforesaid, in an Inroad \ which they / made ~~att that time~~ i[n]to Westm'land; from which time till of late it lay wast & desolate the very \ way / too it being become inaccessible by Coach or Carryage, or allmost by an Horseman till the Honorable Lady, the Lady Ann Clifford, Countess Douager of Dorsett Penbroke and Mongomery, of whom wee have so oft spoke for her many noble workes, tooke in hand to Repare it; {Kirkby Stephen pag. 1}[166]And the first man that past those strate,[167] was ~~Squire~~ \ Lancelott / Machell of \ Crakenthorp Esq., a man \ whose person & family and very name for the antiquity thereof, / highly beloved of the said Countesse; who in his owne person, with his draughts & servants brough[t] the first s[t]ik of Timber to repare of this castle.[168]

This Robert was the first Clifford who injoyed it in his proper right, for till then it belonged to his Great Aunt Idonea. And it is observable that as it was destroy'd in his time, being the first, so it was repared in her time, being the last of the name of The Cliffords that were owners hereof. And from the said year \ 13 / 41 it was not inhabited, till 1661; in which yere on the fourteenth of October The Lady Ann Clifford came with here family and lodged here for 3 or 4 nights; and has lived in it severall times since. It is a very neat building for a thing so ancient, the plattforme & front of which I have here presented [and inscribed as follows]

> To the honourable Ann Clifford. Countess, d[owager]of D[orset] P[embroke] & M[ontgomery], T.M. presenteth this draught & platforme of her Castle of Pendraggon.[169]

[165] A scored-through squiggle beneath the 'perambulation' text is possibly a mark to demonstrate that the bounder description had been examined.
[166] Part of this margin comment has perished.
[167] 'Strate', as in 'street': a paved road, especially a Roman road; a highway. *OED*.
[168] MS continues: '~~and it is observable That as it was~~'.
[169] The plan was not inserted.

[IV.37]

Multitude of Vaccaries

[In the mid-13th century Book of Knights Fees, the collectors say] that two natives in the manner of Kirby Stephan through poverty by reason of raseing there farm [rents] are departed & gone. Allso they say that the vale of Mallerstang is much decayd by the multitude of vaccaries and chiefly by the archery of Roger the Forrester & other archers of Lounsdale for default of the priors and want of custody. Item. Purprestures[170] have bin made in many places within the forests of the Marches through backdated permission from the Prior.

[III.179]

Of the River Eden [1.]

The River Eden springs at Hew Seat in Mallerstang Lordship. Runs \ W. to Mallerstang dale head / under Helgil Brig, so calld from the deepness of the channel between 2 great rock so near together that an horse may leap over it, so down E. to Mallerstang dale head. Thence N. on the West side of Pendragon Castle, which is moted, Let Uter Pendraggon &c. Thence through Wharton Parke, 6 score yards on the E. side of the Hall to Stenk\ereth / ~~and~~ (stone) bridge on the E*. Thence E. on the West side of Hartley Castle at 24 score distance. Thence westward from Force mil to Eden wood bridge near Kirkby. Thence (N.) under the vicaridge within 10 yards of it – ~~and near~~ \ on the / E. side the town to the Low-mill. Thence (N.) to the new (stone) bridge.

[Machell's Notes: III.179]

*{T. One Cowkernal[171] comes up every fasten-dayes-eve in the morning, & combes her head with a golden comb.}

[III.180][172]

Thence N. by turneings on the West of Winton, ¼ mile. And so N. \ leaveing Souldby ½ mile on the west / to Soulbeck foote \ in the West /which comes from Smerdale. Thence by turning N. to Heaing Foote where this parish begins.

The farther course of Eden [blank][173]

[III.213]

Of the River Eden [2.]

{[Informant] Ed. Addison who lived within 2 miles of HewSeat[174] at Birtil in Yorkeshire æt 22.}

This river springeth in an hill call'd HewSeat \ upon Mallerstang Fell / on the top of which is a small square mount to which you ascend by 7 or 8 stares, which is the bounder marke of the \ 2 / countyes {built by the C. P.}[175] And the spring head of Eden is about 5 or 6 score yards below the said mount in the West side of the said hill, which is Westmorland side. {On the S. West side that ward of Mallerstang.} And on the opposit side of this hill about the same distance from the said mount, & not above 60 yards apart one from another, as likewise from Eden, rise Eure & Swall;[176] the former of which runs down Wensedale, the latter down Swadale. {The fel on one side is called Mallerstang Fell, the other Sleddal Fell}

1. It runs westward from the springhead under Helgill brig \ 1 mile / into Mallerstang-gill \ Head ¾ [mile] / thence northward to Kirkby Stephen. Thence N.W. to Musgrave. Thence N.W. to Appleby &c.

[170] 'Purpresture': illegal enclosure of or encroachment upon land or property belonging to another; appropriation of land or property for private purposes, often retrospectively confirmed for payment. *OED*.

[171] Possibly a 'cauk' or 'caukrum': a frightful object; a scare-crow. See Joseph Wright, *The English Dialect Dictionary 1* (London, 1898-1905), 544.

[172] On this page, inked text is interspersed with, and sometimes covers, text written in pencil. It has been transcribed only where legible. The pencilled text appears to have been an early draft.

[173] Presumably, Machell meant to continue the course of the Eden elsewhere.

[174] High Seat.

[175] Countess of Pembroke.

[176] Ure and Swale.

[At Mallerstang the river runs as follows]
{To the chaple 2 miles \ a st[one] brig / to Pendragon Castle 1 mile. Lammerset 1 mile. A wood bridge. Wharton Hall ½ mile a wood brig above. Stengthrith stone bridge. A mill 1 mile. 2 milns – Kirkby Bri[g] of wood 1 mile. New Bridge Stone ¼} {From Pendragon Castle to Kirkby 3 ~~length~~ miles.}

[Machell's Notes on Mallerstang: III.190 & 192]

Accident: Mrs Braithwhate, the wife of Captain Braithwhate, being under som melancolly, lept of the \ very / top of this castle at the W. corner, by which her back & thigh were broken and she dyed 3 dayes after.
[III.192]
A white slate & hewen [quarry] ¼ E. from the chaple.
Coale 1 mile S.W. at Wilbert Fell, and much {limestone. Lead at Bel.[177] ¾ N. \ & at / Birket N.W. ¾.}

D. Wharton (& Neatby)[178]

Free[holds] none. S. [ab Ecclesia] 1 mile. Tenements purchased to a 10[d] fine 80 years agoe of Sir Thomas Wharton, son of Lord Phillip and father of the present Lord Phillip {where Lammerset Hall also: an Hall of Lord Wharton East from Wharton}. \ Hall in a grove of trees, a chaple.[179] /

The Town: demolished by Wharton Hall \ L[ord] W[harton] / & the tenants dispersed to Wharton Dikes ½ mile S. & S.W. from the Hall. XVI ancient tenements & 4 cotts*. Court ~~leet &~~ Baron at Kirkby Wharton & Neatby. One free.[180] About 3 [freeholds] belonging to the Warcops. & there is an hill calld Barnard Hill†. A strong tower house with a doore barrd with iron & 24 I. & T.s upon [it] for names of desc[endants] in that family. The Dalstons of Dalston had [it] by marriage with an heiress thereof; & exchanged with Wharton for the tythe [of] Soulby, so now it is part of Wharton demaine.

[Wharton] Parke. Ash; no oakes but 2.

In Wharton Dikes 1688, where there are but 20 houses, 12 of them (women) are widdows. And in the said place there ~~are~~ \ were / heiresses in 1680. Eliz[abeth] Grasson[181] of W. D. ~~a woman~~ brought to bed of 3 children about 30 year since. {~~Hard birth~~.}

[Machell's Notes: III.190]

*Vide Item. Lammerset Hall, anciently an Hall and demaine of itself.
†Query of the name.[182]

[III.194]

L[ord] W[harton's] Injeniouse[183] coale works.
A new house built by him. Writ over the dooer:

Give me leave, when I may goe in;[184]
When I come forth free from all sin.
March 7[th]: this House was begun.
Ended December 6. L. \ W. / M.

with an hou[n]d & hare, for his love to hunting.

[177] Great Bell.
[178] Nateby.
[179] Marginalia here are obscured by the binding.
[180] Presumably, Nateby contained one freeholder.
[181] Grayson.
[182] Bermer Hill and Scar = Burnmye, Burnemoor. See Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 84.
[183] A word here is obscured by the binding.
[184] MS: 'I ~~when~~ I may goe in'.

Good houses
Lord Whartons. Lockwhate[185] at Neatby: Lord Whartons.
Scaifes & Shuts in Winton.[186]

[Machell's Notes: III.179]

{A chaple in Wharton Hall.}
{Thomas de Musgrave infra et held ½ R. anno viii Edward 2. with Great Musgrave, Morton and a pro part of Sandford: p. 63 M.V. Query of the other ½?}

[III.192]

In the parke as you goe from [Wharton] Hall towards Kirkby is a flat limestone with an hole in the midst like the impression of a mans shoe.
And at Stengthret[187] bridge in Neatby Liberty is a round deep hole in the limestone channel, like to [a] Ketle. No quarry (but limestone).
Old Mich, father of Lenerd – a great archer – shooting at 11 score, the adverse party threw in an arrow within a ¼ of the prick & he {came with one arrow towards 4 inches & so toke him out, & then with the other he tooke him out too & so up'd the game*.}

[Machell's Notes: III.192]

*{? N.B. query of John Wallar of Ewans in Winton.}

[III.202]

Wharton Hall

Key
a. The Gate house with a Tower above
b. The Slaughter.
c. [Blank]
d. The kitchen over which a Tower.
e. The Buttery
f. The Hall, to which you ascend by steps.
g. A Parlour or Bedchamber; a Study or Evidence Room.
h. The Dineing Room
i, k, Bedchambers. Over which a great Tower.
l. The Gallery: at the end of which is a Chappell.

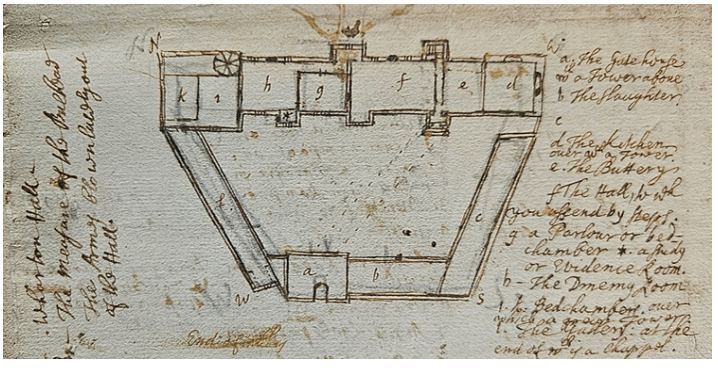


Figure 1.13.14. Plan of Wharton Hall. III.202.

[185] Lockthwaite.
[186] See III.185, below (Winton).
[187] Stenkrith.

[Machell's Notes III.202]

The measure of the Bulhead.
The armes blown lately out of the Hall.

[III.201][188]

[Armorial Glass in the Gallery]

[a. and b.] 2 windows on the East side

(a.)

Wharton impaleing a Quarterly Coate. Azure a manch Or, charged with anulet Sable. The 2. quarterly Sc. thus, the 1. obliterated but seems barry Azure & Argent; the second, Argent a chiefe with 3 bars* gemmews Or; the third as the second; the fourth as the first. The 3[r] quarter in the impale is as the second; the 4[th] as the first.



Figure 1.13.15. Machell's Figure (a.). III.201.

1.13.15.

(b.)

b. Quarterly of xi. The
1. Azure in a bordure engrailed[189] a Lyon rampant Or.
2. Gules in a bordure ingraled a Lyon rampant Or.
3. Bendy of 10 Gules & Argent {had it been a. & g., it were Talbot: see *Guillam* p. 277}.[190]
4. Gules, 3 garbes Or.
5. Azure, 5 ragged staves barwise Argent {Barry of 10 Argent & Azure. 12 martlets of the first: 3 2. 2. 2 & 1 Indented}.
6[th]. Or, a chiefe /\/\/\ Azure.
7. Argent 2 Lyons passant Gules.
8. Gules, a saltier Argent.
9. Argent, a bend between 6 martlets Gules.
10. Broke out & now a blank \ but / Or a fret Gules.
11. Argent a Lyon rampant Gules with tale reversed Gules.

[188] As much of this page was completed in pencil and then written in ink, some of the text was duplicated. Such duplications have not been transcribed.
[189] Machall drew a heraldic symbol here, meaning 'engrailed'.
[190] Richard Blome, *Guillam's, A Display of Heraldry* (1679).



Figure 1.13.16. Machell's Figure (b.). III.201.

This seemes the father of Lord Whartons wife. See at (d.) of the 2nd wife. {It is so of the 2nd wife, Georgius Comes Salopiæ.[191] See my booke of ped[igrees]: Wharton. But the field is there Gules.}[192]

(c.)

In the 3rd window an other coate set in a garter without a crownet.
Quarterly of V. The first quarter is quarterly, Sc. 1t. Vert a Lyon rampant Azure {!} (false heraldry);
2. The English armes \ uncoloured / within a bordure Ermin & Argent. 3rd Argent 3 fishes saliant Or;
the 4th barry of 5: Azure and Or.
The second [quarter] is Azure, a fess fusile Or.
{?}The 3rd barry of 6 Or (if not rather tenne) & Vert, a bend Gules.
The 4th 3 Lyons passant Argent and the field so too. Over all, a bend Azure.

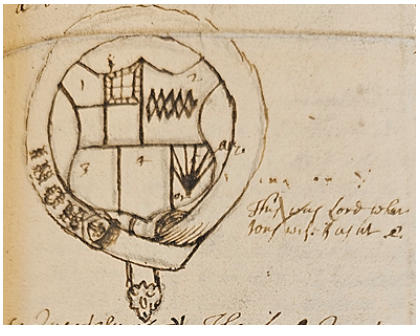


Figure 1.13.17. Machell's Figure (c.). III.201.

This was Lord Whartons wife as at e.?

(d.)

The window nex the chapel on the West side.
[Quarterly] The 1t Gules 3 Lyons passant gardant Or, with a file of 3 lambeaux Argent.
2. Gules between 6 croses {crosslets fichee? if Sharp} a bend Argent charged with a scutcheon of the Scots arms.
3. Checkey, Or & Azure.
4. Gules, a Lyon rampant Argent.

[191] George, Earl of Shrewsbury.
[192] Pencilled note in Machell's hand.



Figure 1.13.18. Machell's Figure (d.). III.201.

{This, I take it, belongs to the Howards, Dukes of Norfolk & Earles of Arundell. But Note the crosses fitchy &c. should be in the 1[t] quarter, for so they bear them now: see Bloms guide in *Honour Civil & Military*, f.32.}[193]

[III.203]

[Armorial Glass] in the Dining Room

In the Great window next the Court – upon a shield like that (a.) is a plane Manch:
And on another of the same fashon in the same window is an Impaled: c. Or, a fess fusile Azure which is quite contrary to that at (c.)

(e.)

The second window from the chapel on the west side
1. Whartons Armes with the accession of the Bordure \ invecked / Quartering a Quarterly coate: Sc. First, Ermin on a chief Azure 3 Lyons rampant Argent: Secondly, quarterly Gules & Argent, a bend Or. Third as Second; Fourth as first; which coate is born agane in the 3 & Whartons in the 4[th]; & these Impale~~ing~~ the ~~ten~~ \ 11 / Quarterly. As at (b.) in the foregoing page. Which is the Armes of the 2[nd] wife of T[homas] Lord Warton, with D[aughter of] L Comiti Salopice.[194]



Figure 1.13.19. Machell's Figure (e.). III.203.

(f.)

In the 3[rd] window is ~~Wharton~~ 1. A shield of the same fashion with that at (a.) but florished at both ends (as the other should be for it is defective) wherein are these (c.) Sc. Quarterly Sable: a plane manch by the name of Wharton. {?} Quartering the same coate as before at (e.) Sc. Ermin on a chief ~~Gules charged~~ \ Azure / 3 Lyons rampant Argent &c. Impaleing this coate: Sc. Argent a Lyon rampant[195] Sable charged on his brest with a mullet of five \ points / of the first {which is Stappeltons, his 1[t] wife.}

[193] Richard Blome, *An Essay to Heraldry, in Two Parts. The First Containing ... the Body of Heraldry; the Second, Honour Civil and Military; Being a Treatise of the Nobility and Gentry of England ... The Whole Illustrated with ... Sculptures, Etc.* (London, 1685).
[194] '… and daughter of the Earl of Shrewsbury.' See also, '(b.)'.
[195] Here, the MS has a small sketch.

(g.)

In the other Great (Dineing Room) Window

Cliffords coat quarterly of ix impaleing another quarterly of 6. In Clifford the 1ᵗ is checky Or & Azure a fess Gules. The 2nd Azure: 3 burneing chained bullets Or. 3. Vert. 3 flames Argent. 4. Gules 6 anulets Or. The 5th is quarterly Or & Gules in a bordure Argent & Azure. The 6. Sable a bend fleury Or. 7. Barry of 6 or & Azure, in a canton Gules[196] Or. 7. Or a cross Sable. 8. Argent on a chief indent Gules an annulet betwixt 2 mullets of 5 pointes Or.[197]

II. The coate impaled is quarterly of 6: the 1ᵗ Azure a tower Argent, having a cupole[198] above the battlement, 2. Barry of 8, Or & Gules, a crescent in chief of the second.

III. Gules 3 fishes palewise Argent.

IV. Sable a griffin rampant {? one foot up}[199] between 3 crosses Argent.

V. Sable 3 tents or rather towers with pyramidal tops ~~Argent~~ & a mullet of 5, in chief Argent.

{VI. Argent, a[200]Gules, chargd with 5 mullets of 5 pointes Or.}

The supporter: a dragon Gules with crooked tale & eagles feet, & a goat Argent. The crest, a dragon's head Gules out of a coronet Or, & on a wreath, a goat standing Argent – Armed Or.

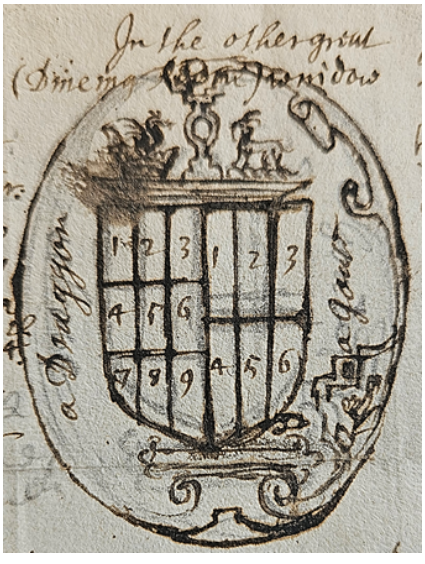


Figure 1.13.20. Machell's Figure (g.). III.203.

(h.)

In the midle light is Cliffords 9 quarterings. The supporters a dragon Gules & a wolfe waved Or, Argent & Azure. The crest a helmet on a coronet & above that a dragon Gules isueing out of a coronet Or.

(i.)

In the other light is Wharton with the bordure, quartering a quarterly c[oate]: Sc. Ermin on a chiefe Gules. 3 Lyons rampant &c. – as before – the III The same agane & the IIII Wharton. These quarterings of Wharton do impale Clifford with the 9 Quarterings as afore. The supporters a white Bul with a crown coller \ & armed / Or, & a read Draggon. 2 Crests in 2 Ovals: 1. A Bulls head errased Argent \ crown / collered & armed Or. 2. as before: Sc. a dragon out of a crown.

---

[196] Here Machell has drawn a cross crosslet.
[197] Machell has omitted no.10.
[198] Cupola.
[199] As it lies close to both sets of text, this comment could equally well refer to the foot of Coat (i).
[200] Here Machell has drawn a cross crosslet.

[III.205][201]

(l.)

In the great window, which looks out of the hall into the court.

There is Whartons armes with crest & mantle quartering a quarterly coat: Sc. Ermin on a chief Azure, 3 Lyon &c. as before. The manch is without any bordure; the mantle Argent & Gules; the crest on a wreath Argent and Azure, lying on an helmet; a Bulls head errased Argent, with a crown coller Or, topping and mane Sable. {This is Whartons Armes with the Quarterings before he was Lord.}

(m.)

In the first window on the opposit side next to the doer which leads to the dineing rome are three plane shields, the first Clifford, as here. II. Azure a manch Or. III. Azure a bend Or.

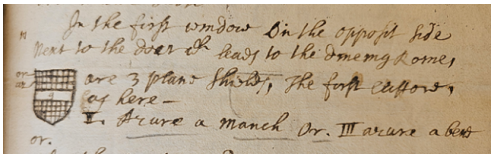


Figure 1.13.21. Plain shield, Clifford. III.205.

(n.)

In the next window on the other side the chimney, are 3 like the other: sc. 1. Gules, 6 Lyons rampant Argent; II Argent, a Lyon rampant Azure; III Azure fretty Argent.

(o.)

In the lesser window next the court have bin 3 (but now there remains 2 only.) The 1 is Gules, 3 cushons Ermin tassled Or. II [Blank]. III Azure a chief with 3 cheveronell brased Or.

(p.)

And in the end window has bin 3 alsoe: 1. Quarterly, Sc. First or a Lyon rampant, Azure; secondly Gules 3 fishes ~~III~~ Argent; third as second; 4th as first. II: gon. This, I am told, was the fishes single: per Len Wharton.[202] III: Quarterly: Sc. first Argent a bend Gules, charged with three garbes I thinke, of the first; the second I suppose has bin the same with the third; the third is verry. Sc. Argent & Azure.[203] ~~Azure & Argent counter compond~~.

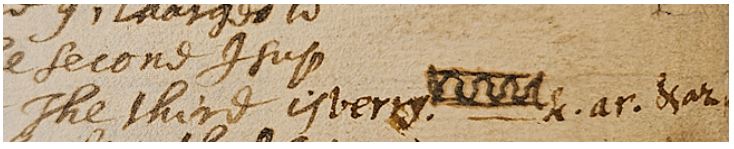


Figure 1.13.22. Image at foot of page after 'verry'. III.205.

The fourth I suppose as the first, but broken & gon.

[III.207]

In the parler are 6 coates: Sc. in the upper lights of the great window which looks into the court.

(q.)

{1553} Musgrave with Quarterings Impaleing Wharton with Quart[erings].

1. Musgrave Or, 6 anulets Or. 2. Stapleton ~~quartering Vipont~~ being 3 daggers Gules on a field Argent impaleing Vipont, which is on 6 anulets Gules. 2. 2. &c.

These impale Wharton with the bordure Or, charged with 9 saltiers of Lyons pawes Gules, which is in

[201] On MS. III.205 is the sentence '{Memorandum: the gallery has on the plaster …1594.}', but some of the text has perished.

[202] Witness: Leonard Wharton.

[203] See *Fig.1.13.22*.

the 1ˢᵗ Quarter. {Query whether the bordure ingraled.} In the 2nd quarter is a quarterly coate: Sc. Ermin on a chief Gules &c., as before in the Gallery; the 3rd as second; 4th as first.

(r.)

The second shield is Wharton (quartering as before) with a file of 3 lambeaux impaleing this quarterly coat of 8: Sc.
I. Argent a bend ingraled Sable.
II. Or, a fess between 2 cheverons Gules.
III. Argent, within a border Azure, a Lyon rampant Sable crowned.
IIII. Argent a saltier ingraled Sable.
V. Gules, 3 fishes Argent {111}.
VI. Argent, 3 bars Gules.
VII. Or, pouderd with floredelices Sable. {calld (in short) Ermineis}
VIII. Argent, an eagle Sable with a childe proper in his clawes, in swaddling-clouts[204] Gules.

(s.)

The third shield is the Kings Armes, with a florish about them like a wreath, with an imperial crown on the top. & on the binders at either side of the wreath is writ DIEV EST MON DROIT. {the Kings Armes is also in the drawing Roome.}[205]

(t.)

The fourth is Wharton quartering the quarterly coat as before, with a Bear {rather a Lyon […]}[206] Gules in a net Or {?} for one supporter, & a Bul (as before) for the other; the mantle Argent & Gules & the crist, on a wreath Or & Gules a Bulls head &c. {& this motto underneath: -LESYR EN FAYTS DERMIS.}[207]

(v.)

The fifth is Wharton Quarterly as aforesaid – Impaleing a Quarterly coat of 4, whereof the 1. is a Lyon rampant Sable. The 2. is quarterly of 4: first, Argent a bend between 6 martlets Gules, the second Argent a fess Azure charged with 3 floerdelices Or &c.; III. Argent 2 bends Gules; the IIII as first!

(w.)

The VI is a quarterly coat: Sc. 1 Argent a fess

[III.208]

fusilee Azure. II. Barry of 6 Argent & Gules, a canton of the second; the 3rd &c., impaleing Wharton Quartered with the Quarterly coate as before.



Figure 1.13.23. Wharton Hall Parlour. Musgrave Coat of Arms. III.207.

[204] Cumbrian dialect for cloths or clothes.
[205] 'God and my Right' is the motto of the reigning monarch.
[206] The word following 'Lyon' is very close to the page edge. It possibly reads as 'seiant'.
[207] The Wharton motto is, 'PLEASUR IN ACTS DARMYS': pleasure in acts of arms. See *CFH*, 362.

In the Study or Evidence Rome

(x.)

Carved in wood, the plane manch; a fret & chief impaleing Wharton; Cliffords armes & quartering. And in glass, Vert a Lyon rampant Azure with quarterings & garter as in the Gallery {false heraldry.}

Below Stairs

(y.)

In the great roome \ over against the grate / in a shield florish at both ends like that in the dineing rome, Musgrave impaleing the plane manch.

(z.)

Over the hall porch, the Armes have bin carved with the quarterings crist & supporters, mantle &c., but the Armes are washed out. The supporters here are a Lyon \ in a net / & a Bull {?} with a Long Tayle collered about his neck as they may be see in my Bloomes, *Guillam*. {&c.}[208]

Over the Great Gates on the outside of the House

Whartons Coat at large with saltiers of Lyons pawes in a border ing~~raled~~\vecked! / which I have not observed afore. {It is not so in Bloomes edition of *Guillam*. Query: ergo if in other coates within the house.} The coat is quarterly: I. The manch in a bordure &c. II. Quarterly, Sc. first Ermin – 3 Lyons rampant &c; secondly, 4 quarters with a bend on the second; III, As the second; IIII, as the first. The crist – on a wreath upon an helmet a Bulls head errased, with a crown coller. The supporters, a Lyon in a net & a collered Bull, the motto underneath (in florished letters) PIEA SVR \ EN. / FAYTS. D'ARMYS.[209] And, ANNO DNI.1559. But the building looks older by much.

[III.190]

E. Weatby[210]

[Notes]

W. [ab Ecclesia]1 mile. Most free[holders] purchased about '86, ix or 10. The rest arbitrary, about 4 or 5. It belongs to Sir John Lowther of Sockbridge, now Lord. No manner house but query of a castle on the E. of the town. And t[alk of] a market town before K[irkby Stephen]. vix credo[211] \ Hen. De Warthecop [had] ½ & Warthcop, 8. Edward 2. [1314-15].[212] / No boons. A free schoole. \ ½ Wateby held by Beauchamp. / Andreas de Harcla sen. Harcla et Smardale: 8. Edward 2. See MS Part III, pag. 27.

[I.496]

Half of that Lordship sometime in the possession of the Beachamps: vid. p. 33 col. 1 ad fine.[213]

[III.192]

[School]

Weatby a free school. The account of it is in som part of this paper.[214] Limestone only. The manner house seems to have bin a castle in the intack call'd Carny Castle at this day, an abbreviation of Carnaby, whom they say Lord Wharton took prisoner; formerly said to be the seat of one Torphin de Wateby {There are the vestigia of a little \ street or town / on the ridge of the hill between \ the schoole / & the village. They talke of it being a city or great towne.} Now xiv or xv families {of

[208] Richard Blome, *Guillam's, A Display of Heraldry* (1679).
[209] 'Pleasure in acts of arms', see above.
[210] Waitby.
[211] 'I scarce believe it.'
[212] Three illegible abbreviated words here: omitted.
[213] There appears to be no reference to Waitby and the Beauchamps on p.33 of any of Machell's 6 volumes. MS. III.190 gives similar information in highly interlineated note-form. Legible words are, '5. Weatby. W. 1m. Most free. Purchased about '86. IX or 10. The rest arbitrary: about 4 or 5. It belong to Sir John Lowther of Sockbridge, now Lord. No manner house – but query of a castle on the E. of the Towne. And T. a market Towne before K. Vix credo. No bounes. A Free School.\ Hear de Waitbye cap. ten. & wurthe cap. 8. Edward … ½ Wateby held by Beauchamps.'
[214] Now placed together here on III.192 and III.194.

which all freehold, but one hath som tenant right, purchased fr[ee][215] of Sir John Lowther of Sockbridge about the year 1686. The demaine is divided amongst tenants. They say the demaines were free from suit in the sherifs Turn.}

[III.194]

Over the dooer of Wateby school, a pretty little building in a wald gardine[216] on a blew marble stone:

> THIS ~ SCHOOLE ~ BUILT ~ BY ~ Mr James Highmoore. Born in Waitbye
> clothworker ~ in London for / the use of Waitby ~ & Smardale /
> ANNO ~ DOMINI ~ 1630

Mr William Howgil, the master, sayes there [is] xi^{li} per annum laid to it, out of 400^{li} & above, given by the founder for that use & the use of the poore widows of those places. 12 twopenny love[217] being ordered by his will to be distributed every Sunday to xii widows being 60 year of age & upwards.[218] It is called Waitby from its scituation in hollows 'll[219] by pooles & plashes of water. Soulby has water runns down the Town.[220]

[III.180]

[Torphin de Wateby]

Robert =
|
Torphin =
|
Hugo Gornegan = Maud fil Torphin
|
Hugo fils Gornegan

King John anno ejus 5^{0} [1203-1204] granted the wardship of Hugo the son of Gornegan & Richard ~~to~~ Sirninton, to Robert de Veteriponte. And Maud, the widow of Henry Jernegan, released her dower in Karthorp (near Tanfield in Yorkeshire) to the said Robert, who had the custody of her son by the said Kings grant. And this Maud was daughter of Torphin de Wateby granted all her lands in Westm'land to Robert de Veteriponte in the 8th of King John [1206-1207] & she was remarried to Hugo de Burgo, who likewise confirmed it, s.d.[221]
Sir John Lowther of Sockbridge circa anno 1686 sold 33 tenants free at Wateby,[222] as I have seen out of a court roll in Mr Dobson house.

[III.190]

F. Smerdale[223]

[Notes]
W. 2 miles; no free[holders] – arbitrary – X houses, formerly the said Warcops; now Sir John Dalstons of Dalston ut sup[ra]; an Hall & demaine. Boon plewing,[224] her[iot] shereing,[225] coales. Andrew de Harcla senior [had] Hartcla & Smardale in 8. Ed. II. [1314-1315]. Nothing but limestone.

[III.226]

Tenements: x. all arbitrary
There is a fine plane on the back side next the towne for a gardine or an other court.

---

[215] This word is partly obscured by the binding.
[216] MS: '\The ~~othe~~ side of the other / Over the dooer of Wateby school, a pretty little building in a wald gardine.' Here, Machell has drawn a sketch, ½cm square.
[217] Loaves of bread.
[218] Copied almost verbatim by N&B: see *N&B1*, 557. Highmoore becomes Highmore in *N&B1*.
[219] 'All'? 'Filled'?
[220] The word 'Town' is an editorial suggestion.
[221] 'In a deed without date.' See *N&B1*, 555, for an almost verbatim paragraph.
[222] Tenements as freeholds.
[223] Smardale.
[224] Ploughing.
[225] Customary shearing.

[III.221]

Smerdale belongd to one Warcop who had 3 daughters, one maryed to Bowes of Streettham, another to [Blank], another to Dalston.

[III.225]

[Smardale Hall]

Smardale [Hall] on an easy ascent pretty pleasant. Stands at the N.E. on the West side & fronts West. A large coat at the top of the tower, quite defaced but said to be Smardals whose heiress was maryed by Warcop.[226] {Maden Hare on the tower & at Wharton}

There has bin formerly a large coate of ~~armes be~~ armes betwene 2 Battlements on the Top of the tower fronting westwards, which was said to be the Smerdals whose Heiress was married into the family of the Warcops. \ & the Smerdals built the tower,[227] {the Warcops all the remainder of the house.} It[228] is now quite defaced through the violence of weather & injury of time, but seems to appear in the last quarter annulets [be]neath. Above, supported by the head of an angel, is this, probably Warcops.



Figure 1.13.24. Angel and Coat of Arms, 'probably Warcops'. III.225.

Agane under the ends of tableing ~~tableing above~~ which goes over the window. Cushons Ermin. Underneath the ends of the tableing, which goes over the window are the 2 coats also cut in stone This [Coat 2] is defaced but it appears like 3 cupps.

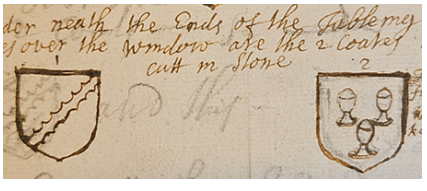


Figure 1.13.25. Coats of Arms. 'This is defaced but it appears like 3 cupps'. III.225.

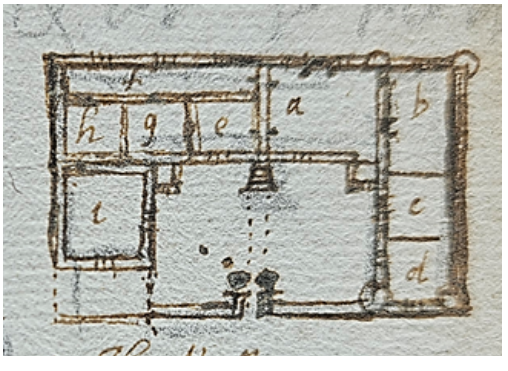


Figure 1.13.26. Plan of Smardale Hall. III.225.

[226] There is more pencilled text after this point, but it is illegible.
[227] MS: '& the Smerdals to built the tower.'
[228] The coat.

Key
a. The Hall.
b. The Dineing Roome
c. The withdrawing Room.
d. A Bed Chamber.
e. The Gallery
f. The Buttery
g.h. Lodgin Roomes
i. The old Tower.

[Armorial Glass]

In the hall (which is a lofty spruce litle roome with an arched cieling of plaster frett worke well wainnscotted with a 2 doored screenes to which you ascend on the outside by a pair of staires) are these coates of armes, painted in glass.

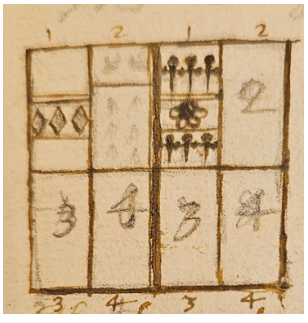


Figure 1.13.27. Armorial Glass in the Hall. III.225.

[Sinister Side]
I. Argent on a fess Gules, 3 cushons Ermin, tas[selled] Or. 2. Ermins palewise in 3 rows: on a chief Sable 2 bores heads coupd Argent. The 3[d] as the second. 4 as the first.
Impaling quarterly: Sc.
[Dexter Side]
I. Argent between 6 [cross-crosslets] Sable, a fess of the second charged with a cinqfoil of the first. The second Azure 3 Talbots ~~stored~~ gardent Argent. The three, Gules, 6 Lyons rampant Or. 2. 2. & 2. The 4[th] as the first in the Impaleing.



Figure 1.13.28. 'The same agane.' III.225.

In the Gallery End window 1620.
Dalstons coate quarterly of 6: Sc. I. Argent a cheveron ingraled Sable, 3 Hawkes heads erased proper i.e. brown, beaked Or.
II. is Argent a cross ingraled Vert between 4 anulets Sable.
III. Sable 3 coverd cups Argent.

IIII. Sable 3 cushons Ermin tass[elled] Or. The 7 Sable. 3 boares heads couped Argent langed Gules tusked Or.
V. Sable a cinqfoile Argent impaleing a quarterly coat of 4: 1. Argent a fess /\/\/\ between 3 cock heads errased Argent. 2. Within a bordure ingraled with a /\ betwene 3 escal[lops] Or. 3 as 2. 4 as 1. {Mantle Argent & Gules; Crists – an Hawkes head erased & a cock.}[229]



Figure I.13.29. Armorial Glass in the Gallery end window. III.225.

[III.190]

G. Soulby

[Notes]
N.W. [ab Ecclesia] 2 miles. 1 freehold, rest arbitrary: about 59 or 60 \ all but 2, which belong to Sir Dalston & answer at […][230] / [The rest] belong to Musgraves of Hartley time out of mind. Thomas de Hellebeck dimed de Souleby, 8. Edward 2. [1314-1315].[231] Noe demaine nor Hall but [there] has bin a chaple [during the time of] Sir Phil. Musgrave. No quarryes but [there is] limestone {Note. A well at Brough [in Soulby] cures the ague.}

[III.180]

The Tythe Barne of Souldby exchanged (with the owners of Smardale-Hall by Lord Whartons Ancestour) for Lammersit Hall in Wharton Parke. H. Raw.[232]

[III.194]

Soulby Chaple
(where never any before) built at the cost of Sir Phil. Musgrave in 1663, and endowed by him salvis indemnitate & privilegys matricis eatæ,[233] with 20^{li} per annum land in the Lordship of Soulby, & ten pound more lett out in the Town for the use of the Chappel in order to Repares.

[229] Some of the faint pencilled notes beneath and beside the text on this page have not been transcribed.
[230] The rest of the phrase is obscured by the binding.
[231] 'Dimed': to take a tenth part of, to tithe to the church or a temporal ruler. *OED*.
[232] Informant: Hugh Raw.
[233] 'Saving the interests and privileges of the mother-church.' See Carlisle Diocesan Bishops' Register: CAC(C). DRC1/4, 244-48.

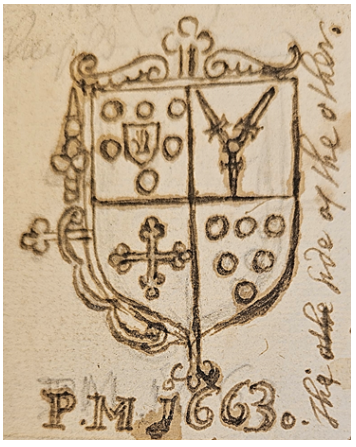


Figure 1.13.30. In Soulby Chapel. III.194.

[Soulby: Description]
It is a large \ irregular / village of about 60 families and has severall hansom fair houses in it. Has had an Hall South \ E. / from the chaple in the gro[u]nds calld Hall-Gards \ up and over / {the water[234] on the right hand as you goe to Kirkby. ~~Som~~ \ All / Sir Christophers tenants [as] chief Lord, but 2 to Smerdale to Sir William Dalston.}
And there are lands called the Demaine held now in Tennancy – But one freehold belonging to \ one / Unthanke, who has left 2 heiresses, all the rest Customary, some fine certain – purchased a good while agoe to an 8^{d} fine payable at the 1^{t} Lammas & Candlemans after it falls as by Indenture. The rest are fine Arbitrary.
It stands upon a fine level. Has wief & stray. And the river runs through it & sometimes overflowing the bankes […][235]

[I.496]

[Soulby Family]
Sulleby (now Soulby) gave name to an ancient family.
Henricus Sulleby, temp. Johannis[236] }
Robert de Sulleby Temp. Regis Johannis} ex Cartis Antiq. peres Comitatis Cumb. vel Blenkinsop[237]
Henricus de Sulleby 22. Henricus 3^{i}.[238] }
Gervasius de Sulleby 38. Henricus 3.[239] }

[I.497]

Sowelby is Anciently writ Sulleby, and that was ancient family of that name Lords of the place, 3 Generations of which were mention in one writeing, all the par[tic]ular writeing indeed which I have yett mett with concerneing them.

Henry de Suleby; Sir Richard de Suleby[240] Robert de Suleby
Robert de Suleby married Alice eldest daughter of Thomas de Helleb[eck] And because I am very much pleased with the Indenture of marriage between the said Robert which is so consise & full withal that it may either be a pattern or shame to the Clerkes in our days who spend so much time Inke and parchment with I know [not] how many impertinent Tautologies, and it is as followeth:

[234] A phrase here is obscured by the binding.
[235] The rest of this sentence is obscured by the binding. The river is Scandal Beck.
[236] 1199-1216.
[237] Document from the time of King John. 'From the ancient deeds in the possession of the Countess of Cumberland or Blenkinsop.'
[238] 1237-38.
[239] 1253-54.
[240] MS: 'Sir ~~Edward~~ \ Richard / de Suleby.'

Omnibus Xpi fidelibus ad quos hoc presens scriptum pervenerint Dominus Richard fil[ius] Henrici de Suleby salutem eternam in Domino Noveritis me concessise et dedisse, et hac mea presenti \ mea / carta confirmasse Roberto filio meo primogenito & Allicie fil[ie] Domini Thome de Hellebeck primogenite, in maritagio totam terram meam de Apilby cum pertinentijs quam habui vel quam habere potitus tam in Dominico quam in servicio tam in reditu homagij quam in omnibus alijs servitijs sine ullo retenemento. Tenendum et habendum eis et Heredibus suis in feodo et hereditate, de corpore eorum procreatis, libere quiete pacifice et integre cum omnibus libertatibus communibus et assi[gn]amentis ad predictam terram spiritu[ali]bus, de me in tota vita mea. Reddendo inde annuatim mihi pro omnibus servicijs ac[cust]o[mabil]ibus et demandis mihi tangentibus [...] [vj] sol[idos] & viij denari[os] Omnes vero prædicte Terre cum omnibus suis pertinentijs prefato Thome de Hellebeck et assignatis suis usque ad legitimam etatem predicti Roberti remanebunt. Et si contingat quod dictus Robertus infatus recesserit omnes predicte terre cum predictis homagijs et alijs servicijs prefate Allicie in tota vita sua remanebunt. Et si contingat quod dicta Allicia descesserit ante quam heredem cum predicto Roberto habuerit omnes predicte terre cum omnibus suis pertinentijs in manu prædicti Thome et assignatorum suorum, usque centum et decem marcas de predictis terris et tenementis perciperint, remaneant et omnis exitus predictarum Terrarum a principio quo habuit [saissinam] in predictis terris computatur dicto Thome et assignatis suis. Et si contingat quod Robertus decesserit antiquam de corpore suo cum dicta Allicia heredem percreaverit prefatus Thomas vel Allicia qualiscunque in predictis terris saissinus fuerit totam prefatam formam ut superscriptum est mi[hi] et heredibus meis annuatim persolvere debent usque ad termimum perfixum, et ego vero Ricardus et Heredes mei omnes predictas terras cum homagij redditibus & alijs servicijs predictis Thome et Allicie contra omnes gentes warantisabimus ac quietabimus \ per / predictam firmam. Et ut hec donatio et Concessio rata et stabilis permaneat, tam dictus Richardus quam dictus Thomas Sigilla sua his scriptis, subalternatione apposuerunt. Hijs Testibus Domino Willielmo de Daker Johanne de Morvill Thoma de Musegrave tunc vicecom[ite] westmarie persona de Crosseby Gerard Willielmo Roberto fratre suo. He[n]rico de Sandes[?] Willielmo de Wartcop, Willielmo de Soureby et alijs.[241]
✝ SECRETUM RICARDI[242]

[241] 'To all Christ's faithful to whom this present charter shall come, Lord Richard son of Henry of Suleby sends eternal greetings in the Lord. Know that I have granted and given and by this my present charter have confirmed to Robert my first-born son and to Alicia the first-born daughter of Lord Thomas of Hellebeck, in their marriage, to hold the whole of my estate of Apilby, with its appurtenances, which I have held or are under my control, as much in demesne as in service, as much in rendering of homage as in all other services, without any reservation. For them and their heirs born of their bodies to have and to hold in fee and inheritance, freely, quietly, peaceably and fully, with all common liberties and ecclesiastical appointments to the aforesaid estate that concern me during my whole lifetime, by rendering yearly to me [?] shillings and 8d for all the customary services and charges that appertain to me [...] Furthermore, all the aforesaid lands with all their appurtenances shall remain with the aforesaid Thomas of Hellebeck and his assigns until the coming of age of the aforesaid Robert. And if it should happen that the said Robert dies in childhood, all the aforesaid lands with the aforesaid homages and other services shall remain with the aforesaid Allicia for the whole of her life. And if it should happen that the aforesaid Allicia dies before she has had an heir with the aforesaid Robert, all the aforesaid lands with all their appurtenances shall remain in the hand of the aforesaid Thomas and his assigns, up to a limit of a value of 120 marks from the aforesaid lands and tenements, and all revenue of the aforesaid lands from the beginning when he had seisin in the aforesaid lands are reckoned to the said Thomas and his assigns. And if it should happen that Robert dies before he has produced an heir with the said Allicia, the aforesaid Thomas or Allicia, whichever has seisin in the aforesaid lands, must discharge yearly to me all the aforesaid agreement as written above, up to the fixed limit, and truly I, Richard, and my heirs, will guarantee to Thomas and Allicia against all people and will discharge all the aforesaid lands with rendering of homage and the other aforesaid services for the fixed payment. And so that this gift and grant may remain fixed and secure, both the said Richard and equally the said Thomas have placed their seals to this document, one after the other.
With these witnesses: Lord William of Dacre; John de Morvill; Thomas de Musgrave, then Earl of Westmorland; the parson of Crossby Gerard William; Robert his brother; Henry of Sandes; William of Wartcop; William of Soureby, and others.'

[242] Personal seal of Sir Richard de Suleby.

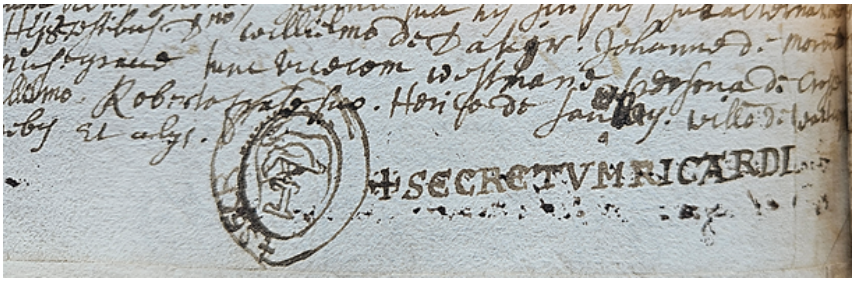


Figure 1.13.31. Seal of Sir Richard de Suleby. I.497.

[III.190]

H. Kaber

[Notes]
N.E. [ab Ecclesia] 2 miles; about 20 houses, most freehold. Lord of Thanet. \ 8. Edward 2 [1314-1315] Ten [held by] Alanus de Kabergh / No house; no demaine. Doukintre:[243] II freeholds II N.E. ab Ecclesia, Idem. {Free stone near the first. A free school. Founded 6 years ago by Thomas Waller of that Towne, & endowd with 8[li] per annum.}

[I.496]

The manner of Kaber in the 19. of Henry 7. [1503-1504]
As appears by inquisition [it] was then in the possession of Thomas son of Peter Roose held of the King in capete by Knights Service and 7s 8[d] rent Cornage to the King att Pasce & Michaelmas. & doeing service at the county court of Westm'land from moneth to moneth att the Kings Castle of Apleby: valet per Annum 8[li].
Peter dyed 8. of July, 15. Henry 7. [1500]. Thomas being then 24 years old. And Henry Lord Clifford tooke of Thomas after the death of Peter rent & other services by reason of the mannor aforesaid by affirming that Peter held the said mannor of him by Knights Service &c.[244] as in the forme of the inquisition e Blenkinsop de Helbeck on Burgh parish.

It seemes by Lord Cliffords answer to inquisition aforesaid, that Cabor and the other demanes mentioned in the Inquisition were not held of the King in Capite, but of Lord Clifford in Knights Service & by homage service & scutage; & he had the wardship & marriage[245] of minors, except they held some lands e[l]sewhere of the King in Capite, in which case their lands onely were seised as to the profits & Isues by the under or inferiour Lord, as ½ of Overton held by Lord Daker.

{Fulthorp of Caber 19. Henry 7. [1503-1504]]
This Caber was held as is declayred in my Lords reply before it came into the hands of Roos by One Alane Fulthorp 19. Henry 7. & Christofer his son after him. It should seme allso that John Mauchael held the same Lordship suceding John his father at the time of the takeing of this inquisition which was Anno 19. Henry 7. If there be not a mistake for Crakenthorpe which should be insteed of Cabergh. Yet if it be a mistake it is agane repeeted in my Lord Cliffords Answer {tis sure a mistake for Crakenthorpe payd that rent} yet he sayes that Thomas Roos injoyed the mannor of Cabergh, die Captionis ejusdem,[246] & ergo Fal[se].

{2. Henry 5. [1414-1415]} Thomas de Fulthorpe, brother of Sir William Fulthorp. quit clamd his Land Tenaments Ser[vice] in Kirby Superwyske. 2. Henry 5.

---

[243] Duckintree. The entry on Duckintree – closely written, blotted, interlineated – is insecure.
[244] MS: 'And Henry Lord Clifford tooke of Thomas after the death of Peter ~~tooke~~ rent & other services ~~of the forsaid Thomas~~ by reason of the mannor aforesaid by affirming, That Peter held the said mannor of him by Knights Service &c.'
[245] MS: 'warshaip & mar.'
[246] From the day of taking over.

The Countis of Cumberland holds land in Caber called Wadsons Lands, and does customarily give (as they say for the same tenure) a som[er][247] to Underbrough on the Ascension Day i.e. Hallow Thorsday, which \ any / yong men from any Country may run for, & he that comes 1[t] to it has the tree to him selfe, which [he] may sell or use as he thinks most fitting.

[III.179]

I. Heggerscale

[Notes]
3 miles East of Ecclesia. No hall nor demaine. About 8 h[ouses] Most of them freeholds & have also Tenent right. Lord Thanet. A corne mill. Wrensid[e] 4 miles ab Ecclesia. Same Tenure.

J. Rookeby

[Notes]
Rookeby & Rookeby Skarth. No hall nor demaine. East [ab Ecclesia] 2 miles. ~~About~~ \ 7 or / 8 houses. All freeholds with Tenant right also. Lord Thanet. And Read Yëat, E. ab Eccelsia 2 miles & ¼. Houses III as the other Tenure. Limestone. Red frestone. Coales bad.

[III.179]

[K.] Winton

[Notes]
N.E. ab Ecclesia 1 mile. Houses – about 60 {all but one} freeholds. ~~Lord~~ Earle of Thanet. Who answer at Brough. Sir Christopher Musgrave answer at Hartley. Sir William Dalstons answer at Smerdale. Lord Wharton {???}. Freeholds. There is a schoole.

[III.185]

[Winton: Description]
Winton is a well-builded village, haveing a quarry of \ good / huing stone at the East end thereof within 12 score yards distance (which quarry is also usefull for grindestones) and very good slate at Williamsons Gil, which is but 3 miles S.E. from the Towne; and yet their houses are most of them Thatched. There are betwixt 50 & 60 families within this village, of which there may be about 18 freeholders who allso hold other Tenant right \ lands, / ~~some of which pay a Quit Rent to Hartley Castle, na,ely a red rose~~ of which VI \ valluable / Sc. Robert Skafe, Willam Shutt {Richard Munkhouse, Thomas Morland, Thomas Tunstall & Robert William[son], who has a free Tenant under him. Som of the freeholders as partners in Wilkinsons Tenement at the high end of the S. side row, pay in their courtes a red rose quit \ rent / to Hartley Castle, namely a red rose?} But the most doe hold of Appelby Castle and pay Tenants Rent; which is so high that I thence conjecture they have bin first rased out of the demanes when the mannour house was pulld down & demollished. Which house, as it seemeth, hath stood in the upper end of the towne, i.e. the East end, for there are about X acres of land call'd the Hall Crofts, & XL acres calld the Hall Leeses now, and anciently possest by the Williamsons, freeholders in this Towne, which names doe shew them to have bin parcell of the demanes. And in a place which is called Horne Crofts, adjoyneing Hall Lees, carved ~~hewen~~ stones have bin diggd within memory of man, and / ~~as also~~ slates\ the last year were / ~~have bin also~~ got out of the ground as likewise several years before* which seam the Remanes of the old manner House. But now the Principal house in the Town, to which they give the name of an Hall for the goodness of it, is Mr Robert Skaifes sometimes

[Machell's Notes: III.185

*{Rob. Williamson: where?}[248]

[III.186]

Fellow of Queens College in Oxon & now Rector of Sparshold[249] \ in Barkeshire / being the Chiefe of that name.
2. The next is the house of Mr William Shut, and the third is:

[247] Summer tree: 'originally and chiefly Scottish; a high pole set up during festivals held in the summer, especially at midsummer'. *ODNB*.
[248] 'Witness: Rob. Williamson. Where was this?'
[249] This is 'Sparsholt'; see below: 'Mr Robert Skaife of Winton Hall \ Rector of Sparsholt'.

3. The school-house, built by his Unckle, Mr William Morland, \ as the chief Benefactor / principal promoter with assistance of the rest of the towne,[250] about 30 years since; in memory of which there is this Inscription ~~upon~~ over the Dooer.

W M
1659
{i.e. William Morland.}

It hath no Indowment, but they give their Schoolmaster 1^{s} per quarter for every scholar,[251] & his meat weakly from house to house.[252]

[Tenure]
The Customary Tenants doe belong to diverse [landowners]: namely to
1. Lord Wharton of Wharton Hall – about 5 or 6, who Answer at Kirkby [Stephen Manor Court] and pay a fine certaine by ancient purchase. (Mr Will. Shut inform[ant])
2. To Richard Burton of Brampton[253] Esq. – 2 or 3, who are Arbitrary Tenants.
3. To Mr John Lowson of Battlebrough in the Burrow of Appleby, about 2 or 3, who are Arbitrary also.
4. Sir [blank] Dalston of Smerdale &c. 2 or 3 Arbitrary.
5. Mr Robert Skaife of Winton Hall \ Rector of Sparsholt &c. / fower or five, Arbitrary.
6. But the chief Lord in this manner of Winton is The Earle of Thannet, Lord of Westm'land, & at whose Court in Brough Castle all the rest of the Tenants doe Suit & Service, being Arbitrary Tenants, & formerly Answered, but it was a great wrong, both there & at Kirkby.

[I.568]
{There are Scaifes now, men of no great account, yet the best of the name in these our days – the […] Warcop Tower being a younger brother. I find mention of one in Inq[uisition] Clifford; 31. Henry VI. [1452-1453]. Bart. Agreement with Apleby. One John Sc[aife] inter Armiger.}[254]

[L. Lammerside Notes][255]

[I.496]
I thinke Lammerset hal is in this parish, of which place I finde This [in ancient evidences]: Thomas Warcop de Lambersate Esq., forsan? temp. Richard 2.[256]

[I.586]
Lambersett hall was formerly a seat of the Warcops. Thomas de Warthcopp de Lambersete – a Juror in the Inquisitio de Matilda filia Beauchamp Relict Clifford 4. Henry 4. [1402-1403].[257]
Item. John de Lancaster de Brampton & John de Helton de Barton.
Thomas War~~th~~cop de Lamberset: 3. Edward 4. [1463-1464].
Vide plura in parochia de Warthcop.[258]

[III.199]

[7. Kirkby Stephen Families]

{Pickerings Machels Crakenthorps}
By Information of old Isbell Wharton of Wharton Dikes – aged 93 at Simon & Jude next ensueing,[259] in this year of Our Lord 1689.
Taken July 8 eodem anno per T.M.

[250] MS: 'Mr William Morland, \ as the chiefe Benefactor / principal promoter ~~with~~ with ~~whatever~~ assistance ~~he could raise in the neibourhood~~ of the rest of the towne'. N.B. Machell sometimes placed pricked lines under words and phrases under reconsideration.
[259] The Feast of St Simon and St Jude is on 28 October.

Hiltons	Mr Christopher Pickering of Threlkeld in Cumberland		One sister = to Machell of Crakenthorp who had =		Another to [Blank] Dalston of Castlethwaite in Graistock Cumberland			Another to Crakenthorp of Newbigin, whence the Crakenthorps	
Rowland Skaife had also an estate in the Woulds of Yorkshire	A nat[ural] daughter Frances for whom he purchased the Lordship of Ormsheved and bestowed her therewith on Ciprian Hilton		One of his daughters maryed to Rowland Skaife of Blasterfield & of Winton, which he bought of one Hilton. He had Isue by Mistress Machel		Pickering Dalston | William who sold it to Williams[260] yet left a son now at London. = He afterwards maryed to his 2nd wife [daughter] of Mr Barton who sold Ormside-Hall by ~~whom have~~ had ~~sonns~~ | 2. Row-land | 2. Arthur ad Helbeck	1. Robert | Robert | Robert | 1. Robert now owner of land at Winton	Anna		
Hartley 50li	Jane Skaife who was maryed to Hugh Hartley of Melbeck near Kirkby Stephen: an ancient family, by whom she had Isue 8 children: 4 sons & 4 daughters		Elianore, married to Francis Skaife, the younger brother of Miles of Ashby-Grange, who sold it to [blank] whence the Skaifes in Cumberland ~~Rob~~ ~~Arthur~~						
Whartons	1. Rowland. s. prole	3. Hew s. prole	4. Robert obijt natas	2. Edward Hartley of Melbeck	1. Elizab--eth obijt in nupta	2. Annas maryed to Thomas Raw of [Blank]		Isabel maryed to Michael W. of Wharto-n Dikes	4. ?

[252] I.e. Whittlegate, explained by the Cumberland poet, Robert Anderson: 'In some parts of Cumberland [the school-master] not only receives quarter-pence, but is provided with victuals at the homes of his scholars, which he visits in succession. This whittle-gait (as it is called) subjects him however to the toil of travelling.' R. Anderson, *Ballads in the Cumberland Dialect with Notes and a Glossary* (Carlisle, 1805), 144.
[253] In Long Marton.
[254] 'One John Scaife is among the Esquires.'
[255] Lammerside.
[256] Lammerside Castle was rebuilt and strengthened in the 14th century to provide protection against Scots raiders. It is situated between Pendragon Castle and Wharton Hall, see Hyde & Pevsner, 511.
[257] 'Thomas de Warthcop of Lammerside was a juror in the inquisition on the death of Matilda, daughter of Beauchamp, relict of Clifford.'
[258] 'See more under the parish of Warcop.' (Part 1, Ch.23.)
[259] The Feast of St Simon and St Jude is on 28 October.
[260] As this name is placed very close to the binding, it could read as 'Williamson'.

Hugh Hartley of Melbeck | Hugh Raw, now of Kirkby | Lucy Mompl 1. Leonard maryed to [?] had isue Hugh = Mrs Barbara C

3. Robert	2. Edward	1. Hugh, the present heir of Melbeck, an Oxford scholler now liveing	Isabell = 1. To John Fetherston, a younger son of Sir Timothy of Kirkoswald in Cumberland 1. Wharton Fetherston | Wharton 2. Remary to Mr [Blank] Toping soljer, 1689

[III.210]

The Affinity & Consanguinity of the Scaifes, Hartleys & Whartons to
The Machells of Crakenthorp & Hiltons of Ormside & Crakenthorpes of Newbiging.

It will not becom to boast of this family but I dar[e] aver, that there is not a Gentleman in Either County of any Antiquity that is not related to the Machells of Crakenthorp. He is not a gentleman that is not of kin to the Machells of Crakenthorp.

[I.588]

[Musgrave Pedigree]
{I have extracted a Pedigree hence; yett the notes may conduce to an historicall account of places. T.M.}

1. Thomas de Musgrave maryd [blank] and had Isue
   - i. Thomas.
   - ii. Richard, who maryed & had Isue ~~Richard &~~ Thomas. He maryed Hilary & had Land in Sandforth & Great Musgrave sine die.[261]

2. Thomas de Musgrave; \ son of Richard / maryed & had Isue {Edward 1.} [1272-1307]
   - i. Nicolas? purchased Lands in Soulby: 1. Edward 3. [1327-28] And had isue:[262]
   - ii. Dominus Robert de Musgrave (vixit 16. Edward 2.) [1322-23]) who was Quere son of Stuart; dyed 39. Henry 3. 1255.[263] So Mathew Parisse.[264] {His wifes name was Agnes, daughter of William E. Ferrars & Darby by whome he had Maybell.}[265]
     1. Richard. (2. of Edward 3.) [1328-29] to whom Robert conv[ey]ed Land in Soulby (17. Edward 2.) [1713-14] He had Robert (vixit 3. Edward 3.)
     2. Robert (16. & 17. of Edward 2.)

[261] MS. '1. ~~Thomas~~ \ Rech / ii. Thomas. Richard, who maryed & had Isue ~~Richard &~~ Thomas [blank] he maryed Hilary & had Land in Sandforth & great M.S. sine die.' 'Sine die': for a period of time with no fixed end. *OED*.
[262] MS. 'Nicolas? purchased Lands in Soulby: 1 Edward 3. And had isue … Nicolas de Musgrave maryed purchased Land in Soulby – 1 Ed. 3 & had issue.'
[263] This page is very jumbled. Machell has drawn curved lines to show which pedigree belongs to which person, but it is obvious that these particular dates do not fit together well.
[264] Matthew Paris (c.1200-1259), *Chronica Majora, a universal history* (in several parts) *from the Creation to 1259*. Bound with the third part is the *Historia Anglorum* (1250-55).
[265] MS: '{~~He had a daughter named Mable~~. His wife's name was Agnes, daughter of William E. Ferrars & Darby by whome he had Maybell.}'

3. John & Thomas & Edward (2. & 3. of Edward 3.) [1329-30].
6. Isabell, Christany & Johanna.
Robert de Musegrave conveyed Lands in Souleby to Richard his brother (17. Edward 2.) [1323-24]

3. Richard son of Nicolas maryd [blank] and by her he had Isue ~~Robert~~
1. Robert att full aige (10. Edward 3.)? [1336-37]
2. Thomas forsan Post Sir Thomas
3. Richard

4. Robert son of Richard maryed I thinke Johanna the daughter of Johanna Mountney after whose death he was to injoy Crosby Gerrard, Souleby & Little Musgrave; but in case he dyed \ without Isue / those lands should revert to the right heires of Johanna (10. Edward 3.) [1336-37]. She had lands in Crosby Overton, Little Musgrave & Souleby, & Kirkby Stephen (11. Edward 3.) [1337-38]. He was living 29. Edward 3. [1335-36].
1. Agnes, daughter to Robert & niece to Richard {?} to whome she conveys lands [at] Souleby (21. Edward 3.) [1347-48].
2. William.

5. William son of Johanna, marryed & had Isue
1. Thomas, who was ~~s. &~~ heire to Johanna.

6. Thomas de Musegrave, son of William & heir of Johanna (vixit 30. Edward 3.) [1356-57] granted Souleby & Kirkby Stephan to Thomas de Musegrave Chivalier (30. Edward 3. {Mort. 8. Richard 2. 1384.} He lived in [both] the 30th & 47 of Edward 3.[266] I finde mention of Isabell his wife in the 31. Edward 3. [1357-58] and in the 47. He is writt Lieutenant. He had Isue [blank] \ He marryed Margaret one of the daughters & coheires of Sir William Ros of Yelton Knight {and had Lands by her, viz. Haut […][267] Wisseld & Collawood that I thinke was M. de Musgrave. Vide in the Church.} He was Lord de Hartyl[268] Thomas sirnamed the Young.

7. Thomas de Musegrave the Younger married (?) Johanna the daughter of Sir Thomas de Musegrave who granted to him & herr \ & their heires / all his goods moveable & immoveable (Anno 3. Richard 2.)
1. Thomas.

[I.589][269]

8. Thomas de Musegrave (afterwards Sir Thomas) Lord of Harcla, marryed Mary the daughter of John Vaus, widow of Thomas Holland Earle of Huntington. She dyed the 16. of Richard 2. 1392. He dyed in 1409 in the [10th-11th] Henry 4. And after as I suppose Elizabeth dyed & one of the co-heires of Sir William Fits William (ii. Henry 4.) [1400-01].
1. Richard (vixit 11. Henry 4.) [1409-10].
2.? Thomas, who maryed Alice
3.? William to whom \ William / Lord Dacer Warden of the West March.

9. Richard de Musegrave \ after Sir Rich. / son of Thomas de Musegrave Knight Lord de Harcla, maryed Elizabeth the ~~daughter of~~ sister of Sir Edward Bethan de Bethan She dyed 12. of the Callends of Feb. 1419 (3. Henry 5.) He dyed 9 of November 1464 (5. Edward 4.)
? 1. Thomas \ son & heir, / who maryed & dyed durante vita patris.[270]
? 2. Henry, who maryed Mary, one of the daughters & heires of Stap[leton] ut infra.
? 3. William, to whome Lord Daker vid id supra (vixit 17. Henry 6.) [1438-39].

10. Thomas, son & heir of Sir Richard \ de / Musegrave Knight, maryed Johanna one of the daughters & Heires of William Stappleton & Margrett his wife and Henry de Musegrave maryed an other whose name was Marg[aret].
Thomas dyed, Jan. 3 1447 (26. Henry 6.) Johanna {sine die} was liveing a widow in the 34. Henry 6. [1455-56].

---

[266] 47 of Edward III = 1373-74.
[267] The rest of this word is blotted.
[268] The transcription of this word is insecure.
[269] The whole of this page has been lightly scored through.
[270] See the Latin Glossary.

? 1. William Musgrave Esq. (13. Edward 4.) [1473-74].
? 2. Richard
? 3. Nicolas brother, betwixt whome & S \ James / Robert) having […][271]
? 4. Cuthbert Musgrave (5 Henry).

[I.589]

11. Richard Musgrave Esq. had variance with the Bishop of Carlile for the patronage of Musgrave Church, 8. Henry 7. [1492-93]. He was knighted afterwards. That he was son of Thomas appeares out of my notes from the Heralds Office & that he had isue Jane, at forsan if Jane be interlined out of Blenkinsops Pedegree.

Edward: I meet with Edward Musgrave of Hartley Esq. and John Musgrave of Hartley Knight (7. Henry 7.) [1491-92].
Alexander (43. Henry 8.)?!! [272]
? Edward?
Jane
? John?
? Cuthbert?

12. Edward Musgrave of Hartley Esq. He lived in the 7th & so on to the 14th of Henry 7. [1491-99]. & so did Sir John. Query whether he was not a priest & brother to Edward {was living 33. Henry 8.} This Edward had variance with T.B[lenkinsop] about the Bounders of Musgrave & Helbeck fells 17. Henry 7. [1501-02]. This Edward, as appears by my Booke, married Joan daughter & co-heire of Sir Christopher Ward Knight (of Givendale ut puto)[273] and by her had Isue

1. William, after Sir William, who maryed Elizabeth the daughter of Sir Thomas Carwin, & had Isue Richard who maryed \ Ann / The daughter of Thomas Lord Wharton & had Isue Thomas, & Elianore who was maryed to Robert.
2. Edward, who dyed without Isue.
3. Simon, who after the decease of his nephews became h[eir].

[I.591][274]

4. Madalen (25. Henry 8.) [1533-34]. She was maryed to Thomas Blenkinsop of Helbeck, and had Isue by him, besides 5 daughters maryed to 5 Esqs. viz. to Mauchell of Crakanthorp, Pickering of Crosby [Blank][275]

13. Simon Musgrave 3 son of Sir Edward; And att lenth Sir Simon, uncle to the last Sir Richard succeeded to the anceant lands of his Ancestours: as next heire maile. He maryed Julian Elicar of the county of Yorke and by her had Isue 4 sonns and one daughter.

1. Christopher
2. Thomas, \ Captane of the Beauchastle, / who maryed: 1. Carnaby, widow of Witheringtone & mother to Sir Thomas. 2. A Scotchwoman \ There is one Thomas Musgrave now liveing at Beau[…][276]
3. Richard who maryed [Blank] of Norton Conyers the sister of Sir John Dalston of Dalston, had Isue Sir Thomas \ and Sir Richard / but now extinct except Simon […][277]
4. John, who maryed \ Mabel / the daughter & heire of M. of Haton and had Isue William & John, but the Estate settled of a younger brother, uncle to Mabel.
5. [Blank] who was maryed to Sir Nicholas Curwen of Workington.

---

[271] The rest of this sentence is obscured by the binding.
[272] Machell clearly acknowledged this as an impossible date. Henry VIII died in the 38th year of his reign, in January 1547.
[273] 'Ut puto': see the Latin Glossary.
[274] Also numbered p.3.
[275] A note on MS.I.579 reads: 'Maudlin Blenkinship daughter of Edward Musgrave of Hartley Esq. and \ great / Grandchilde to Lord Clifford & Lord Dakers, Had 5 daughters by Thomas Blenk. her Husband – maryed to 5 esquires – Machel of [blank]'.
[276] The rest of the sentence is obscured by the binding.
[277] MS: 'believeing wh[…] was son to Sir […]' The rest of the sentence is obscured by the binding.

14. Christopher son & heir of Sir Simon, maryed Jane the daughter of Sir Henry Curwen of Workington, & sister to Sir Nicholas, so that this was a dubble match. This Christopher dyed before his father, and lef Isue, son & 3 daughters.

1. Richard.
2. Julian, maryed to John Skelton of Armathwate Esq.[278]
3. Mary who dyed unmarryed.
4. Margarett who was maryed to Frances Whitfield of Whitfield (in Cumberland).

15. Richard Musgrave son & heir of Christopher att the aige of fowertene yeres, maryed Francis, the daughter of Philip Lord Wharton, By Fraunces, Daughter of Henry Clifford Earle of Cumberland, and Aunt to Henry Last Earl of Cumberland of That name of The Cliffords. This Richard was by King James Created Knight of the Bath, and afterwards Baronet viz.[279] He dyed att Naples in Italy about the aige of 81, & there he was buryed. He had Isue by her 1 son & 1 Daughter.

1. Philip \ then 7 yeres old /afterwards Sir Philip.
2. Mary who dyed unmaryed ætatis suæ 20.[280]

16. Sir Philip Musgrave Baronett, son & heir of Sir Richard about the 19 yere of his aige maryed Julian the youngest daughter

[I.590][281]

of Sir Richard Hoton Knight of Goldsbrough in Yorkshire, being one of the Judges of the Common Pleas. He was Active and stiring in defence of his Prince King Charles the 1[t] in those Cruell unnatural and most bloody Civill Wars, and dureing the excile of King Charles suffered abundantly both in body and Estate, as indee[d] all the Gentrery in these parts did likewise: But after the restauration of King Charles 2 he was rewarded by being made Governour of the City of Carlisle (& Lieutenant of the 2 sister Countyes Westmorland & Cumberland) haveing allso other offices and imployment by which he retrieved his far spent Estate, & restored his family to a most florishing Condition: being yett liveing & Knight of the Shire for this County of Westmorland.[282] He had Isue by Julian his wife

1. Richard, who maryed Margarett, 1 of the daughters of Sir Thomas Harrison in the County of York Knight {By Margarett, one of the daughters of Conyers Lord Darcy, of Hornby Castle in Yorkshire} whose armes are Azure 3 demy Lyons Or; & by her had Isue
    1. Margaret, who dyed young.
    2. One son who dyed an infant.
    3. Mary.
2. Phillip, who dyed about 20 yeres of Aige att Paris in France & was buried att Share[n]ton a Protestant church.
3. Christopher Musgrave Captane of a Company in the City of Carlile; he maryed, 1. Mary one of the daughters & heires of Sir Andrew Cogan of Grenwich in the County of Kent; whose Armes are Gules 3 Laurell leaves slipped, and by her he had Isue
    1. Phillip.
    2. Christopher.
    3. Mary.

    This Christopher was afterwards Knighted in 1671 by King Charles the II[283] and maryed to his 2 wife, Elizabeth, daughter of Sir John Fra[n]klin & sister to Sir Richard of More Park in Hartfordshire, by whome he had Isue
    1. Richard, who dyed an Infant.
    2. John.
    3. Elizabeth.
4. William dyed about 1 yere old and was buryed att Edenall.

[278] Of Armathwaite Castle, Cumberland, see *CFH*, 309-10.
[279] Machell left two pecked lines here, for extra material, not given.
[280] 'In the 20th year of her age.'
[281] Also numbered p.4.
[282] See Sir Philip's will and inventory of his residences, CAC(C), PROB/1677/WINVX58.
[283] In the MS, Machell wrote, 'Charles the 1[t].'

[I.590A][284]

5. Simon: who was unfortunately drowned when swimming for divertisment & Recreation in the parish of Wicam, and was buryed in the church.[285]
6. Thomas,[286] brought up in Queens College at the University of Oxon where he tooke his degrees of Bat. & M. of Arts; and after he had bin severall yeres fellow of the said College was removed thence unto his own Country, being parson Great Salkeld & Archdeacon of Carlile. He marryed Mary an other of the daughters of Sir Thomas Harrison, whose elder sister was maryed to his eldest brother; He was maryed September 28, 1674.
7. Frances onely daughter to Sir Phillip was maryed to Edward Hutchinson \ Esq. / of Wicam Abby in the County of Yorke, whose Armes are Ermin, a Griffin Erect or Rap., and by him had Isue: Edward, Julian, Frances, Philip, Richard, William.

[I.590B]

Thomas Musgrave Lord of Hartley	(47. Edward 3.) [1373-74]
dyed –	(8. Richard 2.) [1384-85]
Edward Musgrave of Hartley Esq.	(7. Henry 7.) [1491-92]
? John Musgrave of Hartley Knight	(14. Henry 7.) [1498-99]
Sir Thomas Musgrave gives Mark 20	(3. Richard 2.) [1379-80] to Thomas Musgrave younger, his daughter Johanna.

[I.592]

[Machell's Notes from Flowers *Visitation of Yorkshire* (1564/68) and Brooke's *Cataloge of Nobility* (1616)]

[1.] Flowers *Visitation of Yorkshire* 1564 \ 1568.
From this Thomas & Johanna Stapleton descended these severall Family from the younger brothers.
3 Musgraves of Haton, from the 4th Brother, yet in being.
Musgrave of Penreth, from the 2nd Brother; extinct now for want \ male Isue. /
Musgraves of Crookedake from the 3d; extinct in an Heiress maryed to Sir John Balentine a Scotchman \ & / 2nd Brother there.
There was an award by the Duke of Glocester (20. Edward 4. [1480-81]).[287]
She is writ in her will Jane, anno 1540, wherein she bequeaths amongst other things, to every servant a whole yeres advance and what it woth takeing notice of, to Katherine Allyne her old servant a sufficient living for Terme of her life out of her own Lands at Gyvadall; & the said will is confirm'd by her husband.
Sir Edward & Sir William, father & son, exchanged Lands with Sir Thomas Wharton Knight. One of the King Councill & Gardian of the West Marishes of England in the 33. of Henry 8. [1541-42].
(Hugh Machell Crakanthorp Esq. was appointed an assistant to him \ by a special warrant / under the said Kings signet & signe manual.)[288]
Richard was at full aige (37. of Henry the 8. 1545), & entered upon his lands at Martinmas. He was maryed 38. ejusdem; dyed 10 of September (~~which 5 Hen 8~~) 1555 at Edenall & was buryed there.
2. & 3. Philip & Mary [1555-56], He maryed Agnes, for so she is called in Musgrave writeings – who was daughter to Thomas 1t Lord Wharton & had Thomas who dyed about the aige of 12 or 13. & Elionore maryed to Robert Bowes of Aske in the County of Yorke. Agnes his widow was afterwards maryed to Humphrey Musgrave, of the House of Haton.
[Blank] Marshes pay 100li for work don at Beaucastle (25. Henry 6.) [1446-47]). He had Isue, Richard borne in 1423 (2. of Henry 6.)

[284] Also numbered p.5.
[285] End of MS.I.590: 'Simon unfortunate druned when swimming for recreation.'
[286] The 5th son.
[287] The beginning of this sentence is obscured by the margin.
[288] 'Sign Manual': an autograph signature, especially that of the sovereign authenticating a document. *OED*.

[I.593]

[2.] In Brookes *Cataloge of Nobility* [1616][289]
I finde one Robert Musgros (if it be not a different name) son of Richard Lord Derhurst[290] who maryed Agnes daughter of William Earle Ferrars & Derby, by whome he had Isue Mabell, who was maryed to Henry Lord Stafford (è Record 26. Henry 3. [1241-42].)
In the 6. of Edward 3. [1331-32] some Lands [at] Souleby to Robert his son, & Rich. M. had 1. the manner of Souleby (6. Edward), which he conveyed to \ the Lady / Matilda Bedall. I thinke he marryed Johann Beaucham* Sc. 12. of Edward 3. [1338-39], & had Isue William who had Isue Thomas de Musegrave, who granted Souleby and Kirkby Stephan to Thomas de Musegrave Chivalier (Anno 30. Edward 3. [1356-57]).
Sir Thomas (17. Edward 3.) [1333-34]. He was, I thinke son of Richard.†

[Machell's Notes: I.593]
*Quaere? See if here be not a mistake, about the 2 Johannas: 1. wife to Richard & the other to Robert the son of Richard. And whether the 2. Thomas & Sir Thomas, were upon that account of 2 familyes; the one Great Musgrave & Hartley afterwards, the other Little Musgrave.
†Thomas & Nicolas: Brother Edward 1, and sons of Richard.
A free warrant from King Edward ~~2~~ \ 1. / (39. of his Reign in England. In France 19.)[291] Unto T.M. & his heires forever for the Lordships & Grounds of Musgrave Soulby & Crossby, that none should fowle or destroy game.
Sir Andrew Har[c]lay created Earle of Carlile 14. Edward 2. [1320-21]. Executed, 1322.
It is writt \ de / Mussegrave & \ de / Musegrave in writeings sans date.

[8. Things remarkable in] Kirkby Stephan Parish

[III.181]

{1688} \ 3 years since / there dyed an old woman at Blackskar in \ the Lordship of Stanemore. / This parish ab Ecclesia 4 miles N.E. Her name was [blank] Brunskill, who lived to 108.
At Coatgarth \ on Stanemore / in the parish of Kirkby & Lordship of ~~Brough~~ Winton \ ? / dyed one [blank] Morland, a widow, 4 years since, of 109. I saw her \ my selfe / when my Lord of Thanet rid the bounds: ætat 107.[292]

[III.190]

A quarry in Kirkby, Neatby & Wharton parish of white & read marble which endures fier well.

[III.193]

Mr Heugh Raw – informes me that in Dow-Mea on Kirkby fell 3 miles S. from the church, is found in the peat moss a great plenty of firr, insomuch that\ they / scarce can digg or grave for it.[293]

[III.194][294]

Story of a late conjurer in Kirkby.[295]

[289] Ralph Brooke (c.1553-1625), herald, *A catalogue and succession of the kings, princes, dukes, marquesses, earles, and viscounts of this realme of England, since the Norman conquest, to this present yeare, 1619: together, with their armes, wiues, and children: the times of their deaths and burials, with many their memorable actions* (1619). A subsequent volume (1622) addressed errors in the first edition.
[290] Perhaps, 'Deerhurst'.
[291] There are inaccuracies here. Edward I ruled for 35 years but Edward III ruled for 51 years. His 39th regnal year in England was 1365-66; his 19th regnal year in France (1358-59) was not his 39th regnal year in England; it was his 32nd regnal year in England.
[292] 'When she was aged 107.'
[293] Dig for peat or turf.
[294] This page has been divided into four parts, only one of them facing the reader; the others upside down or at right angles. They have been transcribed in their relevant quarters.
[295] A 'conjuror' was a wizard/witch: one who dealt in the black arts. Reginald Bainbridge, the learned schoolmaster at Appleby, was accused of this by some, see part 1. Ch.1. Parish and Town of Appleby, II.507.

! Query. Midwife: Isabel Pinder near Newbiging in Russendale.[296] Send to the minister to Soulby, Winton, Waller.[297]

[III.192]

Hither Pit, Winton: [A Frightening Tale]
In the libertyes in the Hither pit {about 6 years since} where they wrough[t] from on[e] shaft to another; as they wrought, they heard som thing ~~still~~ \ now & then / working before, picking is Its neer & ~~pullen down~~ \ huing coals. / ~~but sayes nothing till~~ One time the Tralers boyes which draged the coles to the ~~pit~~ \ shaft / mouth where candles smoke upon the side of the worke \ ings (c.), / saw something like a little woman coming out of the \ aforementioned / side wo[r]king (c.) with a candle in her hand, at which, they being very much affrighted, ~~they~~ shout out & cried[298] & came to the ~~pit~~ \ shaft / to be drawn up, & durst not stay one after another but came all up together. As soon as they were \ up, / Mr L. Wharton, \ the farmer of the pit, / ~~being at the Banke~~ being calld from the house by som at the pits who told him the[y] were crying & frigh[t]ed, came to the pit, where presently he heard a great \ shrill / shrike, like the voyce of a woman in a great fright; & the

[III.191]

wo[r]kemen within {4 or 5 hewers, 5 trailers}, onely heard \ at the same time / a great rumbling noyse, upon which and the boyes not coming againe, they supposed that som had faln into the pit and so came to see. And Mr Wharton in the meantime ~~being~~ thinking that som of the workmen were killd, sent one Joyn Boyes into the pit, & there the workmen & he met together – & so they made haist to be wound up, one after another.

[III.192]



Figure 1.13.32. Small sketch of the Hither Pit. Letters a. to f. denote areas mentioned in the text. III.192.

Key to sketch
d. e: old shafts
a-e 100 yards.
f. Whitehold […] Shaft[299]

[III.191]

The next day, tho very unwillingly, they set upon their worke againe, but heard nor see nothing till \ about / 3 monthes after. {There 20 years but onely visible in a light.}

[296] This lady is mentioned in Part 1, Ch.21, Ravenstonedale, in connection with the birth of a hare to a female parishioner, Ellin Hardlow (see III.307). Though no one is openly blamed, the allusion is reminiscent of contemporaneous tales about healers. Midwives, like other women healers of the 17th century, were vulnerable to accusations of witchcraft. See Jessica Nelson, 'An examination of witches in the 17th century', National Archives, 8 April 2021, at https://blog.nationalarchives.gov.uk/an-examination-of-witches-in-the-17th-century.
[297] The name 'Waller' could refer to Machell's informant William Waller of Swinesty near Brough, see III.394, above.
[298] Crayed.
[299] Part of this name is obscured by the binding.

Then, workeing a drift to Whitehold-[…]-shaft, which was an old pit full of water, in order to getting the water out of, for ganeing the field that was 50 years drownd; When he came near the pit, the sp[irit] ~~wrought~~ \ seemed to {always wrought} on one side while he wrought the other {to prevent danger} wrought and rumbled to their great amazement{[It] tooke caps of, blew out candles all by single; seen by Rob who went ½ way with him} till at length he strikd through & cryed, the hole's mine – make a hole with the end of his pick, out which the water spouted over his head and presently stop'd agane, which he, supposeing might be don by som dirt & so made it bigger that he could put in his pick-shaft & his hand. ~~And~~ But he, when he found that he could feel the water by putting his hand into the body of it & \ yet / not make it run, he began to grow fearfull, & so came away with all the rest with him, rideing the shaft one after another. The Bankeman being last, thought som thing behinde gave a pat on his back, upon which he grew sick; & so continued for 24 hours.[300]

Then they went from the shaft d. to f., to see how it emtiyed, & it was gon, tho 5 fathom deep to the very mud; but while \ they / lookd on, the mud began to rowl & loyle, & so the pit \ filld / agane with water, {the other shaft (d.) bein cover'd with water \ also / up to the roofe.} And the next \ day / when they went to worke, it was all gon out of both shafts. Then they wrought for draneing another old shaft & it was sometimes workeing afore them, and when they came at the \ old / shaft & had let of the water, in rideing the shaft they found som dead bones like legs & arms bones.}

[III.179]

For a fortnight after,[301] it was heard some times to moane above ground about the pit house. & since that time it ceased, and hath not troubled the works ~~since~~. It went away with a fearful shrike, & frighted 2 familyes out of their sleepe.
Attested by L. Wharton. Joyn Boys of the workman that did.
Richard Bower of West Pit House, now living there.
It[em.] L. Wharton asserit.[302]

[300] An MS margin comment here gives, 'Som time seen before. Both thought one time her coates touched his back.' The text on this page is jumbled with interlineation and marginalia. The transcription aims to reproduce Machell's narrative as accurately as possible, given the difficulties.
[301] MS: '\ + and ~~after~~ /'
[302] 'L. Wharton declares likewise.'

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 14]

[Parishes of Kirkby Thore and Newbiggin]

[Machell's Initial Notes]

[I.335]

[Kirkby Thore]
It is divided into 3 Constablewicks, in each of which 2 C[onstablewicks are] part of the Hamlets: Sc. Kirkbythore & Hale (Grange of Hale) \ ~~where the~~ / & a place cald Spittle (built as tis thought of old for an harbour for pilgra[m]es & travallers).

Milburne & Grange, to which also belongs Kirkhouse, held in ten[ure] of the rector of K[irkbythore] an Gullom Holm – where there is an house or 2 held of Hougill Castle. Temple Sowerby, within which township & at a little distance is Acorn Banke – a pleasant seat lately erected – which is the chiefe place of Dalston of Westm'land, \ a young branch of the Dalstons of Dalston Hall in Cumberland, / who came from Uldale & placed themselves here, whose armes are [blank].

{The rectory}
{A manner in it selfe yet within several tenements, haveing tenements both her[e] and at Kirkhouse & Sowerby.

The Hall
An ancient seat of the Whartons but later to Mr Humphrey Wharton, Cou[n]sellor at Law, by purchase from his cosan & chiefe,[1] John Wharton Esq. who left 2 daughters ~~here maryed~~ Jane the [blank] maryed to Thomas, 2 son of John Dalston Esq. of Acorn Bank, & [Blank] maryed Anthony Hutton Esq., Justice of Peace in the county of Cumberland. His Arms are [blank]{!}

Chaples
[1.] Milb[urn] – anciently endowed, beside what was setled by the inhabitants at the 1st foundation with iiij markes per annum by Robert de Veteripont, son of Johus, to whom &c. was first granted anno [blank]; but which ex gratia are \ somwhat / augmented by the incumbent.
2. Sowerby, with iiij l[i] per annum[2] payable by the town augment[ed] ex gratia by the incumbent. {!}

[Machell's Notes: I.335A]
{Vicar of St Michael – val[ue] an[num] £20: 12: 9½: Episc. Carliol.
Rector, Newb[y] – £04: 14: 0: Mr Crak.}

[The Parish of Kirkby Thore]

[Presented by Thomas Machell in seven narrative drafts]

[I.508]

1. The Rectory or Vicarage: value & Patrone	5. Soyle, & products above & underground as: Wood, water, springs, mines of lead coale stones &c.	Subdivision from into Constablewick, Villages, Hamlets and Private Seats with the names of the Gentry who are owners of them, & their Armes
2. Incumbents since the Restaur[ation] of King: Ch. 2		
3. Charityes	6. Things extraordinary in art & nature	
4. Bon dayes[3]		

[1] See reference to the Whartons as 'chiefe Lords' on I.769, below.
[2] £4 per annum.
[3] Boon days: see the English Glossary.

[I.744][4]

[Introductory Notes on Method]

{A Method for Westmorland General [and] Kirkby Thore parish […]}[5]
Mem[o]r[andum] – Sowerby Charter.[6]
1. de Fam. Macheloram p.1 in cartis affixis[7] is purely Topical relateing to the fam[ily] MS

	[Page]		
Totales Libri[8]	2.	}	
A Preface	4.	}	
Method	5.	}	
Of Westmorland in General	6.	}	
& its Division into 2 Baronies		}	
Of the Barony of Westmorland		}	
Its division into ~~parishes Wards~~	7	}	
Of the Parish of Kirkby Thore	10	}	Parvi puto nunc?[9]
Of Whelp Castle –		}	
& the Catuli	5	}	
The posterity of Car.	20.	}	
Letter from Dr Mill	21. 22.	}	
Fragments of Whelp Castle		}	
where discovered	24.	}	
A farther Discription of			
Kirkby Thore Parish	a 28. ad finem.		
Cum Indice.			

[**Narrative 1**]

[Kirkbythore Church and Parish]

[I.768]

{This Church}
{Valuated}It is rated in the 1[t] Fruits Office at payeth the xth to the King – and to the bishop for Proc[urations] and Synodals.[10] And hath 2 Chappels appendant to it; Milburne and Sowerby, of which I shall speake in their proper places.

[I.745]

{Sowerby Chaple}
Norwest from the Church of Kirkbythore lyes the Chaple of Sowerby; which ~~has 2 L~~ appeares by the stones in the wall to have bin built out of Whelp Castle.

[I.768]

{The church is a pretty imbattled building with a comly tower \ and a great clock & bels* / dedicated to the service of God under the name of St Michael the Archangel. Tis well flagd & strawd \ & neatly adorned / on the inside \ & set / but with railes afor the ~~High~~ Altar, haveing a cup for balls: & a font

[4] The page is headed with the following scored-through text: '~~This Inscription Belongs to the Inscriptions Sent to Oxford An Account of them being taken out of it~~,' referring to inscriptions sent to Dr John Mill at Oxford (see Part 3, Ch.2, Correspondence).
[5] There are several illegible words here.
[6] This list and its margin comments are written at right angles over text in red crayon; further text has been written over this, causing the 'finished' text to be barely legible in places.
[7] 'In the charters attached.'
[8] 'Totales libri': 'all books.'
[9] 'Now perhaps, of little account.'
[10] See the English Glossary.

whereof [there is][11] a dove appendant to the cover, with a running fountaine to baptize infants in when there is occasion. And the people are suitable in their uniformity.
There are & h[ave] bin since I can remem[ber], these things of note in & about it.
1. The quire.
2. B[…]s. & font.
3. Wharton Porch, where a chantery.
4. On the outside the vestry.
5. The banck side of the church.
6. On the top of the steeple which last shews when the steple was built, that som of the Whartons (the Lord or parson) were chief benefactours.
To this church ar 2 chap[els] belonging. de Qui~~bus~~.}[12]

{The Parsonage house} stands near the Church, almost contiguouse, at the Norwest corner, the new part of which was lately built by one Parson Lowther of the house of Ingleton in Craven in Yorkshire. And here in the dineing roome is a late device \ chimney / I have made to carry the ashes down by a funnel under the grate behind one of the wings of the hall chimney; where there is a doer like an oven mouth to take them out at leisure time.[13] \ I only mention for the good of others. / And by this means the sinders are saved with an iron grate above the funnels & the harth always clean.

{The Indowment. Tithe in kind or not?}
The Rectors receive tithe in kinde of all things in this pr[ec]inct but excepting milk; but in the chappelryes, they pay onely for their tithes.

{The Patronage} of this Church & Parsonage was anciently in the Kirkbythores, Lords of the Manner till [blank] de Kirkbythore son of Gamel &c. gave it freely to Robert de Veteripont from whom it descended to the Cliffords & so to the Tuftons Earles of Thanet and now Patrones thereof; And as it came to these noble familyes by the gift of a Gentleman of this Country so have they freely bestowed there presentations to it upon Gentlemens sons \ and persons of note / [as] may be seen by this succession†.

{Succession of R[ectors]!} Richard Evanwood, Abbot of Shap & Chaplain to King Henry 8.[14]
A Clifford.[15] T. M. Fellow of Queens College Oxford & of the Philosophical Society – Chaplain to King Charles 2 & member of the Convocation of York.}[16]

[11] Two words are illegible here.
[12] 'About which …' Machell did not finish his thoughts.
[13] MS: 'Where in the / And here in the dineing roome is a late device \ chimney – I have made / \ ~~worth mentioning~~ which I made, / to carry the Ashes ~~out of It~~ down by a funnel under the grate, behind one of the wings of the hall Chimney; where there is a doer like an oven mouth to take them out ~~once in year without ever troubling of the dineing roome~~ \ at leisure time'.
[14] 'Richard Evenwode was the last abbot; he signed the surrender under the name of Richard Baggot. However high the abbey may have stood during its early period; corrupt times had been fallen upon under the rule of its last abbot. Richard Evenwode was an absentee. He was rector of the rich living of Kirkby Thore to which he had been presented by his patron, Henry earl of Cumberland, under a contract, which, if legal then would not be now, to pay the previous rector a pension of £30 a-year on his resignation of the living. He also schemed the appropriation of this rich living to the abbey. The transaction was almost complete when the dissolution took place, after which he secured a pensionof £40 a-year: the remaining canons receiving pensions from £4 to £6 each.' This passage has been calendared from G.F. Weston 'The Præmonstratensian Abbey of St. Mary. Magdalene at Shap, Westmorland. Part I.—Historical', *CWI,* 10 (1899), 286-298, at 298. See Part 1, Ch.22, Shap, III.317-322; see also *N&BI*, 373-74.
[15] CCED lists clergy from 1568 but the name, Clifford, is absent
[16] Thomas Machell was appointed in 1677; he was rector until his death in 1698. CCED lists at least 10 clergymen at Kirkby Thore from 1568 until the year of Machell's appointment.

{Division}‡[17]
{Other Places in the Manner}
There are in this Lordship besides the village of Kirkbythore, a place calld the Spittel, an harbour perhaps for wayfareing men.[18] N.W. ab Ecclesia ½ a mile, a freehold estate (~~which belongs to Mr John Hall, now under-sherif of the County of Westmorland~~). And ~~another~~ a little Hamlet about N. or N. west; called Hale Grange which is part in the Lordship & Parish of Kirkbythore & part

[Machell's Notes: I.768]
*{A Great Bell, brought as they say from the Abby of Shap: which is not improbable R. Even[s]wood last Abbot of Shap & Chaplain to King Henry 8. been Rector here.}
†{Thus far is General but q. if it will not com in best near the Par[ish] of Kirkbythore.}
‡{Not well I think here but after the Bounder.}

[I.769]

in Newbiging, the Lordships & Parishes being there divided by the Black Sike;[19] that on this side payes all tithes in kinde to Kirkbythore & that on the other to \ Parish of Newbiging. /

{4. Halls or Manner Houses}

[i.] Burwen Hall
Burwen Hall at the East corner of the High Burwens, \ built I suppose before / where Whelp Castle stood; which differs little from a country house; but that it hath this Badge of Honour – on the North side of it.
[ii.] Wharton Hall
Kirkbythore Hall; otherwise calld Wharton Hall because the Whartons built all or most of it; as appears by these Armes on the outside of the cross ~~building~~ \ House / which is indeed the main part of the ~~Hall~~ building. And within it are these Coats of Armes.[20]
Both these places belong to the Whartons who are Lords of the Manner or \ rather / the chiefe Lords; for the \ family of / Crakenthorpes of Newbiging* & the \ Rectors or / Parsons of ~~the Parish~~ Kirkby as Lords of the Manner / have also their tenants & franchass[21] in it. And Crakenthorpe tenents doe suit and service & answer at Newbiging by ancient usage, tho they be of this Lordship †.

{5. The Descent \ Succession / of the Manner & men of note}
This Lordship hath descended & passed through severall familyes, ~~of the~~ \ tho the / Whartons \ of K. / have taken themselves to be the \ first proprietors of it / and this their chiefe house of that name beside; ~~and the Lord Wharton to be their~~ for Wharton Hall is the chief house from whence they [blank]. But it is a mistake, as their Armes ~~both~~ on the church & the Hall \ ends / doe ~~suffieiently~~ testify and the following pedigree will further evince. And besides, it is clear that this Lordship ~~was once with~~ has passed through severall familyes \ since the Norman Conquest, / as first the Kirkby Thores were owners of it; then the Collisans; then the Whartons. And the proprietor, Mr Humphrey Wharton \ of the manner of Gilling in Yorkshire / Baristar at Law, had it by purchase of ~~his cousin~~ John Wharton Esq. who had 3 daughters, and to raise their fortunes, cutt of the Intale & sold the Estate to the said Humphrey, being his relation, to the disinherison[22] of Philip his brother; which if his Ancestors had don so before him had never come to him. {The daughters were Jane; Ann.}

{Other things of note}
There is nothing more of remarque in this ~~manner~~ \ Lordship / but a Tumulus or 2 upon the High More, such as Sr Dugdal[23] called Berryes or Buryes; but wee – Burrows or Broughs, whence the word

[17] A sentence has been scored through here.
[18] See 'Spittlehouse', I.482, below.
[19] For 'sike', see the English Glossary.
[20] There are no images on this page.
[21] A form of 'franchise': 'freedom; exemption from servitude or subjection'. *OED*.
[22] Disinheritance.
[23] Sir William Dugdale.

Brow, where probably som batle was fought and the dead interd there, which is from the church a mile N. West – and as far S. East.
In Howgil Sike is a curious veine of Plaster Pa[ris] fit for statuaries, far too fine for ordinary.[24] {And som veines of go[o]d clay both blew & read, of which I suppose the bricks & urnes which are found at Whelp Castle had bin made.}

[Machell's Notes: I.769]

*{which extends almost to K[irkby] takeing in Whtaker[25] as I conjecture, sed q.}
†{Lands given to Holm. But an agreement with the Rectors that they should have the decimam garba[rum] – i.e. the Tithe}[26] decimas obtulerunt?????[27]
{Spittle House the descent]}
{Hale Hamlet, the desent.}
{6. The Pedegree & Armes of the Present Proprietor}

[I.770]

Milburne in Kirkbythore Parish[28]

{Milburn Chappel}
N. East from the Church about 2 miles is the Chappel of Milburn, a pretty large building – having 2 bells in it, one of which was lately give[n] by the Lady Bridget, relict of Sir Thomas Sandford of How[gill Castle].

{2. Indowment}
The Indowment – which belongs to the Chaplain or Reader – is utterly lost; nor can I finde any footesteps unless it may be this [blank] but since the late troubles it is discontinued & never like to be restored unless that great family shal of their good thinke fit to pay, so that the Rector hath nothing now but £5 per annum, which Rector of Kirkbythore who placeth him there of his own bounty {Patronage}, is pleasd to give him – Tho by the foundation of all Chapels of Ease the mother church should be kept indemnifyed. All this Chappelry payes tithe in kinde excepting for hay, for which they pay in a small prescription with their Easter Books.[29]

{Monuments}
In the Chappel is one Monumental Inscription of one of the ladyes of Howgill Castle, ingraven as folloeth on a piece of brass in Howgill portch[30] [blank] And in the Chappel yard is the figure of a monke in his habit; som of Shap Abby as I suppose, who were obliged to read prayers there \ for the / said sallary.

{The Divis[ions]}
To this Chapelry belongs
1[t]. The Hamlet of Kirkhouse, held in tenancy by rent & fine arbitrary of the Rectory & Rector of Kirkbythore.
2. The Hamlet of Gullom Holm.
3. The village of Milburne &
4. The village of Mill[burn] Grange, which are all held of Howgil [Castle] \ by the same ten[ure]. /

[24] The rest of this sentence is obscured by the binding.
[25] Whiteacre. 'v. hwīt, æcer'.Whitacre Crag is in Shap parish, *Westmorland Place-Names*. 'Sed q.': 'But query'.
[26] The 'decima garbarum' is the 'great tithe': the tithe of grain.
[27] 'They presented the tithes????' Machell questions this strongly. Perhaps he was amazed that the land holders had complied.
[28] MS: '~~Of the Chapel & Chapelry of~~ Milburne in Kirkbythore Parish.'
[29] See Machell's research in MS.V.279-87: 'Midsummer Easter booke for Kirkbythore 1607.' See also MS.V. 445-48, 'The Declaration of all Issews, Profits & Commodities coming & rising off the Parsonage of Kirkbythore in Rents, Tyths, Oblations, Wooll, Lamb, Hay, Corne & Grain and all other Spirituall duties, for one whole yeare, ending at the Feast of St Marke the Evangelist in the yeare of the Reigne of our Sovereign Lady Queen Elizabeth Decimo Quinto {1573}.'
[30] Part of the church.

{Grainge}
This ground was [blank] and being under the same Covenant doth & hath alway payd tithe in kinde.}[31]

[I.771]

[Things of note]
{Green Castle} At the head of Grange Beck {E. from the chapel [blank] mile} near an place called Green Castle, which is a round fort with deep trenches about it on the south end of Dun Fell, was this Altar found – erected formerly by the Romans.

DEO SILVANO[32]

which confirmes the opinion of Sir Thomas Smith that our mountains were formerly clad with wood.[33]And West from thence is a place called Silveray-Band*, as if there had bin silver mines there – But however there are very rich lead mine which will turne to silver.

{A quary of read [stone]}
There are coles but of little use, the vaine being smal and very poore upon the same fell. But \ the Royalty of / these are in Appelby Castle as part of the ancient forrest of Milburne, & not in Howgil [Castle]. And if any desire the ancient Bounder of the forrest of Milburne [blank][34]

{Manner House}
The Manner House is Howgill Castle {East a cap. 1 mile} which I reduced[35] from an old darke[36] house to all the beauty which it now hath at the cost & desire of my dear kinsman Sir Richard Sandford, who was barbarously & cowardly stabd†. The walls were of old and are yet in som places. Neer to it a little West is Marbil Skar, a Roc of Plaster in that deep gill behind the h[ouse] which gives name to the place.

{The ped[igree}{Armes} {The Succession of Lands & Men of renoune}
This House & Manner were once in the hands of an ancient family called de Stutivil; then in the Lancasters; & then in a younger, Sc. a 4 brother of the Crakenthorpes of Newbigin, who married the Heiress & placed the Armes honoris ergo in the 1ᵗ Quarter; [37] and at last in the Sandfords who now possess it.

[Machell's Notes: I.771]
*{Silveray-Band. Memorandum: The story of the Toad. in a Letter to Mr Houghton, com by \ him to / the R.S.}[38]
†See in my letter to Mr Adam[s]: Concerneing the Parish of Kirkbythore}[39]

[31] This unclear line was squeezed onto the MS page foot.
[32] 'To the God Silvanus' [of the woodland].
[33] This reference might relate to the diplomat, Sir Thomas Smith (1513-1577), a former dean of Carlisle (see Machell's Preface, I.1616-17), secretary of state and supposed author of *A Discourse of the Commonweal of this Realm of England* (published posthumously in 1581); but although this volume discusses the pros and cons of enclosure, deforestation does not figure to any large extent. Another candidate (but with a different first name) is John Smith/Smyth (c.1607-1673) author of, *England's improvement revived; plainly discovering the several ways of improving all sorts of waste and barren ground and of enriching all earths, with the natural quality of all lands; and the several weeds and plants which naturally thrive therein observed &c.; together with the manner of planting all sorts of timber trees and underwoods experienced in 30 years' practice*. 6 vols (London, 1670). Machell quotes this particular author's work on trees in part of his Preface, 'Woods upon the fells' (I.69).
[34] The text breaks off here.
[35] Remodelled. Machell was responsible for the remodelling, see below, I.563-65.
[36] MS; 'drake.'
[37] 'And placed her Arms in the first quarter of the shield in her honour.'
[38] R.S.: Royal Society. There are two toad stories in this chapter; this one is entitled, 'Milburne in Kirkby Thore (1692). A Live Toad found in limstone spar 15 fathom deep', see I.541A, below.
[39] For Adams, see I.565, below, and see Part 3, Ch.2, Correspondence, I.512-523.

[**Narrative 2**]

Kirkbythore Parish

[I.548]

[Memoranda and Method]
{In this method I could speake of all my heads: 1. Church – Parsonage, Patrone; 2. Constablewicks & Lords[hips]; [3.] Gentlemens houses & Armes.}
Memorandum: to add an account amongst the extraordinary things of nature – in Cow-Sonsy[40] – her who lived to the age of 120 \ or 28. /
Double claw gilly floores at Shrovetide.
And at Crakanthorp, old \ Thomas / Walker 112; his wife 109.
{Crakanthorp} Great burr from C. woods;[41] building there when it was a wood.
Herinsews in Flakebrig: the Osprey in Dufton Wood; sparrow haukes.
Rasp-berryes at High Close by ~~in Sowerby~~ the side of Eden; belonging to Winderwath & ergo in the Parish of Cliburn.[42] Bleaberryes at [blank] on the fell.

{Kirky Thore. General}
Skarrots[43] at Howgill; hart grass: a sort of moss like to Buckshorne.[44] Maden hair at Argill Brigg in Brough {an amulet against the heart burn}.
Wild Ducks build on Traneberry Mire, which is a peat moss belonging to the Lord of the Manner & near to the Hall.
No Pheasant; no elme.

[III.79]

Maiden hare
Juneper berries
Scurvy gras[45]
Bleaberyes
Globes
Buckthorne undergrows Old Oake Trees.
Harts e\a/se
Ladys mantl
Wilde Time
Burd Een

[I.548]

To the General may be referd Q.C.O.[46] belonging to these 2 sister Countyes, which for knotty logicians, profound phi[losophers] & solemn Divines is not inferiour to any in England: in primi witness Crack[enthorpe …][47] & many Bishops of this last age.

{Generall Highways}
Michael Scot is said with the help of the Divel to have pavd twixt Lond[on] & Carlile, but a fiction.}

[40] See below, I.538-546.
[41] Named in John Gerard, *The herball, or, Generall historie of plantes* II (1595), 664, as the Great Burre Dock, Lesser Burre Dock or Clote Burre.
[42] The detached portion of Cliburn parish at Winderwath was transferred to Brougham CP in 1935: Cumbria County History Trust, 'Draft History of Cliburn', https://www.cumbriacountyhistory.org.uk/township/cliburn; see also *N&B1*, 400.
[43] Possibly skirret or skerret, a form of parsnip; as in 'roasted potatoes, or boild skerrets are your onley lofty dishes', in G. Markham and L. Machin, *Dumbe Knight* (1608). *OED*.
[44] Buck's-horn: old name for various plants based on the shape of the leaf or the appearance of branches. *OED*.
[45] Scurvy grass: 'A cruciferous plant, *Cochlearia officinalis*, believed to possess anti-scorbutic properties.' A drink or 'ale' was made from it, as in, 'Scurvy-grass drink began to be frequently drunk in the mornings as physic-drinke'. *OED*.
[46] Perhaps, 'Qu coram nobis resident': 'which things remain before us'.
[47] Two words here are illegible.

[I.549]

A description of the Parish of Kirkbythore in Answer to Mr Adams, his Queryes,[48] which are as followeth

1. Whether it be a Rectory or Vicaridge what Rate, & who Patrone.
2. Incumbents since the Restoration of King Charles the 2[d]? {0}[49]
3. Charrityes? 0. In this Parish there is a Rent Charge laid on The Powes, a parcel of Mr W[harton's] demaines, of 5 markes per annum is distributed to som \ certain familyes: but being it is payable to the viccar / of Warcop & distributed by him & his c[urate], I refer you to a further accou[n]t of this charity there.[50]
4. Boundaries of the Parish with:
5. The nature of the soyle, with product above & underground as corn, hay, woods, waters, springs, mines, lead, coale, stones {interlaced, interspersed, impregnated}
6. Anything extraordinary in Art or Nature.
7. The division of the Parish (which he calls a subdivision)* into Constablewicks, Villages, Hamlets and private seates, with their names and the names of their owners with their Coates of Armes.

[Machell's Note: I.549]

*{It is parted into, subdivided, distributed. This divideth itself.}

[I.550]

{Concerneing the Parish of Kirkbythore {October 1686}

§1. {& the Patrone}
Kirkbythore is a Rectory rated in the First Fruits Office at 37 [li] 17[s] 8½[d],[51] the Patronage whereof is in the right honorable Thomas Earle of Thanet[52] by descent from his ancestours on the mothers side, the Viponts & Cliffords who were Lords successively of the Honor of Appelby & Barons of Westmorland. For Adam, the sone of Waldeve de Kirkbythore (who was son of Gamel son of Whelp the Lord of Whelp-Castle* (as I take it) at or before the Norman Conquest,[53] gave the advowson of Kirkbythore Church [to] Domino Roberto de Veteriponte, by deed without date† in which is mention of the 2 Chapells of Sowreby & ~~Myleburne~~, as members thereof; witness (inter alios)[54] Johanne Mauchell.

§2. Thomas Machell {Incumbent since the Restoration of King Charles 2.}
And one Thomas Machell (late-fellow of Queens College in Oxford, ~~&~~ Chaplain in Ordinary to King Charles the second, now {this 1[t] October 1686} fellow of the Philosophical Society in the said university) is the present Incumbent; being a second brother of the ancient family of the Machells of Crackanthorpe, the next Lordship adjoyneing‡; who are descended from the abovesaid John, & in all likelihood[55] (as may be collected for the affinity of their name & seat,[56] by ancient tradition & deeds without date which I have seen) from the aforesaid Whelp as the Common Ancestor both of the Machells & Kirkbythores, the former retaineing their ancient name with a mark of disfavour, perhaps from the Conqueror, as having opposd him in defence of their Countrey (for they were call'd Maulchiens \ Malchiels & Macha'els / & adher'd to that sirname as their greatest glory (stil holding \

[48] See Part 3, Ch.2, Correspondence, I.512-523.
[49] William Walker was the first incumbent listed in the parish register following the Restoration. Machell became rector after Walker's death (1677). CCED. Machell refused to acknowledge Walker's predecessor because he had 'bin imposd on the Parish by an High hand in Olivers time', see I.554.
[50] See I.528.
[51] For the First Fruits Office, see the English Glossary.
[52] This was Thomas Tufton, 6th earl (1644-1729), MP for Appleby in 1668. https://www.historyofparliamentonline.org/volume/1660-1690/member/tufton-hon-thomas
[53] MS: 'For Adam, the sone of Waldeve de Kirkbythore (who was son of Gamel son of Whelp the Lord of Whelp-Castle (as I take it) \ at or before the Norman / the Conquest ~~defended perhaps of the old Roman Cambi, as the Altar & Urns & Coynes digged up to this very day in the Rubbish of that ancient & Noble structure may seem to intimate~~'.
[54] 'Amongst others.'
[55] MS: '& in all probability\ likelihood /'.
[56] MS: '(as may be collected \ ~~I do recollect~~ /for the near / affinity of their name & seat…'

therewith / at the least by capitulation), the Lordship of Crakanthorpe idqe non per Drengagium, sed per nobile cornagis servicium sicut ipsi Normanni);[57] the latter changeing it & insteed thereof assumeing the sirname De Kirkbythore, which is long since extinct‡.[58] The name accordeth, for I have seen it written Mulwhelp. The lands which lie near\est / to \ Whelp Castle / lie on the south side fore the Demanes of Hall Malchaels ~~of Crakanthorp~~, as appears by this gift of them to the Priory of Carlile, mention'd in the foundacon charter. And that ancient monastery, which is publishd in Dugdalls *Monasticon*, and the medow (under it) \ on the S.E. / (which is supposed to have bin contiguouse till intercepted by the millrace), is calld Machells Ing to this very day.

[Machell's Notes: I.550]

*How calld of old.
†{Autograph est penes Comitem Thanet \ Baronem / Dominum de Westm'land apud Skipton vel Apilbeiae castra.}[59]
‡Malchenes, & in Latin, Mali Catuli, per chartas Antiquæ Machellorum Familiæ.
⸸Which ~~they held som time after; which~~ are long since extinct, the heiress being marryed \ as appear by their \ pedigree / to one of the Whertons (~~of Wharton Hall~~) whose descendants (~~al~~though the first Line be cutt of) are Lords of the Manner \ ~~of it~~ / to this very day.[60]

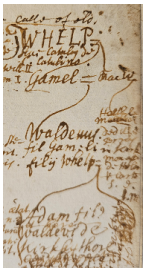


Figure 1.14.1. Sketch of the Whelp Descent. I.550.

[The Genealogies of the Whelps and English Royal Families Compared][61]

How calld of old.	
{Temp[ore] William Conq[ueror] [1066-1087] vel ante.[62]	Whelp sive Catulus de C. Catulino.[63]
Temp[ore] Will. II. et Hen. I. [1087-1135]	Gamel = Mach. – Halth de Machael.
Temp[ore] Stephani Regis [1135-1154].	Waldevus fili[us] Gameli, filij Whelp – dedit terras in Kirk. Monast[erij] de Holm. Per carta[m] s[ine] d[ie] J.M.[64]
JM plenæ ætat[is] 25. Hen. 2.[65] quia jura[mentum]cum patri prestitit.[66] Debita autem conventio cum patri ne affidaverat adquietare monachis de Holm terras quasdam an[no] D[omini] 1179.[67]	Adam fil[ius]? \ et heres / Waldevi de Kirkbythore.}[68]

[57] 'And that not by drengage, but by the noble service of cornage, just as the Normans themselves'.
[58] MS: 'The latter changeing it ~~their Ancestours name~~; & insteed thereof assumeing the sirname De Kirkbythore ~~from this other Lordship which they longtime after; but now are extinct~~ {which is long since extinct}.'
[59] 'The autograph/signature is in the keeping of the Earl of Thanet, Lord (Baron) of Westmorland, at Skipton or Appleby Castle.'
[60] On I.151.
[61] The Latin text around and below this genealogy list (not transcribed) is jumbled in parts, but much of its content appears on I.530.
[62] 'In the time of William the Conqueror or before.'
[63] 'Whelp or Catulus of C. Catulinus.'
[64] 'Waldevus son of Gamel, son of Whelp – he gave lands to the Church of Holm Monastery. From an undated charter J.M.'
[65] 'JM being adult, 25. Henry 2.'
[66] 'Because he took an oath with his father.'
[67] 'Moreover, a covenant was contracted with his father not to swear to yield up certain lands to the monks of Holm, A.D. 1179.'
[68] 'Adam son? \ and heir / of Waldevus of Kirkbythore.'

[I.530]

This Adam seemeth to have bin at full age Anno Domini 1179: 25. Henry 2. (who was in the 3rd descent from the Conqueror); for then he una cum patre Waldevo debita conventione affidav[it] monachis de Holm Cultram illo & adquietare de quibusdam terris in Kirkbythore.[69] Ergo Whelp his great-grandfather, must be in (or before) the time of the Conqueror: *Reg. de Holm Cultram*.[70]

{William Conqueror – William and Henry – Stephen Maud – Henry 2. – Richard 1.}
{Whel[p] Gamel Waldeve Adam}

[I.551]

§3. [Other Incumbents of Kirkby Thore]

Other incumbents since the Restoration of King Charles the II there have not been any but William Walker, Master of Arts of Christs College in Cambridge & somtimes schoolmaster of Gigleswick in Yorkshire; a man skilld in physic, and wel deserveing in other respects if he had not bin imposd on the Parish by an High hand in Olivers time, instead of Mr Lancelot Lowther (~~a very brave Gentleman and~~ an eminent preacher) who was turn'd out of place ~~in the late Rebeliouse times~~ \ in those most dismall & rebelliouse times / for his ~~true~~ \ great / loyalty to King Charles the First & his fidelity to the Church of England.[71] And though it be beyond the due bounds & limits of this enquiry to add any more,[72] yet haveing a catalogue of severall other Rectors by me, I shall not scruple to make mention of them; being generally persons of good ranke & quality. For before Mr Lowther, was one Thomas Warcop Master of Arts: a younger brother of ~~a very good~~ \ an ancient family / in this County of Westm'land, \ tho now in decay / the chiefe of which is ~~Mr~~ Thomas Warcop of Colby \ Gentleman / Alderman of Apleby. Before whom if I be not mistaken, was one Mr Clifford; of the Cliffords of Apleby ~~Egth~~, Earles of Cumberland, Barons of Westmorland, & Patrones of this Parish.[73] And before ~~him~~ (tho I cannot say in immediate succession) was Richard Evenwood, somtime Chaplain to King Henry VIII & \ last / Abbot of Shap.[74] In Ed. 4ths time Mr Henry Wherton, a younger brother of Gilbert de Querton Lord of this manner (of the same blood which now Lord Wharton) was Rector here, & before him {who if I mistake not new modeld the church} in Henry VI time, Roger de Crakanthorp, of a very ancient & worthy family – The Crakanthorpes of Newbigin –who deriv'd that sirname from the Town of Crakenthorp, where they held certain lands, many hundreds of years since, of the Machells of Crakenthorp;[75] as appears by writeings ~~wh~~ I have seen without date; which they answered for till ~~Queen~~ X. Elizabeths Time [1567-1568], & possibly are a branch of that family called de Crakanthorp for distinctions sake.

---

[69] 'For then he, together with Waldeve his father, as part of his agreement, vowed to the monks of Holm Cultram that he would make over to them all his interest in certain lands in Kirkby Thore.'

[70] See F. Grainger and W.G. Collingwood (eds), *The Register and Records of Holm Cultram*, CWAAS Record Series VII (Kendal, 1929).

[71] Rev. Lancelot Lowther. The records are muddled, to say the least, because there were two Rev. Lancelot Lowthers in Carlisle Diocese at this time, resulting in conflicting biographies in CCED, *OAD* and Nicolson and Burn. B. Nightingale considered the matter fully and decided (but not confidently) on the following: 'A Lancelot Lowther was instituted to Kirkby Thore in 1629. The son of William of Ingleton, who was the 8th son of Sir Richard Lowther, he held Kirkby Thore in plurality with the rectory of Workington. When the Roundheads forced him to surrender one of these livings he chose to keep Kirkby Thore, where he was recorded as rector in 1654.' Machell was certain that Lancelot Lowther was sequestrated fom Kirkby Thore for his beliefs, yet Nightingale notes that he was able to move smoothly to the rectory of Long Marton, where he died in 1661, after which his wife petitioned Charles I for financial relief following his 'sufferings'. See Nightingale, *Ejected of 1662*, 1*,* 1165-1169. The other Lancelot Lowther was the son of Christopher Lowther; he held the rectory of Addingham from 1646: *Ejected of 1662*, 1, 351-53.

[72] A margin comment, scored through at this point, repeats the previous sentence.

[73] Nicolson and Burn refer to Roger de Clifford as rector of Kirkby Thore in 1343 and 1345. Ralph de Brantingham was presented to the vacant rectory in right of Robert, son and heir of Robert Lord Clifford, then an infant and ward of Edward III: *N&BI*, 373.

[74] See 'Narrative I', I.768, above.

[75] The passage in the MS repeats itself in prolix fashion; an edited version is offered, above.

[I.552][76]

In the 48 yeare of Edward 3. [1374-1375], I finde William de Corbrig was Parson here. And \ I finde / before him in a writeing (sans date) one Mr Adam de Kirkbythore (official of Carlile)* who perhaps was son of the forenam'd Adam[77] who gave the Advowson of this church to the family of the Viponts. And these I have \ bin / the more willing to mention, to show how worthy & ~~indeed~~ truly generouse the Noble Patrones of this Parish have bin, who as they receiv'd the Donation at first by way of free gift from a Countrey Gentleman, soe have they been ready upon all occasions to bestow the same freely upon Gentlemens sons (& for defect, upon some other worthy & eminent persons) who liv'd in this Countrey; so that this may be called the Gentlemens Parsonage, as tis now the most noble & genteel preferment in the County of Westmorland, being much improved in many respects by the present Rector.[78]

But these Incumbents, having bin generally of \ very / good ~~ranke &~~ quality & liveing accordingly; has given occasion to \ a / shrewd \ reflection / remarque ~~which is almost grown up \ in / to a Proverb~~ {by way of comparison betwixt this Parsonage & that of Newbiging, which is but a small one} \ in / that there never was a Poore Parson of Newbigin ~~which is but very small preferment~~ nor a Rich one of Kirkbythore.[79]

§4. [Bounder][80]

It ~~This Parish~~ lyeth on the East side of the Great River Eden† {which divides it all along on the West from som part of the Parish of Milburne, the Forrest of Whinfell, & Bolton Field in the Parish of Morland. Sc. – from the foote of Blenkarne Beck below Eden Bridge up the said river to Old Troutbeck Foote near Machells Well 3m.}[81] On the south side it is bordered with the Lordship of Crakenthorp in the Parish of St Michaels ~~de~~ Apleby, (vulgo) \ commonly called / Bongate \ Par[ish] / from which 'tis divided by (with stones pitched up \ by the 2 gurges[82] / in the ancient channel of the River Troutbeck and also som part of that river) ~~from~~ \ Sc. from the place called / Old Troutbeck Foote where it has formerly run to Kirkbythore Bridge{within ½ mile & a quarter.}[83]

On the South-east & East[84] it boundes upon Marton & Dufton Parishes, being divided from them by Troutbeck aforesaid (from Kirkbythore Bridge {1m.} \ where we left of / ascending eastwards to Howgill-Sike Foote \ (1m.) / thence ascending by Howgil-Sike northwards {1m.} to Annet-Well \ Head / where it first springs \ 1m. / Thence by a Bow-line (towards the N.) to Nichorson Cross{½ m.} takeing in the hill where it hath stoode {½ m.}. Thence agane by a crooked line‡ to Swinside Head \ 1m. / (a pasture at Grange, now belonging to Howgil Castle). Thence

[Machell's Notes: I.552]

*Cui Will. Ma. Catulus \ Dom. / de Crak. Terras dem[ainias] s.d. \ [per] cartam / Testis apud cartam Adami filij Liolfi de Kirkbythore s.d. in Cartul[ario] de Holm C[ultram.}[85]

†{~~The fish of which hath time out of minde belonged to This Rectory, & soe doth stil~~ which payes Tythes to the P. haveing ever done so time out of minde.}

‡{A streight line ascending N. to the S. corner of Long Holme: ½. Thence by Longholme Dyke to Grange Beck at \ a place / Stank Head ½. {½? Query of this by Knock bounder: whether the same with Stank Head.}

---

[76] The following comment appears at the head of this page: '& this disp. I wish they w[ould] sh[ow] a bet[ter] or[i]g[in].' To what this refers is not known, though it might allude to the catalogue of rectors, first mentioned on I.551, above.

[77] MS: 'whom I take to \ perhaps was son / son of the forenam'd Adam ~~de Kirkbythore~~.'

[78] Another passage full of repetition, now removed; 'the present Rector', of course, was Thomas Machell.

[79] For Machell's financial problems, see 'A Narrative about a Chapel at Sowerby' below, from III.229.

[80] This is one of several versions of the bounder of Kirkby Thore; as all differ slightly, they merit comparison; see also 530B-32; 552-53A.

[81] MS continues: '§4. ~~To [blank] Parish is Bordered {3m. 2m.}~~'

[82] Gurges: whirlpools. *OED*.

[83] Another passage full of repetition, now edited out.

[84] An interlineation placed here is largely illegible.

[85] 'To whom William Malus Catulus, Lord of Crakenthorp, [gave] demesne lands \ [in] an undated deed / Evidence in a deed of Adam son of Liolfus of Kirkbythore, undated, in the Register of Holm Cultram.' See Grainger and Collingwood (eds), *Register and Records of Holm Cultram*.

[I.553]

{2m.½} by \ Swinsey-Beck or / Grange-Beck (otherwised called Burney-Beck) to \ Nuckerdale Head near a place / an Hill calld Green-Castle, where it takes its rise; \ 1. / Thence \ directly / by a settle or hollow (which takes in High Dunfell) \ on the outside the skirtes of [blank] to Dalesikehead 100 yards down it / to the head of Fell-Troutbeck Rill \ where Dalesike runes into it (1m.). / Thence, by the said rivillet till \ it / receives another call'd Moss Burne (3m.); & haveing don soe divides this Parish \ all along / on the East from \ the Parish of / Dufton {until you} descend to Trout-Beck-Foote where it enters the Teas.[86]

On the East & N.E. it is bounded with a place called Tine-Head in the Parish of Alstan \ ? / & County of Cumberland* (from which 'tis divided by the said River Tease: from Fell-Troutbeck-Foot up to Fall Cragg). \ & / here the Parish of Kirkland ~~first~~ begins, ~~which~~ \ and / hemms it in all along on the North side (as the utmost ~~Limit~~ \ Parish / of the Countye of Cumberland) \ & / from which tis divided by the said River Teas from Fall-Cragg aforesaid, to the ~~spring-head~~ \ place where it springs / at Cross-Fell Nooke†; \ & / thence by a settle call'd (as I take it) Blenkarne-Dale twixt \ the mountan / Cross Fell & The Lower-Dunfell to the springhead of Blenkarne-Beck {rogat L. Rob.}[87] Thence, by that river (excepting where its course hath bin altered) till it enters ~~into~~ Eden not far from the Bridge where I take in \ (designedly:) /

[§5.] The Parish of Newbiging

The parish of Newbiging, being of old (as I am informed) a Canton of this & passed off \ from it by a Legal Consent‡ / {within which circumference} for a certain Quit-Rent of Ten Groats per Annum with Altar service 2 dayes in the year at Kirkby Thore Church (a considerable rent in the dayes of old, when the whole Rectory of Kirkby Thore upon inquisition in the 8th year of Edward 2. was but valued \ return'd / at xx/iiij marcks).[88] But on the other hand, the Rectors of Newbiging clamed as \ their / due (when they came to assist at the Altar \ there /) to have a Dinner for themselves & their Doggs (a tradition of such undoubted credit that Mr Barrow late Incumbent of Newbiging, sent word to the Rector of Kirkby Thore that now is, upon his first enterance, that he ought him that homage, & would com & pay it;[89] but death prevented him while the other was absent in his year of Grace at Queens College in Oxford.[90]

[I.501]

{Old Mr Barrow Rector of Newbiggin, 2 dayes in the year, Easter & Michaelmas. & ~~he~~ was to receve from the Rector of K[irky Thore] when he did the said service, his Dinner – one Day dinner.} {Thomas Langhorn præter is to have Mr Barrow […] assist on an Easter Day.}[91]

---

[86] MS: '{until you} \ descend / com to Trout-Beck-Foote where it ~~takes~~ \ enters / the Teas ~~which~~ \ ~~springs not far hence, & enters the sea haveing passed Newcastle at T~~ /'

[87] MS: '… to the springhead of Blenkarne-Beck \ ~~which is / otherwise called Dunfell-Beck~~) {Ask L. Rob}.'

[88] 24 marks. A charter of Hugh de Temple Sowerby was witnessed by Walter, rector of Newbiggin. Walter appears in the Coram Rege Rolls in 1258–59, when an action was brought against him and one other person by Robert de Veteripont because 'they entered his park of Whinfell and there took stags and bucks without his leave'. John, son of Roger de Lancaster, by his will dated January, 1353/4, left a bequest to the church of St. Edmund de Newbiggin and Robert, rector of Newbiggin, was one of the witnesses. See J.F. Curwen, *Later Records of North Westmorland* (Kendal, 1932), 183-85.

[89] MS.I.554: 'In which boundary I have designedly taken in Newbigging \ on the north side the Parish / It being of old (as I am informed) a Canton of this & passed away [blank]'

[90] A margin comment originally placed at the top of I.554. According to CCED, Christopher Barrow was rector of Newbiggin from 1664 to 1680. The term, 'year of grace', refers to the career trajectory of Oxford fellows in Machell's time and beyond. Fellows were obliged to remain single during their tenure, but in most cases, those who married were allowed to remain as fellows for one year; their year of grace. See James E. Thorold Rogers, *Education in Oxford* (1861, Frankfurt, 2022), 249. Additionally, any fellow who inherited property or was appointed to a parish worth more than a certain value had to resign his post, usually after a year's grace: see Robin Darwall-Smith, 'The Problem of Georgian Oxford', *Histories of Universities XXXV/I* (Oxford, 2022), 17.

[91] 'Thomas Langhorn, præter, is to have Mr Barrow [two words illegible] assist on an Easter Day.' The only Thomas Langhorn in Carlisle diocese (known to CCED) was the perpetual vicar of Stanwix, who was also a minor canon of the cathedral; he died in 1614. CCED.

[Machell's Notes: I.553]

*{Query whether Tinehead in Alstan Moore be in Cumberland or in Northumberland. Ask w[hat] Tod?[92] & L. Robinson thinke. The Southwest of Tinehead is in Northumberland, the Norwest in Cumberland in Alstan Parish.}

†{Where ~~that great river~~ \ it first / springs & \ after many meanders & windeings / dischargeth itself into ocean beyond Newcastle at Tinmouth Shields.}

‡{[Quo] Warr[anto.]}

{There is another Beck called Dunfellbeck which springs betwixt the 2 Dunfells & runnes west twixt Milburne & MidleTong & is all in the Parish to Midletong Foote where it enters Blenkarne-Beck. In this Bounder I have designedly taken in QV,[93] the ~~smal~~ Parish of N[ewbiggin.]}

[I.553A]

[Conclusion of the Boundary]

& on the West it divides by the River Eden from som part of the Parish of Cliburn, Julian Bower in the Forrest of Whinfell & Boltonfield in the Parish of Morland: Sc. From the foote of Blenkarne Beck below Eden Bridge all along up the River to Old Beck-Foote near Machells Well, where we first began.

[I.554]

{§6.} Parish of Newbigging [continued]

And here I thinke fit to enter this caution that the parish of Newbiging, by its ancient Boundes, cannot extend so far on the more as the Right & Priviledge of that Lordship now doth; because they gained a considerable accession \ from off ~~K. Moore~~ / Kirkbythore More; by grant from the Cliffords many hundreds of years after that Lordship became a distinct & absolute Rectory, so that its limits upon the said moore are \ or should be / according to the ancient Bounds of that Lordship.

But to returne ~~agane~~ to my subject, Kirkbythore Parish:

{§7. Nature & top[ography] of the soyle, above & underground}

The soyle thereof is of several sortes;[94] in som partes read sand, in others yallow; here black mold, there brown; in som places gravel, in ~~& in~~ others clay, both read & blew: But for the ~~generally~~ \ most part it is very / fertile, especially for corne, which yeildeth best of any in the countrey.

[II.529]

Ad Howgil Castle: The oate stalke that was shown me att Howgill Castle was 2 yards & ½ long.

[I.554]

The \ high / moores & mountaines affordes good fuell & pasture for sheep,[95] which are generally sound; \ & / the lower for cattle {!!!} but the want of \ cow / pastures \ for the common sort / is the greatest defect, which by improvement might easily be helped. It hath bin formerly well replennished with wood, most part of the Parish being a Forrest old; but now there is little unless it bee in the Chapelry of Sowerby & the Lordship and Chapelry of Milburn,[96] which are \ far / remote from Kirkbythore Town (A wilfil wast makes a woeful want)[97] & the only fuel ~~which~~ they now have remaneing (excepting coals which they fetch from Hartside \ at 10 miles distance / are turfes & peates.

{Under §8.}

But yet in the mountains there are out-bursts of coales which might \ prove peradventure/ ~~be~~ of great use unto all the neighbour-hood; & of great advantage to the Lords of the Fees if they would but sinke for them; whilst in the mean time they \ lye neglected & / onely serve such \ poor / countrey people as can pick them out for burneing of Lime-Kil[n]s. {A good fuel; & are so likewise the breed & plenty of

[92] Unclear word.

[93] Quod vide: 'which see'.

[94] MS: 'The soyle ~~of~~ \ thereof / The Parish of Kirkbythore is of several sortes.'

[95] The pecked line demonstrates that Machell was in two minds about keeping this phrase but it reappears in §8. at the foot of I.554.

[96] MS: 'but now there is little, ~~I may say none at all except~~ \ unless it bee / in the Lordships of \ Chapelry of / Sowerby, & \ the Lordship {of Chap.} / Milburn'.

[97] A proverb first recorded in 1576, J. Speake (ed.), *The Oxford Dictionary of Proverbs* (Oxford, 2015), 346.

fowl. The high moore & mountaines aford good fowl which are called here black cock or gorr fowls, as likewise plovers both green & gray, & are a very sound pasture for sheep which seldom faile: & so likewise are the lower for cattle.}[98]

[I.555]

{§9. [Silver Mines]}
On these mountains allso there are silver mines, as som do imagin; being thereto induced partly by the names of certain places upon the Fells which are called Silveray & Silveray-Bands; partly by an old Rimeing Prophesie of Mother Shiptons (called here Gillemans Wife from her former husband as they relate)[99] who passing these mountains & taisting the waters which isued from them is said to have deliver'd these \ promising / verses:

> They that are awn'd to open Dun'fel sneck
> May measure out their silver in a Peck.

{Awned: i.e. appointed or permitted by good evidence.}
{Sneck: the latch of a dooer, with which it is shut & by which it may be opened, aluding here to riches shut up in the chambers of the earth.}
{A Peck is a measure here conteineing \ 4 or / 5 gallons, the former being called a Ryes Peck, & used for ~~the latter~~ measureing Rye \ & / Wheat, Beans & Pease, the latter a Bigg Peck with which they measure their Bigg or Barley, & all other sortes of corn or grane: 4 of each sort make an Apleby Bushel.}

{§10. [Lead Mines]}
Here are also lead mines which discover themselves in the […][100] bankes of the rivers ~~& sikes~~. But the most remarkable {?} is that below Dunfell at Silveray-Band: a very rich one now wraught under & farmed by the Marquess of Winchester of the Earle of Thanet as Lord of those Wastes, being within the Bounds in the forrest of Milburn.[101] {And if these Noble Persons would pay the tythe freely of what they get there, it would cross the old proverb, & make a rich Parson of Kirkby Thore.}[102]

{§11.} And in the very skirtes of the mountaines there is plenty of limestone; & freestone alsoe of \ a / readish colour, which this parish affordes in great abundance excepting \ only / ~~the Lordship of~~ in Kirkbythore \ Lordship / where there is ~~not any~~ \ none. / But that defect is supplyed by Nature (if Arte would put to her helping hand) \ as she hath don formerly / in a very large veine of curiouse blew-clay, like unto marle, near Parsons Close at the East-end of Kirkbythore Towne,[103] which would (I believe) make as good brick as any in the world; & likewise all sortes of earthen vessels: for I doe suppose that those ~~strong bodyed~~ \ curiouse / bricks which ~~are~~ \ the plow casteth up at the place calld the / ~~at High~~ Burwens (where Whelp Castle stood) with the urnes & pots which are found thereabouts; were ~~all~~ made of this clay.*

---

[98] MS: '{A good fuel; ~~good store as to fowles~~ & plovers both green & gray & are a very sound pasture for sheepe so likewise is the & breed plenty of fowl, which are called here, black cock or gorr fowls, as likewise plover green & gray rarity. The High moore & mountaines aford good fowl: gorr fowle; and plovers both green & gray, & are a very sound pasture for sheep which seldom faile: & so likewise are The Lower for cattle.}'
[99] Mother Shipton (*floreat* 1530) was a largely legendary prophetess and supposedly ugly witch from Knaresborough. An anonymous pamphlet, *The Strange and Wonderful History of Mother Shipton* (1686), explained that she was baptised by 'the Abbot of Beverley' as 'Ursula Soothtell' (in later versions 'Southiel' or 'Sonthiel') and at the age of twenty-four she married a carpenter from York named Toby Shipton: A. Kellett, 'Shipton, Mother'. *ODNB*.
[100] Some interlineated text (2cm) is illegible here.
[101] Several repeated sentences have been deleted from this passage.
[102] See above (I.552), Machell's wry comment that, 'there never was a Poore Parson of Newbigin … nor a Rich one of Kirkbythore.' For the intense frustrations felt by Machell on the subject of his income and its control, see below, III.231, onwards.
[103] MS: 'like unto Marle; \ [2] / at the east-end of Kirkbythore \ Towne / near \ [1] / Parsons Close'.

{§12.} Rivers and Springs

Besides these advantages,[104] this parish is also also extreamly well watered with rivers & springs, a great cause & argument of a fruitfull place. The former may be seen by the boundary of it, being almost incompass'd with rivers ~~of water~~ \ ~~which are~~ / well stored with fish \ especially troutes; / the latter is obviouse to

[Machell's Notes: I.555]

*{N.B. For I do suppose that those ~~fine coloured~~ \ curiouse / bricks which the plow casteth up in Whelp Castle Ruines \ and made of this clay / & which may be counted among the rarityes of this County, not only because of their fine contexture colour & hardness, but allso because there are none \ other / found in Westm'land interlaced; nor never were except~~ing at~~ \ those / Mr Camden ~~speakes~~ at Apleby calld Brittish Brickes \ of / which I never yet was so happy as to meet with a sherd.}

[I.556]

every eye: there being not a Town nor Hamlet in the Parish that doth not afford a great many springs. But the most remarcable are these that follow:

i. Machells Well which springs in the very South point of this Parish at a place called Sowber, & runns into the ancient channel of Troutbeck near to the place where the 3 Lordships of Crakanthorp Bolton & Kirkbythore meet, as hath bin said, 3 several Parishes.[105] {This yeildes a most delicate and wholsom water; which hath bin successfully taken in Feavours, a small taist of vinegar being mixed \ there /with.}

ii. Hippocrene:[106] an ancient well lately discovered by the foote of an horse.[107] It is in the ~~very high street~~ \ Downe End / of Kirkbythore \ near / to the Bridge ~~end~~, & by the side of the \ great / Romane-Way which leadeth from Apleby to the City of Carlile*: in which was found urnes & several curiouse fine earthen vessels with greyhounds & other figures upon them; ~~with~~ the cusp of a spear; and sandalls whose soles were struck ful of nales & sow'd together, not with thread but \ with / leather; Most of which were \ carefully / preserv'd ~~&~~ design'd & discrib'd in a \ late / letter ~~writt~~ to Sir William Dugdall by the present Rector, which letter being printed \ (~~without his privacy~~) {for the rarity of it} not only at London, but at Oxford allso amongst their *Philosophic Transactions*.[108] I need say no more concerneing this fountaine: but that it is also near to ~~the~~ \ a / place where 3 Lordships meet (in 3 several Parishes); Sc. Crakanthorp Brampton & Kirkbythore.

iii. Dobkill-How Well: which is in the street call'd Wharton End, directly opposit to Kirkythore Hall & in the way to it;[109] concerneing

[Machell's Notes: I.556]

*{I have mentiond Paulinus in that relation,[110] è Speed p.171. There was another Bishop of Nola in St Augustine's time, p.277, §10.}[111]

---

[104] MS: '~~Besides all these helps~~ \ besides these advantages /'.

[105] MS: 'Crakanthorp Bolton, & Kirkbythore (~~in 3 several Parishes~~) meet ~~altogether~~ \ as hath bin said / 3 several Parishes.'

[106] Hippocrene: 'a spring on Mount Helicon: fountain of the horse, so called because it was fabled to have been produced by a stroke of Pegasus' hoof. The Hippocrene spring was sacred to the Muses; its waters were said to imbue the drinker with poetic inspiration'. *OED*.

[107] Machell described how this well gained its name in a letter to William Dugdale, 25 March 1684, and read out at the Oxford Philosophical Society the following month: 'Your love to Antiquity, and my Obligations to you are such, that I cannot omit to give you an Account of a strange Well, discovered here about a week since by the foot of an Horse which stumbled upon it; and therefore may be called the Fountain Hypocrene.' *Philosophical Transactions 14*, 158 (1684), 554-8 https://royalsocietypublishing.org/toc/rstl/1684/14/158.

[108] For more information on Machell's letter, see I.534; see also, Part 3, Ch.3, Roman Antiquities, VI.200.

[109] The first part of this sentence was originally placed at the foot of I.556.

[110] See Machell's Preface, I.136.

[111] The reference to Paulinus, bishop of Nola (died c.422), is correct, see John Speed, *The Historie of Great Britaine Under the Conquests of the Romans, Saxons, Danes and Normans*… (London, 1611), 277; see also, 334-35. For Speed's references to Paulinus Suetonius, see *Historie of Great Britaine …*, 170, 197-99. Paulinus,

[I.557]

which, and a place near the miln called Stack or Stake, which growes ~~excellent~~ \ very good / oates, they have that saying (as if Bacchus & Ceres had combin'd together to make the Town charming, delightful & pleasant):[112]

> No Kirkbythore hater can the village forsake
> If he taist Dobkil-water & a Banack of Stake.

{v. Potts-Well,[113] which springs on the North side of Kirkbythore thereof in a pasture call'd Potts, & seemes to proceed from som sort of mineral. It promiseth coale in the places adjacent, as som do believe,[114] and has bin accounted of singular vertue in cureing old sores.}

vi. Marble-Skar-Well, in the Chapelry of Milburne, near Howgil Castle, which hath 2 heads; the higher ~~one~~ whereof supplyes the Castle \ for their necessary uses / & lower is said to be good for sore eyes – & so likewise is:

vii. Lucyes-Well,[115] near Acorn Banke in the Chapelry of Sowerby; so calld from Mrs Lucy Dalston, late wife of the present John Dalston Esq. (& the last of the Fallowfields of Strickland in Westm'land) who used to visit it, & recom\m/end it to the blear eye'd Leahs, as good for their sight.[116]

I would mention no more, but that other 2 lye just in my way; Sc. Aplegarth Well at the North end of Sowerby, & The Strand at the South end;[117] the latter of which is excellent water; & both of 'em good (as all ~~for water~~ others are) for watering \ of / cattle and promoteing good Huswifery.

{**Castrum Catuli. Ruin of Whelp***}

Other ~~such~~ things within this Parish which deserve observation for their curiosity in Art or Nature† are Whelop Castle as Camden (see Camden [blank)[118] calls it in the *Dictionary*, Whealp,[119] or rather (as we being more surely taught out of ancient records)[120]
The main body of it has stood (as I guess from the ruines underground) in a place call'd the Burwens, on a riseing hill at the banke of Trout-beck & not far from Eden, having an easy ascent \ unto it / on every side; but a large champion prospect[121] with fair fields & meadows under its walls,

[Machell's Notes: I.557]

*{From ~~out~~ that ancient & long since honourable family.}
†{§13. not to mention what I have spoken \ before / concerneing Hypocrene, which justly requires to have a place here.}[122]

secretary to St Ambrose, was encouraged by Augustine to write the 'Life of St Ambrose': see Michael J. Walsh, *Dictionary of Christian Biography* (London and New York, 2001), 959.

[112] MS: '\ ~~pleasant, charming~~ / ~~delightful and charming~~ delightfull and pleasant.'

[113] Machell has omitted iv, continuing on to v.

[114] MS: 'It promiseth Coale ~~as som do imagine~~ \ ~~as hath bin thought~~ / in the places adjacent; as som do believe,'

[115] MS: '~~Is~~ 7 Luceys-Well'.

[116] 'Blear-eye'd Leahs': See Genesis 29.17. *The Wycliffe Bible* (1394). 'But Lya was blere iyed, Rachel was of fair face, and semeli in siyt.' Other versions change 'blear-eyed' to 'tender-eyed.'

[117] The list of wells also appears in MS I.534 and I.556.

[118] Camden, *Britannia* tr. Holland (1637) describes the place as 'Whealop', 'Whellop' and 'Whellep', see 761.

[119] A small amount of interlineated text here is almost illegible.

[120] MS: 'or rather (as we ~~wel It~~ being more surely taught out of ancient Records) ~~And the Curiosityes which It yet doth afford~~).' See I.535 for another version which completes the sentence.

[121] For the meaning of 'champion country', see the English Glossary.

[122] There are many references to the fountain hypocrene in Machell's volumes, for example, see I.556, below; see also a letter from Machell to William Dugdale in Part 3, Ch.3, Roman Antiquities, VI.200.

[I.558]

the like of which is not to be met with in the County of Westm'land: & has bin rendered yet more delightfull by the 2 famous forrests of Whinfel & Milnburne; this, on the North-east, & just at hand; that, on the West, at about a miles distance; both stored with wood & well replenished with Read-Deer & fallow; as the former continues to be, at this day.[123]

§14. The square inclosure called High-Burwens seems to have bin the area of it, conteineing VIII score yards in diameter; now plowed & cultivated: & the outer buildings \ mantle & gardines / to have run down along by the River Troutbeck at the least as far as the Fulling Milne,[124] {or rather over the Roman-Way, because on the other side of that Street when they dig'd the foundation of a little kill or dwelling house near to the bridge on the left hand as you goe towards Carlile,[125] they found vessels of brass, fine earthen ware also \ som of it mounted […] white and read,[126] / & a Bar as thick as any man's leg, but so tender'd with rust that it fell all in shivers:[127] which makes me suspect that it might \ there enter and / extend hither, & taken Hippocrene*. See §17.}
{Hence the Castle or outbuildings at least have runn along.} Thence \ it has gon up the West side of the said / ~~up the~~ Romane-Way call'd The Street (which leadeth to Carleol) about VIII score yards: & so up agane in a streight line to the West point of the foresaid area {all which circumference 9}. For in all these places the vestigia of it {have bin discovered by conduits \ underground / for water; fair pavements of floors;[128] & tiles & slate shut off from the house, with ~~had~~ iron nales in them, by which they ~~were~~ \ have chiefly / hung. But most of all by brick & stone walls, all underground,}[129] the brick ones they say (which is no vulgar observation) being a yard thick.

[Machell's Notes: I.558]

*{Let this a local description}. Hic steterit Catuli Regia celsa senis.[130] This will com in better after.[131]

[I.559]

Tho I must confess the impression in som looks rather like an excavation with repeated strokes[132] \ & desined for ornament, representing waves \ like that within which in Leenster is called Irish Stick.[133] / They are to be seen \ in the Hall, Church & Parsonage / almost in every house in the Towne, their Coyne \ stones / & Jaumes being generally of them; since for want of timber they left of the ancient Forrest work, & the stud walls were plasterd both on the inside & out as I am informed,[134] with a mixture of lime, gravel, sand & bricks, beaten small 3 inches in thickness, which is almost as hard as a pow.[135]

---

[123] See I.509 for a similar narrative.
[124] An asterisk (see '*') leads the reader up the page to text in the top right-hand margin.
[125] MS: 'when they dig'd the foundation of a little ~~kill (a dwelling house \ near~~ /) house near to the Bridge, ~~and~~ on the left hand as you goe towards Carlile'. See a similar sentence in a letter to John Mill in Part 3, Ch.3, Roman Antiquities, IV.82.
[126] A tiny interlineated word here in this margin passage has been impossible to transcribe.
[127] 'Shivers': fragments, chips, splinters. *OED*.
[128] MS: 'Flowers'.
[129] MS: 'by walls \ which / underground, both \ by / Brick & stone \ walls all underground / {toomes,}'
[130] 'Here had stood the lofty realm of old Catulus.' Compare Ovid, *Heroides* 1. 'Letter from Penelope to Ulysses', 1.34: 'hic steterat Priami regia celsa senis.' 'Here stood the lofty realms of old Priam.'
[131] See also, Part 3, Ch.3, Roman Antiquities, VI.248.
[132] MS: 'Tho \ I must confess / the impression / in some, \ in others / ~~seems~~ \ looks / rather like an excavation with repeated strokes.'
[133] Leinster, Ireland. Decorated 'wave mouldings' have been common from the time of the Ancient Greeks; see F.C. Brown, F.A. Bourn & Hermann V. von Holst, *Study of the Orders* (Chicago, 1906), 198.
[134] MS: '…they were left of \ the ancient / Forrest work \ ancient way / & betaken themselves ~~freed of their ancient as have betaken to stones, & left of the work and betaken themselves to build with stone tho never so mean ways of forest worke buildings; The only example~~ & The stud walls were plasterd both on the Inside & out ~~which remaneth of that sort being at the Hall~~.
[135] 'Pow' (pol, polle): the human head; the head of a sheep; a death's head; a skull, and applied to the corresponding part of inanimate objects, e.g. (1) the blunt or rounded part of an axe-head, hammer-head. Hence powie, a smith's hand-hammer; pow-axe: a pole-axe. See *Dictionaries of the Scots Language*, Online.

§15. The 4 Angles of this High Burwens, do look exactly {?} (as I have observed in other Romane fortifications) to the 4 Cardinal Pointes of ~~the~~ Heaven, Sc. E. W. N. & S.; One fair enterance being very discernible ~~by~~ \ betwixt / 2 houses (which stand a sloape, & seeme as it were, to give way unto It) ~~betwixt the~~ in oriente est iteo, directly northeast, & openeth ~~North & postern pointe towards Milburne Forrest~~ \ towards the Forrest of Milburn; & the other I thinke has bin opposite to It ~~faceing Schole Stret~~ \ in occasu Brumali;[136] / in the S.W. fronting & opening to the High, & perhaps there {has bin more ~~North & South~~ other 2 gates in the other 2 sides opposeing each other}. Near to the former of these 2 portes at the East corner \ angle / &c. and near to the latter, as it were directly opposite to it at 30 yards distance, was a subterraneaneous vault discovered at Coppins Hill which is in the upper end of that Street &c.*.

At the East Angle \ of this area / was lately found the figure of a woman down to the waist (more Romano) carved in stone. And likewise, an Altar about 30 yards from it, in the Low Burwens: but both defaced; the ruines whereof are preserved & kept at Crakenthorp Hall†.

Near the South Angle at Coppin Hill (in the High Street){near to the well which sprinketh[137] there} near the South Angle at Coppin Hill (in ~~Burwen~~ \ the High / Street), was lately discovered \ discovered not many years ago / a vault \ underground having water therein / full of water, with stairs down into it, a Doer at Each End & a shelf or seat made of huen stone on either side besett all with urnes {!} which I take to be a Roman Sepulchur; & a little below in Blackets Burwen, where they yett continually digg up huge stopes,[138] a chamber underground‡, the top of whose chimney did not extend \ entirely / to the surface of the earth; it have being buryed in the ruines. & in the window was a bottle of glass & a gold ring. Near the West corner (besides flagged floores which are \ were / here very common), a potful of Romane Coynes.

Machell's Notes: I.559

*{Here take in my Paper of the Vault.}[139]
†{Here the story of the Vault would com well in and possibly there have bin 2 gate more[140] opposed to ~~each other~~ \ 2 / on the other side.}
‡{Being all in order her[e] the chan[ne]l for water – hyppocrene. The kiln near to the bridge & mill. Hyppocrene & just be for that &c. §16.}[141]

[I.548]

In Blackets Burwen was found a whole roome steed under ground as being I suppose coverd with rubish – for the top of the chimney was underground. In ther in a window was a Glass bottle & a stone Ring,[142] the stone of which was sold to the Lapidaries for gold \ as I have bin told. / Also, a large Rowler of Stone, now at N. Halls, Milburne Chapple.[143]

[136] 'in occasu Brumali Africus' is the west-south-west wind: see Pliny the Elder, *Natural History 2*. 46, §119.
[137] Sprink: a body of water issuing from a source, *Dictionaries of the Scots Language*, Online.
[138] Stope: a step (as in a mine). *OED*.
[139] See Machell's 'Subterranean Passage found near the site of Whelp Castle', in Part 3, Ch.3, Roman Antiquities, beginning at VI.281.
[140] Two interlineated words are illegible here.
[141] This margin-comment is unclear, therefore unsafe.
[142] See I.559.
[143] MS. continues, 'Milburn Chaple at whose font the solem & public administration [of] Private B[aptism] all set to be mentioned for which, tho it be no more than duty, yet perhaps is more than ordinary & [blank].'



Figure 1.14.2. ‘ Vault underground … at Coppin Hill’. I.548.

[I.557A][144]

The 4 Angles &c.
Near to the former of the 2 portes at the East angle of the said area was lately found the figure of a woman &c. – And near to the other supposed enterance (as it werr directly opposite to it) a subterraneous vault was discovered at Coppin Hill

[I.557B]

~~which is~~ \ a place / in the upper end of that Street which lyeth betwixt the Roman-Way & the High Burwens; & seemes to be commonly so called for Copped-Hill, \ as / ~~the place~~ being advanced to a more than ordinary heigh[t] and eminence in respect of the other end of the Street (tho much inferior to the foresaid area) by the ridge of this valt & the rubbish stones which were scattered about, the digg \ ~~seeking~~ / for which was an occasione of this \ fritening / discovery: – For while a laburour struck with a gavelock[145] betwixt 2 great stones (the lime giving way) it flew out of his hand; & they then heard it plunge into water beneath \ them; / which made them ~~more~~ earnest to dive \ farther / into it. And as I gather from those that were present & made use of the stones, the figure of it did resemble a truncke \ ~~wherin open ats end~~ / the lid whereof will describe the Arch ~~to you~~, & the sides the side walls &c. – see my Paper.[146] But to give a yet livelyer description ~~of it~~[147] I shall expose the idea of it naked to your view in this following figurre: where the earth is supposd taken ~~from it~~ \ quite away of – the carkass of stone only remaneing.

[I.560]

[§16.] So, the Romans gave a final farwell* never meaning to returne agane; burying part of their treasure in the Earth, whereof much hath bin found. Roman coynes were dig’d up \ in High-Burwens / about 40 years since, which they foolishly gave their children to play with; & so lost them all;[148] yet many have bin discovered ~~since~~ \ of late; / som of which \ are / in the possesion of the present Rector. There are also innumerable fragments of bricks, broken urnes & other fictilia[149] ~~which the Plow casteth up in all these Places, all~~ dispersed up & downe where Whelp Castle stood, all which doe loudly proclame it Romane. ~~Hic steterit Catuli Regia celsa senis~~’.

& the 2 Roman Wayes which meet at this Towne, the one calld The Street (which I have traisd from Royston[150] to ~~Careil~~ \ Carleol; / and the other called the Maden-Way which comes from \ Caer vorran by the Picts Wall 20 miles from hence / & terminates here &c.† \ may be recorded amongst the things extraordinary relateing to it / & bespeake \ opinion / it a place \ Town / of more than ordinary estimacon & traffique in the time of the Romans; as Camden affirmes it to have bin before ~~them the principle~~ in the time of the Brittans, by the name of Gallacum,[151] which was the Chiefe Towne of the Brigantes (i.e. ~~in Westm’land~~ of these 6 northern Countyes) which were the greatest people ~~at that~~

[144] See I.499 for identical text on Burwens, deleted from this page.
[145] ‘crow-bar’.
[146] Paper printed in the *Oxford Philosophical Society Journal*, see I.534.
[147] MS: ‘\ you yet a more m… [word obscured by the binding] /’.
[148] This remained in Machell’s memory, as he also mentioned it on I.499 and I.506, and in a letter to Dr Mill in Part 3, Ch.3, Roman Antiquities, IV.80.
[149] ‘Fictilia’: earthenware; see the Latin Glossary.
[150] Royston is in North Hertfordshire.
[151] See Camden, *Britannia* tr. Holland (1637), 761E.

~~Time~~ in the British Ilandes; ~~Hic steterit Catuli Regia celsa senis~~ \ who did over spread on those northern countyes / partes which are now called by the names of ~~Lancashire Yorkshire Richmond Westm'land Cumberland & the Bishoprick of Durham~~ {Yorkshire, Bishoprick,[152] Lancashire, Westmorland, Cumberland & Northumberland}‡.

{Caer Vorran I suppose was builded by Var[r]onius, who was Præfect or Captain of the XX Legion called Valens Victrix, \ and from him / by the Britannes intitled Caer-Vorran. He incamped here ~~abouts~~, probably on Castrig, with Lucanis Præf. the Captain of the 2nd Legione called Augustus ~~Hi. cohort~~ whose soljers posibly paved this way. But then why the Maden-Way? Perhaps from those XI thous[and] virgins sent over with Ursula to be maryed with their countrymen in Amorica or Little Brit.[153] In f. XC see p.280.}[154]

Which things being considered, [it] may not [be] improbable that the proprietor of this ancient Castle (with the lands round about ~~it~~, whom the Saxons call'd Whelp \ in Latin, Catulus / might be a Branch of the old Romane Catuli, left here in trust with their British bands ~~where~~ when the Romans made their recess into Gaul, Anno Christ 443 \ in about the year 440, then destitute of aid, / there being but the space of \ about / 600 years \ (and many familyes have continued so long) / ~~from~~ betwixt their departure and the Norman Conquest \ Sc. 627 years / (dureing which time the Saxons who came in to aid the Britans & such of the Romans as were left behind) \ trusted with them / against the \ violent / incursions of the Picts & Scots, made themselves masters of al these nations, & altered the names both of men & places, as appears to this day‡.

[Machell's Notes: I.560]

*{Anno 395: into Italy under Suetonius after Honorius sent them a legion: Speed. 277.} {The 1t assay by Cæsar was in Anno Mundi 3873, ante Christ '54. From Cæsars invasion to the days of Valentinian the III wherein the Romans did quite abandon it, 500 years: p.278, p.2, Speed. Kingdoms & empires seldom exceed 500 years: Speed, p.278. 1. 2.}

†{Speed p.479, 6: Valentianian sent Gaslio of Ravenna, a most valiant man with a Regiment or Legion of soljers, who, after they queld the Scots & Picts, was recald; who taught them the use of their armour and weapons, and to strengthen their fortification & wall of turfs, which now they began to build with firm stones, 8 in thickness & 12 high &c.‡} {Quaere of this, for in Speedes Table – p.171– it is not added, but belongs to the Ottadini with other places in Scotland. Those he mentions are who inhabited the places which we now calle Lancashire Yorkshire Richmondshire Westmorland & Cumberland & The Bishoprick of Durham.} {! ! !}[155]

‡{Vortigern invaded 440; Hengist & Horsa [44]6.}

[I.561A][156]

Aur[elius] Alexander Severus Imp. XXVI Anno XLI 225, had a \ fam[ily] / councel amongst whom this triumvirate extraordinary: Catilius Severus vir omnium doctissimus; \ Ælius Severianus \ vir / omnium Sanctissimus; Quintilius Caius Marcellus omnium ~~optimus~~.[157]

---

[152] County Durham: see the English Glossary.

[153] Brittany.

[154] The story of St Ursula and her 11,000 virgins appears in several medieval writings, including Geoffrey of Monmouth, *Historia Regum Britanniae* (*History of the Kings of Britain*), c. 1136, and Jacobus de Voragine, *Legenda Aurea*: 'The Golden Legend' (Barcelona, 1494), Ch.153. For a modern edition, see de Voragine, Nickel and Rainer, *Legenda Aurea* (Ditzingen, 1988).

[155] Note Machell's reliance on John Speed's, *Historie of Great Britaine Under the Conquests of the Romans, Saxons, Danes and Normans…* (London, 1611). In Speed's table of ancient inhabitants (171), for example, the Brigantes are placed in Lancaster and the Ottadini in Northumberland, while spaces allotted to the inhabitants of Cumberland and Westmorland are empty. Machell's other references to Speed in these notes might also be questioned.

[156] Scrap page, approx. 9cm x 9cm, with interlineation difficult to disentangle from the body text and therefore insecure.

[157] The precise Latin wording here suggests that Machell might have used Isaac Casaubon's *Historia Augusta* (1603) as a source. A compilation of the works of several authors of late antiquity, the volume includes the *Life of Severus Alexander* by Aelius Lampridius, in which Catilius Severus is described as '*vir omnium doctissimus'*:

They lived under the command of the Romans till the 430 year after Xt* when the Roman Empire declineing was forced to call home their Garrisons, & having before exhausted the strength of this Kingdom left it a prey to the Picts – whereupon they [were] forced to crave aid of the Saxons & Angles near the confines of Denmark ~~to whom they became~~ \ who after they had chased / away their enemyes drove[158] the Britt[ains] or [those][159] who would not live under their laws, [into] corners & passes, & subjection.

[Machell's Notes: [I.561A]

{My Maps of England p.11. Xti 440.}

*{Will[iam] ingresses 1067, which was after it 400. 627 X.[160] The Romans persist 627 years.

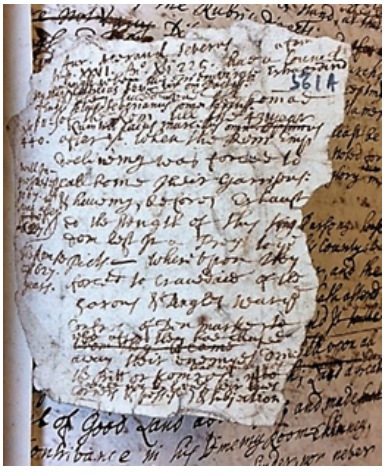


Figure 1.14.3. A scrap page, typical of those numbered in the 20th century when pasted into the volume. I.561A.

[I.561]

[§17.] [The name of Whelpdale]

{That might Catulus be changd into Whelp more Saxonico, & Castrum Catulinus. So that which before was called Catulus was now called Whelp. Castrum Catulinus: Whelp Castle. Abalaba: Apelby. Brovonacum: Browham.}

For tis then Aballaba was called Apelby, either from the plenty of apples, for being the place of appeals, or courses of Judicature – Verteræ Burgh, from being a Burrow. Brovoniacum, Burgham, not unlikely on the same occasion an Gallacum. Kirkbythore as it is at this day, from a Temple it seems here erected to the Honour & Worship of their god, Thor, i.e. Jupiter [which] into our Thorsday commeth. And \ has / perhaps the whol bottom of the County of Westmorland \ before the Conquest, might be \ was / called Whelpdale; from this ancient seat which seeme to have bin the ~~most noble place in it~~ \ comanding place of it / & the sirname of Whelpdale ~~may be described~~ \ might take its beginning / from their ancestours \ about the Conquest at some remarkable / living at some noted place \ in / of this valley {at the time of the Conquest}.

Quis autem res tam antiquas pro certo affirmare audet?[161]

---

the most learned of men (see 597). However, as Lampridius was much quoted, Machell could equally well have found his source elsewhere.

[158] MS: 'drive.'

[159] 'Those' replaces an illegible word.

[160] This information is repeated on the same page of the MS.

[161] 'But who ventures to pronounce for certain on matters so ancient?' Possibly this is intended to be a quotation from Livy, *The History of Rome*, Bk I.3.2, though the wording is slightly different. Obviously, the question struck a chord as Machell used it four times in his narrative sequences on Kirkby Thore.

[VI.622B]

[Letter to Machell from A. Smal[…] 11 June 1672][162]

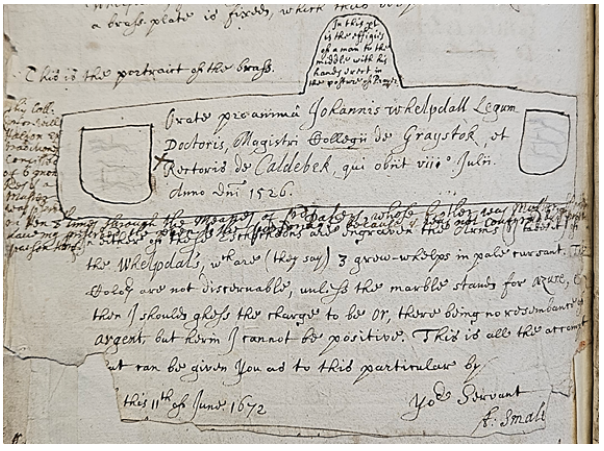


Figure 1.14.4. Letter to Machell from A. Smal[…], 1672. VI.222B.

Sir
I find that one Roger Whelpdale Provost of Queens College in Oxford was preferred to the Bishopriqs of Carlile about 250 years ago in the Reign of King Henry the 5th.[163] But no monument of him can be found in the Church; nor is it probable that he was interred there. Fo\u/r I never heard of any Bishop of Carlile stooped so low as to take up the Parsonage of Graystock, save only Bishop Robinson, successor to Bishop Whelpdale both in his provosts place & in his see.[164] That which your friend intends is (I suppose) a monument for another Whelpdale, for whose memory upon a fair marble in this Church a brass plate is fixed which thus bespeaks the Reading.
This is the portrait of the brass.
In this Pl[aque] is the effigies of a man to the middle with his hands Erect in the Posture of Prayer:

> Orate pro anima Johannis Whelpdall legum
> Doctoris, Magistri Collegii de Graystock, et
> Rectoris de Caldebek, qui obiit viii[0] Julii
> Anno Domini 1526.[165]

[162] This page is torn; some text is missing. Although the signature seems to read 'F. Smal…', the writer is almost certainly Alanus Smalwood DD, rector of Greystoke, 1663-86. See CCED. The diagonal line in front of Smalwood's initial might suggest 'A', but this is conjectural.
[163] Roger Whelpdale was bishop of Carlisle from 1419 until his death in 1423. See David W.V. Weston, *Carlisle Cathedral History* (Carlisle, 2000), 142. Said to have been born of a Cumbrian gentry family near Penrith [see VI.662A, below] he was educated at Oxford, was a fellow of Balliol College before 1400, then successively fellow, chamberlain, treasurer, and in 1404, provost of Queen's College. He was senior proctor of the university in 1403–4. He was in London when he made his will, on 25 January 1423, and died there on 4 February following. It seems likely that he was interred in St Paul's Cathedral in London: Henry Summerson, 'Whelpdale, Roger (d.1423), bishop of Carlisle'. *ODNB*. The confusion over Whelpdale's burial place is shared by Thomas Fuller in *The History of the Worthies of England* (1662), known as 'Fuller's Worthies'; see later edn (London, 1811), Vol. 1, 23. Machell used 'Fuller's Worthies' regularly in his research.
[164] Henry Robinson (1551/2-1616), provost of Queen's College Oxford from 1581, bishop of Carlisle from 1598, was reputedly a native of Carlisle. An evangelical pastor, his ministry emphasised preaching. On receiving the living of Greystoke *in commendam* (i.e. a vacant benefice commended to a cleric until an incumbent was provided) in 1609, he preached regularly there, as seen in the churchwardens' notes. Bishop Robinson's monumental brasses (in Queen's College Oxford and in Carlisle cathedral), praise his part in the religious and secular life of the far north of England. See Margaret Clark, 'Robinson, Henry (1551/2–1616)'. *ODNB*.
[165] John Whelpdale LLD, died 8 July 1526, was master of the College of Greystoke and rector of Caldbeck.

In either of these eschucheons are engraven the Arms of the Whelpdals, which are (they say) 3 grow-whelps in pale currant. The colors are not discernable, unless the marble stands for Azure. & then I should ghess the charge to be Or, there being no resemb[l]ance of Argent, but herin I cannot be positive. This is all the accompt that can be given you and to this particular by
Your Servant
A. Smal[wood]
this 11th of June 1672.

(Infor[mant] Will Halton ex-traditione) This College consisted of 6 monkes & a Master, was preservd in Henry 8th times through the meanes of Lord Dakers whose brother was Master,[166] having preserved the revenues[167] [of] the parsonage because it was not confirmd by the pope.[168]

[VI.622A]

Andrew Whelpdale Rector of Newnham in Hantshire & somtime fellow of Queens in Oxford, a younger son of [Blank] Whelpdall of Penrith & Skirsgill,[169] sayes that the Ancient Seate was Frenchfield, a little farme over against Buly Castle on Cumberland side, not far from Carleton; & that his Ancestour was 2nd brother to that house. (de quo quaere?)
But that estate in my time: Will. Whelpdall – an hatter in Penrith, & a very mad fellow.[170]

[I.561]

§18. **What is now Modern**

But now to pass from things which are buried in their own family ruines to what is now modern and near to descernable.[171]

[**Parish Church**]

The next ~~thing~~ \ place / here which deserve observation is the Parish \ Church, / which seems by \ the stones whereof it is builded in & roofed out / its walls to have bin builded out of Whelp Castles Ruines \ as most of the houses on this Town have bin. / Tis an hansom but elligant building[172] \ with a fair strong tower adornd with a clocke […].[173] /

---

166 Two words here are illegible.
167 This word could equally well be 'revents'. 'Revent': to sell again; to sell on. *OED*.
168 'When the legality of seizing the rectory and its profits on the king's behalf came to be reviewed in court, it was argued by the incumbent that … the church was indeed made collegiate, but it was by the pope's authority only; that they had no common seal, and therefore were not a legal corporation. As judgment was given against the king, the church continued rectorial and parochial … Lord Coke was of opinion that the king's title failed owing to the fact that the church was made collegiate by the pope's authority only, without the royal assent.' J. Wilson (ed.) *A History of the County of Cumberland*, 2. Victoria County History (London, 1905), 204-08. See also *N&BII*, 363.
169 John Whelpdale, 1611-64. See C. Roy Hudleston, 'Thomas Machell, his wife and children and his Whelpdale stepchildren', *CW2*, 70 (1970), 110-45: Appendix II (124-25) and Appendix IV (128).
170 From as early as the 17th century, 'as mad as a hatter' is thought to have referred to hat-makers suffering from mercury poisoning; see Ann M. Carlos and Frank D. Lewis, *Commerce and a Frozen Sea: Native Americans and the European Fur Trade* (Philadelphia, 2010), 22. The Anglo-Saxon word 'atter' meaning 'poison', is closely related to the name of a poisonous snake, the 'adder', suggesting that the saying might be much older. Machell was related to the Whelpdales, as noted, above.
171 MS: 'And \ but / now; is to pass ~~from these ancient matters~~ \ from things which are buried in their own family / ruines \ to what is now modern and near 2 descernable / to what is more modern.'
172 MS: 'Tis an hansom \ ~~structure without / brick structure~~ \ but / elligant building.'
173 A word obscured by the binding could be 'board'. MS.I.527A offers, 'But now to returne from things in their own ruines or rased out by the conquering swords to what is more moderne and more descernable. The next place here which deserves observation is the Parish Church, which seems by the stones whereof it is made {to have bin ~~builded~~ \ raised / out of Whelp Castle ruiness: 'Tis an hansom ~~structure~~ \ edifice / on the outside tho not very large, adorned with a well proportion'd Tower & a Clock whose hore-bord faceth the Town, which strikes on the Loudest Bell in this County ~~which~~ (called Great Tom).'

[I.561A]

An hansom structure and on the outside, though not the very large, haveing a well-proportion'd Tower which conteines the greatest best sounding bell in the County, called Great Tom, & a Clock on the outside of, whose hoore-board looks to the towne as [blank] But its greatest glory (as \ doth / best becometh the beauty of Holiness)[174] is on the inside, where

[I.561]

the beauty of it (as doth becometh best the worship service of God), is on the inside[175] – where all things are neat and in very good order: the floores of the Church \ & Quire / well flaged; the seats (which are generally made of wainscot) and all other things thereto appertaineing, regular & uniform.

{Bason, laver, fountaine}

A dillicate Font where \ at the Rectors charge ~~of the personal cost of the Rector~~ which he [had][176] / made of huen stone, the designe of which to have a fountaine p\l/aying up in the bason and a dove appendant to the cover \ of it, / which (when it ascend by the help of a pully whose counterpoyse is hid in the steepel tower), will seem to stand hovering over the water – a Proper Emblem ~~of what is conveyed to m[an] kinde in Baptism~~ \ is in that Sacrament* {!!!}

{The counterpoise goes up in the steeple where it is not seen: a proper emblem of the Holy Ghosts descending upon & sanctifying of the baptismal water to the mystical washing away of sin.}[177]

The Quire is neatly both sealed & seated with very good wainscot & the Altar raled in with wreathed ballisters at the Rectors gift; where (instead of Balls) he hath placed Cupps which are very beautifull & noe less significant than of the Cup of blesing in that other Sacrament which is there administered thrice in the year.[178]

The Altar, also Pulpit & Organ-loft, are of very good workmanship, being curiousely carved. And here are Prayers on Wednesdays, Fridays & Satterday nights, every Holliday & Holiday eve; with Catekiseing \ on / every Sunday, unless prevented by important occasions.

[174] The treatment of this line from Psalm 96.9 (*AVB*) exhibits Machell's late-17th-century embrace of Archbishop William Laud's vision for the Church of England, see Kenneth Fincham and Nicholas Tyacke, *Altars Restored: The Changing Face of English Religious Worship, 1547-c.1700* (Oxford, 2007), Ch.8.

[175] MS: 'The beauty of it (as doth \ becometh best / become the house \ service / \ worship / of God) is on the Inside'. Sentences such as this demonstrate Machell's experiments with alternative drafts.

[176] This word is obscured by the binding.

[177] 'The font, bearing Machell arms, was completed May 8th, 1688, as the register records. Along with the pulpit, communion table and rails of carved black oak, it was the gift of, 'the father of all Westmorland and Cumberland antiquaries, the Rev. Thomas Machell, who held this rectory from 1677 to 1698.' He was buried in the south side of the chancel. The pulpit bears the date 1631, which seems to indicate that Machell was a collector of pre-existing carved oak, rather than a designer of new work. Outside the rail surmounting the communion balusters runs an inscription, which in its present position reads thus: COLLEGII REG: OXON: SOCIUS. AN: R: CAROLI II XXXV: REG: MA: A SAC: ET I ECCLÆSIÆ DE KIRKBYTHORE D.D: THO MACHELL RECTOR.' See John Heelis, 'Kirkby Thore Church', *CW1*, 11 (1891), 314-22, at 319-20.

[178] MS: 'The Quire is neatly both sealed & seated with very good wainscot & the Altar raled in with wreathed ballisters at the Rector's gift ~~which also~~; where (instead of Balls) ~~upon the Pillasters~~ he hath placed Cupps; ~~upon the pillasters~~ which are very beautifull & noe less significant than of \ the cup of blesing in the other Sacrament, ~~which is there administered in the other sacrament~~ / That other sacrament which is there administered thrice in the year'.



Figure 1.14.5. Sketch of Kirkby Thore font cover with added scrap page. I.561.

[Machell's Notes: I.561]
*{See Whitsunday, Annuc[iation] & Public Baptism}

[I.562]

And no child was ever baptised privately in this Rectors time, but it was publicly brought to the church som Sunday following (if it liv'd so long) to be received into Christs flock after that solemne & religiouse manner which the Church of England hath thought fit to.[179] It be no more than duty doth strictly request, yet is fit to to mention for ex[ample's] sake, yet I fear (if other places were searched) it may pass for a rarety.[180]

[Machell's Notes: I.475-476]

This being found at Kirbythore, Enquire after the name of Shandos. He beareth Azure the Image of the Virgin Mary with her child in her arms, standing in the Sun. For bearing of these Arms great dissention did arise between Sir John Shandos an Englishman, and the Lord Claremount a Frenchman, they both bearing the same armes alike. After a challenge thereof made by the one to the other, it was tryed at the end of the battle of Poyctiers, where the Lord del Claremount was slaine & lost his banner by right of Armes: p. 79. 2. *The Union of Honour*.[181]

[179] Machell's insistence on obedience to canon law is notable in his parish registers: see R. Bower, 'Notes on the Kirkbythore Registers', *CW1*, 4 (1880), 372-86, 375. Machell's clear views on church baptism, seen in the passage above, were a response to the popularity of non-emergency private baptism. This was a debateable issue in 17th-century England, not only because of the growth of conconformity, but also because some wealthy families belonging to the Established Church had begun to favour private baptism. See Yudha Thianto Tjondrowardojo, 'Stories Baptismal Registers Told: Private Baptism in Seventeenth-Century England', *History*, 95, 2 (318) (April, 2010), 177-93.

[180] Further text continues in the margin as follows, MS: 'Prescribe \ all which / I ~~heartily~~ wish may not pass for rarityes, being no more than which duty requires; yet I all wh (though it be no more than duty, yet ~~perhaps it is more than~~\ extra /ordinary & fit to be mentioned for examples sake.' All of this has been lightly scored through. As the first part of this passage is blotted, its transcription is insecure.

[181] James Yorke, *The Union of Honour* (London, 1640), see 80 (b.).



Figure 1.14.6. Image of scroll. I.476.

The Armes in that book did not differ, save that the rayes here in this figure are direct & oblique, issuing immediately from about her, with a particular ray also about her head & about our Saviour, she standing in an half moon. But in the Escutcheon the rayes issue from an Ovall wherewith she is encompassed, & no rays are seen except of the Suns, & those all direct. And beside she has the a † in her hand. In this she has none.[182]

[I.563]

[**Kirkbythore Hall**][183]

The next Curiosity (if it may be so called) is at Kirkbythore Hall, where there is a piece of old forrest-worke building: a common thing once, when this \ part of the / country was full of good timber; but now (& in the ages to com) it may pass for ~~a Rarity~~ \ Rare / & therefore the rather ought to [be] mentioned because it shows us what manner of buildings was (for the most) use'd here of old: & prevents an objection which m~~ight~~\ay / be made against the 'Greatness of this Town \ & Apelby & other like whose ruines are not now to be found / ~~hereto~~ fore, & of others likewise by showing how easily they might be consumed (tho never so great) & reduced to ashes which the winde scattereth whersoever it listeth & yet leave~~s~~ no ruines or vestigia behind it,[184] which are not common in other countryes. {So London \ before the fire / Yorke, Apleby; & most of the townes in England \ whose ruines are not now to be found, formerly were paper buildings.[185] And Apleby, whose ruinouse heapes are scarce to be seen, undiscerneable.}[186]

Here \ at this Hall / is allso an Altar (dig'd up out of Whelp Castle ruines) which Sir William Dugdall hath taken notice of ~~in his visitation~~,[187] and therefore I need not say anything of it.[188]

{Near to this Hall, in \ a peatmoss / calld Traneberry Mire[189] wi[l]d duck doe frequently breed & brood. & on the \ high / moore is a sorte of wild folle call'd Black Cocks or Gors \ which are not common in other countries. / This is [the] Seat of Hum[phrey] Wharton of Gilling Esq. Barister at Law (by purchase from John Wharton, his Liefe[190] Late Lord of the manner, who dyed without any male Isue: \ Wharton / armes are Sable a manch Argent.[191]

---

[182] The MS does not contain this image. The description is reminiscent of Revelation 12:1, 'And there appeared a great wonder in heaven; a woman clothed with the sun, and the moon under her feet, and upon her head a crown of twelve stars.' (*AVB*).
[183] For a history of Kirkby Thore Hall see Michael Waistell Taylor, 'Manorial Halls in Westmorland', *CW1*, 12 (1893), 24-27.
[184] MS: 'reduced to ashes which the winde bloweth \ scattereth / whersoever it listeth & \ yet / leave~~th~~\s/ no (ruines or) vestigia behind it.'
[185] 'Paper buildings': made of wood, easily burned.
[186] MS: 'and Apleby, whose ruinouse heapes are not \ scarce / to be seen undiscerneable.}'
[187] The next word (possibly 'writ') is blotted.
[188] An unfinished reference to 'Cowsonsy' has been deleted from this part of the MS; for the main narrative, see below, I.538 onwards.
[189] Traneby Mire. See Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 120.
[190] 'Lief': Beloved, dear, agreeable, acceptable, precious. *OED*.
[191] MS deleted: 'Here &c.': an unfinished sentence.

[Arts and Employments]

Yet before I leave of this Town, once famous for traid; I must \ will / observe \ to you that in this village (as if the Genij of the Place ha~~d~~s not left it & forsaken it utterly) there are above 30 Artes and Imployments present and practised at this very day. As first the \ most beautifull / incomparable Art of Arcetecture: which (amongst many others) the present \ Rector / hath ~~som~~ knowledge of – the Hildegastics[192] of these partes. \ See Fullers *Chronicle* p.102.[193] / He and one \ Christopher / Adison (borne in this Town and contemporary with him) being the first Introducers of Regular Building[194] into these ~~Northern~~ Parte. Hutton Hall in the County of Cumberland was alterd by Addison; Rose Castle

[I.564][195]

in Cumberland, Cæsars Tower, Howgill Castle & Crackenthorp Hall in the County of Westm'land by Mr Machell; [196] & the Organ Loft in St Lawrences Apelby of The Dorrick order,[197] which has extraordinary fancy in it, the Guttae & Trigliphs being rendered musicall & the fluteings turnd into organ pipes, was designd by him, & the ~~work~~ \ Joyners / men taught to worke by the scale.}[198]

[VI.622K]

[Rose Castle, Cumberland]

A Platforme of Rose Castle in Cumberland wherein what is coloured read was found in repare by Bishop Stearne first Bishop of Carlisle after the returne of King Charles the 2[d] from his exile; whence he was translated to the episcopal See of Yorke. What is colour'd black was repaired by Bishop Stearne. What is gray were the old walls pull'd down by him in order to his repaires. And what remains white, were the old walls standing when Bishop Rainbow entered upon it.



Figure 1.14.7A. Machell's plan of Rose Castle post 1660. VI.662K.

[192] Here Machell is comparing himself with Hildegast, the Frankish polymath noted for improving his country's architecture: see Machell's Preface, I.145.
[193] Thomas Fuller, *The history of the worthies of England* … (1662). I find nothing helpful in Fuller's description of Cumberland and Westmorland, apart from his recognition of the excellence of Lady Anne Clifford's Hospital: see 1840 edn, Vol. 3, 310 (Ed.)
[194] Building in the classical manner, as opposed to traditional or vernacular architecture.
[195] See I.539, below, for comparison.
[196] Machell altered a part of Rose Castle for Thomas Smith, c.1684. See Part 3, Ch.3, VI.205.
[197] Influenced by Vitruvius, Andrea Palladio (1508-80) was an Italian Renaissance architect who promoted Classical architecture (including the Doric Order, the earliest and plainest Greek style). See *The Four Books of Architecture* (Venice, 1570). Book I was published in English in London in 1663. See the edition by Adolf K. Placzek (ed.), *Andrea Palladio*, *The Four Books of Architecture* (New York, 1965), Part 5.
[198] Triglyph: a member or ornament in the Doric order, consisting of a block or tablet with three vertical grooves or glyphs (strictly, two whole grooves, and a half-groove on each side), repeated at regular intervals along a frieze, usually one over each column, and one or two between every two columns. *OED*. For more on Machell's architectural skills, see John Rogan and Eric Birley, 'Thomas Machell the Antiquary', *CW2*, 55 (1955), 132-53, at 141 and 148. Their judgments go some way toward validating Machell's own opinion of his architectural skill: 'It is his versatility that stands out above all. He was an archaeologist of exceptionally wide interests and precision of mind, a more than competent architect in a period when the north of England was not well supplied with architects.'

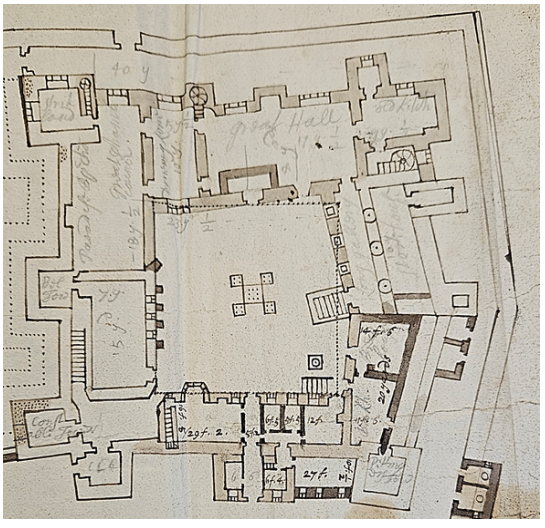


Figure 1.14.7B. Detail from Machell's plan of Rose Castle showing 'what is coloured read'. VI.662K.

[I.564]

The other Artes, Professions & Traides \ which are in this valley / I shall run over ~~by way~~ (for brevityes sake) by way of Alphabet – which are as followeth – namely that of a Baker, Basket Maker, Blacksmith, Bruer & Butcher. Carpenter, Clogger, Cobbler, Currier & Cooper. Joyner, Fuller, Glazier & Knitter. \ Lastmaker, Mason / Maltster,\ Mealman / Mercer, Midwife, Milnwright ~~&~~ Milner. Piper, ~~Schoolmaster, Schoolmistress, Shoemaker~~, Skinner ~~&~~ Spinner. {Spurrier} Tanner, Taylour, Thatcher, Waller, Weaver ~~&~~ Whitesmith \ & Wheelwright &c. \ To which wee may add tho out of course: a Schoolmaster & a School Dame; / which I thought fit to observe as a Rarety relateing to Artes, the like of which is scarce to be found \ through the kingdom of England / in a country village.

[Rarities in Art and Nature]

{Some things which ar Rare}
And here I cannot but take notice also of som little things which are Rare in Nature, which showes the benignity of the soyle & air. This present Rector had in his flore gardine not many years since, doubl gilliflores at Shrovetide.[199] And the last year in 1685, he had a Dazy which is \ was / 4 inch & ½ about in circumference, the diameter being 3 inch and ½ by the application of an inch rule.

{Now I shall pass to the Chapelry of Milburne}
{where in the way hard by [the] Hall wee meet with a rampart or fortification &c.}

[Howgill Castle]

The next thing remarquable is Howgill Castle in the Chapelry of Milburne,[200] being a great \ fair / building which standeth high \ in the eye of the Country / on the skirtes of the mountanes, and hath a large prospect \ in the view of all roades; 2 overlooking at most the whol C[ountry] / to the South & South-West; \ But / the other side, being shutt up with mountaines & a large \ great / grove of trees, \ afords none at all / wherein it standeth. The walls were formerly (& yet are) of prodigiouse thickness;[201] {the Picts Wall was but 8f.; this,10 and ½} And underneath which the Dwelling house \ all arched with stone / \ to which you ascended by / ~~a pair of stairs on the outside, were cellars & great~~

[199] The period before Lent in the Christian calendar.
[200] MS: 'The next thing remarquable is ~~this Parish~~ Howgill Castle in the Chapelry of Milburne ~~& also Remarquable~~.'
[201] MS: 'The walls were formerly (~~of them~~, ~~are~~ yet \ are /) of prodigiouse thickness.'

~~vaults all arched with stone~~; which was the old way of buildings in these partes, whilest they livd in continual feuds with ~~Scotland~~ \ the Scots. / & which served not only for the proper use which now they are put to, but to keep their horses & cattle secure in the times of invasion \ and to have them near them. / A method ~~which old~~ I could alwayes approve of in these northern climates as most warm & convenient & which saveth the cost of \ a great / many roofes in outhouses & stables: were it not

[I.565]

for the unpleasant smells which the ordure & fewmes of cattle & horses are apt to send up to the higher roomes. But this Castle is now most successfully altered with much art & smale cost from an old & irregular piece of building to a \ very / ellegant ~~structure of the Ionicke & Dorrick Orders~~ & uniform structure, the front of which, being a Great Hall with a dineing Roome over it betwixt 2 stately Towers is adorn'd with a Portch & Belconys \ in the midst of the Dorick Orders / of ~~The Doric~~ & Ionic Orders: on either side which are 2 \ setts / rows of windows, double Transom, ~~which are finely~~ \ curiously / carved: \ with a per of windows in the roofe. And before them & at the top, with rails & ballasters instead of batlements. From the midst of the Hall you ascend up to the Dineing Rome by a spacious stair with a square pit or newell – the first hanging stair that I know of in the County of Westm'land.[202]

This was the Seat of the late (unfortunate but worthy Gentleman) Sir Richard Sandford \ Baronet / who was barbarously murthered at London in 1675, being stabed into his stomack \ & / thorow the midriff ~~&~~ to the back bone, ~~& wound on both sides~~ before he got time to draw his sword \ which yet he did intend to do when his caul was hanging out of the wound. / An tis now the inheritance of Sir Richard \ Sandford / his son & heir, who was borne (as 'tis said) about the same time that his father was slane\ by a L[ondon] Hector[203] in 1675 ere his sword was unsheathed, whom yet he resisted ~~such and~~ with undaunted courage & his caul hang out of his wound.[204]
He beares for his Armes: His armes are parted per cheveron, Sable & Ermin, 2 boares heads ~~couped~~, in chiefe ~~Argent~~, couped Argent {?}

[Acorn Bank]

The last but not the least to be noted is Acorne-Banke in the chapelry of Sowerby whose situation, is \ being / much like Howgil; \ but much more confined indeed / in a Gro[ve] but more sweat & pleasant; & \ in / as \ being / much as was 'tis nearer the heart of the Countrey, & ~~hath a full prospect of~~ \ lying exactly opposite to / The Forrest of Whinfel; which gives a great beauty & ornament to It. But that which is most to be noted here is a curiouse additional piece of building of a Parlour and Dineing-Room {so well contrived not a dooer, nor stair excepting \ one / but were all made serviceable – and that too might have bin useful, ~~if the directions had bin followed exactly; as they were given~~} the outside of which

[I.566]

~~all~~ [is] of \ red / free-stone,[205] well wrought & pollishd, & placed according to the Tuscan manner with excavation betwixt every course.[206] This is the seat of John Dalston Esqr, now of Millnrigg (tho his eldest son live[s] here at this time) and his Armes are [blank]

---

[202] MS: '{~~And you ascend by a spaciouse stair~~} & here and here was the first hanging stair that I know of in the County of Westm'land. \ From the midst of the Hall you ascend by a spacious stair. /{~~And here is a large \ fair / stare, by which you ascend from the midle of the Hall up to the dineing Rome – which was the first hanging stair \ of that sort / in Westmorland~~}To which you ascend, haveing passd through the Hall by a spacious…'.
[203] Ruffian.
[204] A margin comment repeats the narrative. For another description of the crime, see MS.I.540. The murder occurred on 8 September 1675; the murderers, Henry Symbal and William Jones, were executed; a printed account of the murder was published in 1680: See *N&B1*, 388.
[205] MS: 'freed-stone'.
[206] The Tuscan order of the five Classic orders of architecture is the simplest; it was delineated by Palladio (1508-1580) in *The Four Books of Architecture* (Venice, 1570). Machell admired Palladio, see above, I.564. Here, Machell appears to refer to Rusticated Tuscan Stonework, which is associated with stones cut with a deliberately rough surface and wide sunken joints between blocks. Interest in this building style has been associated with William Thackeray (*fl.*1670-82), mason and carpenter of Torpenhow, who, despite Machell's

[Flora]

I shall conclude \ this section of Rarityes within Art & Nature / with ~~this~~ observation which is rather general to the whol county than peculiar and proper to this parish alone: that ever in their medows, commons and wastes, they have such dilicate floores growing as are of the greatest esteem about London:[207] namely Panseyes or Hartsease, & Golden Globes, to which may be added \ as / a competitour with London-Pride, the Northern Bird Eye, which grows \ growing / with many floores on a stalke & is of a purple or rather pinke \ like / coulour with a speck of oringe or yallow in the midst{called here Lockeran Goldings because their leaves are contracting together like a padlock}, concerneing which (& The Merchy Golding \ Golden Globe /) they have this rime, saying:[208]

> Lougherty[209]-Goldings & Bonny Bird-eene,
> Are the finest flowers that ever were seen.

[I.566]

[Civil Government]

For the Civil Government of this Parish it is divided into 3 Contablewicks (Sc. K. Milb. & S.)

1. \ The Constablewick of / Kirkbythore, which consists of \ the Lordships of K, Sc. the Town & / som part of the Hamlet of Hale \ so far as is in K. / & the Lordship & Town of Kirkbythore; wherein \ herein / there is but one Gentlemans seat (besides the Parsonage), ~~which is~~ called Kirkbythore Hall; \ concerneing which I have said something [of] it, / which belongs to Humphrey Wharton Esqr. of Gilling in Yorkshir – whose Arm's are Sable a manch Argent.

2. Milburne, which conteineth \ in it whol / the Chapelry of Milburn, and consists

[I.567]

of Kirkhouse (a small Lordship or Hamlet held of the Rector of Kirkbythore wherein the Chappel of Milburne standes); Gullom Holm (another small Hamlet), & of Milburn & Grange – 2 hansome villages; all which, (excepting Kirkhouse aforesaid) do appertaine the Castle of Howgill, \ which I have mention'd amongst the Raretyes which this Parish affords, / which is the seat of Sir Richard Sandford, a Minor, & Baronet – whose Arms are blazond parted per cheveron Sable & Ermine 2 boares \ heads in chiefe couped Argent. /
{And there also liveth in the Town of Milburne, Mr Lancelot Machel, 3 son of Lancelot Machel Esq. of Crakenthorp Hall; whose Armes are Sable 3 greyhounds courant Argent in pale langued memberd & armed Gules collar with a 5 pointed mulet for his distinction as a younger brother.}[210]

3. Sowerby, which consists of the Chapelry ~~&~~ Lordship of Sowerby; being \ all / but one Town \ & Lordship / the chief place whereof is Acorn Bank, ~~The only Gentlemans house in this~~ part, concerneing which I have spoken before – which is the seat of John Dalston Esq. \ sonn of John Dalston of Milrigg Esq. in the County of Cumberland, / sometime Burgess of Apleby, & ~~now Justice of the Peace~~ who was in both the Countyes of Westm'land & Cumberland, whose Armes are Argent a cheveron ingraled betwixt 3 dawes heads errased Sable.[211]

FINIS

---

claims to the title (see I.538, above) is regarded, by some, as the first architect of formal (Classical) building in Cumbria. See Blake Tyson, 'Some Cumbrian Builders, 1670-1780', *CW2*, 96 (1996), 161-66, 180.

[207] MS: 'That \ ever / in \ their medows commons and wastes, they have \ grew such dilicate floores are of / such floores ~~growing~~, as are of the Greatest esteem about London'.

[208] A margin comment here offers: '{in praise of which in whose co[illeg.]}'.

[209] Machell has written, 'lockeran', in the margin here.

[210] MS: '& for distinction with a 5 pointed mulet for his distinction as a younger brother.' Lancelot was Thomas Machell's younger brother.

[211] For branches of the Dalston family see Francis Haswell, 'The Family of Dalston, *CW2*, 10 (1910), 201-70.

[**Narrative 3**]

The Parish of Kirkby Thore

[I.508]

[Method]

1. The Rectory or Vicarage: value & Patrone.	5. Soyle, & products above & underground as: wood watere springs mines of lead coale stones &c.	Subdivision from into Constablewick, Villages, Hamlets and private Seats with the names of the Gentry who are owners of them, & their Armes.
2. Incumbents since the Restaur[ation] of King: Ch. 2.		
3. Charityes.	6. Things extraordinary in nature.	
4. Bon days.		

[I.500]

{Unde dict. !!}[212]
The Parish of Kirkbythore is so call'd from the \ Place / Town wherein the Church stands ~~which is~~ which word seems to be of Saxon original, taken from Kirk \ which signifyes / a church by a place, & Thore which \ was / one of their Gods, whence wee have our Thorsday & implyes as much as the place where the Temple of Thore was erected.[213]

{Before which, Sc. when the Romanes invaded Britain, it was calld Galla\c/um, being the chief of the Brigantes who were possessed of all those Countyes which are at this time known by the names of Yorkshire, L[ancashire], B[arony] W[estmorland] & Cumberland and the Bishoprick of Durham which W., E. and N.; & Newbigin, the Lordship on the North with \ Culgath with / part of Kirkland; on South and South-west with Whinfell in Browham and Bolton in Morland.}[214]

It is anciently writ Kirkbythor in writeings without date \ before dateing of writeings was in use, / and afterwards Kirkbythore. Now it \ is vulgarly / called Kirkbythure ~~vulgarly~~ \ but never writ soe. / It is in the Diocese of Carlile, Barony of Westm'land, & in the East Ward of the same.

[I.530][215]

Of Kirkbythore
Kirkbythore is a Rectory rated in the First-Fruits Office at $37^{li}\ 17^{s}\ 8^{d}\ ½$, the Patronage whereof is in the right honourable Thomas Earle of Thannet by descent from his Ancestors on the mothers side: the VIPONTS & CLIFFORDS, who were Lords successively of the Honour of Appelby & Barrons of Westm'land. For Adam the son of Waldeve de Kirkbythore, who was son of Gamel son of Whelp the Lord of Whelp Castle at or before the Norman [Conquest] gave the Advowson of Kirkbythore Church [to] Dominus Roberto Vetriponte by a deed without date*; in which is mention of the two Chappels of Sowreby & Milneburne as members thereof; witness (inter alias) Johanne Mauchell.[216]

---

[212] 'Unde dictum': 'whence it is said'.
[213] 'Village with a church', kirkju-bȳ. The affix (Thore, from the Old Norse *Þórir*) is doubtless the name of some early unidentified owner'. See *Westmorland Place-Names*.
[214] This margin passage is muddled, having been much overwritten and crossed through.
[215] Narrative text on I.530-I.541 was repeated by Machell in various degress of completeness in other drafts. See 550-69; 528-29; 530-530A; 500-501; 465-66; 504-05 (all Vol. 1).
[216] This paragraph has been written in Machell's neatest script. An earlier version (scored through once, as was Machell's habit when a draft had been superseded) appears on MS.I.333: 'Kirkbythore is a rectory \ rated in the 1st fruits office at £37 17s 8½d / the patronage whereof belongs to the right honourable Thomas, Earle of Thanet (as Lord of the Honour of Apleby and Baron of Westmorland) by descent from his ancestors \ on the mother's side / the Cliffords & Viponts; for Adam the son of Waldeve \ who was / ~~the~~ son of Gamel the son of Welp \ (who was Lord of Whelp Castle) / and the advowson of the said church – Dominus Roberto de Veteriponte {whose descent was married to Cliffords} by a deed S.D. in which is mention of the chapples of Sowreby & Milleburne as members thereof: witness inter alias Johne Mauchael'. Almost exactly the same material appears on I.530.

{Present Incumbent}[217]
And one Thomas Machell{late fellow of Queens College in Oxford; Chaplain in ordinary to King Charles the Second & now fellow of the Philosophical Society in the said University}is the present Incumbent, being a second brother of the ancient family of the Machells of Crakanthorpe (the next Lordship adjoyning) who are descended from the abovesaid John; & in all likelihood[218] \ probability / (as may be collected by the neare affinity of theire name & seate by ancient Tradition & by Deeds without date (which I have seen†) from the foresaid Whelp as the Common-Ancestour both of the Machells and Kirkbythores; the former retaining their ancient name with a mark of disfavour;[219] perhaps from the Conquerour as having oppos'd him in defence of their Countrey (for they were called Maulchiens, Malchaels & Macha'els‡. & adhered to that sirname as their greatest glory (still holding therewith the Lordship of Crakan Thorpe at the least by Capitulation) Idq[ue] non per Drengagium; sed per nobile Cornagij servitium, sicut ipsi Normanni),[220] the latter changeing \ it, / & instead thereof assuming the sirname De Kirkbythore, which are long since extinct, the Heiress being married (as appears by their pedegree) to one of the Whartons \ of Wittall / whose descendents (allthough the first line be cut of) are Lords of the Mannor to this very day.[221]

Other Incumbents since the restouration of King Charles the Second
William Walker
There have not been any but William Walker, Master of Arts of Christs Colledge in Cambridge & sometimes Schoolmaster of Gigleswick in Yorkshire;[222] a man skilld in physick, and well deserving in other respects if he had not been imposd on the Parish by an High hand in Olivers time, instead of Mr Lancelot Lowther (an eminent preacher) who was turn'd out of place in those most dismall & rebellious times for his great loyalty to King Charles the first & his fidelity to the Church of England.[223]

[Machell's Notes: I.530]

*è Cart. Antiq. Machellorum familiæ.[224]
†Ibidem.
‡Ibidem.

[I.535A]

[Testimonial. MA Degree. 1651.]
April 19 1651
Wee are content that Mr William Walker have a Testimint according to the usual forme for Masters in Arts.
S. Bills, R. Widdrington, J. L. Moze, Hu Bethel, Will. Owtram, G. Rust, J. Sedgwick, Dan Bull.
Christs College.

[I.531]

The late incumbent was Mr William Walker, Master of Artes of the same College \ Christs College / with H. More,[225] Cambridge \ April 19. 1651. / Who succeeded Mr Lancelot Lowther {of the

[217] This heading appears on I.531.
[218] The pecked line suggests that Machell preferred his second choice, while allowing both to remain.
[219] The name means, 'bad dog'.
[220] 'And that not by drengage; but by the noble service of cornage, just like the Normans themselves.'
[221] Another version of this paragraph appears in MS.I.531. 'And Mr Thomas Machell A.M., late fellow of Queen's College in Oxford, & chaplane in ordinary to King Charles 2, now a fellow of the Philosophick Society of Oxford, is the present incumbent, descended (as is more than conjectured) for I saw very ancient deeds, which being a second brother of the ancient family of the Machells of Crakanthorp, descended (as is more than probable by deeds I have seen &c.) from the said Whelp \ Catulus alus / {Roger Malus Catulus} who seemes to have bin founder of this \ parish church [which] is dedicated to St Michel the archangel / chantry: the only lasting chantry in this parish. Unless wee esteem the skirts of the Donation of Halthe Machael &c.'.
[222] William Walker became chaplain to the bishop of Carlisle in 1665: see Bishop's Register, CAC(C), DRC1/4, 299.
[223] Lancelot Lowther, rector of Kirkby Thore (1629). For more, see Kirkby Thore Narrative 2, I.551, above.
[224] 'Noted in the Machells' ancient deeds.'
[225] Henry More was a student at Christ's College Cambridge from 1631 to 1639, thereafter becoming one of its fellows; see Richard Ward, *The Life of The Learned and Pious Dr. Henry More, Late Fellow of Christ's College in Cambridge. To which are annex'd Dives of his Useful and Excellent Letters* (London, 1710).

Lowthers of [Blank]} \ a worthy / turnd out by the rebels for his loyalty to King Charles I, & his fidelity to the Chuch of England. Who predecessor was Mr Thomas Warcop, ~~M.A~~. a gentleman of this country, of a very good family {tho now ~~obscure~~ \ in decay, / the chief of which, a Mr Thomas Warcop of Colby in Westmorland, Alderman of Apleby. And before him (tho ~~tis~~ not likely by immediate succession) was Richard Evenword, Abbot of Shap alias Hepp \ for so it is writ in ancient records / in this County ~~of Westm'land~~.

[I.530]

And though it be beyond the due limits of this enquiry to adde any more ~~other Incumbents~~; yet having a Catalogue of severall other Rectors by me*, I shall not scruple to make mention of them; being generally persons of good ranke \ note / & quality.[226] For before Mr Lowther was one Thomas Warcop Master of Arts,[227] a younger brother of an ancient family in this County of Westm'land tho now in decay; the chiefe of which is Thomas Warcop of Colby Gentleman Alderman of Appelby. Before

[Machell's Notes: I.530]

*è penes Rectorem.[228]

[I.531]

whom (tho I cannot say in immediate succession) was Richard Evennwood sometime Chaplaine to King Henry VIII & last Abbat of Shap*.
In ~~Henry~~ \ Edward / IV time Mr Henry Wherton a younger son of Gilbert de Querton, Lord of this Mannor (of the same blood with the now Lord Wharton) was Rector here†. And before him in Henry VI. time Roger de Crakanthorp‡ of a very ancient & worthy family – the Crakanthorps of Newbiggin, who deriv'd that sirname from the towne of Crakenthorp, where they held certain Lands many hundreds of years since of the Machells of Crakenthorp, as appears by writeings↓ ~~which~~ I have seen without date, & possibly are a branch of that family called de Crakenthorp for distinctions sake.

In the 48 yeare of Edward 3. [1374-1375], William de Corbrig‖ was Parson here. And I find before him in \ a / writeing (sans date) one Mr Adam de Kirkbythore¶, officiall of Carlile who perhaps was son of the forenam'd Adam, who gave the Advowson of this Church to the family of the Viponts. And these I have been the more willing to mention, to show how worthy & truly generouse the noble patrons of this parish have been, who as they receiv'd the Donation at first by way of free gift from a Country Gentleman; soe have they been ready upon all occasions to bestow the same freely upon Gentlemens sons (& for defect, upon some other worthy & eminent persons who livd in this Countrey). So that this may be called the Gentlemens parsonage, As tis now the most noble & Genteel preferment in the County of Westm'land, being much improved in many repects by the present Rector.

[Machell's Notes: I.531]

*è Cartis penes Rectorum.[229]
†è General prædicta.[230]
‡è Cart. Antiq. Machell.
↓Ibid.
‖è Coll. T.M.[231]
¶In Cart. Antiq. Mauchelel et enim Will. Ma-Catulus, Terras Quasdam de miset (per nomen Mr Adæ de Kirkbythore) s.d. [232] Qu. Tamen, If the official was not Kirkeby only?[233]

[226] Here, Machell has chosen one word over another, marking the discarded word with a pecked line.
[227] Thomas Warcop, instituted as rector in 1597; died in 1629. CCED.
[228] 'In the rector's keeping.'
[229] 'As shown by deeds in the rector's keeping.'
[230] 'From things aforesaid in general.'
[231] 'Thomas Machell's Collections.'
[232] 'Noted in the Machells' ancient deeds, without date, wherein William Malus-Catulus was lessor of certain lands in the name of Master Adam de Kirkbythore.'
[233] 'Query, however, if the official was not Kirkeby only.'

[I.333]

{Charitys}
{Per annum antient sallery from the inhabitants, 12 November, 3. Henry 7. [1487]. So payd to Rob. Hodgson 4s added by \ arbitratation / between former incumbent […][234] Rector ~~upon an arbitration~~ \ to be paid / out of his good will & Godly devotion.}

[I.528]

[Charities Continued][235]
There is a Rent-charge of 5 markes per Annum out of the Powes, a place in this Parish being of the demanes of Mr H. Wharton, Lord of the Manner of Kirkbythore, which is distributed to certain familyes in that Town & elsewhere according to the will of the Donor, who was one Mr Knipe, vicar of ~~Knipe~~ Warcop. But being intrusted with the vicar & churchwarden of the said Parish, & this haveing a very small interest in it, I shall refer you for a farther account ~~of~~ concerneing this matter to the Parish of Warcop.[236]

[I.501]

[Kirkby Thore Church]
The Church is commonly calld Kirkbythore but ~~seems to be~~ \ is / dedicated to St Michael the Arch-Angel, for on that day they keep there feasts,[237] though \ being a very much civilised people / without any games: ex informatione Lancelot Robinson de Kirkbythore, 1678, August 6.

[I.468]

In Kirkbythore Church[238]
In the midle ~~window~~ are Cliffords Armes as before wanting the Coat bordered Verre – supporters a draggon Gules and a leopard crowned & chaned Or. The crest is a draggon in a corronet (sed: Gules dragon, corronet Or). The mantle Argent dubled Gules – The motto DES OR MES.[239] On the right hand Or 6 annulletts Sable. Query. On the left: Argent a manch Sable.
On \ top of / the steeple the south side: Wharton impaleing Lancaster cutt in stone.
In the Quire wall: 1. Machells 2. Wharton & Machell; 3. Wharton & Lancaster 4. Clifton & Vipont – all in stone. & in the East Window the Paternal Coate of the Machells in glass – Item Whartons in glass.

[I.470][240]

In the Little Quire in the first point of the East window are Argent a maunch Gule[s] with a lobe of 3 points Vert. \ fil nat.[241] Max Thu[rl]keld de Mellerby. / In the midle point Argent a manch Sable. In the last Sable a manch Argent (Wharton) without distinction.
On the wall under the left corner of the window is this Coate: a fess between 3 water jugs, the field Vert.
8th. Barr\wise/ of 6 Or and Azure with a cantone in dexter charget with a † crosslet of the first.
9th. Tis parted per fess Gules and Argent two mullets in chiefe pierced of the field Or and an annulett of the same.

In the 2d window
The highest are Cliffords.
On the top of the 2d window.
1t is parted per cheveron Argent and Sable with 9 gutta's Or, 2 wreaths of 5 roses in chiefe propper.
2. Sable mullets of 5 Or with a border ingrailed[242] of the same.
In the 4. Cliffords.

---

[234] One word here is obscured by the binding.
[235] There are two small sketches (3cm x1cm and 1cm square) of windows here.
[236] See Part 1, Ch.23, Warcop, from I.315.
[237] 29 September.
[238] Ink has been superimposed over pencil on this page. Pencilled text is illegible apart from '1624', at the foot.
[239] Over the gatehouse of Skipton Castle, the motto is given as 'Desormais' = henceforth. See *CFH*, 66.
[240] This page has been written in ink superimposed on text written in pencil, now illegible.
[241] 'filius naturalis': illegitimate son.
[242] Here Machell repeats the 3-on-3 image, but reverses it.

In the 5th. 1t point, Sable a manch Argent (Wharton) with a martlet[243] for distinction. 2 point, Lancaster & Crackanthorpe with flore de luce.[244]
11. Window Top: 1. Sable a manch with martlett; the 2 matched with Lancaster.
{In the East End window, Machells Armes and the same in stone with the Races[245] also Machell & Wharton.}

[Machell's Notes: I.484}

Of the church: se for the Visitation in my Long booke. Dugdall allso has it in his visit of Westm'land 1664.

[I.465][246]

To Kirkbythore Church belong Kirkbythore, Hale, Temple Sowerby & Acorn Bank, Howgill Castle, Milburne & Grange,[247] \ & the Hamlet of Julian Bowr, / of which Howegil Castle [is] the Manner House, \ [&] the lenth of Kirkhouse with som ten[emen]ts; all parts belongs to the Rector of Kirkbythore. Milburne & Temple Sowerby are not Churches but Chaples, as is evident from the first conveyance of the Advousons thereof from ~~John~~ \ Adam / de Kirkythore to Robert de Veteripont \ in a Deed S.D. but about the 6t of King John [1204-05]. / Howbeit in regard of their great distance from the mother church they have liberty to bury &c. there \ which any bishop may at pleasure / conferr upon any chapple by consecratio – salva indemnitate matricis ecclesiæ – tamen non debent: see Cam[den], so that they may properly be called parochiall chappls or Chapples of Ease. S[ine] altea tamen &c.[248]

[Parish Value]

{Kirkby Thore}
Gleba Ecclesiæ Kirkbythore valet per annum 4s 0d. There is allso a wast[e] upon the more whose Herbage ~~Ling and Turbari~~ (Bruera)[249] Brouse and Turbary is worth:

By the yere, 13s 4d {Quaere: what rent nowtgeld}	0:13: 4
John le Bray holds one water mille valet per Annum	0: 8: 0
And he hold one waste near Marton church, which is called the Trostbanke, & is worth by the yere	0: 2: 0
And he has allso Joynts[250] & herbage on the mountane of Milburne which is worth by the yere	0: 13: 4
Allso Mr Henry le Barkley holds a close upon the wast[e] and it is worth by yere	0: 12: 0
John de Lancaster hold 1 close also there eodem mod[o] & valet \ per Annum	0: 10: 0
	Summa 2: 16: 8

This was held by Robert de Clifford sed an fuit ta[n]tu[m] demid[ium] quaere?[251]

{Temple Sowerby}
Idem Dominus Robertus had in the village of Temple Sowerby 1 messuage & 12 acres of land valet per annum 0: 12: 0, que fuerunt Templarior[um]? et obijt Seisitus, et valet per annum in omnibus exitibus:[252] 8: 0: 0

Summa 8:12: 0

[243] Martlet: the heraldic swallow: see the English Glossary.
[244] Fleur de lys.
[245] 'Race': a course, a line; e.g. in 1570, 'Of the auncient Mathematiciens, a line is called the race or course of a point'. *OED*.
[246] Also numbered p.19.
[247] MS: 'Kirkbythore ~~Grainge~~, \ Hale, Temple Sowerby & Acorn Bank, / Howgill Castle, Milburne, ~~Temple Sowerby~~ & Grange'.
[248] MS: 'altea': Machell probably meant 'altare', so that the text translates as, 'while preserving the immunity [i.e. rights] of the mother church; however, they ought not to: see Camden, so that they may properly be called parochial chappls or Chapples of Ease. Without an altar. however etc.'
[249] Bruery: heathland used for grazing. *OED*.
[250] Joynts: portion. *OED*.
[251] '... but check whether half was as great as this?'
[252] 'The same Lord Robert had in the village of Temple Sowerby 1 messuage & 12 acres of land worth 12 shillings annually, which belonged to the Templars. And he died possessed [Sc. of this?], and it is worth annually in all its profits 8. 0. 0.'

{Omnes rectores & capellani Arcidiaconis su[n]t subjecti tam in morum connectione quae in ecclesiarum visitatione denom[inatarum] abstante exceptione quae facta fuis[se] proponitur de antecessoribus nostris Baldwine & Huberto occasione capellaru[m] \ de Harkintun & Lamheth quas / {ipsi in præjudicium cant. ecclesiæ construere nitebantur +}[253]

These are all out of the inquisition taken at Apleby Monday next after the feast of St Bartholmew the Apostle[254] in the 8. yere of Edward 2. [1314-1315.] The contents whereof are comprised and may be fo[u]nd in their order if looke in that yere: 1. In St Lawrence Parish Apleby; 2. in Brough under Stanemore; 3. In Sowerby eadem parochial; 4. In Winton in parochial de Kirkbythore; 5. Kirkby Stephen; 6. Langeton infra parochial St Michael de Apleby; 7. Meburne Regis in parochia de Morland; 8. Broughton in ista parochial; 9. Kirkbythore & Sowerby sicut hic.[255]
Et sum[mus] extent[us] Totius Rotuli eccept[ione] feod[orum] & advoc[antiarum] Ecclesiarum est,[256]
C \xx/iiij – \xii/vij – lib. viij & v[d]? {?}

[I.466]

Roger de Clifford was seised \ in his demane as of foe[257] / of certane tenements in Temple Sowerby the day he dyed as his escheats by annulling or makeing voyd of the Templers; which tenements he (thence forward) held of Our Lord the King in Capite by Knights Service, and there are there 16 oxgangs of Land in the hands of the tenents att will, and pay yerely at the feast of Pentecost & St Michael: 3: 4: 0
Allso 8 cotages: which pay yerely att the said feasts 1: 0: 0
There is allso 1 watermill worth yerely 4: 0: 0
Pleas & perquisites of the Court worth yerely 0: 6: 8
Roger Clifford Knight dyed not seised of any \ other / Knights foes in Westmorland; but of the Advowsans of Kirkbythore, Murton and Browham, rated by the yere of the New Tax*.

Kirkbythore	C[s]	}
Murton	50[s]	}†
Browham	5 marcks	}

[Parochial Chapels]

{Milburne Chapple}
In Milnburne Chapple there are not any Coates of Armes in the windows, tho the glass hath bin formerly painted; neither are there any monuments excepting this one in the Sandfords Quire:

> SACRVM MEMORIÆ Annæ Sandford uxoris Richardi | Sandford de Howgil Castle Armigeri Quæ in vita | sua honestè pie qs vixit priumsqus fecit finem stetitqus | Circa 38 Annos uxor ejusdem Richardi et habuit | 18 liberos obytq? vicessimo nono die mensis Januarij | Anno Domini 1605 atatis suæ circa 58 annis‡.[258]

[253] 'All the rectors and chaplains of the Archdeacon are subordinate, as much in the conforming of their customs as in the visitation of the churches mentioned above, allowing for an exception which it is suggested had been made by our ancestors Baldwin and Hubert on account of the chapels of Harkintun and Lambeth which they themselves were striving to construct, to the detriment of the church at Canterbury.' Machell is referring to Archbishop Baldwin (1185-90) and his successor, Hubert Walter (1193-1205), who encountered opposition to building projects at Haddington and Lambeth, see 'Colleges: College of Lambeth', in H.E. Malden (ed.), *A History of the County of Surrey Vol. 2* (London, 1967), 127.
[254] 24th August.
[255] 'Kirkbythore & Sowerby the same as here.'
[256] 'And the entire extent of the whole roll apart from fees and advowsons of churches is'
[257] 'Fee'. Machell understood 'fee' as derived from 'foedus': a contract or agreement; thus, he often wrote 'foe' when discussing fees, e.g. 'knights' foes.' The derivation of 'fee' is also said to be the Saxon 'fee' (cattle or goods of any kind): in Low Latin, 'feudum'. See H.J. Todd (ed.), *A Dictionary of the English Language by Samuel Johnson; with numerous corrections …* (London, 1818), FEC-FEE.
[258] 'Sacred to the memory of Anne Sandford the wife of Richard / Sandford of Howgill Castle Esquire who in her lifetime / lived honourably and devoutly. / She was the said Richard's wife for 38 years and bore him / 18 children. She died on 29 January / A.D. 1605 aged about 58 years. /'

{In Milburne Quire}

Here allso lyes buryed Mr Hugh Machell, 4th[259] son of Hugh Machell of Crackenthorp Esq. {who dyed [blank] but without any monument}.

[Machell's Notes: I.466]

*What new Taxe?
†How is this? {K[irkbythore] in those days worth 2 of Murton, which I cannot understand how it could be, unless The Lead mines payd their Tythes to it.}
‡Note that it is \ all / writ in the great character which [I] have in the beginning, & the long strokes are limits of every line, but there are none of them in the Inscription.

[I.498]

{To which I shall by reason of add, both because off affinity & consanguines, the Armes of Mr L. Machell of Milburne aforesaid 3 son of Lancelot Machell Esq. lately deceased; the which are Sable 3 greyhounds courant in pale Argent collard Or. L. membr. – & armd Gules – with a mullet.}

[I.485]

[Temple Sowerby]

{Sowerby: commonly called} Temple Sowerby, ~~\ or / Sowerby Templariorum~~ not from the \ Temple or / Church \ standing there, / for it is but a chapel appendent to the church of Kirkbythore; But \ from / the Templars, a sort of Religiouse Knights of old, to whom a great part of the Towne did belong, whence it was called for distinctions sake from another Towne of this name on Brough Parish: Sowerby Templariorum, & Temple Sowerby \ as it is to this day. /

These Templars had 900 manners or Lordships belonging them, whereof this was one; & succeded the Order of St Johns of Jerusalem who far exceeded them in their Endowments (which perhaps was a cause of their \ ruin & / overthrow.) {?}

[I.482]

Spittlehouse

{è Lib. voc. *Marmora Oxoniensia* Edit. Oxon 1676, p.26 & 27 per ex MS de Rebus at Hospitallarios Spectantibus. Xti1446.}[260]

The Templars formerly whilst they ~~stood~~ \ continued / and Hospitallers after them, did formerly enjoy in all their houses the extraordinary priviledge of an Asylum (which Houses were commonly called Spittel houses). And in the 4th year of Henry IV [1402-1403] in the moneth of July one John Gore was arraigned for felony before William Hankeford and William Shrene – Judges at Whinchester – who pleaded that the Court was ousted of jurisdiction in his Case – because haveing fled for the said felony to a priviledged place of the Prior and Brothers of the Hospital of St John of Jerusalem in England called Spittal House, in Burghton (quae quidem domus privilegiata existit sicut ceteræ domus ejusdem privilegiatæ existunt)[261] he \ was / fetched from thence by the Constable and others against his will. And William of Wakefield, Proctor of Hospitallers, alledged for them and on his behalf that the said house was formerly the Templars; And the Priviledge granted to them by Pope Inocent[262] & to the Hospitallers by Pope Urban II[263] doth absolutely forbid (under the penalty of an anathema not to be

[259] 4th has been written over 2nd or 3rd.
[260] 'On [various] matters but regarding the Hospitallers. A.D. 1446.' The book is by Humphrey Prideaux, entitled, *Marmora Oxoniensia ex Arundellianis, Seldenianis, aliisque conflata recensuit & perpetuo commentario explicavit* (Oxford, 1676). The Arundel Marbles are a collection of ancient Græco-Roman marble sculptures of subjects such as Cicero and Eros, housed in Oxford. Amassed in the early 17th century, they were displayed in Arundel House, where they inspired Humphrey Prideaux's book, which is a catalogue of this collection and others. Spittlehouse is indeed discussed on pages 26-27; Machell translated text from these pages to form his following paragraph.
[261] '…which is, indeed, a Privileged house, just as other houses of the same [order] are Privileged.'
[262] Both the Knights Templar and the Knights Hospitaller were military orders of great wealth and power, thus incurring the jealousy of rulers. The Knights Templar order was dissolved between 1307 and 1312. See Keith Bate, M. Barber and R. Horrox (eds), *The Templars. Selected sources translated and annotated* (Manchester, 2002), 59-65.
[263] The Knights Hospitaller movement began quietly in Jerusalem shortly after 1070, but grew quickly. In 1113 Pope Paschal II (1099-1118) awarded the order papal protection and privileges. After the Templars were

repeald) that any should lay violent hands upon such men as fled their for saifty or upon their goods within the precinct of their houses; & that the Templars, & ~~Hospitallers~~ after them the Hospitallers also, from the time of the first granting thereof till that time present, allwayes injoyd & used the same; that if any guilty of felony or any other crime whatsoever should fle unto any of their houses, they should \ there / obteine an inviolable peace as if they had fled to the Holy Church itself – which things being put upon the Inquest were found to be so. And by the advice of the Kings Judges of both Benches his Sergeants at Law & others of Kings skilful Counsel, it was adjuged that the Hospitallers ought to enjoy the said priviledge, & that Gore should be restored to the said place againe. & he is restored by the Sherif of the County. And such an one I take this Spittle House to have bin {tho I have no authority for it}

[I.483]

being so near unto Sowerby, which borrows part of its name from the Templars; and did all or most of it belong unto them. And after that Order was desolved, which was in [blank], and Hospitallers succeded them some few years after in their Lands and imunityes, I suppose this Spittle House has bin builded, tho it be in the Lordship of Kirkbythore & not in Sowerby. {This however is referrable to Temple Sowerby by good Authority.}

[I.484]

The Pows, Inges, are so called from Pow (an ancient word yet used in Lancashire) for a beck or rivilet \ whence our vulgar word poole / & Ing which signifyes a bottom-meadow. So that importes as much as – the meadows by the water sides. There is a Romane forte \ almost trenched about / on the E. end of Milburne Fell, which is called Green Castle from the verdure of it*, opposite to which on Knock Fell Eastwards is an Hurrock of stones called Watch Currock.

[Machell's Note: I.483]

*I would see it nearer than I have don.

[I.486]

ad general in Westmorland. Howgil Castle. Lancaster. Sandford
[Notes on Manors and Descents]

[I.484]

{Man. de Milnburne; Howgil Castle.}
The manner of Milneburne.
Finde Lancasters at Howgil Anno 1^0 Rich[ardus] 2. [1377-1378] (è cart apud Crackanthorp.)

Wharton of Kirkythore
Henricus de Querton test.[264] at an evidence of Sir Thomas) 17. Edward 3. [1333-1334].
Barwise. 17. Edward 3. But after which of the family I know not.
Thomas Wharton Esq. test. 34. Henry 6. (but whether of this?) 34. Henry 6. [1455-1456].
Gilbert Wharton of Kirkbythore; Collector (with others) Henry 7. of the subsidie for King Henry the 6. or the 7. See more at Wharton in Kirkby Stephen Parish.

{Lancaster of Howgil}
Miscellanea lib.10. p.78, penes Mr Sheldon:

Robert Crackenthorpe
= Elizabeth \ 2^{nd} / d. & coheires

dissolved, their assets were awarded to the Hospitallers, though it is unclear whether the Templars' fortune ever reached them: see Helen Nicholson, *The Knights Hospitaller* (Woodbridge, 2001), 1-16, 48.
[264] 'Witness'.

D[omin]i Johannis Lancaster de Rydall militis et habuit in partem suam maneriu[m] de Mylneburne[265]	{Mylburn}
Johannes Crackanthorpe de Helgill in Com west. Edward 4. = filia	
Ambrose Crackanthorp de Helgill obijt s.p.	Anthonius Crackanthorpe obijt 11. Henry 8. [1519-1520]

Willielmus de Corbrig parsona ecclesiæ de Kirkbythore anno 48. Edward: è Carta Apud Skipton This must be Edward 3. for no other Edward reigned so long.[266]

[I.488]

{Proofes}

[Sandford]
Sir Walter de Sandford of [Blank] in Westmerland Knight anno 15. Edward 2. [1321-1322] served that year in Parliament for the County of W. {Extract[um] e MS nominum diversorum Militum et Baronettorum;[267] ad Lit. S. {Pg. 94.}
Sir Robert de Sandford of [blank] in W., Knight anno 16. Edward II [1622-1623], was likewaise Parliament man for that County.

{Isue}
The 16. [1322-23] & 19. [1325-1326] of Edward 2. & son I presume of the said Walter.
Sir William Sandford of Askham in Westmorland Knight (son of Edmund who was younger brother of William who purchased Askham & left it to his said brother Edmund, whose Isue male have ever since injoyd it) was probably related to the said Sir Robert and Sir Walter; & had Isue Robert, who had Isue:

MS. A.41		Thomas = who maryed Hutton of Hutton John in Cumberland, who had Isue
	3. Richard 2 [1379-80]	1. Thomas = who had Isue John = And he Thomas = father of the now William Sandford of Askham Esq.
2. Sir Richard Sandford of Hougil ut infra	1.Sir Thomas Sandford of Howgil Castle in West. Knight, anno [blank]. He was son & heire of Richard, who was 3 brother of Thomas S. of Askham, who maryed Hutton, & he dyed without Isue[268]	
MS. A.4. et MS. E.30.	Sir Richard Sandford of Howgil Castle Knight, anno 21. of King James the First [1623-1624], was younger brother of Sir Thomas aforesaid & High Sheriff of Cumberland in the said year = who had Isue	
MS. A.41.	Sir Thomas Sandford of Howgil, Baronet August 12 XVII (Car.1.[1641-1642] = no.346) who had Isue	

[265] 'Robert Crakenthorpe = Elizabeth 2nd daughter and coheiress of Lord John Lancaster of Rydall, Knight, and he/she? had for his/her? part the manor of Mylneburne.' [It is unclear who the subject of 'habuit' is. Is it Robert, or is it Elizabeth, and was Mylnburn her inheritance, or her dowry?]
[266] 48th year of Edward III: 1374-75.
[267] 'Taken from a manuscript of the names of various Knights and Baronets.'
[268] Here Machell placed a sketch of a skull.

MS. A.41.	Sir Richard Sandford of Howgil Baronet &
MS. A.41.	who had Isue Sir Richard now a minor, anno [blank]

[I.489]

[de Lancaster]
{MS. N.47; MS. A.368, 412, 418} Sir John de Lancaster Knight, anno 10. Henry 4! [1408-1409] was son and heire of John, who was eldest son of Sir William.
{MS. A.57, 58, 124, 140; DB.421; MS. p.36, 74} Sir William de Lancaster, Knight, anno Henry I. who probably (by [becoming] Governer of Lancaster Castle) did first assume by the Kings Licence the sirname of Lancaster & was also stiled Baron of Kendal in Westm'land: was before that called de Tailbois; being the son & heire of Gilbert, who was eldest son of Ketel (The Curwens) of Workington (being descended as som thinke from the second son) who was son & heire of Elthred, who was eldest son of John Tailbois.
{MS. A.142} Sir William Lancaster Knight anno [blank] Henry 3.[269] stiled William de Lancaster the 3[d] & Baron of Kendal, was son & heire of William above. {N.B.} Sir William de Lancaster Knight anno Henry 3. stiled William 3 and Baron of Kendal, was son & heire of Helewise, daughter & heire of Sir William next aforsaid.
{MS. H.58, 365, 401, 418} Sir Roger de Lancaster Knight anno [blank] Henry 3. was brother to Sir William next abovsaid by the halfe blood; & he had granted to him & his heires the Manner & Forrest of Rydel in Westm'land (which he held in Capite), the Manners of Barton Paterdale &c. in the same County, and the Manner of Ulverston &c. in Lancashire where he was High Sherif anno 49. of Henry 3. [1264-1265].
{MS. A.58 365 366. Db 423 – MS. E.34, MS p.77} Sir Jo[hn] de Lancaster Knight anno [blank] Edward I. He was son & heire of Sir Roger aforesaid, & Lord of Rydel &c. which were granted to his father. Summond as a Peere to Parliament from the 25. Edward I. until the 3. of Edward 2. inclusive [1296-1310], he dyed without Isue male Anno 8. Edward 3. [1314-1315], leaveing the Manner & Forrest of Rud[270] unto Anora his wife for her life; the remainder to John de Lancaster of Howgil Castle in Westm'land & his heires – the next heire male of this family.
{MS. A.58. 365 367 MS D. 79} Sir Jo[hn] de Lancaster Knight, 4. Edward 3. [1330-1331], son & heire of William who was younger brother of Sir John abovesaid, was Lord of Rydell Howgil &c.
Sir William de Lancaster Knight anno [blank] Edward 3. son & heire of Sir [blank]

[I.490]

To sift out the truth of this following relation & separate what is authentic in it from what is doubtfull or false, see Lancaster & Sandford m[anuscripts] in Kirkbythore; Sandford in Ascam. {ex informatione Johis Stabley Sept. 18. 1691.}

{Howgill} {Crakenthorp}
Anthony Crakenthorp next akin to A[m]brose Crakenthorp de Howgil had only 3 daughters: Ann, Mary & Cicily.
1. Ann had Howgil for her part and maryed = Mr Thomas Sandford (whom he sayes he knew & that he wore a bib in his old age) and had Isue Richard, after made Baronet = widow \ of [Blank] / Pen[ington] he thinks, whose daughter Pudsey maryed {It must be Richard for Thomas Sandford of Howgil to whom Richard succeed was his elder brother & both sons of Richard; & they could not have it by succession; but of the inheritance a patre vel a matre.}[271]
2. Mary had (sed queris) Newbiging for her propart;[272] and maryed an Crackanthorp. Hee sayes that Banke-Hall also belongd to them, being at that time 5 free tenements of the Manner of Skirwith & that

[269] Henry III reigned from 1216 to 1272.
[270] Rydal.
[271] Father or mother.
[272] 'Pro partibus Liberandis' is an ancient writ for the partition of lands between co-heirs, Giles Jacob, *A New Law Dictionary* (London, 5th edn, 1744), PR.

the 3 sisters set at stoolle ball on Kirkland green[273] & being won by Mary, so it came to the Crakenthorpes of Newbiging.
3. Cicily had Skirwa\i/th Lown –? I thinke, & Parson-Close for her propart:
{It came to the Fleminges by purchase – being bought of Hut[ton] of Hutton hall by the \ great / grandmother of The Sir Daniel = & Monkhall in Cumberland, whose father was

William F. = Alice Kirkland.
|
Daniel Fleming = Isabel Brathwait.
|
Sir Daniel = Fletcher.}

[4.] And Mary = \ Mr / Thomas Midleton of Barnard Castle \ Midleton Hall opposite to Brig Streat. / St Nicholas Apleby Bolton & Skirwith Tithes. Meale Arkes at Carlile.[274] Mr Tholded[275] \ of Stanford / married his daughter; \ he had 500li per Annum in Westm'land & Cumberland. /

{Stavley of Rippon-Parke}
Hee had 4 or 5 sons & 2 or 3 daughters, Sc. one married to = Bellingham of Levins; another, Henry Staveley of Grange = 1. John of Grange. Ann daughter of Thomas.
{Query of Mr Carlton[276] for Lord Stavely of Denton Castle in Yorkshire.}

{Skirwith}
John at Skirwith {unde forsan these Staveley.}

[I.492]

{Hutton in the Forrest}
Purchased by Sir Richard Fletcher, grandfather to this Sir George, 1611.[277]

{Carleton}
{Ashby Parish, Bellingham, Gathorne}

[I.494]

{ad Lancaster: MS. F. 92; A. 145, 367} Sir William Knight 5^0 Richard 2. [1381-1382] was son & heire Sir William next aforesaid.
{MS. N.17; MS. A.168 412 418} Sir John de Lancaster Knight anno 10. Henry 4. [1408-1409] son & heire of John, who was eldest son of Sir William next abovesaid. He dyed before the 21. of Henry 6. [1442-1443], for then his Estate was divided amongst his 4 daughters & coheires.
Sir Thomas le Fleming of Cunningston Hall in Com. Lanc. Knight, haveing maryed Isabel, 1^t of the [blank], the Manner & Forrests of Rydal fel to him, where he & his heires males ever lived except sometimes at Cunningston Hall the more ancient seat of that family.

[I.528]

[Bounders]

[Bounder One]
Noe-thus, he sayes:
This Parish lyeth on the East side of the Great River Eden, which divides all along on the West from ~~som part of~~ \ a place calld Winderwarth[278] in / the Parish of Cliburn \ ~~& from~~ from / the forrest of Whinfel & \ from / Bolton Field in the Parish of Morland; beginning at the foote of Blenkarne-Beck below Eden Bridge, & thence ascending to Old-Troutbeck Foote (near Machells Well) where it hath

[273] A ball-game similar to cricket, in which the batsman stands in front of a stool which the bowler tries to hit. A popular game in the north of England, in the past it was often played by girls. See Joseph Strutt, *The Sports and Pastimes of the People of England* (London, 1876), 165-66.
[274] A meal ark is a large wooden bin or hutch for storing meal. *OED*.
[275] The transcription of this name is insecure.
[276] Carleton: steward to Lord Thanet, see below, V.449.
[277] 'This Sir George', was Sir George Fletcher (1633-1700) of Hutton-in-the-Forest, MP for Cumberland from 1661 to 1700; Sheriff of Cumberland in 1657/8 and 1679/80: see https://www.historyofparliamentonline.org/volume/1660-1690/member/fletcher-sir-george-1633-1700.
[278] Winderwath.

formerly run into Eden. Thence on the S. \ it is bounded / with the Lordship of Crakanthorp in the Parish of St Michaels Apelby (commonly called Bongate Parish) \ and divided from it / by stones pitched up in the old beck steed till you com at Troutbeck, & so by that river up to[279]

[I.529]

{Kirkbythore bridge, where the Romane Way ~~striketh~~ \ intersecteth / ~~thorow~~ the river, near the fountain Hypocreen \ & / where the Three Lordships of Kirkbythore, ~~Bongate~~ \ Crakanthorp / & Brampton meet.[280] Hence again on the S. SE. & East it is environed with Long Marton Parish & divided from it by the said River Troutbeck, ascending Eastward betwixt the Low Burwens (or skirts of Whelp Castle & Machells Ing) to Howgil Sike Foote \ where the Lordships of Kirkbythore Brampton & Marton meet all together. / Thence by Howgil Sike ascending N. to Annet Well Head where it first springs*. Thence by a Bow-line towards the N. to Nichorson †, takeing in the Hill where it hath stoode.

Thence by certaine & well known boundaryes divideing it from the Lordships of Merton & som part of Knock till you com at a place called Swinside-Head. Thence by Grange Beck to Nuckerdale Head near a place called Green Castle, otherwise called Burney-beck, ascending N.E. where it \ first / takes its rise. Thence by a Settle (or Hollow \ place /) which takes in High Dun-Fell to Dale-Sike-Head ~~which is~~ (called by som, Fell Troutbeck Head) \ which is / not distant above \ the space of an / 100 yards from Burney Beck Head. Thence by this Fell Troutbeck (so called for distinctions sake from the other Troutbeck which wee spoke of before),[281] descend N.E. to Moss-burne Foote \ a little Rill which comes ~~there~~ into Trout[beck] / where the Lordships of Milburn, Knock & Dufton meet alltogether. & ~~Hence thus far~~ \ all this while / it is compassed with \ Long / Marton Parish. Thence it is bounded on the E. \ side thereof / with the Great Lordship & Parish of Dufton, ~~&~~ \ being / divided from it by \ the foresaid / Fell Troutbeck ~~aforesaid~~ till it runns into Teas. Thence agane on the East & N.E. with a place called Tinehead som of which (if I be not mistaken) lyes in Northumberland & som in Cumberland & in the Parish of Alston: being divided from \ them / by the River Teas ascending &c. to a place calld Fal-Cragg – where the Parish of Kirkby Stephan & Kirkland meet \ all / together; & hence it is bounded on the north side thereof with the Parish of Kirkland {in the County of Cumberland?} & divided from it by Teas aforesaid,[282] ascending W. to Crossfell Nooke where ~~this great river~~ \ it first / springs ~~which carryes ships at Newcastle & Tinmouth but here maybe stopd with an Hat Crown~~. Thence by a settle called Blenkarn Dale twixt the Lower Dunfell & the High mountain Crossfel (~~commonly called Blenkarne Dale because it is the Bound of that Lordship~~) to the spring head of ~~Dunbeck~~ ~~commonly called~~ \ Dunbeck on / Blenkarne Beck. Thence by the said Beck \ descending Westward as it runns / all along by the coastes of Cumberland) till it ~~runns into~~ \ enters / Eden \ near to the Bridge / where wee first began.

[Machell's Notes: I.529]

*Quaere: of Stanke Head, if not the same.

[I.531]

[Bounder Two]

This Parish lieth on the East side of the great River Eden which divides it all along on the West from a place called Winderwarth in the Parish of Cliburn, from the forest of Whinfell & from Bolton Field in the Parish of Morland; beginning at the foote of Blenkarne Beck below Eden-bridge & thence ascending to Old Troutbeck Foot (near Machells Well) where it hath formerly run into Eden. Thence (on the South) it is bounded with the Lordship of Crakanthorp in the Parish of St Michaels Appleby commonly called Bongate Parish, & divided from it by stones* pitched up in the old Beckstead, till

[279] The rest of MS.I.528 contains two scored-through drafts (not transcribed) relating to the bounder; these are presented as a 'fair copy' on I.529.

[280] MS: '& Brampton meet ~~in Kirkbythore, Bongate & Longmarton Parishes, with the last of which It is Invironed on the S. & south-east~~.'

[281] MS: '(~~which is~~ so called ~~for distinction that it may be~~ for distinctions sake ~~ed~~ from the other \ Troutbeck / which wee spoke of before).'

[282] MS: '& hence ~~in the 2 parish~~ ~~Lordship~~ {it is bounded} on the north ~~It is bounded by~~ \ side thereof / with the Parish of Kirkland {in the County of Cumberland?} & divided from it by ~~The~~ Teas aforesaid,'

you come at Troutbeck; & soe by that river up to Kirkbythore Bridge where the Roman Way in\ter/secteth the river near the fountaine Hypocreen, & where the three Lordships of Kirkbythore, Crakanthorp & Brampton meet. Thence again ~~by~~ \ on / the South, South-east, & East it is environd with Longmarton Parish & divided from it by the fair river Troutbeck ascending eastwards (betwixt the Low Burwens – or skirts of Whelp Castle – & Machells Ing) to Howgill Sike foot where the Lordships of Kirkbythore, Brampton & Longmarton meet alltogether. Thence by Howgill Sike, ascending \ north / to Annetwell Head where it first springs; thence by a Bowline towards the North to Nichorson Cross, takeing in the hill where it hath stood; thence by certain & well known boundaryes which

[Machell's Notes: I.531]

*But note here: that there is a place beyond the said Boundare which payeth Tythe to Kirkbythore by ancient prescription time out of minde.

[I.532]

divides it from the Lordship[s] of Marton & Knock till you come att a place called Swinside-Head. Thence by Grange Beck – otherwise called Burney Beck – ascending North-east to Nuckerdale Head, neare a place called Green Castle where it first takes its rise. Thence by a settle (or hollow place) which takes in High Dun-fell to Dalesike Head (called by some Fell Troutbeck Head) which is not distant above the space of 100 yards from Burney Beck Head. Thence by this Fell Troutbeck (soe called for distinctions sake from the other Troutbeck which we spoke of before) descending North-east to Mossburne Foote (a little Rill which comes into Troutbeck) where the Lordships of Milburne, Knock & Dufton meet altogether; all this while it is encompass'd with Longmarton Parish. Thence it is bounded on the East side thereof with the great Lordship & Parish of Dufton, being divided from it by the foresaid Felltroutbeck till it runs into Teas. Thence again on the East & North-east with a place called Tine-Head, some \ part / of which* lies in Northumberland & some in Cumberland in the Parish of Alstan, being divided from them by the river Teas; ascending North to a place called Fall-Cragg where the Parishes of Kirkbythore, Alstan, & Kirkland meet altogether. \ & / hence it is bounded on the North side thereof with the Parish of Kirkland in the County of Cumberland & divided from it by Teas aforesaid, ascending West to Crossefell Nooke where it first springs. Thence by a settle called Blenkarn Dale twixt the Lower Dunfell & the high mountain Crossefell to the spring head of ~~Dun Beck~~ Blenkarne Beck. Thence by the said Beck (descending westwards as it runs all along by the coasts of Cumberland) till it enters Eden neare to the Bridge ~~where we first began~~; where I take in (designedly) the Parish of Newbiggin; being of old (as I am informed) a Canton of this, & passed of[f] for a certain Quit Rent of ten groats per annum with Altar Service 2 dayes in the yeare att Kirkbythore Church. But on the other hand, the Rectors of Newbiggin claimed as theire due (when they came to assist at the altar there) to have a dinner for themselves & their doggs! A tradition of such undoubted credit that Mr Barrow late incumbent of Newbiggin, sent word to the Rector of Kirkbythore that now is,[283] upon his first entrance; that he ought[284] him that Homage,[285] & would come & pay it; but death prevented him while the other was absent in his yeare of Grace att Queens College in Oxford.[286]

And here I thinke fit to enter this Caution, that the Parish of Newbiging by its ancient bounds cannot extend soe fare on the Moore ~~of Kirkbythore~~ as the Right & Priveledges of that Lordship now doth; because they gained a considerable accession from off Kirkbythore Moore by grant from the Cliffords after that Lordship became a distinct & absolute Rectory; soe that its limits upon the said Moore are or should be according to the ancient bounds of that Lordship.

[Machell's Notes: I.532]

*(if I be not mistaken) {Quaere of this?}

---

[283] The first mention of a church at Newbiggin appears in a charter of Hugh de Temple Sowerby (1258-59) witnessed by Walter, rector of Newbiggin: Curwen, *Later Records*, 183-85; see also I.553, above.

[284] Owed.

[285] MS: 'that he ought him that ~~he ought him that~~ Homage.'

[286] The text here refers to Thomas Machell. A simpler version of this narrative appears on MS.I.505. See also I.553, above.

[Highways and Bridges]

[I.548]

{Generall Highways}
Michael Scot is said with the help of the Divel to have pavd twixt Lond[on] & Carlile, but a fiction.}

[I.464]

{Kirkbythore Bridge}
There was anciently a bridge at Kirkythore built of wood, pons public,[287] continued (as Sir Francis Drakes ship did, with many reparations) since the Romaines were here;[288] for it is the passage of the Roman Way. In 1676 this bridge wall [was] built with freestone very fair & handsom. But fell in winter 1677 by violence of the water. I had an account concerneing its fall February 7th 1677/8.[289] Shortly after, it was rebuilded as it now standeth.

[I.474]

The building of Sowerby Bridge 1575.[290]

[I.471-473]

{Westm'land} Elizabeth regni, 1575.[291]
The fre grante and benevolence granted towards the buyldyng of Temple Sowrebye brege, by the gentilmen and freeholders whos names here after particularlye ensuyth.

{Easte Warde}	{Mydell Warde}	{Weste Warde}	{Lonisdayll Warde}	{Kendayll Warde}
Syr Symonde Musgrave knyghte	Rychard Lowther Ar. xl. s[292]	Syr Henry Curwen Knight	John Meddelton Ar.	Thomas Bonytyn Ar
Thomas Warcope Ar[miger]	Lancelot Pyckryng Ar.	George Salkeld Ar.	Rychard Myddelton gen.	[?]m Bellyngham Ar
Henry Crakanthorpe Ar[miger] xl. s	Rycharde Cleburne Ar.	Edward Lanchester Ar.	Thomas Warde gen.	James Layburn, Ar
Humfray Musgrave, Ar.[293] xl. s	Thomas Fallafeld Ar.	Rycharde Dudlay Ar. xxvi. s viij d[294]	George Mansare gen.	Rychard Duckat Ar
John Wharton, Ar.	Thomas Wybare Ar.	Maystras Sandfurthe	Wyllm [Blank]	Wylliam Gylpynge gen. for his house at Sokbrege

[287] A public bridge.
[288] MS: '~~which I believe to have~~ continued (as \ Sir Francis / Drakes ship ~~did~~ with many repa reparations) since the Romaines were \ here /.' The sea-captain and destroyer of the Spanish Armada, Sir Francis Drake, was involved in many raids and voyages of exploration. He circumnavigated the world between 1577 and 1580, and went on expeditions, for example to the West Indies between 1585 and 1586. This activity led to ship repair and even scuttling amid heavy fighting. Mary Frear Keeler, *Sir Francis Drake's West-Indian Voyage 1585-86* (Farnham, 1981), 31, 36, 38, 62, 72, 105, 160, 283-85.
[289] This would have occurred soon after Machell had become Rector of Kirkby Thore.
[290] The following subscription list for the building of Temple Sowerby Bridge is not in Machell's hand.
[291] 1575 = the 18th year of Queen Elizabeth's reign. Much of this title has perished. The whole document (now paginated I.471-I.473) has been greatly repaired; some words and figures are missing.
[292] 's' throughout this table = shillings.
[293] Hidden by repair to the volume; the amounts (if any) given beside the next six names are unclear.
[294] 26s 8d.

Richard Sandferth, gen.	Thomas Byrkebecke, g.	George Hudson, gen.	Xtofer Mayr g.	James Harryngton gen.
[Ed]munde Dudlay, gen.	[Edmu]nd Slyngesbre, gent.	Maystras Th[?]	Edwarde Baynbrege, gent	Roberte Bendlayte Ar
Hughe Machell, gen.	[Nichol]as Brovann[295]	Wylliam Hutton of [B]oullay, gent.		Rowland Philepson gen.
John Southait, gen.	Thomas Byllynghame gen.			Wyllm Philepson gen.
Cuthberte Barton gen.	Ambros Lanchester gen.			Walter Chamber gen.
Androo Helton gen. x. s	Anthoni Warton gen.			Rychard Bryskell gen.
Thomas Helton, gent. vi. s viij d[296]	Fra[n]ce[s] Warcope g.			Randall Wasshyngton, ge.
Lancelote Boste, g.	John Crakanthorpe gen.	.		Rychard Tunstall gen.
Mylys Skayf, gen. vi. s viij d	John Rygge gen.			Wyllm Bayteman gen.
Anthoni Knype, gen.	Henry Backhouse gen. Iiij. s			Lancelot Dockray gen.
Edwarde Warcope, gen iij d[297]	George Backhouse gen.			[Jo]hn Collyngson gen.
James Warcope, g.	Thomas Birde yoman			Thomas Sleddell gen.
Hugh Warcope, gent.	Rychard Nevyson yoman			James Strykland gen.
Bartholymew Helton, g.	John Blamyer yo			Gylbert Wylson gen.
Barnabe Machell, g. 1d	Wylliam Robyson yo			Steven Feld, gent.
Edwarde Boste, g. iv. s	Alexander Gowlyng, yoman			Steven Bamonteson, ~~gen~~ \ yom. /
John Hartlay, g.	Henry Lowys			Wyll Foxe yoman
Mylis Baynbrege g.				Cristofor Haskregge yo.

[295] Brougham.
[296] 6s 8d.
[297] The amount of shillings is obscured by a piece of paper pasted to the page.

John Baynbrege, senior, g.	v. s	Oswalde Bethom yoman
John Baynbreg Junior, g	v. s	
Ranalde Hartlay g.		
Robert Skafe, yoman	v. s	
John Smyth		
Henry Shawe yoman		
Jenken Bell yoman		
Wylliam Halle yoman		
John Dobson yo	Iij. s iiij d	

[III.261]

The Roman Way from Kirkbythore Bridge to Brough Town End

It goeth from Kirkbythore bridge in a streight line S.E.

	Miles & ½	Quarters & ½
1. To a Dikestead in Machels Banke, where the Roman urnes & ashes were found	0	1 q.
To the know or pitch of the hill	0	1 q.
To Maiden Hold, which stands directly like Appelby Tower E. W. N. & S.		
To the Roman camp which flankes the way at about 20 yards distant from it: the fower corner if I may so call them (being rebated), standing directly East, W. N. & S. And opposite to the West corner of it stands Boldton Chapel at ½ a mile distance; & Marton church som what more from the East corner. Near this place I measur'd the way to be 7 yards broad.	0	1 q.
The camp is about 11 score in length.	0	½ q.
Thence to the riseing of Owsley .	0	½ q.
Thence up the hill to over against Beacon on Owsley where you have a fair view of Crakenthorp Hall to the front; and at a distance if you looke about you may see Buly Castle, Howgil Castle & many other places.	0	½ q.
Thence to Annest Johny Close Neuke	0	½ q.
Thence down the hill to the turnpike	0	1 q.
Thence to the top of the Banke End (which is over against Crakenthorp Hall at ½ a mile distance) (Opposite to which on the other hand is the West end of Brampton, above ½ a mile distant.)	0	1 q.
Thence to White Burwens, an irregular fort on the North E. side of the way about 20 yards distant from it, where ye see Appelby, Buly, Hougil Castles, Crakenthorp Hall & many other places, being a stately prospect.	0	1 q.

[III.259]

Thence to the gallows.	½	0

Thence down to Annetwell St (Philip Machell)		
in Battleburgh Head at a ¼ distance.	0	½ q.
Thence down to the way which leads to Slape Stones.	0	½ q.
Thence to the way which leads down to Bongate		
& Howgate Foote.	0	½ q.
Thence to the yeat of Bong[ate] moore (opposite to which is		
Appelby Castle at ½ a mile.	0	½ q.
Thence to the Tarne Head hill, where there are 3 little		
hillocks, 2 on the N. East side, and 1 on the S.W.		
like burying places.	0	1 q.
Opposite to these on the N.E. side is Marton		
about 2 miles distance, which you hardly can see;		
and Langton in the same condition, ½ a mile of.		
Hence to Couplan Beck bridge	½	0
where Aske com from the East into it. But \ C B /[298]		
it com there from the North. Beyond the said beck		
& sike, 40 yards from the high way has \ bin / a round tower.		
Thence up to Sandford Thorne where you see on the S. West side,	0	1 q.
Ormside church and Little Orme som what South from there		
at a mile distance. And on the other side 2 miles distant under the fell		
stands the town of Hilton.		
Thence \ down /to the broken caseway over against	0	1 q.
New Hall (at a quarter distance)		
Thence to the ring of stones 20 yards on the N.E. side	½	~~0~~
of this Roman Way, opposite to which on the same side		
\ but invisible / is Overton, 1 mile ½, and Sandford		
on the other side: mile ½.		
Thence in score yards off, is a burg of earth, & 2 more 40		
yards beyond that		

[III.260]

where \ 2 of / adjoyne the way on N.W. side.		
{?}& so down to Sandy Sike	0	1
{1} Thence up the next hill till you com at the descent there of [blank]	0	1 q.
{?} Thence down to the little sik[e] where the way seemeth to have runn	0	½
streight along through the meadow, where it is lost till you come upon		
Warcop Moore & follow the road which turns out a little through a lane		
{over against Wharton Hall: qts[299] 1.q.} on the N.E. side till you come		
at Milbeck. .	0	1
Thence the way incline a little till you com at a sike.[300]	0	1
Thence up to the yeat;	0	½
Here you may see the towne & tower.		
Thence to the next yeat	0	1 q.
but it goes through the dike 20 yards on the N. East side.		
Thence to the next yeat, another	0	1 q.
but it runs through the pasture neates[301] 49 yards N.E. from the yeat.	0	1
Thence to the water which crosses the way, opposite to which lyes	0	1 q.
Flitholm on the S.W. (at ½ mile distance). And		
Thence to Bulleston Sike (opposite to which stands Helbeck Hall	0	½ q.
at 1 mile \ or / ½ N. East from here.		

[298] Coupland Beck.
[299] A shortened form of 'quarters'.
[300] MS: 'Thence, ~~a little incline~~ \ the way incline a little / till you comat ~~the pasture yeat~~ a sike.' For 'sike' see the English Glossary.
[301] Cattle pasture. *OED*.

From Bulleston Sike to the Castle-way about 6 score yards, & thence to to the N. of Market Brough. In all: 0 1
N. the way turns a little S. from Warcop Milbeck to the pasture yeat. Thence agane S.E. till you come at Helbeck Water where it makes an obtuse angle, turning more southerly than before.
[…][302] is about 1 q. long. II 11½

[I.464]

[**Antiquities**]

Kirkbythore 1686. December 16 about 40 years since, an \ earthen / potfull of Romane Coines found behinde Micell Bensons house (& several behinde Howsons & Blecket Burwen); in the Gards – walls & flags; behinde Thomas Soulbyes – flags got in the midle of his croft stones in the Loning on the left hand by Stanebrig;[303] stones in the midle of Jacksons Croft & Loaneing. It had gon along the midle the Croft by the Square of Burwens.[304]

{Reformatio errorum laudabilis}[305]
Præsertim cum talis exemptio potius fuerit velamen malitiae quam libertas, & audaciam frequentius præstitet delinque[n]di. Exordium post salutationem sic incipit. Sicut ea quae rationabiliter provisa fuerint & statuta Robur obtinere debent perpetuæ firmitatis, sic si q[uae] sint contra rationis tramitem attemptata, digna correctione conve[n]iu[n]t emendari.[306]

[I.485]

[Spittlemore]
There is a so[r]t of a Round Intrenchment upon the moore called Spittlemore; somewhat inclind to a Triangle Curvilinear, & much of the Forme with that which is ~~upon~~ betwixt Brampton & Crakanthorp; but that it has not a [blank]. It is about 86 yards in Diameter and hath been enterance in at the East point & another at the West, with flankes (ergo out works) \ one / to the S. round to W. extending thro North, which branch to the N.E. \ which points to the rise. / The figure is thus:

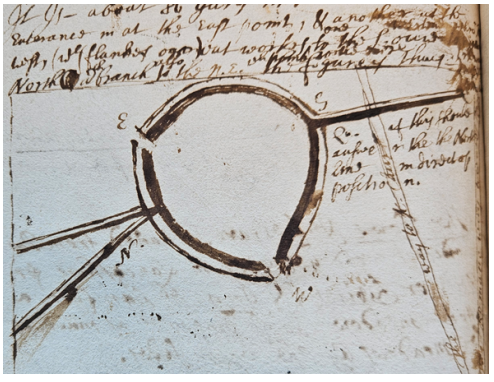


Figure 1.14.8. 'Earthworks; The road to K. church; The Romane Way towards Apleby'. I.485.

[302] An abbreviated word here appears to be 'Pno'.
[303] Loning/lonning: a lane. William Rollinson, *Cumbrian Dictionary of Dialect, Tradition and Folklore* (Otley, 1997).
[304] A margin comment here offers, '{Tr. a row of shops twix Stanebrigs & the water – from father to son.}'
[305] 'The amendment of errors is praiseworthy.'
[306] 'Especially when such exemption has been more of a pretext for bad character than a freedom, and too often has lent boldness to wrongdoing. Thus, after the greeting, does the preface begin. Just as those things which have been reasonably foreseen & ought, being established, to possess the strength of enduring stability, so if any have been attempted contrary to the path of reason, they are fit to be set right by well deserved correction.'

[Machell's Note: I.485]
*Query if this should answer the north line in direct opposition.

[I.509]

[High Burwens Roman Fort]
{§1.} The like of which is not to be met with in the county of Westm'land: & has bin rendered yet more delightfull by the 2 famouse Forests of Whinfell & Milburne. This on the \ N. / East and just at hand; that on the West at about a mile distance: both stored with wood & well replenished with reade \ dere / fallow-~~deere~~, as the former continues to be at this day. The square calld High Burwens whose 4 angles point directly E. W. N. and South,[307] as I have observed other Roman fortifications to have don, seemes to have bin the area of it, conteineing 8 score yardes in diameter now plowd & cultivated; & the outer buildings to have run down by the river at the least as far as the bridge & fulling mill by Troutbeck, thence to the Roman Way so call'd The Street bout 8 score yards[308] – & so up agane in a streight line to the square of the area: {See §6.}[309]

{§3.} For in all these places the vestigia of it have bin discovered by walls & pavements & coines; a vault with altars, brick, urnes & other fictilia.[310] The 4 angles of this High Burwens do point exactly (as I have observ'd in other Romane fortifications) to the 4 cardinal points of Heaven \ Sc. E. W. N. & S. & the 2 doers have bin as I take – exactly opposite one to another. / And at the East angle was lately found the figure of woman, downe to the ~~paps~~ \ waist / more Romane, carved in stone; and likewise an Altar about 30 yards from it \ in the Low Burwens / but both defaced; the ruines whereof are preserved & kept at Crakanthorp Hall.[311]
{At the South Angle (where Coppin Hill & Burwen Street) was lately discovered a vault with stairs into – & a doer at each end, having &c. \ a shelfe or seates on either [side] beset all with urnes. / At the West were beside several floores – flags – there was a pot full of Roman Coynes found [see] § 5.}[312]

\ §4. /And here both brick & stone. The brick ones they say (which is no vulgar observation) being a yard thick & so solderd with lime that it is impossible to ~~get them out whole~~ \ to sever them from it / without breaking in pieces: And the stones (of which the other are made) so prodigiously great & som of them huen with such monstrouse stroakes that it gives us occasion to admire \ their strength / rather than imitate their \ manner of / building. I have seen som taken out of a sinke \ ~~or channel for water~~ / which have served in length for the jawms of a dooer, & som of about a foote in thickness which seemed struck thorow with an hueing ax at one single blow. Tho in others it looks more like ~~continued~~ excavation about 40 yeares since &c. See §5.[313]

---

[307] MS: 'High Burwens, \ whose 4 angles ~~doe point direct whereof~~ / to point directly E. W. N. and South.'
[308] MS: '& the outer buildings to \ have gon / ran down \ ~~along~~ by the river at the least as far as the bridge & fulling mill / by Troutbeck ~~as far as the Romane Way,~~ \ thence to the Roman Way ~~towards Carelile~~ is so call'd The Street ~~up which Street is gon~~{!!!} about 8 score yards.'
[309] In the MS., the whole of §1. is underlined.
[310] MS: 'the figure of a woman coines \ a vault with / ~~bricks, urnes~~ \ & / altars, brick, urnes & other fictilia \ * / the figure of a woman * / \ ~~If they have not bin rather streets leading to~~'. Most of the next sentence is obscured by the binding but refers to 'lime' set 'almost as hard as a qu[ern] stone.'
[311] Similar text has been added to the margin of I.498. MS: 'Down to the paps ~~from the pe~~ more Roman lately found, the figure of a woman. ~~Hic steterit Catuli~~ All which do loudly proclame it Romane. ~~Hic steterit Catuli regia celsa senis~~. And The 2 Roman wayes which meet ~~here~~ \ at this J[unction] / ~~together~~, the one calld the Street which I have travelled the other calld […] Carlile Way, the latter of which terminateing ending [… The later called […] by them. The Maiden way calld Gallani & \ […] / do seem to confirme it & bespeak it a place in the Time of Rom[ans] of more than ordinary estimacon & traffique – as Camden affirmes it to have bin; the chefe \ or principle / towne of Brigantes before [several words struck through] the Invasion. These things considered it is not improbable.'
[312] Here, two sets of margin notes are written too close to the binding to be fully legible.
[313] An identical passage to §5 (MS I.537B.) has been deleted from this edition. Similar information is given at the foot of MS I.506 (placed here in this footnote for comparison): 'So prodigiously great, & som of them huen with such monstrouse strokes (as may be seen by the parts of their \ by the pointes & striation / that it gives us occasion \ at once / both to admire both their strength & art, their strength of nature. \ to admire their quality

[I.499]

& the repeated stroakes are designd for ornament representing ~~waves~~ rock worke, or rather waves, which I shall leave to the judgment of others.{!!!}They are to be seen in the Church, Hall & P[arish], which almost make in every house of the towne the\r/ coynes & jawms[314] out of W[help] Castle; being for the most common of them being generally builded of them,[315] since they have taken the method of building with \ coble / stone insteed of forest worke – which was the common way of olde, such as yet to be seen at Wharton Hall; and a piece of it is yet to be seen at in K[irkby Thore] Hall.[316]

{§5.} A potfull of Romane coyns were found here about 40 years since; which they foolishly gave their children to play with \ and so were all lost. / And since that, a vault was discovered in Burwen Street at Coppin Hill just afore the place where I suppose they entered the Castle \ in figure above[317] / which had water in it; a stare down into it, with a doer at each end, an a shelfe or seat on either side made of huen stone on which were placed two rows of urnes.

{§6} For in all these places the vestigia of it have bin discover'd
– by vaults under ground, both of brick and stone {see §4.} & so semented with lime being a yard thick (which is no vulgare Remarque).
– by conduits for water.
– tiles of slate which had bin fastend with Iron nails in them.
– fair pavements of floores.
– by a vault with a dooer in either end & stairs down into it; having \ a / shelfe \ or / an bench \ of stone on \ each / side sett about with urnes.
– and the vaults & altars – with Roman coynes, bricks \ which here have bin found dyged up. /

{§7.} Innumerable fragments of bricks & urnes & other fictilia, now dispersed about, which the plow casteth up every year – still to be seen – which almost cover the face of the Earth, do loudly proclame it a Romane building.[318]

[I.527B][319]

As also, by \ Coynes* / Altars & Urnes, with other fictilia daly found here aboutes (many whereof are preservd by the Rector) & in particular a silver one of Julia \ Ingenius / ~~Augusta~~ \ Augustus his daughter, / who lived before the Birth of Our Saviour.) All which do loudly ~~proclame~~ proclame it Romane ~~and bespeak this Towne~~ and the 2 Romane Wayes doe confirme the same; & bespeak this Town to have bin a place of more than ordinary esteem & traffique in the times of the Romanes, as Camden affirmes it to have bin before them (by the name of Gallagum) in the time of the Brittaines;[320] for it was the Chief Place of the Brigantes (i.e. to say, of all those territories which now are divided

---

both […] / I have seen som stones which only served on the sides of a sinke to convey the [blank] from the castle – 6 foot long \ as have served single for as monuments; / and other \ of a older / digg up but 2 yeares; each of which made [blank] cartfull when broken in pieces. I have seen som \ taken out of ditches from the castle / with all one length – served for jawnes of an ancient doer; & som \ of about a foot in thickness / which seem to be struck through a stone of about a foote & one single stroake with an huers ax{!} tho in others they appeard as ornaments {representing waved worke once in the Hall Chimney}.'

[314] Door jambs.

[315] MS from this point: '…~~since from forest worke, they have changed to stone buildings to build with stone ever since they ch[anged] their method of building, since for want of timber they have changd theyr method of former building Insteed of forest worke such as is yet to be seen at the~~…'

[316] MS: 'a […] which was the common way of olde, such as yet to be seen at Wharton Hall […] and a piece of it is yet to be seen at in K. Hall.'

[317] There is no illustration on this page.

[318] Sections 5, 6 and 7 have been amended; repeated passages have been deleted. See MS.I.499.

[319] '~~Are not only by these, but~~ as also by Coynes, Altars, & urnes (with other fictilia) ~~all which do~~ loudly proclame it Romane. And the 2 Roman wayes which meet at this ~~town~~ \ Place / \ Town / ~~seem to Confirme It, & bespeak It a Town. The Maden Way way & the Kings Street on High Street, the former of which doth Terminate here may {so was borne} seeme to confirme~~' This passage also appears on I.535.

[320] 'If I might without prejudice to the Judges of antiquitie, I would say it were Gallagum mentioned by Ptolemee, which Antonine nameth Gallatum…', see Camden, *Britannia* tr. Holland (1637), 761D.

into 5 shires \ Countyes / calld by the names, of Westm'land, Cumberland, Yorkshire, Lancashire & the Bishoprick of Durham). These greatest people in this British Iland.

[Machell's Notes: I.527C][321]

*Som of which are hereabout daly found, & som of them now preservd by the present Rector – who has one of Antoninus Pius.[322] And another of Julia, daughter of Augustus – who reigned when Our Saviour Christ was or before Christ was borne – besides many others. Put this in the margin.

[I.528]

I was informed Feb. 3. 1686 by John Langhorn, Joyner & carpenter, that [he] has seen walls of brick in Bleckatt Burwens up by the water side about 16 inch broad, after this form at f[igure] v. [below] so soldered with lime that they [blank] And that he was 26 years of age when he observed them.
{Also of a Pretiouse stone sold per block to Mr Dalston?}[323]
I have drawne another forme pectinatus,[324] which will make a wa[ll] of the same sort of bricks in a narrow compas.And both seem to me to be as excellent as they are strange, having never read nor heard of the like. The Cunei[325] in round Towers but not square.

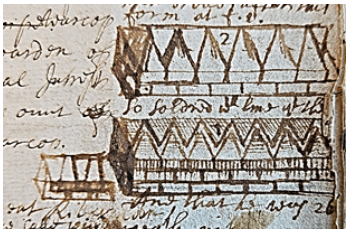


Figure 1.14.9. 'Forme pectinatus'. I.528.

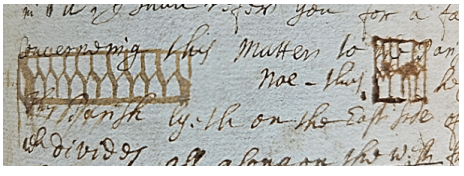


Figure 1.14.10. 'a & b; 'f.v.': examples of Machell's sketches. I.528.

[I.527A]

Which things being considered, it may not be improbable that the Proprietour of this ancient Castle with the lands round about, whom the Saxons calld Whelp, might be a Branch of the old Romane Catuli left here in trust with som British bands when they made their \ last / recess into \ Italy / their own Country; It being but about 600 years (and many Familys have continued so long) betwixt their departure & the Norman Conquest: Dureing which time the Saxons, who came in to aide the Brittans (& such of the Romaines as wee may suppose were left behind \ either / by reason of ~~their~~ marrage or otherwise) against the incursions \ violence / of the Picts & Scots, made themselves masters of all these nations; Altering the names both of men & places to their owne Country fashon; as appears to this day. Thus might Catulus by an easy & natural transmutation be chang'd into Whelp, & Castram

[321] This page was originally the right-hand side of I.527B but has been numbered separately by a modern archivist. How the two parts became estranged is not known.
[322] MS: 'Dayly fou / som of which \ are / here about daly found, & som of them now preservd by the present Rector – who has one of Antoninus Pius, & ~~another of Julia Augustus \ d. of Augustus / his daughter, who reigned before the Birth of Our Saviour, besides many others~~.'
[323] There is a sketch of a stone in the MS here, ¾ cm at its widest point.
[324] 'Pectinated': having narrow projections or divisions set closely in a row like the teeth of a comb. *OED*.
[325] 'Wedges': see Machell's drawing, *Fig. 1.14.9.*

Catulinum into Whelp Castle; as the old Aballaba was \ by them / chang'd into Apelby, & \ as / Brovonacum \ was turnd / into Browham. And, perhaps, this \ whole / Bottom of Westm'land might (before the Conquest) be called Whelpdale from this ancient \ seat / which seemes to have bin the commanding place of it. And the sirname of Whelpdale be assumed hence from their Ancestours liveing (about the Conquest) at som remaquable place in this valley: Quis autem &c.[326]

[Kirkbythore: In Nature and in Art]

[I.501]

The soyl is mixed: in some place \ red /clay, in som red sand, in some gravel, & som places a black mould. It affordes quarreyes of huen stone & limestone \ in the Lordship of M[ilburn], / though at a great distance from it. / Tis most part arable and ~~pretty~~ \ very / fertill, \ especially for […] about Kirkbythore, / but little woodland excepting \ the Lordship of Milburn & The Lordship of Sowerby at Acorn Banke, the Howgil ~~Lordship~~. The fuel it affords is turves & peat \ for the most part; as likewise peat at the fell sides, but \ their / coals fetch'd from \ Hartside at / markets {or Apleby} ~~& wood from Whinfell~~.
{Juniper!!!}[327]

{A[328] general custome of the ~~Parish~~ County.}
Att midsummer: rush bearing and garland[s], hollyes in bonefires, & midsummer eve a bonefire.

[I.548]

[Note on the name Burwens]
Note that \ all which circumference & several parcels conteined therein [are] calld by the / general, North of Burwens, and take \ their / particular denominality from their several owners. All the places described at sect[ion] [blank] are calld Burwens & take several & particular names from the several persons who now doe injoy them – as […][329] Burwens, Stabligs Bur[wens] […][330]and so opposite Bensens Berwens & Soulbyes Burwens &c.

[I.506]

[High Burwens]
In nature there is a place calld the High Burwens, a square inclosure of, thought to be the area of Whelp Castle, which is by nature a \ most / sweet situation, being betwixt the rivers of Troutbek & Eden, \ on the bankes of, not far from / \ neare upon a long hill / & betwixt 2 forrests of Whinfell & Milburne.[331] Composed about with Champion Groundes on every side, glades aford a delicate prospect in the very heart as it were of the Country, which was the site of Whelop Castle as Camden calls it,[332] but Whelp, as wee, being more suerly instructed out of ancient records.[333]

Note. Here are hereabout vast walls \ Hic steterit Catuli Regia celsa senis[334] / both of brick & stone discoverd under ground, the brick which is wonderfull above a yard \ thick / & so semented to gether with lime thach that I could nevere meet with a whol one there.

---

[326] MS: 'And the sirname of Whelpdale, ~~may probably seeme to \ have / bin~~ \ be assumed/ assumed \ hence / from their Ancestours liveing (about the Conquest) at \ som / Remaquable place in this valley. But who ventures to pronounce for certain on matters so ancient?'
[327] In the MS, this memo is placed in the margin of the following page.
[328] 23 June.
[329] Possibly, 'Jacksons', but the word is unclear.
[330] Unclear words.
[331] This complicated sentence demonstrates Machell's use of alternatives as he worked to describe the site of Whelp Castle. Words that have been scored through in the MS have been allowed to remain here, as no version of the sentence makes perfect sense without them. The word 'long' is an insecure transcription.
[332] Camden gives the spelling as 'Whealop-Castle' and 'Whellop', and, in the margin of the page, 'Whellep': see *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 761.
[333] MS: 'Composed about with Champion Groundes on every side \ glades aford a delicate prospect / in the very heart as it were of the Country ~~Bottom of Westmorland~~ which was the site of Whelop Castle as Camden, calls \ it, / but Whelp, as wee, being ~~right~~ more suerly \ instructed taugh / out of \ ancient / records.'
[334] 'Here will have stood the lofty realm of old Catulus.' An oft-repeated claim based on Ovid, *Heroides 1*. 'Letter from Penelope to Ulysses'. See I.558, above; see also I.509, below.

{!!!} A pott full of Roman coynes ~~have bin found~~ \ were here found / about 40 yeares, which they foolishly gave ther children to play with. 2 altars lately \ dug; / inumerable fragments of broken urnes \ an other of excellent fictilia[335] / ~~all which bespeake the building of Ancient Rome~~. Since that, a vault \ was discover / under ground \ in the midst of Castle Street / with a stare into it that we are chief to admire theirat[336] a doer at each end \ having shelves on either side / ~~with~~ seates on the sides set with Urnes, all which do loudly proclame them Roman. […][337] Hic steterit Castri Catuli Regia.[338] High as they call it.

And the Romane Wayes: the Street and Maden Way, end at this place, at this Towne meeting together, & the last entry here \ in this Town / do seem to confirme it, & bespeak it a Towne in the times the Romanes of more than ordinary esteem & accompt, estimation & traffique.

Hic steterit Catuli Regia celsa senis. Altar, coines, urnes; besides those sandal discoverd in the fontane Hypocreen, & the ~~fontane~~ \ well / itselfe, which are printed in the *Oxford Transactions*[339] – may be recounted as extraordinary. & of Later Times, som pieces of building: 1ᵗ. The Church, which on the inside &c. The foundation, of tower, flags, of body, on pavement. 2. Howgil Castle, the walls whereof were lately alterd. 3. The parlour & dineing roome at Acorn Banke.

[I.507]

{S.W. G[ate]}
Near the South angle or rather betwixt it and the principle gate […][340] was lately discovered in the High Street a vault underground in figure oblong & arched over; which having water therein with a dooer at each end with stairs to descend by into it & a shelfe or seat (on either side) made of huen stone & set round with urnes.[341]

[I.509]

Hic steterit Catuli Regia celsa senis {!!!}[342]
\ Which / these things considered; it is not improbable that the 1. Proprietor {!!!} of this Ancient Castle \ with the lands circumjacent / whom the Saxons call'd Whelp (in Latine Catulus) might be ~~descended~~ \ a branche from the old Romane Catuli* 'left here in trust ~~amongst therc~~ \ with their bands / British when the Romanes made their recess \ into Italy; / it being but the space of [blank] years, betwixt their departure and Norman Conquest. Which is no extraordinary duration of ~~a family~~ \ time / if wee compare things past with the present.[343] And perhaps the whol Bottom of Westmorland ought \ from hence / ~~thence~~ be called Vallis Catulnia, ~~from this chief seat in it~~; and the Whelpdales deserve \ assume / their \ ancient / sirname \ de Valle Catulnia from ~~liveing~~ their ancestours living at some remarquable \ place in this vala / habitation therein. Quis autem rem, tam antiquas, pro certo affirmare audet.[344] The like of which is not to be found in the County of Westm'land & has bin rendered yet

[335] 'Earthenware.'
[336] Several words here are obscured by the binding.
[337] There is interlineation here, but it is illegible.
[338] 'Here will have stood the lofty realm of Catulus.'
[339] See Part 3, Ch, 3, Roman Antiquities.
[340] An interlineation here is illegible.
[341] MS: 'which having \ water in / water therein: \ with / a dooer at each end, \ with / ~~with~~ stairs ~~down~~ {to descend by} into it, & a shelfe or seat (on either side) made of huen stone & set round with urnes, besett all \ round / with urnes which had water in it, a dooer at each end with stairs to descend by and a shelfe or seat on either side beset all with urnes.' A line has been drawn through this paragraph but, although it repeats what has gone before, it is easier to read than the same material in a previous paragraph (MS: I.507).
[342] 'Here will have stood the lofty realm of old Catulus.' Yet another of several repetitions of the phrase comparing the lofty realms of Priam to Whelp Castle (see above). Perhaps the three exclamation marks at the end of this iteration suggest that Machell was aware of the irony in the comparison; alternatively, they serve to exhibit his family pride.
[343] Interlineation of 5cm is illegible here.
[344] 'Quis autem res tam antiquas pro certo affirmare audet?' = 'But who ventures to pronounce for certain on matters so ancient?' A favourite saying of Machell's; possibly a slightly different wording of a passage in Livy, *History of the Romans*, Bk I.3.2.

more delightful & pleasant by the 2 large woody forrests of Milburne & Whinfel: that at equal distance on the East & the other on the West at about half a mile from it; both full of wood & replenished with read dear & fallow; as the latter continueth in as to this very day. The like of which is not to be found in the ~~Bottom~~ \ County / of Westmorland & has bin rendered \ yet / more delightful & pleasant by the 2 \ large / woody forrests of Milburne & Whinfel ~~and on~~ \ that at equal distance / on the East & the other on the West at about a mile distance \ about half a mile from it / ~~&~~ both \ full of wood & / replenished with read dear & fallow; as the ~~same~~ \ latter / continueth\ in as / to this very day.

~~There is a Place~~ \ The Square[345] / calld the High Burwens \seems to have bin the area of it, conteineing ~~about~~ 6 score yards in diameter now plowd & cultivated, which is full of broken \ urnes, / bricks & slates, & which that have bin[346] of lime ~~allmost~~ as hard \ almost as a qu[ern] stone it selfe Hic steterit &c. / The angles of it \ thereof as I have observd all Rom[an] fortifications have don, / doe point \ looked / directly ~~East~~ to the 4 cardinal Pointes of the World. & at the East corner was lately found the head of a woman (more Romane to below the paps) ~~carved in~~ \ [an] image of a roman cut in silver†,[347]& likewise an Altar about thirty yards from it, both which are now at Crakanthorp Hall.[348]

[Machell's Notes: I.509]

*{Who had long bin true to Romanes Intrest – dureing which time The Saxons who cam in to aide the Britanes, and such of the Romanes as were set amongst them, against the \ valore[349] of / Picts and made themselves at lenth masters of both.}

[I.530A]

[**Narrative 4]**

Of Kirkbythore Parish or Kirkbythure[350]

This Parish taketh denomination from Kirkbythore \ where the church stands / (~~so it is writt in all ancient records)~~, which word seems to be of Saxon original, taken from Kirk, ~~which~~ signifying a church, by a place, & Thor which was one of the Saxon gods whence wee have the word Thorsday and implies as much as the Place where the Templ of Thor was erected. And this Thor was the same with \ the great god / Jupiter amongst the Romanes, \ by whom when they first invaded Britain, / in whose time this Towne was called Gallagum, a place of no […][351] {But now a Temple is erected therein to the Great God Jehovah which is in honour of the Arch Angel ~~St~~ called St Michael, and is a Rectory.}

[I.530B]

At which time the Romanes subdued the Brttaines, but before the Saxona in the time of the Romanes & Brittaines, it was Gallatum or Wallatum – perhaps from Livius Gallus or Wallus {? or from Galli or Walli, the names of the Britt.} of whom wee read that Asclæpiodotus Duke of Cornwall prevailed \ in fight / against Alectus & him; and when he had slain him, threw him into a brooke, from then thence called Wallus Brooke & now Wallbrooke. This Asclæpiodotus was \ afterwards / said to be pronounced King of the Britaines & to have bin slane by one Coel Earle of Colchester, who succeed[ed] him circa anno Christ 262: *Chron. Temp*. p.494.[352] {This was in the time of Di[o]clesian [&] Max[i]m[ian]us q[uo]d Ide[m] de hoc [Sc. tempore] et ante.}[353]

---

[345] MS. Machell drew a square shape here.
[346] Some text is obscured by the binding here.
[347] The subject continues on I.527A.
[348] A complicated paragraph comprising much reordering and scoring-through.
[349] Insecure transcription of this interlineated word.
[350] In the MS, 'or Kirkbythure' has been scored through.
[351] The rest of this sentence has perished.
[352] Asclepiodotus appears in medieval British legend as a native king of Britain. Geoffrey of Monmouth's Chronicle, *History of the Kings of Britain* (1136) portrays him as a Duke of Cornwall who was raised to the kingship of Britain (c.296) in opposition to Allectus, a Roman who oppressed the people.
[353] 'This was in the time of Dioclesian [&] Maximian which [was] the same thing from this and before.' Perhaps Machell is referring to the fact that Diocletian, who was proclaimed emperor in 284, took Maximian as co-emperor in 286; thereafter Diocletian ruled the western empire, Maximian the eastern empire. (From 293 two

[I.533]

§. But to returne to Kirkbythore Parish.
The soyle thereof is of severall sorts: In some parts read-sand, in others yellow, here black mold, there browne; in some places gravell, in others clay both read & blew. But for the most part it is very fertill, especially for corn, which yieldeth best of any in the Countrey. The high moores & mountains affords good fuell & pasture for sheep, which are generally sound; and the lower for cattle. But the want of \ cow / pastures for the common sort is the greatest defect, which by improvement might easily be helped.[354] It hath bin formerly well replenished with wood, most part of the Parish being a forrest of old: But now there is little, unlesse it be in the \ 2 / Chapplerys of Sowerby & the chappelry of Milburne, which are fare remote from Kirkbythore Towne; & the only fuell which they now have {remaining} (excepting coales, which they fetch \ are fetched / from Hartside, att 10 miles distance) are turfes, & peates. But yet in the mountains there are out-bursts of coals which might prove of great use unto all the neighbourhood & of great advantage to the Lords of the Fees if they would sinke for them; whilest in the meane time they lie neglected, & only serve such poor countrey people as can pick them out thence for burning of Lime Kilns.

In these mountaines alsoe there are silver mines, as some doe imagine; being thereto induced partly by the names of certain places upon the fells which are called Silveray & Silvery-Bands, \ & / partly by an old rimeing prophecy of Mother Shiptons[355] (whom they call here Gillemans wife from her former husband as they relate) who, passing these mountains & tasteing the water which issued from them; is said to have delivered these verses:

> They that are awn'd to open Dunfell-sneck*
> May measure out theire silver in a peck†.

Here are alsoe lead mines, which discover themselves in the bankes of the rivers, but the most remarkable is that below Dunfell att Silveray-Band,[356] a very rich one; now wrought & farmed by the Marquess of Winchester of the Earle of Thannett as Lords of those Wastes in the forrest of Milburne.[357] And in the very skirts of the mountaines there is plenty of limestones, & freestone alsoe of a reddish couler, which this Parish affords in great abundance, excepting \ only in / Kirkbythore Lordship only where there there is not any. But that defect is supplied by nature (if Art would put to her helping hand as she hath formerly done)[358] in a very large veine of curiouse blew clay like unto marle, neare Parsons Close at the East end of Kirkbythore Towne; which would (I believe) make as good brick as any in the world; and likewise all sorts of earthen vessels: for I doe suppose that those curiouse bricks which the plow casteth up at the place called Burwens where Whelp Castle stood, with the urnes & pots which are found thereabouts, were made of this clay.
Besides these advantages:
§. This Parish is alsoe extreamly well watered with rivers and springs, a great Cause & Argument of a fruitfull place. The former may be seen by the Boundary of it, being almost incompass'd with rivers \ of water / well storr'd with fish, especially troutes

[Machell's Notes: I.533]
*The latch of a dooer with which it is shut: alludeing here to riches shut up in the chambers of the Earth.
†A measure here conteineing 5 gallons.[359]

---

further delegates were appointed, so that the whole empire was divided into quarters, under the 'Tetrarchy'.) The words 'et ante' perhaps refer to the two years when Diocletian was sole emperor.
[354] By 'improvement', Machell probably meant 'enclosure'.
[355] She is said to have lived at Knaresborough near Harrogate in Yorkshire.
[356] Silverband.
[357] Farm: a fixed yearly amount paid by a tenant in money or in kind (especially in grain) as rent for the use of land or property, or as tax; an amount received as revenue for letting or subletting land or property. historical after the 18th century. *OED*.
[358] The numerals 2 and 1 have been placed over the last two words to show that they should be read: 'done formerly'.
[359] For more on Mother Shipton, see I.555.

[I.534]

{which hath given name to the River call'd Troutbeck}
The latter is obviouse to every eye; there being not a Towne nor Hamlet in the Parish that doth not afford a great many springs. But the most remarkable are those that follow:

Machells Well, which springs in the very south point of this Parish att a place called Sowber, & runs into the ancient Channel of Troutbeck, neare to the place where the three Lordships of Crakanthorp, Bolton & Kirkbythore \ meet / as hath been said. This yields a most delicate & wholesome water, which hath \ been / successfully taken in feavers, a small taste of vinegar being mixed therewith.

Hyppocreene, an Ancient well, lately discovered by the foot of an horse. It is in the ~~verge~~ downe end of Kirkbythore, neare \ to / the Bridge, & by the side of the great Romane Way which leadeth from Appleby to the city of Carlile. In which was found urnes & severall curiouse fine earthen vessels, with greyhounds & other figures upon them; the cusp of a speare; & sandalls whose soles were struck full of nales & sow'd together, not with thread but with leather; most of which were carefully preserved, design'd & describ'd in a late letter to Sir William Dugdall by the present Rector, which letter being printed not only att London but at Oxford alsoe amongst their Philosophicall Transactions* I need say noe more concerning this fountaine: but that it is alsoe neare to a place where three Lordships meet (in three severall Parishes) Sc. Crakanthorp, Brampton & Kirkbythore.

Dobkill-How Well, which is in the Street call'd Wharton End directly opposite to Kirkbythore Hall, & in the way to it, concerning which & a place neare the Miln called Stack or Stake (which growes very good oates) they have a saying, as if Bacchus & Ceres had combind together to make the towne delightfull & pleasant

> Noe Kirkbythore hater can the village forsake
> If he tastes Dobkill water & a Bannock off Stake.

Pots-Well, which springs on the North side of Kirkbythore in a pasture call'd Potts & seems to proceed from some sort of minerall. It promiseth coale in the places adjacent as some doe believe; & has been accounted of singular virtue in cuering old sores.

Marble-Skar-Well in the Chappelry of Milburne near Howgill Castle; which hath two heads \ or springs / the higher whereof supplieth the castle for necessary uses,[360] and the lower is said to be good for sore eyes. – And soe likewise is

Lucies-Well, near Acorn-Banke in the Chappelry of Sowerby, soe called from Mrs Lucie Dalston (late wife of the present John Dalston Esq. & the last of the Fallowfields), who used to visit it & recommend it to the blear eyed Leahs as good for theire sight.[361]

[Machell's Notes: I.534]
*{*Philosophical Transactions* April 20 1684 p.555. A letter from Mr Thomas Machel of Kirkbythore in Westm'land to Sir W. D. March 25 1684, concerneing som Antiquities found there.}[362]

[I.535][363]

[Rarityes in Nature & Arte]

[360] Machell redesigned Howgill Castle for William Sandford; see a description of this in Howard Colvin, *A biographical dictionary of British architects, 1600-1840* (London, 1978), 531-32.
[361] For the 'blear eyed Leahs', see I.557, above.
[362] *Philosophical Transactions 14*, 158 (1684), 554-8, https://royalsocietypublishing.org/toc/rstl/1684/14/158; See also Part 3, Ch.3, Roman Antiquities.
[363] On this page of the MS there are pencilled comments, now illegible, and a sketch similar to those on I.528.

[I.534]

{which hath given name to the River call'd Troutbeck}
The latter is obviouse to every eye; there being not a Towne nor Hamlet in the Parish that doth not afford a great many springs. But the most remarkable are those that follow:

Machells Well, which springs in the very south point of this Parish att a place called Sowber, & runs into the ancient Channel of Troutbeck, neare to the place where the three Lordships of Crakanthorp, Bolton & Kirkbythore \ meet / as hath been said. This yields a most delicate & wholesome water, which hath \ been / successfully taken in feavers, a small taste of vinegar being mixed therewith.

Hyppocreene, an Ancient well, lately discovered by the foot of an horse. It is in the ~~verge~~ downe end of Kirkbythore, neare \ to / the Bridge, & by the side of the great Romane Way which leadeth from Appleby to the city of Carlile. In which was found urnes & severall curiouse fine earthen vessels, with greyhounds & other figures upon them; the cusp of a speare; & sandalls whose soles were struck full of nales & sow'd together, not with thread but with leather; most of which were carefully preserved, design'd & describ'd in a late letter to Sir William Dugdall by the present Rector, which letter being printed not only att London but at Oxford alsoe amongst their Philosophicall Transactions* I need say noe more concerning this fountaine: but that it is alsoe neare to a place where three Lordships meet (in three severall Parishes) Sc. Crakanthorp, Brampton & Kirkbythore.

Dobkill-How Well, which is in the Street call'd Wharton End directly opposite to Kirkbythore Hall, & in the way to it, concerning which & a place neare the Miln called Stack or Stake (which growes very good oates) they have a saying, as if Bacchus & Ceres had combind together to make the towne delightfull & pleasant

> Noe Kirkbythore hater can the village forsake
> If he tastes Dobkill water & a Bannock off Stake.

Pots-Well, which springs on the North side of Kirkbythore in a pasture call'd Potts & seems to proceed from some sort of minerall. It promiseth coale in the places adjacent as some doe believe; & has been accounted of singular virtue in cuering old sores.

Marble-Skar-Well in the Chappelry of Milburne near Howgill Castle; which hath two heads \ or springs / the higher whereof supplieth the castle for necessary uses,[360] and the lower is said to be good for sore eyes. – And soe likewise is

Lucies-Well, near Acorn-Banke in the Chappelry of Sowerby, soe called from Mrs Lucie Dalston (late wife of the present John Dalston Esq. & the last of the Fallowfields), who used to visit it & recommend it to the blear eyed Leahs as good for theire sight.[361]

[Machell's Notes: I.534]
*{*Philosophical Transactions* April 20 1684 p.555. A letter from Mr Thomas Machel of Kirkbythore in Westm'land to Sir W. D. March 25 1684, concerneing som Antiquities found there.}[362]

[I.535][363]

[Rarityes in Nature & Arte]

[360] Machell redesigned Howgill Castle for William Sandford; see a description of this in Howard Colvin, *A biographical dictionary of British architects, 1600-1840* (London, 1978), 531-32.
[361] For the 'blear eyed Leahs', see I.557, above.
[362] *Philosophical Transactions 14*, 158 (1684), 554-8, https://royalsocietypublishing.org/toc/rstl/1684/14/158; See also Part 3, Ch.3, Roman Antiquities.
[363] On this page of the MS there are pencilled comments, now illegible, and a sketch similar to those on I.528.

Caervorran in / Northumberland \ neare the Picts Wall / & terminates here); both \ which / may be recorded amongst things extraordinary relateing to Art, doe confirme the same & bespeak this Towne to have been a place of more then ordinary esteem & traffique in the time of the Romanes; And Camden affirmes it to have been ~~called by the~~ \ called / then (by the name of Gallagum) in the time of the Brittaines.[370] For it was the chief place of the Brigantes (that is to say, of all those territories which now are divided into v. ~~shires~~ \ Countyes / called by the names of Westm'land, Cumberland, Yorkshire, Lancashire & the Bishoprick of Durham) & they the most numerous & flourishing people of all the Brittaines.) Which things being considered, it may not be improbable that the proprietor of this ancient Castle with the lands round about, whom the Saxons calld Whelp, might be a branch of the old Romane Catuli left here in trust with some Brittish bands when they made their last recesse [I.536]
into Italy, it being but about 6oo years (& many families have continued soe long) betwixt their departure & the Norman Conquest; dureing which time the Saxons who came in to aide the Brittaines (& such of the Romanes as we may suppose were left behind either by reason of their marriage or other wise) against the incursions of the Picts & Scots, made themselves masters of all these nations, altering the names both of men & places to their owne Country fashion; as appears to this day.
Thus might Catulus (by an easy & natural transmutation \ or translation rather /) be changed into Whelp, & Castrum Catulinum into Whelp Castle, as the old Aballaba was by them changed into Apelby, & as Brovonacum was turnd into Brougham.[371] And perhaps, this Bottom of Westm'land might \ also / (before the Conquest) be called Whelpdale, from this ancient seat, which seems to have been the commanding place of it: And the sirname of Whelpdale may probably seem to have been assumed from their ancestours living (about the Conquest) at some remarkable place in this valley
Quis autem res tam Antiquas pro certo affirmare audet?[372]

But now to returne from things which are buried in their owne ruines (or eased out by the conquering swords), to which is more modern & more discernible.

{2.} [Parish Church]
The next place here which deserves observation is the Parish Church, which seems by the stones whereof it is made, to have been ~~rased~~ \ builded / out of Whelp Castle ruines. 'Tis an handsome structure on the outside tho not very large, adorned with a well-proportioned Tower & a clock (whose hour-board fronteth \ towards / the Towne) which strikes on the loudest bell in this County (called Great Tom)*. But its greatest bea\u/ty & ornament is (as doth best becom holiness) on the inside, where all things are neate – the floors of the Church and Quire well flagg'd; the seates (which are general made of wainscot) & all other things thereto appertaining regular & uniforme; [a] delicate font made of huen stone at the Rectors charge, wherein he designes to have a fountaine playing up in the bason & a dove appendant to the cover of it, which (when it ascends by the help of a pully whose counterpoise is hid in the steeple) will seem to stand hovering over the water – a proper emblem of the Holy Ghosts descending-upon & sanctifying the baptismall water to the mystycall washing away of sin.[373] The Quire is neatly both sealed[374] & seated with very good wainscot, the Altar rail'd in with wreathed Ballisters (the Rectors gift alsoe), where instead of Balls upon the pillasters he hath placed Cupps which are noe lesse signifficant \ than the former emblem, representing to us / the cup-of-

[370] See Camden: 'But tract of time hath quite out-worne the old name, and it is at this day Whealop-Castle. If I might without prejudice to the Judges of antiquitie, I would say it were Gallagum mentioned by Ptolemee, which Antonine nameth Gallatum, the distance of journies accord so well, and the name doth not altogether gainsay. For what words the Britons began with Gall, the English turned into Wall.' Camden, *Britannia* tr. Holland, 1637, 761E.
[371] MS: '& as Brovonacum ~~inter textæ~~ \ ~~was changed into~~ / \ was turnd into / Brougham.' The Roman site of Brougham has been traditionally named 'Brovacum' and 'Brovoniacum': see Samuel Timms, *The Family Topographer: a compendious account of the anciemt state of the counties of* England, *VI, Northern Circuit* (London, 1837), 3.
[372] Repetition of, 'But who ventures to pronounce for certain on matters so ancient?'
[373] The font is still extant; it bears the date 1688 and Machell's arms. Hyde & Pevsner suggest that the carving was done by Edward Addison: *Hyde and Pevsner*, 473.
[374] It has a ceiling.

blessing in the other ~~great~~ Sacrament \ of the Lords Supper / which is there administer'd.[375] The Altar, alsoe Pulpit & organ-loft are of very good workmanship, being curiously carved.[376] And here are prayers on Wednesdays, Fridayes & Saturday nights, every Holyday & Holyday-eve, with Catechising on every Sunday unlesse prevented by important occasions. And as the materiall Church (or fabrick) deserves observation for its uniformity, soe likewise the reall Church (or people) doe deserve commendations for their conformity.

[Machell's Notes: I.536]

*Memorandum, found.

[I.537]

For they ~~all~~ \ generally / kneel & stand, repeat & answer at their devotions as the Rubrick directs. And for dissenters from the Church of England, there are not any (in all this great Parish) excepting one family, which consists of two persons whose names & persuasion I shall not mention, least being affected with this singularity & noted for it, they should thence take occasion to glory in what is truly their shame.[377]

{3} [Parsonage House]

The third thing of note is the Parsonage house,[378] which is one of the fairest in all this Countrey, but oweth its beauty to the late Mr Lowther[379] & the present Rector, the latter of which hath altered it all from top to bottom & conjoyn'd it with a small Court ~~in~~to the Church, which may serve the house instead of a Chapple upon all occasions; adorn'd it with an orchard & olitory-garden;[380] laid a great deale of glebe land about it; and made a contrivance in his dining-room chimney that they waste not one cinder, nor never carry \ any / ashes out of it; an invention therefore worthy observation because it may be of singular use in all other places where they burn coale. It is done by a funnel under the grate, which goes downe (in the figure of a cone invers'd) behind the corner of the hall-chimney: haveing a searcher (of small iron-barrs) at the top of it to divide the cinders from the ashes, and a door of stone at the bottom (like an ovens mouth) to take them out at once in a yeare, which in the meane time is close daubed \ up / & stopp'd to prevent \ the / inconvenience which would thence arise by the stoaring up of the dust & ashes at the Hall fireside {incommoding his family by the hall fire.}[381]

He hath alsoe contriv'd an octagonall deske with a small writeing table running beneath it, by means whereof he can consult many authors at once without moving his foot, & compare them together with a turne of his hand*.[382]

---

[375] The altar rails are still extant, with an inscription declaring Machell's gift, dated Caroli II 35, i.e.1684; see Hyde & Pevsner (473), who suggest that the blocked-up windows in the chancel were originally inserted by Machell but that his insertion appears to have weakened the structure, Hyde & Pevsner, 473.

[376] The pulpit (1631) predates Machell.

[377] The information (scored through) also appears on MS.I.562. MS: 'And as <u>the material</u> church (or fabric) doth deserve commendations for its uniformity, so \ likewise / the <u>Real Church</u> (or people) doe deserve commendations for their conformity (which by Gods assistance the present Rector hath brought them up to). They all knele & stand \ repeat & answ[er] / at their devotions, as the Rubric directs; And [there] are not any Discenters from the Church of England (<u>in all this great Parish</u>) excepting 2{!} ~~(which are both of a family)~~, 2 persons whose names & perswation I shal not mention, least (being affected with this singularity & noted for it) they should thence take occasion to glory in what is most truly their shame.' Machell's attitude is typical of a 17th-century Church of England rector, and most of the local gentry agreed with him. See Peter Lucas on Sir Daniel Fleming and Sirs Philip and Christopher Musgrave, in, *The Rise of the Quakers: Revaluing the place of Preston Patrick in the early movement* (Kirkby Lonsdale, 2017), 165-6.

[378] In 1703 William Nicolson regarded the rectory as 'in the best repair of any in the Diocese', see Nicolson, *Misc. Accts*, 28.

[379] Rev. Lancelot Lowther, rector of Kirkby Thore from 1629. For details see Kirkby Thore, Narrative 2, I.551, above.

[380] A kitchen or herb garden.

[381] This margin comment also appears on I.563. There are two almost identical passages elsewhere in the MS (I.508 and I.562); see also a draft of the material on I.768.

[382] The asterisk leads to more text on Machell's study furniture on I.562.

[I.562]

{*Also, A Reading Desk in his study, which, being octagonal, by turneing it round wil bring 8 folios or 16 folios to hand to examine at and quot of, to aprise ascending.}

[I.563]



Figure 1.14.11. Study desk. I.563.

1. The Writeing Deske.
2. The Turneing Desk for Bookes with pin-holes in the standing post to advance or settle it.[383]



Figure 1.14.12. Dining-room chimney 'contrivance' and study desk. 1.562.

[383] Similar material appears on MS I.537: 'He hath also contrived in his Study or Library an octagonal deske and a writeing table which standeth under it; whereby he can consult many authors & compare them together by a turn with his hand.'

And in his gardine which his study looks into, \ which being a piece of ground ornamented (forced),[384] doth show the benignity of the air & soyle to be extraordinary.

[I.537]

And as Art (in this place), so Nature alsoe hath sported herselfe; having gratified him with two rare productions: a dasie, four-inch and an half in circumference but the last yeare; & severall gilly flowers full blowne at Shrovetide about two yeares before, without any help of stercoration[385] \ or dunging, / or other improvement; which shows the benignity of the aire & soile to be more in this County than has been reported by other authors.

[I.563]

{Pine Trees placed in the midst of his grass plats; but being else where in the country, I shal not ent[er] them.}

[I.537]

{§4.} [Kirkby Thore Hall]

The next Curiosity (if it may be soe called) is att Kirkbythore Hall, where there is a piece of old forrest worke building – a common thing once when this part of the Country was full of good timber. But now (& in the ages to come) it may passe for a rarity, and therefore the rather ought to be mentioned because it shows us what manner of buildings was (for the most) used here of old, & prevents an objection which may be made against the greatnesse of this Towne \ & Apelby / & others alsoe (whose ruines are not now to be found) by showing how easily they might be consum'd (tho never soe great) & reduced to ashes (which the wind scattereth wheresoever it listeth,[386] & yet leaves noe ~~Ruines or~~ \ ruines / vestigia behind it). Here is alsoe an Altar (digg'd up at Whelp Castle) which Sir William Dugdale hath taken notice of & therefore I need not say any thing of it.

[I.538][387]

[Cow-Sonsy]

But amongst these old things at Kirkbythore I cannot forbeare to give an account (as a thing which is not common in nature) of the great age & wit of a certain Alewife who lived in this Towne at Coppin Hill, in perfect understanding & strength till she was one hundred & twenty yeares old: some say, one hundred & twenty-eight. {Testament Thomas Soulby a very honest & sensible person; also, John Hill, & common fame say that she lived to 128.}

She frequently travail'd to London on foote \ & could thread a needle to her dying day. / {Her father (they say) lived to an 140 & she thought that she should have livd as long.}

Her name was Sanderson \ K. Smith / {? If not Katherine Smith, so says Criss, her made} But in a by name, to please themselves & vex her withall, they call'd her Cow-sonsy; which signifies a good Lucky-beast but deprived of that which should be at once its Armes & ornament (namely the hornes): tho perhaps they alluded to her want of haire in her extreame old age; for they call them cowd alsoe whose haire is come of, by Art or Accident.

But she revenged herselfe upon one man; who (coming with a great many friends to drinke at her house; & being deformed with a wen on his forehead, yet had the face to play upon her &c.) call'd her Cow-sonsy; to whom she replyed, it was better to be Cow'd & sonsy than Horn'd & unlucky; which was a severe reflection upon him, not only in respect of the wen which grew on his forehead, but some other excrescences, which (as it was said) his wife gave occasion to bud in that place. She liv'd to [be] a proverb; for now we say (of those that are old, & not likely to die in our thanke) I thinke he'el be as old as Cow-sonsy, with which I thought once to have concluded my observations concerning this place.

[384] 'Forced': of plants, a crop, etc. Made to bear, or produced, out of the proper season. Alternatively, fortified, made strong against attack. *OED*. This is interesting, as Machell goes on to say that his plot was not dressed with manure or other improvement.

[385] Dressing with manure.

[386] See *AVB*: John 3:8.

[387] As versions on MS I.564 and MS.I.146 tell the same tale, they have been deleted from this edition.

[I.545A]

The Old Song of Cow Sonsy[388]

[I.545D]

1. Cowsonsy was a dainety dame.
All Kirkbythore can tell the same.
At Coppin Hill she once did dwell,
And there she brewd Good Ale to sell.

[I.545A]

2. Where som Good fellows met together
~~It~~ Twas John Sanderson brought them thither.
There was Will Parcivel & John Nansy,
That came to drink with old Cow-sonsy.[389]

3. Ned Willan was their at that time
When they as thus did make this rime
Let us be merry every one
Cow Soncys to her chamber gone.

4. Mic~~hael~~ Atkinson ~~he began to~~ \ there / laught
& said Nedd Addinson should goe daft.
\ But / strike up Piper & play us a strake[390]
To dance it for Cowsoncy sake.

5. Sais Cow you are much given to scorn,
I'le dance your strake my self to morn.
& soe she did as her son did say
She danced it in the break of day.

[I.545C]

6. [First line perished] born
With an hair codpiss set before
& ever she cryes O Siss & Jock,
Ist not well danced without a smock.

7. Siss & Jock lay in the same room
& swore that she had neatly done.
To dance again she up did start
And thundered out a Rousing fart.

8. This fart did Siss & Jock soe fray,
They durst noe longer sleep that day,
But up with speed they both did high,
& swore it thundered in the sky.

---

[388] I.545A initially gives a truncated version of the first two verses: 1. Cow Sonsy is A dainety / She doth her guests / O'eth Copin Hill she / & their she brewed. 2. We are good fellows met together / here John Sanderson brought us hither / heres Will Persavell & John Nancy/ is cos med to drink with old Cowsancy.' Roughly pencilled alterations to the poem have not been transcribed. The song appears on both sides of two small scraps of paper, originally one sheet, now numbered I.545 A to D. The verses are written as follows: 1-2: I.545D; 2-5: I. 545A; 7-10: I.545C; unnumbered: I.545B and C. Verses on I.545D appear to be in a different hand from the rest but most text is in Machell's hand. The narrative which names Cow-Sonsy as Sanderson first occurs on I.538.

[389] Another version is given here: MS: '2. We are good fellows met together; here John Sanderson brought us hither; heres Will Persavell & John Nancy; is comed to drink with old Cowsoncy'.

[390] To blow a horn; to make a start. *OED*.

9. This suddain chance made Cow think shame;
She thought herself she was to blame,
& earnestly did Jock intreat
That he must needs her counsell keep.

10. But Jock did like a scurvy lad,
he told his father all he heard.
His father in a merry vain,
Told it to the next he met again.

[I.545B]

Now of my rime I make an end.
Noe harm at all I did intend.
I spent but ten-pence, that was all,
When I did her Cowsoncy call.
Finis.[391]

Dame Topock said they did her wrong,
She was not mentioned in the song.
She could dance as well as her sister Cow,
For anything that she did know.
She danced about till she did stink,
Her only son was Captain Spink.

[I.538]

[Arts & Imployments]
Yet before I take leave of this Ancient Towne once famous for trades, I must observe to you that in this village (as if the Genij of the place had not left, it & forsaken it utterly) there are above 30 Artes & Imployments professed & practised at this very day. As first, the most Beautiful Art of Architecture, which (amongst many other) the present Rector hath some knowledge off, he & one Addison (borne in this towne & contemporary with him) being the first introducers of regular building into these parts.[392] Hutton Hall in the County of Cumberland was altered by Addison;[393] Rose Castle in Cumberland, Caesars Tower,[394] Howgill Castle & Crakanthorp Hall in the County of Westm'land by Mr Machell.[395]

---

[391] Clearly not quite finished, for an addition appears below.
[392] Comment on Machell as architect has not necessarily taken him at face value. For instance, 'Revd Thomas Machell misled posterity by his claim to have introduced "regular" building to Cumbria. While William Thackeray (fl. 1670-82), mason and carpenter of Torpenhow, has now taken over that important role, it is possible that further research might discover an earlier builder to wrest it from him' – see Blake Tyson, 'Some Cumbrian Builders, 1670-1780', 180. See also Hyde & Pevsner on the church at Kirkby Thore: 'Thomas Machell … may have put in the large square windows in the chancel: blocked now, having visually weakened the structure.' It is also suggested that Edward Addison might have carved the font: Hyde & Pevsner, 473.
[393] The East Front of Hutton-in-the-Forest [not Hutton Hall, Penrith] was built c.1680 by Edward Addison (1656-1705), almost certainly to the design of William Talman, architect of Lowther Castle where Addison was clerk of works. https://hutton-in-the-forest.co.uk. See also Hyde & Pevsner on Hutton-in-the-Forest. [It] 'is an object lesson on how the [17th] century moved from Jacobean to Baroque without seriously going classical.' Hyde & Pevsner, 415.
[394] Part of Appleby Castle.
[395] E. Bellasis noted that Thomas Machell, 'was naturally inclined to the art of drawing, a great lover of antiquities and not only skilfull in the liberal arts but mechanical also, his judgement was such that all sorts of ingenious tradesmen w[oul]d say it was a pity that he had not been of each of their professions.' He also quotes the Hill MSS, IV.132: Machell 'was a passionate admirer and promoter of the pseudo classic and Palladian architecture'. See 'Machell of Crackenthorpe', *CW1*, 8 (1886). 416-67, at 445-46 and 447n. More recently, Machell has featured in Howard Colvin's *Biographical Dictionary of British Architects 1600-1840*, in which he is credited with the design of the east range at Appleby Castle of 1686-8, 'in a handsome classical style', as well as the 'regularisation' of Howgill Castle for William Sandford and improvements elsewhere. See H. Colvin, *A Biographical Dictionary of British Architects 1600-1840* (3rd edn, Newhaven, 1995), 631-32. [I should like to thank Dr Edward Impey for introducing me to Colvin's work, Ed.]

Organ Loft. St Lawrence Appleby[396]
And the organ loft in St Lawrence Appleby of the dorrick order (which has extraordinary fancy in it, the guttæ & triglyphs[397] being renderd musicall & the flutings turn'd into organ pipes) was designed by him, & the ~~joyoneres~~ \ joyners / taught how to worke by the scale.

[I.548]

Organ & Organ Loft: where the Triglyphs or Apolloos lyers are elegantly turned into {Panonick Organs & the guttæ or bells into the ends of wind instrument, the fluteings into Organ pipe appositely significantly into the extremityes or endes of winde pipes} which are incomparable if they had follow'd the directions exactly.[398]

[I.538]

But neglect […][399] {The worke is thereby rendered more mean than it ought to be.}[400]

[I.539]

The other Artes professions & trades which are in this village
I shall run over (for brevities sake) by way of alphabet, which are as followeth – namely that of a Baker, Basket-maker, Blacksmith, Bruer, Butcher, Carpenter, Clogger, Cobbler, Currier, Cooper, Joyner, Fisher, \ Fuller, / Glazier, Knitter, Last Maker, Mason, Malster, Mealman, Mercer, Midwife, Milnwright, Milner, Piper, Shoemaker, Skinner, Spinner, Tanner, Taylor, Thatcher, Waller, Weaver, Whitesmith & Wheelwright; to which we may adde tho out off course (because not fit \ proper / to be mix'd with the rabble) a schoolmaster & schooldame, which I thought fit to observe as a rarity relateing to Artes, the like ~~of~~ whereof is scarce to be found through the Kingdom of England \ in a countrey village. /

[Howgill Castle]
The next remarkable place in this Parish is Howgill Castle in the Chapelry of Milburne, being a faire building which standeth high on the skirts of the mountaines in the eye of the Countrey & hath a large prospect to the South & South-west, but the other side being shut up with mountains & a great grove of trees wherein it standeth. The walls were formerly (& som yet are) of prodigious thickness – to wit 10 foote & ½ in breth, (which exceeds the dimension of The Picts Wall, for it was only eight \ or nine foot /); & underneath the dwelling house (to which \ they / ascended by stairs on the outside) were vaults & cellers arched over with stone, which was the old way of building in these partes whilst they liv'd in continual feuds with the Scots & served not only to the proper use which now they are putt to, but to keepe their horses & cattle secure in the time of invasion. A method which I would alwayes approve of in these northern climats (as most warm & convenient; & frugal \ allso / withal, as saveing the cost of a great many roofes in out-houses & stables) were it not for the unpleasant smells which the ordure & fewmes of cattle & horses are apt to send up to the higher rooms. But this castle is now

[396] For the organ at St Lawrence, Appleby, and Machell's part in its purchase and installation, see Arnold Mathews, 'St Lawrence's Church, Appleby', *CW1*, 8 (1886), 396-403. For example, 'Copies of a correspondence are preserved between Dean Smith and Hugh and Thomas Machell, the one of Crackenthorpe Hall, mayor of Appleby, the other rector of Kirkby Thore (the antiquary); by which it appears that the gift of this "old organ" from the cathedral was made at the solicitation of the brothers Machell ; — that the expenses of putting it up were borne by subscription among the mayor and aldermen ;— and that by particular request of Dr. Smith, it was set up in the church during the mayoralty of Hugh Machell in 1683.' (p. 402). 'In another letter Thomas Machell was advised to have "the posts in new wood, thrown and coloured, which may be had with a reabore," (whatever that may be.) It is believed that those very posts may still he seen in a yard in Appleby, now (alas !) supporting only a waterbutt.' (p. 403). The significance of this gift in terms of Tory/Laudian politics is explored by Michael A. Mullett, *Patronage, Power and Politics in Appleby in the Era of Lady Anne Clifford, 1649-1689*, CWAAS Tract Series 25 (Kendal, 2015), 85-88.
[397] For the meaning of triglyphs, see Kirkby Thore Narrative 2, I.538, above.
[398] I.548 contains a series of notes, mostly relating to aspects of Kirkby Thore parish. Its passage on St Lawrence Organ loft is jumbled and repetitive but has been transcribed here in readable form.
[399] An illegible pencilled note in the MS margin follows here, but see the following sentence for the probable meaning.
[400] This sentence takes the form of a pencilled note above the main text of I.539, following the word 'neglect' and the illegible note on the previous page.

successfully altered (with much Art & smal cost) from an old & irregular piece of building to a very elligant & uniform structure;[401] the front of which being a great Hall with a dineing room over it 'twixt two stately Towers, is adorn'd in the middest with a porch of the Dorrick & a Bellcony of the Ionick order, 'on each side \ of which are / two rowes of windowes double transom curiously carved, & at the top ~~of all~~ \ there / is raile & ballisters instead of battlements.[402] You ascend (having pass'd through the midst of the Hall) by a large hanging stair with a square pit or newell which lands at the dineing rome; and it was the first of that sort in Westm'land. And within this chapelry a quarry of red [blank][403]

[Acorn Bank]
The last but not the least to be noted is Acorn Banke in the chappelry of Sowerby, whose situation is much like Howgil

[I.540]

in a groave of trees under an hill, & tho more confined yet more pleasing \ & / dilicate, as being more neare to the heart of the Countrey & directly opposite to the Forrest of Whinfell, which gives a great beauty & ornament to it. But that which is most to be noted here is a curiouse additionall piece of building of a parlour & dineing room, the outside of which is of red free-stone, well wrought & polish'd & plac'd (according to the Tuscan manner) with excavations betwixt every course;[404] with which I conclude this section of Raritye in Nature & Arte.[405]

[Further 'Raritye in Nature']

[I.541A]

Milburne in Kirkby Thore (1692). A Live Toad found in limstone spar 15 fathom deep.
May 30. 1692. Thomas Blemire of Apelby butcher, informeth and offereth to depose the same upon oath, that working in the lead mines at Silveray Band \ on Milburne Fell / in the Parish of Kirkbythore, & haveing sunk 15 fathom deepe, they found in a rock spar (which they clave with a wedge & a great iron mell) a live toad, the place wherein she lodged being a round hole in which he could turne his \ double'd / hand. The said Thomas struck in the mell, & Ed. Threlkeld of Dufton \ now living / held the wedge. But as soon as she was carried up {in the kible to open aer, she dyed. This is True & I will swear it. Tho: Blamiere.}[406]

[I.541B]

! Ad Milburn a toad 15 fathom deepe.
{Eye witness of it: Tho. Shelding, Stuart;[407] Rowland Hall; Will Porter, dead; & 9 or 10 more.}
See a let[er] of it to Mr Houghton at Numb. 5.

[I.544A]

[Strange Birds]
Kirkbythore: Mr Charles Dalston informes that he had a white sparrow taken at Ackorn Bank mill \ when he was a boy / {April 1672 info capta: Charles Dalston ætat 26}[408] And that there was a crow taken at Ackorn Bank, haveing iiij feet, the skin whereof hung in the hall for many years after, when he was a stripling!

---

[401] Altered by Machell and Edward Addison, see Hyde & Pevsner, 523; see also, Colvin, *Biographical Dictionary of British Architect*s (1995 edn), 631-32.
[402] For more on the architecture, see Hyde and Pevsner, 522-23; John F. Curwen, *The Castles And Fortified Towers Of Cumberland, Westmorland And Lancashire North-of-the-Sands*, CWAAS Extra Series 13 (Kendal, 1913), 281-283; see also Denis R. Perriam and John Robinson, The *Medieval Fortified Buildings of Cumbria,* CWAAS Extra Series 29 (Kendal, 1998).
[403] The sentence ends abruptly here, but in the margin is a much-faded pencilled comment which begins, 'which Southern people call more improper by the name of…' The rest of the comment is illegible.
[404] In the 1670s, John Dalston chose William Thackeray, builder, of Torpenhow, to extend the building, Hyde & Pevsner, 633.
[405] But see pages below.
[406] Signed by Thomas Blamire; the list of eyewitnesses is on I.541B.
[407] Steward.
[408] Information given by the captor: Charles Dalston, aged 26.

Of a white sparrow – a crow with 4 legs, & [blank] [409]
Quaere of a magpie of strange colours at Johnby: T. D. {T. Dalston 50.}

[I.547]

Memorandum: On May Day 1687, being Sunday, in goeing to Sowerby Chaple, I saw in Moore Acres in Kirkbythore field, a raven menalled[410] or speckd with white both on the body, wings & tale, the speckes being about as big as a pea.

[I.548]

[Other Rarities]
At K[irkby Thore] Parson[age] last year, a dasy 1 inch and a half in diameter which [was] 4 inches & ½ about.
The barr of Iron & other things found, in digging – the little house on the left hand as you goe to Penrith.



Figure 1.14.13. 'The little house on the left as you goe to Penrith'. I.548.

[I.540]

§. [Civil Government]
For the civill government of this Parish, it is divided into three Constablewicks: Kirkbythore, Milburne & Temple Sowerby.

[1.] Kirkbythore consisteth of the Lordship or Towne of Kirkbythore with som part of Hale; wherein there is but one Gentlemans seat (besides the Rectory) call'd Kirkbythore Hall; which belongs to Hum[phrey] Wharton Esq. of Gilling in Yorkshire, whose Armes are Sable a manch Argent.

2. Milburne, which conteineth in it the Chappelry of Milburne; & consists of Kirkhouse (a smal Lordship or Hamlett held of the Rectory of Kirkbythore) where the Chapel standeth; Gullom Holm (an other smal Hamlet); & Milburn & Grange (2 handsom villages) which are all belonging to Howgil Castle – the seat of Sir Richard Sandford Baronet; who was borne (as 'tis said) in the very same hour his father was [murdered]. Thence in 1675 our valiant Gent dyed, being barbarously stabed ~~in 1675~~ by a London Hector[411] (in 1675) ere his sword was unsheathed, whom yet he opposed[412] with undaunted courage, even after his caul came out at the wound.[413] He bears for his Arms, parted per chevron Sable & Ermine, 2 boars' heads in chiefe couped Argent.[414]

[409] This information is repeated on MS I.544B.
[410] Menil or meanel: adjective relating to a spotted, speckled or dappled animal. *OED*.
[411] Hector: 'a swaggering fellow; a swash-buckler; a braggart, blusterer, bully. Frequent in the second half of the 17th century; specifically, a set of disorderly young men who infested the streets of London. *OED*. The original Hector was the eldest son of King Priam of Troy, see Homer's *Illiad*.
[412] MS: 'resisted \ opposed /.' Another instance in which Machell allowed an alternative to remain while underlining another with a pecked line. This transcription has chosen the interlineated word.
[413] Sandford was killed in Whitefriars on 8 Sept. 1675, by Henry Symbal and William Jones, who were executed shortly afterwards: See John Burke, Sir Bernard Burke, Bernard Burke, *A Genealogical and Heraldic History of the Extinct and Dormant Baronetcies of England, Ireland and Scotland* (London, 1838), 467.
[414] Similar text appears on MS.I.507: 'This was the seat of the late unfortunate \ but worthy / Sir Richard, who barbarously slane (by 2 Ruffians) at London where he faught with the pudding hanging out of his belly …'

{L.M.}[415] \ Unto which I shall add the Arms of Mr Lancelot Machell of Milburn ~~aforesaid~~ (third son of Lancelot Machell Esq. \ of Crakanthorp Hall Kirkbythore, lately deceas'd /). The which are, Sable; three greyhounds in paile courant, Argent; coller'd Or with a mullet in chiefe for distinctions sake of a younger Brother. /

3. Sowerby: which consists of that Chappelry, being one entire Lordship, the chiefe place whereof is Acorn-Banke, the Seat of Christopher son of John Dalston of Milnrigg Esq.[416] somtime Burgess of Apleby,[417] whose Arms are Argent a cheveron ingraled between 3 dawes heads errased Sable armed Or; & for distinction of a second house, a cresant charged upon the cheveron.

FINIS

[**Narrative 5**]

Of Kirkbythore Parish

[I.754]

{§1.} The chiefe Town of this Parish wherein the Church standeth, is Kirkby Thore, near to the conflux of Troutbeck & Eden.

{Name olim}[418]

It is called Gallagum*[419] and \ by som / Gallatum quasi \ Vallatum / Vallo Cinctum,[420] though wee do not now finde the least example of a Trench about it, but at the Burwens (or old Castle-Stead) which Camden calls Wheallop,[421] that there may be som ~~comfort in the sound of the words~~ \ harmony twixt it and Gallatum, the name of the Town. /

{§ 2.} {Whelp Castle}

But wee (with all due respect and reverence to so grave an Author – and upon better grounds) do with the vulgar call it Whelp Castle; which he comes very near in his merginal note (where he puts down things in their natural sounds) for he calls it Whellep!!† Which is a large square fortification nobely seated in a plane Champion countrey on every side,[422] wherein these rem[ains] of Roman Antiquityes have bin discovered.

When once the Romanes had made themselves masters of this Towne‡ (in order to which wee finde they had severall Campes & Retrenchements; as may be seen on Crakenthorpe Moore, S. from hence about a mile; at Brant Crooke in Marton-Field S.E. from hence about the same distance; and on the Hale More, almost as far North),[423] they made it a Collony and fixed a standing Quarter here for their Horse-Guards. As \ may / appear from \ this Inscription upon / ~~of~~ stone lately digd up without of the foundations of a Romane Temple, as wee suppose ~~This inscription ph o~~ (for it had bin compassed about with pillars) whereof this was one of the many p[l]inths: DEO ALA –⸸ As also from ~~a~~ \ the / Paved Casway \ now / calld Maiden Way, leading from hence to Caerverron on the Picts Wall (where the foote were ingarrisond) to facilitate & hasten their march unto the frontiers upon all occasions. And upon some glorious expedition in which they have had, another ~~Altar~~ was erected, found about

---

[415] Machell was referring to his father, Lancelot Machell (c.1617-81), and his brother (also named Lancelot), see Hudleston, 'Thomas Machell, his wife and children and his Whelpdale stepchildren', 110-44. See also Angus Winchester, 'Machell, Thomas (bap. 1647, d. 1698), antiquary. *ODNB*.

[416] Millrigg, near Culgaith. The house was built in 1597 by the Birbeck family. The Dalstons of Acorn Bank purchased it in 1661. A datestone of 1669 records its refurbishment: Hyde & Pevsner, 318.

[417] A note on a scrap page (I.535B) gives the following. MS: 'The seat of X D. Esq., the son & heire of J. D. Esq., who was a member of the 1 Parliament of King Charles for the Burrow of Apelby. Machell.'

[418] 'Once named.'

[419] This word was written as 'Gallatum', but then corrected to 'Gallagum' using heavier ink, see Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 761.D.

[420] '…as if walled, or surrounded by a wall.'

[421] In Camden, *Britannia* tr. Holland (1637), 761.

[422] For 'champion', see the English Glossary.

[423] MS: 'in Marton-Field, ~~another Camp which is a mile also~~ S.E. from hence; ~~&~~ about the same distance. And ~~other one~~ on the Hale More, almost \ as far / as much North).'

the same time.[424] Fortuna, which had bin a Plinth to one of those Columns (whereof there were many) surrounding the Temple. As also from a paved casway 10 DEI FORT Sp.[425]

[Machell's Notes: I.754]

*{Gallagum Ptolemæi, q[uo]d Antonino Gallatum. suffragante Intineraria distantia, nec prorsus reclamante nomine; quae enim a Gall Brittanni inceperunt, in Wal Converterunt Angli. Sic Galloru[m] Wallingford et val sever – wall sever &c. dixerunt.}[426]
{Camden sic scribet – Flumen Eden, "fertur in Occasum – per Kikbythuer, sub quo magna Rudera velusti Oppidi visuntur."}[427]
†ut: see a letter to Adams.[428]
‡{The manner of these Romane Buildings I shall farther discribe at Plumpton in Cumberland, when I come to speake of that Place;[429] for their I descovered the fairest footsteps of the way and method of placeing their fabrics (such is mor[e] Graecorum)[430] from the foundations which yet are apparent.}
⸸{Found in 169 – at [?] & now in my Cast. but ded[icated] to Crakenthorp Hall. Add DEO ALÆ.}
{Whellep} Romanique numi subinde eruuntur Wheallep Castle Hodie Nuncupant (in Margine) Whellep ... nota scribuntur [nomina?], si per Antiquitatis præt[erita] rem liceat dicerem esse."'[431]

[I.754A]

[The Circuit of Gallatum][432]
{!!!} Now, as to the precincts of this ancient town; if I were to trace it out by guess of it I should begin at the Tithe Barne & thence pursue the Rampiare & Ditch till it come at the settle in Parsons Croft. Thence Southwards down the said settle towards the Hall till you [come] to Dob Kill well in Allan Mire. Thence down the current of the said well to the River Troutbeck. Thence \ Westward / down the river to the Romane Way, Bridg[e]s & hippocrene. – And a little below that, turneing N. by old T. Stead till it turns agane Eastwards at the foote of Water Man Crof[t]; Thence directly North up the current

[424] MS: 'And upon some g~~ood~~ \lorious expedition in which they have ~~happy expedition they~~ had another ~~Altar~~ was erected, found about the same time.'
[425] The sentence following reads, MS: '{And may very well be […] to this place, being the only place of rest, which is to touche them.}', but, as it has been written in pencil and overwritten in faded brown ink, this is an unsafe transcription.
[426] This is a direct quotation from Camden, *Britannia* (1607 edn). It translates as, 'The Gallagum of Ptolemy, which to Antoninus was Gallatum, a name supporting and not directly contradicting the distant links; for what [words] the Britons began with 'Gall', the English converted into 'Wal'. Thus, they called Galldriu[m] Wallingford, and Valsever Wallsever etc.' See also Holland (1637 edn), 761D.
[427] 'Camden writes thus: "the River Eden flows westward – through Kirkbythore, under which can be seen great building stones, as if of a town."' Camden's Latin is as follows, 'Intento hinc cursu in occasum aestivum fertur fluvius per Buley castrum episcopi Carleolensis et Kirkby Thore, sub quo magna rudera vetusti opidi visuntur …' Machell's quotations from Camden's Latin occasionally only approximate to Camden's text.
[428] See Part 3, Ch.2: 'Correspondence with John Adams, cartographer. 1686/7.'
[429] Plumpton (between Penrith and Carlisle on the A6 road) is the site of the Roman camp Voreda or 'Old Penrith'. Machell mentioned Plumpton in Part 3, Ch.3, Roman Antiquities,VI.245, IV.82; in Part 1, Ch.6, Brough, I.401 and I.417; and on MS.IV.76A.
[430] A word placed between 'such' and 'is' is unclear but the comment appears to mean, 'In the manner of the Greeks'. A note written along the left margin of I.745A asks, 'Query Where should this come in?'
[431] 'And Roman coins are recovered from under there. Today they name it Wheallep Castle.' (In the margin, 'Whelllep') '... known [names?] are written, if, with the passing of Antiquity, I may be allowed to say it.' Again, the Latin presented in Machell's notes only approximates to Camden's text in *Britannia.* See Camden, *Britannia* (1607 edn).
[432] I.745A and I.745B are scrap note pages, 9cm x 20cm., with text written in several directions across and along each page. A note written along the left margin of I.745A, asks, 'Query. Where should this come in?' [a question that might well have been asked by this oft-perplexed editor. The hand appears to be that of William Nicolson but the sentiment is one that I share. Ed.]

[I.754B]

of Kelke to Stean Brig; & so agane Northwards up Kelk Meadow \ Bottom / to Slan Flatt. So on Northwards down Haneing, & about the Coste of Little Hall to Kirk – Ing – Runnet[h].[433] Thence \ Sc. / up Kirk to the Tithe Barne. This I should take to be the circuit of Gallatum.[434]

[Machell's Notes: I.745A and I.745B]]

{There is a short account of Roman Inscriptions in my [blank] and which I read thus: Forta valla (sive vallati N[omen] sacru[m]),[435] wherein ~~the N of the Ancient T is light touched~~ there seemeth to be a light touch of the Old Gallatum.}[436]

{I had not known that Honourable person – Roger Machell, at least no[t] so much as I know of him \ now / but from Roger Head in the High Demaine, being the only thing here that reteineth his memory: and what is published of him in [blank]}

[**Narrative 6**]

[Further Notes on the descents of the Machells, the Kirkbythores and the Catuli]

[I.508]

Ad Crakanthorp; et deus \ tam / patriae quam paterni domus o[r]namenta[437]

3[0] Ed. 2. [1309-1310]	John de Kirkbythore Partes de Kirkbythore	Thomas Mauchel	Robert de Newbiggin
3[0] Ed. 2.	John de Kirkbythore Ten[t] m. de Kirkbythore	Thomas Machell ten. Crakanthorp	Robert de Newbiggin tenet Newbiggin
43 Ed. 3 [1369-1370]	John de Kirkbythore Ten[t] M de Kirkbythore	John Mauchael tenet m. de Crak.	William de Crakanthorp, ten. m. de Newbiggin Johes (de) Crakanthorp & de Newby
10. Henry 5th {!} He reigned but 9.[438]	Johes de Kirkbythore, m. de Kirkbythore	John Machell m. de Crakanthorp	{Joh. Crak. Esq. Rec[eiver] and stuart for R.3. In MS5, p.84.

Out of the pedigree Gilbertus de Wherton

Joan fil William Collynson de Kirkbythore 2. Henry 4. [1400-1401]	Obijt 14. Hen. VI = Johanna, relicta et superstes 15. Hen. 6. [1436-1437]	=Johannam fil. et heredem [blank] Kirkby [blank] de Kirkbythore	I doe believe that Gilbert de Querton maryed the heiress of John de Kirkbythore: It agrees so well with the inquisitions – John de Kirkbythore being seised thereof in the last of Henry 5th, & she left a widow, Anno 16. H. VI. [1437-1438]
Henry 4. reigned 12 years after:[439] Hen. 5. 9.[440]	Scribitur Joanna fil William Collynson de Kirkythore, 2 Hen. 4 ~~et fill~~ abbi Joana fil. et hær. Kirkby de Kirkbythore		
Hen. VI. [1422-1461]	Et Johanna fil. et haer. of Kirkby of Kirkbythore, relict et superstes, 15. Henry VI. [1436-1437]	= John Wherton de Kirkbythore, 18. and 20. Hen. [1439-1442]	

[Machell's Notes 'de Kirkbythore'. I.484] [441]

Walderi de Kirkbythore

---

[433] This word is partly obscured by the binding.
[434] MS 'Gallagum' (the 'g' has been overwritten with 't' to form 'Gallatum'.)
[435] 'The name of the walled [Sc. town]'.
[436] Machell here seems to say that 'Gallatum' sounds similar to 'Vallatum'.
[437] 'At Crakanthorp: and God is as much the embellishment of the fatherland as of a father's house.'
[438] Henry V died in the 10th year of his reign, in 1422.
[439] Henry IV reigned from 1399 to 1413.
[440] The 9th year of Henry V was 1421/22.
[441] Taken from a short set of notes on MS.I.484.

|
Mr Ada[m] fil[ius] Walderi de Kirkbythore 6^0 Joh. [1204-1205] ut supponitur è MS carta Com. Pemb.}[442]
|
Gilbert de Kirkbythore: 14. of Edward I. [1285-1286]
|
John de Kirkbythore: 43. of Edward 3. [1369-1370] è cart penes Mr Blenkinsop.[443]

[I.544B]

The Ancient family of the Machell of Crakenthorp {are} in all likelihood (as may be collected the near affinity of their name & seate by ancient tradition & deeds without date which I have) descended from the foresaid Whelp as the common ancestour both of Machells & Kirkbythores*; the former reteineing their ancient NAME, with a marke of disfavour, perhaps from the Conquerour \ as haveing opposed him in defence of their country; / for they were call'd Malchens, Malchaells & Machells, & adhered to that name of their greatest glorie, still holding there with the Lordship of Crakenthorp \ at the least by Capitulation / Idq[u]e non per Drengagium sed per nobile cornagij servicium sicut ipsi NORMANNI;[444] the latter changeing it & instead thereof assumeing the sirname de Kirkbythore {which is long since extinct.} But however it was, this is most certaine that the Machells of Crakanthorp have [blank]

Machell's Notes: I.544B]

*Speak of Whelp of Whelp Castle; sayeth what to say hon[oura]bly.

[I.757]

[Narrative 7]

The Shorter Way for the General History (the other being more fit for a Private Booke of the Family) is this that follows

The Castle at this end being called Whelp Castle, & the Gill at the other end under Caer Verron bein[g] called Glen-Whelp, so that Whelp is the same with the English Saxons that Catulus was amongst the Romans. But upon their recess and \ the others […][445] / they chang'd the names thereof of places & persons into their own language;[446] whence the ancient Abalaba was called Appelby; Bælineum, Balineum; Bravoniacum as Browham; & thus Gallagum, of which wee are treating, was called Kirkbythore.

And there was one Whelp \ Vir / Lord of this place about the time of the Norman Conquest \ as we find / which if Camden had know he would not believed, since [Whelp] quite eclipsed the ~~Ancient~~ old name of the Towne.[447]

{The Family of Catuli with Cæsar}

For the Catuli were an ancient, famous and florishing family amongst the Romans, of which there were no less than 5 Consuls, and one of them – a \ most / famous oratour before Tullies time – was Quintus Luctatius Catulus, brother to Caius Julius Cæsar[448] who first entered Brittaine and alterd his sirname into \ that of / Cæsar upon an extraordinary occasion que Cæsus ex utero matris fuerit, from being cut out of his mothers \ womb.[449] / But his nephew Augustus, who was call'd Cæsar also \ and at a greater distance from then / had a Greyhound stamped \ upon / the reverse of his coynes & ~~medals~~; a Proper Emblem of his original \ descent at being descended of the Roman Catuli. /

---

[442] '…as may be supposed from a MS document of the Countess of Pembroke.'
[443] 'From a charter in the possession of Mr Blenkinsop.'
[444] 'And this not through drengage but through the noble service of cornage, like the Normans themselves.'
[445] This word is illegible.
[446] MS: 'they chang'd ~~to the~~ the names thereof of places & persons into ~~other names of~~ their own language.'
[447] This paragraph is followed by '~~§4.~~', struck through.
[448] MS: '~~And (That~~ was Quintus Luctatius Catulus (~~of which sir names most of them were~~) brother to Caius Julius Cæsar'.
[449] See below: I.758.

{And} Note ut Catulus was with the Romans, the same was Whelp with the English Saxons, who succeeded them here & changd the names of persons and places into their own language; whence Gallatum was cald Kirkbythore from their \ Saxon God / Great God \ Thor whose Temple was here / which they worshiped here. And a famous one it should seem to have bin which gave name to the place \ since it quite traduced / and quite obliterated the ancient name of it. This Thor was worship[ped] after this manner. But the Castle they called Whelp Castle, as it is to this day. And there was one Whelp &c.[450]

[Machell's Notes: I.757]

{Write in this paper Referrenda}[451]

[I.758]

{And the Catuli were famous with them \ 5 consuls / Cæsar himselfe who 1[t] entered Brit. being one of that House. But he changed his Sir name into that of Cæsar, ab eventu quodam Extraord[inario] (ab utero matris Cæsus fuerit)[452] from being cut out of his mothers womb.[453] And Augustus his nephew (who continued the sir name of Cæsar) also had a greyhound stampd upon his Coyn, a proper Emblem.}[454]

[I.756]

August[us] Cæsars haveing a Greyhound upon his Coyn.

Augustus Cæsar, Nephew to Q[uintus] Luctatius Catulus, the Brother of Julius, had a Greyhound stampe: all Confirmations that som of the Catuli were here before him and might now […][455] Which is not a thing to be wonder'd at – for the Rom[ans] certainely were not exhausted but they left som men of Note to lead the Brittaines & defend the frontiers, who intermaryed & continued amongst them. {Rex Scot. 1135.}[456]

[I.758]

§3. [The Maiden Way]

{This maiden of which I now spoke calld Maiden Great & Maiden Gall in deed without date – goes directly N. over the m[ountains] from K[irkby Thore] to a fort cald Caer Verron near the Picts Wall.} And Though there be An old wifes fable of a Westmorlands Gentlemans who \ ~~liv'd Hear / in this Country~~, \ that / making This \ casway / way for the love a maide That lived in Northumberland: who would not have him when he had don't until he could set It up on end. ~~Yet~~ (leaveing such storys with their relaters) I do conclude It {to be a worke of} The Romes, and \ that it was either / Don by Varronius because his name~~s~~ is not onely \ preservd / in the Fort of Caer Verron \ by the Picts Wall whither it leads / but inscribed allso upon a Read Rock near to this place called Crawdundale in the Parish of Newbiging. By which it should seem that Varronius \ rught[457] / caus'd this ~~name~~ \ way / to be made.[458] {Where at a Little […][459] House I found this ~~inscription~~ fragment of an Inscription, the Insc. being burn'd out by use as the stone behind the fire.}

[450] See the first part of I.757; the phrase also occurs on I.761-2; twice on I.767.
[451] With regard to the term, 'Referrenda', the title on the previous page, I.756, is, 'Referrenda. Kendal Barony. Gallana Anglie opidum nunc Killenton near Kendal in Westm'land', but the page is otherwise empty.
[452] '.... from an extraordinary occurrence (he was cut from his mother's womb.)'
[453] The name 'Caesar' is from 'caesaries' meaning 'red-haired'.
[454] See MS.I.757for a similar paragraph.
[455] The rest of the sentence has perished.
[456] The king of Scotland in 1135 was David I (1124-1153). Pasted here is a scrap of paper containing notes which have been included in this edition elsewhere. The paper is torn, suggesting a longer text.
[457] 'wrought'.
[458] For analysis of this inscription, see Part 3, Ch.3, Roman Antiquities, VI.193-97.
[459] This word is blotted. It begins with 'D' and appears to have 'ing' at the end, although even this is partly obscured by the binding.



Figure 1.14.14. Inscription. I.758.

§4. Or \ else / perhaps, som of The Catuli might be concernd in this negotiation*, since the castle \ which ~~standeth~~ stood / at this end of the casway \ ~~was by the Saxons~~ / is called Whelp-Castle \ q. castrum Catulina. / And the Gill by Caer Verron\ the way under Caer Verron / at the other end of it is called Glen-Whelp†.
The 1. that I meet with of this \ ancient / name in the \ Romane / History, was called C. Luctatius Catulus; And was Consul of Rome with A. Posthumus Albinus, anno ~~Urbis cond. 511 & anno~~ mundi 3723 \ et Urbis conditie 511‡ / of whom tis related or rather of Quintus Luctatius Catulus⸸, Consul of Rome with Manlius Actius the next year following, that with 300 Roman ships he vanquished 600 of the Carthaginians, with Amilcar their admiral,[460] & 15 of his original {2. Anno mundi 3724.}

[Machell's Notes: I.758]
*Or perhaps som of the Catuli might have an hand in it.
†And from this Glen Whelp might possibly arise the name of Whelpdel} {Eutropius. 1.2} {for Whelp is the same with the English Saxons as that Catulus was amongst the Romans.} {See Glen in Ray & Skinner}[461]
‡Convallis Catuli Anno Mundi 3723 {Eutropius p.2.}[462]
⸸Take which you please, the mistake is not great nor much material.

[I.759]
at the Ægêan Isles 'twix Cicily and Affrica. And so put an end to the 1ˢᵗ Punic-War. A man of no less mercy than valour; for at their intreaty he granted them Peace upon the condition that they should quit all that part of Spain which lyes beyond Iberis, and surrender unto him the Isles \ of Sardinia & / of Cicily, which was don accordingly.

The next was Quintus Luctatius Catulus,[463] brother to C. Julius Cæsar,[464] whose mother Popilia was prima pro rostris laudata mulier apud Romanos*.[465] & although Cæsar {who tooke the name Cæsar ab eventu quodam extraordinario q[uod] cæsus ab utro matris fuerit[466] being cut out of his mothers womb.} And although Cæsar changd {his name and began a new family, yet Augustus his nephew, as remembering the House from which he sprang, had a Greyhound stamped upon his Coyn.†}[467]

[460] Hamilcar Barca.
[461] John Ray, *Collection of English Words* (1674) 2nd edn, enlarged (1691) [the first dialect dictionary in a European language: see https://academic.oup.com/book/9269]; Stephen Skinner, *Etymologicon Linguae Anglicanae* (1671).
[462] Eutropius (*fl.* CE 363–387), *Breviarium Historiae Romanae* (*Summary of Roman History*).
[463] Quintus Lutatius Catulus: Roman politician, died 61/60 BC: https://www.britannica.com/biography.
[464] MS: 'The next was Quintus Luctatius Catulus, Brother to C. Julius Cæsar {~~who tooke the name Caesar ab eventum quodam extrao. from being cut out of his mothers womb~~} (who ~~I treated before~~)'.
[465] '… the first woman among the Romans to be lauded from the public platform.'
[466] 'From an extraordinary occurrence, that he was cut from his mother's womb.'
[467] A small amount of this text is missing; much is squeezed into the margin, some of it crossed through.

This Catulus was a famous Orator before Tullies time;[468] of whom he writes (as of one of his masters) in his 2 *Booke de Oratore* {Cicero *de Orat*. L.2. p.177},[469] and brings in Antonius speakeing thus of Him, "Confidentius loquor qu[ando] Catulus auditor accessit: cuj non solum NOS, Latini sermonis; sed \ etiam / GRÆCI ipsi, solent Linguæ \ suæ / subtilitatem elegantiamque Concedere."[470] Where he calls him Senex Quintus Catulus; and so he might well, being Consul of Rome with Caius Manlius when Cicero was but VI years of age, anno mundi 3864, urbis conditæ, 652.[471] And the next year following he was Proconsul (Caius Marius, & Marcus Aquilius being Consul at that Time) when he, with Marius vanquis'd the Cimbers. Ubi Catulus felicius pugnavit, sayes Eutropius.[472] But after this, upon a sedition ariseing in the City, Marius

[Machell's Notes: I.759]

*{q. whether it will com in better here, or before.}
†{see Leighs *Accedence of Arm[orie].*}[473]

[I.760]

(being then in greater Authority and perhaps not well pleased with his Noble Character) commands him to dye, the citizens intercedeing invane; and caus'd him to be stifled in bed with hot burneing coals. But his death was after revenged by Sulla,[474] who slew Marius Junior. Concerneing which Lucan writeth thus: Quid sanguine Manes Placatos referam Catuli?[475]

{Popularity}
But Catulus his son was so much esteem'd of amongst the ROMANES that when Sylla was dead and he recommended great Pompey unto them as their onely General; asking them if they would continue (In uno Magno Pompeio omnia reponere)[476] to put all their trust in great Pompey alone? They all cryed out with one consent saying, In Te O Catule*! In Thee O Catullus. He was Consul of ROME with Marcus Lepidus Anno m. 3888, urbis conditæ 676. And subdued Lepidus when he went about to revive the ashes and blow up the sparks of the late Civil Wars after Syllas death: Yet \ he / would ~~he~~ not Triumph in the Blood of his \ own / Countrymen, ~~but returned home~~ \ and therefore caused /a small sword only \ to be / caryed before him \ at his returne, / resembling rather a Mourner than Conquerour. He was

[Machell's Note: I.760]

*{Valer. Maximus p.389.}[477]

[I.761]

contemporary with Tullius Cicero, and saved the Capitol when ~~It was~~ set on fier. And left this noble character after him that, 'He was a man of no less Integrity, than of gravity, and of Authority amongst his Citizens.'
Lastly, \ one / Sextus Ælius Catulus was Consul of ROME with Caius Sensius Saturninus in the VI year after CHRISTS nativity, which was Anno Mundi 3968 & urbus conditæ 756.

[468] Marcus Tullius Cicero.
[469] Cicero (106-43 BC), author of *De Oratore*.
[470] '"I speak with more confidence whenever Catulus has approached to listen: not only do we acknowledge his subtlety and elegance in the Latin language, but so do the Greeks themselves in their own tongue."'
[471] 'The year following the foundation of Rome.' [The official Roman chronology.]
[472] Eutropius, *Breviarium Historiae Romanae*.
[473] Gerard Leigh, *The Accedence of Armorie* (1563).
[474] Lucius Cornelius Sulla, 138-78 BC.
[475] 'Why should I mention the departed Shades of Catulus, appeased by blood?' Lucan (Marcus Annaeus Lucanus, 39-65 AD), *Pharsalia*, or, *De Bello Civili* (*On the Civil War*).
[476] 'To place everything in one man, Pompey the Great.'
[477] Valerius Maximus was a Latin writer and author of a collection of historical anecdotes: *Factorum ac dictorum memorabilium libri IX* (*Nine books of memorable deeds and sayings*), also known as *De factis dictisque memorabilibus* or *Facta et dicta memorabilia*.

Now, what Catulus was with the Romans, the same was WHELP with the English Saxons who succeded them here till the Norman Conquest ~~for about~~ and changed all the names of ~~Cityes &~~ places \ & persons / (or at least most of them) into their Own Language: so making use of the Roman Temple which I spoke of before; or (perhaps) erecting a new one here to \ the honour of / their great God Thor~~e~~ (whence we have the word Thorsday) they called the Town adjacent thereto Kirkbythore;[478] but the castle wherein wee suppose it had stoode by {Castrum Catulinum} they called Whelp-Castle as it is to this day.[479]

[I.762]

Now, as Catulus was with the Romans, the same was Whelp with the English Saxons – so this castle might be called Whelp Castle from som of the Catuli by whom it was built; and by whom perhaps the way might be made.[480]

§5. And there yet rem[ained] one of the Catuli whom the Saxons calld Whelp, Lord of this place and parts adjacent (vir magni nominis et Authoritatis)[481] about the time of the Norman Invasion. But wee cannot sup[pose] It ~~builded~~ \ erected / by him, being a Romane structure & long before his time; but rather by som of the Romane Catuli, from \ whom / he \ might spring / may seeme to have bin descended; for there was but 626 yeares \ and many familyes have lasted so long / betwixt the recess of the Roman Armyes ~~who doubtless left to in men of note to instruct lead the Brit~~ and the Norman Conquest \ invasion / […][482] and doubtless when the [Romans] build the Picts Wall, put the Brittaines to defend it.[483]
{The Brittons to defend themselves, and doubtless when they left their colonyes they would put them in a defensive posture and leave some trusty Rom[an] to head them, who settled & intermarried amongst them.}[484]
But for ~~what was~~ things that were before the Conquest wee are much in the Darke*, as Sir William Dugdal himselfe doth planely confess;[485] (and for my \ own / part I must \ freely / declare) that I never \ yet / saw, an Original Evidence, ~~whither~~ in the Tower or ~~anywhere~~ \ elsewhere / that I could be assurd was the ~~afore the Conq~~ \ beyond that date / ~~w the Conquest~~, which makes me conjecture \ conclude / That the Normans took care to call in ~~& cancell~~ all former Deeds Charters & Evidences, to the End That all holding of Them, It might make their government more suer & absolute. \ to ~~destroy them~~ all when they alterd the government & make oer still more firm & secure. /

§6. This Whelp \ or Catulus as / it should seem, had Isue 2 son, for the \ very / name doth witness \ ~~repeates the~~ / \ proclameth / the one; and this Descent \ which I have subjoyned / will evince the others, Haeth & Gamel; whereof the former being removd \ from hence / was called Le Maschael – & Malus Catullus† q[uo]d instar ferocissimi in hostes sevijt.[486] The others of in mane peaceable temper, continued here \ a name less injourious races imply called Gamel, son of Whelp & C. / who at last assumed the sirname of Kirkbythore‡.[487]

---

[478] MS following: '~~as tis writ to this day And the Maga …within Latin~~'.
[479] A similar paragraph to that of §5, placed here in the MS, has been deleted from this edition. An additional margin note, '{N.B. The ringstone found with a man upon it, hideing his head as it were in the […] with a […] at his foote; as like wise the pot sherd found in the well […]}', is too close to the body text to allow accurate transcription.
[480] MS: A similar sentence appears on I.767.
[481] 'A man of great reputation and authority.'
[482] This is followed by 7cm of illegible text.
[483] MS: 'and doubtless ~~the Remnants~~ when they build ~~Walyes (even in those dayes have besides~~ the Picts Wall put the Brittaines to defend ~~the land~~ it.'
[484] Another MS margin comment reads: '{The hard task of def[ending] themselves & secureing the frontier. The Roman \ Emperor / would not leave them defenceless without som men of note \ & qu. / to lead and instruct them & [blank]}'
[485] MS: '\ doth planely / doth confess.'
[486] '... because he raged against the enemy like the fiercest of men.'
[487] MS: '~~& by the pane of Gamel~~ son of Whelp & C. who at last assumed the sirname of Kirkbythore' [followed by 2cm of illegible text].

{ad Crak[enthorpe] Mal.}
That the Mul, Mau or Malus is beyond dispute of Norman imposition; & a note of hostile & invi[n]cible \ valour / courage⸸, and affixd to the names of persons of the greatest quality amongst the Normanes. So: Malgenes, Maugerns, Malus Gerus – Gerus itselfe being a common name, as in the Deed of W. Malus Cat[ul]us, so the[y] olim calld the Best and Bravest: in[fra] malia[m] Terram Geri.[488]

[Machell's Notes: I.762]

*~~I could never meete with any \ original / Evidence~~, {only King Edward the Confessor Ch. and that is an extract of an original.}
†{which I have seen (in the evidence of booke of the family of Crakanthorp) translated.}
‡{And see this more large in my Booke of Rom[an] inscription.}
⸸{Malpus locus inaccessibilis – Malcheal Cat[ulus] Invincibilis Catulus.}[489]

[I.763]

{Catulus vulgo Whelp = dictus}

1. Haltheus = Eva
Ma – Catulus = Lat.
Sive[490]
Mal – Whelp [=] Saxon
Malchene [=] Gal.
Le Ma\u/lchael [=] Norm.
{Whose descendants were soon hereafter sealed with a figure \ fierce dog / (or som such creature) with a forked tail in a rappid rampant & ravenous posture.} {Leaping as it were, upon his prey.}[491]

{Try and examine if they will fall righ[t]}	Willelmus Ma-Catulus	Umfridas Macatulus et Malchal dictus	Alexand.	
	Galfridas Macatulus			
	Willelmus Machael [fil Galf. Mc]	Thomas Malchael fil Galf. Mc	Henricus	Alexand.
Roger Malus Catulus Dom[ini] custodis mag[num] Ang[liae] sigill[um] but vice-[?] dictus	Alexander Mauchall, Miles	= Domine Dolata de hereditate Johannis		
	Johes Mauchel, fil Alex.			

[488] '... as in the Deed of W. Malus Cat[ul]us – so they once calld the Best and Bravest within the land of the Mali, "Geri".'
[489] 'Malpus: an inaccessible place – Malcheal Catulus: Catulus the invincible.'
[490] 'Or.'
[491] On MS.I.767, a scribbled, faded, pencilled note appears to read: 'A signet of a dog at his foote and the […] I trust as ensigne'.

[I.372A]

M[ANU] ROG[ERI] MAL[I] CAT[ULI] [DOM[INI] CUSTODIS MAG[NUM] ANG[LIAE] SIG[ILLUM] [492]



Figure 1.14.15. The Great Seal of England, kept by Roger Malus Catulus. I.372.

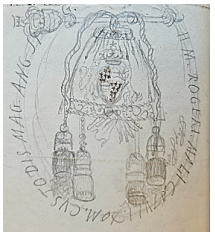


Figure 1.15.16. The Great Seal turned through 180 degrees. I.372.

[I.763]

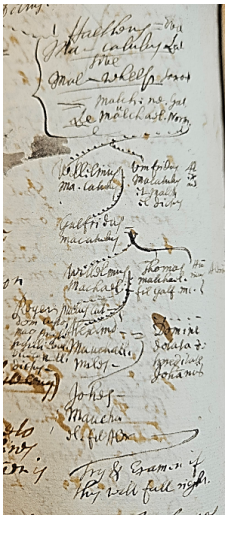


Figure 1.14.17. Machell descent. I.763

[492] 'The great seal of England, by the hand of the Lord Keeper, Roger Malus Catulus'. When turned through 180 degrees the image clearly shows a royal emblem with orb and crown, supported by lion and unicorn, with other emblems on the coat of arms, all suspended from a sceptre by four ropes with tassels. 'Because the tassel was commanded by God to be worn on the borders of all Jewish garments, it became not only an emblem of Christianity but also one of authority, repute and majesty': https://www.heraldryclipart.com/symbolism/t.html.

2. Gamel, the son of Whelp who have Isue = Whealdeve, who had Isue ~~Gil~~b. Gibert, who first assu[m]ed the local Sirname of de Kirkbythore, according to the Norman fashion.
I once thought the Machells had com'd in with the Conquerour ~~& bin and deseended of those Lords that eame in with the Conquest~~, there being a notable city in Flanders and an ancient barony belonging thereto called Machellen,[493] now corruptly Malines. i.e. the city of Machell, as Antwerpen is the city of Antwerp. But ancient Tradition will have it otherwise, that they are descended of Whelp of Whelp Castle; and upon the desolution thereof; whether it has bin thus or soe I dar not determin, quis enim rem tam antiqua[m] pro certo affi[r]me affiimare audit,[494] removed to Crackenthorp, another Lordship belonging unto them.[495] But there is this confirmation of it, that I finde them antiently writ Mali Catuli in deeds without date, which by their character (being the same with *Domesday Booke*) may seem nere the Conquest. And the reason why the epithe[ton] Mal was added to Catulus, is thought to be the same with that of destroying the Castles: being of the opposition made against the Conqueror {as those who adhered to King Charles I in the late Civil Warrs were called maulignants on the like occasion – in which they gloried.}

But the Castle was ruined: And out of its ruines (as planely appear yet by the stones & the hewing of them) \ exactly like to those since dug up / were builde the Church, the Old West Tower in the Parsonage House with the 2 Halls, the Chappel at Sowerby, and all the coynes for the most part of the H[o]uses & Barnes in Kirkbythore. For the Town, wee suppose, standing so near the forest of M[ilburn] was for the most part forrest-building, as som part of Wharton Hall yet remaineth.

[I.767][496]

ad Machell
So that Malus Catulus is the same in effect with the old Roman name Luctatius Catulus; for that is described as a Luctando cum hostibus[497] \ from fluency with them.[498] / Thus, a Malo hostibus inferendo,[499] from Mauling their enemyes – which are very agreeable.[500] And as the old Romans had ther 3 name so gave Hee.

{!} For there was one Whelp, Lord of this place about the [time of the Norman Conquest][501] from whom; or rather from some of his Ancestours (for it was built long before his time) we may boldly conclude it was called Whelp Castle.

Now \ what / Catulus was with the Romans, the same was Whelp with the English Saxons; who calld it Whelp Castle. And there was one Whelp, Lord of this place and the Parts adjacents (vir magni nominis et Authoritatis)[502] about the time of the Norman Conquest. But wee cannot suppose it erected by him, being a worke of the Romanes, ~~and~~ long before that time his days; but rather by some of the Roman Catuli, of \ whom / perhaps he might be descended, for it was but 600 years and Many familyes have lasted \ continued / so Long upon the same place; Betwixt the Recess of the Romane forces & the coming in of William the Conqueror \ Norman Conquest / &c.– ut §. Quis autem res tam antiquas &c.[503]

[IV.10]

[Final Word on the Machells, the Catuli and Whelp Castle]
It is a received tradition that they came from the Catuli; which family tis thought resided at Whelop or Whelp Castle which may seem to have had its name from the owner as Catuli Castrum, which being

[493] Mechelen, in the province of Antwerp.
[494] 'For who dares to assert such an ancient matter with confidence and certainty?'
[495] MS: '\ removed to Cr., another Lordship belonging unto them / were translated to Crakenthorp.'
[496] Also numbered p.26.
[497] 'For that is described as "striving with the enemy."'
[498] Some words here are obscured by the binding.
[499] 'Thus a "savage attack on the enemy."'
[500] Machell opines that the two phrases agree linguistically.
[501] Some words here are obscured by the binding.
[502] 'A man of great fame and authority.'
[503] 'Quis autem res tam Antiquas pro certo affirmare audet?' 'But who ventures to pronounce for certain on matters so ancient?' Machell hedges his bets once more, see I.509.

turned into English is Whelp Castle, and malus, though a bad word, yet added for honour. The house stood on those fields which are now ploughed land twixt the highway to Carlile from Appleby and the larger part of Kirkby Thore called the Burwens. Most of the houses there are built out of the ruins of it and I myself have seen hewn stone of an incredible bigness diggd up there within these few years, of which you have mention in my Tract of Places.[504]

[III]

[The Parish of Newbiggin]

[I.567]

[Linking paragraph from information on Kirkbythore]
{Next to this Parish on the N. side as has bin say'd,[505] lyeth the Parish & Lordship of Newbiging whose very site, as well as Tradition, bespeaks it as a Canton & member of this: tho long since cutt of I make no doubt, in a legall method and for a sufficient consideration; so that tis now a Distinct ~~Rectory~~ \ Parish / & such I finde that above 140 years since it was the Grange of Hale in a Deed.}

1. Next to the parish of Kirkbythore on the northside (as has bin said) lyes the Parish of Newbiging which tho it seem to be a member and Canton of the \ This / other; yet it is and has bin a distinct ~~rectory~~ \ parish / (~~paying~~ \ payeing / the homage wee spoke of before)[506] ~~many hundreds of years~~ Examp. \ time out of mined above 140 years & perhaps much longer. But so long for certane; because I finde in the XXXV year of King Henry VIII [1543-1544] the Grange of Haile is said to be in the Parish of K & N. It is rated in the First Fruits Office at 4^{l}. 14. 0.; being one of the smalest in all the County;[507] yet they boast that there never was a Poore Parson of N. nor a Rich one of K;[508] which, if it be true must be attributed to generosity of Kirkby Thore Rectors whose gentlemen lived accordingly, & the frugality of the c[urate] ther, who. [blank] & not to satiety,[509] as som would have it.

2. The present Rector is one Mr Dawson, bred up a Chaplaine at Temple Sowerby \ under the Rector of Kirkbythore / in Kirbythore Parish: a very honest & regular man.[510] & before him was one Mr Barrow who was very famous for teaching Arithmatic.[511] The Patronage of it & the Corne Tythe (paying out {only a certane} sum of money) are vested in the Lord of the manner*.

[Machell's Notes: I.567]
*{Cart. Penes Richard Crakanthorp de Newb. An dat Aug. 28 XXV[512] of Henry VIII e Hale \ Gr[ange.] / It is mentioned there to lye in the Parishes of K. and Newbiging: see All the Book.[513]
[VI.186D] {Newbiging East Ward. The Church & Hall visited by Dugdale.}[514]

[504] The 'tract of places' is presumably text describing parishes, which forms the largest part of this edition.
[505] Next to Kirkbythore.
[506] See I.532-53 (Kirkbythore).
[507] For the First Fruits Office, see the English Glossary.
[508] MS: 'It is rated in the First Fruits Office at 4^{o}. 14. 0. being one of the smalest in the \ all / County ~~of Westmorland~~; ~~&~~ yet they boast ~~of it affirme \ ing the fact~~ / That there never was a Poore Parson of N. nor a Rich one of K.' See above, I.552.
[509] MS. 'satatety'.
[510] Thomas Dawson: schoolmaster of Orton (1666); ordained deacon (1670); curate of Temple Sowerby (1670); schoolmaster of Temple Sowerby (1680); rector of Newbiggin (1681-98); died 1698. CCED.
[511] See I.624.
[512] Partly perished; the date could be XXXV, as above.
[513] Illegible last few words; the edge of the margin has perished.
[514] This note has been taken from MS.VI.186D.

[I.567A]

The Bounds of Newbiging Parish

3. The Parish of Newbiging is bounded on the North with Kirkland Parish in Cumberland, being divided from it by Blenkarne Beck from \ the place where it enters / Bramry[515] Pasture \ the place where it enters / descending W. \ to the Demane hedge of / Ackeron Banke[516] {down Craw[dun]dale to Newbiging Miln & so on} Thence on \ the / W. S. ~~S.W.~~ S.E. & N.[517] it is hem'd in \ on every side / with Kirkbythore Parish & divided from it by the \ out \ most / hedge of Acorn Banke demane to Holtsey Dike Nooke, where it meets with Hale Sike. Thence by Hale Sike ascending Eastwards till you com at the place where it enters Potts Pasture. Thence by Hale \ Dike / Hedge & Blacklees \ Dike / Hedge ~~till you com at the place called~~ \ to / Cowgill Foote {Ancient, if it be a not a solicisime to call it so}. Thence by the settle of the said Gill \ intersecting the Maiden Way / (which crosseth the famous Maiden Way describeing a St Andrews X)[518] to Kirkhouse Mill. Thence by Lile-Beck ascending E. to a place calld Bull Meadow in Milburne Field. Thence by The Ri\n/g Dike or outmost hedge of the said field (which [hedge] is \ alwayes[519] / maintained by Newbiging men), to Bramry Dike Nooke. Thence by Bramry Dike till you com at the River where we began.[520] {Within which circumference the soyle is [blank]}

[I.567B]

[Alternative description of part of the Bounder]
Thence on the S. & S.E. by K. P. by Hale Sike or Potts Sike, from the said Corner of Holtsey Wood, ascending Eastwards & \ almost / to Potts Yeat. Thence agane with K[irkby] Moore on the E. from which tis divided by an hedge or dike – up to Hale – & thence by Blacklees Dike till you come at a place calld Cow-gill Foote. Thence by Cow-gill (a settle which sometimes runns with water \ & crosses the Maidens / till you com almost to Milburne \ Kirkhouse / Mill. Thence by Lile Beck ascending Eastwards to a Place calld Bull Meadow which is in Milburne Field. Thence by Milburne Ring[521] & thence by Bramry Dike by B.[522]

Very good corne, moehay[523] & pasture.[524]
It hath bin formerly \ well / replenished with wood but ~~Then~~ now there is little ~~but~~ \ excepting only / in the New Parke: which often is ~~ash~~ birch and oake. But here is great plenty of quality huen stone of a red \ brickish / coll[our] which is digg in 2 Quarryes – the one at the corner of the New Parke whence I suppose most of the stones in the Hall have bin ~~taken~~ conveyed – the other at a Rock in Crawdundale whence the stones of Whelp Castle seemes to have comd, where there is ~~yett a~~ \ to be seen / old Romane Inscription – which Camden hath taken notice of \ expolyshd[525] / in his *Britannia*. Sc. as followeth [blank][526]

---

[515] 'Bramery': Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 126.
[516] Acorn Bank.
[517] These compass points are unclear, much of the text has been scored through or altered.
[518] Shape of St Andrew's cross: a saltire, like the letter X.
[519] There follows an illegible word, which was thought to suit the subject better than 'maintained', as demonstrated by Machell's use of a pecked line.
[520] The next passage has been deleted as it is repeated on the following page.
[521] Word partly perished, probably 'dike'.
[522] The page has perished here. There is a sketch of part of the parish boundary walk in the left-hand margin.
[523] Mowhay: *OED* gives the meaning as 'A yard or enclosure containing mows; a stack yard.' However, the context here appears to be of a mown hay-crop.
[524] Two further lines of text have been almost obscured by the binding; MS: ' … the last but Tenants hands scarce ~~excepting~~ \ save / in \ amongst the / ~~the hands~~ \ tenants hands / ~~of the Lord of~~ the…'
[525] Perhaps, 'exposited': to reveal, exhibit, show clearly; to expound. *OED*.
[526] Camden's transcription was given to him by Reginald Bainbrig, headmaster of Appleby School, as follows--- 'VΛRONIVS/ ----ECTVS LEG. XX. V. V./----ΛEL. LVCΛNVS/----P. LEG. II. ΛVG. C. That is to say … Varronius Præfectus legionis vicesimæ valentis victricis ... Ælius Lucanus Præfectus Legionis Secundæ Augustæ, castrametati sunt … Varromium captaine of the xx. Legion valens Victrix…'

6. This is a place at unity in itself and admitts no division, being one town one ~~Lordship~~ Constablewick one Lordship; & in it only one \ ~~having in it~~ / Hall [or] Gentlemans Seat in [the] Parish.{A good old fashond building, with Turrets & Battlements – The seat of Richard Crakanthorp Esq. \ who original I have builded[527] here; / a very worthy & sober Gentleman and a ~~very~~ good Churchman who seldom absents him selfe from Prayers which they have 3ce a week, Sc. on Wed & Friday, Eucharist; Matins: Sunday, Wednesday & Friday \ secundum usu[m] Ecclesiæ Marie / de K.}[528]

[I. 624][529]

Newbiggin Parish

[Author: Rev. Christopher Barrow, Parson of Newbiggin]

1677

Newbiggin soe writt in Ancient Record is a Parish consisting of the Towneship of Newbiggin and of part of the hamlet of Haile; It is within the Diocese of Carlile and in the East Ward of the Bottome of Westmorland. It is bounden South and West with the Lordships of Kirkbythore and Temple Sowerbie, on the East with Milburne and on the North with the Lordship of Culgath.

At the North end of the Towne runs a little beck which descends from the high mountaine Crosfell. This beck from its first riseing untill its fall into the river Eden divides the twoe counties Westmorland and Cumberland. Upon the Rocks in the banks of this beck in a place called Cradundle neare Newbiggin were formerlie seene characters and ancient inscriptions which are now defaced saveing one which has certaine letters and characters scarcelie to be discerned; but I suppose Camdin makes mention of them in his *Britania*.[530]

The forme of it is for the most parte oblong, and is in Circumference about three myles; the qualitie of the soyle in generall is a Redish clay not verie fertall, it consists much of arable land and pasture ground. It hath noe mynes or quarries but of stone, no fewell but what they gett upon the moores.

Item: Coles from Hartside.[531]

The Church is called the Church of St Edmund, dedicated as is supposed to that Saint. It hath neither Spire nor Steeple and but twoe litle bells, It is a Parsonage but the meanest in Westmorland or as is verilie thought, in all the North.[532] The tythe corne belongs to the Lord of the mannor by the prescription under the yearelie rent of ix^{li} \ vj^{s} / and viii^{d}[533] and in horse grasse to the Parson of the Parish. The gleebe land is verie small indeed, and the Parsonage \ house / a thatched one; it stands at the north west end of the Towne neare to the church.

The mannor house is in the north end of the Towne close by the beck; it is the seate of that ancient and worthie familie of the Crakanthorpps Lords of the Mannor and patrons of the Church.

Cetera ignore.[534]

Per me Christo. Barrowe Rectorem ibidem.[535]

[I.626][536]

Newbigging Parish [Notes][537]

Newbigging church belongs Newbigging. It is called Ecclesia St Edmundi de Newbiggin in an evidence, penes Lancelotu[m] Machel de Crakanthorp dated 1375 49 Edward 3.

---

[527] One word is illegible here.

[528] 'Following the use of the Church of St Mary of Kirkbythore'.

[529] Written in another hand, apart from the title. The author was Rev. Christopher Barrow, see I.567. CCED notes that Barrow was rector of Newbiggin from 1664 to 1680; he would have been alive to answer Machell's queries, sent during the 1670s.

[530] Clearly, Barrow had decided to leave secondary-source research to Machell.

[531] In Machell's hand.

[532] See Machell on the comparative wealth of Kirkbythore and Newbiggin incumbents: I.567.

[533] £9 6s 8d.

[534] 'The rest [of the information requested] I do not know.'

[535] 'By me, Christopher Barrow, rector there.' The word 'Crawdundle' is written in pencil in another hand near the foot of the page; for Crawdundle and Varronius, see III. 283.

[536] Also numbered p.29.

[537] The notes are in Machell's hand.

This place gave name to an ancient family:
Johannes de Newbigging, circa 6. Johanis [1204-05])
Robert de Newbigging, 14. Edward 1. [1285-1286]) T.M. e Cartis Antiq.[538]
It passed to the Crakanthorpes after by marrying an Heiress {Emma, the daughter of Robert de Newbigging.} I finde mentioned in evidences as witnesses & otherwise John de Crakenthorp vicecom. Westm. 21. Richard 2 [1397-1398]. Carte de Berwise, penes Mr Blenkinsop 21 R. 2.[539]
One John de Crackenthorpe the younger was Receiver to the Lady Elizabeth (Piercy) widdow of John Lord Clifford, of her proffites in Westmorland è cavit \ Comi / 5^0 Henry 6.[540]

[Mr Barrow's Cat, Dick.]
There is a most memorable story concerneing a cat in this parish*.
One Mr Barrow an ancient gentleman \ & Rector here / famous for teaching the Art of Arithmatick,[541] was a lover of cats and had 2 which he kept \ about him: / one calld Thom \ or Dick – if not 3 / the other Jeffrey ~~of which~~ \ & Sc. Dick, / being more bold than welcom \ one time / with his masters Trencher, receved a sharp rebuke for insolence \ being knockd of the board / which he tooke so ill that he appeard noe \ more ~~for som dayes after~~ in his presence for 2 or 3 dayes / but came at last under the Table with somthing in his mouth which they tooke for a mouse (not regarding it \ 2 / much) \ But / he lep up with it behinde his masters Chare & drop'd in his Tankerd which he usually kept in an hole of the Chimney \ to drinke when he pleased; / which being discovered \ som espying, / ~~when~~ they ~~searched what it was~~ \ looked what it was & / it proved a \ great / toade, ~~which som doe imagin to be don in malice; & for this the cat lost his life~~ \ and because it was judged to be an act of the cat of *propense mallise*,[542] they condem'd him to dye, and chopd of his head. /

Art.
There is a \ small / rock by the \ on the left side the / river, a little above the miln at a place call'd Cawdundale, wherin wee yet finde in fair & deep caracters but uneven lines this Inscription. VERONIVS &c. which I have explaned in K[irkbythore],[543] speakeing there of the Campe which lyes near Hale: I thinke in this parish. And on the moore above it which belongs to Nubiging called [blank] is a large round trench

[Machell's Notes: I.626]

*{Query of Rowly Hodgson?}

[I.627]

which may seeme to have bin one of the Brittish fortifications out of which Var[r]onius ~~seems to have put the~~ (enca[m]ping at the other place) may seem to have chas'd them & so left that Inscription as a memorial to after ages: But these[544] places seemeth since to have bin translated into sheepfoldes or Leckes[545] for milking there ewes, which hath bin in practice hereabouts in the memory of man.[546] & the people payd a prescription rate in the Easter books; iiij^d a score, as I have bin informed by Christopher[547] Teasdale of Kirkhouse near Milburne for the Milke Tythe of them.

[538] 'Thomas Machell – from ancient deeds.'
[539] 'In a Barwis deed at Mr Blenkinsops.'
[540] 'From a copy deed of 1426-27.'
[541] Rev. Christopher Barrow, rector, 1664-1680. Barrow was followed by Thomas Dawson in 1681 (CCED). Machell portrays Barrow here as an ancient, historical figure but he used him as an informant in the 1670s, see I.567A (above).
[542] 'Intentional malice', see Richard Burn, *The Justice of the Peace, and Parish Officer*, Vol. 2 (1780), 490.
[543] See above, III.283.
[544] MS: 'this'.
[545] The meanings of 'leck' are many and various but as Machell linked the word to sheepfolds, a leck here may mean: 'an assembly area where animals carry on display and courtship behaviour', c.f. Swedish '*lekställe*: mating ground'. *Merriam-Webster Dictionary*, Online.
[546] MS: '~~was~~ \ hath bin / in practice ~~in these~~ hereabouts ~~som 60 years~~, in the memory of man:'
[547] MS: 'Xt'.

[I.620][548]

Ad Newbiggin [Hall]

My Cosan Crakinthorpe de Newbiggin have in their dineing roome 23 matches[549] direct & indirect, som whereof are amongst my paper of Armes. That Hall was built Anno Dom. J. Xti, 1539.[550]

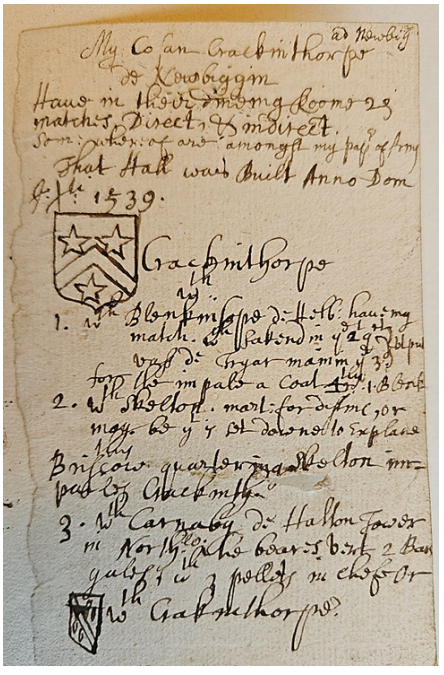


Figure 1.14.18. Crackenthorpe Hall Coats of Arms. I.620.

Crackenthorpe with:
1. Blenkinsope de Helbeck haveing match with Savend in the 2[d] quarter, Voss de Tryarmain in the 3[d.] for they impale a Coat quarterly 1 Blenkinsop. {ut put[o]}[551]
2. With Skelton, marte for distinction, or may be that is set downe to explane this: Briscow quartering Skelton impales Crackinthorp.
3. With Carnaby de Halton Tower in Northumberland; he beares Vert 2 bars Gules, with 3 pellets in chefe Or[552] with Crackinthorpe.

[Machell's Notes and Illustrations: I.649A]

In Newbiggin Hall. {House builded 1539}
In the dineing roome [Arms of] 23 matches direct & indirect.
[top left shield] G[ules] 3 annulets Or [foot] Vert.
[top right shield] G[ules] lyon Or.
[shield 2] † is Vert, bottom Argent. Sawkeld of Rosgill.

[548] This page is headed 'Musgrave P. &'. The text reads, 'ad for townes', pag[es] sequent.' The rest of the page is blank, but a scrap page 7cm x 12cm has been pasted onto it. The contents contain information on Newbiggin.
[549] Matches: marriage alliances.
[550] Here Machell drew a small sketch of a coat of arms, headed, 'Crackinthorpe'.
[551] 'So I think.'
[552] In the MS here, is a tiny sketch of a coat of arms.

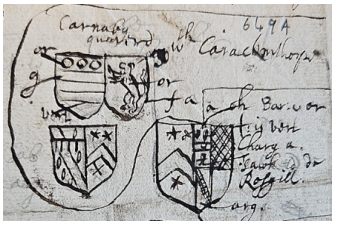


Figure 1.14.19. Newbiggin Hall. 'Carnaby quarterd with Crackenthorpe'. Arms of Salkeld of Rosgill. I.649A.

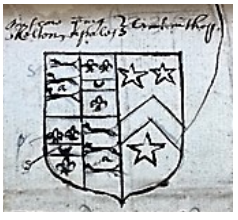


Figure 1.14.20. Newbiggin Hall. Brisco quartering Skelton impaling Crackenthorpe. I.649A.



Figure 1.14.21. Newbiggin Hall. Crackenthorpe: fleur-de-lys Or; Bird Or on ground Gules. I.649A.



Figure 1.14.22. Newbiggin Hall. 'Warcop' Argent on Sable, fess Argent. I.649A.



Figure 1.14.23. Newbiggin Hall. Argent a bend chequy Or and Gules. I.649A.

[I.649B]

My Drin[553] Coin was found at Scitter beck – by Cockermouth.

[553] Uncertain shortened word; possibly a form of the word for a Roman coin, 'denarius'.

[III.283]

{Ad Newbiging} [at Crawdundle]
On the upper rock

LEG II AVG XXIΛ/
{i.e. LEG 2 Aug. or XXI Aug. 20. But the A is not struck through}[554]

On the lower rock at Crawdundell, Sep. 19. 1690.[555]

C. VΛRRONIVS.
ESSVS . LEG XXVV
AEL . LVCANVS
R . LEG II AVG Ç Î

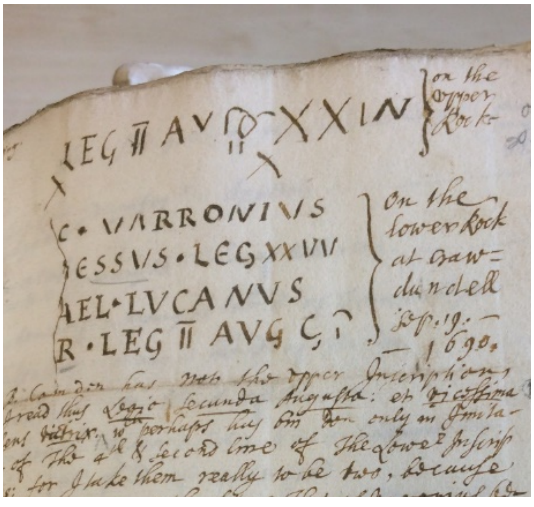


Figure 1.14.24. 'On the lower rock at Crawdundell. Sep.19.1690'. III.283.[556]

[554] The XXI Legion Augusta was never deployed in Britain and the number that reads as 20 is very unclear. If, however, we read Camden's transcription, given to him by Reginald Bainbrigg, headmaster of Appleby School, the inscription appears to be '----VΛRONIVS/ ----ECTVS LEG. XX. V. V./----ΛEL. LVCΛNVS/----P. LEG. II. ΛVG. C. That is to say … Varronius Præfectus legionis vicesimæ valeriae victricis ... Ælius Lucanus Præfectus Legionis Secundæ Augustæ, castra metati sunt … Varronius captaine of the XX. Legion Valeria Victrix…' Apparently misreading the inscription, Machell has read XX. V. V. as XXI, misinterpreting the letters that follow. See above, fn.526.

[555] See *N&B1*, 371: 'Upon the rocks at a place called Crawdundale in this parish, were formerly found characters and ancient inscriptions, all of which are now obliterated, and mouldered away by length of time. Mr Camden takes notice of one, the former part whereof was not legible, but in the other part was to be seen the name of Varronius commander of the 20th legion; and another, in which was the name of Ælius Lucanus commander of the 2nd legion. The 20th legion, he says, was quartered at Deva, now called West-Chester; and the 2nd legion was quartered at Isca, now Caerleon, in Wales; and might be drawn into these parts, for the defence thereof. The exact time hereof is not easily to be set down; yet in order to the pointing out the very time, Mr Camden observes, that there was to be seen in a rock near adjoining, in capital letters, the name of Cneius Octavius Cotta, consul (CN. OCT. COT. COSS.) yet in all the consular rolls he owns he could meet with no such name. … One might be tempted to conclude that some part thereof might be owing to strength of imagination. It is a soft. mouldering stone. And if an inscription which was legible in Camden's time, is not now at all to be found; it seemeth as unlikely that an inscription made (372) in the Roman times should continue in the days of Camden. And it is not impossible, but that the whole might be the work of the ingraver who cut the inscription over the hall door, or the amusement of some labourer at a vacant hour in quarrying stones in the rock there.'

[556] Note the wavy vertical line on the left of the inscription on *Figure 1.14.24*, drawn to demonstrate that only the right-hand side of the inscription can be seen.

N.B. Camden has not the upper Inscriptions which I read thus:

Legio Secunda Augusta et vicessima valens victrix
{or I. AV [blank] XXI. AV}[557]

Which perhaps has bin done only in imitation of the 4th & second line of the lower Inscriptions; for I take them really to be two because of the difference of the letters; that of Var[r]onius being \ a /more antique, & unellegant \ letter / as may be seen by compareing V. A. R. IV, E. L. & G.; for Camden observes that \ within this iland / from the time of Severus till Gordian and afterwards, the letter A[558] was always writ ~~within this iland without~~ in the Romane Inscriptions without ~~the~~ transverse or coupling-stroake.[559] And so it is in that of Var\r/onius, but otherwise in that of Lucanus? That of Varronius, Camden reads thus: Varonius præfectus legionis vicessinæ valentis victricis.[560] But the word p\ræ/fectus or –ectus (however the alteration came) is not visible now, but planely essus.
That of Lucanus he reads in this manner: Ælius Lucanus præfectus legionis secundæ Augustæ, castra metati fuit – or som suchlike thing.[561] {but you see the ct}.[562]
For the legio vicissima valens victrix {the twentyeth valent conquering legion} which quartered at Deva (now called Westchester), and the legia 2da Augusta, which quartered at Isca, now Ca\e/rleon in Wales, being called against the enemy in these parts, may seeme to have made their station here & to have pitched their standing tents. See this confirmd at Kirkbythore*.
{As to the Time which he thinks is decipherd in these capital letters CN. OCJ. COJ. COSS; placed as he tells us on a neighbouring rock (which pair of Consuls are not to be found in the books of the Fasti,[563] & therefore the letters seeme to be useless as to that effect),[564] I can say nothing of it, neither have I yet met with that Inscription or will any other but what engravd upon the upper rock, as which, see above.}[565]

[Machell's Notes: III.283]

*{Which might very well be; but besides this, I reason to think that the Romanes used to leave Inscriptions upon rocks that furnished for the stone which wee finde yield them stone for their public building.}

[III.285]

[The Crackenthorpes]

The Pedigree of the Crackenthorpes*
Robert Lord Dapifer[566] de Appleby, Lord of Newbigging†.
Lawrence Crakenthorp (Temp. H. 2.)‡ = maryed the daughter of Wharton.⸸
John Crakenthorp = maryed the daughter of Blennerhasset.
John Crakenthorp = maryed the daughter of Barton.
Thomas Crakenthorp = maryed the daughter of Vaux.
Robert Crakenthorp = (temp. Ed. 2. & Ed. 3. ~~Lib. Nigro~~) Agnes the daughter of Wakerfield.

[557] AUGUSTA.
[558] Three pencilled interlineated words here are illegible.
[559] Camden gives the inscription in full. As Machell suggests, he observes that 'from Severan unto Gordian and afterwards, the letter A. in all the inscriptions of that age, everie where in this Iland, wanteth the overthwart little line or stroke, and is made thus, Λ.' Camden, *Britannia* tr. Holland (1637), 762.
[560] 'Varronius, Commander of the 20th Legion, strong and victorious.'
[561] The writer of the inscription must have included the conjunction 'et' (or similar word meaning 'and'), since the verb 'metati sunt' is plural, the subjects being Varronius and Lucanus. The intended reading is, 'C. Varronius Commander of the XX legion Valens Victrix and Aelius Lucanus, Commander of the Second Augustan Legion marked out this camp'.
[562] Margin comment beside, 'or some such thing'.
[563] Fasti: 'A calendar or calendars, indicating the days on which business could be lawfully transacted, and the festivals, games, historical anniversaries, etc., celebrated on each day of the year. Also: an official chronicle or chronological list of consuls, magistrates, triumphs, etc.'. *OED*.
[564] In ancient Rome, years were named after pairs of consuls.
[565] Pencilled marginalia here are damaged, thus illegible.
[566] 'Dapifer': the official title of a steward in a medieval English nobleman's household.

Robert Crakenthorp (temp. Ed. 3. Libro Nigro)[567] = Emma the daughter of Threlkeld.
William Crakenthorp = the daughter of Grimston.
Jo. Crakenthorp = the daughter of Brisco 13. Richard 2. [1389-90].
Jo. Crakenthorp = Blenkow & dyed 14. Hen. 6. [1435-36] Lib. Nigro.
William Crakenthorp \ his brother / = the daughter of Sandford & dyed 17. Hen. 6. [1438-39] Ibid.
Jo[hn] Crakenthorp = Elizabeth daughter of Leyburne‖.
Jo[hn] Crakenthorp = Isabel daughter of Musgrave. He made the rental the 12. of Hen. 8. [1520-21].
Christopher Crakenthorp = the daughter of Blen~~ner~~kinsop of Helbeck Temp. Hen. 8. & had Isue Henry his son & heire. And John Crakenthorp of Strickland.
Henry Crakenthorp of Newbiging Esq. maryed = 1. Dalston, = 2. Sandford, = 3. Carnaby, = 4. Winifrid, sister of Sir Christopher Pickering, Knight, by whom he had Isue = Christopher; William, a parson; Richard; Henry; Ann, maryed first to John Pennington of Seaton, secondly to Sir Richard Sandford of Howgil Castle; Francis, maryed to Lathes {Lathes of Lathes near [Blank] in Cumberland and of Dalehead}; Winifrid, maryed to Sir Richard Fletcher of Hutton.
Christopher Crakenthorp Esq. the eldest son of Henry maryed Mary daughter of Sir James Bellingham of Levins, Knight. And had Isue Henry maryed to Fetherston who dyed s[ine] prole;[568] Richard; Frances; Isabel; Dorathy, maryed to John Philipson of Calgarth Esq.; & Elizabeth maryed to Birbeck of Orton. {Examined.}[569]

[Machell's Notes: III.285]

*{Out of Sir Daniel Flemings MS in folio MS A. p.105.}
† {This I take to be of the sirname of Newbiging. M[emorandum]}
‡ No.
⸸{M[emorandum] This can scarce be.}
‖ {Mem[orandum] Sir Robert Crackenthorp of NK. 5. of Hen. 5. [1417-1418]}

———————

[III.287]

Richard Crakanthorp aforesaid Esq. = maryed, first, Mary, the daughter of Sir Christopher Dalston of Ackorn Bank, Knight; secondly, Lettice, daughter of Lougher of Parton in Staffordshire and relict of Thomas Denton of Warnel Esq. By his first wife he had Isue Henry who dyed young; Christopher, John, Thomas & William, Mary & Barbara. And by his second wife he had George, James, Richard, Francis and Lettice.
Christopher C~~h~~rakanthorp (dict.)[570] Esq. obijt March 31 1669 = maryed Ann, the daughter of Robert Rawlinson of Cark Esq., & by her had Isue Richard, Robert, Christopher & Mary.[571]

The Crakenthorps of Little Strickland
John Crakenthorp of Strickland, Gent (who was second son of Christopher Crakenthorp & Mrs Blenkinsop, Tem. H. 8. TM)[572] = maryed Mabel, daughter of [blank] Cowper, & had isue Christopher; Richard (a doctor & famous scholar); George, a parson; & Anthony who has Isue John and Christopher: which Christopher has Isue Barnerd, now of Newbiging.
Christopher Crakenthorp, son of John = maryed Barbara, daughter of [blank] Ward of Yorkshire, and had Isue Richard; Thoma[s]; Frances, m. to Petty, who had Isue by him; Ann maryed to William Aray of Shap, who had Isue Richard, John, Barbara, Ann, Isabel, Dorathy, Mary and Margaret.
Richard Crakenthorp, son of Christopher aforesaid = maryed Elizabeth Fairer \ of Warcop Tower / & had Isue Christopher; Ann, maryed to John Wharton of Kirkbythore Esq.; Grace, maryed to Watson; Barbra, maryed to Winter; Elizabeth; & Mary to Adam Thwat.
{Christopher Crakenthorp, son of Richard maryed Jane, daughter of Andrew Hudleston of Hutton John Esq. and had Isue Richard, Andrew, William, Jane, Ann.}
{Richard Crakenthorp, son of Christopher [blank]}

[567] 'See the black book.'
[568] 'Sine prole': childless.
[569] Examined for accuracy.
[570] 'Aforesaid.'
[571] For the Rawlinson descent (from the reign of Henry VII) and intermarriage with the Crackenthorpes, see Thomas West, *The Antiquities of Furness* (Ulverston, new edn, 1805), 317-20.
[572] TM: Machell's initials.

Examined.

[III.288]

{Mr Rawlinsons note who made this extract: MS A. Fleming. At p.106}[573]
I do not finde the name of Crakenthorp in any deed before William Crakenthorp in the time of Ed. 3. But I finde Alexander Crackenthorp, a younger son of Mauchael (or Malus Catulus), Lord of Crakenthorp, 12. Ed. 3. [1338-1339]* from whom it is probable the name came to the Lords of Newbiging by marriage, Mr Crakenthorp having ancient lands in Crakenthorp, lately sold†.
And before Edw. the 3. time they were stiled only as thus, viz. Lawrence, son of Rob., Domin. de Newbiging; John, son of Lawrence, Dom de Newbiging; and not by the name of Crakenthorp till Ed. 3. time‡.
I doe take it that the original grant of Newbiging was either from Walden, son of Gamel or from Gamel, son of Whelp, to Robert, Dapifer[574] de Appelby, which grant Waldeve confirm'd by Deed to Lawrence⸸. Or else from Mowbra, Earl of Westmorland‖.

Over Newbiging Hall door, cut in stone

> Christopher Crakenthorp men did me call
> {!} who in my time did build this hall {?}
> and framed it as you may see.
> In one thousand five hundred thirty & three.

The new Tower is said to have bin builded by Henry Crakenthorp, who had 4 wives.
Examined by Sir Daniel Fleming & TM.

[Machell's Notes: III.288]
*{It is long before, S.D. and in the same hand with *Doomsday Book*, TM.}[575]
†{So, see […], in which apeareth not much mistaken save in the Time; for that with Bro of Mauchael was long before K. Ed. 3., there being these descents betwixt {William fil William, fil Alexander de Crakenthorp} and this, who was first concerned at Newbiging, le Alexander de Crakenthorp.}[576]
‡No Sir. Newbiging ~~TM~~ continued in the \ sir / name of the Newbigings till about this time, that Robert the son of Robert de Crakanthorp maryed Emma the daughter of Robert de Newbiging.}
⸸{It may be so. He was son of Gamel, son of Whelp, Lord of Kirkbythore, and, as it seems by this, of Newbiging […]}[577]
‖T.M. No Sir. Mowbray was indeed Earle of Northumberland but never of Westm'land.[578]
All these notes & pedegrees were in the proper hand writeing of Robert Rawlinson Esq., from whom Sir Daniel Fleming had them. N.B. But there are many mistakes to my knowledge \ in them / which may hereafter be corrected by me, Tho. Machell.

[IV]

[Difficulties]

[Thomas Machell, the Chapel at Temple Sowerby and the Dalstons of Acorn Bank][579]

---

[573] Robert Rawlinson of Cark Hall, lawyer, JP and royalist sympathiser, who died in 1665, aged 55. See West, *Antiquities of Furness*, 319.
[574] 'Steward.'
[575] Machell remarks here that, though undated [S.D.], the deed was written long before 12. Edward III [1338-1339], as the hand has similarities to the writing in *Domesday Book*.
[576] The binding is very tight here; the marginalia are difficult to read; thus the the transcription is questionable.
[577] The last word is unclear.
[578] This is the second, 'No Sir', interjection on this page, as Machell disagrees with 'Mr Rawlinsons note who made this extract: MS A. Fleming at p.106'; see also his criticism at the foot of III.288.
[579] See William Nicolson's 1703 view of the difficulties at Temple Sowerby in *Misc Accts*: 'At the Institution of the present Rector (Mr Wickins) a Tripartite Indenture was executed by the Patron (Lord Thanet), the Ordinary and himself; whereby £25 was allowed as a standing salary for ever to the curate of Sowerby… so that the Parson's Revenue is now less (by a round Subtraction of £50) than it was formerly. The late Bishop, Dr Smith,

[III.242]

A Narrative about a Chapel at Sowerby[580]

[III.229][581]

June 5 1697
A
NARRATIVE OF
The Matter in Contest
About
THE CHAPEL OF SOWERBY
within the Parish of
KIRKBY-THORE
in Westmorland
TO
The Right Honorable
THOMAS
Earle of Thanett
PATRONE
of the said
Parish-Church
T. M. R[ector]

[**A. Correspondence 1.**]

[Letter from Thomas Machell to Lord Thanet, 5 June 1697]

[III.231][582]

My Lord
It is from the Honourable Peers of this Realm that men expect justice and finde it too without partiality and therefore appeales are made unto them ~~when they think themselves injurd by other judges~~ \ from other judicatures. / And truly for my part I had and yet have that assurance in your Lordships goodness (so eminently zealous of doing what is right unto all) that I thinke you would doe not wrong unto any if your Lordship were truly informed of matters: soe that one who is not in your Lordships favour may yet expect justice, if not mercy from you.
{A promise of the patrone.}
And therefore when your Lordship told me (you had been informed) that I did not allow sufficient maintenance to my curate at Sowerby {a false informacon grounded upon a vulgar error} which was a great reflection upon me having 3 places as your Lordship was pleased to call them, I craved leave to tell you that your Lordship was misinformed \ in the matter / for I had but one place, and being Resident within my parish, was Curate my selfe. That I was not under any just-obligation to finde them a minister at my own charge, it being but a chapple within my parish. And that if he had not sufficient maintenance (tho perhaps I was able to prove the contrary) the fault was in the towne, not in

promis'd me that he would never agree to any such proposal; but on a letter from the Archbishop of York… he changed his thoughts, and comply'd… My Lord Thanet tells me that his Under-Sheriff … pretends to shew an old Conveyance in a Testament in Sowerby, whereby the Rector is farther obliged to repair the Quire part of that Chapple. Mr Machell would never own any such Obligation; nor can it now be thought reasonable since the whole Tyth of that Hamlet will not always pay the Curate his £25. However, the East End of the Chapple is now ready to drop down; and I cannot yet foresee on whom the Charge will fall…' Nicolson, *Misc. Accts*, 29.

[580] This is the title Machell gave to his narrative, the nature of which was to demonstrate his financial and other difficulties relating to Temple Sowerby Chapel. See William Nicolson, above; see also Paul Barker, 'The Reverend Thomas Machell's complaint: July 2d.1690', *CW2*, 89 (1989), 279-81.

[581] Pages III.229-58, are of a uniform size but are almost 2cm shorter than the other pages in Volume III, demonstrating the binding of different sets of papers into the MS.

[582] The underscoring and margin comments are presented in different ink. As the letters are copies of the originals, it appears that Machell did this to highlight his main points and grievances. In this edition, Machell's margin comments have been utilised as sub-headings.

me; for chappels are to maintain their owne chaplaines at their own proper cost. And Your Lordship may please to remember that I told you further there was an old salary of 5^{li} 5^{s} 5^{d} or thereabouts due from the towne (called priests wages) which they had withdrawn and misapplied since I came to this place, reducing the same to lesse than 30^{s} per annum. And now, they thinking to take an advantage of your Lordships proneness to works of piety, & of my unhappiness in being out of your Lordships favour, indeavour to force me (by your Lordships \ greatest influence / over me) to make restitution for the wrong they have done. To which your Lordship was pleased to reply that you would assist me in recovering of it.

And thereupon I told Your Lordship I would shew you such things next time I came as should give your Honour satisfaction in all these particulars. And if I did not make it out that there was such a sallary due from the towne I would allow what Your Lordship thought fit to impose upon me. But in the meantime, your Lordship was pleased to come to Sowerby, where when the Sheriff suggested to Your Honour that the sallary I insisted upon was for a school master & not for a minister, I appealed to their own Register booke in their own custody whether it was not still called Priests Wages, Church Wages and Curates Wages. And Your

[III.232]

Lordship was soe just in the matter as to call for the booke and carry it with you to be examined by your Lordships Chaplaine.[583]

{A conditional promiss of the incumbent grounded upon the former promiss} {the Grand Query proposed}[584]

But when I came to waite upon your Honour with some hopes of redress, I found your Lordship was soe full of business that you could not have leisure to stay till your Chaplain came out of town, that he might be examined as to what he had met with, much less to consider (with due deliberation) what was laid before you on my behalf. But of ~~the~~ \ your / piety which they ~~would have had~~ make noe small advantage off) would have had me consent without more adoe to allow the curates 10^{li} per annum: to which I demurrd till Your Lordship should have consulted your Chaplaine & be better informed where the fault lay. And when your Lordship had discoursed him about it, the causes being of ecclesiasticall cognizance & depending much on the Canon Law (which Your Lordship does not pretend to) you were pleased to tell me when I came to take leave, that you did not understand the matter and would therefore remit it unto the Bishop (to whom I will freely submit myself as the most proper judge within his own diocese.) And will enter in bond (if the town or Mr Sheriff for them will doe the like) to stand to his Lordships determination both as touching the Sallary & Reparation of the said Chappel (if they be not satisfied with what I have \ already / proposed concerning the latter: Sc. whether or how farr the same doth belong to them or to me! And whether the chapelry or I am in fault, if the Reader have not sufficient maintenance.[585]

For truly (my Lord) (however I may be represented) it has been a very great trouble to me; as Your Lordships Chaplaine may inform you from severall letters I have formerly writ upon that occasion & which I have shewed him; that having long since provided materialls, I could not have liberty to repare the said Chappel upon any faire terms, nor get the salary thereto belonging restored and secured as it ought to have been because they pretended to be exempt from all Episcopall Jurisdiction. Soe that if I should have presented them for it, they would not have appeared at all, but at their own Court where the parties are Judges and where I could expect noe redress. But if they referr the cause to the Bishop & bind themselves to it and his judgment, the controversie may be determined by consent of both parties without much expence of bringing their priviledge into dispute.

[III.233]

In order to which I begg of your Lordship (since your Honour was pleased to offer your assistance in it) that the Register-booke of Temple Sowerby, to which I appealed for the matter of fact, may be

[583] Lord Thanet's chaplain was Rev. John Grandorge, son of Christopher, of Irby, Yorks, paup. St. Edmund Hall, matric. 16 July, 1687 aged 17; B.A. 1691, M.A. 1693-4; B.D. from Magdalen Coll. 1706; D.D. 1708; rector of Hartfield, Sussex, 1698, and of Ashurst, 1707; prebendary of Canterbury 1713; chaplain to the Earl of Thanet; died 17 Jan., 1729, aged 60. *OAD*.

[584] More margin comments written by Machell.

[585] For the meaning of the term 'reader', see the English Glossary.

secured in your Evidence roome at Appleby Castle; and that you would order & direct Mr Carleton[586] to call for an Evidence at Temple Sowerby (having 3 seales appendent) about the maintaining and hiring a Chaplaine in the time of King Henry the 7th, which is fit to be kept with your Lordships writings concerning the Rectory of Kirkbythore, if it can be had, and may be found either in the hands of John Parker of Temple Sowerby or some other person to whom Mr Sheriff (I suppose) can direct; if it be not their interest to conceale it rather, which two things being of unquestionable truth and authoritie, will plainly discover that the Chapplery was obliged heretofore to maintain their own Chaplane, & I could wish them in Your Lordships custody, lest they be injur'd or put out of the way, when there shall be occasion thereof at a reference, or at a commision for pious uses, as Your Lordship shall please to direct, which I hope you will doe with all possible speed, lest in the interim the Chapel should fall, which I should be heartily sorry for.

In the mean time I freely confess & agree with your Lordship, that if I were bound to find them a curate at my own proper Charge (as your Lordship supposes); and I did not allow him a competent maintenance, I were much to be blamed and did not deserve your Lordships favour. But then (on the contrary) if Chapelries are to maintaine their own Chaplaines at their own proper cost, without the least diminution or damage of the rights & profits of the mother-Church. And if the Inhabitants of the said Chapplerie misimploy or diminish the ancient sallary which belong'd to their Chaplaines without the knowledge or assent of the minister of the mother Church; if he gives more, and they give less then they ought to doe, then the fault (I conceive) of the want of maintenance is on their side and not on his. And truly, My Lord, I can see noe reason but the want of Right information, why any minister should be censur'd & deem'd an ill man (which is my sad fate) for not allowing a sufficient maintenance where he ought to give none ~~at all~~;

[III.234]

much lesse why I should make amends ~~rather~~ for what the inhabitants of Temple Sowerby very unjustly (& indeed sacreligiously)[587] have taken away, as the Sheriff ~~and~~ himselfe hath som time Confessed.
{Testament: Mr Watson, formerly Reader of Sowerby, now curate of Bondgate.}

[III.235]

{Canon Law}
And for the truth of all these matters, I refer my selfe to what Your Lordships Chaplaine hath seen with his own eyes, not only concerning chappells in generalls both in the Canon-law and elsewhere but of this Sowerby in particular in their Register-Booke & some other papers which I would willingly have shewen your Lordship according to promises if it had been your pleasure to looke upon them or to heare them read.
And if your Lordship, in your journey to Skipton (which I wish may be prosperous) shall happen to \ lodge at / Kendal or Kirkby, in both which parishes are diverse ancient (but ill-indowed) chappells, your Lordship may find (upon enquiry) a great many instances of what I assert: that chappells ought to be endow'd & repair'd as they were built "sine juris prejujudicio alieni" (without any injuries to another mans might), or "salva indemnitate matricis ecclesiæ" (the mother church being kept indemnified). For truly (my Lord) it is not lawfull to build (much lesse to consecrate) any chappell but under these covenants & considerations: as the canon-law sheweth.

{de Capella de Berwis in parochia St Lawrencis de Apelby}
And I have an authentick original testament (with a large seale appendant) concerning the building of an ancient chappell within this Diocess now fallen to the ground) which confirms the said law to have been practicable here amongst us as further sheweth that the Chaplaines in all succeeding ages were bound to take an oath of fidelity unto the minister of the parish church "de conservando matricem ecclesiam in omnibus ipsam contingentibus totaliter indempem". i.e. of keeping the mother church in all things whatsoever ~~indemnified~~ thereunto appertaining, wholly indemnified. Soe that Your Lordship plainly see it was never intended that a parish church should be charged with maintenance for any chappell. But the same was fixed upon the Inhabitants for whose ease it was built.

[586] Steward to Lord Thanet, see below: V.449.
[587] Transcribed as seen.

[III.234]

{Note. This was not included in that which was sent.}
And the Canon Law enters this caveat against it, where chapels \ are / founded for a community (as it seemeth to be in the case before us) cavebunt enim hi, ut injuriose veteribus[588] Ecclesijs de jure Parochiali nequaquam exsistant; ~~& gives this Reason (which is common to all)~~ i.e. They must take special care that they be not injuriouse to the mother churches in reference to their Parochial Rights. And gives this Reason (which is common to all),

[III.235]

'nec enim quod? eis ob nietatem indulgetur, ad aliorum injuriam fecti debet'. For it is not meet that what (in pure piety) is indulged for their ease, should become a burthen and \ or / dis-ease unto others. And now My Lord (having shewen you this much) I hope Your Lordship as you are Patron will thinke it your province (upon 2^{d} thoughts) to patronize & defend the just rights of the Church

[III.236]

Parochiall which is your Lordships, from the unjust incroachments of the sub-parochiall (or Chappels of ease) which cannot properly be called yours, and will be lesse soe when once indowed (which God forbid) out of the Rectory, which Your Lordship may see is provided against not only by sanctions of the Canon Law but by an oath alsoe; and which I make bold to remind you of, lest Your Lordships piety should be prevail\e/d on to bring a Rent-charge upon my successors by the cunning & crafty insinuations of those who will not stick at any thing for their own advantage*.
But before you doe soe (for I know you will not doe an ill thing et id tantum possumus quod jure possumus),[589] your Lordship might doe well to enquire of those who are versed in the Ecclesiasticall law, how farr a patrone has power to dispose of the rights of his Church?
But what (my Lord) if after all this there be noe cause at all of complaint, as to the matter of fact? What if I really (whilest I thinke my selfe oblieged to do nothing \ att all /) have made the place better vijs et modis[590] than what your Lordship (whilest you supposed me to be under some legall-obligation of maintaining a curate) would have required? Surely, then, there is more in the matter then Your Lordship perceives.[591]

[Machell's Notes: III.236]

{*For they can present agane when they please, tho they suffer the rectors to do it at present because they have made it not worth acceptance but for his augmentation and kindness.}

[III.236A][592]

And certainly, My Lord, to give a young man the Chapel of Sowerby with its ancient sallary (though he gets little of it:) 2^{li} per Annum of my own, as an Augmentation thereunto; the benefit of teaching a School, with meat, drinke & lodgeing, and 20^{s}, besides other gratuities, for teaching my children; and good education which is better than all \ this, / though I should not boast of it but that they have compelld me to glorie. {I have bred up iiij or v notable minister under me, & som have quited preferment of 10 & 20^{li} per annum to com to this place, which could not be for the sake of the town & what they get there.}[593] Certainly, these must be much better for him than X^{li} per annum. But this I have don: And do it at present. But I doe it Ex gratia and not ex debito,[594] lest I

[III.237]

draw a Rent-charge upon my successors.
And this I take to be the true reason of this grand complaint. For the Sherriff would have a good swingeing sallary \ now that theirs is gon / charged on the rectory per fas aut nefas,[595] & settled upon this Chappell of Sowerby, which he hopes to effect by the grand interest he has in Your Lordship & striking now while the iron is hot. And when that is done he can bring the Chaplaine (whose sallary will be noe more precariouse) to his own beck \ and being the factotum amongst the neighbourhood,

[588] MS: 'veteriribus'.
[589] 'And we can only do what we lawfully do.'
[590] 'In ways and means.'
[591] A margin comment here forms a query in Latin but as some of it has perished it has not been transcribed.
[592] Scrap page, 20cm by 11½cm, numbered and placed within the volume but not bound into it.
[593] Another margin comment on this page cites a series of page numbers, but they are unclear.
[594] 'Voluntarily, and not from compulsion.'
[595] 'By what is proper or improper' = 'by any means, regardless of legality or ethics.'

can / appoint him too when he has a mind,[596] by vertue of the forementioned evidence in the time of King Henry the 7. And another instance in the Register-booke \ of Temple Sowerby / whereby it appears \ that / they hired \ as well as maintained / their own Chaplane; and soe may make him teach \ schoole / at ~~Temple~~ Sowerby. And then the Rector of Kirkbythore, who (if this be done must pay all the salary) could not have the benefit of having his children taught at home but must send them thither, which would be a very great hardship upon him but well for the Sheriff and all his posterity. And if he can but gaine this one point of your Lordship and me, he has done a great worke, and will not need to aske any more. But I hope your Lordship will give me leave to dispose of my own as I have a mind; for charity ought to be free and not forced. & set the saddle upon the right horse, causing them to make restitution who have done the injury; for \ Your Lordship may see / it is not my fault, if the Reader have not sufficient maintenance.[597]

FINIS T.M.

[III.239][598]

[Letter from Thomas Machell to John Grandorge, chaplain to Lord Thanet, 5 June 1697]

Kirkby Thore
June 5th 1697
Sir
I would have waited upon my Lord som part of his journey but that it was not his Lordships pleasure, & therefore sent the papers inclosed upon Friday morning. But his Lordship (it seams) was gon so early that my man came too late & so brought them back, which I was heartily sorry for. Pray Sir, be so kinde as to give 'em his Lordship with my most humble service, and tell him farther that Temple-Sowerby will restore the Priests-Wages which they have unjustly taken away (& which Mr Sheriff can doe if he pleaseth with a word of his mouth). I will add unto it on his Lordships account (if he be not convinced of the illegality of the demand) whatsoever in reason can be expected from
Your most humble servant
Tho: Machell

Pray Sir, peruse & correct the ~~narrative~~ \ inclosed, which was sent in haist / and let me know what his Lordship sayes to it. Give my service to Dr Mill when you come to Oxford and forget former quarrels.[599] Remember me likewise to honest Will Sherwin[600], and let me hear \ from you / whether he receivd my directions or noe about som arreares of rent at Highworth,[601] which are due to me from one Widow Dring[602] near the Highcross; and if he have, what is don in that manner.

[596] 12cm of text has been scored through here.
[597] The letter seems to have first ended after the word 'injury'; the rest is in larger script, apart for the interlineation: 'your Lordship may see'. The sense towards the end of the letter is of rising indignation, with a calmer ending.
[598] This is Machell's covering note to Grandorge, sent with his letter to Lord Thanet. John Grandorge, then aged 27, was chaplain to Lord Thanet, who had ordered him to enquire into Temple Sowerby chapel rights: see III.232. Grandorge's reply appears on III.418A/B.
[599] Dr Mill was principal of Grandorge's old college, St Edmund Hall, between 1685 and 1707. He was the son of Thomas Mill of Shap, and entered as a plebeian into Queen's College on 14 Nov., 1661, aged 16 (as Milne). B.A. 1666; M.A. 1669; B.D. 1680; D.D. 1681 (as Mill). Machell had sent Mill his article on Roman inscriptions five years previously, see Part 3. Ch.3: Roman Antiquities; see also correspondence which enlarges on the relationship between Machell and Mill in Part 3. Ch.2; see also OAD.
[600] William Sherwin was at that time vicar of Headington, Oxford: son of William, of Oxford city, pleb. Magdalen Coll., matric.1683, aged 14; B.A. 1687; fellow Merton Coll. 1688; M.A. 1691; vicar of Headington, 1693; rector of Collingbourne Ducis, Wilts, 1700; canon of Chichester 1703, until his death on 14 May, 1735, see OAD.
[601] A town in north Wiltshire near Swindon.
[602] Or 'Drines'.

[III.418A]

[Letter from John Grandorge to Thomas Machell, 5 July 1697]

For the Reverend Mr Machel
Rector of Kirkbythore near Appleby in Westmorland

[III.418B]

Lincoln College[603]
July 5th 1697
Reverend Sir
I received yours with the papers relating to Temple Sowerby and acquainted my Lord therewith at Skipton Castle, who was pleased to have them perused by a clergyman, viz. Mr Pemberton of Bradford in Yorkshire, for he was at that time to wait upon his Lordship, and (considering the character he has in those parts and the good opinion my Lord has of him) I thought I could not serve you better than in moving that he might examine the case and give his thoughts to my Lord: who told me, after all was over, that he thought things were at a stand, and nothing at present could be done except it should be immediately left to the Bishop and the deed with three seals brought to light; which when my Lord pleases to take notice of after my return into Kent I will take care to acquaint you with it, for I fancy his Lordships business was so great in Craven that Mr Pemberton would scarce, since I came away, meddle any more in it; but if he has, and to any purpose, I will as soon as I can inform myself give you an account thereof.
Since I came hither I was with Mr Sherwin about your business, who tells me that it is a thing so much out of his way that he cannot possibly think of serving you in it, and that some time since \ he / mentioned as much to Mr Adkinson or Mr Waugh of Queens and thought that they had given you to understand as much. So that as far as I can perceive you must rather commit it to the care of some attorney or friend near the place, or here as you are acquainted, for Mr Sherwin is a man of so much business that it must not be expected from him. I am
Sir
Your most humble servant
John Grandorge

[III.243][604]

[B. Machell's Evidence]

[B.1.]

Observations and Queries
concerning the Register of the Chappel of Temple Sowerby
in the Parish of Kirkbythore

1. Query: Where is the parchment register mention'd in page 128. Whether this account as it is here be given up to & ingrossed by the Bishop or Chancellour \ see ibid. The Chancellour sayes he hath one of X^{t} Bar.[605] / {Note. Mr Dawson.}[606]
2. Query: Whether it be not brought to the Parish Church once in year & ingross'd there, or if it ought not to be soe? {Mr Dawson.}
3. Memorandum: to have what is material transcrib'd, & attested (for what is therein contein'd) to be a true copy.

Ad pag. 2.
{1631} 1. Note the 1^{t} page seems to be an order for the Readers wages to [be] levyed upon the Inhabitants; with several receipts, according to that agreement. Query if Mr Dawson could ever read it. The thing should seem to have bin writ in 1630 or however in 1631: see pag. 2. {Mr Dawson 1630, 1631.}

[603] Oxford.
[604] Also numbered p.1.
[605] Answer to Machell's query by Christopher Barrow.
[606] For Thomas Dawson, rector of Newbiggin (1681-98), former curate/schoolmaster at Temple Sowerby, see Newbiggin (above), I.567.

2. An agreement between the church-wardens of Temple-Sowerby Church with the rest of the neighbours and John Brice for annual repairs of the windows: p.2. {(2.) v. p.2. 1618. 1631. 1609/10.} p.9. Anno Domini 1618 (I wonder at this, because the second page is 1631 – but if what is writ upon the first leaf may have bin inserted afterwards so that the Register doth truly begin at page the 3rd in 1609.) Note that the family of the Dalstons who came but lately into the parish have endeavord to draw to themselves the right of the Rector in appointing his own Reader by getting a poor ignorant man to subscribe to this forme at pag. 9th: I. Michael &c.[607]

[III.244]

{!! Note.} I Michael Wilkinson, Clerke, do hereby acknowledge that I am hired to serve the Cure at Temple-Sowerby Church until All Hallow Day next coming,[608] & no longer, unless I can hereafter gain the consent & good likeing of Sir Christopher Dalston, Knight, and the greater number of my parishioners in the town of Temple-Sowerby, in witness thereof I have hereunto sett my hand the 21 Day of December 1618.[609]

{1618. p.1} Memorandum: that som way be thought on to have this publiquely revoked & cancell'd; if it be injuriouse to the church. Note: he calls it a \ Cure / church; & calls them his parishioners & submits himselfe to the approbation &c. Maybe they have rented the tythes and bin obliged by the bargain to finde a Reader.

N.B. The ~~neigh~~ Church (or rather Chapel Wardens) are to finde Communion-Booke,[610] Bible, Book of Homilyes,[611] pulpet cloth & table-cloth.[612] See a receit of them by Micael Wilkinson, 1618. p.9.

Query: What is meant by the old stock, new stock, marke? What by his house? An non.[613] George Parker? What the jury has to doe with the church affairs and where? Item of the stock anciently belonging to his house, see page 24, 25, 26.

{1638.} A note of the church-stock in (as I take it) 1638. under 3 heads or stiles: Sc. stock anciently belonging to his house: old stock: new stock, see p.25, 26.

{1640.} A note of the old/new church stock for 3s the pound and the pledges for new security (as I suppose) in 1640. pag. 29.

[III.245][614]

{?! Note.} Memorandum Mr John Dalston of Acorne Banke & Mr William Walker Rector of Kirkby Thure, did grant & appoint a seat (or stall) in the Quire of Temple-Sowerby Church for the use of Christopher Lowson, John Bleamire and Robert Hodgson, in lieu of another seat which Mr Dalston had of them: 1662. See pag. 38.

Query: what did Mr Dalston had to doe with the quire, being no patrone. 2. Whether he & Mr Walker could make this order (excepting only for Mr Walkers life) without the consent of the patrone & Ordnarye.[615] Item: when Mr Dalston built & his quire and with whose consent?

{1617. 1664. 1622.} A note of old/new stock Feb. 15. 1664. at 3 [s] & 2 [s] \ 1617. p.97, 98, 99 / \ 1622. p.101 / Query: what is meant by marke? See page 49, 95.

---

[607] References to members of the Dalston family appear more than 20 times throughout this chapter, but without comment. This section describes Machell's side of his distressing rift with John and Christopher Dalston, which centred on the patronage, finances and oversight of the chapel at Temple Sowerby. Machell's forbearance to comment adversely within his official 'history' is at variance with the negative remarks, veiled or otherwise, he often visited on his peers.

[608] 1. November.

[609] One Michael Wilkinson was curate at Barton (Patterdale Chapel) from 1606 to 1608; another Michael Wilkinson was ordained at Rose Castle, Carlisle, in 1618. See CCED. No other records are available from CCED.

[610] *Book of Common Prayer*.

[611] Homily: a religious discourse addressed to a congregation; a sermon; especially a practical discourse with a view to the spiritual edification of the hearers. In the Church of England specially applied to the discourses contained in the *Books of Homilies* published in 1547, 1563 (with additions up to 1571) for use in parish churches. *OED*. See also http://www.anglicanlibrary.org/homilies/. Machell refers to the 'homily desk' in Part 2, Ch.3ix, Staveley, II.113.

[612] Altar cloth.

[613] 'Is it not.'

[614] Also numbered p.3.

[615] 'Without consent of the bishop.'

Memorandum: that the Jury of Temple Sowerby doe finde that John Stable hath 2li the poor-stock, belonging to the town which was due at Candlemas last and to be paid at Candlemas next, paying 4s for the same to the poor of the foresaid town. Witness our hands: John Gowling, George Pa[r]ker &c. p.49, 95 (anno 1662.)
Query: Where and by whom this Court was held? How this comes under their jurisdiction? What is meant by Poor-stock, & how it differs from Church stock?
Memorandum: The Jury aforesaid doth unanimously agree that if any having the

[III.246]

Church-stock doe not pay it or ingaige security for it, paying the consideration that the Churchwardens & other officers doe proceed to levy it by way of distress[616] within 14 dayes after the quarter dayes. Provided if the Church-wardens, the Baliff and other officers appointed by the Church-wardens then being doe omit the prosecution of this their office, that they shall be able to answer the Court holden at the worshipfull John Dalstons Esq. at Acorn Bank, for their neglect: p.50.

Feb. 15. 1666.

{1666.} Memorandum: The Jurors of Temple-Sowerby do finde John Stable to have 2li of the Poore stock, for which he is to pay 6s at the Feast of St Thomas before Christmas next,[617] which he is in arrearages. And every yeare dureing the term he hath it, he is to pay 1s 6d per pound at the Purification of Our Blessed Virgin (commonly call'd Candle-mas Day)[618] into the hands of the Church-wardens to be distributed according to their prudent direction: John Gowling, Edward Cale &c.
An account of the dues belonging to the Curate of Temple-Sowerby. Robert Brockell, curate: see page. 56 \ 93. / I do not understand it, but it seems to be 1: 5: 0½ per quarter.
Item at All Saints 1664.[619] Lammas quarter 1664.[620] see page 86, 87.
{!!! Note.} Arrearages due to Thomas Barnet, Curate, at Candlemas 1665. p.100. Item for the Church-stock May the 4th 1662. A particular note of quarterage due to the Curate; in all 1:6s: 4 qu. \ see p.114. / Item in 1661. \ p.115; / 1660. \ p.116; / 1659. \ p.117; / 1658. \ p.118; / 1657. May 1, \ p.119 /}
A note

[III.247][621]

of the Church-stock (old/new/marks: 2s & 3s per pound), page 88, 89, 95.
Thomas Barnet, Curate of Temple-Sowerby, May 29 1665. p.99.
Due to Mr Walker for Easter Reckonings p.92. And to his curate ibidem. {Note.}
Query: What for gardens; tythe-hay; more-spot; communicants. Foales? Calves? Lams. Chese or other tythes.
{1661. 1665. 1622.} Thomas Lumley, Curate, 1661. pag.100. Thomas Barnet Curate 1663. p. ibid, & June 12. 1665. p.105. A Note of Church-stock in 1662.
The 17. day of October 1624. {Note.}it is agreed before Sir Christopher Dalston Knight an William Teasdall & John Pattison, that Robert Gowlings house and garth, and one Rig of his lying on the mooreland near the leaning ditch shall be charged with 26s viijd of the church-stock, and if the said Robert Gowling shall sell the said Rigg, that then 1li of the purchase of the said Rigg to be paid to the Church; & the other vjs viijd remain to the house & garth of the said Robert Gowling or his assignes: Robert Gowling marke p.103.
{1662.} A Note of the Church-stock old/new in 162. (pro 1662. ut opinor)[622] Richard Fawell being then Church-warden.
A Note of the Church-stock old/new, 3s & 2s per li 1657. alledgeing that the one pound is of the Church-stock. Memorandum: I could never get more of Rowland Lowes than 15d a quarter & 5s per annum.

[616] Distraint.
[617] 21 December, the traditional day for giving to the poor.
[618] Candlemas day is 2 February.
[619] All Saints Quarter begins in November.
[620] Lammas: the Feast of First Fruits, 1 August.
[621] Also numbered p.5.
[622] 'As I think'. Machell was of the opinion that this date was 1662.

[III.248]

A Note of Church-Stock in 1655. old, new &c., p.108.
I received ~~nothing~~ of Mr Lough no tyth hay-silver since Mr Walker came to Kirkby Thure: Thomas Lumley, p.112.
If therefore, prescription be here pretended, it is forfait: T.M.

Rents 13^{s} & 4^{d}

	Li	s	d
Mr Dalston, for the White-Stones:	0	5	0
Mr Christopher Lough, for the Acres Close	0	3	4
Robert Pattison att present, for an house and ground, of which his brother John Pattison is the heire	0	4	8
George Parker, for Moorelands Close	0	4	0
{1675.} Henry Jackson, for one house that he bought of John Pattinson, belonging to the Rectory of Kirkby-Thore, purchased with 4^{d} rent in 1675.	0	0	4

This last 4^{d} was that I suppose which Mr Walker was so long afindeing. T. M.

Tythe hay-silver, as it was set down by the Jury at Acorne-Banke {I never finde any mention of till this time.}

[III.248-49][623]

	Li.	s.	d.	Ob.[624]	Qu.[625]
John Pattison			2	ob	
John Atkinson			2	ob	
Daltons House			2	ob	
Christopher Lowson			2	ob	
John Lowis & Thos Spooner		3			
Richard Loweis		3			
Stables House			2	ob	
*George Parker			4	ob	
*Robert Pattison			1		
*John Stable			4	ob	
Stephensons House		3	0		
*William Teasdal			1		qu.
John Bleamire			2	ob	
George Haron			2	ob	
*Mr Lough			2		qu.
Fargus Thomson			1		qu.
Thomas Fawset & John Gowling					
Sowerby House			3		
Mr Dalston pro Sanwath			3		
Acorn Bank demeisne		5			
*John Gowling			4	ob	
*Robert Teasdal			2		qu.
Robert Hodgson			2	ob	
Thomas Teasdall			2	ob	
Mr Hall			4	ob	
Mr Hall pro Moore Spot			6		
Parson Closes which usually hath bin received with the Easter Reckonings of those who	2	0	0		

[623] The asterisks on these pages were placed here either by Machell or some other person; they have nothing to do with this edition's choice of symbols for delineating Machell's textual notes.
[624] ½d.
[625] Farthing (¼d.)

collect moneys for his more-farme and
Whin-silver {?}[626]

{1665.} Receiv'd of Edward Cale 2[s] for the Parsons Close Anno Domini 1665. è pag.112-113:
A Note of Church-stock quarterly May 10, 1656. another, 1655. another, 1654. another, 1653.

A True Note of the old Church-stock 3[s] per pound, being perfected the 2[nd] day of Feb. 1651. In all

	Li.	s.	d.	
	8	5	0	
Item: a note of the old bem.	14	10	4	
Both together	22	15	4	È pag. 125, 126.

A particular note of the church-stock quarterly in 1652.[627]

{1639.} Anno Domini 1639.
Church-wardens John Hall and Edward Cale: burials, wedings & Christenings as they are in the Parchment Register-Booke.

Imprimis receiv'd of 29 houses.		vi[s] & ij[d]	
Item: dispurs'd for bread & wine at two severall times.		3[s] & 6[d]	0: vij[s] 0d
Item: for washing the surplices & table-cloth.		ii[d]	
Layd forth to John Bryce for upholding the church window.	xij[d]		
For delivering a note of our Register-Booke	ij[d]		

[III.250][628]

Receiv'd of the Church-stock [Blank]
whereof wee have paid to Sir Edward ~~2vs~~ 26[s]. So there remaineth overplus vj[s] xiiij[d], whereof (laid) out three shillings & 2[d] to make up for bread & wine, and the rest being 3[s] & 4[d], wee do pay to the next Churchwardens and wee do also deliver the next churchwardens one silver bowle, one Communion Booke, one Bible, one Homily Booke, one Table-cloth, one surplice and one flagon. (All this at p.128.)

Receiv'd of Robert Pattison for a burial	3[s] 4[d]
Laid forth to John Brash, glazier	12[d]
Item: For a pair of bell strings	15[d]
Item, Thomas Pattison, for his fathers burial	3s 4[d]
Item: Laid forth when wee tooke our oaths at Apelby[629]	8[d]

{Note.} Item: Receiv'd more than Sir Edwards wages for 3 quarters, 9[d] in the quarter, & for one quarter, 6[d]. p.129.
{Note.} (All Saints quarter 1650. (it seems to be for curates wages)
{1628.} The accounts of the church-wardens John Pattison & John Browne for the year of Our Lord God 1628.
{Note.} Gathered for the Preasts-wages quarterly, John Pattison, 6[d], John Atkinson, 15[d] &c. pag.142.
{1632.} 1632. a Note of the new Church-stock

[III.251][630]

A True Count of John Brown & [blank] Pattison, church-wardens for the Year of Our Lord 167 (for 1667)
{N[ote] That was in Sir Christopher Dalstons time vide infra[631] and may be in \ 1620. or / 1621. for 1622. follows.}
Imprimis collected of all that hath the Church-stock according to the rate & custom.

[626] Machell has questioned this. Whins (gorse) were used by farmers as livestock bedding. As such they were a crop like any other. https://www.dailypost.co.uk/news/local-news/farmers-return-gorse-cutting-help-2683219
[627] Machell underscored this text to separate it from the text below.
[628] Also numbered p.8.
[629] Oaths of allegiance and supremacy of the Church of England.
[630] Also numbered p.9.
[631] 'See below.'

{Note.} Out of which wee have paid the Curate all for one year, & xl^{s} which the Parson did pay, and wee finde 3^{s} 8^{d} remaining to the next church-wardens to be set forward to the use of the Church {Curate, not the master, for the proof being but 40s. See below 19s, where the letters stand an in a ranke. See also p.139!!!}
And William Teasdall younger, Thomas Walker, Thomas Atkinson, Andrew Stephenson payd nothing.
Item: receiv'd of xxx viij houses, every one, for bread & wine, whereof wee dispurs'd ij^{s} x^{d}. And iiij^{d} remain to the next Church-Wardens. And Thomas Walker & Andrew Stephenson payed nothing.
Item: for repareing of the Church of xxx […] houses vj^{d} a piece, which is xix^{s} and [blank][632]
Thomas Walker is nothing. {!}

Out of which sum wee have dispurs'd		
for the [blank]		viij^{d}
for a Register		6^{d}
For limeing the church,	vj^{s}	viij^{d} {q? ubi}[633]
for lyme carrage	xij^{d}	
for slate	viij^{d}	
for [blank]		iij^{d}
for hair		ij^{d}
for (spelks)[634] and strings	xij^{d}	

which is xvij^{s} & j^{d}, out of the which remaine ij^{s} v^{d} {pag. 132}

Item: Receiv'd for Prisners & Soljers money {these are sesses for lame Soljers & Prisners} of one & thirty \ xxx / houses, ij^{d} an house, which is in all v^{s} & ij^{d}, and there remaneth vj^{d} to the next Church-wardens; and John Dalton, John Lowis younger, Thomas Atkinson & Thomas Walker payed nothing. {forsan quia paupers}[635]
Receiv'd of Sir Christopher Dalston Knight for Christopher Phillips burial in the church, iij^{s} & iiij^{d}.
Receiv'd for a tree, xxiij^{d}, out of which payd 8^{d} for the lodging of 3 travellers, which were to be lodged in the Churches account: È pag.~~132~~ 133.[636]

[III.252]

Anno 1621.
The account of Richard Stable and Robert Parker (it seems writ by the hand of Michael Wilkinson. Compare with pag. 9)
Receiv'd by George Parker & his fellow, xij^{d} whereof layd out by us to maintaine the church wages: viij^{d}. And wee received for prisoner money ij^{d} overplus, which wee dispursed for washing the surplice and wee deliver to our successors Richard S [blank] & his fellow:
Item: we deliver to them one silver cup with a covering, one hand-bell and one order in [blank] made & agreed upon with a [blank] within Temple-Sowerby {È pag. 133.}

The Account of Richard Fawell, Churchwarden Anno 1622.

Imprimis receiv'd of xxvj tenents at iij^{d} a piece	vj^{s}	vj^{d}	
Item: of vij cottagers at ij^{d} a piece		xiiij^{d}	
John Dalton, William Sowerby, Thomas Walker,			paid
Robert Gowling younger, Hugh Baxter			nothing
Item: of Richard Stable & his fellow late churchwardens		v^{d}	
Item: of xxx viij houses, every one j^{d} for bread & wine	iij^{S}	v^{d}	
Item: of John Pattisons wives[637] burial in the church	iij^{s}	iij^{d}	

& Dispurs'd:

[632] 38 houses would yield 19s at 6d per house.
[633] Query, when?
[634] Thin strips of wood. Splinters are locally called 'spelks'.
[635] 'Perhaps because they were paupers.'
[636] Taken from p.133.
[637] His wife's burial.

for mayson work	5^{s}		
for lyme		vij^{d}	
for leading stone		vj^{d}	
att the visitation[638] at Apleby		x^{d}	
for mending the glass-windows		xj^{d}	{È p.135}
Item: for a General Chapter at Browham		j^{d}	
Item: for washing the Surplice & Table-cloth		ij^{d}	
For a Court entering for Alexander Gowling		ij^{d}	
& deliver up* 3 bookes, a silver cup, an hand-bell			{È p.136}

It seems there was no Church-stock then. Query de curates wages. Anon church wages supra.[639]

[III.253][640]

The Account of William Teasdall, churchwarden as above 1623.

First collected by me of 28 tenents 2^{d} a piece for repareing the church-leads: it comes to	iiij^{s}	viij^{d}
Whereof dispurs'd to a plummer	3^{s}	6^{d}
More dispurs'd for bell strings		viij^{d}
More at the General Chapter		iiij^{d}
To John Lowis for service to the plummer		iiij^{d}
More laid out for Bread & Wine		iij^{d}
		&c.

In calce paginæ[641] receiv'd of Robert Dalton iij^{li} of his church stock, which I deliver'd to John Hall
Writ to supply the defect {p.137}
More of the Church-wardens spared of Sir Edwards wages: xij^{d}; and deliver'd as before to the next Church-wardens {p.138}

The account of Humphrey Gowling & Thomas Haron:
Church-wardens, collected by us 1624.

For old arrearages for Prisners and Soljers money	x^{s}	
Whereof dispurs'd to the Heigh Constable for the same	ix^{s}	iiij^{d}
Item: Laid out at the Visitation		xij^{d}
Item: At the General Chapter[642]		iiij^{d}
Laid vj^{d} more than wee receiv'd		
Item: iiij^{s} of the Church-stock Haron had besides his Old stock		
{1^{t} mention of Church stock but presupposing it}		
Payd iij^{s} iij^{d} for Roger Stable {p.138}		

[III.253-4]

Church-wardens 1625.
William Teasdal junior, Robert Gowling senior

Receiv'd of John Pattison xx^{s}, which was given by Richard Stable ~~at his~~ desceased, to the use of the Church: pay as above the xxxi^{t} day of July 1625.	
1625. Item: Receiv'd of John Lowson, the sum of	xx^{s}

[638] An ecclesiastical visit to examine the state of a diocese, parish, religious institution, etc.; a visit paid by a bishop or archdeacon [chancellor of the diocese in the case of Carlisle Diocese]; a meeting or gathering of persons concerned in such a visit. *OED*.
[639] 'Are not these the church wages, above?'
[640] Also numbered p.11.
[641] 'At the foot of the page.'
[642] Presumbly, this is a deanery meeting [?]

Ould Church-stock
~~Laid out of this so receiv'd to William … old stock~~ ~~xx~~
Receiv'd of John Hill for the Ould Church-stock xx^{s}
[&] of the new stock xl$^{s.}$
Receiv'd of Annas Sowerby Ould stock xx^{s}
Laid out of this so receiv'd: xx^{s}
To William [Blank] ~~ould stock~~ xx^{s}
[Blank] Hodgson ~~ould stock~~ xx^{s}
Michael Hodgson surety
[Blank] Teasdall iiij^{li}
xx^{s} is of the Ould stock (the rest of the new)

{p.139} Anno Dom. 1627. Ould stock after iiij^{s} the pound. And other money for ij^{s} {p.140.}

1629.
John Pattison, John Atkinson junior: Church-wardens.
Wee receiv'd at the last church-wardens hands ij^{s}
{Note.} Laid out by us in charges ij^{s} &[643]
{!} Item: spared of the church-wadges ii^{s}
Deliver'd by us to the next Churchwardens,
Richard Fawel & Robert Dalton vj^{s} vii^{d}

[p.]141. 1628.
The Account of the Church-wardens John Pattison & John Brown for the year of Our Lord God 1628.
{Note.} gather'd for the Preast Wages quarterly
John Pattison 6^{d} &c.
John Atkinson xv^{d} &c.{p.142-143}

All Saints Quarter 1650. p.141.

[III.255][644]

Item: wee deliver'd to the next Church-wardens; a Bible, a Nomine Booke {for homily},[645] a Booke of Common Prayer, with surpleths and Table-cloth, ut suppleat[ur][646] p.144. in capite.[647]
A Note of the New Church-stock 1632. {p.144}
A Note of church-stock for Candlemas quarter 1649. {p.146}
A particular note of the Church-stock Candlemas {p.148}
Receiv'd more than Sir Edwards wages iij^{s} for iij quarters, & 9^{d} for one quarter, which wee tooke 1^{s} j^{d} for Bread & Wine, & wee spared 2^{s}.
Laid forth to the plummer for mending the church leads v^{s}
Glasier xij^{d}
Laid forth at Apleby when wee tooke oathes viij^{d}
Item: at one visitation ix^{d}
Item: at the last General Chapter iiij^{s}
Bell string for washing surplice & table-cloth &c. {p.149 ultim.}[648]
Chappel ought to be & originally was endow'd by those who build them; and not withstanding them they ought to repare to the parish church. They are chappels of ease, not of idleness. Not church. Quia[649] no presentation nor induction to

[III.256]

them as churches but onely as apurtenances & chappells.
2. If churches I have no title to them for I am no[t] qualify'd to hold 3 churches nor yet 2. But they are chappells:

[643] The rest of this line is obscured by the binding.
[644] Also numbered p.13.
[645] A book of scriptural openings such as, 'In the name of the Father', used for sermons and discourses addressed to congregations.
[646] 'As should be supplied.'
[647] At head of p.144.
[648] Ultim: 'last entries.'
[649] 'Because.'

1. Because so they are mentioned to be in an Evidence penes Honorablem Venerab. Johes Tufton, Armig[er], wherein Adam de Kirkbythore grants the advowsan thereof to Robert de Veteripont, anno 4^0 vel 5^0 Johannes [1203-1204].
2. Because the inducti to this day runs cum Capellis de Milburne & Sowerby.[650]

Object

They are call'd Churches, & the overseers of them, Churchwardens.

Answer

That make nothing against Evidence. People are apt to miscall chappells & confound them with churches, so the High Field at Crakenthorp is call'd the Kirkbankes, & yet the place where the chappell stood, the Chappel Garth; and the well near adjoyneing, Chappell well.

Object

But they bury, Christen & mary there: ergo a church.

Answer

Tho they doe so, this makes it not church but onely a chappell of ease; for this may be don by consecration to any chaple, as in colleges; & the Bishop of

[III.257]

Carlile is now about to make Raughton Chappel one of this nature: so l[…]ng chappel.[651]

Query

Who to repare the quires in chappells. What obligation to preach? Once in the month.
What sortes of tythes due?
What fees for christening, churchings, burying, marriages?

Memorandum: Mr Dalston pretends[652] prescription for tythe calves in his demeisne 10 groates a calfe, sed de hac q.[653] For:
1. Mr Dawson, Reader, sayes Mr Walker declared that he would \ not / stand with him for it because he was a Gentleman; and one of whom he receiv'd ~~many~~ \ his / dinner when he preached there.
2. The demaisne is of short continuance being tenanted lands given to the Lord for freeing[654] the other halfe {But he sayes they are not}. And besides, since the division,[655] many of the tenements have been purchased and so added lately to the demaisne. Now, if the tenents were lyable to pay in kinde, why not the Lord who injoys those tenements.
3. Kirkbythore, Hougil & Grainge, which are far more ancient, pay calves in kinde: why, then, not this?

Machell's Notes: [III.258]

Though Temple-Sowerby pretend an exemption from the Bishops Court, yet tis evident from the Register that the church wardens as they call them there, have frequently appear'd and bin sworn at Apleby.[656]
My Lady Sandford pretends that Grainge is only to pay 5^{li} and no tythe corne in kinde but [blank] now living has led tythe corne from of the place. Her ground is because twas chantery land but so was som at Apleby.
Memorandum: There is one place my Lady Sandford holds for which the prescription money was not paid: ergo forfait. Query: Mr Hall.

---

[650] 'Because the induction to this day is for the parish with its chapels of Milburn and Sowerby.'
[651] One word here is unclear. Raughton Head chapel was rebuilt before 1678 and re-consecrated by Bishop Rainbow on that date: Hyde & Pevsner, 583.
[652] Claims.
[653] 'But on this matter, I question.'
[654] Enfranchising.
[655] 'Division': enclosure of common land, often by private arrangement, much of it in the seventeenth century. See J.R. Wordie, 'The Chronology of English Enclosure 1500-1914', *The Economic History Review 2,* Vol. XXXVI, 4, (Nov. 1983), 483-505.
[656] Temple Sowerby held the status of a probate peculiar. 'Certain parishes, manors and liberties were exempt from the jurisdiction of the bishop and archdeacon in whose diocese and archdeaconry they were situated. They were subject to the probate jurisdiction of others when a testator had goods in more than one diocese of the northern province or in more than one jurisdiction (e.g. goods in both a peculiar of Dean and Chapter and in the jurisdiction of the archbishop). Then, the Prerogative Court of York had the right to grant probate. See Borthwick Institute. https://www.york.ac.uk/borthwick/holdings/guides/research-guides/probate-courts/

Temple Sowerby & Milburne \ pretend to / prescriptions for hay, but Kirkbythore payes all in kinde.
The whole quire with all the seats under the organ belong to the rector of Kirkbythore.
Enquire the day of paying prescriptions.

[V. 289]

[B.2.]

A true and perfect Abstract out of an old Register Book of Temple Sowerby In the County of Westm'land[657]

The first page of which book hath the number 1. upon it, but part of the said page cannot be read but towards the latter end thereof it hath these words:
Receivd of John Stable Anno Domini 1646. &c.; and the last page of the said Book hath this number 149. upon it, besides other things inscribd.
1. In page 97. 98. and 99. a note of the Church Stock in the year of our Lord God 1617.
Uxor Pattinson – xiijs iiijd. The whole township is set down.

2. In page the 9th.
I, Michael Wilkinson, Clerke, do hereby declare that I am hyred to serve the C[ure] at Temple-Sowerby Church until All Hallow Day next coming, & no longer, unless [I] can hereafter gain the consent & good lykeing of Sir Christopher Dalston, knight {N.B.} and the greater number of my parishioners within the town of Temple-Sowerby, in witness thereof I have hereunto sett my hand the 21th Day of December 1618.
Michael Wilkinson
Witnesses: John Lowson, William Gouling

3. In page 134. Anno 1621

The Accompt of Richard Stable and Robert Parker received by George Parker and his fellow	12d
Whereof laid out by us to maintaine the Church wadges	6d
And we receivd for Prisoner Money {N.B.}	2d overplus
Disbursd for washing the surplice &c.	[Blank]
we deliver to our successors Richard [Blank] and his fellow (&c.)	[Blank]

4. In page 135.
The accomt of Richard Fawell Church warden both receivd and laid forth in the year of Our Lord God 1622 as followeth

First. Receivd of 26 tenants 3d apiece	6s	6d
Item. Receivd of 7 cottagers 2d apiece		14d
John Dalton &c. paid nothing		
Item. Received of Richard Stable and his fellow late Church wardens		5d
Item. Received of 38 houses every one a penny for bread and wine	3s	5d
of which summe he laid out 2d more then that came to	3s	5d

Anno Domini 1623. In page 137 and 138.
5. The accompt of William Teasdale Church warden as above.

First. Collected per me of 28 tenants 2d apeice for repairing the Church Leads comes to	4s	8d
Whereof disbursed to a plummer	3s	6d
More disbursd to Bellstrings		8d
More at the generall Chapter		4d

More of the Churchwardens spared of Sir Edwards wages 12d and delivered as before to the next Church wardens	12d

[657] This section contains a mixture of Roman and Arabic numerals. Here, for simplicity, Arabic numerals are used throughout.

[V.290]

In page 139.
6. Churchwardens Anno 1625.
William Teasdale junior, Robert Gowlin[g] senior
Receiv'd of John Pattison xx^{s}, which was given by Richard Stable deceased, to the use of the Church paid as above the 31th day of July 1625.
Receiv'd of John Lowson, the sum of xx^{s} Ould Church-stock.
Receiv'd of John Hall xxs of the Ould Church-stock, & xl^{s} of the new-stock.
Receiv'd of Annas Sowerby xx^{s} of the Ould stock .

In page 140. Anno Domini 1627.
7. John Hall and Edward [Blank} Church wardens.
Receivd by us at the hands of William Teasdale junior the [sum] of foure pound whereof xxs of the old stock after iij^{s} the pound and iij^{li} for ij^{s} the pound.
Delivered to Thomas Haron William Gowling pledge new Stock.
Item. To Edward Stable iij^{li} viz. of the Old Stock xx^{s}.
Item. xl^{s} of the new stock.
And the said Edward Stable doth lie in pawn for the same one Rood[658] of his [land] next unto George Parker.

8. In page 142.
The account of the Churchwardens John Pattyson and John Brown year of our Lord God 1628.
{N.B.} Gathered for the Preasts Wages [this] quarter.

John Pattison		6d	
John Atkinson		20d	
John Dalton		6d	
Robert Dalton	2s	9d	
John Lowson	2s	0d	
John Lowes		6d	
William Gale		3d	
Rowland Lowes	2s	6d	
Richard Lowes		3d	
Edward Stable	2s	6d	
George Parker		6d	
William Newman		3d	
Robert Parker		15d	
Richard Stable house		6d	
Richard Fawell		6d	
William Stephenson		6d	
[Blank] Teasdell		6d	
[Blank] Blemar		12d	
Thomas Haron		12d	The said Thomas 6 pence at Sent Ellennors Quarter[659]
Humfrey Gowling		6d	
William Teasdall the elder	6d		
William Teasdall junior		3d	
Elizabeth Browne		3d	
Robert Gowling senior		12d	
William Gowling		6d	
Michel Hodgson		21d	
Elizabeth Sowerby		6d	
[Blank] Teasdell		3d	
Christofer Dalston		6d	
[Blank] Hale		6d	
[Blank] Pattyson senior		3d	
[Blank] Browne		6d	

[658] One rood = ¼ acre.
[659] The feast day of St Eleanor, aka St Helen, is 18 August.

[Blank] Grainger	3d
[Blank] Cole	}
Elizabeth Smith	} paid nothing
[Blank] Gowling	}

[V.291]

In page 141.
9. Received by the said Churchwardens 40s of William Stephenson of the Old Stock whereof delivered the same 40^{s} to John Lowson Anno 1629.

John Pattinson junior, John Atkinson Churchwardens.

Wee received at the last churchwardens hands	2s
Laid out by us in charges	2s 10d
{N.B.} Item. Spared of the churchwages	2s

In page 128.
Anno Domini 1639.
10. Church wardens John Hall, Edward Caile.
Buryills weddings and Christnings as they are in the parchment Register Booke.
The account of the said Churchwardens for their year.
Imprimis. Received &c.
Item. Received of Cycily Lowson of the old stock xx$^{s.}$ at Lammas 1639.
The same letten then to John Robinson xxs unto May-day then next after, paying to the next Churchwardens.
Item. Received at All Saints of Thomas Pattinson for Robert Parker of the new stock xls the which was letten at the same time to Robert Dalton xx^{s}.
Item. To Robert Hodgson and John Speight the other xx$^{s.}$
Item. Received for the Church stock this year [blank] Whereof we have paid to Sir Edward {N.B.} xxvi$^{s.}$, so there remaineth overplus, vi^{s} & vi. Whereof we [laid] out three shillings 2$^{d.}$ to make up for bread and wine & the rest being iij^{s} and iiij^{d} we do pay unto the next Church wardens.

11. in page 129 Anno Domini 1642.
Churchwardens John Atkinson and John Pattyson.
Laid out for bread and wine two several times, vis iiiij^{d}.
{N.B.} Item. Received more then Sir Edwards wages for 3 quarters 9^{d} in the quarter and for one quarter vi^{d}.

12. In page 112.
I received of Mr Lough no Tythe Hay Silver since Mr Walker came to Kirkbythore [signed] Thomas Lumley.

13. in page 108 1655.
{N.B.} A note of the Church stock old and new [let for] 3^{s} per pound and 2^{s} per pound together with the old marks.

	Old Stock	New stock	Old Mark	Yearly	Quarterly
	li	li	s. d.	s. d.	s. d.
Mr John Hall	2	4	13. 04	16. 0	4. 0
John Pattinson	0	0	13. 04	2. 0	0. 6
John Atkinson	0	0	13. 04	2. 0	0. 6
Margaret Dalton	1	3s 4d	13. 04	5. 4	1. 4
Christopher Lowson	0	0	13. 04	2. 0	0. 6
John Lowes	0	0	13. 04	2. 0	0. 6
Thomas Spooner	0	0	0 0	1. 0	0. 3
Rowland Lowes	1. 6s. 8d	0	13. 04	5. 8	1. 5

[V.292]

Memorandum that I never could get more of Rowland Lowes then 5^{s} a year [he] alleging that the 1^{li} he has is of the new stock.

Lancelot Lowes For which stock he has pledged his Acre on Moorlands which was formerly bought of Edward Stable.	0	1. 10s. 0d.	0	3s 0d	9d
Widow Lowes	0	0	0	1s 0d	3d
Richard Stable	0	1. 0s. 0d	13. 4	4s 0d	1s 0d
[Blank] Parker	0	15s 0d	13. 4	3s 6d	10½d
[Blank] Pattinson for houses	6s 8d	0	0	2s 6d	6d
[Blank] Stable	6s 8d	2. 2s 1d	13. 4	2s 0d	6d
Richard Fawcett	0	0	13. 4	2s 0d	6d
[Blank] Fawells houses	0	0	13. 4	2s od	6d
[Blank] Fawcett	0	10s 0d	0	1s 0d	3d

Memorandum that John Gowling gent. had one pound of the New Stock and lett William Fawcett have halfe of it.

William Teasdale	0	£1 0s 0d	13. 4	4s 0d	1s 0d
John Bleamire	0	£1 0s 0d	13. 4	4s 0d	1s 0d
John Ions House	0	4s 0d	13. 4	2s 0d	7d
John Gowling	0	10s 0d	13. 4	3s 0d	9d
Mr Christopher Lough	0	£2 0s 0d	13. 4	6s 0d	1s 6d
Robert Teasdale	0	0	0	1s 0d	3d
Fergus Thompson	0	10s 0d	0	2s 0d	6d
Thomas Fawcett Jun	10s 0d	0	0	2s 6d	7½d
Jennet Gowling	0	0	13. 4	2s 0d	6d
Robert Hodgson	13s 4d	£1 0s 0d	13. 4	6s 0d	1s 6d
John Speights house	0	0	13. 4	2s 0d	6d
George Haron	10s 0d	0	13. 4 & the house he is in	3s 6d	10d
Edward Cale	0	0	0	1s od	3d
Robert Pattinson	15s 0d	15s 0d	0	3s 9d	11d
Edward Mayson	0	0	13. 4	2s 0d	6d
John Walker	0	0	0	1s 0d	3d
John Gowling	0	0	0	1s od	3d

14. In pages 56 and 57

An exact account of the dues belonging to the Curate of Temple Sowerby

	Old Stock	New Stock	Old Mark	The Quarter
John Pattinson	0	0	6d	6d
John Atkinson	0	£1 0s 0d	6d	1s 6d
John Dalton	0	0	6d	6d
Christopher Lowson	0	0	6d	6d
John Lowis	0	0	6d	6d
Richard Lowis	0	0	6d	6d
Widow Ion	4s 0d	0	6d	6d
George Parker cum f.	0	15s 0d	6d	10½ d
Mrs Barnet	0	0	3d	3d
Alice Thompson	0	0	3d	3d
John Stable	6s 8d	£2 2s 1d	6d	8d

[V.293]

Thomas Fawell	0	7s 1d	6d	2s 5d
William Teasdale	13s 4d	£4 6s 8d	6d	2s 5d
Mr Gowling	0	0	6d	6d
James Haron	0	£1 0s 0d	6d	1s 0d
George Haron	10s 0d	£2 0s 0d	6d	1s.10d
Mr Lough	0	£2 0s 0d	3d	1s. 3d
Robert Teasdale	0	0	3d	3d
John Bleamire	0	£1 0s 0d	6d	1s. 0d
Thomas Lowson	0	0	6d	6d
Richard Lowson	0	0	6d	6d
Thomas Fawcet	£1 0s 0d	0	0	6d
Thomas Spooner	0	0	3d	3d
Henry Gowling	5s 0d	5s 0d	6d	9d
Robert Hodgson	0	0	6d	6d
William Hodgson	0	0	6d	6d
Mr Hall	£6 0s 0d	0	6d	4s. 6d
Edward Caile	0	0	3d	[Blank]
John Speight	0	0	3d	3d
John Walker	0	0	3d	3d
Jo. Gowling carpenter	0	13s 4d	6s 3d	7d
Robert Brockell, Curate				

15. In page 119. N.B. May the 1t. 1657. Quarter Wages

[Column 1]		[Column 2]		[Column 3]	
John Pattinson	6d	Widow Stable	6d	Jo. Gowling	3d
John Atkinson	6d	George Parker	6d	Mr Loughs house	6d
Vidua Dalton	8d ob	Item. Pro Jo. Gowling	6d	Item [Blank]	1s 0d
Christopher Lowes	3d	Item. Pro himself	4½d	Robert Teasdale	3d
Christopher Lowson behind in 1d	6d	Item. Pro Robert Pattinson	3d	Fargus Thompson	6d
John Lowes	6d	Item. Pro William Hodgson	3d	Thomas Fawcett	7½d
Thomas Fawell	2d	John Stable	1s 9d ob	James Gowling	6d
Thomas Spooner	3d	Richard Fawell	6d	Robert Hodgson	1s 6d
Rowland Lowes	1s 3d	Item. [Blank]	3d	A.M. paid	6d
Vidua Lowes	3d	William Teasdale	1s 6d	George Haron	10½d
Lancelot Lowes	9d	John Bleamire	1s 0d	Mr John Hall	3s 6d
		John Ion	6d and 1d	Robert Pattinson	11¼d
				Alice Thompson	3d
				Edward Caile	9d
				John Walker	3d
				Edward Mayson	6d
				John Gowling (behind in 9d)	3d
				James Haron	

16. In pages 106. and 107. there appeareth another note of the said Church Stock taken the 16th of November Anno Domini 1657.
17. In page 118. N.B. May the 4th 1658.
Quarters wages mentioned with small alteracon of names and summes divided & crossed out
18. In page 117 May the 4th 1659.
The like names, with some small alteracon of names and summes divided & crossed out.
19. In page 116, May the 4th 1660.
The like names with some small alteracon of names and summes.
20. In page 115, May 4th 1661.
The like names with some small alteracons of names and summes.

[V.294]

21. In page 114. May 4th 1662. Quarter Wages. N.B.

[Column 1]		[Column 2]		[Column 3]	
John Pattinson	6d	Richard Fawell	6d	Robert Hodgson	6d
John Atkinson	6d	Thomas Fawell	2d	Richard Lowson	6d
Christopher Lowson	6d	William Fawcet	6d	Sowerby House	6d
Vidua Dalton		Item. For himself	3d	Mr John Hall	3s 6d
John Lowes	6d	William Teasdale	3s 2d	John Speight	3d
Thomas Spooner	3d	John Blamire	1s 0d	Robert Pattinson of Woods	11¼d
Lancelot Lowes	9d	George Haron	10½d	Edward Caile	9d
Stables houses	6d	Item. John Ion	1d	John Walker	3d
George Parker	6d	John Gowling	3d	Browne houses	6d
Item. [Blank]	4½d	James Haron	3d	John Gowling	3d
Item. Pro Jo Gowling	6d	William Hodgson	3d	Item. For himself	4d
Robert Pattinson	3d	Mr Lough	1s 0d		
[Blank] Gowling	3d	Fargus Thompson	6d		
John Stable	1s 9½d	Thomas Fawcet	7½d		
		Jannet Gowling	6d		
					11s 4½d
				In all:	£1. 6s 4½d
				Robert Teasdale	3d

22. {N.B.} In page 38. 1662. Memorandum that Mr John Dalston of Acorn Banke and Mr William Walker Rector of Kirkbythore did grant and appoint a seat for stall in [Blank] of Temple Sowerby Church for the [blank] of Christopher Lowson, John Bleamire, Robert Hodgson, in lieu of another seat which Mr Dalston had of them.

23. In page 110. May the 4th 1662. Robert Hodgson paid in 1^{li} of the new Stock and 13s 4d of the old Stock, which was received by William Teasdale who is to pay for it accordingly. I say received of the Churchwardens John Pattinson and John Stable and delivered to the said William Teasdale.

24. {N.B.} In page 87. La[mmas] Quarter [16]64. The like names as formerly in ’62. with some small alteracon of names and summes.

25.{N.B.} In page 86. All Saints ’65. The like names with some small alterations of names and summes.{N.B.} Arrearages due to T. Barnet at Candlemas ’65.

	s.	d.	
John Atkinson	4	0	received 2s 6d
Widow Dalton	1	0	
John Dal[ton]	1	0	
[Blank] Stable		6 ½	
James Haron		6	
William Teasdale	3	2	
John Bleamire	6	0	received 5s 0d
George Haron	5	0	
Thomas Fawcet	1	2 ½	
William Hodgson	1	6	
Mr Hall	12	6	
Mr Lough	2	0	
Richard Lowes		6	
Robert Willison		6	
Henry Gowling		6	
John Walker		9	
John Gow[ling] carpenter	1	9	

For his son	1	6

26. {N.B.}in page 111. Arrearages due at Lammas '65. for Churchstock.

	s.	d .
John Atkinson	3	6
Widow Dalton		6
John Dalton		3
Richard Lowes		4
George Parker	1	10 ½
George Haron	1	3
Thomas Fawcett	1	7 ½
Jen: Gowling	1	0
Robert Hodgson		3
John Stable	5	3
Thomas Fawell	3	10
James Haron		3
William Teasdale		4
John Bleamire	4	0
William Hodgson		6
E. Caile		9
Jo: Speight	1	0
William Fawcet	2	6

27. In page 113.
Tithe Hay Silver as it was set down by the Jury.

	s.	d.
John Pattinson		2 ½
John Atkinson		2 ½
Daltons houses		2 ½
Christopher Lowson		2 ½
John Lowes	3	0
And Thomas Spooner		
Richard Lowes	3	0
Stables house		2 ½
George Parker		4 ½
Robert Pattinson	1	0
John Stable		4 ½
Stephensons house	3	0
William Teasdale	1	0
John Gowling		4 ½
Mr Lough	2	0 ¼
Robert Teasdale	2	0 ¼
Fargus Thompson	1	0 ¼
Thomas Fawcet and Jen: Gowling	[Blank]	
Robert Hodgson		2 ½
Thomas Teasdale		2 ½
Sowerby House	3	0
Mr Hall		4 ½
Mr Dalston of Sanwath {N.B.}	3	0
Acorn Bank Demane	5	0
Mr Hall for Moorfoot {N.B.}	1	6
John Blamire		2 ½
George Haron		2 ½

Parsons Close: 2s, which usually hath bin received with the Easter Reckonings of those that collect moneys for Moor Farm and Whinsilver.
Received of Edward Caaile 2^{s} for the Parsons Close Anno Domini 1665.

28. In page 104 and 105. There appeareth another note of the said Church Stock.

29. In page 149, being the last of the said Booke.
Churchwardens names rent out.[660]
First, received (&c.)
{N.B.} Item. Received more then Sir Edwards wages 3^{s} for three quarters and 9^{d} for one quarter [from] which we took 1^{s} 9^{d} for bread and wine and we spared 2 shillings.

30. In page 132.
A true count of John Browne and [Blank] Pattinson Churchwardens for the year of our Lord God 167[blank]
{N.B.} Imprimis. Collected of all that hath the Church Stock every quarter according to the rate and custome out of which we have paid the Curate all for one year &c. xl^{s}, which the parson did pay and we finde 3^{s} vii^{d} remaining; the next Churchwardens to be sett forward to the use of the Church and William Teasdale the younger, Thomas Walker, Thomas Atkinson and Andrew Stephenson pay nothing.

[V.296]

Item. Received of xxxviij houses, every one [blank] for bread and wine [Blank]
Whereof we disbursed ij^{s} x^{d} and iiij^{d} remaining [to] the next Churchwardens; and Thomas Walker and Andrew Stephenson paye nothing.
Item. For repairing the Church [received] of x – houses vi^{d} apeace which is xix^{s} & Thomas Walker is nothing. Out of th[is] summe we have despursed for the [Blank] viij$^{d.}$ for a Register vj^{d}, for lime the Church vj^{s} viij^{d}, for lime carriage xii^{d}, for slate viii^{d}, [blank] iiij^{d}, for hayre 2^{d}, for spe – strings xij^{d}. Which is xvij^{s} j^{d}, out of which remain ij^{s} v^{d}.

Item. Received of John Hall and John Teasdale being the last Churchwardens	4s 0d
Item. Received of Alexander Gowling of the Old Church Stock	16s 8d
{N.B.} Item. Received of Sir Christopher Dalston Knight for Christopher Phillips burial in the Church	3s 4d
And for Jane Pattinson daughter of [Blank] Pattinson the like, which is	6s 9d

{N.B.} The which we have delivered to John Dalton to bear wages for to the use of the Church.

[V.298-299]

[B.3.]

A true and perfect abstract out of an old Register Book of Temple Sowerby in the County of Westm'land

The first page if this book hath the number (1) upon it but part of the said page cannot be read, but towards the latter end thereof it hath these words:
"Received of John Stable Anno Domini 164[blank] and the last page of the said Book hath this number (149) upon it besides other things inscribed."

In page 135 and 136
a. The account of Richard Fawell, Church warden, both received and laid in the year of Our Lord 1622. as followeth.

Imprimis. Received of 26 Tenants 3d apiece	6s 6d
Item. Received of 7 cottagers 2d apiece	14d
Item. &c. John Dalton &c.	paid nothing
laid by the said Church wardens as followeth:	
Imprimis, laid forth for mason work	5s 0d
{N.B.} Item. At the Visitation at Appleby	10d
{N.B.} Item. At a General Chapter at Brougham	1d
Item. For a Court-entering for Alexander Gowlyng	2d

[660] The churchwardens' names were torn out.

In page 137 Anno Domini 1623.
b. The account of William Teasdale Church warden as above:
Imprimis, collected &c.
Thereof disbursed &c.
{N.B.} More at the General Chapter 4d

In page 138. 1624
c. The account of Humfrey Gowlyng and Thomas Haron, Church wardens
collected by us &c
{N.B.} Item. Laid out at the Visitation (&c.)
Item. At the General Chapter

In page 128 Anno Domini 1639
d. Church wardens John Hall and Edward Caile
Burials, weddings and Christenings as they are in the parchment Register Book
The Account of the said Church wardens
Imprimis. Received (&c.)
Item. Disbursed (&c.)
and for delivering a note of our Register Book 2d

In page 129 Anno Domini 1642
e. Church wardens John Atkinson and John Pattinson
The Account of the said Church wardens for this year:
Item. Received (&c.)
Laid forth (&c.)
{N.B.} Item. Laid forth when we took our Oaths at Appleby 8d

In page 149, the last of the book. f. Church wardens names rent out
Imprimis received (&c.)
Item. Laid forth at Appleby when we took our oaths 8d
Item. At one Visitation 9d
Item. At the General Chapter 4d

This is a true copy, witness our hands the 15th day of August Anno Domini 1678.
John Pattinson.
Jonathan Greene.

The words written above as copy agree in every respect with the same books shown me by the Revd Thomas Machell, Rector of Kirkby Thore in the Diocese of Carlisle, and were transcribed at his bidding on his authority as above. Collated per me, Henry Pattinson (signed) Notary Public in Carlisle as deputed in the kingdom.

[V.454][661]

[B.4.]

Rectory of Kirkby Thore[662]

The Declaration of all Issues Profits and Commodities coming and arising of the Parsonage there, in Tithes, Oblations,[663] wool, lamb, hay. Grain and all other spiritual duties for one whole year ending at

[661] A collection of pages on tithes.
[662] Part of a sequence on MS.V.445-59, in which the 1573 extract was bound in front of that of 1572. In this edition the spelling and punctuation have been modernised.
[663] Oblation: the presentation of money, goods, property, etc., to the Church for use in God's service, especially for the maintenance of ministers, services, religious communities, etc., or for the relief of the poor; (also) a donation or bequest of property for such a purpose; a customary offering made on a particular occasion, especially at the Eucharist.

the Feast of St Mark the Evangelist in the year of the Reign of our Sovereign Lady Queen Elizabeth 1572.

In rents and farms of the glebe lands paid by the tenants there	3	9	4
In the price of 48 stones of tithe wool at 4s 10d the stone	11	4	0
In the price of 111 tithe lambs at 1s 6d the piece	9	16	6
In the price of 33 tithe lambs at Howgill at 1s 4d the piece	2	4	0
In the price of one Tithe calf rated at 2s 0d	0	2	0
In the price of 88 hens at 3d the piece	1	2	0
In the value of the hay of the glebe land	2	4	0
In the value of the tithe hay	0	13	4
In the value of the tithe hay letter	1	3	0
NB In the value of the churchyard at Sowerby	0	1	0
In the value of the oblations at Kirkby Thore this year	1	1	8½
In the value of the broken tithes there this year	2	3	7
In the value of marriages, churchings and burials there	0	3	7½
In the value of Oblations at Temple Sowerby	0	14	8½
In the value of broken tithes there	1	3	3
In the value of marriages, churchings and burials there	0	1	0½
In the value of oblations at Milburn this year	0	16	0½
In the Value of marriages, burials, mortuaries and churchings there	0	8	3
In the value of broken tithes there this year	2	11	0½
In the value of one pension coming forth of the Parsonage of Newbiggin due yearly to be paid at the Parsonage	0	3	0
In the value of 240 eggs at 12 the penny	0	1	11½
In the value of 26 tithe geese at 6d the piece	0	13	0
In the value of 4 tithe pigs at 6d the piece	0	2	0
NB In the value of tithe hemp and line	0	3	4

[455]

NB in the value of the tithe of Temple Sowerby mill for multure of all the grain there yearly	0	3	4
NB in the value of the tithe multure[664] of the Corn Mill of Milburn this year	0	1	0

Glebe Lands

In the price of the wheat of the glebe lands	Nil		
In the price of the rye 5 quarters and 6 bushels, at 2s 6d the bushel	5	15	0
In the price of 7 bushels of peas at 2s 0d the bushel	0	14	0
In the price of barley, 9 quarters and 4 bushels at 2s 6d the bushel sold	9	10	0
In the price of oats, 12 quarters and 6 bushels at 1s 4d the bushel	6	16	0
In the price of rye straw, 72 threaves at 3d the threave[665]	0	18	0
In the price of barley straw 220 threaves at 1d the threave	0	18	4
In the price of oat straw, 240 threaves at 2d the threave	2	0	0
In the price of peas-straw, 18 threaves at 2d the threave	0	3	0

Kirkby Thore

In the price of wheat, 6 bushels at 3s 8d the bushel	1	2	0
In the price of rye this year, 6 quarters at 3s 0d the bushel	7	4	0
In the price of peas, 4 bushels at 2s 0d the bushel	0	8	0
In the price of barley, 14 quarters and 1 bushel at 2s 8d the bushel	15	1	4
In the price of oats, 14 quarters 3 bushels at 1s 4d the bushel	7	13	4
In the price of wheat straw 12 threaves, 1d the threave	0	1	0
In the price of rye straw 55 threaves at 3d the threave	0	13	9
In the price of bigg straw, 213 threaves at 1d the threave	1	1	1
In the price of oat straw, 190 threaves at 2d the threave	1	15	0

Temple Sowerby

[664] Multure, see the English Glossary.

[665] A threave or thrave: two shocks or stooks of corn (or pulse), generally containing twelve sheaves each, but varying in different localities; hence used as a measure of straw, fodder, etc.. *OED*.

In the price of wheat there	nothing			
In the price of rye, 2 quarters at 2s 8d the bushel	2	2	8	
In the price of peas, 11 pecks at 2s 0d the bushel	0	5	6	
In the price of barley, 7 quarters and 7 bushels, at 2s 6d the bushel	7	17	6	
In the price of oats there, 6 quarters, 2 bushels at 1s 4d the bushel	3	6	8	
				[V.456]
In the price of peas, all the straw there this year, nothing, because the tenants there had it for leading the tithe-corn, threshing winnowing and reparation of the Tithe Barn	Nil			
Milburn				
In wheat there, nothing	Nil			
In the price of rye, 4 quarters 2 bushels at 2s 8d the bushel	4	10	8	
In the price of peas, nothing	0	0	0	
In the price of bigg, 7 quarters 3 bushels at 2s 6d the bushel	7	7	6	
In the price of oats, 9 quarters and 1 bushel, at 1s 4d the bushel	4	17	4	
In the price of straw there, besides leading, mowing, threshing, winnowing and reparations of the Tithe Barn, is letter for 6s 8d	0	6	8	
In the price of the tithe corn of Howgill	1	6	8	
The whole sum of the aforesaid year	136	5	0½	
Whereof paid for serving the cure at Kirkby Thore £6 18s 4d [and] to Sir John Spedding, curate at Milburn £4 13s 4d	11	11	8	
NB Also paid for bread and wine for serving the whole parish for receiving cross in the year	1	0	0	
NB Also paid at Appleby the 14 of August to Sir Robert Pearson Dean of Westmorland for Visitation money 19s and 8d and for senaidge {synod} 4s 0d and for the Curate 4d	1	4	0	
NB Also paid to Roger Warcop for rent called nowtgeld	0	1	4	
Also paid in necessary expenses in collection of tithe wool and lamb within the parish this year	0	2	2	
Also in the fee or wages of the proctor there this year	10	0	0	
Also paid to Edward Richardson and his son, for helping to get the tithe hay	0	5	0	
Also paid to workmen in harvest for helping to mow, lead threshing, winnowing and dighting within the barns of Kirkby Thore this year	3	4	4	
				[V.457]
Also paid for the reparation of the Parsonage with slate lime, wood and other necessaries, as locks, keys, theaking the barns and others	2	6	8	
Also paid for scouring and laying of the hedges about the orchard and the Long Garth	0	8	4	
Also for shearing the corn on the glebeland this year	2	9	2	
Also paid for the first part of the subsidy for the Parson as appeareth by Acquittance thereof	3	8	3½	
Also paid to the Parson as appeareth by acquittance	10	0	0	
Also paid for the Tenths of the same Parsonage	3	15	9½	
Also delivered unto Hugh Warcopp for following the suit at York upon one letter from Ranold Hartlay	1	10	0	
Also paid for a servant for his board wages after 1s 8d a week for one whole year	4	6	8	
Also paid unto him for his wages	0	16	0	
Also paid unto him a livery price	0	10	0	
Also paid to one for driving the plough	1	5	0	
Also, for filling the coupe, harrowing and scaling dung	0	4	0	
Also hay eaten with the oxen that ploughed the glebe land and the horses that harrowed	2	4	0	
NB Also rye straw delivered to Appleby to Raynold Hartlay				

for theaking at the castle, 44 threaves, at 3d the threave	0	11	0
Also, rye straw theaked at Kirkby Thore this year, 20 threaves at 3d the threave		5	0
Also spent with the oxen, oat straw 362 threaves at 2d the threave	3	10	0
Corn sown at Kirkby Thore of the glebe land this year			
rye 16 bushels 2 pecks at 2s 6d a bushel	2	1	3
Also, in haver sown 4 quarters and a half at 1s 4d the bushel	2	8	0
Also, in peas 6 pecks at 2s 0d the bushel	0	3	0
Also, in bigg, 2 quarters at 2s 6d the bushel	2	0	0
Total of payments	63	10	8¼
And thus, is owing	72	14	4¼

[V.458]

Acquittances referred to in the foresaid Accounts, and tacked to the foot of the Roll are as followeth:

Received the 18. day of October £3. 8s. 3½d. 1571. of Mr Humphrey Musgrave farmer of the Parsonage of Kirkby Thore for the first part of the subsidy of the said parsonage £3 8s 3½d. due to the Queens Majesty the first day of October last before the date hereof. In witness of the same I have subscribed my name the day and year abovesaid. And received for half year senage 2s od.
per me Robert Pearson Dean of Westmorland.

On the 17th January in the 14th year of the reign of Elizabeth [1572] Queen of England, France, and Ireland, Defender of the Faith &c.
Received the day and year above-written of Humphrey Musgrave Esq. by the hands of Reginald Hartlay in part of payment of a reckoning for the Parsonage and Rectory of Kirkby Thore, the sum of ten pounds. In witness whereof, I have hereunto set my seal and subscribed my name the day and year first above written.
per me Robert Warcoppe.[666]
Sealed and delivered in the presence of Mr William Musgrave William Middleton Henry Lomm.

Kirkby Thore Rect[ory] 22. January in the 14th year of the reign of Queen Elizabeth of England &c. [1572].
Received three pounds fifteen shillings ninepence halfpenny farthing £3 15s 9 ¾d for the tenths of the said Rectory due to the Queens Majesty at Christmas last past &c.
Received per me Jo: Barness.

[V.459]

Acquittances Referred to in the foresaid Accounts and pinned to the foot of the Roll as followeth:
7th October in the 14th year of the Reign of Elizabeth Queen of England &c. [1571-1572].
Received £3. 8s. 3½d. for the second part of the subsidy due unto the Queens Majesty the first day of this October now past past for the Rectory of Kirkby Thore &c. £3. 8s. 3½d.
Received per me Jo: Barness.

At Rose [Castle] 12th March 1572.
Received of Reynold Parkin servant to Mr Register of Carlisle for the tenths of the Parsonage of Kirkby Thore within the Diocese of Carlisle due at Christmas last past the sum of three pounds fifteen shillings ninepence halfpenny farthing. £3. 15s. ¾d.
Received per me Jo: Barness.

The Acquittances are pinned to the Roll.
7th October in the 14th year of the reign of Elizabeth Queen of England &c.
Received £3. 8s. 3 ½ d. for the second part of the subsidy due unto the Queens Majesty the first day of this October now last past for the Rectory of Kirkby Thore &c. £3. 8s. 3 ½ d.
Received per me Jo: Barness.

[666] Here, there is a seal.

[V.445]

[B.5.}

Rectory of Kirkby Thore

The Declaration of all Issues, Profits and Commodities coming and rising off the Parsonage of Kirkby Thore in Rents, Tithes, Oblations, Wool, Lamb, Hay, Corn, and Grain, an all other Spiritual Duties for one whole year ending at the Feast of St Mark the Evangelist in the fifteenth year of the Reign of our Sovereign Lady Queen Elizabeth [25 April 1573.]

N.B. Imprimis. In rents and farms of the glebe lands by the tenants there	3. 9. 4
Item. In the price of 32 stones of tithe wool at 5s 0d the stone	8. 0. 0
N.B. Item. In the price of 64 tithe skins	0. 18. 0
Item. In the price of 57 lambs at 1s 4d the piece	3. 16. 0
Item. In the price of 23 tithe lambs at Howgill at 1s 4d the piece	1. 10. 7
Note the price. Item. In the price of one tithe calf	0. 2. 0
Note, not Dem; note price: Item. In the price of 88 hens at 3d the piece	1. 2. 0
Item. In the value of the hay coming and growing of the glebe land	2. 4. 0
N.B. Item. In the value of the tithe hay letter to divers persons	1. 3. 0
N.B. Item. In the value of the tithe hay in my own hands	0. 13. 4
N.B. Item. In the value of hay in Temple Sowerby Churchyard	0. 1. 0
Item. In the value of oblations of Kirkby Thore	1. 2. 2½
Item. In the value of broken tithes there	1. 18. 1
Item. In the value of weddings, churchings and burials there	0. 3. 4½
Item. In the value of oblations of Temple Sowerby	0. 13. 6
Item. In the value of broken tithes there	1. 0. 0½
Item. In the value of weddings, churchings and burials there	0. 1. 0
Item. In the value of oblations at Milburn	0. 16. 8
Mill. Item. In the value of broken tithes there, with 1s 0d for the Mill	2. 12.10
Item. In the value of churchings, weddings and burials there	0. 4. 1½
N.B. Item. In the value of one pension coming forth of the parish of Newbiggin and is yearly paid to Kirkby Thore	0. 3. 0.
Item. In the value of 200 tithe eggs, at 12 eggs the penny	0. 1. 8
Item. In the value of 24 geese at 5d the piece	0. 10.0
Item. In the value of hemp and line within the parish	0. 3. 4
Item. In the value of 3 tithe pigs at 6d the piece	0. 1. 6
Mill N.B. Item. In the value of the tithe of Temple Sowerby Corn Mill	0. 3. 4
The Sum £32. 14s. 0d	

[V.446]

Glebe Land

Imprimis. In the price of tithe tithe wheat this year	Nil
Item. In the value of rye, 5 quarters 2 ½ bushels, sold at 3s 2d the bushel	6. 13. 0
Item. In the value of peas 6 bushels at 2s 0d the bushel	0. 12. 0
Item. In the value of barley, 13 quarters and 7 bushels at 2s 8d the bushel	14 16. 0
viii B[ushels] Item. In the value of oats, 13 quarters 4 bushels, at 1s 6d the bushel	8. 2. 0
Item. In the value of 50 threave of rye straw, at 3d the threave	0. 12. 6
Item. In the price of barley straw, 200 threave at 1d the threave	1. 0. 0
Item. In the price of haver straw, 152 threaves at 2d the threave	1. 5. 4
Item. In the price of peas straw, 12 threaves at 2d the threave	0. 2. 0
The Sum £33. 2s. 10d	

Kirkby Thore

Imprimis. In the value of wheat, 2 bushels at 3s 8d the bushel	0. 11. 0
Item. In the value of rye, 4 quarter and 3 bushels at 3s 2d the bushel	5. 10.10
Item. In the value of peas 5 bushels at 2s 0d the bushel	0. 10. 0
Item. In the value of barley at 2s 8d the bushel	13. 6. 8
Item. In the value of oats, 16 quarters 4 ½ bushels, at 1s 4d the bushel	9. 18.10
Item. In the value of wheat straw, 10 threaves at 1d the threave	0. 0.10
Item. In the value of rye straw, 63 threaves at 2d the threave	0. 10. 6
Item. In the value of barley straw, 220 threaves, at id the threave	0. 18. 4
Item. In the value of oat straw, 192 threaves at 1 ½ d the threave	1. 4. 0

{Note price of length and not in short}
Item. In the price of peas straw, 10 threaves at 1d the threave 0. 0.10

The Sum £32. 11. 9d[667]

Temple Sowerby

Imprimis. In the value of wheat there this year	Nil
Item. In the value of rye, 3 bushels a4 3s 4d the bushel	0. 10. 0
Item. In the value of peas, 6 pecks at 2s 0d the bushel	0. 3. 0
Item. In the value of barley, 6 quarters 1 bushel at 2s 8d the bushel	6. 10. 8
Item. In the value of oats, 6 quarters 4 bushels at 1s 6d the bushel	3. 18. 0
N.B. Item. In the value and price of all the straw, nothing; for the tenants had the same [in return] for threshing and leading the corn	Nil

The Sum £11. 1s. 8d

[V.447]

Milburn

Imprimis. In the value of wheat this year	Nil
Item. In the value of rye, 6 ½ bushels at 3s 4d the bushel	1. 1. 8
Item. In the value of peas this year	Nil
Item. In the value and price of barley, 8 quarters 2 bushels at 2s 8d the bushel	8. 16. 0
Item. In the price of oats, 8 quarters at 1s 6d the bushel	4. 16. 0
Item. In the price of all the straw there, besides leading, mowing, threshing and winnowing	0. 6. 8

The Sum £15. 0s. 4d.

Howgill

Imprimis. In the value of the tithe corn at Howgill	1. 6. 8.

The Sum £1. 6s. 8d.

Total Sum £125. 17s. 3d.

Whereof paid for serving of the cure at Kirkby Thore	6.13. 4
N.B. Item. Paid for serving of the cure at Milburn	4.13. 4
N.B. Item. Paid for bread and wine for serving the whole parish 3 times in the year	1. 2. 0
Item. Paid to Roger Warcopp for nowt-geld	0. 1. 4
Item. Paid for necessary expenses in collecting the tithes within the parish this year	0. 2. 4
Item. Paid for the fee of the Proctor, and wages	10. 0. 0
{Cross} Item. Paid for bread and drink that the parish had in the Cross Week[668]	0. 1. 8
Item. Paid for helping to get the tithe hay	0. 5. 0
Item. Paid to workmen in harvest for helping to lead corn, for mowing, threshing and dighting	3. 13. 0
Item. Paid for the reparations of the parsonage about the house	1. 6. 8
Item. Paid for making hedge about the fields	0. 3. 0
Item. Paid for weeding of corn of the glebe land	2. 8. 6
Item. Paid for the second part of the subsidy as appeareth by the acquittance	3. 8. 3½
Item. Paid for the tenth of the same Parsonage as appeareth by the acquittance	3.15. 9½
Item. Paid for the senage of the same Parsonage	0. 4. 0

[V.448]

Item. Paid for Proctor expenses	0. 3. 1
Item. Paid for a servant that was kept at Kirkby Thore for meat, drink and wage	5.12. 8
Item. Paid for one for driving the plough that ploughed the glebe land	1. 8. 0
Item. Paid for driving the plough in rye seed-time	0. 4. 2
Item. Paid for helping to fill dung in the cowpe	0. 2. 0
Item. Paid for scaling dung and harrowing	0. 2. 0
Item. Paid for hay spent with oxen and horse that occupied the glebe land	0. 4. 0
Item. In rye straw that theaked the house at Kirkby Thore, 40 threaves at 3d the threave	0.10. 0
{?} Item. Spent with the oxen in oat straw 280 threaves at 2d the threave	2.13. 4

[667] Machell notes here, MS., 'N. price at length & not in short.'

[668] The Feast Day of the exaltation of the Holy Cross takes place on the 14 September (27 September in the Julian Calendar). Anglicans call it Holy Cross Day. It is sometimes known as Holy Rood Day. See the *Common Worship Calendar* (2000).

Item. Spent in bigg straw 156 threaves at 1d the threave	0.14. 8
Item. Corn sown at Kirkby Thore upon the glebe this year in wheat 10 pecks at 3s 8d the bushel	0.11. 8
Item. Rye sown, 15 bushels at 3s 4d the bushel	2.10. 0
Item. Peas sown, 2 bushels at 2s 0d the bushel	0. 4. 0
Item. Oats sown, 4 ½ quarters at 1s 6d the bushel	2.14. 0
Item. Bigg sown, 17 bushels at 2s 8d the bushel	2. 5. 4
Summa Totalis £52. 1s.6d	
Soe remaining to be paid £73.15s.9d.	

The Roll is Indorsed on the Back, Anno Domini 1573. Kirkbythore

[V.449]

[C. Correspondence 2.]

[Letter to [Thomas] Carleton concerning the foregoing Rolls][669]

July 2nd 1698

Mr Carleton

I thank you for the Rolls you showed me at Appleby of the issues and profits of Kirkby Thore Rectory in the 14. and 15. of Queen Elizabeth A.D. 1572. 1573. and of the disbursements which were then paid out of the same; by which it appears:

1. That the old rents and farms of the Glebe Lands (which I take to be fineable Rents) were per Annum, 3. 9. 4.

But now they are only iii^{li} & viij^{s}, i.e.

In Kirkby Thore	1. 4. 1
In Milburn Chapelry (i.e. at Kirkhouse)	1. 10. 7
In Sowerby Chapelry	0. 13. 4

In all: £3. 8s. 0d.

{1s. 4d old Rent lost}

Soe that one Shilling and fourpence is somewhere concealed of the old Rent, which I do not know \ how / to discover: for I had not soe much as one scrap of paper of my predecessor (Mr William Walker) which belong'd to the Rectory; whose easinesse has create me a great deale of trouble, and whose kindness (I feare) to old Mr Dalston (who gave him a Parsonage) has given occasion to some incroachments upon the Church*.

{Mortuariss lost in Sowerby}[670] {Sowerby Chancell wholly invaded}

For (not to mention the losse of mortuariss in Temple Sowerby which sprang from hence, for all the parish has without doubt been of one piece) I find they disposed of seats in the Chancel about 30 years since (without consent of Patron or Bishop) which young Mr Dalston does now insist on: And \ which / might I suppose be justifiable during the life of the said Incumbent (for the Rector pro tempore[671] may dispose), but I think no farther. However, they have advanced soe farre upon this concession, that I have not soe much as a place for my servant or Parish Clerke within the said Chancell; nor indeed soe much room as to kneel at the Altar when I officiate: and yet they expect that I should repaire the said Chancell for them at my own proper cost. Concerning which I alwayes made them this modest proposal (which my Lord of Thanet approved of, and so did the Chancelor of York before him) That if they would quit their pretensions to it, soe that none might sit there but by the consent of me and my

[669] This letter was written 4½ months before Machell's death on 11 November 1698. 'Mr Carleton' was frequently mentioned by Machell in relation to Appleby Castle (see above, III.233) Thomas Carleton (1660-1731), of an Appleby family, was steward at Appleby Castle for Lord Thanet from c.1690. The Red House (No. 30), Boroughgate, Appleby, was built for him in 1717: https://britishlistedbuildings.co.uk/101146473-the-red-house-appleby-in-westmorland. For more on this letter and the reasons for it, see Barker, 'The Reverend Thomas Machell's complaint', 279-81.

[670] Mortuary: a customary gift, formerly claimed by the incumbent of a parish from the estate of a deceased parishioner; (also) this type of gift. *OED*.

[671] 'For the time being.'

successors, I would repaire it; or if they would repaire it I would quit mine; because they pretend the Chapple is too little for them.
My Lord was pleased to order Mr Sheriffe to Acquaint my cousin Mr Christopher Dalston with this proposal; who declared himselfe willing to Release his pretensions to the said Chancell in the hearing of my brother Hugh Machell, and \ of / Mr Sheriff, who doubtlesse acquainted My Lord with his Answer. In order to which I drew an Instrument and shewd it to you.[672]

[V.450]

But he dyed somewhat suddainly before we could have an opportunity of sealing the same. But now the young Gentleman will yield to nothing, soe that I feare the Chapelle must fall; for tho I offered him to give leave that his pew (which is soe thrust out of his Quire that it possesses one-third of the Chancell) should stand soe far in it as the Altar service and uniformity could possibly allow of; provided he would repaire soe much of it: he scornes the proposall, and will not reccede one Inch from his Right as he pleases to call it, tho the altar thereby is shut out of its place.[673]

{5s 0d finable rent attempted to be turned into freehold in Sowerby}
Nor will he rest here and be content with taking from me that part of the Chapple which he calls mine (Sc. the Chancell), but goes about to disinherit the Church of its ancient indowments by converting 5s 0d of the foresaid ancient finable rent into a free-rent, for under that notion he tenders it to me and bids me prove that his ancestors ever paid any fine to Mr Walker or any other, which is impossible for me to doe: but this I can prove, that it is parcell of the foresaid Marke Rent and that other parts of it have been fined to me since I became Rector of Kirkbythore, which I hope is enough. However, I have Assessed my fines and demanded 18 years Rent in arreare, and given him notice, as you may see by the papers inclosed: But I have no witnesses that Applegarth is part of the Tenement (tho it be mentioned in the Admittance) but only by heare say, from father to son: quere therefore if it be safe to mention the same. And if it be not; whether I should not Admitt him (de Novo) to White Stones only of the said yearly rent (which the whole Jury has agreed to) {Query?} and thereupon give him fresh notice.

{Multure Tithe of Sowerby Mill lost}
Secondly. By the said Rolls it appears that 3s 4d was formerly paid to the Rectory of Kirkbythore, as the value of the Tythe of Temple Sowerby Mill for moultor of all the Grain there yearly. This is now lost; for what was paid in Mr Walkers time I cannot tell anything or nothing; and not only That; but all other dues (excepting only Tythe Corne and some wooll) have been detained from me this 18 year. And now the Executors of Mr Dalston are not willing to pay it. And the Heire (you will see by the papers inclosed) will not pay me one Groate without compulsion; and I am not able to contest it with him for he threatens to spend 500^{li} before he consent to pay me one farthing except the 5^{s} as a free Rent as is aforesaid, and that without paying any arrears.

[V.451]

{Salary of Sowerby Chapel lately imposed upon the Rector}
3. Lastly it appears by the Disbursements in the said Rolls that there was not \ then / one farthing payd out of the Rectory of Kirkbythore towards the maintenance of the Chaplain of Sowerby.
Soe that what is charged upon it since, is by Incroachment, and condiscension of the former Incumbents, which one would thinke should not bind his successors: which note should be Added (as a confirmation) to what I formerly writt to My Lord upon this subject. And soe much for Sowerby

{Newbiggin Pension} {Of 3s Acquittances lost}

[672] For more on Machell's problems with 'old Mr Dalston', see Barker, 'The Reverend Thomas Machell's complaint', 279-81.
[673] This was not a rare occurrence. As late as 1816, a similar situation was noted at Walton in Cumberland, where the patron had 'shortened the Chancel one half … there is no way to the communion table but by his seat and all who take the sacrament must kneel in it.' See Jane Platt (ed.), *The Diocese of Carlisle 1814-1855: Chancellor Walter Fletcher's 'Diocesan Book' with additional material from Bishop Percy's parish notebooks* (Woodbridge, 2015), 100.

There is alsoe Charged in the said Rolls amongst the profits of Kirkbythore Rectory, 'In the Value of one Pension coming forth of the Parish of Newbiggin as it is yearly paid to Kirkby Thore, iij^{s},' which I have demanded but never received, having noe living witnesse to prove the payment before my time. Soe this I suppose will alsoe be lost (amongst many other dues I could mention) unlesse My Lord interpose his authority by sending either you, or some other, to enquire into them and make demands of them; which will Terrifie more than anything I can doe; for as long as they thinke that I am out of his Lordships favour, they will not much care what wrong they do \ to / me; and thus the Parsonage must suffer at Last.
I would gladly have My Lords advice; and know his pleasure what he would have me doe in these matters; and how farre he will please to Interpose his Ius patronatûs.[674] For if he is willing to let them passe, I shall doe soe too, who am
Your very affectionate Servant
Thomas Machell

[P.S.] I doe intend to agree with Sir Richard: as soon as ever he comes in the Countrey, having lost and expended as much in defending the Rights of my Church as would have purchased the Inheritance \ forever / of the Tythes I contend for. But say nothing of it.

[V.452A]

[The receipt for the loan of the Rolls above]
14 January 1697.
Then had borrowed and received by me Mr William Burton, Chaplain to Mr Thomas Machell \ Rector / of Kirkbythure, out of the Evidence Room at Appleby Castle two paper Rolls being accounts of the Rectory of Kirkbythure aforesaid for the 14 and 15 years of Queen Elizabeth: Which Rolls I doe hereby covenant & promise to return Safe & Intire to Mr Carleton to & for the use of the Right honorable Thomas Earl of Thanet within ten Days next ensueing, Wittnesse my Hand the Day and Year abovesaid.
William Burton
Test.[675] Richard Monkhouse

[674] 'Right as Patron.'
[675] Witness.

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 15]

[Parish of Lowther]

[III.40]

[Initial Notes and Queries]

1. How many villages, towns or hamlets, single houses, and how from the church, E. W. N. S.
2. In each area.[1]

i. How many families.
[ii.] How many free, Customary, fine cert[ain] or Arbitrary.[2]

Things remarkable in art:
1. As gentlemens houses, church, chaples, antiquities ~~&c.~~
2. In nature: as herbs, springs, mines.
3. Who Lord or Lords of the manner.

Bounder: 1. Wilkinson; John Crags of Parkeside.[3]

[III.34A]

[River Lowther]
See the cource of the river from Shap.

[I.596]

{Lowther Church & Lowther Hall [were] visited by Mr Dugdall. You may meet with all the Armes and what else is remarkeable in his *Visit[ation] of Westm'land 1664*, in the Heralds College, London;[4] which may save me a Labour of drawing them, for if any man have a minde to print a booke out of these Notes, the Gentlemen of that office,[5] as they have bin extraordinarie Civil to me, will not to be unkinde to him. & I doe Conjure him to present them with a Booke for their Library in my behalfe, tho unknowne by name.

{Hackthorp also belongs to the Lowthers, where it is said an spirit walked not many years since, which ~~somtimes~~ appeared in ~~the shape~~ diverse shapes, of a Colt, an Ass a Buck &c. {He began to pirchase 5 year agoe – & got al but Newtons in 3 years space}.[6] Inf. J. Wib[ergh] Jan. 27 1686. Memorandum. The Strange Robery.

———————

[III.37][7]

Lowther Parish Part 1.

It is a Rectory, rated in the First Fruits Office at £5 6s 2½d,[8] the tenths of which is 2:10: 8^{d} $3q^{a}$,[9] and payeth \ yearly to / the bishop for ~~yearly~~ procurations & synodals, 0:4:0*.
The patrone is Sir John Lowther of Lowther.

---

[1] MS: 'In each ~~instans many Lords~~ \ area.' /
[2] A Fine was an amount paid for admission to a lease but distinguished from any rent to be paid under it; a Fine Certain was a fixed sum. *ODNB*.
[3] These were Machell's bounder informants.
[4] See Joseph Foster (ed.), *Pedigrees Recorded at the Heralds' Visitations of the Counties of Cumberland and Westmorland made by Richard St George, Norroy, King of Arms in 1615 and by William Dugdale, Norroy, King of Arms in 1666* (Carlisle and Kendal, 1891), 84-85. Dugdale recorded the pedigrees in 1664 and 1665.
[5] The Heralds' Office.
[6] Presumably, Machell is referring to information about Sir John Lowther, given to him by J. Wybergh.
[7] This page has been added to at different times, using at least four different shades of ink.
[8] The 'Valor Ecclesiasticus', 1535, gives £25 7s 2½d, see John F. Curwen, 'Parishes (East Ward) St Michael, Lowther', *The Later Records Relating to North Westmorland or the Barony of Appleby*, CWAAS Record Series 8 (Kendal, 1932), 325-34.
[9] £2 10s 8¾d.

{Bounder}
It is bounded on the E. with Whinfel Forest in the parish of Browham; on the S.W., Morland; on the west with Askam divided with the river Lowther; on the north, with Clifton.

{Division into Constablewicks}
It is divided into 2 Constablewicks: Sc. Lowther, Hackthorp & Whale for the one; & Melkinthorp for the other.

{Lordships}
And conteineth in it {2 Lordships}: 1. Lowther; 2. Hackthorp†.

{Site}‡
There is a place calld Castle steeds, a round fortification which may be supposed to have bin cast up by Loather, sometimes King of the Scots; & to have imparted his name to the town which was build hard by it;[10] which, after the Conquest, according to the custom of those dayes, gave name to the family which is now calld Lother, for they were ancient writt de Lowther, their name.[11] This village stood twixt the hill & church but now is removed, and better built, to the top of the hill.[12]

[Machell's Notes: III.37 & III.41B]
*{R. Threlkeld. Pension 6s 8d to the Dean and Chapter.}[13]
†{q. of W. Atkinson.}[14]
‡{Site?} They talke [of] a place on the N.W. side of the Hall a little above the Bridge called Castle Steeds at the end of the avenue which runns from the Rectors house. {& there is rud stone at the steps by the new parsonage.}[15]
[III.41B]. Castlesteed. Whether Lowthair (King of Scotland?) might not come here in time of war as erect this fort in defence of himself & his fol[lowers?[16]

[III.45]

[Ancient Site]
A round fortification above the rock at Lowther on the left hand of the new road, 22 [paces] diam. single rampire, calld Castle Stead. The same area with that at Yanewath, but have only one single ditch & an inner rampire.[17]

[III.37]

{Church}
Lowther Church visited per Sir William Dugdal, that take the dim[ensions].[18]
Bells &c. 1 bell; 3 pillers on either side the south octagon; the N. circular with carved capitals […][19] extending to the Cupilo. It is in lenth [blank], from the W. end to the Cupilo or Cross Ile, 14; broad 14 passes. The Cross Ile long 6, broad 16 [passes]; the quire long 8, broad 5 [passes]. The altar, 3 steps, with Rale & Ballaster, wainscoted with cedar Rale high, & a cedar screen or tympanum behind it, the

[10] Lowther was named from the river Lowther (Lauder, Luder, Lawther etc.) see Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 182. See also, *N&BI*, 428: 'The name is British, and signifies clear water.'
[11] The rest of this sentence has perished. The spelling of 'Lowther'/ 'Lother', is exactly as Machell wrote it.
[12] In the MS here there is a 1cm square sketch of a structure, with points of the compass added. The village was removed c.1682 by Sir John Lowther, see Hyde & Pevsner, 508.
[13] Richard Threlkeld matriculated at Queen's College, Oxford, in 1664; BA 1668; rector of Lowther, 1676-95. CCED.
[14] William Atkinson was one of Machell's informants; see numerous references throughout this chapter..
[15] Rud/rudd: a soft red stone used in the north for marking sheep or colouring steps, floors etc. Joseph Wright, *The English Dialect Dictionary* (London, 1898-1905), 5, 175.
[16] There was no king of the Scots, nor of the Picts, named Lothair/Lowthair. One Lothair I (795-855) was Holy Roman emperor (840-855). Lothair II (835-869) was the king of Lotharingia (Lorraine) from 855. See https://www.britannica.com/biography/Lothar-I.
[17] All the text on this page is contained within a single scrap measuring 4½cm x 11½cm, pasted onto the page.
[18] Dugdale's visit is dated 24 March 1664. See Foster (ed.), *Pedigrees*, 84.
[19] A line of struck-through illegible text, here, amounts to 6cm.

Table Ewe inlaid. (A Large flaggin with the Lowthers armes, mantle &c. Cross & 2 chalices given by Sir John & Lady.) {All in silver & gilt.}
Ministers. Lowther, Teasdal, Smyth, & Richard Threlkeld present.[20]

[Lowther Family History]

[I.594]

{ad Lowther} out of a Booke of Knights penes D. Dan. Fleming.}[21]
Sir Geffrey de Lowther of Lowther, Knight anno 5^0 Henry III [1220-21]. He entered as som thinke (after he was Knighted) into Holy-Orders, Magister being placed before his name: MS A^0 70.}[22]
Sir Hugh de Lowther of Lowther aforesaid Knight anno [blank]. He was son of the said Sir Jeffrey de Lowther, Attorney General anno 20. Edward 1. [1291-92] & summon'd by the Kings writt to be at the Parliament holden at Northampton Anno [blank] Edward 2. {Bl. verbo waif Pb 132. Dn 58.}
Sir Hugh &c. Eldest son of the said Hugh &c. {MS A.70; MS C. 59; Do 40; MS C. 59. MS J 43; MS P 37, 38. Gms A. 142, 143, 149; C. &c. fol 47.}



Figure 1.15.1. Lowther Arms 1687 (Or, 6 annulets Sable). III.41B.

{ad Cumber[land]}
Sir William de Osmolderlow (or Osmotherley) of [Blank] in Cumberland, Knight, anno 5. Henry 6. [1426-27]. He was descended from the Osmundeleri Lanc. whose ancestours being a younger son or Brother of Sir John le Fleming, Grandson of Sir Michael and liveing at Osmotherlaw in Lancashire, assumed that sirname, as usually younger Brothers then did from the place of their habit[ation]: {MS B. 45, 46, 77, 78; MS C. 3, 37, 38, 57, 62.}

{ad Cumberland et Appelby Castle}
Sir Hugh Morvil of Brough on the Sands in Cumberland Knight anno [blank] Henry 2. He was one of the 4 Knights who killd Thomas Beckett – Archbishop of Canterbury.[23] He left Daughters his heires.

———————

[20] Clergy at Lowther from 1610 were Christopher Lowther (1610-57), William Smith (1664-76) and Richard Threlkeld (see above). CCED.
[21] Fleming Papers. For Sir Daniel Fleming's Research Notes, see CAC(C), D /Lons/L/12/2/1: Vol. A. Pedigree of Families connected with Lowther.
[22] Liber A. f.70 = Book A., folio 70 of the Fleming research notes. See D /Lons/L/12/2/1: the Lowther pedigree, 1220-1 to 1697.
[23] Thomas Becket was murdered on 29 December 1170.

[I.596]

{Familia de Lowther}
Their Armes are Or 6 Anuletts Sable; for confirmation or proofe of which beareing I have seen the impression of a Seale of the Lowthers with Annulets (apud Cartam[24] penes Thomas Sandford de Askham, Armiger),[25] 35[0] Edward III [1361-62].

[I.725C]

? Gleed Sir John of Lowther dub[ito][26]

Sir Christopher = Frances Lancaster

Sir John now L. = Jane, daughter of Sir Thomas Lee whose mother being a widow was maryed to old Sir John Lowther of Lowther

Frances. Maryed to Richard Lamplugh of Ribton in Cumberland

[Sir John Lowther 1655-1700]
Sir John Lowther of Lowther s[econd] Baronet, was borne at Hackthorp Hall A.D [blank] Educated at Queens College in Oxford, whence he went to Travail in France, where he became an Accomplished Gentleman. [27]
When King James the 2, being a Papist, came to the Crown & was driveing furiousely to bring over the Kingdom to the Romish persuation by discourageing the Church of England – for which he set up an High Court of Justice C. L.[28] – and incourageing not only the papists but all sortes of phanatticks[29] with places of Trust; calling in Charters & granting new ones by which the \ firm / Churchmen wer all laid aside & new ones at pleasure put in their steds; Garisons put into the Houses of P[arliament]; the Peanall Laws struck at with open face; & writts of sum[mons]. After all things were thus prepared for a new Parliament, to confirme all things as the King would have them, the Prince of Orange came into England with a smal Army of about 12 thousand, yet found so many friends that he gained the Crown without a Battle; of which number was Sir John Lowther, who boldly seised a ship

[I.598]

load of Armes,[30] which were sent by King James for Ireland – beying yet in the Throne: – & was very Active, after King James was slipd into France, in Rase the Cou[n]try by a Posse Com[itatus],[31] for suppressing the Irish Conflagration (as was pretended),[32] \ of which I was so fermly persuaded that I

[24] MS: 'C~~h~~artam.'
[25] 'In a deed in the custody of Thomas Sandford of Askham Esq., 1361-1362.'
[26] Machell questions the soubriquet, 'gleed'. He thinks it doubtful. The meaning of 'gleed' is to have a cast in one or both eyes; to be squint-eyed. *OED*. Sir John was also referred to as 'glaucus', see III.34A. For a further (negative) meaning of 'gleed', as applied to Sir John, see Part 1, Ch.11, Crosby Ravensworth, III.176.
[27] Sir John Lowther, 2nd baronet (1642-1706),
[28] From c.1570 the Crown used the English Court of High Commission to check heresy and enforce official forms of worship. It was abolished in 1641, but in 1686 James instituted 'The Commissioners in/for Causes Ecclesiastical', seen as a revival of the old Court of High Commission. It was discontinued in 1688, and abolished in the Bill of Rights, see Frank L. Cross, Elizabeth A. Livingstone (eds), *The Oxford Dictionary of the Christian Church* (3rd edn, Oxford, 2005), 772.
[29] Dissenters.
[30] On 9 December 1688, Sir John Lowther heard that a ship moored at Workington (base of the Roman Catholic, Henry Curwen) contained a cargo of 500 muskets with bayonets and ammunition, taken from Carlisle Castle to be sent to James II's forces in Ireland. Lowther and his supporter, Andrew Hudleston, took a number of their tenants to Workington, overpowered the ship's crew, and impounded the arms. Through this action, Lowther allied himself with those who were desirous of gaining office in a new Protestant government. See Michael A. Mullett, *Carlisle in Revolution and Restoration, c.1648-1688*, CWAAS Tract Series 30 (Kendal, 2022), 148.
[31] Raising the county as a Posse Comitatus: the legal power of sheriffs and other officials to summon armed citizens to keep the peace: see David B. Kopel, 'The Posse Comitatus and the Office of Sheriff: armed citizens summoned to the aid of law enforcement', *Journal of Criminal Law and Criminology*, 104 (4), 1973, 761.
[32] Here, Machell shows his commitment to Sir John Lowther and the Protestant cause amid anti-Catholic rumour relating to the Irish. On 26 November 1688, Sir John Lowther proposed calling out the militia to seize Carlisle for the Prince of Orange. Instead, his political opponents, Sir George Fletcher and Sir Christopher Musgrave,

went my selfe; / not to aid the P[rince] nor of the K[ing] – but to supp. those R[ebels] by stat[ute] who were burneing the K[ing] as the publecens said};[33] for which purpose he marched & headed the Countrey as far as Kirkby Lonsdale in Westm'land, a manner which he had lately purchased. Whereupon he was made Viscount Lonsdal in May 96, after he had bin som considerable time Vice-Chamberlain of his Majestyes Household & ~~one of~~ a Privy-Counsell, which latter had bin conferd by King William immediately after the Revolution.[34]

[Development of Lowther village]

Lowther was a little village ~~of that name~~, which gave name to the Parish & the family of the Lowthers. It consisted of an Hall, the Church & 17 Houses \ Tenements & Cotts. / \ Parsonage house & scoole […][35] / All which were purchas'd off \ or ~~exchanged~~ \ by the / now Sir John Lowther, from the Respective Tennants \ at honest rates /& pulld down & demolished to inlarge his \ deere parke / demanes.' & ~~because they were in the front of his house~~ [to] better the Prospect of his house, about the year 1682*. He built a Bridge there in 1684† at ~~cost~~ the Countreys cost.[36]

The Commons were divided twixt him & Bird of Browham & The Lordship of Clifton;[37] the 2 former of which livd like Lords of themselves‡, i.e. without any Tenants about them.
He puld down a great part of his H[ouse]. After he had pulld down The Town, he likewise pulld down the parsonage house, which was a very mean one, & built a better, (not) in its steed but near the River; & commuted the Tythes &c. Lastly, he altered al the old house, which he had left standing, much for the better in 1685. & lastly pulld down all or

[Machell's Notes: I.596]
*Query of Mr ~~Atkinson~~ \ Threlkeld / & Mr William Atkinson; as also the number of the houses {?}
†{?}
‡{wrong.}

[I.597]

most of the Church & rebuilt it agane in a better forme, 1686, with a Cupilo over the steple, which standeth in the midst of the church. [He] raled in & wainscoted the Altier place, & inriched the same with Noble communion plate.[38]

_____

recruited 3,000 men to guard the area against King James's demobilised Irish soldiers, during a national 'Irish panic' sweeping England in mid-December, 1688. See Mullett, *Carlisle in Revolution and Restoration*, 147. When he was obstructed by local rivals, Lowther appealed to Lord Danby to help take the Carlisle garrison. His request was denied, with the consequence that the town surrendered to Musgrave but Danby reportedly assured Lowther that he would be appointed governor of Carlisle. This promise was kept early in 1689; Lowther was also named as vice-chamberlain and appointed lord lieutenant of Cumberland and Westmorland. See https://www.historyofparliamentonline.org/volume/1690-1715/member/lowther-sir-john-1655-1700.

[33] This refers to the burning of King James's effigy, as the press [publecens/publicists] reported. Machell remarked that he felt he should step in, not as an Orange man, but to maintain law and order. 'P' refers to the Prince of Orange rather than 'Parliament', as parliament was not then sitting, having been dissolved by proclamation in 1687. See Robert Beddard, *A Kingdom without a King: The Journal of the Provisional Government in the Revolution of 1688* (Oxford, 1988), 197; see also *London Gazette*. 30 June 1687, 1.

[34] A shorter version of Lowther's career at this point appears on MS.I.597: 'Upon the Revolution, he (haveing boldly seised a ship load of Armes going for Ireland in the declineing of King James 2) was made Vice Chamberlaine to King William & Queen Mary, and a Privy Councellour. & in Anno Domini 1696 – the latter end of March – when the Parliament riss, of which he was a notable member, he was created Lord Viscount Lonsdale.' Note the discrepancy in the two passages between the month (March or May) in which Lowther was made Viscount Lonsdale, see J.V. Beckett,' Lowther, John, first Viscount Lonsdale (1655-1700)'. *ODNB*.

[35] Repetition of the number of tenants, deleted in this edition.

[36] At the cost of the county. It was a public bridge.

[37] Enclosure by private agreement of the landowners.

[38] See the Consecration Deed (1666) in the Bishops' Register: CAC(C), DRC1/4, 407.

[III.41A][39]



Figure 1.15.2. West end of Lowther Church, sketched on the reverse of a letter. III.41A.

[III.41]
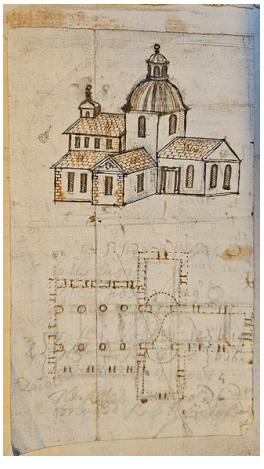


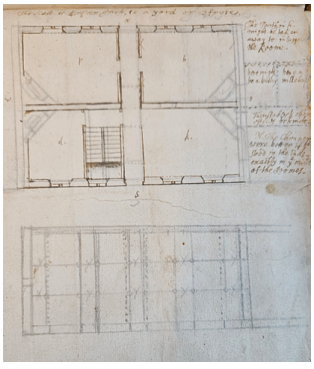
Figure 1.15.3. Lowther Church. III.41.

[III. 34]

The Platforme of Lowther Parsonage, May 17 [16]90.

The scale is ¼ of an inch to a yard or 3 foote.

[39] This page was previously used for rough pencilled notes, which are just visible, though virtually illegible. They appear to describe the church, as in the notes on III.37. The reverse forms part of a letter, partially transcribed on III.41B. The subject concerned appears to have been given 30 shillings a month… and that's the most we can do for him'. It goes on to mention that, 'the misery… of the Irish … is very great'.



[h.] The part[ition] in h. might be taken away to inlarge the roome.	
(2.) Here might be a buttery.	Here [might be] a milke house.
Then [there might be] stables & other offices behind.	
Note. The chimneys were better if they stood in the ends exactly in the mid[dle] of the Roomes.	

Figure 1.15.4. 'Platforme of Lowther Parsonage'. III.34.

[III.37]

[The Town of Lowther]
The town of Lowther, which stood betwixt the church and the Hall, conteined formerly, xvii family [as follows]
Begin about the Hall on the west side of it, about 200 yrds \ above. /
1. Richard Wilkinson; \ 1. Anenst him,[40] Christopher Ritson.
2. John Wilk[inson] of Dale. Anest the Hal behind the Crofts James Wilk[inson] of Penfold.
3. John Workman {near the Hall; John Wilk behind it.} 3. Richard Stephenson below the out court.
4. Lancaster.
5. Chappelhowe.
6. Mary Ritson, a cot.
7. Robert Lowther.
8. Hugh Newton \ yet standing. /
9. (200 yards o[f]f) the Rectory.

The other side.
Over against Hew Newtons,
2. Margaret Ritson; 2. John ~~Tompson~~ \ Hutchinson / against Rob. Lowthers.
3. Rob. Thomson against Chappelhows.
4. Francis Harison: a cot. over against Chappelhows.

Then a wall to the orchard.
Now only 2:
Wid[ow] Wilkinsons: now sold to Sir John, and Workmans (not down), now sold to him – & Hew Newtons: unsold. & a new parsonedge house.
{?} There is a row of new houses from the school to the manufacture?

A manifacture, shoomaker & lace maker.
A public stonebrids to Askam. A private stone brids to Yanewath per Sir John, 1694.
At Lowther, a Parke on the south side, replete with deer.
Gravel in the field twixt Church & Hall.
Lowther Moore. T[enants] 6. All arbitrary.

[Machell's Notes: III.37]
Memorandum: Lowther Church & Hall were visited by Sir William Dugdall; ergo an account of the Monuments or Arms, at least, may be had in his Visit[ation] of Westmorland in the Heralds Office.
{Living: Mr Atkinson.} {Understanding men. Mr William Atkinson.}[41]

[40] Anenst, as in, 'Anent': in line with; alongside, beside; even or level with.' *OED*.
[41] Understanding men: men of intellect; intelligence (*OED*), therefore, useful as Machell's informants. William Atkinson (died 1721) was perpetual vicar of Morland from 1680/1. He had been schoolmaster at Dufton

{By Lowther out the west runs [the river] Lowther bout a bow shot.}
? \ Sir / Richard Lowther, Warden of the Marches. {So of the west.}
{Descent of the manner: 20. Ed.1. [1291-1292] One Hugh de Lowther Sequitur pro dom[ino] Rege. Blunt *Nomo Lexicon* sub verb. waifs.}[42]

[I.598]

House[s] Demolished & the Lands purchased or exchangd per Sir John Lowther
{infomt Jo. Wiber. 27 Jan. 1686/7}

On the right hand.[43]
1. Rob. Tomson 4li
2. Fran. Harrison 8s
3. John Hutchinson 5li
4. Will. Rutson 1li or a marke

On the left hand from the Hall.
1. Rich. Stephenson a cot.
2. [Blank]
3. [Blank]
4. Christ Rutson 1li per Annum
5. Rob. Lowther 12li per Annum
6. Hugh Newton would not 10li
7. The parsonage house Removd.

Item: beyond the Hall – southwards – twixt the Hall & gardine as you goe for Kendal.

On the right hand.
1. Rich. Wilkinson per Annum 8li

On the left hand.
1. John Wilkinson per Annum 8li
2. Jo. Warkeman farm[er] to Christopher Rutson 3li
3. Jo. Wilkinson senior about 8li
4. Christoph Rutson 8
5. [Blank]
6. ~~Jo. Crag of said Park foote~~ there![44]

between 1664 and 1665 (CCED); he gave Machell advice on the Dufton parish boundary in 1686: see Part 1, Ch.12, Dufton, III.160.

[42] Machell was referring to Thomas Blount's, *Nomo-Lexikon, A Law-dictionary and Glossary: Interpreting Such Difficult and Obscure Words and Terms, as are Found Either in Our Common Or Statute, Ancient Or Modern, Laws. With References to the Several Statutes, Records, Registers, Charters, Ancient Deeds, Manuscripts, and Law-books, Wherein the Words and Terms are Used* (1670). Under 'waif' Blount writes as follows: 'Waifs, Things lost and Estrays must, by the Lord of the Franchise where they are found, be caused to be cried and published in Markets and Churches near about, else the year and day does not run to the prejudice of him that lost the M. Briton. cap. 17. Plac. coram Joh. de Berewel & Sociis suis Justic. Itin. apud Salop. in Octab [8th/7th day after the feast of] Sancti Michaelis. 20 Ed. 1. Rot. 29. in Dorso … Et Hugo de Lowther qui sequitur pro Domino Rege dicit quod Wayf est quoddam grossum de Corona, ita Coronae Domini Regis annexum, quod nullus eo gaudere possit, nisi inde habeat speciale War|rantum] a Domino Rege vel antecessoribus suis concessum.' [Translated as] 'And Hugh Lowther, arguing on behalf of the Lord King, says that a waif is something included in Crown possession, belonging to the current monarch in such a way that nobody can have enjoyment of it unless he has a royal warrant specially granted by the Lord King or his ancestors.' See also, 'waif' in the English Glossary.

[43] The village would have been laid out in this way before demolition.

[44] Perhaps the deletion was unnecessary, as John Crag was: 'there'.

[III.37]

[Lowther School]
{A scholl at Lowther by Richard Lowther; 10li per annum; free.}[45]

[III.45]

[School Inscription]
Hanc scholam erexerunt Johanes Lowther miles Barronettus Richardus Lowther armiger et Johanes Teasdale ecclesiæ rector anno salutis 1640 regis Caroli 16.[46]

[III.37]

{Hall and other Gentlemens Houses}*

The Hall
The Hall stands a little S.E. from the church \ on an hill /.
The Parsonage S. west in a bottom. \ The Parsonage stand at the S.E. corner of the church yard.[47] /

[Machell's Notes: III.37]
*Hall? The Hall visited per Dugdall; yet take the scenography & situation.

[III.34A]

It is seated on the side of an hill {a bow-shot south of the village}, having a pleasant prospect to Whinfel and a good part of the country. The windows double tra[nsome]s; 2 storyes compleat, beside the garrets. Over the court doer are placed these armes, which belong to the Lowthers, the now owners thereof.



Figure 1.15.5. Lowther Arms. III.34A.

It is reported to have com'd to them in the Rebel[lion]-time, the 1[t] of that [family] being Sir John Lowther, sirnamed Glaucus*. Here was the present Sir John Lowther borne: one of His Majestyes – K.W.3[48] – most honourable Privy Council, & Governor of Carleol.

[Machell's Notes: III.34A]
*But of this qu.? And also, whose it was before.[49]

[45] A Free School.
[46] 'This school was erected by Sir John Lowther, Knight and Baronet, Richard Lowther Esq. and John Teasdale Rector of the Church, in the year of our Salvation 1640, and of the 16th year of the reign of King Charles.' John Teasdale was rector of Lowther, 1613-56. See Curwen, *Later Records*, 325-34; see also, *N&B1*, 439.
[47] Machell appears to be referring to the old parsonage here.
[48] King William III. William and Mary assumed the throne in 1689.
[49] 'Glaucus': glaucoma, or glaucosis, a fault in the eye when the Crystalline Humour is chang'd into a grey or sky-colour [Glaucus is Greek for grey-green]; also, blindness from glaucoma. *OED*. See also 'gleed', III.725c, above.

[III.42, 43]

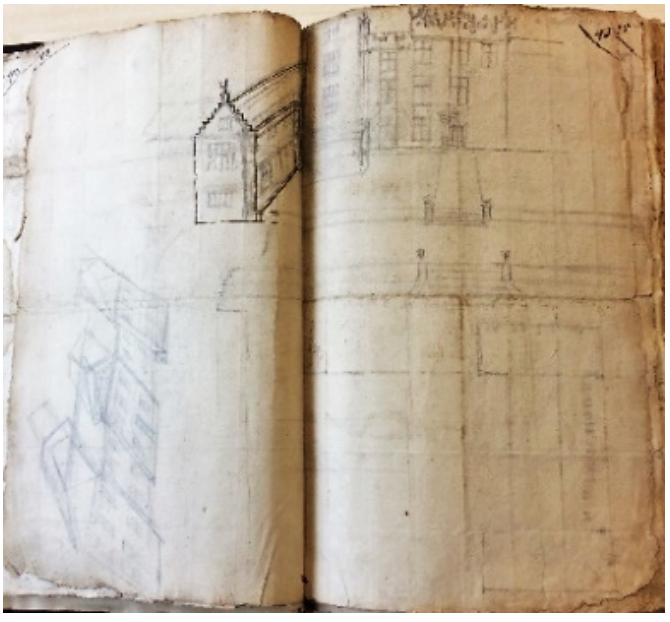


Figure 1.15.6. Lowther Hall. III.42-43.

[III.45]

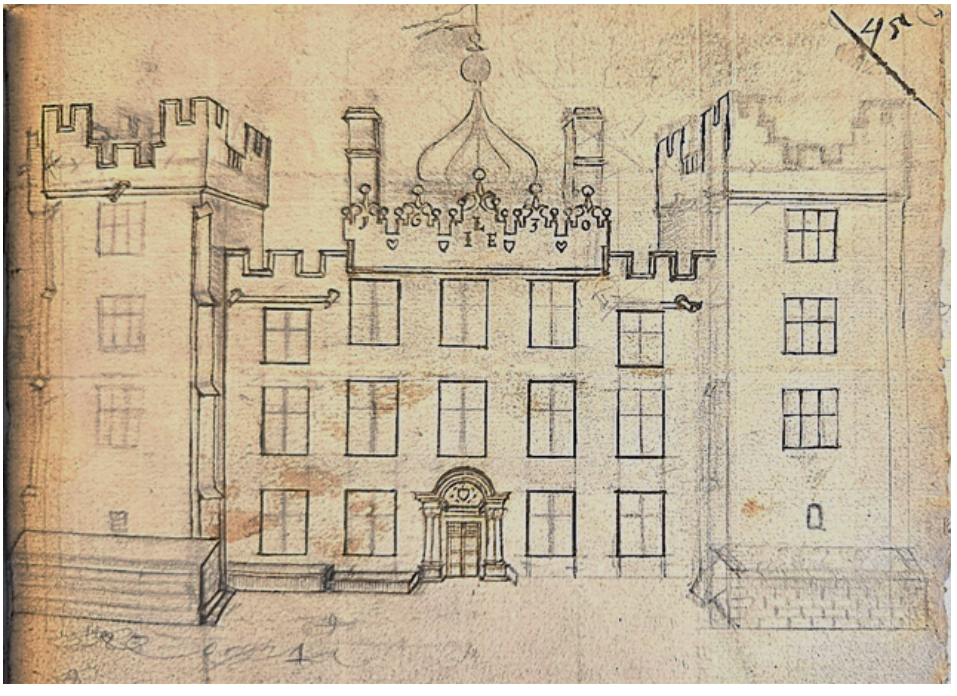


Figure 1.15.7. Lowther Hall. III.45.

[III.47]

Gallery – 8 broad without.
Stable ends 8 outsid & turne[50] 6.
End \ front / broad outside 20.

[III.48]

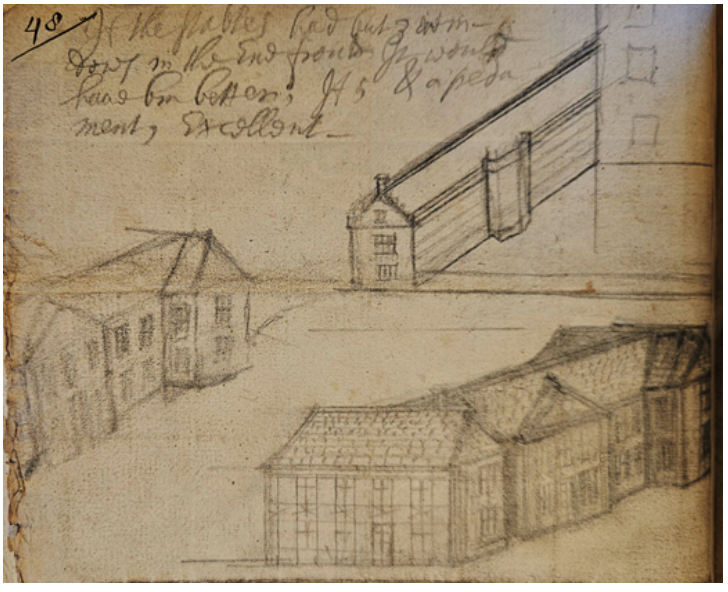


Figure 1.15.8. At Lowther Hall. III.48.

If the stables had but three windows in the end front, it would have bin better; if 5 & a pedament, excellent –

[III.49]

[Details relating to the sketches above]
Walkes 8 yards broad
The outer court on the outside: twice 37 broad & to the stable end, 19; the stable end, 20.
The front of the stables, 1ˢᵗ projecture 9 \ the returne 6 / to the midle of the stable & court 15 &c.
The stables wide on the inside, in all 7 passes; of which the walke 2 & ½, stall 3½, manger with boxes and racks, 1 pass.[51]
The Gallery on the outside in breadth, 8; in [blank] length, of which in the court.
The front of the dwelling house: The Tower, 11; thence to the midle of the hall door, 9. &c. As much more on the other side.

[III.51][52]

[Sketch Notes]
Lowther parish west-wards.
Lowther Parish.
Qu: for a draught of the new house.

[50] Unclear word.
[51] This could equally well read, '2 pass'.
[52] After the heading, 'on Lowther', the page is empty, apart from a pasted scrap-page, the reverse of which demonstrates that its contents were written in another hand on part of a letter dated 1689.

[III.35]

Lowther Parish Part 2.

[Perambulation]

A quo[53]	medium[54]	ad quem[55]
Askham Bridge twixt Askham & Lowther	From the new parsonage house over against Ascom Hall, directly northwards down the River Lowther	till you com at Clifton fits dike near Clifton Wells
Thence S.E.	up the outside of Buckholm dike	to Skelholm dike
Thence N.E.	down the said dike	to TranefatNooke
Thence S.E. & E.	along a gill	till you com at an house cal'd Noonhow Nëun how / along ~~the said dike~~ Trainfat dike to Hackthorp Field
Thence N.	along Hackthorp dike	to Waterfall Brigg
Thence N.	down Hackthorp-beck	till you com at Menkinthorp Hall
Thence N.	along the hedge by the south side of the short wood	to an house called Howcarld
Thence N.E.	by the outside of Melkinthorp Field Dike	till you com at Sandwath
Thence S.	by Melkinthorp Field dike	to Cliburne beck
Thence S.W.	up the said beck to Menkinthorp Hall and so on	to Waterfal Bridge near to Hackthorp Hall?
Thence S.E.	up the said beck	to Thrimby Poole
Thence S.W.	from the head of the said pool on the outside of Lowther Old Park	till you come at Whale more Head
Thence W.	by Whale Field dikes	to Whalebeck Head
Thence westward	down Whale Beck	to the river Lowther
Thence no[rth]wards	down the said river by Jonee Crags house	to where wee began

June 14 1692: This is a true bounder of Lowther parish: John Crag.[56]

[Machell's Notes: III.35]

Cliburne Beck springs at Sleddale Foote; thence on the south side of Shap; thence twixt Little [Strick]land & Thrimby; thence on the east side of Hackthorp ½ q; thence N.W. of Great Strickland ½; thence twixt

[53] Whence.
[54] Route.
[55] Whither.
[56] The signature is in a different hand from the rest of the sentence; it is presumably that of John Crag, the man who was 'there', on I.598 (above), Machell's bounder informant (see III.40).

Menkinthorpe and Great Strickland hall; thence turning W. & S. side of Cliburne; thence at Cliburne Mill, into Livennet.
{Q. Where the becks spring from &c.}
{Bridges: Clib. Brig, St[one]; Faw Brig, St[one; Hackthorp [Brig], w[ood.]}
Hackthorp Hall. Stricklands? Won at cards or dice.[57]
Whale – a m[anor]. Hugo de Whaile.
Ex inform. Johannis Cragg.

[III.39]

{Hackthorp}
S.E. [of the church] a mile.13 or 14 [families]. The Hall at the S. end. 1 freehold: Rich[ard] Willan. Valu[e] [blank]]. The rest arbitrary to Sir John Lowther. A parke at the S. end, desparked. The now Sir John Lowther borne there; \ bred at Queens College in Oxon; / Lord Lieutenant of the Countyes of Westmorland & Cumberland, being custos rotulorum[58] in the former and Vice-Chamberlain of [blank][59] & a Privy Councellour.

[III.34A]

In Hackthorp, 3 Bowshots S. wards from the Hall, is the appearance of an old Towne, & they call the grounds, Ald-Gards. Gleed[60] Sir John got it in Rebellion times. Over the court gate in a plane shield, Lowther Arms.

[I.598]

[Whale and Whalemoor]
[Whale.] {A little S.W. ab Ecclesia 1 mile. families, 9 or 10; Whale is in the Lordship of Lowther, a Little Hamlet of about 10 houses, all customary Tenants. 6 Tenements, 4 Cots.
Whale more. 5. All custom[ary] {to Sir John Lowther}. Item: Whale more.[61] 5 houses, of which 4 Tenements, 1 Cot.

[III.39]

An horse race used to be kept on Whale More, a runne 4 miles. Begun & left of[f] per Sir John Lowther.

[I.598]

Lowther Dikes
5 Tenements & 2 Cotts.

[III.39]

{Melkinthorp}
A little more easterly, 2 miles [from the church]. Families, 15 or 16. Freehold 1. underv[alue] Simon Pattison. The rest arbitrary to Sir John. Strickland Beck S. of it.

[III.34A]

Melkinthorpe Hall
In vide Melkinthorpe hall, as I remember thus.

[57] In c.1361-62, Sir Thomas de Stirkland held the hall under the barons of Kendal. It was bought by the Lowther family in 1535. The house noted by Machell was built in the early years of James I: see Michael Waistell Taylor, *The Old Manorial Halls of Westmorland and Cumberland*, CWAAS Extra Series 8 (Kendal, 1892), 95, 97. There is no mention here, or in *N&BI* (441-42), of its having been won by gambling.
[58] 'Keeper of the Rolls': the principal Justice of the Peace of a county, who has nominal custody of the records of the commission of the peace. The function is usually fulfilled by the Lord Lieutenant.
[59] He was vice-chamberlain of the king's household.
[60] Another reference to 'gleed', see I.725C, above; see also 'glaucus': III.34A. For a further (negative) meaning of the word 'gleed', as applied to Sir John Lowther, see Part 1, Ch.11, Crosby Ravensworth, III.176.
[61] Whalemoor.

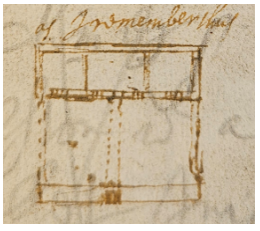


Figure 1.15.9. Sketch plan of Melkinthorpe Hall. III.34A.

[III.37]

{Curiosityes in Art or Nature}

{Blew slate from Mosedale in Shap; red from Pen Fell.}
{Marble quarryes near the river twixt Lowther Hall & Askam pulld down. Freestone whiteish red in the banke above it.}
{All the Parish limestone.}
{A fish pond S[outh] end of the parke, 1 mile, replen[ished] with pikes, troutes & redy ducks.}

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 16]

[Parish of Long Marton]

[Machell's Initial Notes]

[I.602][1]

Merton: from a mere or pond at the north end of the Town. {Or rather Martin, a Sancto Martino nisi ei ob nominem Eccles[iae] after[wards] Dedicatus Honor manerio orato.}[2]

[I.606]

To Marton church belongs Longmarton, Brampton, Knock.

[I.607]

The Parish of Long Marton containes in it 3 Lordships: Sc. the Lordship of Longmarton, the Lordship of Brampton & the Lordship of Knock. And \ besides these / one Gentlemans house lately built called Brampton hall.

[IV.36]

Ad Merton Parke[3]

19th of Edward II. [1325-1326.][4]

Marton it seems being a manner did then belong to John de Veteripont or his heir, for we suppose dead before the Inquisition was taken. Concerneing this they say that certain Berciaria of 4 score feet in bigness[5] were alienated by the Prior, and the Parke destroyed by dogs & nets & want of inclosure. It seems this place has bin plentifull of sheep & replenishd til then with deer. That the little Vivary or storepond is destroyd but there is taken from thence as much as can be taken by laying a long net without use at sea 30 or 40 fa[thoms] long & the Great Vivary is much impoverishd of great fish. It seems that there were 2 fishponds here; maybe the Tarn & the parsons[6] pond, except there be som in the Parke. There is a place called Docka tarn in the Parke behind Hollin Hill & another at Croft Foot.

[I.603]

[Notes on Tumuli]

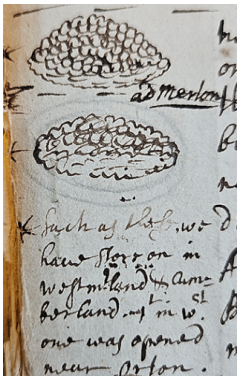


Figure 1.16.1. Margin detail: images of tumuli. I.603.

[1] 'Or rather Martin, from St Martin, unless, because of the name of the church, it was an honour conferred upon it afterwards, with the consent of the manor.'
[2] The church is dedicated to St Margaret and St James, *N&BI*, 359.
[3] This heading has been transferred from MS.I.603.
[4] The text relates to comments on Machell's research in pipe rolls, begun on the previous page.
[5] Bercaria, berciaria: sheep folds. See, for example, Richard Britnell (ed.), *Durham Priory Manorial Accounts, 1277-1310* (Woodbridge, 2015), 293.
[6] MS. 'persons.'

{*Such as these we have store in Westmorland & Cumberland. 1ᵗ in Westmorland, one was opened near Orton, & in Marton Parke are 2 trenched about. There are allso some near Lowther Bridge. And in Cumberland, very many in Lazonby fields.}

{S. H. Blunt, p.36}[7]
The Philippick fields must needs be the Campaigne[8] betweene Thermopilæ and Philippolis, being about 40 or 50 miles long; for according to tradition of diverse there inhabiting, and all Concordance of storyes, it was built from that City by Philip & thence had its denomination. They are famous for the Roman Civill wars, there decided in two Battle; The 1ᵗ between Cæsar & Pompey and the other between Augustus and Marke Antony, against Brutus and Cassius: The plane, but that it is a Valley, much resembles O[u]r Downes of Marlborough*, where the Saxons, as tis thought had a great Battle; for just in that manner there yett remained the heaps where the slane were buryed, and good part of the trenches: The two Battles were fought 16 or 18 mls asunder, as appeares by the sepulchres and the trenches; Cæsars was next the Hill, the other nearer Philippolis, which for want of Other Authority I conjectured thus: First in Cæsars Battle there dyed but 15 thousand 200; In the Other allmost twice as many. This proportion is made good in the heaps, those towards Philippolis being greater and much more in number than the other: Then Cæsar writes that after Pompey and the main of his Army was fled, a residue not yett dispursd retired to a Hill 6 miles of which had a river run under it; This squares right with a Hill on the south side of Pota\r/zeek, a little towne between the 2 camps; ~~and little towne~~, but for this circumstance not worthy speakeing on consisting of about 4000 houses. Further on Eastwards, upon the same plane are the monuments of Brutus and Cassius his defeature. The Tumuli are many; some great some smale, more or less close together, as the slaughter hapnd, & reach at least 8 or 9 miles in both in lenth extending as it seems & […][9] did towards Philippolis, now Phil[ibee.]

[Machell's Notes: I.603]
*{See Dugdall *Warwickshire* in verbo Low in Knight Low.}

[I.601A][10]

[The Church]



Figure 1.16.2. Arms 'in Martin Church window'. I.601A.

[7] The following passage was copied almost verbatim from Henry Blunt, *A Voyage into the Levant. A Briefe Relation of a Journey lately performed by Master Henry Blunt Gentleman from England by the way of Venice, into Dalmatia, Sclavonia, Bosnah, Hungary, Macedonia, Thessaly, Thrace, Rhodes and Egypt, unto Gran Cairo: With particular observations concerning the moderne condition of the Turkes, and other people under that Empire* (1636), 35-37.
[8] Champion country: a large expanse of open country, as distinct from mountains and woods; see the English Glossary.
[9] Words here have perished.
[10] A page measuring 15cm x 20cm, containing a fine drawing of a coat of arms. An unfinished pencil sketch of a coat of arms may be found close to this one on MS.I.601.

These Arms are in Martin Church window in Westm'land.[11] To whome they belong I am alltogether ignorant. The Blackbird (for such I take them to be) in dexter point seemes misplaced, according to Leigh Gerrads rule.[12] Luskin, Mayor of London, b[ore] Gules on a cheveron Argent between 3 falkons volant Or, 3 escalops Sable.

[Machell's Notes: I.601A]

{This is the nearest beareing that I meet with: Repertorye[13] G15 ~~fol~~ p.244.[14] Herald College. Lovekins arms.}

[Notes in another hand: I.601A]

{He is called in some Lists, Lovekin, in others, Lewkin, & was Mayor in 1348, 1358, 1365, 6.}[15]
{Lovekins arms are emblazoned 3 rising eagles in some Lists of Mayors.}[16]

[I.606]

§1. The church stands in the fealdes of Brampton att a considerable distance from any of the villages that belong to it {may be tis dedicate to St Martin but it takes it name from Long Marton where the parsonage house is, & the place to which it is nearest situate.}
Concerneing its founder I know nothing, but there is a Tradition about the building of it; that it was first designed to have stood at Long Marton upon the Hill by the parsonage house and that severall attempts were made of erecting it there but all in vaine, for ~~as often~~ what they built up o'th day was Cast downe o'th night; which I lieave to Relators, & Rather believe that it was placed there for the better satisfaction of the Town of Brampton, being a Great part of the parish, & yett not to[o] near that, least Knock should be att too great a distance. The Patronage of it is in the Hands of the Barons of Westm'land, & so was the Lordship of Longmarton & Knock of old.
There are not any monuments remaneing within \ it now / and onely these escutchions which I here present you.

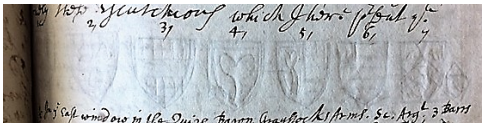


Figure 1.16.3. Faded pencil sketches of escutcheons in the windows of Long Marton Church. I.606.

In the East window in the Quire.
1. Baron Graystocks Arms: Sc. Argent 3 Barrs Azure, overall 3 Chappletts of Roses in triangle Gules.
2. Dakers.
3. In the s\o/uthside window next to the Aultar an Ancient scutchions for the Cliffords Armes, Barons of Westm'land: Sc. Cheque Or & Vert (soe it is there but it should be Azure) a fess Gules.
4.[17] In the North window of the quire, 1. Lancasters, Sc. Argent 2 Barrs Gules, on a canton of the 2nd a mullet – 4. Lancaster in pale, Sc. Sable a manch Argent.[18]

[11] See I.606, section 5, below.
[12] Machell was referring to *The Accidence of Armorie*, by Gerard Legh/Leigh (London, 1563, & later editions). Leigh was a member of the College of Heralds.
[13] Repertory: repository or catalogue. *OED*.
[14] The College of Arms was founded in 1484; it creates and maintains official registers of coats of arms and pedigrees. https://www.college-of-arms.gov.uk/.
[15] Sir John Lovekyn was a London fishmonger who was four times Lord Mayor of London (in 1348, 1358, 1365 and 1366): C. Welch, & R. Axworthy, 'Lovekyn, John (d. 1368), merchant and lord mayor of London'. *ODNB.*
[16] These comments (a later attempt at detecting the ownership of the coat of arms see *Figure 1.16.2*) are not in Machell's hand but could be in the hand of either Bishop Charles Lyttelton or William Nicolson, both of whom amended parts of Machell's text (see Part 3, Ch.1, Directions for those who shall undertake to finish the Antiquities of Westmorland). Sir John Lovekyn was a member of the family which endowed the chapel of Kingston Grammar School in the 14th century. The school coat of arms is that of the Lovekyn family and is similar to Machell's sketch, see https://www.kgs.org.uk.
[17] MS: Numbered '5.'
[18] MS: Numbered '4. Lancaster in pale. ~~d by Wharton~~ Sc. Sable a manch Ar.'

5. In the little quire on the South side of the pulpit, Argent on a Cheveron between 3 Blackbirds Sable 3 annulets ar[gent].[19]

[I.607]

All in the North quire window.
4. Wharton: Sc. Sable a manch Argent.
5. Wharton Impaleing Lancaster: Sc. Argent & Gules.
6. Lancaster single.
7. In the little South Quire beyond the pulpit.
8. Sir Thomas Burtons of Brampton.[20]
{They may all be seen in libro oblongo miscellaneor MS}[21]

[I.609]

[Machell's notes on the Lancaster, Brampton and Morvil Families]

John de Lancaster de Brampton, a Juror in the Inquisition de Matilda Beauchamp Relicta [blank] Clifford 4. Henry 4. [1402-03].
[Blank] de Lancaster [blank] 33. Henry 6. [1434-35].

{Brampton a name}
Thomas de Brampton ante 11. Henry 3. [1226-27] in cartis Alic è lib. Oblong.[22]

{Morvil}
I finde the Morvils (An ancient family in the north) som of them to have lived att Brampton, but where or in what Quality I know not.
William de Morvil qui vixit 8. et 13. John [1206-07, 1211-12].
Walterus de Morvil de Brampton {!} Temp. John [1199-1216].
\ Walter de Morvil. 11. Henry 3. [1226-27] successit W. /
John de Morevil. 22. Henry 3. [1237-38].
John de Morvil. 36. Henry 3. [1251-52].
Robert de Morvil vicom. Temp. Henry 3. [1216-72].
Robert de Morevil. 14. Edward 1. [1285-86].
The Antiquity of the name will appear from these instances: but what there relation are, I confess myself ignorant.

[I.606][23]

{Brampton; Lancaster}
13. Henry 8. [1521-22] Edward Lancaster of Brampton, Gentleman, had 2 messuags, 24 Ac[res] of Land, 4 Acres of medow, with common of pasture for beasts without number belonging thereto; with common of Turbaries, common of esto\v/ers, common of piscaries, & the 4th part of the mill in the Towne & field of Melkanthorp; which he sold unto William Lancaster, son & heir of Christopher Lancaster of Deepdale for xx markes{?}[24] which he held by the gift of his father & Brother for Term of life. And he was allso obliged to promise his Elder Brothers release of Clame to those lands, and grant the revertion for ever more to the said William.

[I.607]

{Brampton Lordship}

Brampton so called from [Blank] was formerly an entire Lordship of itselfe, haveing Dufton on the East, Crakenthorpe on the West, Longmarton on the North, & Lancton & Bongate on the South. The village is seated in a fruitfull but sandy soyle, have a River running all along the skirts of it on the East side, & is accommodated with a water mill close att hand. The common is well stored with Lyme

[19] The last (perished) word could also be 'Azure'.
[20] See below.
[21] 'They may all be seen in the oblong book, Miscellaneous MS.'
[22] In the deeds of Alic. In the Oblong Book.
[23] Also numbered p.24.
[24] 'xx' is partly obscured by the binding. Whatever the sum, Machell seems to have questioned it.

stone,[25] & affordes Good Cattle for their pasture; upon which a Race is usually run every St [Blank] day for [blank]. ~~And~~ This more or common is divided on the west with the great Romane Way, & upon the very skirts of it is a Round trench or fortification &c. called White Burwens, the out workes of which runn downe in to Crakenthorpe More; which I take to be British, & made \ in defence of Kirkbythore Gallatu[m] / to oppose the Romanes when they first came into Westm'land, incampeing upon Stanemore. Se the figure of it.

[I.610]

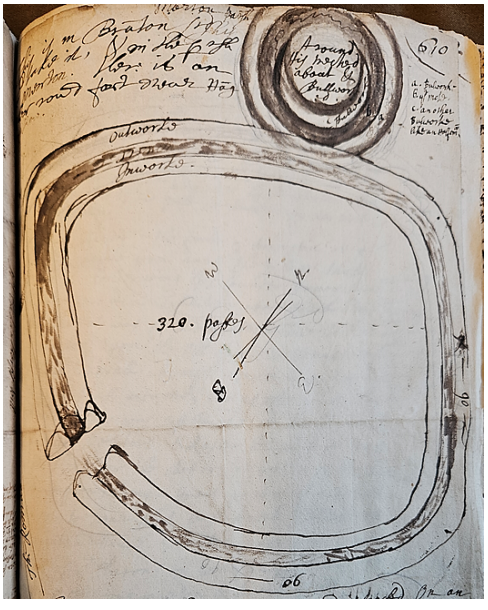


Figure 1.16.4. White Burwens..'a. Bulwork; b. the mote; c. another Bulworke like an halfemoon'. I.610.

This is in Brampton Lordship I take it; & in the parish of Merton there is an other round fort near Ha[n]ging Shaw. This is called White Burwens; and is p[l]aced on an High hill att the corner of Mr Machells Grassing, hard by the Roman-way on the left hand[26] as you goe to Kirkbythore. And att Kirkbythore, where Old Whelp Castle formerly stood, the place is called Burwins to this day; where there was lately an House called Burwens hall, belonging to the Crakan[t]horps, to whome a 3^{d} of Tenements in Kirkbythore doe belong. And the Common called Sowerby Moore in which the Inhabitants have a privaledge by reason of a certane sum of money payd yerely to the Crakanthorps of Newbigging. The Outworkes of this (if not the whol body) is in Crakanthorp & Bongate Parish.

[I.607]

(There is another roundworke on the side of the Banke towards Brampton field, vid. [blank] \ There is likewise another Round forte near Hangingshaw†. And allso a place called Castrig, vide [blank]. It is not well knowne att this day where the manner house stoode,[27] but it was Anciently the seate of [blank]. In [blank] Time it belongd to the Lancasters‡; which ~~family &~~ was extinct \ they say / in 3 daughters, coheires, whereof the eldest was maryed to Birbeck of Hornby with part of the Ten[ements]; another to Backhouse of Morland (~~with~~ another part);[28] and another with the Powes (a piece of ground which layes along by the water side from the field end beneath the church to

[25] MS: 'The common ~~which joine to the Common of Crackenthorpe~~ is well stored with Lyme stone.'
[26] MS: 'on the left on the left hand.'
[27] The manor house of Brampton.
[28] For the marriage of Dorothy, daughter of George Backhouse, to John Skelton of High House, Cumberland, see Joseph Foster (ed.), *Pedigrees Recorded at the Heralds' Visitations of the Counties of Cumberland and Westmorland made by Richard St George, Norroy, King of Arms in 1615 and by William Dugdale, Norroy, King of Arms in 1666* (Carlisle and Kendal, 1891), 126.

Kirkbythore Bridge)[29] to Mr Wharton of Kirkbythore, to which family the Powes now belongs, 1664. Upon which account I suppose the Armes of Wharton impaleing Lancaster were putt up in the Church window, & the same armes are cutt in stone upon the Battlement of Kirkbythore Steple↓. If wee may believe the

[Machell's Notes I.607]

*{vide in Cap. de Barton.}[30]
†q. whether in this parish.
‡Descended from a younger son of Lancasters of Socbridge {è Ped. Birbeck in *Visitat West*. per Dugdall 1664.}[31]
↓{Lancasters there 33. Henry 6. [1454-55] è C. apud Crak.}[32] {I mete with Agnes de Lancaster 37. Henry [1252-53], but of what place I know 0. Se Sockbridge in Barton parish & Howgil in Kirkbythore.}

[I.608][33]

enterance[34] which the Birbecks (who maryed one of the Heiresses) have made in Dugdall, it hapen'd to be extinct about the end of Queen Elizabeth*; and peradventure about the Time that the Birbecks matched with the Cliffords. For the Cliffords doe now possess that partition of Tenements which the Birbecks held; & they possess Hor[n]by, partly (may be) upon consideration of the marriage dowry; and partly in exchange for the said Tenements†. As for the Demaisne, tis divided allso into 3 partitions and now in the hands of Christopher Dobson, Robert Richardson, and Ann Walker, widow (1664); knowne by the name of the Demaisne Lands.

[Brampton Hall]

But before I lieve Brampton I must take notice of a very fair house, which (because there is no other) now bears the name of Brampton Hall, placed on the east side at the Highest [point] of the village, with faire gardens att about a mile distance from the Church & 2 from Apleby – the market & shire towne.[35] It was built by [blank] Burton who was descended, as I am inform'd,[36] from Pierce Burton of Bishop-Burton in the County of Yorke; a Gentleman of about 40^{li} land per Annum, & related as it should seeme from their Armes ~~to the~~ (which are Argent a Bend[37] Sable) to the Burtons of Kens[l]ey, in Com Ebor‡. But their Original (as to this county) was from ~~Parson~~ Burton, parson of this parish,[38] a most welthy man & noble housekeper whose grandchild Mr Thomas Burton, was the great stay & support of the Loyal Party during the Tyranny of Oliver Cromwell, being then Knight of the Shire & seemingly a Roundhead, that he might be more capeable of doeing the Cavaliers a greater kindness;[39] and in a word behaved himselfe so well that he was Knighted by King Charles the Second after his Returne to the Crowne from banishment.[40] What more may be said of this famly take briefly in the following pedigre.[41]

---

[29] Meadow Powes: a field in the parish of Kirkby Thore, see Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 120.
[30] 'See the chapter on Barton.'
[31] From the Birkbeck pedigree made by Dugdale on 22 March 1664: see Foster (ed.)*, Pedigrees,* 12.
[32] 'According to a document at Crackenthorpe.'
[33] At the foot of this page is written, 'p.3 of Marton'.
[34] Entry.
[35] MS: '~~It was built by [Blank] Burton~~ placed on the east side, at the Highest of the village with faire gardens, att about a mile distance from the Church \ & 2 from Apleby, the market & shire towne. /'
[36] MS: 'It was built by [blank] Burton whose ~~by three~~ \ was / ~~seeme to be~~ descended \ as I am inform'd. /'
[37] Here Machell drew a symbol to represent a heraldic bend.
[38] Richard Burton LLD, rector of Long Marton (1598-c.1608); rector of Ormside (1606-35). Richard Burton, rector of Dufton (1625-26), was probably his son: Nightingale, *Ejected of 1662,* 2, 1147-48.
[39] MS: 'that he might ~~the better sup~~ be \ more / capeable of doeing the Cavaliers a greater kindness.'
[40] Thomas Burton (fl.1656-68) wrote a diary in which he recorded his political career. See J. T. Rutt (ed*.), Diary of Thomas Burton*, 4 vols. (London, 1828). Machell wrote more kindly of Burton than of other so-called trimmers, despite the fact that Burton became MP for Westmorland in the Second Protectorate Parliament (1656-8). Cromwell's government accused him of disaffection, but he was among the Westmorland ejectors and in 1657 acquired a portion of the manor of Brough, sequestered from the recusant Blenkinsop family (a 'business' mentioned in the diary). Burton sat in Richard Cromwell's parliament (27 January to 22 April 1659). He then officially changed his affiliation to Charles II, after which he gained the honours that Machell cited here. I. Roots, 'Burton, Thomas (fl. 1656-1661), diarist'. *ODNB*.
[41] No pedigree was added.

[Machell's Notes: I.608]

*{See p.6, *Visit. West.* 1664. But there is no such thing in Whartons \ enterance,[42] / so that I suppose twas longer agoe (? Quaere ideo.[43])

†{?} (sed de his Quaere.)[44]

‡Se Flowers *Visitation of Yorkshire* 1564, wher 4 descents of Burton of Kens[l]ey named. I thinke Burtons is one of those corrupt ped[igrees] and it is to be noted of the Heralds that Wallop of Hantshire beares the same Coate.[45]

[Knock]

[III.162A]

Knock stands E. & W. At the E. end are iiij Tenements thought to have bin Knock gill hall, the being thee fashion of a ditch & Rampiere about the ground whereon; and the other Lands which belongs unto them extend themselves as far as Knock gill; and are yet calld the Demain Landes. There is also a place calld Chaple Fut, where it is said Knock Chaple stood – parish Dufton church.

[I.605][46]

The Lordship of Knock [Bounder]

On the North with Milburne in K[irkbythore] parish, \ being divided from it by a streight line / from Dumbalraise where Knock & Milburne & Martin Lordships meet, \ ascending / to the standing stean on Oaketree Hill (½ a m.); thence by a Dike steed to Casay flat Side, & so on by Caseflat dike Top to a Lane called Outgang-End as you go in to Grange, ¼. \ Thence / by ~~Lan~~ a dike on the out side Lang-holm to a place calld Stank head, ½. Thence up Grange Beck \ N. East / to Nu\c/kerdale head near unto Green Castle. 5 \ m. / \ where it springeth. /

Thence by a settle to Dale Sike head (100 yards); thence \ E. / down Dale Sike to Fell Troutbeck head* where Dale Sike runs into (1 mile).[47] Thence down Trout Beck \ N.E. / to Moss Burne Foot (3m.) where it meets \ in a Point / with Dufton parish – from which tis divided on the East by Mosburne aforesaid†, to the spring head (3 mile). Thence in a streight line \ S. / over the moss to Swindale head (3m.) Thence (by Swindale Beck) S.W. to Knoc Gill head, 4 \ m.[48] / Thence to Chaple Wath \ 1m. / where you pass the water twixt ~~Marton~~ \ Knock / & Dufton \ near Dufton Kirk / where 3 Lordships meet – Knock, Dufton & M[arton]. Then on ~~the S &~~ S[outh] with Long Marton – from which tis divided by ~~Mar~~ Knock field Dike to Hund-hill, 1m. Thence by a streight line to standing stean on Ebrun Thorne, ¾. Thence by a streight line to Dunbulraise, ½ a mile‡.

On the Top of Knock fell towards the west end is an Hurrock of stones which is called Watch Currack. No Bounder – It is opposite to Greene Castle.

[Machell's Notes: I.605]

*{5 mile but Sanderson says 2.}

†{Towan sayes by Mosburn to Over Harth 1½. Thence in a [blank] W. 1½. Thence by a [blank] to –Swindale beck head, 1m. is just one jump.}

‡Qu. of Marton parisheners & Grange.

{Sanderson says that Grange hath Common without Casaflat dike. Q. ergo of T. Westm'land.}

{Qu. Grange & Dufton.}

{There are Great store of Transparent blew stones of an azure colour digd out of the Grouves. Mr Hall & his shepherd.}

[42] See Foster (ed.) *Pedigrees*, 141-43.

[43] 'Therefore, look further.'

[44] 'But on this, look further.'

[45] See C.B. Norcliffe (ed.), *The Visitation of Yorkshire in the years 1563 and 1564 made by William Flower Esquire, Norroy, King of Arms* (Harleian Soc. XVI, London, 188), Pedigree of Rychard Burton of Kensley, 46.

[46] This page was bound upside down; at some point it was repaired and some words are illegible.

[47] MS: 'where \ Dale Sike / ~~it~~ runs into ~~Trout Beck~~ (1 mile).'

[48] MS: 'Thence (by Swindale Beck) S.W. to Knoc ~~Town~~ \ Gill / head, 4 \ m. /'

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 17]

[Parish of Morland]

[III.269]

There are 8 villages & Lordships in the parish.
{Morland, Bolton, Kings Meaburn, Newby, Great Strickland, Little Strickland, Slegill, Thrimby}[1]

[III.263][2]

It is a vicaridge, rated in the First Fruits Offices at 11: 18: 0, the tenths ~~of which is~~ 1: 3: 9½ farthing;[3] and it payeth to the Bishop for procurations \ 4^{s} 4^{d}* / & synodalls \ 4^{s} / & hath in glebe thereto belonging [blank].[4]
The patrones of it are the Dean & Chapter of Carleol, who presented Mr \ William / Atkinson, the present incumbent;[5] who hath in glebe lands about \ 30 or / 40 acres, \ Sc. in / Briggals VI acres[6] and hath Tythe in kind ~~& prescription~~ \ in the garthes of Morland & Bolton. Tythe hempe & line in the same Townes / allso in the fields. 10 Groates for hay at Trantra[ms]. A \ small / prescription for it ~~the rectory remaneing in the Dean & Chapter~~, at Thrimby;[7] tithe hay in kinde at Slegill, & a 3rd at Little Strickland, the Dean & Chapter having the rentes ~~therefore payable to the vicar at Little Strickland~~. Wool & lamb in kinde through the parish.[8]

{Division}
It is divided into 8 Constablewicks: Sc. 1. Morland; 2. Kings! Meaburne; 3. Newby; 4. Sleagil; 5. Little Strickland; 6. Thrimby; 7. Great Strickland; 8. Bolton. And into [blank] Lordships†.

[Bounder][9]
The parish of Morland, so called (as other are generally) from the town where ~~it~~ the parish church standeth, is bounded on East with Kirkbythore & Bondgate parishes, from which tis divided ~~from~~ \ by / the River Eden; on the South East with St Laurence Appleby‡. Thence up the outside of Leaseclose,[10] takeing it in & the whol Lordship of Meaburn Regis. Thence up to {Drivivers yeat with a long tabb;[11] on the South with Crosby Ravensworth parish, being divided from it by Lile Beck till it enters Livennit. Thence up Livennet to Regill Rales; thence by an hedge called Turnbank Dike to Regill Mask End. Thence \ by an hedge / up the Mask Side to Aughtwood Gill in Threeplands. Thence up the Gill to Pluverigs wherewith Shap parish meets, which hemms it in on the S., being divided from it by stones &}[12] line markes, to a place called Brunns, ~~a quarter of a mile~~ near Shap Towne End.

---

[1] MS.III.612 provides a similar narrative.
[2] As this page has undergone partial repair, causing some illegibility, three sets of marginalia have been omitted.
[3] £1 3s 9¾d.
[4] The Court of First Fruits and Tenths was established in 1540 to collect from clerical benefices certain moneys that had previously been sent to Rome. First fruits were the first year's profits owed by the new holder of a benefice; tenths were 10 percent of the annual income, due each year: https://www.britannica.com. The Office of First Fruits and Tenths, and its successor, the Office of the Governors of Queen Anne's Bounty, administered the income from clerical taxation following the Reformation: https://discovery.nationalarchives.gov.uk.
[5] William Atkinson was presented to Morland in 1680/1; he died in 1721. He was schoolmaster at Dufton between 1664 and 1665 (CCED) and gave Machell advice on the Dufton parish boundary in 1686: see Part 1, Ch.12, Dufton, III.160.
[6] The text is very jumbled here but appears to continue, 'Mr Atkinson will give [blank].'
[7] MS: 'A \ small / prescription for it ~~the rectory remaneing in the Dean & Chapter~~, at Thrimby.'
[8] This passage has been crammed into a tiny space and is much scored through.
[9] In a note on MS III.270, Machell wrote, 'Morland Parish: Query for a bounder; more perfect account.'
[10] Lees Close.
[11] 'Tabb': in Cornish dialect, a tab or tabbun is a piece of turf, see F.W.P. Jago, *The Ancient Language, and the Dialect of Cornwall* (Truro, 1882). In Midlands dialect, a tab[b] is the tongue of a shoe or boot. Tab is also interchangeable with 'tag': an appendage; the tail-end. *OED*.
[12] A mended tear in the paper has made the next word too faint to decipher.

[It is bounded] on the West with Bamton \ ~~& Lons~~ / parishes, being[13] divided by ~~Bank~~ [Blank]; on the North W. with Lowther parish by Gunner Keld Watter (or Melkinthorp beck) till it runns into Cliburn beck⸸. On the North with Cliburn parish, from which tis divided by Cliburne beck till it enters Eaden near Gillian Bower[14] over against Sowerby.

[Machell's Notes: III.263]

*?
†{? Q. families in each freehold.}
‡ From which, query of Henry Dent of Meaburn if it be not divided from Sweetmilk Sike from the river up to Buly Castle.
⸸ Sed query?
{The townes & Lordships}[15]{1 dedication; 2 descriptions by pillars; steple, bell, repares, monuments, Armes in number. What familyes in belonging.}
{What remarkeable in nature. Birds, fishes, in the mines.}[16]

[III.612]

Townships

[1. Morland]

Church
Morland, where the church standeth, being a fair large building in the manner of a † with 2 rows of pillars, 3 in a row, & tower steple with a \ leaden / spire or broach upon it,[17] and in good repare. No armes nor monuments in it, but a label of brass on the tomb stone of Vicar Blithe,[18] with this Inscription [blank].
There are herein besides, the vicaridge house, in whose window is the Armes of Vicar Burton quartering [blank][19]

[IV.494A]

{ad Morland. Reg. de Wed.}[20]
{Fol. 23a.} Walter Bishop of Carlile was at variance with Abbat & Convent of Yorke; as I take it, about the moncks of Wederhal not expending the profits of Morland Church within the diocess: whereupon he excommunicatd som of the moncks: But on Munday next after the feast of St Agatha,[21] it was composed in Alverton church by delegates appointed in formation as followeth: Sc. That all the goods of the Church of Morland & other churches of the house of Wederhal granted to their use within the Diocess of Karliol should be expended in the house of Wederhal, & should not be by their authority transferred from thence to any other persons or places but should goe to the use of the monks that were perpetual resident there. Saveing to the said Abbat & Convent out of the said Churches their ancient & accustomed pensions. And they were farther to promiss and grant to the said Bishop. That when the House of Wederhal should chance to be destitute of a Prior, the said Abbat & Convent would present to the said Bishop & to his successors a monck fitly qualified to preside over the House of Wederhal, who shal doe Canonical Obedience to them, & receive the Cure of Soules

[13] MS: 'been.'
[14] Presumably, Julian Bower. There is a field near Morland called Julian Flatts: see *Westmorland Place-Names*.
[15] This margin comment is: (a) partly perished, and (b) partly obscured by the binding.
[16] Several words here are obscured by the binding.
[17] Broach: a church spire, see W. Papworth, *Gwilt's Encyclopaedia of Architecture* (1867), iii. 959: 'The most frequent spire is that called a broach when it does not rise from within parapets, but is carried up on four of its sides from the top of the square tower. *OED*.
[18] John Blyth, vicar of Morland, died in 1563. CCED.
[19] Presumably this is Pearse Burton, who entered Queen's College, Oxford, 'serviens' in 1650. CCED. According to Nightingale, he was instituted to Morland in 1654 and died in 1667/8, 'much lamented' after serving 13 years in the parish. Nightingale comments that he was probably the son of Richard Burton, rector of Dufton; he was baptised in Dufton in 1632. Pearse Burton remained in place during the Interregnum and after the Restoration: Nightingale, *Ejected of 1662*, 2, 1181-4.
[20] 'Information about Morland taken from the Register of Wetheral Priory.'
[21] The Feast of St Agatha is on 15 February.

from their hands: And shall never be removed in their whole life from the administration of the said house, without a just & reasonable cause, to be shewen to the Bishop sine strepitu judiciali.[22]

[IV.494B]

And on the Other Hand, it was agreed that those moncks whom the Bishope said he had excommunicated should goe privately to him & beg the benefit of Absolution; & that he should restore to the Prior of Wederall his sequestration which he had caus'd to be made upon Morland Church without contradiction or delay. And induct him into the corporal possession of the said church.

{Robert Bishop of Karliol}
This Robert (successor to the said Walter in the Sea of Karliol […], haveing seen & considered, confirmed the said agreement.[23]

[IV.495]

[Capella de With]
Collocatio[24] Capel Sancte Marie in Lewyth […] parochia de Morland A.D. 1405
[Register of Wetheral Priory] folio 146B.[25] {It seemeth to have bin an hermitage.}
About 19 years {1424} after [this collocatio], a difference arose between the Prior of Wetheral to whom the fruits of the parish church of Morland did of old appertane, saveing a Portion for the vicar, et Dominus Johannem Richemont, perpetual vicar of the said church {vicar de Morland not de Richmond!}

[IV.496]

concerneing the receiveing & takeing of oblations in the chapel of Wythe, in honour of the Blessed Virgin Mary, erected & builded within the bound & limits of the said church of Morland. & concerneing the title right & possession of ½ an acre of land lying upon Litel Aynesbergh & butting upon the Common Banke within the territory of the said vill which had long bin disputed & controverted but was then composed by the mediation of William by divine permission Abbat of St Maryes at Yorke, to whose decree (in alto et Busso: from top to bottom} they were bound to submit. Who ordered \ after examon[ation] of many witness, & sight of evidences / that:
The Prior of Wederhall, should have \ & enjoy all / the oblations & halfe acre of land peacably & quietly without any disturbance from the said vicar; saveing always to the said vicar \ that if the said Abbat / could finde any real composition in the Archives of his Monastery, which he faithfully promised to search & seeke after when he could be at leisure, by which it might appear that the oblations offered in the said chaple did belong unto him, the said vicar of Morland, that he would deliver him a true copy of it, & then it should be lawfull for him to receive the said offerings as is promised, & use them according to his own discretion, notwithstanding the foresaid Agreement. And that if any difference should arise for the future betwixt the said partyes, they should refer it to 2 Learned Lawyers (i[ll]os viros in jure egregie et profunde instructos),[26] who, if they could not make an Agreement, the said Prior & Vicar should stand to the order of the said Abbat without any farther process at law. To which the said Prior & Vicar consented, et fide sua media concordarunt: &c. – Data et acta fuit h[ac] in Ecclesia parochiali de Moreland predicta anno ab Incarnatione Domini secundum cursu[m] et computationem Eccl[esi]æ Anglicanæ M0CCCC0 vicessimo quarto, mart[i]ria p[ro]p[ri]æ vc vij0 mensis Julij die xva. Presentibus inter alios William de Crakanthorp Senescallo Prioratus nostri de Wederhal, et alijs.[27]

[22] 'Without any legal formality.'
[23] For this agreement, see MS.IV.494B.
[24] 'Collocatio': putting together; setting up; placing.
[25] See the Latin text of this Collocatio deed on MS.IV.495.
[26] '2 Learned Lawyers (those men who are exceptionally and profoundly learned in law)…'
[27] 'To which the said Prior & Vicar consented, and made an agreement with a sworn oath etc. It was given and enacted in this parish Church of Moreland aforesaid, in the fourteen hundredth and twenty-fourth year from the Lord's Incarnation, according to the reckoning and calculation of the Anglican Church, the five hundred and seventh from the martyr-foundation of their own, on the fifteenth day of the month of July. Present among others William of Crakanthorp, Steward of our Priory of Wederhal, and others.'

[III.612]

[Gentlemen's houses]
[1.] The Broad Fauld belonging to the Backhouses, being tenement held of the Dean & Chapter & 13^{li} per annum freehold called The Wood Wooding & the Ashes: long enjoyed by that name.
[2.] The Low Hall, alias Powdonat, an hansom little house belonging formerly (as they say) to the Musgraves, who are said to have \ had / a 3^{d} of the Lordship, & the Deane & Chapter the other 2; But did belong in the memory of man to one Henry Backouse, who had isue, ~~John~~ George, who sold it to one Mr ~~James~~ Farer who[se] wife was maryed to one Charles Kiplin; which Charles sold it to one Mr Adamson, and he to John Routlege, and he sold it to Mr William Atkinson, who now injoyes it freehold.
[3.] Other freeholde
Robert Backhouse 8^{li} per annum; William Lambert of Kemplees 11^{li}; Henry Licot of Yeatelands; Thomas Robinson of Akey-Yeat; & R. Jackson of Morland. And other small freehold under value.

[I.613]

[Backhouse Family]
There is a Family of Backhouses taken to be very Ancient. The Armes belonging to this name – of which there be severall yet in the south of England – are [see illustration below]. And the Crest an Eagle volant Or, desplayd \ vert / with a serpen wave proper Inflexing its head and tayle towards the Eagle.



Figure 1.17.1. Backhouse Arms. I.613.

[I.611B-I.612][28]

Ex Inquisitione post mortem Lanceloti Backouse capt[a] apud \ Temple / Sowerby 4^{0} May 35^{0} Elizabeth Coram Johanne Scenas Armig[ero] Escheat dicte Reginæ.

Medietas manerij Morland cum pertin[entijs] ac etiam Bosc[us] et sub-Bosc[us] Com[itatus] vocat[us] Morland wood continent[es] per estimac[i]o[n]em Quinqueginta acras Terræ plus minus tent[ae] per Lancelotum Backhouse gener[osus] per feofamentu[m] Joh[ann]is Sowthaick Armigeri: Ac etiam {Joh[ann]is Sowthait} una pasture vocata wood house end-close Cont[inens] i ac[ram] terræ: una parcella Prati Juxta dict[am] Clausura[m] una Acrea Arabilis et Prati vocat[a] Stanelands de Quibus obijt Seisitus in Man[nerio] de Morland et de Brampton; Ac etiam de 3a parte unius messuagij et obijt seisitus unius Cottagij in Dufton. quarum Brampton et Dufton habuit per Chartam Indentatam Bigetae Bachouse viduæ dat[am] 20 Feb: 3^{0} et 4^{0} Phill[ipi] et Mariæ factam Edwardo Birkbeck de Hornby Generoso et Joh[ann]i Back house Clerico. Heredibus et Assignatis suis ad usum Dictæ Briget[ae] pro Termino vitæ. Post ad uso usum – Henrici Backhouse et post Hæred[ibus] masc[uline], ad usum Gilberti Bac[khouse] alter[ius] fill[ij] et Heredibus masc[[uline], pro def[ectu] ad usum Anthon[ij] Bac[khouse] alter[ius] fill[ij] et Hered[ibus] masc[[uline] Rectorum haeredum Dict[ae] Brig[etae] pro Defect[u] Ad usum Rectorum hæredum Dict[ae] Brig[etae] Jurati dicunt Quod
Predict[a] medietas man[erij] de Morland et cætera premissa in Morland præfatus Lancelotus Bac[khouse] tenuit tempore mortis suæ de Dom[ina] Regina in Capite. Viz per servici[a] vicessimæ partis unius feodi Militis et valet per An[num] in omnibus exitibus ultra Reprisas 22s.
{Man[erium] Morland Tent[um] de Rege per servic[ium] Mil[itare]] 20 pars feodi Militis}
{Man[erium] Brampton Tent[um] de man[erio] de Dufton}

[28] Page measuring 23cm x 27cm, consisting of one sheet glued onto pages on either side of the gutter. The top right of the sheet holds a reference code in another hand.

P[re]dict[am] 3 part[em] manerij de Brampton et caetera p[re]missa cum suis pertinentijs in Dufton praefatus Lancelotus Bac[khouse] tenuit de Dom[ina] Regina ut de man[erio] su[o] de Dufton per fidelitatem sectae curiae, et Reddend[o] Inde Ann[ua]t[i]m ad Festum Sancti Andreae Apost[olici] 1/3 Libri de piperis 1/3 duorum denariorum pro tertia parte libri de cumino; et 1/3 duorum solid[orum] pro omnibus servicijs etc. et valet in omnibus 3li-10s-0d ^{d}.[29]
{De sus Lanc. Backhouse obijt seistus 29. Septem. 34. Eliz. [1592]: et Robertus B. Frater et hæres ætatis 21. Annorum et 40. dierum.}[30]

Ambrosius Lancaster de Brampton Armiger =
_____|
|
Brigeta Lancaster Nupta3^{0} et 4^{0} Phili et Mariæ [1556-57] = Robert of Backhouse defunct superstes,

Henricus Backhous. Gilbertus B. Antho. Backhouse.
Filius et haer.[31]
|
Lancelotus Bachouse de[32] Robertus Bac.[33]
Man' de Morland et 3^{a} parte
man' de Brampton

[I.612][34]

[**2. Sleagill**]

I take Slegill to be an hamlett of Newby in the parish of Morland. It belonged to the Blenkinsopes of Helbeck till sold of by Mr Thomas Blenkinsop about the yere [blank] to [blank]. They had 16 tenements in this hamlett, which payd finable rent 5^{li} 12^{s} 2^{d}.
I finde Slegil anciently an Hamlet of the vilage of Newby; yett it was a Lordship & here was a manner house which was the Seat many yeres agoe of the Family of the Slegills. For I finde Adam son of Robert de Slegill [conveyed] certane Lands in Dominico Suo in Territorio de Slegil:[35] to William Prodome of Newby for the service he had don him, to him & his heirs forever.

[29] [Lancelot Backhouse died owning] 'half of the manor of Morland with its appurtenances and also the wood and underwood called Morland Wood containing by estimation 50 acres of land be it more or less, held by Lancelot Backhouse, Gent. by the freehold conveyance of John Southaite Esq. and also one pasture called Woodend Close containing one acre of land, one parcel of meadow next to the said close, one acre of arable and meadow called Stanelands: of all of which he died possessed in the Manor of Morland and of Brampton. And also a third part of one house and one cottage in Dufton, which estate in Brampton and Dufton he held by deed of indenture by Bridget Backhouse, widow, dated 2 February 3 and 4 Philip and Mary (1556-1557) to Edmund Birkbeck of Hornby, Gent. And the Rev. John Backhouse, their heirs and assigns, to the use of the said Bridget for her lifetime, and after that to the use of Henry Backhouse and his male heirs, to the use of Gilbert Backhouse his second son and his male heirs, to the use of Anthony Backhouse his other son and his male heirs, and failing these to the use of the right heirs of the said Bridget. The jurors say that she said half of the Manor of Morland was held by the said Lancelot Backhouse at the time of his death, from our lady the Queen as tenant in chief by service of one-twentieth of a knight's fee, and its annual net value is 22s 0d. The said one third of the Manor of Brampton and the other premises with their appurtenances in Dufton were held by the said Lancelot Backhouse from our lady the Queen as of her Manor of Dufton by fealty of suit of court, and by rent of one third of a pound of cumin, and one third of 2s 0d for all services, payable on the Feast-Day of St Andrew the Apostle [30 Nov.] yearly; and is worth in total £3 10s 0d.'
[30] 'The said Lancelot Backhouse died possessed, 29 September 34. Elizabeth [1592], and Robert Backhouse his brother and heir, was then of the age of 21years and 40days.'
[31] 'Son and heir.'
[32] An interlineated Latin sentence here is illegible.
[33] 'Ambrose Lancaster of Brampton Esq. married Bridget. She was widowed in 1556-1557 and later married Robert Backhouse and had children: Henry, Gilbert and Anthony. Henry's children were Lancelot of Morland and Brampton, and Robert.'
[34] Also numbered p.26.
[35] '…in his demesne in the territories of Sleagill.'

[I.614][36]

[Families: Notes]
Slegill Robertus had isue Adam; and [Adam] by Xtian had John: 4. Edward 3. [1330-31].
Prodome: Will Prodome de Sclegill h[ad] issue: Will & Adam. Will son of Will, 1320.
John Prodom & Johan his wife.
Windesor. Will de Wyndesore de Morland. & I read of one of that Sirname Thomas de Morland who held Land \ as Tennant /of Gilbert de Sclegill.

[Slegill Family][37]
Sclegil. Robert de Sclegill had Isue, Adam, who marryed Xtian \ 13. Edward 1. [1284-85] / an[d] had Isue John, 4. Edward 3. [1330-31]. ~~Adam 15. Edward 3.~~ 12. \ Gilbert, Senesc[hal] Westm'land.[38] / Adam de Sclegill, 45. Edward 3. [1371-72].

[III.612]

Robert de Slegil had isue Adam [who] m. Christiana.\ s.d. / Will. de Wyndesore \ junior / a witness.
Gi[l]bert de Slegill gave to Adam the son of Robert de Slegille ~~gave~~ 2 oxgangs \ & 3 acres / of Land in the Lordship of Slegill by a deed s.d., paying to him & his heires 9[d] att the faere of St Lawrence of Apleby and doeing foreigne ser[vice], so much as belongs to so much. Witness: Sir Thomas de Lowther, Willielmo de Goldrington, Alano de Berwise, John de Barnes,[39] Stephano de Neuby.
Adam the son of Robert de Slegill granted to John de ~~Staffelld~~ Staffolld & also his wife and their heires his manner of Sclegill with all apurtenances ut in moris et marisiis &c. in wardis relevijs et eschettis et cum servicio 2[d] et una sagitta Barbellata a Roberto le spencer pro terra sua in Slegil et cum servicio unius Bacine Zinzibris; annu[u]s Reditus a Willielmo Prodhom. Testibus Robert le Engleys, John de Rossegill Richardo de Musegra militibus.[40]
These Slegils had in their seale a grahund takeing an Hare.
John de Slegil 19. Edward 2. [1325-26], gave some medow and waste in Slegil Field to Robert de Botiler & Alice his wife (f[orsan] his sister).

[IV.523]

{Fol. 111; Cart. 238 Regis. Wed.}
Mary the relict of Gilbert de Sclegil in his power & lawfull viduity granted, remised & forever quitted clame to God & St Mary & the Abbat of St Mary York & monks serveing God in the said Abby, all her right to clame which she had in mess[u]age with the appurtenances in Sclegile which Gilbert de Sclegile gave them &c. Hijs Testibus – Domini Michael de {Harrcle; Domino Tho. De Derwentwatrerl Domino Will. de Stirkeland militibus; Roberto de Warthwick, Walter de Windeson, Willo filio ejus, adam de Haverrington, Stephano ad Porta et alijs.

[I.614]

[Prodome de Sclegill]
Will. Prodome de Sclegill.
Will (& Adam) son of Will. 1320.
John m. Johanna 9. Edward 2. [1315-1316].[41]
Will Prodhom \ Preudhom / 4. Edward 3. [1330-1331].
Richard Prodhom 43. Edward 3. [1369-70] convey Slegill L[a]nds[42] to John de Kirkbythore.
John Purdhome a witness 36 Edward 3 [1362-63].

The Prodoms had in Slegil 2 messuages, 4 Oxgangs ~~of Land~~ sexaginta et octadecem Acr[as] Terrae, 24 Acras prati: 3 acras Bosci In Slegill Hamletto de Neuby[43] and some Acres more, as appear by a

[36] Also numbered p.27.
[37] See also MS.IV.523.
[38] Gilbert, Steward of Westmorland.
[39] Or possibly, 'Barwes'.
[40] 'In moor and marsh &c. In wards, reliefs and escheats, and by service of two pence and one barbed arrow by Robert le Spencer for his land in Sleagill, and by service of one basin of ginger as annual rent from William Prodhom; witness Robert le Engleys, John de Rossegill, Richard de Musgrave, Knights.'
[41] 9. Edward II. might be incorrectly transcribed; the regnal year is blotted.
[42] Or possibly 'Lordship'.
[43] '60 and 18 acres of arable land, 24 acres of meadow, 3 acres of woodland in Sleagill, a hamlet of Newby.'

lease for life of John and Johan Prodom of the said Lands to William Prodom 9. Edward 2. [1315-16], which Lands Will. Prodom gave Mr John Prodom & Johane, 9. Edward 2.
Richard Prodham, 43. Edward 3. [1369-70], passed his Lands to John de Kir\k/bythore. Adam de Slegil gave possession as attorn[e]y.
Will de Newby s.d.

Barwys de Slegill
1. Alane son of Alane de Barwis s.d.
2. John
3. Hugo de Barwys son of John. 28. Edward 3. [1354-55]; he maryed Margaret: John Tom. Rob.
4. John son of Hugo [blank] 36. Edward 3. [1362-63].
(Margaret Barwise of Fishburn 7. Henry 6.) [1428-29] .
5. Richard m. Margaret d[aughter of] John de Kirkbythore 3. Henry 5. [1415-16].
Richard B. 21. Richard 2. [1397-98]
10. Edward 4. [1470-71] the Blenkinsop[s] had Title.

Alan de Berwis gave to Alen his son & his heirs of his lawfully espoused wife all his Lands with the Apurtenances and free services which he had in Slegil; paying to him & his heires a penny silver per Annum rent & doeing forrane service tantum quaestum.[44] [Witness] T. Thomas de Musgrave tunc vice com. Westmorland.[45]
Anno 5. Edward 1. se Apleby. Hugo de Berwys, 36. Edward 3. of Slegill. Hugh the son of John de Berwis, 28. Edward 3. de Slegil.[46]

[I.615]

[3. Meburne Lordship]

There are Towne which bear the name of Meaberne. I read of one Rowland Thornburrough de Meubône Esq., which I take to Meaborne, but whether \ Kings or / Mauds which in Morland parish I cannot tell. I thinke was in the time of King Richard the 2nd but am not certaine.

[I.613]

There are diverse places of this name: 2 in Westmorland. Kings Meburne, which I take this to be R[egi]s.) and Mauds Meburne, which is in Crosby Ravensworth parish. And I fear that Milburne is sometimes so ~~called~~ writt, which bredeth some confusion. It is Meburne Regis.

{8. Edward 2. [1314-15]} Est Ibidem unum Messuagem Capitale &c.[47]

There is one manner house which is worth per Annum	0: 2: 0
C \xx/iiij Acres of Land,[48] qu\el Ac., valet per Annum 4d et suma est	3: 1: 4
x acres of [blank] the Herbage of which is per Annum	0: 1: 0
xxij Acres of medow, quelib. valet per Annum 14d et summa est	1: 5: 8
2 Free Tenements, which pay per Annum	0: 8: 0
44 Oxgangs of Land, each worth 5s per Annum, & summa est	11: 0: 0
42 messuages coterell,[49] worth per Annum 1s apiece, summa est	0:16: 0

[44] 'As needed.'
[45] 'Witness, Thomas de Musgrave then Sheriff of Westmorland.'
[46] 'In the 5th year of King Edward I [1276-77] see Appleby. See also Hugh de Berwys 36. Edward III. [1362-63] of Sleagill, Hugh the son of John de Berwys 28. Edward III. [1354-55] of Sleagill.'
[47] Capital messuage: see the English Glossary.
[48] 180, i.e. 100 and 4-score acres: see L. C. Hector, *The Handwriting of English Documents* (London, 1958), 40.
[49] 'The houses of cottagers.'

Note. Here is a mistake, for either there are but 32 messuages
at 6^{d} per messuage which was the usuall rate at these Times
or else the sum should be 42 shillings.
1 water mil, worth per Annum 3^{li} 6^{s}: 19. Edward 3. [1345-36].
Allso pleas and perquisites of Court, worth there 0: 5: 8

Summa 22^{li} 13^{s} 0

Dub. An de toto vel demadio?[50]
vid in Ap[pleby] anno 8. Ed. 2. [1314-15].
N[ote.] The mill must be the rest.

{1. Edward 3.}
The \ herbage of / Manner house att Meburne was extended as appeares by Inquisition, 1. Edward 3. [1327-28] att 3 shillings; but 217 Acres of demane Land by reason of the destruction which the Scotts had made – layd waste & untilled for want of Tenents – and was not worth anything save only in Herbage.[51]

[I.613]

[4. Manner de Newby][52]

There were of the sirname of Newby remaining in the time of King James,[53] of whome I finde mention amongst the writeing of the Sledalls, penes Lancelotam \ ~~Machell~~ / de Crakanthorp &c. Armigerum.[54] ([Also] Alexander de Newby with Sir Thomas de Helbeck and Thomas de Musegrave Vicecom West' testes s.d. Sed per Thomas Musg. Vicecom. Anno 36. Henry 3. [1251-52].)[55]
See an Account of Newby & Nevinsons in the beginning of this booke.[56]

[I.155]

{1. Nomen Unde?}[57]
Newby \ is a Saxon word & / may be rendered ~~in Latin~~: Novus Locus,[58] for the name implyeth no more than a new place: How be it in all antient evidences that I have mett with it, is still writt Newby notwithstanding that they were in Latin \ take in the 7.8 head here: here is nothing rem[embered] &c. /

{2. Appurtenentia}[59]
It conteines in it, besides the village it gives name to, the Lordship & [blank] and has anciently belonged \ if I may so conjecture / to a family of that name; for there were of the Newbies till of late yeres differsed in this country \ viz. in the reign of King James the 1st / {of whome is mention in Sleddals writeing, penes Lancelotus Mautcel de Crakenthorp, Armiger, but there being many places of that name, I dar not affirm their ~~pr~~ relation to this place more than another} who are \ always / writt in Latin ~~writeing~~, de Newby, & therefore \ seem to / ~~must needs~~ take their sirname \ of Newby / from hence, as many other familyes have don from the place of their residence. \ Yet there are places so calld, that might give name to such & such family. /

3. Incoli Antiqui cum Insignijs[60]
Howbeit in after times it was conveyed from family to family ~~for~~, and in 23. of Henry 8. I finde it belonged to one George Vernon of Nether Hadden in Derbyshire Esq., of whome Richard Nevinson

[50] 'Dubious. Is this the whole or the half [of the total]?'
[51] Herbage: grazing.
[52] This title has been removed from MS.I.155.
[53] James I. 1603-1625.
[54] 'In the possession of Lancelot de Crackenthorpe Esq.'
[55] 'Witness in an undated deed with Sir Thomas de Hellebeck and Thomas de Musgrave, Sheriff of Westmorland. But see Thomas Musgrave Sheriff, 26. Henry III.'
[56] For deeds relating to Newby, see MS.IV.503-07.
[57] 'Name whence?'
[58] 'New place.'
[59] 'Things belonging.'
[60] 'Inhabitants from an earlier age with their emblems.'

of Kemplees, yeoman, farmed one messuage in Nuby of the Stones, together with a wood called Neuby-Wood, & a parcel of ground called Forty Penny Farmold; which were afterwards taken out of his hands & lett in farm to Robert Cliburn & Isabel his wife, anno 32. of Henry 8. [1540-41] for 20 yeres, by the said George (who sealed with a bores head errased.)[61]
{And the name of Vernon is not a stranger to this country, for in the 15. of Edward 1. one Isabell Vernon, who quartered Hartley, & I thinke Skelton, & whose armes were frette with a canton in the textual point) was a sharer in Henry Harclays lands, Sc. Crakenthorp writings.}

{4. Incoli moderni cum Insig. et genealogia.}[62]
And about that time, one Thomas Andlay writt \ a letter / to my Lord of Cumberland[63] on the behalf of \ the said / Richard Nevinson, desireing him that through his means \ & assistance / the poor man might be secured from the perill & danger of Edmund Cliburne, his friends and adhere[n]ts. But in the 4. and 5. of Philip and Mary [1557-58], I finde Richard Nevinson of Newby Stones, yeoman, \ which was the same man possessed

[Machell's Notes: I.155]
N.B. This [page] must be corrected (because not exact) according to Method.

[I.156]
of \ a certaine / lands \ & / tenements rents & services in Newby \ Stones / which he intaled on Richard his \ 1. / son & his heires male, or for defect on Stephen \ his 2. / and his heires male, & for defect of heires male of Stephen, upon the […][64] heires of the foresaid Richard Thomas Sandford de \ of / Askome, & Thomas Blenkinsop de \ of / Helbeck Esqs, being feofees in trust for execution thereof. \ ~~there is nothing &c.~~ / From this Richard N. is desended Mr John Nevinson of Newby \ aforesaid / now liveing, as will ~~more planely~~ appear from the following Pedigree;[65] and the armes they preten to are Argent a cheveron charged with a mullet of 5 between 3 eaglett displays […][66] Azure. In Dugdal visit[ation]. Sed non prob.[67]

[I.614]
[Further evidence concerning the Nevinson Family]
3. Henry 8. [1511-12]. Richard Nevinson of Kemplees yeoman, in contest with Rowland Rigg. He farmed a messuage in Nuby in the Stones in the County of Westm'land, of George Vernon of Nether Haddon in Derbyshire Esq., together with a wood called Newby Wood and a parcel of ground caled the Forty Penny Farmald, which were ~~lett by~~ taken out of his hands and left to Rob. Cliburne & Isabell his wife Anno 32. Henry 8. [1540-41] for 28 yeres by the said George Vernon Esq., who sealed with a Bores head errased.

And I finde one Thomas Audelay write to my Lord of Cumberland in behalfe of Sir Richard Nevinson whome he compasionatly termd a pore man more than once: and desired that through his means he may be freed from the dang[er] of one Edmund Laburne, his friends and Adherents.
But in the 4. & 5. of Philip & Mary [1557-58] I finde Richard Nevinson of Newby Stones, yeoman, possessed of Lands Tenements Rents & Services in Newby, which he Intales upon Richard his son & his Heires male. Or for defect on Stephen his son & his heires male. Or for the defect upon R.T. Sandforde de Ascome & Richard de Hellebeck, feofes in trust. He had a daughter called Marion married to Rowland Robinson of Newby.

[Machell's Notes: I.612]
{N!} I wonder that I meet not with Newby amongst the manners in Cliffords evidences.

---

[61] MS: 'which were \ afterwards ~~his han~~ / taken out of his hands & lett \ in farm ~~hld~~ / to Robert Cliburn & Isabel, his wife, anno 32. of Henry 8. for ~~the terme~~ of 20 yeres, by the said George ~~Vernot Esq.~~ (who sealed ~~his grant~~ with a bore's head errased).'
[62] 'Modern inhabitants with their emblems and descent.'
[63] Henry Clifford, second earl of Cumberland, 1517-1570.
[64] Unclear word.
[65] See below.
[66] The last word of this sentence is obscured by the binding.
[67] 'But not probable.' See another version of this information below, I.614.

[I.156]

Nevinson de Nuby

5. Insignia in col. modem			Richard Nevinson of Kemplees: 23. Henry 8. obijt circa 4. & 5. Philip & Marie		The crest a leopard passa[n]t	
	2. Stephen, to whom the estate of Nuby was to descend for defect of isue male of Richard, his brother		1. Richard Nevinson of Newby, eldest son and heire to Richard		Marian, maryed to Rowland Robinson of Newby in 3. & 4. of Phil. and Mary	
6. Genealogia incol. modern ?	2. Jane maryed to Richard Bowerbanke of [blank]		1. Richard Nevinson de Newby ~~qui novum edificium struxit: vocat Newby Hall~~	{Mayplate daughter of one of the prebends of Carlil. Another to Kirkbride}	N.B. 2. First generations proa[v]ed out of evidences in the custody of Mr Frances Blenkinsop sup[er] of Brough. The other by information of the present aige.	
8. Locus Capitalis[68] that milia tria distat ab Ecclesia1 mille et amplius[69]	2. Stephen never maryed: was sirna[m]ed 'The Long' for his taleness of stature		Edward Nevinson de Newby, justitiarius pacis qui Nuby in dedificium struxit circa 1645[70]	= Susan, daughter of Sir Christopher Dalston of Acorn Banke	3. Ann, maryed to Thomas, 2nd sonn of Sir Christopher Dalston de Acorn, & had isue	
	3. Richard, Mercator apud Kendal[71]	2. Ann, maryed to Mr Hugh Machel of Crak. Hall eldest son of L.M. Esq.	1. John Nevinson de Newby generosus[72]	= maryed Elizabeth Garth of Heedbur'	4. Edward, an apprentice to a vintner at London	5. Margaret, maryed to Walton, tanner in Pen[rith]

7. Loci et res notatu digniores in manerio[73] The manner house, as aperes, fore one built by R.N., 1645, 2 miles ab ecclesia. There is nothing that I know of remarkable in this Lordship but that it lyes all upon a slape limestone,[74] especially in the street of Newby, whence it is called Newby Stones, and coales that not of the best sort are gott.

[68] 'Main seat that is three miles and more distant from the church.'
[69] 'Distant from the church 1 mile and more.'
[70] 'Edward Nevinson de Newby, justice of the peace, who built a hall at Nuby, circa 1645.'
[71] 'Merchant at Kendal.'
[72] 'Gentleman.'
[73] 'Places and points noteworthy in the manor.'
[74] 'Slape' can mean slippery or smooth. *OED*.

IV.509]

[5. Strickland]

Strickland Chapel

Strickland Chappel was a chantery founded by Sir Walter de Stirkeland, salva jure jurando matricis ecclesie de Morland indemnitate,[75] about the time of King Richard 1. For Sir William de Stirkeland great-grandchilde of the foresaid Sir Walter, confirmed the gift of his great grandfather Deo et Sancta Marie et Abbi Sancta Marie, Ebor'[76] & to the monks of Wederhal & St Beeys of Coupland – anno 1292, Sc. 2 of Ed. 1. And I will transcribe the original charter for the excellency of it, because it shews what dependence all chappels have, or should have, on their mother churches.[77]

[Machell's Notes: IV.509]

Qu. Whether it be the same with that which is lately repared & indowed by Mr Fletcher, 'twixt Little Strickland & Thrimby.[78]

{No. It seemeth to be in Magna Stirkeland per cartam Willielmi infra & to be serted in Curia de Styrkel ut infra in 2^0 carta; i.e. in the courtyard or fold.}

[III.263A]

[Melkinthorpe Hall, the Manor House of Great Strickland]

Ad Morland Parish March 18 1688/9

Armes in Melkinthorp Hall, being the manner house of Great Strickland.



Figure 1.17.2. Arms at Melkinthorpe Hall. III.263A.

In the Nursery painted 1. Azure. 2 Argent. 3 Argent. 4 as the 1.
The first is in the nursery painted on the wall, and is the Armes of Musgrave Quartering Ward & Stapleton.
2. In the closset of the said nursery, being a rude essay by the same hand, of the Fallowfields Armes and to each of these are 2 rabbets for the supporters.
3. Upon a wooden chimney piece in the Parlour, being the Armes of Dalston of Ackorn Banke impaleing Fallowfield by reason of a match with that family. Note, there ar 2 crists, the 1. a daws head ariseing through a crownet from of a wreath; 2. a boares head couped.

[75] 'Saving the rights of the mother-church of Morland by indemnity.'
[76] 'To God and St Mary and the Abbey of St Mary at York.'
[77] See 'Charters in the Register of Wetheral Priory relating to Walter Strickland', below, IV.509.
[78] Thomas Fletcher, a lawyer, was responsible for the restoration of the chapel. The commemorative stone is dated 1695 but the restoration seems to have taken place in 1681. See 'Strickland, Little', in *An Inventory of the Historical Monuments in Westmorland* (London, 1936), 221-22.

[Machell's Notes: III.263B]

{Melkinthorpe Hall commonly calld: but properly Great Strickland Hall.}

{Query for an account of rare herbes in Westmorland from Mr Dalston, & my booke of *Cristianography* by Paget,[79] which he had from Mr Fletcher.}[80]

[I.615]

[Strickland Families]

Walter de Strickland. West' 11. Henry 3. [1226-27]. Se more in the Barony de Kendal.[81]

Richard Crackanthorp.

{Strickland} Parvy[82] gave life as I have bin informd to that famous & learned & Ingenious writer Dr Richard Crakanthorp who writ [blank] &c.[83]

[I.265]

[Crackenthorpe of Little Strickland Pedigree.] March 6 1688/9 by Grace Watson[84]

? 1. Richard Crakenthorp of Newbiging Esq.	2. Christopher Crakenthorp of Little Strickland, gentleman. Tooke to wife =	[Blank] the daughter of [blank] Salkeld of Rosgil Esq. & had issue					
2. Thomas obijt sine prole	Richard Crakenthorp of Little Strickland, gentleman, who marryed =	Elizabeth, daughter of [blank] Farer of Crosby Ravenwath, by whom he had	Ann = wife of Will Vary of Shap		Barbara maryed to [blank] Petty of Kaber		
	Christopher Crakenthorp of Little Strickland, Gentleman, who tooke to wife =	Jane, daughter of Andrew Hudleston of Hutton John Esq. & had isue	Ann, maryed to John Wharton of Kirkby -thor Esq.	Grace = John Watson of Deepa bridge near Kendal	Barbara = to [1.] Winter of Morland; [2.] idem to [Blank] Hudson	Mary maryed to one Adam Thwait of Russen-dale.	
Andrew Crakenthorpe	1. Richard Crakenthorp of Little Strickland, Gentleman, who maryed	[Blank]					

[I.615]

{Fallowfield of Strickland}

Fallowfields lived sometime at Strickland juxt Melkinthorpe, who tooke their names from Fallowfield ~~in~~ town so called in Northumberland \ not far from Hexham / on this side the Picts Wall near upon the midle thereof. They had bin \ sometime / majors of Appleby, as is usuall with the gentry of best repute in this Country. & their Armes were upon one of the pillers in the Butterhouse att Appleby, with the

[79] Ephraim Pagit, (c.1575-April 1647*) Christianographie, or, a Description of the Sundrie Sorts of Christians in the World* (1635).

[80] Thomas Fletcher, lawyer, of Little Strickland. See Part 1, Ch.5, Barton, I.678.

[81] See Stricklands of Sizergh etc. in Part 2, Ch.7, Heversham, from II.163.

[82] Little Strickland.

[83] Richard Crakanthorpe (bap.1568, d.1624), Church of England clergyman and logician, was born at Little Strickland and baptised at Morland, the second son of John Crakanthorpe and Mabel Cowper. According to Anthony Wood, he was admitted aged sixteen to Queen's College, Oxford, as a 'poor serving child, then a tabardar', in 1583 (Wood, *Ath. Oxon*., 2.361). At Queen's he came under the influence of the puritan John Reynolds, whom he described as 'a walking library of all learning and all knowledge' (*Defensio ecclesia Anglicanae*, 494). He proceeded B.Th. in 1597 and fellow in 1598. Anthony Wood remarked that Crakanthorpe, 'being a noted preacher, and a profound disputant in divinity … was admired by all great men, and held in veneration, especially by the puritanical party, he being himself a zealot among them.' (Wood, *Ath. Oxon*., 2.361). Such was his reputation for preaching that in 1600 he was selected to convert Catholic prisoners in York Castle. Renowned as a teacher, he was unusual in leaving traces of his teaching methods (Queen's College, Oxford, library, MS.196). See A. Cambers, 'Crakanthorpe, Richard'. *ODNB*.

[84] Grace Watson nee Crackenthorp, who married John Watson of Deepa bridge, Kendal. See pedigree, I.265.

late addition of a Bores head in a Canton? The last of this Family was Lucy the daughter of Richard Fallowfield Esq.; who was maryed to John Dalston of Acornebanke Esq. to whose fortunes she brought (all things considered) an accession of 6 or 7000 pounds, & was mother of one or two and twenty children by him, but most of them dyed. Both she and her husband are now living, 1675. And Christopher their eldest son maryed to Mary the sister of Sir George Fletcher & has Isue by her.

[IV.509]

[Charters in the Register of Wetheral Priory relating to Walter Strickland]

{Carta 213 Folio 100}[85]

Omnibus Xti fidelibus ad quorum noticiam presens scriptum. Walterus de Styrkeland miles eternam in D[omi]no Salutem.

Noveritis me promisisse pro me et heredibus meis indem\p/nitatem matricis eccle[siæ] de Moreland in Omnibus, pro Cantaria habenda in Capella mea qua[m] habeo in Curia mea de Stirkelaund, qua[m] cantaria[m] tam R Abbas et conventus S[an]c[t]e Marie Ebor[aci] Patroni ejusdem Ecclesiæ, quam Michael tunc temporis Vicarius ejusdem – mihi concesserunt. Ita quod Capellanus meus, quicumq[ue] pro tempore deserviet illi capellae, jurabit fidelitatem et obedientia[m] vicario matricis Ecclesiæ de Morelaund & Rectoribus ejusdem Eccle[siæ] qui pro tempore fuerint, et illis præsentabitur, et per eos in capella serviet. Ita tamen q[uo]d ego et heredes mei tam capellae, quam capellanis, in omnibus competenter providemus.

Iurabit autem Capellanus meus, in Capella mea ministrans, quod nullum p[ar]ochianorum de Morlaund, nec aliquem extraneum, recipiet ad confessionem, vel ad alia divina officia, vel sacramenta, in prejudicium Matricis Ecclesiæ de Morlaund, et Rectorum ejusdem q[ui]que tempore fuerint.

[IV.510]

Et quod Omnis Oblationis obventiones qualescumque fuerint, et undecumq[ue] provenierint, fideliter et integre sine aliqua detentione Matrici Eccle[siæ] persolvet, et fidelis tam matrici Eccle[siæ] p[ræ]dictae quam Rectoribus ejusdem in Omnibus existet.

Preterea, ego Walterus Juravi, pro me et heredibus meis, quod sicut prædictum est, nullum p[ar]ochianoru[m] vel aliorum p[er]mittam admitti ad divina officia, vel oblationes vel obventiones a capellano meo ibidem detineri.

Preterea juravi pro me et heredibus quod fideliter p[er]solvemus Matrici Ecclesiæ omnes decimas domus meae, tam majores qua[m] minores, tam animalium qua[m] servientiu[m]

Preterea juravi quod ego et uxor mea cum familia mea debitis et consuetis solempnitatibus, sc. die Natali, Purific[ationis], Resurrectionis, et Assumptionis, cum debitis et consuetis oblationibus, et obventionibus, Matrice[m] Ecclesia[m]prædicta[m] visitabimus.

Preterea juravi pro me et heredibus meis quod si ego vel heredes mei, vel cap[e]llanus noster aliquando contra aliquem articulum in hoc scripto insertum, in aliquo excesserimus, & post p[ri]mam admonitionem competenter non satisfecerimus super prædicto excessu, licebit rectoribus vel vicarijs Matricis Eccle[siæ] qui pro tempore fuerint, me, et capellanu[m] meum, per sententiam Excom[m]unicationis sive suspensionis in me et capellanu[m] meu[m], et etia[m] in capella[m] mea[m] ferenda[m], omni appellac[i]one et cavillac[i]one, sive quolibet juris remedio remotis, ad condignam compellere satisfactionem.

Juravi etiam pro me, et pro dictis heredibus meis q[uo]d nunquam aliquid impetrabimus contra matricem Ecclesia[m] quo minus hoc præsens scriptu[m] ratum et stabile permaneat in perpetuum. Q[uo]d si aliquo casu impetratum fuerit, auctoritate præsentis scripti, irritum sit et inane

[IV.511]

Insuper autem, præter predictam Iuratoriam cautionem, per sigillum meum huic scripto appositum me et heredes meos ad omnia suprascripta fideliter observanda in perpetuum obligavi.

Hijs Testibus: Radulpho Priore; Magistro G Archid[iacono]; D[omi]no W. offic[iali] karliolensi; Ric[ard]o Brun T[home] fil[io]; Johannis tunc vicecomitibus Cumberland et Westmarie; {!} Michaele et Waltero vicarijs de Appelb[y] et de Morlaund; Rob[er]to de Castelkairoc; Thom[a] De Louther;

[85] These and other charters relating to Morland in MS.IV.490A-523, were transcribed by Machell [and others] from those in the Register of Wetheral Priory. Machell praised the excellence of the first, see above.

Ada[m] de Slegyle; Steph[an]o et Rob[er]to de Newby; Thoma de Aslachby; Ricard[o] Overstrang'; et alijs multis.[86]

[Machell's Note on the Charter above]

This R. Abbas mentioned in the Beginning of the Carta must either be Rob. in the time of King Richard 1 & King John, his brother; or Richard Abbat in the Time of King Henry I.
The Sheriffs names will help me nothing, for the[y] begin only in the catal[ogue] from the Time of Henry 2. There is one Thomas de Clifford, & Rob. de Brun – Sheriffs of W. Cumberland, Anno 1^0, 2^0 Edward 3 {?} But this will not do. See ergo the confirm. Chart.

[IV.511]

{Cart. 214. Folio 101. 15 or 16 Henry 3.}

The same Sir Walter Stirkeland Knight, gave to the Church of St Mary Yorke and to the Prior & Monks of Wederhal iiii acres of Land in the Territory of Stirkeland, Sc. ii Acres & one Rod, & X. perches (1 Rodum et 2 Preacas) in Alderderiding et V. Rodas from the Towne head towards the West. & they abut upon Leyreberch; & 1. Rod & ½ upon Ulfangeberch, & ½ a Rod under Sheretofts &c. in pure & perpetual Alms &c. with all Commons, Liberties & Easement &c. Sc. so much as may belong unto so much ground excepting only his owne proper wood; & That it may be lawful to him & & his heires to till that Land when it is divided betwene him, the said Walter, & Roger son of Waldeve, non-obstante ista carta. And that the corne growing upon the premises & another ½ acre which Sygerit a widow gave unto them, should be ground multer free at his miln of Stirkeland, with warrantis contra omnes hom[ines].[87]

---

[86] 'To all the faithful in Christ to whom this present writing comes, Walter of Strickland, Knight, send eternal greetings in the Lord. You know that I have promised, on behalf of myself and my heirs, the endorsement of the mother church of Moreland in all matters, for holding a chantry in the chapel which I have in my court in Strickland, which chantry both R. the Abbot and House of Saint Mary of York, patrons of that church, and likewise Michael, at that time its Vicar, granted to me. It shall be in such a way that the chaplain, whoever at that time shall officiate at that chapel, shall swear loyalty and obedience to the Vicar of the mother church of Moreland and the Rectors of that church, whoever they are at the time, and he shall be presented to them and shall officiate through them in the chapel. It shall be in such a way, however, that I and my heirs shall make suitable provision in all matters, for the chapel as for the Chaplains. Moreover, my Chaplain, ministering in my chapel, shall receive none of the parishioners of Morland, nor any outsider, to confession or to other divine offices or sacraments to the detriment of the mother church of Morland and its Rectors, whoever they shall be at the time. Also, that he shall discharge the payments from every offering, of whatever kind they shall be, and wherever they shall come from, faithfully and honestly, without retaining any, to the mother church, and shall be true both to the aforesaid mother church and likewise to its Rectors in all things.
Moreover, I Walter have sworn, on behalf of myself and my heirs, that, just as it has been said earlier, I shall allow none of the parishioners or other people to be admitted to divine offices, nor for payments or offerings to be kept by my Chaplain there. Moreover, I have sworn, on behalf of myself and my heirs, that we shall faithfully pay the mother church all the tithes of my house, both the greater and the lesser, of animals and equally of those who do service. Moreover, I have sworn that I and my wife, along with my family, will visit upon the aforesaid mother church the due and customary offerings and payments. Moreover, I have sworn, on behalf of myself and my heirs, that if I or my heirs or our Chaplain at any time, in any way, transgress against any clause included in this document and, after a first admonition, fail to make proper atonement for the aforesaid transgression, the Rectors or Vicars of the mother church who are incumbent at the time shall have licence to compel me and my Chaplain to deserved penance, through sentence of Excommunication or Suspension against me or my Chaplain and applied even against my chapel, without any appeal or objection or any legal remedy at all. I have sworn also on behalf of myself and my said heirs, that we shall never make any claim against the mother church that would prevent this present document remaining fixed and valid in perpetuity. But if in any event a claim shall be made, by the authority of the present document it should be invalid and vain. Moreover, besides the aforesaid solemn oath, by my seal attached to this document I have bound myself and my heirs to everything written above to be faithfully observed forever.
Witnesses: Radulph the Prior; Master G the Archdeacon; Lord W, officiating at Carlisle; Richard Brun son of Thomas; the Johns who were then sheriffs of Cumberland and Westmorland (!); Michael and Walter, Vicars of Appleby and Morland; Robert of Castle Carrock; Thomas of Lowther; Adam of Slegill; Stephen and Robert of Newby; Thomas of Aslachby; Richard of Overstang; and many others.'

[87] Literally, 'with guarantees against all men' (i.e. with guarantees that no man may gainsay these provisions).

Hiis Testibus: Walter de Stirk. Mil; Radulpho Priore; Magistro [?] Archid; Domino W. offic' Parl; Rico Brun' & Thom fil Johanis vicecomitis de Cumberland et de Wesm'landia; Robo de Casteljairoc fre' suo [Sc Walteri]; Ada[m] filio freo; Walter decano Westm'landie; Michele vicario de Morlaund; Johe filio William; Thoma de Louther; Tho Strancigena; Adaa[m] & Rob filiis suis; Hug; Francis […]; Ada[m] de Slegill; Stepho. et Rob. de Newby.

[IV.513]

{Cart 215 fol. 201b.}
Willielmus de Stirkeland miles doth confirm & grant to God & St Mary & the abbat of St Maryes at Yorke & monks of Wederhal, & of St Beys in Coupland, all the lands that they then had of the gift & concession of Sir Walter de Stirkeland his great grandfather, & all other his ancestors in the village & territory of Great Stikeland* and doth quit clame unto al the said premises, which he \ or his h. / might have by any manner of way. Exceptis o[b]v[entientibus] [?] om[ni]b[u]s et Beneficijs addend[is] &c. – Datum apud Appilby in Westm'land die Iovis IX[a] post festum Sancti Wylfridi Archiepiscopi anno gre[goriano] m°, cc°, nonaginta secundo. {1292. 20. Ed. I.} Et An[n]° R[egni] Regis Eduardi vicesimo. [88]
Hijs Testibus: Michael de Hartclay; Thoma de Derwentwater; Hugone de Multon' militibus; Rob[er]to de Warthwic; Will[iam]o de Wyndsover', Will[iam]o fil[io] ejus; Ada[m] de Haierigton'; et multis alijs.

[Machell's Notes: IV.513]

*{This show it to be Stirkeland Magna.}

[IV.512]

The Descendants of Sir Walter Stirkeland from the foresaid Charters

Walter de Styrkeland Miles =
|
Adam fil Walteri =
|
Robertus de Strikeland Miles =
|
Willus de Stirkeland Miles 1292: 20. Ed. I.

Forsan sorore[m] Roberti. De Castelkairoc[89] inde frat[er] dict[us] int[er] testes

Note also – There then was a Deane of the Denary of Westm'land q? What the Rural Deanes were? See Godolphin.[90]

[6. Thrimby]

[IV.519]

Thrinneby
The name of this Towne, and of the family which tooke their name from it, was anciently written \ Turneby / Thrinneby; Thrineby & Thyrneby: contractly[91] now Thrimby.

{Willielmus de Thrinneby}
|
Johanes de Thrineby = Alicia, forsan e com Salopiæ}[92]

[88] 'With the exception of all payments [?] and benefits to be added etc. Dated at Appelby in Westmorland the ninth day after the feast of Saint Wilfred Archbishop in the Gregorian year 1292 and in the twentieth year of the reign of King Edward.'
[89] 'Perhaps the sister of Robert of Castel Kairoc. Thence the said brother among the witnesses.'
[90] John Godolphin (1617-1678), *Repertorium canonicum, or, an abridgment of the ecclesiastical laws of this realm, consistent with the temporal wherein the most material points relating to such persons and things, as come within the cognizance thereof, are succinctly treated* (1678). Machell studied Godolphin's volumes while staying at Rose Castle. See Part 3, Ch.2, Correspondence, II.367, where Machell writes to the bishop's secretary because, 'I left your Godolphin's 2 volumes in my chamber at Rose: & I fear the Extract which I made out of them (my man neglecting to put up that paper amongst my other things) might be left there also…'
[91] 'Contractly': a form of 'contractively'. *OED*.
[92] 'Perhaps from the county of Shropshire.'

{Fol. 102b. Carta 217.}[93]
II. And John the son of William de Thrinneby, \ granted, / gave & confirmed Deo et Ecclesiae St Mary Ebor[aci]. Et Ecclesiae S[anctae] Trinitatis et Sancti Constantini de Weddhal & monachis &c. A certain parcel \ part / of land of his toft of Thrinneby, conteineing fower pertches & ½ in breath. & vj in Length, with a grange scituated thereupon (tenend[um] in pa[ce] etc. adeo libere integre & quiete sicut aliqua terra liberius et quietius alicui domui religionis poterit dari vel concedi)[94] \ & / free from moulter, with free ingress & egress through his own croft \ when his / after the corne was inded. With general warranty et omnes homines.
Hiis Testibus: Thoma de Musegrave t[un]c vic[ario] Westmer[iae]; Domino Walter[o] Vicari[o] St Michael de Appelby t[un]c Decano; Dom[in]is Joh[ann]e de Morevill & Rob[erto] de Stirkland militibus; Ric[ard]o de Aquila vir[o] de Moreland; Domino Nicho[la] Rectore Ecclesiæ de Cliburne; Hugone Capellano; Gilb[erto] de Slegyle; Rob[ert]o Francissco; et Hug[one] de Tylia et alijs.

[Machell's Notes on the Pedigree and Charter above]
1. N.B. This Robert de Stirkeland, may probably be son of Adam & grandchild of Walter in the foregoing pedigree.
2. N.B. As to the date; if it be so; this was before the 20. Ed. 1. [1291-1292], for William de Stirkeland, great grand to Walter, was living then.
3. As to Tho. de Musgraves being sheriff of Westmorland. I finde one of that name neare 50 years after, Sc. the 16. & 17. Ed. 3. [1342-1344] But there might be another Thomas before. The best way to finde out this difficulty is to have recourse to confirmatio charters {?}[95] Qu? Ideo.[96]

[IV.520]

{Thirneby; cart 220, fol. 104}[97]
There were also lands in Thrimby, belonging to the Priory or Convent of Watton. And a difference ariseing betwene them and the rectors of the church of Morland, concerneing theire deteineing of certaine tithes as well as their lands which were farmed out, as of those which were in their own hands, in prejudice of the privilege granted by the Apostolic See. (1) For the heareing \ & decideing / of which, A. Abbat of Melsa H. Prior of Bridlington, & Mr R. de Longyngton mere delegated (a sum'pontifice) by the popes appointment. In whose presence this composition was in the conclusion amicably made. Sc. – That the foresaid Convent of Watton should pay for the future to the rectors of Morland the tythe of all their Corne within the said parish without any exaction or reteinure as well \ both / of their lands let & \ valett / to be let; or by what title soever held, or to be held for the future by them in the parish of Morland.
Except one carucate of land which they hold in Demaine in Thirneby. For the tythes of which they were to pay to the church of Morland and the rectors, one marc of silver yearly – halfe at Easter & halfe at Martinmas.
And the proctors of the House of Watton (whom they had autherised on this behalf) by the content of the said Convent, & the rectors of the church of Morland by the consent of the Abbat & Convent of St Maryes Yorke, swore each other upon the Evangelists, that this should be firmely observed forever. And the delegates confirmed this agreement by affixing their seales, together with the Seale of the Convent of Watton.
N.B. it is an excellent well pen'd composition, & worthy trans[cription].

[93] An extract from a deed concerning a dispute with the Convent of Watton over land at Thrimby. For other charters from the Register of Wetheral Priory relating to Thrimby, see MS.IV.517-19.
[94] '…thereupon (to be held in peace etc. as freely, fully and peaceably as any land can be freely and peaceably given or granted to any religious house).'
[95] 'Confirmation of the Charters'. The term – Confirmatio Chartarum – is applied specifically to the confirmation of Magna Charta and the Charter of the Forests by Edward I in 1297. *OED*.
[96] 'Query, therefore.'
[97] Another of Machell's deeds, copied from the Register of Wetheral Priory.

Bewley Castle
Beauly Castle might probably, ere I turne to the Bishops, gave name to family [Blank][98] whose arms are Argent a cheveron betweene 3 rookes head erased Sable beaked Gules. Lib. Arm. Penes J.T. p.126.[99]

[IV.521]

[7. Meburn Regis]

Mem[orandum] quae finalis Concordia cora[m] Judicibus com[m]uniter dicitur finis factus Carta Joh[ann]is de Ravensby de quadam placea in Meaburn Regis ubi Grangia sita est.[100]

{Fol. 110 b.; Cart. 237}[101]
Wherein John, the son of Walter de Ravensby, caritatis intuitu et pro salute animarum antecessorum et successorum suorum) gave, granted & confirmed, in pura[m] &c. to God & the Abbot of St Maryes Yorke, & the moncs of St Trinity & St Constantine of Wederhal – one place (unam placeam) in the end of his croft which he held of the Bishop of Karliol in Meburn Regis (versus aquilonem de longitudine quinquies viginti et 12 pedum. Ab aquilone v[er]sus austrum infra fossatas cum fossatis ad utrumque capud, {!} Et de Latudine ad Capud versus aquilonem quinquaginta duorum pedum; et de latitudine versus austrum septuaginta duorum pedum infra fossatas cum fossatis ex utraque parte).[102] Free from al secular service & exaction in puer & perpetual almes forever. And for that the said Abbat of St Mary Yorke and the moncs of Wederal had received him & the souls of his ancestor & his successors into their prayers. He & his heires did therefore warrant the said pece of land with all the libertyes & easements contra omnes Gentes in perpetuum &c. Hiis Testibus {Dominis Roberto de Ravenswithe, Tho. Derwentwater, militibus; Johe de Helton; Robo de Slegille; Allno le Butifer; Waltero de Boulton, Hugone de Colleby et alijs.}

[III.267]

[8. ad Bolton]

[Wybergh of Bolton Pedigree]

Geffray Wyber, a second brother of the Wybers of Clifton, bought that ancient freehold which is called Bolton Hall, with other tenements and som tenants there; & maryed	=	Briget, the onely childe of Robert Teasdale of Dufton & Sowerby, who is said to have given her her weight in silver nomine dotis.[103]
{vixit circit? 70 annores}[104] Thomas Wyber of Bolton, temp. C. I; sold it to his fathers sister, Mrs Dor[othy] Halton, relict of Mr Miles Halton of Graystock who was steward there to the [blank] and tooke to wife one	=	Katherine Wilson, daughter of [blank] By whom he had [blank]
Mr Geffray Wyber, an attorney at law of [blank] in London, who plac'd himself there and maryed	=	Isabel, one of the daughters of Mr [Blank] Patrickson of [Blank] in the county of Cumberland.

[98] Family of Bewley.
[99] 'Book of Arms at the house of J.T., p.126.' See MS.IV.497, where Machell inferred that Bewley Castle was in Appleby parish. This had been an object of disputation but by 1777 it was agreed that Bewley Castle should be part of Morland. *N&BI*, 456.
[100] 'Memorandum of the final concord [made] before the judges which is generally agreed [to be] the boundary, in a deed of John of Ravensby concerning a certain place in Meaburn Regis where the Grange is situated.'
[101] From Machell's deed collection, copied from the Register of Wetheral Priory.
[102] 'For the sake of charity and for the salvation of the souls of his ancestors and his successors gave etc. ... [a place with measurements of] five times twenty and twelve feet towards the north; from north to south within the ditches, including the ditches at each end; and in breadth to the northward end fifty-two feet; and in breadth southward seventy-two feet within the ditches including the ditches on each side.'
[103] 'By way of a dowry.'
[104] 'He lived about 70 years.'

[I.615]

Name of Bolton:
Arnold de Bolton
William son of Arnold de B[olton]
Testis cum Tho. de Hellebeck & Tho. de Museg. Vicecom s.d. circa 36. Henry 3. [1251-1252]. tunc enim \ M. / vicecomes.[105]

[I. 595]

Bolton Chapel in Westm'land[106]
Porch: lef[t] \ side / a man with a mell right h[and]; an Ax left.[107]
Back doere: 2 Horsemen, one with a Colour,[108] combating, & an Inscription.[109]
E. window: 2 Coates:
1. Argent 3 Bars Gules; on a canton of the 2 a cnq[110] of the 1t.[111]
2. Argent a Br.[112] Ingraled \ & / charged with an half moon of the first; in Chief an escalop of the 2nd.[113]
In the church y[ard] [an effigy of] a woman at length.[114]

[I.612]

Bolton Hall
Bolton Hall is now possesed by one Halton. I meat with one bishop of that name amo[n]sgst \ Blenkinsops writeing (de Ellergill), \ and finde Thomas de Halton a witness to a deed / 34. Edward 3. [1360-1361], but whether he be any thing related to or descended from either I know not.

[I.615]

Bolton Ouse Fauld. See Good: *Antiq*. Jew in fine Cap. 4 Liberi 5 cedere de statu ad fam. Mach[ell].[115]

---

[105] 'A witness with Thomas de Hellebeck and Thomas de Musgrave, sheriff, undated, c.36 Henry III. For there was then a Musgrave sheriff.' Machell does not name a Musgrave in his list of sheriffs in the reign of Henry III, identifying only Veteripontes and Cliffords: see the Catalogue of Sheriffs in Part 1, Machell's Preface, from VI.593.

[106] Two deeds (1326) relating to Brampton have been recorded on MS.IV.497-501. Sadly, Machell wrote at the end of the second deed, 'Time & ill-usage has defac'd the rest, being only 2 lines, and in halfe at best.'

[107] In 1926, this figure was described as follows: 'The left one bears a figure, with a hammer in one hand and an axe in the other; while the right one has a strange figure with wings, perhaps an angel.' See T.A. Carmichael, 'Bolton Church', *CW2*, 27 (1927), 188-94, at 190.

[108] A flag.

[109] Described by Carmichael as, 'On the north side of the church, over what was a Norman doorway (now a window), is a stone slab built into the wall, commemorating a tournament. The age of this stone is told by the curious kite-shaped shields and lances which the knights carry. They were peculiar to the time of Henry II (1154-1189). The slab is of red sandstone, 26 by 162 inches, roughly chiselled but deeply cut, having a frame in high relief round the picture. Adjoining this slab is another (on the right), apparently the companion to it, built into the wall, measuring 21 by 132 inches and bearing an inscription in uncial letters, hitherto unexplained.' Carmichael, 'Bolton Church', 189.

[110] Cinquefoil.

[111] For a description of this particular coat of arms see *CFH*, 'Derwentwater', 90.

[112] Abbreviated word. Possibly 'bordure'.

[113] Carmichael gives the history of one of the windows, as follows, 'The little round-headed window, over the priest's door, contains some ancient glass, representing a shield (turned upside down) with the arms of Radcliff (Ratcliff) and Derwentwater. The Derwentwaters, from the time of King John (1199-1216), held the manor of Bolton, while the ancestors of Sir John de Derwentwater (about 1326) founded the chantry in this church; hence the presence of the arms aforesaid. The Ratcliffs succeeded the Derwentwaters as lords of the manor of Bolton.' Carmichael, 'Bolton Church', 192.

[114] This was described in 1926 as, 'Upright against the wall on … the south side of the church is placed the stone effigy of a lady with hands clasped on the breast; the details of the dress seem to point to the time of Edward III (1327-1377). The pillowstone indicates that the original position was horizontal, not vertical, and very probably rested in the chancel on a raised altar-tomb.' Carmichael, 'Bolton Church', 189-90.

[115] Thomas Good (1609/10-1678), Church of England clergyman and Master of Balliol, Oxford, published only one volume, *Firmianus and Dubitantius; certain dialogues concerning Atheism, Infidelity, Popery, and other Heresies and Schismes that trouble the peace of the Church and are destructive of primitive piety* (1674): J. Jones, 'Good, Thomas (1609/10-1678)'. *ODNB*. Why Machell might have associated Thomas Good's work on heresy with the inhabitants of Bolton Ouse Fauld is worthy of further study.

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 18]

[Parish of Musgrave]

[III.271]

This parish is bounded from the North to the E. with \ ~~a part~~ / Rumakirk parish in Yorkshire* \ and from E. to South[1] with the parish of Brough; from S. to West with part of Kirkby [Stephen] & part \ of Crosby [Garrett]; / from West to N. with Warcop parish.

[III.282]

Musgrave
S.E. from Appelby 5m.
S.W. from Brough 1m.
N. a Kirkby 2m.
N. a Kendal 16m.
N. ab Orton 10m.

[III.279][2]

{Great Musgrave}[3]
Great Musgrave lyeth East from Little Musgrave on the other side of the River Eden, being distant from it about ½ a quarter of a mile, & the lordships ar joined \ together / by a wooden[4] bridge near to the church, which standeth humbly at the skirt of an hill wheron the towne is built.[5] It is slated over & has small bells which hang in a tympanum. On the North side of it is an old Hall house, which belongs to one Spencer.

[I.622]

[Musgrave Church and Parish]

[To] Musgrave church belongs Musgrave Great, Flithome, [Lang]rig.

[III.273]

The church is a little one, having 2 little bells hanging in a timpanum; the body being in length 12 yards, & the quire 8, & both of a bredth. Sc. about 4 yards and an halfe. On the south side of the body of the church is a fair quier, having an arched doer to enter into it, & another arch, which gives light into the church, under which, I suppose, som ancient monument hath formerly layde \ stood. /

[III.279]

{Parsonage}
The parsonage house stands E. thereof about 30 yards distant,[6] there being but a passage from the Town to the bridge which divides the church yard from the Parsonage fold. It is a strong house, & pleasantly scituate, having curious walkes (~~near it~~) on the other side Eden, & woods on this.

[Hall Crofts 1.][7]
And the like advantage of situation has another great house on the N. side & nearer the church, which belongs to one Spencer. It is the farest house in the Towne, & I am apt to thinke it has formerly bin the Hall sold of with other lands in freehold or \ otherwise / passd of in tenancy (as ~~other~~ \ diverse / lands were at Brough & Winton on the like occasion) upon the Musgraves removeing to Hartley. For tho there be a place near the miln which is called Hall Crofts, where Sir Christopher now is building an house & where I once was of opinion that the Hall might have stood, I am now rather inducd to believe that the said crofts have taken their name from one Hall, a tenant, of whom som part of them were purchased, than from their having belong'd to the Hall or manner house of ancient demaine.

---

[1] MS: ' \ and ~~part of Trough Warcop~~ / from E. to South ...'
[2] This page reworks I.163 margin, III.271 and III.273.
[3] Little Musgrave lies in Crosby Garrett parish: see III.163-64.
[4] MS; 'woned.'
[5] MS: '~~This village is scituate on the top of an hill att the skirt of~~ which standeth ~~the church~~ \ humbly / at the skirt of an hill wheron the towne is built.'
[6] A note on MS.III.272 offers, '{The parsonage house 40 yards W. ab Ecclesia: a good house on the banke of Eden, & pleasantly situated.}' Note the slight difference in distance from the church in these two passages.
[7] The texts, Hall Crofts 1. and 2., offer different narratives relating to Hall Crofts.

[III.273]

[Hall Crofts 2.]
[The arched door at the church] is now used in common for the parishoners, but seemeth formerly, when there was a manner house here, to have belongd to the Lord of the Manner, which is thought to have stood a[t] a place near to the milne called Hall Crofts, wher Sir Christopher Musgrave is now building an house upon 4 tenements purchased by his father; but there being one Hall, the owner of som at least of those crofts makes the thing dubiouse. Yet it might be so still, for the first of that family might take his name, John de Auly,[8] from he being possesd of the Hall in tenency.

[III.273]

[Church: Quire]
In the quier is a through of \ blewish / gray marble, with the figure of a shaven monke grav'd in brass, in his robes & coape, holding up his hands in a praying posture, & this Inscription over his brest betwixt the 2 shoulders. REPO &c. –i.e. Reposita ē ħ spes. Mea in sinu meo*.[9] And in 4 roundells, one at each corner, the upper part of an angel, with this label: IHU i.e. Jesu Mercy. & on the left side, Mercy Jesu. And in brass under his feet, this Inscription: ORATE &c. id est Orate pro anima m[agist]ri Thomæ Oudo quondam re[c]tor[is] [blank] domi[norum] epi[scopi] et Archdiaconi Carl[iolensis] officialis qui obijt XXII […].[10]

[Machell's Notes: III.273]

*{In the register when he was rector.}

[III.272]

This Oudo, it seems sometimes rector here, was official, both to the bishop of the Diocess & to the Arch-Deacon. By which it appears the Arch-Deacon then had som jurisdiction, however it came to be lost afterwards; for An Official to a Bishop is a Bishops Commissary, which differs from a Chancellour who hat[h] a General Jurisdiction in being restrained to som certaine places & som certaine causes according to the Bishops limitation; whence the law calls them officiales forraneos; quasi astricti cuidem foro Diocesios Vicariatim,[11] they being to exercise their authority in such remote places from the Bishops consistory, as that his Chancellour can not without too great a prejudice call his subjects to it. Or in such places as are the Bishops Peculiars, & exempt from the Archdeacons jurisdiction*.

[Machell's Notes: III.272]

*{Godolph[in] *Reper[torium],* Cap.10, §1.;[12] out of Ridleys VI, W. Part 2, Cap.2, p.3} {a. Gloss[ary] in Chem. de Rescript.}[13]
{The canon \ canon 127 / sayes no person may be an Official or Commissary under the age of 26. He may be a Dr or Batchelor of Divinity (or by the 21. Henry 8. [1529-30], a Doctor of the Civil Law) or at the least a Master of Arts or Batchelor of Law.}

[III.273]

[Church Windows]
In the East window \ light / a man in armour with a Brown circot & sword hanging before: hilt Or; handl Argent; belt & scabberd Blew; his helmet round like a cap, beset with a bordure Sable, studed with cross crosletts Or; on his right hand an hawke; On his left a shield 3 inch½: Argent, Or. [14]
{In the 3rd light, Or, between 4 Besants {?} Sable charged with 4 cross crosslets, & plane cross Argent.}

---

[8] Aula = hall.
[9] 'reposita est haec spes mea in sinu meo': 'my hope reposes in my breast', (*AVB*), Job, Ch.19, v.26-27.
[10] 'Pray for the soul of Master Thomas Oudo, once rector … officer of the Bishop and Archdeacon of Carlisle, who died on 22 [...]' See *N&B1*, 588.
[11] 'Officials from outside; as if restricted to a certain sphere of jurisdiction, deputising for Diocesan.'
[12] John Godolphin (1617-78), *Repertorium canonicum, or, an abridgment of the ecclesiastical laws of this realm, consistent with the temporal wherein the most material points relating to such persons and things, as come within the cognizance thereof, are succinctly treated* (1678); for Machell's reliance on Godolphin, see Part 1, Ch.17, Morland, IV.512; see also Part 3, Ch.2, Correspondence, II.367.
[13] Sir Thomas Ridley, *A View of the Civile and Ecclesiastical Law* (London, 1607). 'Rescript': a copy; rewrite. *OED*. 'Chem' is followed by a blot.
[14] There follow 2 sketches of coats of arms, the first labelled, '3 inch½', the second, 'in the third light'.



Figure 1.18.1. Musgrave Church. East Window Images. III.273.

[III.275]

In the S. window next the body of the church in the E. angle [are the following shields][15]



Figure 1.18.2. Musgrave Church. South Window Images. III.275.

1. Argent a fess Gules, charged with 3 cushion Ermin tassled Or.
2. Gules – 6 annulets Or. Musgraves. In the midle space between the 2 lights.
3. In the top of the 2nd light. Argent, a cross Gules, charged with [blank] O Azure.

[III.277]

[Permission for the alteration of the Tithe Barn, Musgrave Rectory]

'Whereas the Right Reverend Father in God Thomas by divine permission Lord Bishop of Carlisle hath authorised and appointed me Thomas Machell Rector of Kirkby Thore in the County of Westm'land, to view the defects of a certaine Tithe-Barne at the rectory of Musgrave in the said county, & grant such order for altering and rebuilding the same as to me that seem meet: I, having viewed and considered the same, do hereby permit the Reverend Mr Christopher Thorneton, Rector thereof, to pull down & rebuild the Tythe-barne aforesaid;[16] provided he make it 22 yards long betwixt the gabels, and mount the side-walls 10 quarters high above the floore on the inside thereof, & under the sparrs which are fixed to the principals for supporting the Ealing.[17]

Given under my hand & seal this 16th March at Musgrave aforesaid, in the year of Our Lord 1688/9.

Thomas Machell.'[18]

{A True Copy.}

[Machell's Tithe-Barn Notes: III.276]

An estimate of the contents of the Barn

6 quarters high, 5 yards broad.

34 – to XX 11.[19]

Deduct 12 yards.

Once over 18 square, so XII over

about II score yards & 6 score.

In all 17 score.

Ad […][20] High I yard.

Which is over – 5 yard.

---

[15] MS. 'In the S. window next the body of the church in the E. angle ~~oppos~~.'

[16] Christopher Thornton, son of John, gent., of Dent; attended Sedbergh School; sizar (aged 19) at Magdalene, Cambridge, from 1672; B.A. 1675-6; M.A. 1679. Rector of Great Musgrave, 1684-1720. Buried there 5. Feb. 1719-20. CCED.

[17] An ealing or iling was a dubbing, or lean-to, of a barn. See an investigation into the Tudor meaning of the word in *Notes and Queries, Vol. 11*, Series VIII (12 July, 1913), 29.

[18] Here Machell has sketched a circle to mark the place of the seal in the original document.

[19] Eleven score.

[20] Here follows an unclear word.

22[21]
x5. Sc. 10.

[III.163][22]

[Hall Garth Demesne]
At Great Musgrave there is a place called Hall Garth which is a demesne land.

Per Acre	Arable	A Noble
	Pasture	
	Medow	15 or 20s.

A days mowing an Acre & plow by computation

Musgrave Parish. The Perambulation.

[III.271]

Begining ~~at Lowgil beck foot where it enters Eden~~ at Eden Clint, 1 mile N.W. from the church; thence \ N. / from the side of the River Eden up the west dike of Eden Flat, till you com at the houses on Henvever-Hill, which are in this parish.
{Burtergill}

Thence N. E. by dikes & merestones throw Low-gil beck & the High Street, \ at the E. end of Brough hill in the parish of Warcop, / til you com at Burtergil Houses \ which are in / Warcop parish \ also. / Thence N. (up Musgrave peat lonen) to Midle-Fell Thorne; thence N. (in a streight line) till you come at \ to an hurrock of stones called / Rëaven St\e/anes; thence E. lineally to \ the N. end of / Green Turpluck? {N.~~ end~~ of Warcop ~~Green Turpluck spring~~}*

{To Hare-Crag Fauld: a sheep fold}
Thence N.E. in a direct line to Hare-Crag-Fauld, which is a sheepfold call'd by that name. Thence N.E. in a streight line to Crevy Pot; thence N.E. in a direct line to the Read Seal in Force beck \ where Warcop ends & Rumakirk begins. / Thence S. by a streight line to the top of Heürds; thence lineally towards the S. till you com at Tarne-House. Thence S. by a direct line to the Cloven Stean on the north side \ of / Hard-Ro\a/ds. Thence S. up the said Road, to \ an hurrock of stones on / Johnson-Skar. Thence lineally to \ an hurrock &c. / the top of Browne-bur; thence S. in a direct line to an hurrock of stones on Ke\a/y-Skar top.

[III.272]

Thence S. by a streight line to Netle Pot-Scroggs,[23] where Lowgil beck springs. Thence S. downe Low-gil beck Sike, alias Woodend Sike, to \ High / Low-gil beck Yeat; thence S.W. down Lowgill beck to Lowgill Ing Dike; ~~Thorny Mire Dike~~; Thence S. down the said dike to Parcy (wood) brigg. Thence S. down Thorney-mire Dike to Swindal beck. Thence south by hedges & certaine well known land-marks divideing the fields till you com [to] Below-beck near the S.E. corner of Henin wood.[24] Thence W. down the said beck to the River Eden. Thence N. down ~~Eden~~ the said river by the church & parsonage till you com at the Clint where wee began†.
Per Ed. Bousfield & Mr Christopher Thornton.

[Machell's Notes: III.271 and III.276]

*? {Warcop?}
[III.276]
Musgrave parish: Thomas Wallot, bounder.[25]

[21] 22 yards long between the gables. Therefore, 1 chain long.
[22] Also on this page of the MS: 'Frances Scot of Sebram known to Mr Thomas Denton, son of Richard \ Denton of Greenfoot / and Ann Mason in Cumberland descended of [Denton of] Warnal.' '{Richard Granger testamento Denton.}'
[23] Potte: a pit or hole, see Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 62. Scroggs: stunted bushes, brushwood or underwood. *OED*.
[24] Haining Wood.
[25] This unclear phrase appears in the margin at right angles to the body text and extremely close to the binding.

[III.280]

[Families and Tenants]

Fam[ilies] [Blank]; Freehold [Blank]
The rest are Arbitrary, under Sir Christopher Musgrave; all save one, who holds of & payes to the Rectory – a Noble [in] rent, with an arbitrary fine upon the alienation or upon the death of the parson or tenant*.

[Machell's Notes: III.280, 281, 282]

*{Infor. Mr Thorneton, who had 30s fine of the present tenant, tho he offered him at first but 1d.}
[III.281]
See of Musgrave in Brough parish.
[III.282][26]
A Cap[ut] of; q[uery] er[g]o an Hall. X.[27]

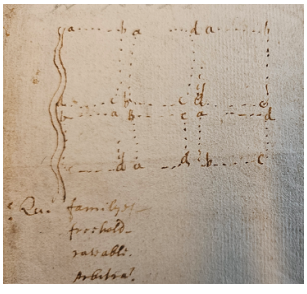


Figure 1.18.3. Sketch containing six square plots: 3 above 3, each labelled a, b, c, d. III.282.

? Query: familyes, freehold, rateable, arbitrary? Mos: how far of.
! If \ this family / the family of Musgrave had given name to the villages & not the villages to them – their ancestor would have bin writ Le Musgrave, no[t] de Musgrave. So of Lowther, Wharton and al names taken from places after anciently writ with de prefixd to them. Query if [the name comes] from a sort of men planted here who first taught the countrey the use of peates & graveing of mosses.[28]

[Birds]

[III.163]

In great Musgrave parish, in the Healin wood, great store of herrinsues build.[29]

[III.281]

Hawkes & Ospreys in Great Musgrave.

[26] This page also contains an unexplained diagram of squares containing the letters a, b, c and d: one on each corner of each square, see *Fig. 1.18.3.*
[27] 'Head of, query, therefore a Hall.' This is followed by a cross to suggest that the unnamed building could not be designated as a hall. Unlike the rest of the page, the passage is written roughly in pencil, and may even not belong to the series of notes.
[28] Graving: to dig, form by digging; now rare except in dialect, e.g. to grave peat(s), to grave turf. *OED.*
[29] Herrinsues: herons.

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 19]

[Parish of Ormside]

[I.634][1]

Ormside P[arish]

To Ormside belongs Ormside great, Ormside little.
Tis Anciently writ Ormsheved and gave name to a family, Sc. Hugh de Ormesheved test. apud Cart. Berwyse penes Mr Blenkinsop, 17. Edward 3. [1343-1344].[2]

[III.291]

[Bounder of] Ormside Parish Feb. 28. 1688/9. Thos.[3]
It is bounded on the N. with St Lawrence and part of St Michaels, Appelby; on the E. with Warcop parish; on the S. with part of Warcop & Ashby parish; & on the west with St Lawrence, Appelby, the procession or perambulation being as followeth:

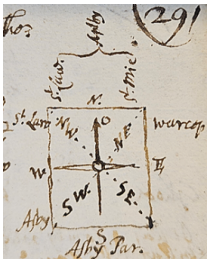


Figure 1.19.1. Ormside Parish Bounder. III.291.

1. \ They / begin at Stainmore Sike Foote, where it runns into Eden. Thence Eastward (up the River Eden) to Cowpland Beck foote, where Bondgate parish ends & Warcop begineth.[4] Thence agane up Eden S.E. to a woody banke calld Thrucklebanke, at the dike foote. Thence S. (up the said dike, takeing in Thrucklebanke) to an house call'd Rotmorehead. Thence S.W. (up an old dike-stead) to Horngil bottom dike {Biggabanke}. Thence S.W. (up Horngil dike) to Slikarstack House, \ where Warcop parish ends & Ashby begins. / Thence W. (by the outside of Crawhill hedge) till you com at Watergil-sike. Thence W. (up the outside of Breken-foot wall, which belongs to Breeks \ in this parish /) till you com to Goodal-hill. Thence westward by an hedge till you com at Asby-Mill. Then N.W. down Ashby-beck, till you com at Rutter-mill \ where Asby parish [ends] & Appleby coms in. / Thence agane N.W. til you com at Rutter wall Neük. Thence N. up Rutter-wall, till you com at Bread-mer-sike; thence N. down the said sike till you come at Stanemore-gill-head. Thence N. downe the outside of Stanemoregill hedge till you com at \ to a yeat c~~alld~~ / Luckenflat Newke. Thence N. downe Stanemoregill Sike aliis Gilbeck to the sike foot where it runns into Eden & where you began. {[Informant] Thomas Yair.}

{Division}
In this parish there are 2 Lordships. Sc. Great Ormside & Little Ormside, which are both but one Constablewick; Great Ormside pleasantly scit\u/ated on the S. side of the River Eden, & having a current of water which \ springs at the head / [and] runns downe the towne, \ being / very \ commodious, / beneficial to all the inhabitants.

---

[1] Also numbered p.32; it contains only the heading 'Ormside'.
[2] 'Witness to a deed of Berewyse at Mr Blenkinsop's. 17. Edward III.'
[3] Thomas Yair, who gave Machell the bounder information.
[4] MS: '{~~To Thrucklebanke~~}1. \ They / begin at Stainmore Sike Foote, where it runns into Eden. Thence Eastward (up the River Eden) to~~o woody banke call'd Trucklebanke~~ Cowpland Beck foote, where Bondgate parish ends & Warcop begineth.'

[I.634]

[I. Great Ormside]

[The Church]
N.W from Ap[pleby] 1 mile.

[III.291]

The church stands opposite to the Hall on the top of a mount, being a ve\ne/rable structure for

[III.292]

its sea\m/ing antiquity, yet humble & low.

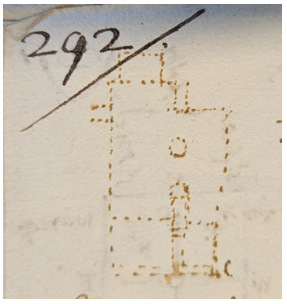


Figure 1.19.2. Sketch plan of Ormside Church. III.292.

It has ~~but 2~~ a tower steeple of the lowest size, with 2 little bells. It is in length 9½ & in breadth 5½, the quire long 10½, broad 6. The steeple has bin added to the body of the church but long agoe, for it seems as ancient as the church.[5] {It has 1 comly round pillar with 2 round arches which \ tho low yet / looke very strong, & beautiful enough, but short of Crosby.[6] Behinde this is placd Hilton Porch, which they call so from the Lord of the manner, where lyes the body of Sir Christopher Picker[ing] under a through with this inscription on a label of brass.

[I.646B]



Figure 1.19.3. Brass at Ormside Church. Sir Christopher Pickering. I.646B.

[5] Machell's hunch was correct. The nave and chancel were erected in the late 11th century; the defensive west tower was built c.1200, although the bell-cote predates the tower. See Hyde & Pevsner, 557-58.
[6] Crosby Garrett.

[I.648]

In the first and Lesser Brass is this inscription:

Lo Here Interr'd lyes underneath this stone
True wisdom, ver[t]ue, Justice, al in one

Sir Christopher Pickering Knight, who after he had / been 5 times High-Sherif of Cumberland / dyed 14 of January Anno Domini 1620 aetatis suae 76.[7]

In the second and larger Brass, which was added since upon the Death of Mr Ciprian Hilton, this:

Interr'd within this could urn here lyes
This Countryes loss, but heavens Eternal prise:
Cyprian Hilton of Ormside for renowned fame
He may be Justly stiled the glory of his name
Pious, Prudent, Charitable and Just
And trewly valiant too. Now Here
Hee's clad in dust.
Deceased December 22
In the year of[8]

[III.392]

There hath bin formerly a north wing or Ile, but tis now contracted to a single quier behinde one arch. On the N. side the quier is a vestery with a whispering hole.

[I.634]

N[orth] a whispering place out of the vestery into the chancel; for confession as I suppose.[9]
A strong but Low Steple with flat Batlements. Bells in it. Built as an addition to the Church but very ancient.

[III.292]

[Ormside Hall]
The Hall is a tower house & good old building with a fine gardine on the back side of it, an a well that springs out under the kitchen, of excellent water, both \ for / taist & clearness. It is the manner house of this Lordship, and now belongeth to Ciprian Hilton of Ormside Esquire.

[I.634]

The Hall repared & much Bett[ered] by Mr Cyprian Hilton, circ. Anno 16~~85~~. 86-87, 88.

[III.292]

[The Height]
There is in this town, beside the Hall & parsonage house, about 20 families, and an hamlet called The Height, so nam'd for the high scit\u/ation of it), ~~conteineing 4 more~~ about a mile of[f], directly southward, conteineing 4 houses. \ W[h]ere excellent hewing & walling & flaggs stones are easily got, so[me] of which are as white as chalke. /

[7] 'At the age of 76.' Sir Christopher Pickering was High Sheriff of Cumberland on four occasions (1590, 1601, 1607, 1611), see *CFH*, 262. He became MP for Cumberland in 1597, deputy warden of the west march in 1601 and a commissioner for the borders in 1608. See 'Pickering, Christopher 1556-1621.' *History of Parliament* Online. His natural daughter, Frances, married as her second husband, Cyprian Hilton: see III.392.

[8] The rest is obscured by the binding but the monument itself reads, 'in the year of our Lord, 1652.' A later inscription in this church is to Cyprian Hilton, died 27 December 1693, but as Machell does not mention it, he probably visited the church prior to this date. For these inscriptions see Edward Bellasis, *Westmorland Church Notes: being the heraldry, epitaphs, and other inscriptions in the thirty-two ancient parish churches and churchyards of that county*, 2 (Kendal, 1888) 224; see also *N&BI*, 516.

[9] A hole through which one whispers, as into the Roman Catholic confessional; see the 'A prospect of the ruins of Godstowe Abbey', in John Stevens, *The History of the Ancient Abbeys, Monasteries, Hospitals, Cathedral and Collegiate Churches; being two additional volumes to Sir William Dugdale's Monasticon Anglicanum, Vol. I* (London, 1722), facing 532.

[Breekes][10]
And a single hall-house, which is calld Breekes, about a ¼ of a mile farther south: a freehold estate, formerly sold of the Demane by Thomas Barton Esq. to his brother, William who (by Ann \ his wife / the daughter of Mr Ubanke of Appelby) had Isue Robert, who maryed Ann Barton, the daughter of Mr Barton of Kirkby Hill in the county of Yorke and had Isue Robert, s. prole,[11] & Thomas, an attorney now living; besides 2 daughters. Robert the father sold it to Mr John Patteson, an attorney of Penrith,[12] the now owner of it \ who has almost finished. /

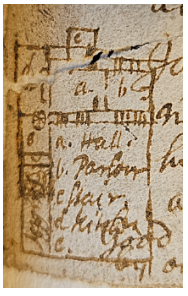


Figure 1.19.4. Margin sketch plan of Breeks or Breaks Hall. III.293A.

[III.293A]

[Breaks Hall]
Breakes[13] is a fair house now almost finished. Built by John Patteson, an attorney at law. 3 stories high with 5 windows or appertures. \ Each course / in the front. Good white stone, & flaggs hard by on the Heights.

{Freeholds}
Besides him,[14] there are 8 or nine freeholds, having bought themselves free, and som others that are under value. The rest are arbitrary, & all answer court at the manner house.

{Descent}
Great Ormside formerly belongd to one Sir Christopher (~~who was 5 times High sheriff of Cumberland~~) \ who bought it [from] Thomas Barton Esq. obijt 14 January 1620? ~~who never marryed~~. And never marrying, bestowed it on Frances his natural daughter married [to] Mr John Dudley of Dufton, who had a demane there and came of Dudleys of Yeanwath hall; who dyed without \ any / Isue by her; who remarried to Ciprian Hilton of Burton & Hilton Esq. {circa 70 years since. Who had Isue Christopher, who maryed Mistress Barbara Brathwaite of Warcop & had Isue Ciprian, now lord thereof.}

[III.293B]

[Antiquities found at Ormside]
Found on Sunday 2 of November 1689, behinde Ormside church in the River Eden on the side next the church. Drawn Dec. 5, 1689.

[10] Breaks Hall.
[11] 'Sine prole': without issue.
[12] John Patteson died in 1705. *CFH*, 255.
[13] Brec, Brekis, Breakes: land broken up for cultivation. See Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 89.
[14] John Patteson.



Figure 1.19.5. Finds from the River Eden at Ormside. III.293.

[Key]
a. A thuribulum or censer, as I gather from the form of it and the 3 loopehols. It has bin guilded and is in height 3 inches; in diameter more than 5. Ergo in circumference [blank]. It is of brass.
b. An ~~plane~~ euare of plane brass, about 7 inch high, wide at the mouth near 3 inches, the belly in circumference 13.
c. A brazen morter, high 3 inch & ½, the diameter at top 4 inch & ½; at the bottom, 3 inch.
d. A pewter bason, in depth 3 inch, in diameter 8 and a quarter; at the brim, one.
f. A cullender of the like size.
e. A small pewter florepot, in height 6 inches & the belly in circumference 10, the mouth in diameter 2 inch & ½. \ Of which there were 2. /
There were also a case of brazen weights & 2;[15] 2 brazen candlesticks: a less and greater; 2 pewter candlesticks: a less & a greater; 2 pewter flaggons*: a less & greater; several plates of pewter†; a small lead [vessel] for boyleing meat, which weighed 2 stone & 10 lb.

[Machell's Notes: III.293B]
*On the great flaggon handle: F.D. for Frances Dudley who was married to Ciprian Hilton.
†Upon a platter S. \ H. / F.; on another, S^{t}. M.
{5 li.
100 boards 7 yards long, 6 broad, 3 high
6 li
From Brough far to much}

[III.293]

II. Little Ormside

The other Lordship is Little Ormside {S.E. ab Ecclesia ½ mile} where there is neither Hall nor demaine. It stands on the west side of Horngill-beck, which springs in little Ashby, and consists of about 9 or ten families, VI of which are freeholds votable.[16] The rest are arbitrary & som of them have som parcells of freehold. They answer court at Gathorn Hall, their Lord being Allan Bellingham Esq. who[se] chief seat is Leavins. The freehold tenants purchased their freedom from one of the Salkelds, who also had 2 tenents ~~whom~~ under him in Great Ormside ~~Lordship~~ \ Town, / whom he also sold free. And therefore I guess that Little Ormside did belong to the Salkelds ere the Bellinghams had it.

[Notes on Things Remarkable in Nature and in Art]

In Great Ormside
Freestone white quarrye S.W. from the church ½ a mile towards Ashby. \ Query: if not that on The Heights / out of which they thinke Apleby Castle was built – The read quarry a little above it.
Has no waife & stray.
In the Eastward, 1 demaine.
A fine cross in the N. end.

[15] Transcribed as written.
[16] Having the right to vote. *OED*. After finding that elections increasingly involved voters of 'low estate', a statute of 1429 decreed that only freemen who owned freehold land (that is, not leased from the land's owner) worth 40 shillings had the vote. See 'the 40-shilling franchise' in https://www.parliament.uk.

Lile Ormside
Truglebanke[17] Closes, sparrow hawkes; wild ducks in Hobloc Close near the beginning of the Bounder.

{In Art}
A good house at Breekes.
{ad Warcop, Mr Ciprian Hilton?}The story of William Wharton, now of Mallerstang, led from Piper † in Warcop parish to Cautley Spout in Russendale on the edge of Yorkeshire near the houses calld Cautleythwaite: Fell End Angle.
{ad Bondgate?} Query the story Anthony Stephenson of Hilton Dikes, concerneing a man led out of Bishop[ric] thither by an apparition in the shape of a bleu dog? [18]
Query of John Hill: of Crakenthorps walke.

[17] Trickle Banks.
[18] Machell wondered whether to place the first story in Part 1, Ch.23, Warcop, and the other in the section on Bondgate in Part 1, Ch.1, Appleby Town and Parishes.

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 20]

[Parish of Orton]

[III.295]

This parish takes its name from Orton, the principle place where the church standeth. It is a vicaridge in the diocess of Karleol and in the ~~west~~ \ E. / Ward of the ancient Barony or Bottom of Westmorland. {Church 6 miles S. from Appleby & 10 N.\E./ from Kendal.}

[Bounder]

{N[orth]}
It is bounded on the N. with Crosby Ravenswith and Asby parishes. Beginning at Bousfield How (an hill by Penrith road which leads from Kendal);[1] thence, by a streight line Eastwards to Prid-hurrock[2] upon Orton Scar; thence by a direct line E. to Howgatefoot where Ashby parish comes in; thence by a streight line over Castlehow bottom till you com at the \ head of / Grabbergill.[3] Thence to Midle Busk ~~near~~ \ in / Lile Ashby-hause*.

{E[ast]}
On the East, with another part of Asby parish, from the said Midle Buske by the peat way to the midle of Sunbiging \ tarn / where 3 parishes meet. Sc. Orton having ½, & Crosby ~~Ga~~ \ Garret / Asby the other halfe of it†. Thence to the […][4] \ mere / stones called Meer Slack, where Russendale parish comes in; from which tis divided by a streight line S.E. to Hauskew-wood Neük‡. Thence down the nether side of Street Close to Bouder Dale beck foot S.E. from the church in the low end of Russendale,[5] where it enters Leun. Thence up the said beck to Bouderdale Head where it first springs, divideing it from Russendale; thence on the [Blank] with Setber↓;[6] from the said place ~~to the~~ by the ridge of the fells to the markes of Cables in Langdale fells \ as Heaven Water deales. / Thence agane as Heaven Water, to a steän that lyes in Blakethwaite Bottom; thence by a direct lyne to the Black Force in Ka\r/rigill watter.[7] Thence down the said water till it run into Leun‖.

{W[est]}
On the west with Kendal parish; from the said place, up the Leün till you com at Burrow Water Foot, so up the said water to the higher Burrow brig. Thence by Penrith way to Deming Dub. {Thence N.E. by the way which leads to Sawter wath. Thence in a direct [line] N.E. to Bousfield.}
On West with Kendal and Shap beginning at Low Burrow Bridge; so up[8] […] to Deming Dubb. Thence in a direct line West to the Cloven Stone on Stakely. Thence in a streight line E. to Gibson hill. Thence S. Eastward to Scout Green; \ 3 houses / thence down Birkbeck to Overskales. Thence up Sprokeld Sike, to Penrith highway where it springs. Thence {N.E. by the way which heads to Sawter Wath.}[9] Thence in a direct N.E. to Bousfield¶.

---

[1] MS: 'Beginning ~~at Crookdale House at a house place called Deming Dubs (an house so called) At Scar Top near Lingy Law hill. Thence as in the Bounder of Crosby, till you com at \ Howgate / Midle Busk in Lile Asbyhause~~. Beginning at ~~Howgate~~ Bousfield How (an hill by Penrith road which leads from Kendal).'
[2] Possibly 'Pind', or 'Pinde': hill, See Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 78.
[3] It is possible that Machell scored through the 'r' in this word.
[4] Here is an unclear word or symbol.
[5] MS: 'Thence down the nether side of Street Close to Bouder ~~beck foot to Bounder Foot~~ Dale beck foot \ beck / S.E. \ from the church / in the low end of Russendale.' Russendale (Ravenesdal, Raustandal(e), Ranestandale, Raunstandale, Rastendale, Rasstayndale and other variants) is now known as Ravenstonedale (valley of the raven stone) see *Westmorland Place-Names*.
[6] Probably 'Selsmire' or 'Selmire', see Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 48.
[7] For 'Black Force', see Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 53.
[8] Here, the page foot has perished; one line of text is illegible, apart from the words, 'to High'.
[9] Probably, 'Salterwath', see Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 47.

[Machell's Notes: III.295]

*{Jo. Teby of Sunbiging. Jon War of Rus[sendale]}
†{Query if Russendale claimd none of this tarn.}
‡{Query? Right sayes Mr Procter.}
⸸{?}
‖{John Hewthwaite of Kelleth.}
¶{W. Kenyon, Oliver Thornbur, […]}[10]

[Orton Church and Bells]

[I.637]

John Bartholemew Prior of Carlile Confirm'd Orton in Westmorland (in the Time of Bishop Hugh) to the Prior of Cuinstead.[11] MS Cumb. part 1[t,] p.48, §3.[12]

[I.638]

To Orton Church belongs Orton, Bretherdale, Langdale, Raisebeck, Tebay.

[III.299]

The church is dedicated to All Saints & called Allhallows {on which day their feast was kept}[13] and is a fair Building made of white huen-stone, having a Tall Steple (yet not so high as it should according to agreement, ~~for~~ for they say its dimensions were to be taken from Kirkby Stephens.) There ~~are~~ \ is a clock in it; / Bells ~~it~~ pretty large & tunable, which are said to com from the Abby of Shap at its desolution, the greatest being caryed to Kirk[by]thore. And hereupon the Steple was built about 80 years since; before which time they shew a pit at the S.W. corner of the churchyard, over which they [the bells] hung in frames upon the ground \ with an hovel above them / & tis reported that they made a greater noyse in that place than they doe in the Steeple.

[I.638][14]

The Bells at Overton[15] which are 4 in number were made att Nottingham by John Wolley Bellfonder, for which he had in consideration of Carrier and all, 76[li] sterling: by the Hands of T. Blenk[insop], Lancelot Lancaster, [Lanc]elot Lowther of the County of Westm'land Esqs. John Thornburrow, Rowland Thornburrow & Oliver Crosland yeomen, in the name of all the parishoners. The Base bell being to be like in Sound to the 3[d] Bell of the Abby of Shap, & the other 3 Solem & Swete, consonant thereunto, ~~&~~ as appear from ~~the~~ \ an / Indenture dated the 4 of April, 21. Henry 8. [1530].

[III.299]

[Orton Church]
It much resembles the church of Crosby To which they report (but on what grounds I know not) it once belonged as an Appendant Chapple. Only tis, the pillars ~~fewer~~ thicker, the arches fewer, & the church Lower. It conteines in Length the body of it \ al of / 30 yards; the Quier Twelve; in all 42 yards. The Bredth of the body, have[ing] 2 Iles & 2 Rows of pillers, is about 19 yards.[16] But the North Side Ile seemes to be ad[d]ed at the same time that the Steple was built. Or, however, after the other part. And the whole is lately put in repere, painted & Bea\u/tifyed by Mr Kenyon[17] & his parishoners.
There is only one monument ~~in the~~ which is in the quire, a through (as wee call them) in the South Side \ thereof, / erected under a Low & mean Arch, suitable to \ the materials of it / for it is ~~of no more but~~ ruff stone & no way beautifyed. Yet I make no q[uestion] it has bin for a Priest or som man of account. The church is on a Hill \ side / & there has bin an handsom walke as it yet appears about the churchyard, at the E. End of which is a Close calld Priors Garth belonging to the vicaridge, wherein is

[10] The end of this list is obscured by the binding but could read as, 'Mr Birbeck … Constable'.
[11] Conishead.
[12] Machell cited his copy of John Denton's MS 'History of Cumberland', part of his collection of documents bound into VI.146-76 (not transcribed). For the actual text, see Angus J.L. Winchester (ed.), *John Denton's 'History of Cumberland*, CWAAS Record Series 20 (Woodbridge, 2010), 90.
[13] All Hallows/All Saints feast day is 1 November.
[14] Also numbered p.33.
[15] Overton = ancient name (e.g. 13th century) of Orton, see III.300, below. See also, Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 42.
[16] A note on MS.I.650 offers, '{Orton. Church. 2 rows of pillars, 3 of each side}'
[17] Roger Kenyon appointed in 1663 (CCED); died in 1703 aged 85; married for 60 years. His wife survived him. *N&BI*, 484.

som appearance of Ruines,[18] which make them suppose a Priory [and] a close. But it was onely som little cells belonging to the Priory of Connishead, concerneing which there was som dispute in the year 1311 twixt the Prior [and] Convent of the said Priory. & the […] Convent of […][19]
The parish is a viccaridge, Rated in the First Fruits Office at [blank].[20] The Impropriation & patronage is in the parishoners, purchased by them about 80 years since.[21] It hath wool & Lamb in kind; Hemp & line 1d. Tythe Geese, \ chickes / ~~& poltry~~ & Grise.[22]

The vicaridge house is East from the church about 10 yards, & hath a rill of water running ~~und~~ before it. […] a Beacon […][23]

[I.650]

{Oreton Parish}[24]
He [George Fothergill] once stood to be vicar of Orton & prejuditious parish gave [it] to another far inferiour to him for learneing.

[18] MS: 'at the E. end ~~Qu ut chaples~~ of which is a Close calld ~~Monkflase~~ \ Priors Garth belonging to the vicaridge wherein \ is som / appearance of ruines…'
[19] The page ends here; almost all text has perished. On the dispute, John Curwen wrote: 'But there was also a chapel here appropriated to Whitby, for in 1310, William prior of Conyngesheved, Richard de Gosefeld canon of that house, and others, were charged with entering the abbot of Whitby's Chapel at Overton, co. Westmorland, carrying away his goods, and assaulting his monks, men and servants. Cal. Pat. Rolls, 1310, p. 255.' J.F. Curwen, *The Later Records of North Westmorland or the Barony of Appleby*, CWAAS Record Series 8 (Kendal, 1932), 195-213.
[20] Curwen quotes the 'Valor Ecclesiasticus', 1535, in which the gross value was then £17 7s 4d. See Curwen, *Later Records*, 195-213.
[21] B. Nightingale noted an occurrence after the advowson had been bought by the parishioners. Quoting from the Orton Parish Chest, he wrote, 'On the death of Mr. Corney in 1643, Edward Birkbeck the elder of Orton, William Thomson of Cotflatt and Robert Whithead of the Park, being parishioners but not feofees, took upon them-selves to drawe or cause to be drawne a representation, to which they set or caused to be sett, the hands of divers parishioners without theire knowledge privety or consent, whereby [Alexander] Fetherston-haugh, who was chaplaine to Sir Henry Strahn (?) the elder, in service with the parliament [the parliamentary army] was presented and thereupon got induction [institution] without the consent of the feofees who had chosen another minister, George Fothergill. This action caused great strife and confusion in the parish and forced the parishioners and feofees to be at great charge and trouble with keeping out of the Church the said Fetherstonhaugh, who came in a forceable manner with Robert Whithead and divers others and did break open the Church door to take possession thereof, insomuch that the feofees and the parish were forced to watch the Church … for the space of nine weeks or there-abouts, and the minister who then officiated there was forced to preache in the Churchyard for Six Sabath days together, leaste the said Fetherstonhaugh should after the breaking of the doore, men-taine and continue his possession therein, which did not only occasion Expense to the sum of one hundredth pounds or upwards, but also did endanger the losse of the advowson contrary to all right and equatie and to the losse and damage of the parish to the vallew of six hundreth pounds.' Nightingale, *Ejected of 1662*, 2, 1203. See also *N&BI*, 483-84.
[22] Grice are pigs. The Commonwealth Survey of 1657 lists the tithes as, 'Wool and lamb and other small tithes worth by the year £58, and likewise the glebe land which is worth by the year £4': Curwen, *Later Records,* 195-213.
[23] The page foot has perished here.
[24] Much of the text on this page is scored through, viz. MS: ~~'Ravenstonedale Parish The church has belonging to it Ravenstondale~~ […] 3 Angels [angles].' The sentence transcribed appears to allude to Machell's previous bald account of the purchase of the Orton parish advowson, see Nightingale, *Ejected of 1662*, 2, 1203, above. George Fothergill (vicar chosen by the feoffees) was born in Westmorland, educated at Sedbergh School, and attended St John's, Cambridge, from 1623: B.A. 1627-8; M.A. 1631. He was Vicar of Pontefract, 1641; Vicar of Orton, 1643-63; Rector of Warsop, Notts., 1663-83. He died Aug. 23, 1683, see Cambridge Alumni at Ancestry.co.uk. Nicolson and Richard noted that Fothergill was ejected in 1662 for not complying with the Act of Uniformity. He conformed soon afterwards and was presented to the living of Warsop in 1663. He was followed at Orton by Roger Kenyon: *N&BI*, 484.

[Orton: Constablewicks]

Constablewicks	Chapels	Gentlemens Houses
Orton	0	Mr Petteyes
Rasebeck		
Tebay		
Langdale		
Bretherdale		

[III.302]

[Orton Lordship: Freeholds]

There are some freeholds in it, but most undervalue.
1. ~~Roun~~ Tybay: about XVIII [houses] where there is a free school ab Ecclesia 1 mile ½ S.
2. Rounthwate: S. 2 miles; about X houses, where query of a well which emits ore, colours the sand & the teeth of the sheep which are inclined to feed there about,[25] of a golden […][26]
3. Burrowbrigs: S. 3 miles; II houses.
4. Gasegill-Row: about VIII or IX houses; S.E. 2 miles.
[5.] Ellergill: II; 2 miles S.E.
They pass by surrender in court. The customary tenants here have 3^{d} till they mary, but otherwise not.[27]

[I.638]

[Orton: Land Ownership and Descent]

The Blenkinsops of Hellbeck were possessed in this parish of Overton in an ancient Estate of 29 messuages & halfe the \ water / mill ~~in Coteflat, Gasegilbar~~ with certane lands in the Hamlet of Raisebeck, Stonebigging, Raysegil Hall, Coatflat, Gasegill, Tebay, Ellergill, Langdall & Stack Bridge (alias Flakebridge), holding by Soccage & fealty and the yerely rent of one grain of Cloves (gariophili);[28] sed de quo Ignor.[29]

The Lordship of Raisebeck conteined in it, as appears from a survey take about the yere 1626:

1. Sunbigging in which 8 Tenants	)
2. Raisebeck in which 12 Tenants	)
3. Skarside in which 3 Tenants	)
4. Chapple 1 Tenant	) All fineable Rent
5. Coatflat 6 Tenants	)
6. Raisegill Hall 4 Tenants	)
7. Kellett 5 Tenants	)
8. Coatflat Mill 40^{s}	)

And the whole fineable rent in the Lordship of Raisebeck was $13^{li}\ 11^{s}\ 0^{d}$, besides a Multer farme that was due but not fineable,[30] & a running Grissome.[31] These belonged all to the Blenkinsops in 1626, since which time they were sold by T.B. Esq.

[I.641]

These lands which the Blenkinsops held in Overton seme to me to have formerly belonged to one Adam de Heniscastre. for T. de Helebeck, as you may se in the pedigre, had the same by Avicia his wife who

[25] MS: 'sheep which are in^{cl} feed there about.'
[26] The last word is obscured by the binding; presumably it is 'hue', or 'colour'.
[27] 'The customary tenants have thirds until they marry.' Thirds: the third of the personal property of a deceased husband allowed to his widow. Also, the third of his real property to which his widow might be legally entitled for her life. *OED*.
[28] 'Gariophili' or 'gariofle': a clove. *OED*.
[29] 'But of this I know no more.'
[30] 'Multure'. Tenants compelled to use the lord's mill and to pay him toll for it. A 'farm' is a lease of it.
[31] 'Gressam': an entry payment when entering on a tenancy. *OED*.

was daughter to Hene\s/castre. Certane lands at Sunbigin, Rasebeck, Keldeth,[32] Coatflat, which have the fulling mill there, was given in dower with Isabell 2nd daughter of Thomas & Avicia, to Patritius de Kastle Carrok; Howbeit whether for want of Isue or how otherwise I know not, they reverted upon the Blenkinsops, for that family held them till of late yeres: The Boundary whereof ran in this manner–

S[i]cut quoddam siketum inter Overton et Raysebeck descendit per medium Free[ermire] descendend[o] in le Bibeck & itatem per medium le Bibeck descendit et Ita per medium Tybay ascendit usq[ue] le Scoddigate de Hanster, Sc [perished] irdalbeck descendit in Tybay, et ita ascend[it] per rectas metas et divisas inter Raven Ranstindall Cross[e]bygr. et Parvam Askeby et praedictam hamletta[m] in praedicta villa de Overton usq[ue] altum del Sker & Ita sequendo altum del Sker per rectas metas et divisas inter Magnam Askeby et grangiam ejusdem et p[r]edictam Hamlettam usq[ue] le Hundehow & Ita descendendo del Hundehow per pronpinquiorem via[m] in predictum siketum descendendo per medium Freeremire. [Blank] salvis tamen Nobis etc. witness T[estibus] Dns Michaele de Harclas & Johan[n]e de Rossegil militibus Johan[n]e de Helton R[i]ch[ard]o de Wartcop Henrico de Warthecopp Alano de Keldelyth, Roberto filio Thome de Langdal et alijs.[33]

[I.638]

½ of the manner of Overton, 19. Henry 7. [1503-04] was in the possession of Thomas Daker, Lord Daker, son & heir of Hum[phrey] Lord Dacre,[34] which is held of the king in Capite by Knights Service paying 2s 6d rent for Cornage & doeing service ~~at the~~ ad Com. dicti domini regis Westm'land de mense in mensem apud castrum Domini Regis de Apleby. & the said ½ valet per Annum, 10li.[35]
And Thomas ~~Blenkinsop~~ \ Beauchamp / was then seised of in his demane as of fee, halfe the manner of Wateby* & Overton, which is held of the King in Capite by Knights Service & rent to the King for Cornage, 11 shillings \ XIs 1d. / & unius denerij & by doeing service &c. & \ that the halfes of the said manner / valet per annum 10li.[36]
And that Henry Clifford Knight, affirme the said Halfes to be holden of him by Knights Service. {The Cliffords made noe pretence to Dakers estate.}

Thomas ~~Blenkinsop~~ \ Beauchamp, / father of this Thomas, dyed seised of the sam ½, 1t of May, 10. Edward 4. [1470]. And Thomas Beauchamp his son & heire, being then above the aige of 33 yeres, had & received the increase & profits of The foresaid Manner from the Time of his fathers death \ and had & received the same from the time of the takeing of the said inquisition, and did possess the same manner until then; and that Henry Clifford Knight by affirmeing the foresaid ½s of the foresaid manners to be held of him by Knights Service, received the rents and services of the forsaid medeityes[37] of the foresaid Thomas Beauchamp, the sonn. But by what title they knew not.

[Machell's Notes: I.638 and I.639]

*Wateby is in Kirkby Stephen parish.
[I.639]

[32] 'Kelleth' or 'Keldelith': 'slope with a spring', see Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 43. Nicolson and Burn differ from Smith: '…two Saxon words, 'keld' which signifies a well or spring, and 'lyth' which signifies light or soft: *N&B1*, 485-86.
[33] 'It descends like a syke between Overton and Raysebeck through the middle of Freemire, descending into le Bibeck and so it descends through the middle of le Bibeck and so it ascends through the middle of Tybay as far as the Scoddigate of Hanster […] descends into Tybay, and so ascends through the right markers and boundaries between Ranstridall, Crossbyg[arrett] and Little Askeby and the aforesaid hamlet in the aforesaid vill of Overton as far as the heights of Sker and so following the heights of Sker along the right markers and boundaries between Great Askeby and its grange and the aforesaid hamlet as far as le Hundehow and so descending from le Hundehow along the nearer road to the aforesaid syke descending through the middle of Freeremire [Blank] Apart from us, however, the witnesses are Lords Michael de Harclas and John de Rossegil, Knights; John de Helton, Richard de Wartcop, Henry de Warthcopp, Alan de Keldelyth, Robert son of Thomas de Langdale, and others.'
[34] Machell rarely spelled 'Dacre' in this way, usually referring to 'Lord Daker', but see the note on I.639.
[35] 'At the court of the said King at Westmorland from month to month at the King's castle of Appleby. And the said half is worth £10 per annum.'
[36] 'unius denarij' = 'of one penny', i.e. cornage of 11 shillings & one penny.
[37] Moieties: halves.

Rent belonging to Ga\y/segill Hall, as appear from a Rental taken the 30. Henry 8. [1538-39] ~~Att~~ out of Raysebec, Sonbyngyng[38] \ & / Cottflatte: in all 12^{li} 18. 3.
33. Henry 6. [1454-55]. It is writ the manner of Rasegill Hall with the whole Lordship, but then the lands & Tenements in Overton Teby seem dist[…][39]
I finde Margaret de Dacre dame de Gildesland in a Fre[nch] writeing in the 16. Edward 3. [1287-88]. But before that [Blank] was Lord of Gils[land] as then may [be seen] amongst the Barwises [records] in Apleby.

[III.300]

[Lordships]

There are 4 lordships: Orton, Tebey & \ hamlets / Langdale & Bretherdale.

I. Orton

Orton\ well Scituate in a Bottom on Springs. /Anciently Overto[n] from its Scituation from Apleby, being over the Fell. {Apleby road comes by this town to Kendal, with bridges convenient.} It is a market Town, they say, by Ancient charter*, their market day Wednessday, anciently Friday, and they have a fair the Friday afore Whitsuntide, and after that each fortnight market day till midsommer. Their Acres are by Estimation, & should be 7 yards broad & 7 score long: Value per annum, ar[able] 10s; med[ow] 10.[40] past[ure] 0.

In Orton: The Church, Vicaridge, School.
The Tenants are Generally freehold, about six score, who purchased themselves of my Lord Arrundell as Chief Lord,[41] & the Blenkinsops of Helbeck as ~~mean~~ a Co-partner, at 60 years purchase, about 70 years since. {An court of Arundell.}They [pay] nout geld to Apleby Castle 5^{s} 1^{d} in the Town of Orton Some pay fineable rents to others \ that paid the purchase / that could not purchase themselves to be free, Sc. 4: to Mr Birke, Oliver Whitehead, George Fothergil & Thomas Birbeck. They have a Court Barron, Leet? kept in any place of the Lordship that the Steward appoints. No manner house in memory of man†.

There also belong to Orton manner:
1. S\c/arside. IV [houses]\ ½ mile E. / an hamlet.
2. Rasebeck. XII [houses] \ 1-mile E. /
3. Sunbiging hamlet. \VI [houses] \ 1 mile ½ E. /
4. Kelleth. VIII [houses] \ 2 miles S.E. /[42]
5. Rayne. Houses \ II. 1 mile ½ S.E. /
6. Rasegil-Hall. \ 1 mile S.E. II [houses] /
7. Coatflat. V [houses] \ Mr Birke / 1m. S.
Bousfield.VI [houses] \ ¼ N.W. /
Parke. IV [houses] \ ¼ N.W. /
Scales. \ 2 miles S.W. / IV [houses] Most of them freeholds.[43]

[Machell's Notes III.300]

*{? Mr Birbeck.}
†{No toll.}

[38] Sunbiggin.
[39] The word are obscured by the binding.
[40] No denomination of coin given.
[41] As the tenant purchase had occurred 'about 70 years since', it is probable that the then Earl of Arundel was Thomas Howard, 14th earl (1585-1646). This Thomas Howard had commercial interests in the north; his mother was Anne Dacre, daughter and coheir of Thomas, Lord Dacre. See R. Smuts, 'Howard, Thomas, fourteenth earl of Arundel, fourth earl of Surrey, and first earl of Norfolk (1585-1646), art collector and politician'. *ODNB*.
[42] Marginalia here, relating to Kelleth, are obscured by the binding.
[43] Roman numerals represent the number of tenements.

[I.640]

{Hall; Petty}[44]
Here is an House lately built, finer than the rest, & ergo called an Hall, tho that be proper to manner houses only, and so used originally. It is the dwelling of a good substanshall & honest familie of the Pettyes (freeholders? there). There is a pedigre (& very fair one & of many descents) sign'd by Mr Dugdall (but I have heard himselfe complaine of his rashness in dooing of it) which deduceth them from one Sir Oates Petit Knight: Lord of Ardever in Cornwall, whose Coat was Argent; a Lyon Rampant, Gules; Langed & membered Azure, with a Pheon in dexter point (as I remember of the 2nd). Mr Petty of ~~Lincolns~~ \ the / Inner Temple has the pedigree & is of the same familie with the Pettyes of Oreton; for they of Oreton came lately from about Skipton in Yorkeshire, where this Petty was borne.[45]

[I.641]

{Sunbiging}
In Sunbiging, T[homas] B[lenkinsop] had 3 ~~Messuag[es]~~ & 3 oxgangs of Land: ped. Henry 5.[46]

II. Tebay

[III.301]

Tybay: S. ab Ecclesia 1 mile ½.

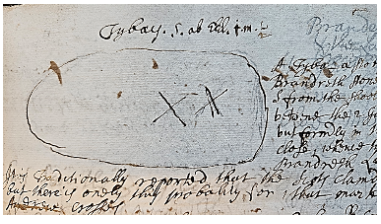


Figure 1.20.1. Brandreth Stone. III.301.

Brandereth Stone[47]
At Tybay a stone called Brandreth Stone[48] \ about / 6 score yards S. from the s[c]hool, in the hedge between the 2 Gallober Closes[49] but formerly in the farther close, whence the lands are Brandreth Lands. It is Traditionally reported that the Scots clamd thus far, but there is onely this probality: for that [the] markes are 2 St Andrew crosses.

[III.298][50]

[Tebay School]

Westmoreland
Tibay in Orton parish
For his honourable friend
Mr Jackson, Schoolmaster at Appleby, this.

[44] Sometimes referred to as Orton Old Hall, or as 'Petty Hall'.
[45] John Curwen described this hall as 'a low two storeyed building. Over the front door appear the initials and date: G.B. 1604 M.B., commemorating the rebuilding by George Birkbeck. In the 17th century the Hall was purchased by the Petty family. A panel over a fireplace bears the Petty arms, disallowed by Dugdale, viz.: three castles with a pair of compasses, together with the initials and date C.M.P. 1689,' Curwen, *Later Records*, 195-213.
[46] 'In a pedigree of Henry V's reign.' It is instructive that there is no mention in this chapter of one of Sunbiggin's famous sons, the Quaker, George Whitehead (1637-1724). See Nigel Smith, 'Whitehead, George (1637–1724), Quaker leader and writer. *ODNB*.
[47] Ink superimposes pencil in notes, here. After 'Brandereth Stone & the lands', the rest of the line is illegible.
[48] 'Brandreth Stone': 'a granite boulder set against a field-wall, 500 yards N.N.W. of the modern church, is about 3¾ft. by 2½ft. It has no indications of working except a small rough cross on one corner. There are said to have been two crosses; the stone was reputed to have been a boundary-stone between the English and Scots.' British History Online, *An Inventory of the Historical Monuments in Westmorland* (London, 1936), 225-26.
[49] In Tebay. 'Gallaber' (now 'Galloper'), see Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 52.
[50] This page is made from the addressed and sealed page of a letter written by Roger Kenyon, incumbent at Orton.

In answer to query, Aug. 16, 1673.
Sept. 13, 1673

This free school of Tibey in the parish of ~~Oveton~~ \ Orton /and Countie of Westm'land founded there in the yere of Our Lord 1672. Mr Rob[ert] Adamson born of the sayde parish the foundre thereof \ endowing it / qualifying it with about 13[li] per annum forever. The first and present schoolmaister there Mr Robinson. The Feofies appointed for tyme being for the right ordering and governing this sayd schoole:[51]
Rog. Kenyon, cleric[52]
Mr Tho. Birbeck[53]
William Adamson[54]
Tho. Denison[55]
Rob. Wilson[56]
Jo. Thornborow[57]
Tho. Atkinson, Dr
Tho. Crosbie
Sir, Yr servant and cordiall well-wisher
Rog. Kenyon[58]

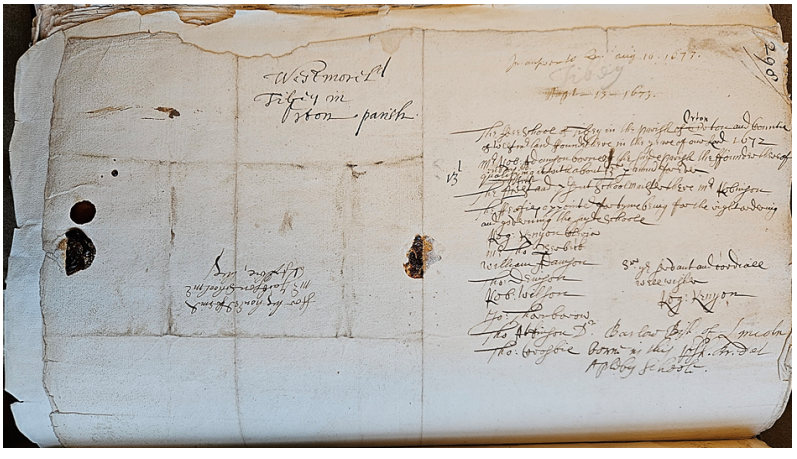


Figure 1.20.2. Letter, 1673. III.298.

[51] Tebay School was 'founded and endowed by Robert Adamson on 30 April, 1672. He gave certain houses and 24 acres of land called "Ormandie Biggin" and "Blackett Bottom," in the manor of Grayrigg for the maintenance of a schoolmaster. He stipulated that all his relations and friends, all inhabitants of Roundthwaite, all poor people in the parish of Orton, all foreigners whatsoever and all contributors to the school should have their children taught free.' Curwen, *Later Records*, 195-213.
[52] Roger Kennion/Kenion/Kenyon: incumbent at Orton from 1663 until his death in 1704. CCED.
[53] Two men named Thomas Birbeck are named in the Orton Town 1669-1672 Hearth Tax Roll, Lay Subsidy 195, n. 73: Curwen, *Later Records,* 195-213.
[54] William Adamson is named in the Tebay 1669-1672 Hearth Tax Roll, Lay Subsidy 195, n. 73, Curwen, *Later Records,* 195-213.
[55] Two men named Thomas Dennison/Dennyson are named in the Birkbeck Fells 1669-1672 Hearth Tax Roll, Lay Subsidy 195, n. 73, Curwen, *Later Records,* 195-213.
[56] Robert Wilson is named in the Bretherdale 1669-1672 Hearth Tax Roll, Lay Subsidy 195, n. 73: Curwen, *Later Records,*195-213.
[57] The name John Thornborrow appears in the Langdale and Raisbeck Hearth Tax Roll, Lay Subsidy 195, n. 73: Curwen, *Later Records,* 195-213.
[58] Sent by Roger Kenyon (perpetual vicar of Orton. CCED) to Mr Jackson, schoolmaster at Appleby. Jackson acted as Machell's informant in 1673.

[Machell's Note: III.300]
Barlow, Bishop of Lincoln, born in this parish, bred at Apleby schoole.[59]

[III.301]
Over the school, which is 2 stories high with convenient Romes above for a Schoolmaster, is this Inscription.

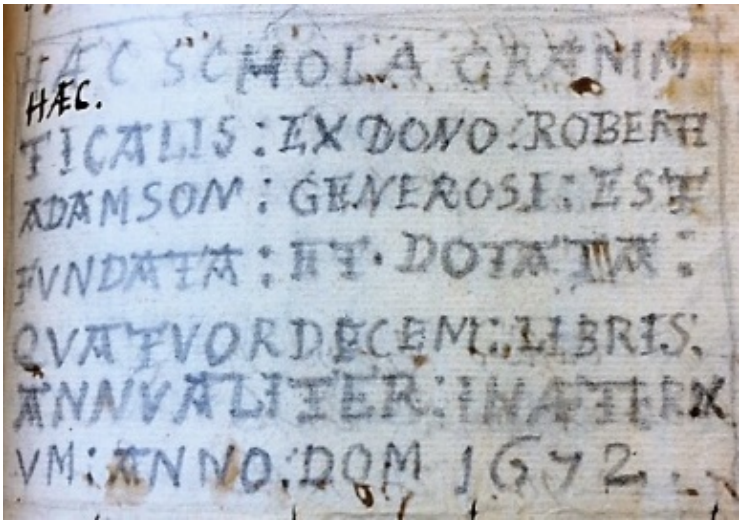


Figure 1.20.3. Inscription, Tebay School. III.301.

HÆC SCHOLA GRAMM
TICALIS: EX DONO. ROBERTI
ADAMSON: GENEROSI: EST
FUNDATA: ET. DOTA PA:
QUATVOR DECEM. LIBRIS:
ANNUALITER: IN ÆTERN
VM: ANNO. DOM 1672[60]

Adamson, born in Roundthwate, indowed it, But it was built by the Inhabitants of Orton parish, Mr Kennion, the Vicar, labouring in it for a Subscription; & those who subscribed and their posterity & the founders Kindred are free, the rest not.[61] The 1ˢᵗ schoolmaster was Edward Robinson,[62] succed[ed] by Mr William Noble, the present Schoolmaster.[63]

[Castlehow]
About the same distance directly N. in a place called Castle Gre[en] is part of a Round Mount with a Trench on the outside and hollow in the midle, which is calld Castlehow, the Remainder being worn away by Violent Incursions of the River Leun. And there is another Hill calld Castlehow near Greenholm about halfe \ mile / west from hence, on the S. West of the River Beck near to the place where it enters Leün. But hath no appearance of Trench about it. Castlehow seames a mou[n]t of war,

[59] This comment is in Machell's hand. For Machell's treatment of Thomas Barlow, see I.639 and I.642A, below.
[60] 'This Grammar school is founded from the gift of Robert Adamson, gentleman, and endowed with fourteen pounds a year for ever, in the year of our Lord 1672.'
[61] See above, III.298, 'Tebay School'.
[62] Edward Robinson appears in the Orton Parish School records in 1675, and at Warcop Parish School in 1680. CCED.
[63] William Noble is listed as schoolmaster from 4 June 1680 to 13 May 1708. CCED.

and there 2 great mountanes, one calld Jeffrey Burrow,[64] S. of Rownthwate, and the other, Lords Seat in Lan[g]dale Lordship. But on what occasion it is not know.
Here is no manner house nor never any footsteps of one in the memory of man.[65] It is held of Lord Wharton, by fineable rent; much of it purchased to an 8^{d} fine, but som arbitrary, & it payes nout geld to Appleby Castle.[66] It is in the East Ward & Barony of Westm'land. No bounds. Court Baron is kept at Gasegill, but ancient[ly] at Greenh[olm].

[I.641]

[Ellergill]
A Tenement called Ellergill in the Hamlet of Gasegill in the village of Tybay, belong'd 2. Henry 5. [1414-15] to Thomas de Apleby vid. Apleby,[67] & was enfoeffed upon him & his wife. Att Apleby Anno superdicto. William Mauchell inter alias.[68]
Ellergill notwithstanding should seem to have bin a Lordship, for there was Capitale Messuagium [i.e.] a manner house, 10. Edward 2. [1316-17]. And a family of that name. For William the son of Th[…][69] de Ellergill made over the same to Richard de Blenkinsop & Isabel his wife*, with all his lands and medows with there appurtenances there. And allso the Homage & Service of Richard, son of Robert de Gasegil, i.e. all the clame & right which he had to all the lands & Tenements, wards & relieves which might fall to him in the same paying to the Lords of the Fee xxii^{d} pro Omnibus servis.[70] [Witnesses] Robert le Engleys, Robert de Askeby, John de Rossegill militis, Henry de Warthcop Vic. West.,[71] William de Helton, Henry de Ha[…][72] Thomas filio de Robert de Langdal (Keldelyth gave name to a family William de Keldelayth) And Richard the son of Robert Gasegill, conveyd to the foresaid Richard de Blenkinsop all his houses toftes lands & Tenements cum pertinentijs[73] in Ellergill.

1. Edward 1. [1272-73]: John de Ellergill had Isue
William de Ellergill

\ Keldellyt. 1. Ed. 1. /
Alan de Kellet [had Issue]
William de Kellett

Robert de Langdale

Richard de Gasegil [had Issue]
Robert de Gasegil. 10. Edward 2. [1281-82]

Lang gill?
This place & parish is honoured \ as Appleby School / with the birth of Dr Thomas Barlow somtimes Provost of Q[ueen's] College in Oxford &c. whose picture [is on the facing page].[74]

[64] 'Gefferyes Hill' or 'Jeffrey's Mount', see Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 53.
[65] Footsteps = foundations.
[66] Nout geld: a toll on cattle.
[67] 'See my chapter on Appleby'. The information does not appear in Machell's chapter on Appleby.
[68] 'In the year above said, witnessed by William Mauchell amongst others.'
[69] The name is obscured by the binding.
[70] 'For all services.' Some text here is obscured by the binding.
[71] 'Sheriff of Westmorland.'
[72] Blotted word; perhaps 'Haverington.'
[73] 'With their appurtenances.'
[74] See I.642A. Thomas Barlow (1608/9-1691), bishop of Lincoln, was born at Long-Gill, Orton, son of Richard Barlow (d. 1637). He was educated at Appleby grammar school. He matriculated at Queen's College, Oxford, in 1625, aged sixteen, later becoming a Taberder. He graduated BA in 1630 and MA in 1633, when he was also elected fellow of Queen's. See John Spurr, 'Barlow, Thomas (1608/9-1691)'. *ODNB*.

[Machell's Notes: I.641]
*Not[e] that there is no more to be gathered from Helbecks conv[eyance] than this. But this may be added, that they used the same seale as an in fal. Argent.)[75]

[III.302]

III. Langdale

Langdale: so called from the length thereof, being above 4 mile lonke[76] on the S. side of Leun: 2 miles S.E. from the church.

{Freeholds}
It is a lordship, belong to my Lord Wharton. 5 or 6 freeholds & som under vallue; the rest: som arbitrary & som fine certaine. Testibus Oliver Thornburrow.

{Rarities.}
More game.
No ox-geld paid that he knows on.[77]

{Descent}
Nothing.

{Hamlets 4.}

[1. Langdale]
{Low end of Langdale is an ancient hall-house pleasantly scituated. It lies upon the beck side near unto […][78] Leun, said to have bin the hall or manner-house, and so indeed it appears to be, both by the window in the W. end of [it] being castle-wise [and] from the arched timber. Belonged to one Langdale lost at Co[…][79] now Oliver Thornburs.}

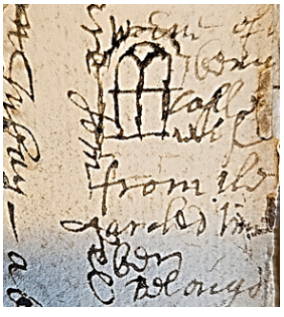


Figure 1.20.4. Ancient Hall house with window 'castle-wise'. III.302.

[I.640]
There are many places which bear this name, & ergo I shal not deduce the original of Sir Marmaduke Langdale from [the]nce, because I know well he nor his ancestors had never title here: And I shall take occasion from the pla[ce] here to insert his pedigre, in regard he had a [tit]le from this County being Lor[d] Westmorland*.

[Machell's Notes: I.640]
*See my Little booke of Familiyes & places.

[75] The meaning of 'in fal argent' or 'in ful Argent', is unclear. An infula is a heraldic symbol signifying a cap, as in 'Argent, an infula embowed at the end gules, turned up in form of a hat': https://www.heraldsnet.org/saitou/parker/Jpglossa.htm.
[76] 'Long.'
[77] Otherwise known as nout-geld (see the English Glossary).
[78] Words here have perished.
[79] Some of this margin sentence has perished; some is unclear.

Memorandum. There is [an] excellent pedigree (as I remember) in a visitation of [the] Shires penès Mr Knight juxta Novum Exchange, in […]am Yard[80] {which he promist to give with all his books to St Johns in Cambridge.} I have this account allso out of Flower *Visitation of Yorkshire* 1563. Vide etiam in Libro and MS Genealog.[81]

[III.302]

2. Coatgill. IIII houses 2 miles ½ S.E. from the church.
3. Flakebridge. IIII [houses] 2 miles ½ S.E.
4. Lang gill.

1 single house, the lands of which are some free, some fineable \ & has a mill there belonging unto it. / It is said one of the Lords bestowed it on a Barlow that was his servant, and her[e] was Born the learned Dr Barlow, Fellow and after Provost of Queens, and now Bishop of Lincoln – who did not read the Declaration – nor injoyne it [on] his clerge; only dispersd it, as James Birke his Steward assured his friends in Letters from Bucsden.[82]

[I.639]

[Oreton. Thomas Barlow, Bishop of Lincoln]

In this parish was born \ of mean parents / T.B.[83] Provost of Queens College in Oxford. He had his first Education at Appleby School whence he came to Oxon and there improved himselfe so much that he got the repute of one of the most learned men of that Aige his excellence consisting in Controvert Divinity. He was translated from the Provostship to the Bishoprick of Lincoln, reconting from his Consecration on the 27 of June 1675.

He had many good qualityes, but Courted Fame so much that he would doe anything allmost to cheat the world into a good opinion of him, being not in the least coveteouse of money but shamefully gready of common reputation and popular applause; one that could rub of[f] any shame with a few fawneing words and fair pretences full of promises, but very barren & empty in performance {a man whose deed consists all together in words & Liberality in promises; for when he hath said, he hath don, & you gett no more}. He was in crafty witt subtill enough; in speach pleaseing, in entertainments liberal, & beloved of all but those that knew him; \ to his friends treacherous, to his foes Irreconcileable. / Thus, he was before Consecration. God make him better for the Time to come*.[84]

[Machell's Notes: I.649]

*{Tho this be true I will not allow of it; Charity covers a multitude of faults.}

---

[80] 'Near the New Exchange.' The name of the yard is obscured by the binding. In V.2C Machell wrote, 'I sent you a letter (since my notes) & desired you to consult a little booke in 4^0 call'd the *Visitation of Cumberland and Northumberland*, which Mr Knight has, who is the kings chirugion, & lives behind the New Exchange.' Mr Knight was the king's surgeon.

[81] 'See likewise in [my] book and MS of genealogy.'

[82] In his later years (even while bishop of Lincoln) Thomas Barlow lived in Buckden, Huntingdonshire. While Machell's criticism of Barlow in the paragraph below is swingeing, the point he is making here relates to Barlow's attitude to the (1687-88) Declaration of Indulgence (greatly opposed by many Anglicans because it granted tolerance to various Christian denominations), see Scott Sowerby, *Making Toleration: The Repealers and the Glorious Revolution* (Cambridge, Mass. 2013), 171. When the bishops were told by James II that they should order the Declaration of Indulgence to be read from all the pulpits in their dioceses, Barlow's response was to equivocate – knowing that such equivocation left room for clergy NOT to read it. A letter to one of his clergy dated 29 May 1688 remarks that, 'whether you should, or should not read them, is a question of that difficulty, in the circumstance we now are, that you can't expect that I should so hastily answer it'. He would not seek to persuade or dissuade the writer. 'Only this I shall advise, that, after serious consideration, you find that you cannot read it, but reluctante vel dubitante conscientia, in that case, to read it will be your sin, and you to blame for doing it.' See John Spurr, 'Barlow, Thomas (1608/9-1691). *ODNB*. It was behaviour such as this that persuaded Machell that Barlow was a no more than a casuist.

[83] Thomas Barlow.

[84] Gibson's extended edition of Camden's *Britannia* (to which Machell contributed the additional Westmorland section) alludes only briefly to Barlow: 'The river Lune rising a little above Russendale, runs by Lang-gill, where Dr Barlow late Bishop of Lincoln was born, in April 1607.' See *Camden's Britannia newly translated into English, with large additions and improvements; publish'd by Edmund Gibson* (London, 1695), 'Additions to Westmorland', 811-12.

[I.642A][85]

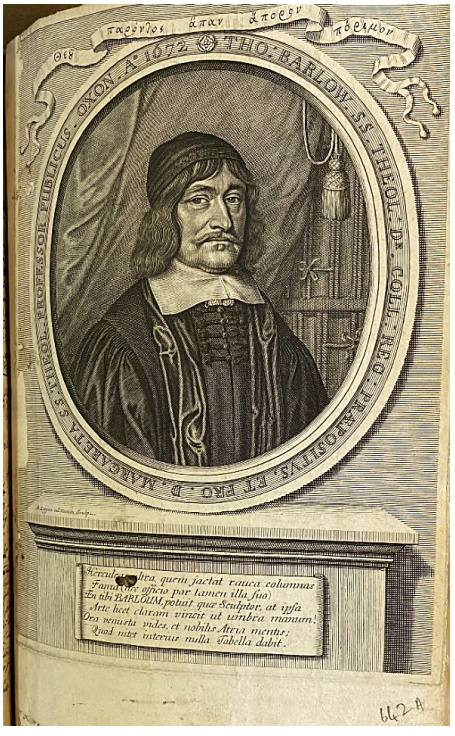


Figure 1.20.5. Engraving. Portrait of Thomas Barlow D.D.
Provost of The Queen's College and Lady Margaret Professor of Divinity, Oxford, in the year 1672. I.642A.

[Legend]

THO BARLOW SS THEOL DR COLL REG PRAEPOSITUS ET PRO D MARGARETA SS THEOL PROFESSOR PUBLICUS OXON AO 1672
THOMAS BARLOW SANCTISSIMAE(?) THEOLOGIAE DOCTOR COLLEGII REGINAE PRAEPOSITUS ET PRO DOMINA MARGARETA SANCTISSIMAE THEOLOGIAE PROFESSOR PUBLICUS OXONIENSIS ANNO 1672[86]

[Verses]

Herculeas quem jactat ultra rauca columnas
Fama (nec officio par tamen illa suo)
En tibi BARLOUM, potuit quae Sculptor, at ipsa
Arte licet claram vincit ut umbra manum!
Ora Venusta vides, et nobilis Atria mentis;
Quod nitet interius nulla Tabella dabit.[87]

[III.303]

[85] This page consists of a copy of David Loggan's engraving (27cm x 17cm) of Thomas Barlow, bound into this part of Machell's MS. The original (240mm x 171mm) was created in 1672. It is displayed in the National Portrait Gallery; see its website online. The Greek text above Barlow's head translates as, 'God being present, everything impossible [is] possible.' The pagination at the foot on the right is 20th century.
[86] 'Thomas Barlow Doctor of Sacred Theology, Provost of The Queen's College, and Lady Margaret Public Professor of Sacred Theology at Oxford in the year 1672.'
[87] 'Behold before you the man whose reputation Fame (though not equal to her task) loudly broadcasts beyond the Pillars of Hercules: BARLOW, such as the sculptor could render him. Yet in the very work he overshadows the artist's hand, illustrious though that be! You see a gracious visage, and the portals of a noble mind; what shines within no image will portray.' Compare with Machell's wry conclusions on I.639, above.

IIII. Bretherdale

The Lordship of Bretherdale: so called, they say, because of 3 bretheren to whom it belongd*.
It has 2 villages or hamlet:
1. Bretherdale. 3 miles S.W. from the church; about XI house; excellent churchmen for freq[uenting] the church & paying their tythes.
2. Dalehead. 3 miles &c. S.W [ab Ecclesia]; about V. houses and som other stragling houses.
No freeholds: customary tenants, arbitrary under my Lord Wharton. But tis said to have belong'd to Byland Abby† or som other religiouse place & so had priviledge of Sanctuary, & keeps Court Leet & Baron at Robert Brinslesses, being Baly[88] at the Dale Foote. They [take] up waif & strayes for Lord Wharton her[e]. They pay nout geld to Apleby Castle‡. Blew rag'd slate: 3 miles S.W. Store of small ash, birkes[89] & underwood. And peets. Som tenants there belong to Crosby Ravensworth but the fines of both Lords I am not assied of.[90]

[Machell's Notes: III.303]

*[Witness] T.
†{?}
‡{Query of George Wilson of Bretherdale.}

[I.406]

[V.] Raisbeck

Raysebeck in the county of Apleby.[91] XXXIII. Henry VIII. [1541-42]. Blenkinsops.
T.B. in his will, amongst his other gifts to religious societyes, Anno 1536. gave 6s 8d to the fryars of Apleby. Month-mynde was a monthly commemoration on which a Trental of mass[92] was sung for the soule of the dead: 37. Henry 8. [1545-46].

[III.205]

[Things remarkable in Orton Parish]

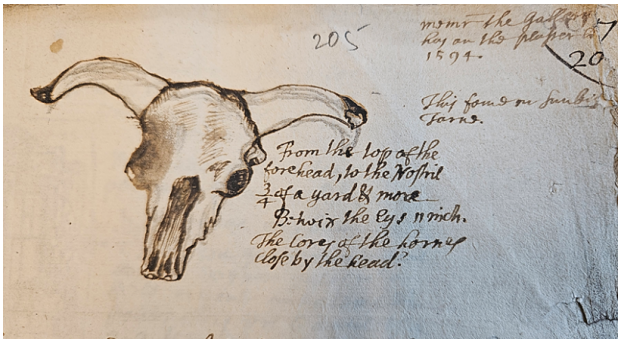


Figure 1.20.6. 'Found in Sunbiging Tarne'. III.205.

This found in Sunbiging Tarne. From the top of the forehead, to the Nostril ¾ of a yard & more – Betwix the eys 11 inch. The cores of the hornes close by the head?

[88] Bailiff.
[89] Ash and birch trees.
[90] Perhaps, 'apprised'.
[91] In the Barony of Appleby.
[92] A 'month's mind' is a requiem mass celebrated circa one month after a person's death in memory of the deceased. Trental: a set of thirty requiem masses, said on the same day or on different days; also, the payment made for this. *OED*.

[III.300]

At Fribigins,[93] 1mile E. from the church, a spring which turnes or breakes milk into a curd.

An horse rase at Beck, 1 mile ½, which is 3 mile turn stoope,[94] every Michaelmas Day for a Flag[on] &c. Given by the neighbourhood.

[III.474A]

There is a well \ on the moore / in a place called ~~on the moore~~ Crosslack, 3 quarters [of a mile] south from the church & within a bowshot of Coatflat, which springs in a bog & is coverd over with a blew skin. The taist differs little from common water, but that it is a little brackish. It is said to cuer soer legs & that it would colour silver like brass, the latter of which I tried to effect but it would not performe it; whether the season of the year was over, it being in October, or the report be false, I would to be farther enquireing.

[III.302]

[Rarities in Nature in Orton Parish]

The River Leun has troutes & som salmon. No limestone in the lordship, which is strange.
Daker hens in this & Orton, like a ~~partridge~~ 2[d] chicken of a blackish brown with white feathers in the wing, and each much like one. In winter they feed in the diches; in sommer in the corne. They have feet like an hen but somthing webd & are amphibious.[95]

[III.300]

Sunbigin Tarn: trouts & eales in great store.
The whol Lordship upon a limestone.\ \Blew /slate at the head of Bretherdale 2 miles W. from the church.
Oker in Orton Skar ½ mile E.[96] {Orton S\k/arr for twice 12 s[c]ore[97] the Glittering clints,[98] being stones that have holes of about a foot more or less, & deep beyond view.} In the S[k]arr are Dotterells, & great store of Moore Game on the Commons \ Lings /. Fine haut land.[99]

[I.639]

[Orton Customs]

They have \ a/ Custom in this parish on the 12[th] Eve, which they call the seeking of the flower in the well; which is performed in this manner:
The mades in the parish dress up a Baby of Cloutes,[100] which they are to hide by some spring well in the parish; & the men, seeking it, if they doe not finde it befor 12 a Clock, are to treat the maides; if they doe, the maides treat them.

[I.640][101]

Allso they use Rush bearing, the maids tyeing [a la]rge nosegay att each corner of the sheet; which [the] young boys ~~can~~ \ endeavour to / snatch away from them ere they gett into the Church; & the made[s] strive to secure them; which if they doe they sett [them] up in the place where their household sit [as a] trophy upon a great victorie.
The former of these Customes is in imitation [of] the Sages seeking Our Saviour,[102] like as the Holly allso, which is not so practicable in this place. And the other has relation to St Johns being in the wilderness & prepareing the way of Our Saviour, making the paths straight. [Testator] L. Blenkinsop.

---

[93] Frere Biggins. According to Nicolson and Burn, 'Below Frerebiggins there is a place called Frere-mire and there is a parcel of turbary called Frere-moss which probably received their names from having belonged to the Friars: see *N&B1*, 482.
[94] A stoop is a marker post. *OED*. Thus, a turn stoop shows where to turn back to the start.
[95] The daker-hen is a corncrake. *OED*.
[96] Presumably ochre: natural earthy material or clay, rich in iron oxides; ochre varies in colour from light yellow to deep orange-red or brown. *OED*.
[97] Unclear text.
[98] Clints: hard or flinty rocks, projecting on the side of a hill or river, or in the bed of a stream. *OED*.
[99] Haut: upland. *OED*.
[100] Clout: cloth, see William Rollinson, *Dictionary of Cumbrian Dialect, Tradition and Folklore* (Otley, 1997), 33.
[101] Because parts of this page have been damaged and repaired, some words are now lost.
[102] See Part 1, Ch.6, Brough, I.171.

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 21]

[Parish of Ravenstonedale]

[I.652]

Ravenstonedale Parish, so calld from the dale wherein the church standes doth comprehend in it Ravenstonedale, which is divided into 3 angles.[1]

[III.305]

{1. Division}

Russendale, anciently ~~&~~ writ Ravstonedale, is but one Lordship, divided in 4 angles. 8 score familyes.

1. Russendale Town \ stands / S.E. 7 from Appelby; Kendale is S. west from it about 14 miles & Sedber S.E. from it 7; Kirk[by Stephen] N. from it, 3 miles. Above XX houses.

2. Newbiging.[2] 1mile N.W. from the church: a little village, well watred. Tarn House: a gentlemans house.[3] Tennant right, about XVI, and other stragling houses. At Tranny Hill House at the far end of Newbiging was born the President of St Johns in Cambridge[4] about 10 year agoe: Thomas Fothergil, a countrymans son, who f[ounded] the school.[5] There is an hamlet near, a little N., calld Brownbur \ or rigg / or som such like, in the way from Kirkby Stephen to Kendal.[6]

A mile & ½ N.W. from Newbigin, the left hand of the way to Appleby

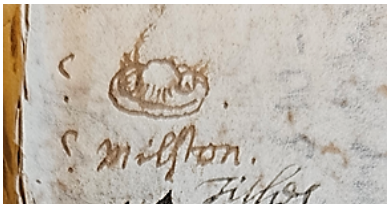


Figure 1.21.1. Sketch of a feature 'a mile & ½ N.W. from Newbigin, the left hand of the way to Appleby'. III.305.

[1] A geographical 'angle' is point of land; a cape, a promontory. Also, more generally (without reference to shape), an outlying region or district of a country, city, etc.; a remote or outlying spot; any section of a larger region. *OED*. Ravenstonedale had four angles or constablewicks: Town Angle, Fell End Angle, Newbiggen Angle and Bowderdale Angle, see III.305 & III.310, below. See also W. Nicholls, *The History and Traditions of Ravenstonedale, Westmorland* (Manchester, 1877), 52.

[2] Newbiggin-on-Lune.

[3] Owned by the Fothergills.

[4] MS: 'C~~h~~ambrid.'

[5] The Fothergill family's fame was summed up by Clement Jones in *A Tour in Westmorland* (1948). 'No record of Ravenstonedale would be complete without mention of the Fothergill family … Fothergills have been resident here for four centuries, and many of them have risen to distinction. In the reign of Henry VIII, Sir William Fothergill was standard bearer to his neighbour Sir Thomas Wharton at the battle of Sollum [Solway] Moss [1542]. George Fothergill of Tarn House, who died in 1681, was Clerk of the Peace for Westmorland. Thomas Fothergill of Brownber, who founded the endowed school at Ravenstonedale c.1688, was master of St. John's College, Cambridge … The Fothergills were large landowners and had three separate estates in the parish - Tarn House, Brownber and Lockholme.' Clement Jones, *A Tour in Westmorland* (Kendal, 1948), Ch.6.

[6] Brownber. It is interesting that Machell did not appear to recognise the name, as it is given in the answers to his queries on III.310. It is instructive that Machell also failed to mention a famous resident of Brownber: Elizabeth Gaunt, the Baptist daughter of Anthony Fothergill, who was the last woman in England to be burned at the stake (in 1685, at Tyburn), having been implicated in the Rye House Plot to murder Charles II and his brother, James: see Melinda Zook, *Protestantism, Politics and Women in Britain, 1660-1714* (Basingstoke, 2013), 50-54.

3. Bouderdale. 1 mile &c. W.; stragling houses: about XXX. Leun springs hear, above half a mile distant from Lang\ gill*/ where Bishop Barlow was born.

4. Fell End Angl. 2 \ or 3 / miles S.E.†.

[2. The Church]

The church is an old \ conventual Church / Building,[7] 30 yards long from the Steeple exclusively to the east end of the Quire, & 12 yards broad, with a row of 3 substant[ial] round pillar & 4 arches just in the midle. On the south side of the Altar is a piece allotted by dispensation of Bishop Potter for teaching \ a / School.[8] {The Steeple low, & bro[ad] which makes it seem the low[er]. 3 good bells in it: pretty tunable (a Gallery) & clock.}
And on the N. side has bin a large Quadrangle, the inner court being 20 yards square, as may yet be seen \ by the Ruines, / the bredth of the rooms about 6 or 7 yards, with vaultes underneath them, som of which are yet very visible, next to the Quier, with ribed arches. & a doer appears on the outside of the church, where they have had an enterance.[9]

{Dedication?}
{The Prior & Convent of the monastery of Watton in the Diocess of York ordinis de Sempyngham,[10] who had possession of & shewd their Title to the church there to John Bishop of Carliol, whereupon he absolved them a[b] impetitione officij 1^{0} Jan[ua[ry. Cause 4^{0} Halt[on], p.357 […]}[11]

A spatiouse piece of plane level ground behind these ruines is calld the Orchard. Over the water on the East side of it, som houses & closes called the Waincards, \ forsan Wain-gards Closes, / and over the way, on the W. side of it, 2 large pieces of ground \ Closes / calld the Colt Parke; and beyond this a bridge which is called Cowhouse Bridge; above

[7] Conventual: of or belonging to a religious convent. *OED*.
[8] Barnaby Potter DD (bap. 1577, d. 1642), bishop of Carlisle, son of Thomas Potter, mercer and alderman of Kendal, Westmorland. He graduated BA from Queen's College, Oxford, 1599, proceeded MA 1602, and was elected fellow in 1604. In 1616 he was elected provost by the fellows of Queen's, which post he held for 10 years. A persistent Calvinist, he was nevertheless liked by Charles I, who appointed him chief almoner to the Crown in 1628. He was consecrated bishop of Carlisle in 1629, but resided much of the time in the South of England. See A. Hegarty, 'Potter, Barnaby (bap. 1577, d. 1642), bishop of Carlisle'. *ODNB*.
[9] There is a Latin phrase in the margin here: 'Dominus religiosus, …ue mannerij' but it is too close to the gutter to be read accurately.
[10] 'Of the Order of Sempringham.' The Order of Sempringham (Gilbertine Order of Canons Regular) had its origin in 1131 when St Gilbert of Sempringham (1085-1189) left the household of the bishop of Lincoln to return to serve the parish church of Sempringham, of which he was rector. The only completely English religious order, it closed during the Dissolution of the Monasteries. The life of St. Gilbert is recorded in Dugdale's *Monasticon*. VII, 5-29, but the original source for all accounts is the *Vita*, written shortly after Gilbert's death in 1189 by a canon of Sempringham and presented to the Pope along with accounts of miracles so that Gilbert might be declared a saint, which he was in 1202. The *Vita* was probably exaggerated to emphasise the obstacles that Gilbert overcame to be worthy of sainthood. See a Latin version through the BL Online, and an English translation in Raymonde Foreville and Gillian Keir (eds), *The Book of St Gilbert* (Oxford, 1997.) I owe much of this information to the generosity of Jackie Wedd of Ravenstonedale Parish History Group (author of *Ravenstonedale and the Gilbertines*, forthcoming), for which I thank her.
[11] The page has perished here; the text is unclear. The date (possibly 1327) is too indistinct to quote with certainty. 'Impetitio' is a Latin legal term which means 'action to establish claim, or interference with title', see R.E. Latham, *Revised Medieval Word-List from British and Irish Sources* (Oxford, 1989: 1st edn, 1965), 237. Disputes between the see of Carlisle and the priory (under the priory of Watton, Yorkshire) occurred during the late 13th century, when the bishop of Carlisle absolved the priory of Watton of an accusation of interference: 'ab impetitione officii'. See the Deed, 'magistri de Sempyngham', in W.N. Thompson (ed.), *Register of John de Halton* (London, 1913), 211-12. The bishop of Carlisle concerned was Robert de Chause (Chauncy: bishop of Carlisle c.1258-78) but the deed was recorded in Bishop Halton's Register (1292 to 1324), see CAC(C), DRC/1/1. See also P. Turnbull and D. Walsh, 'Monastic Ruins at Ravenstonedale', *CW2*, 92 (1992), 67-76, at 67.

[Machell's Notes: III.305]

*{?}
†{Orton Bound[er]} Query the course.

[III.306]

and beneath the which bridge are to be got large blew marble-stones – which will rise of great Length & Breadth for grave stones – in the Town End beck which runns by E. end of the church. And there is another beck calld Caudbeck where they may be got also out of the river. {N.B. The lower bridge at Mallerstang Town is all of marbell, & so most part of that angle.}

[III.308]

[Presentation]
Russendale, a Peculiar.[12]
Lord Wharton: Lord; Bishop: patrone; parson: vicar. No institution nor induction.

[III.306]

{Nominatio Incumbentis}[13]
Know all men by these presents that I, Philip Lord Wharton, Baron of Wharton in the county of Westm'land, do hereby constitute, authorise and appoint Anthony Proctor Clerke,[14] to be Curate of the church of Ravenstonedale in the said county of Westm'land. And to officiate there, & to take & make probat of wills, & exercise all rights & jurisdictions, & to receive all profits of the curate or curacy there belonging, dureing my pleasure.
Given under my hand & seal at Arms the 24 day of June in the 25 year of the Reigne of Our Sovereign Lord Charles 2, by the Grace of God, of England, Scotland, France & Ireland, King, Defender of the Faith &c. Anno q' Dom' 1673.
P. Wharton.[15]

{Tithes}
Corn, woll, lamb &c. in kinde, and money for hay; due to Lord Wharton \ some time. / 420 lambs, 21 calves per annum. 30 li per annum corne. Hay under 20 li for half annum. The costs, he has settled more on the minister of Russendale, but not taken effect. Threshfield near Skipton 12^{li} per annum exhib[ition].

[III.308]

Glebe
One Green gave 2 acres the orchard.[16] One Chamberlin ~~the money that purchased the Orchard~~ \ ~~2 acres~~ / {2 acre ½, & ½ \ r[ood] /} 6^{li} per annum, for which he payes old rent but no fine. {Both of this parish.} His predecessor Mr \ Thomas / Dodshun,[17] had 20[li]; & so Mr Procter till Mart[inmas] [16]88, now 8^{li}, surplice fees & prob[ates] of will by right.

[12] 'Russendale Peculiar' appears at right angles to the text on this page. A 'Peculiar' is an ecclesiastical district (usually a parish) outside the jurisdiction of archbishop, bishop or archdeacon. Peculiars were entitled to hold their own courts and before 1858 they proved wills of people who owned property in their respective districts. See Giles Jacob, *A New Law Dictionary* (London, 2nd edn, 1732), PE.
[13] Text of the deed of appointment of the curate of Ravenstonedale by the patron, Philip, Lord Wharton.
[14] For Anthony Procter's answers to Machell's queries, see below, III.309-11.
[15] The MS depicts Lord Wharton's seal here, but it is too close to the gutter to be reproduced clearly.
[16] MS: '1 Green gave 2 acres the orchard.'
[17] Thomas Dodgson was ordained deacon in 1624. He appears in Ravenstonedale parish records of in 1628 and 1636; he was was buried in 1672/3. Anthony Procter was curate of Ravenstonedale from c.1673; he became rector of Dean in Cumberland in 1689. In his early career he seems to have been a nonconformist and it is instructive that he was appointed to Ravenstonedale by Lord Wharton. See R.W. Metcalfe, *The Ravenstonedale Parish Registers* (Kendal, 1894), Vol. III, Introduction, v-vii. In a biography of Wharton, Bryan Dale opined that although Wharton was a puritan, he was not necessarily Presbyterian in the strict sense, being drawn to Protestant Dissenters generally, including Independents and others. For example, in the Westminster Assembly of Divines, Wharton acted with the Independents in opposition to the Presbyterians. See Bryan Dale, *The Good Lord Wharton* (London, 1906), 130.

[3. Other Buildings of note]

[Tarn House]
The best house in this angle and the whol parish is Tern House, belonging to the Fothergills, with a neat & uniform hall, & the only slated house in the Lordship, there being no slates to be had in the parish.
These Armes are over the tower at Tern House, and the letters underneath them: G. F. – I. F. 1664.[18]



Figure 1.21.2: Tern [Tarn] House. Coats of Arms. III.306.

[Key]
1.
2.
3.
4. The same as the 3rd.
5.

[Machell's Notes: III.306 and III.307]
Query of Mr Shaw: what fellowships in St John's College Cambridge belonging to Westm'land or if confined to any particular place or school there: Mr Calvert, schoolmaster.[19]
{Query of William Wharton of Mallerstang: his strange passage from Piper Cross to Cautley-Spoote in Russendale.}
[III.307] {Feb. 26 1688/9} {Mr Proctor, Rector of Mallerstang; [Testator:] George Haton of Wharton.}

[III.308]

[Meeting House]
In Russendale Town, S. ab Ecclesia ½ a quarter of a mile, near the midle of ~~it is~~ the East Row stands ~~a meeting house, being~~ an house lately purchased & put in repare by Philip, Lord Wharton & his discenting tenants in 1691 \ for a meeting house which is / vastly distant from the church but not far from the alehouse.[20] A man was slane \ at the repareing of it / by a piece of timber, so that its

[18] Dated 1664 on a door lintel. Marginalia here provide two pencilled sketches with initials G.F. & I.F. (George Fothergill and his wife Julian).
[19] James Calvert: deacon 1685; priested 1689; master of Ravenstonedale Free Grammar School, 1684-89. Possibly a graduate of Pembroke College, Cambridge (entered 1682, BA 1683-84). See CCED, & Cambridge Alumni Online at Ancestry.com.
[20] Philip, fourth Baron Wharton (1613-1696), the prominent parliamentarian and nonconformist, enabled Christopher Jackson (ejected from Crosby Garrett church after the Act of Uniformity) to build a meeting house at Ravenstonedale in 1662. Lord Wharton then bequeathed £100 in trust to purchase land in the dale to provide an income for him and his successors. Wharton Hall, approximately four miles from Ravenstonedale village, was a rendezvous for the ejected ministers in the district, who presumably preached in the meeting-house: see Nicholls, *Ravenstonedale*, 47, 119; see also S. Kelsey, 'Wharton, Philip, fourth Baron Wharton, politician'. *ODNB*.

foundation, like that of old Roome,[21] was not without blood. Thus, the Lord Wharton continue in blindness – in hunc usque.[22]

4. {The Parke}

{A parke with high wall, 10 feet high, ½ a mile long, ½ mile broad; [valued at]100^{li} per annum; never stocked with deer.}[23]

[III.307]

They tell a story here (& confirm it in the Lordship of Wharton by general tradition) that one old Wharton toke the town field to make the parke on, & ~~put~~ \ gave / the tenants ~~of to~~ \ land in / other part of the common.[24] And when it was walled, rideing to see it & going over Asfell on a vere fair, sunshineing day, he complained it was misty, that he could not see, & were struck blinde so that he could never see it, but rid to the wall & struck upon it with his stick, & so never saw it. {There has bin about the parke very high walls}. A very foolish tale.[25]

And that he had a footman called Gerrard, who was to run the bounder of Russendale \ twixt sun & sun / and began at the place where the cross stands on Parke wall, N. from Russendale about a mile from it; and came within the time, but being \ far / spent, he came so near as to throw his staff to the place where he began, & there fell down dead; upon which occasion that cross was erected and is called by the name Gerrard Cross to this very day*.

{Parke in fables}

A gentleman hunting with hounds in Newbiging Field, found an hare in Russendale Parke an ran her / E. unto the Lee lands, where a woman was skaleing mould hills.[26] & they, running in amongst the hounds to catch the hare, it lept into the woman's skirt [and] got into her lap; and he, comeing in, tooke it from her & carried it home, not know[ing] her to be with childe.[27] But the woman was afterwards ~~brought in bed of~~ \ delivered of / an hare {Partus Leporarius[28]}, the foote part like an hare foot, part like a child; nor known whether male or female, but went longer than ordinary by 8 or 9 weeks. About 26 years agoe. {Ellin Hardlow. Of Nether. 1^{t} bir[th], 6 children after.}[29]

[5. Hills and Fells]

{Raset Norwest Angle} {White limestone stones}

At Raset Pike[30] – a hill somewhat resembling the roof of an house – which lyes from the church 2 mile & ½ N. & in Appelby Way†, one Thomas Scaife of Crosby Garret, having dreamed of tresure ~~found~~ hid in that hill, he got som neighbours to goe along with \ him, / & digging several hoales therein, he found a stone coffin made with 3 stones like to a sheep trough \ & another laid over / wherein were ashes & \ som / boanes of a man, like the links of a man's back, & som round ends of

---

[21] Ancient Rome.

[22] 'Right up to this moment.' Wharton died in 1696, see n. above.

[23] The deer park was created by the first Lord Wharton in 1560: see Mark Blackett-Ord, 'Lord Wharton's deer-park walls', *CW2*, 86 (1986), 133-39, at 133. For the manner in which it was enclosed, see also Nicholls, *Ravenstonedale,* 24-27. The wall was nine feet high.

[24] Nicholls remarks, 'Many of the honest yeomen were uprooted to secure the park, for at that time it was the most thickly populated part of the parish, and they were compelled to be satisfied with parcels of land widely separated from each other and to live in a very precarious way … In reading the old records, I have been impressed with the fact that the appropriation of the land was a sore trial.' Nicholls, *Ravenstonedale*, 27.

[25] This sentence was written in a different hand, probably that of William Nicolson. See the Editor's Introduction; see also Adam Fox, 'Vernacular Culture and Popular Customs in Early Modern England: Evidence from Thomas Machell's Westmorland', *Cultural and Social History* 3 (2012), 329-47, at 343.

[26] 'Skaling' mole hills: scattering or dispersing them. *OED*.

[27] MS: 'A gentleman hunting with ~~greyhound~~ \ hounds / in Newbiging Field \ found an hare in Russendale P[ark]e an ran her / E. ~~of the hare~~ unto the Lee lands, where a ~~man &~~ woman were Skaleing mould hills, & they running in amongst the hounds to take \ catch / the hare, it ~~lept into the woman's skirt~~ \ got into her lap / and he, comeing in, tooke it from her & carried it home, not know her to be with childe.'

[28] 'Delivery of a hare.'

[29] Another related margin comment has mostly perished.

[30] Rayseat Pike.

b[one] not reduced to ashes, which, when they broake them, they were somewhat reddish within. The coffin was all white within as if it had bin don over with plaster, and the ashes were white‡.[31]

[Machell's Notes: III.307]

*[Testators] {George Haton, Len Wharton.}
†{?}
‡Seen & relate by George Haton, Wharton.

[III.308]

{Great Raset}
There is an hill in this parish, called Great Raset, which is in circumference about 60 yards, & is called Great for distinctions sake from Little Raset, which lyeth from it N.W. ½ a mile & is onely a bounder marker. For at this Little Raset (if I mistake not?) the Lordship of Smardale which lyeth north of it, the Lordship of Kirk[by Stephen] & Wateby on the east, & the Lordship of Wharton, which is E. & South E., all meet together *.

[Wild Boar Fell]
{Dowfin sty: a lingy place.}
A wild boar. A dog dowfin.[32]
Wilbright-Fell, the Countis seat. She made a chape[l] of huen stone there; now pulled down.
The place at Chapple was at Newbiging, at a place calld Chapple, but a barn built of the stones.

[6. Things remarkable in the Parish]

{Lapis Igneis}[33]
John Hunters man of Bowberhead, going to fother the cattle on a snowy morning, saw something like a coate of fier lying near the cowhouse, which for fear ~~of~~ that mischief might be don by it, hasted to put ~~it~~ out. But when he came at it ~~he~~ found it to be a stone of the bigness and shape of a goose egg, but transparent & representing diverse coulours to the eyes when he held it betwixt him & the light. But when it lay at a distance in a window or any darke roome, it shined like fier†.

Molae trusatiles[34] in a gill a mile S. of Russendale – a little milston worn out – a kanke[35] by the water. Firr rootes also, about 9 yards spred, & oake in the mosses.

[Machell's Query: III.308]

*Query the whether at the great [or] Little Raset.
†{Mr Waller. Query farther of Mr Waller, who inform'd him; for I have enquired at Bowber and they know nothing of it} Tis said that old Mr Fothergill saw it, but how it was lost I cannot tell. Query: of John Hunter.
Query of a bulls head found in a peat moss at Russendale; yet to be seen at Wharton Hall.[36]

———————

III.305

{Customs & Privileges}
A childe, 7. set tenant.[37]
A man dying & leaveing a minor (under 16); if it dye afore 16 tis infant forfeit.
If a man die without Isue & make no will, tis forfeit.

[31] For descriptions of remains found on Rayseat see III.309, below; see also Nicholls, *Ravenstonedale*, 106.
[32] Dauphine Stye. The mountain at the head of Ravenstonedale 'bears the name of Wild-boar Fell, and is 2,323 feet high. The name is supposed to be derived from the wild boars which used to abound there; and in confirmation of this there is a road just under the summit called Dauphine Stye.' Nicholls, *Ravenstonedale*, 104.
[33] 'Firestone.'
[34] Hand (push, pull) grain-mills.
[35] Possibly 'cank' or 'cankstone': a hard, ferruginous sandstone. *OED*. Termed also a 'useless mix of rotten stone found in quarries' by Joseph Wright, *The English Dialect Dictionary* (London, 1898-1905), I, 505.
[36] Cf. Part 1, Chapter 20, Orton, III.205.
[37] Unclear numeral.

They may have a jury of assent & consent to end any differences betwixt 2 tennants: summoned and sworn by balif.}[38]

[III.309][39]

[7. Machell's Ravenstonedale Parish Questionnaire answered by Anthony Prockter, curate, and George Fothergill]

An Answer to the First Querie

{1. Ratio Nom[in]us}[40]
The parish commonly called Russendaile is (and anciently haith beene) written Ravenstondaile. There is a stone in a place of that parish called Scanda, having the print of a raven's foot upon it, and a hill adjoyning to it called Ravens Seate-hill, from which it's said the parish haith taken its name.

{2. Perambulatis; boundes}
The parish is a peculiar within the Diocess of Carlile and bounded as followeth, vizt. Begining at a place called Bouderdaile south west, and as the watter of Bouderdaile runns till it comes into the watter of Tebey and by or through Asancions and so to Blatarne;[41] thence unto Rassett[42] (wheare a great many dead mens bones have beene digged out of two round hills) where severall tomes[43] of a rude fashon doth appeare and ~~great~~ bones (both men's skulls and other bones) found of an extrordinarie strength and greatness.[44] \ It / doth appear the bodeys have not beene buried east and west but round about each Hill the heads all lying upwards towards the hill tops {N.B. ad Rassett} and as far as haith beene discovered their hands have been laide upon there brests.[45] There remains noe tradition \ or tract[46] / what the place haith beene. The hills are in form of a piramid or some thing ressembling a sugerlofe (onley broder cas[t]en at the basses). And so along to Couling-Stones adjoyning upon the parish of Crossby Garret upon the North; from thence to Sceat becke, and so into Smardaile becke, till it come at Smardaile-Flatt; and from that, till it come on the highest place on Asfell,[47] and so to Tarnewath hole adjoyning upon the parish of Kirkby Stephen upon the East; from thence (as Kirkby Stephen Way goes) till it comes at Scandaile-watter and up that watter as it assendeth unto a pathway that goes to Mallerstang-Scarth, and then on the top of Will-brough or Wildbore Fell, and so on to the head of the watter of Uldaile; and as that watter runns till it comes into the watter of Rathay upon the South, which devids it from the parish of Sedbergh and also which \ it / divides Westm'rland from Yorkeshire; and so to betwixt Walkingham and Keldon and so \ to / the head of Bouderdaile where wee begane.[48]

Answer to the Second Querie

{3. Figura}[49]
The forme of it is ovell, or oblong; and it is about 5 miles in length from Rathay[50] bridg to Bouderdaile-foote; and in bredth from Asfell upon the North-east, to the bacside of Greene-bell upon the South-west, about two miles and a halfe.

---

[38] Ravenstonedale was a parochial peculiar; it made its own probate rules; see fn.12.
[39] This page is Curate Proctor's answer to Machell's set of queries, therefore not in Machell's hand. It was countersigned by George Fothergill, a leading inhabitant.
[40] Meaning of the place-name.
[41] Asancions [Ascensions] is unclear.
[42] Rayseat. NY693084.
[43] 'tombs'.
[44] See Nicholls, *Ravenstonedale*, 106.
[45] For this description, see also Camden, *Britannia* (Gough edn,1789), 162: 'At Rasate in Ravenstonedale parish, not far from Sunbiggin tarn, are two tumuli, in which have been found many skeletons laid round about the hills, with the heads all lying upwards towards the hill top, and the hands on the breasts.'
[46] These interlineated words are unclear.
[47] Ash Fell.
[48] Question marks appear in the left-hand margin relating to text from 'Mallerstang-scarth' to 'from Yorkshire'.
[49] The shape of the parish.
[50] The text has perished here, but the word appears to be 'Rath/Roth' followed by 'ay' = Rathay/Rothay.

Answer to the 3 Querie

{3. Solum}[51]

The soyle is of severall sorts, and the worth accordingly, but for most that upon a lime ston, and in some places yields lead oare, marle of severall ~~cabels~~ colours, and fullers earth. The soyle in genrall more apt for medow and pasture then corne. Peats and turfe for fyring good store; about a mil[e]s[52] distance from it, sevrall villages or hamlets.

[III.310]

Answer to the 4th and 5th Queries

{4. Dedicatio}

The church is said to be dedicatted to St Oswould, \ and is / but antient bulding covred with lead, \ haveing / one row of pillars, a square steeple, ~~and have~~ \ with / 3 bells \ in it. It was / indowed, as it seames by some evidence without date, by one Thorfin or Thorphinus, son of Robert, the son of Copsus.[53]

{Copsuss
|
Robert
|
Thorphin}[54]

And the whole parish made a sanctuary and, confirmed by Pope Celestine 2th,[55] and Honorius the 3d,[56] who also mad it tyth free*, ~~and~~ belonged to the abbey of Watton. This sanctuary extended to the bounds of the whole parish† and was indowed with a great many freedoms and privileges extraordinary, the most whereof \ are / now extinct.[57]

{6. Delatio et?}[58]

The whole rectory is an impropriation belonging to the Lord Wharton, who allows the Curate \ a stipend / of 20li per annum and the surplice fees and fees of the Peculiar, amounting to about 5li per

[51] Latin: 'ground'.
[52] Unclear word.
[53] Interlineation to this point is in Machell's hand, editing Procter's text.
[54] In Machell's hand. According to Nicholls, 'Documentary evidence shows that in the year 1336 the manor of Ravenstonedale, with the advowson, was given by one Torphin to the Priory of Watton, of the order of Sempringham. Burns and Nicholson … say, "The tenor of Torphin's grant, including the manor, with the advowson appendent, is set forth in an account given to the Rev. Thomas Machel by Mr. Anthony Prockter, curate of Ravenstonedale, and Mr. George Fothergill of Tarn house, as also in a manuscript, written in the year 1645, by Anthony Fothergill, of Trannahill, great grandfather of the late Mr. Anthony Fothergill, of Brownber, whose account was taken from an office copy of the charter of donation remaining amongst the evidences in the tower or palace of the late abbey of St. Mary, without the walls of York; which tower was blown up with gunpowder by Oliver Cromwell in the year 1644, and this, with many other valuable charters belonging to the religious houses, was thereby destroyed and lost. The said charter was in English as follows: Know all men present, and to come, that I, Torphin, son of Robert, son of Copsus, have given, and by this my charter confirmed to God and the blessed virgin, and all the holy men serving God in the monastery of Watton, all the whole vill. of Ravenstonedale, with that part of the vill. called Newbiggin, with the boundaries and limits thereof, as well without the vill. as within; that is to say, from the head of Beversdale, as the water of Beversdale runs, till it comes into the water of Tebey; and from thence by Hanscus to the Blea Tarn; and from thence into Rasett, and so to Couling stones, and from Couling stones to Skeat beck runs into Smerdale beck; and so by Smerdale beck till it comes to Smerdale flatt, and from thence till it come to the highest place on Ash Fell; and so to Tarnwarth hole; and from Tarnwarth hole, as Kirkby way goes, till it come at Scandal water, and so going up that water into a path-way that goes to Mallerstang scarth; and then on the top of Wild-boar Fell to the head of the water of Ulnedale; and as the water of Ulnedale runes till it comes into the water of Rothay, and as the water of Rothay runs till it come betwixt Washingham and Keldon, and from thence to the head of Beversdale."' Nicholls, *Ravenstonedale*, 17-18; *N&B1*, 518.
[55] Pope, 1143-44.
[56] Pope, 1216-27.
[57] The privilege of sanctuary was abolished in criminal cases in 21. James I. c.28 §7 (1625): *OED*.
[58] Delatio: 'grant/stipend'.

annum. The vallue of the whole tythe is about 120^{li} per annum and haith belonged to the Lord Whartons family ever since the desolution of Abbeys.
There is also belonging to the curats maintenance 5^{li} and given by \ Mr / George Fothergill of Tarnhouse inn Ravensondaile and charged pon his customary rents of his mannor of Bleaytarne in the parish of Warcop. Also, a parcell of ground adjoyning to the back-side of the church, called the Orchard, given by Anthony Fothergill of Tranyhill[59] and one Bovell and others in Ravenstondaile to the church ther. And also 2 acres scituate on a hill called Haber in Ravenstondaile Towne Field, and halfe an acre in a place called Muffell-Gill given to the church forever by one William Chamberlain of Waingarths.[60]

6th Querie answered

{Domus rect.}[61]
There is a Curat's house near the church in the northend of the towne of Ravenstondaile, which house is thatched with stray,[62] in tollarable repayer; and one barne latley builded near to the watter called Scandall, three miles distant from the market of Kirkby Stephen. There is a parke within the said parish, belonging to the Lord Wharton, inclossed with a fayer stone wall neare 4 yards high, a mill adjoyning to it. The whole parish is but one mannor and houlden of the Lords Wharton, who haith priveleg of keeping Court Leet and Court Barron \ & probat of wills. / Ther is also adjoyning to the backside of the church, some vaults and ruiens of out buildings, which \ as / tis said did belong the Sanctuary.

Chapter 2th Querie 7th

{Divisio}
The lord haith wafieffes, strays, fellons goods and customary finable rents, but no Aincent Mannor house. The parish is devided into 4 constablewicks (commonly called angles). There is a free school belonging to the said parish, lately erected and endowed by Mr Thomas Fothergill, lately President of St John's Coledg in Cambridge (who was borne at Brownber in the said parish) and others of his name and kindred, the stipend amounting to 20^{li} per annum and upwards, which tooke its beginning the 8th day of January Anno Domini 1676, and Mr John Metcalfe, the present schoolmaster, was presented to the same by Mr Fothergill abovesaid.

[Machell's Notes: III.310]
*{? This is not so for they pay […] in kinde … moneys for hay. TM. See my other notes.[63]
†I doubt of this. It might […] the church & Religious house adjoyneing}[64]

[III.311]

{? Notatu dignum motu}[65]
There is a spring or well at the north end of Nubigin Town[66] in the said parish, formerly called St Helen's well (whear an ould chappell is said to have stood) that ebs and flowes every day; and another about halfe a quarter of a mile from Tarnhouse on the west side in the said parish, of a bituminous tast, which haith beene found medicinable for several sores and diseasses.
There is also a tarne or lough at Ravenstondale Towne head, that haith store of perches and eles in it. It is said to be 7 fathoms deep.

[59] Trannahill.
[60] In 1651, a case brought before Ravenstonedale Peculiar Court concerned William Chamberlain, who had left his tenement to his son Stephen on condition that he paid £60 out of it towards the maintenance of the minister. This money was to be invested in a way that Stephen Chamberlain and the jurors thought fit, which was in land in Hober and Mufflegill; the Lord's rent on it was to be 2s per annum. It was later alleged that Stephen Chamberlain had retained one rood (¼ acre) from the minister, the Rev. Mr Dodson., whereupon the jury, deciding against Stephen Chamberlain, requested him to yield the rood: Nicholls, *Ravenstonedale*, 56.
[61] Rectory house.
[62] Scottish: 'strai, stray'; English dialect: 'strey' = straw. *OED*.
[63] This margin comment is partly obscured by the binding.
[64] This comment is partly obscured by the binding. The binding is particularly stiff here.
[65] 'Worthy of note in its motion?' This question was posed by Machell in the margin.
[66] Newbiggin-on-Lune.

It's likewise said the precincts of this parish is free from all veniomus stinging or bitting creaturs.[67] There are in the High Street leeding from Kirkby Stephen to Sedbergh (near Rathay bridg), maney Great Stoons sett in a circle, and by some called one of King Arthurs Round tables.

In all the rest[68] wherein we are silent, you may take it for granted wee had nothing to say pertinent or warrantable.
Anthony Prockter, Curatt
George Fothergill, ~~Clerke of P~~

[III.312][69]

8. [Notes on] Ravenstonedale Parish; brought to me at Xmas 1679[70]

Q. The mon[ument] in the church. Stone. John Hunter (80) of Brownber Head.
Birth.[71] Isabel Pinder Near Newbiging. Raset.[72]
? Lapis Igneus.[73] Jon Hunter of Bowerbanke.
? Partus Leporarius[74] Isabel Pinder near Raset & Newbiging.

Ravensheved:
Ravens stone?
Ravensworth?

Raset
Raset, 60 yeare about, calld Great Raset in opposition to another (½ a mile N.W. from hence) calld Little Raset. At this the Lordship of Smerdale on the North; Wateby \ & / K. on the East; Wharton E. & S.E.[75]

[67] A mark of sanctity: cf. St Patrick.
[68] Referring to other queries.
[69] This page is the reverse of a page of Proctor's answers, later used by Machell when scribbling his responses.
[70] This page is headed 'Antiquities of Ravenstonedale 1677', in Proctor's hand, but instead was used for Machell's notes. Additionally, there is a pencilled draft description of Ravenstonedale Meeting House, not transcribed because it appears in ink on III.308,
[71] MS: 'John Hunter (80) of Brownber Head. Birth …? for John Hunter of Brownb~~anke~~\ err /'. See III.308.
[72] Isabel Pinder. For another reference to this lady – 'Isabel Pinder, midwife, near Rasset and Newbiggin' – see Part 1, Ch.13, Kirkby Stephen, 'Story of a late conjurer in Kirkby', III.194.
[73] 'Firestone.' See III.308.
[74] 'Delivery [birth] of a hare.' See III.307.
[75] This sentence is written faintly in pencil and crossed through. One word is very unclear.

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 22]

[Parish of Shap]

[III.313]

[Notes on] Shap. Parish. Abby.

The Parish of Shap, anciently Hep from the plenty of \ heps alias / choupes growing in that place;[1] {or rather from the Saxon Chepan or Chep: a market}[2] is bounded on the E. [blank]; on the west [blank].[3] To Shap Church belongs Shap, Hardendale, Rosegill, Sleddall, Waistall, Mardale and Shap Abby.

[Division, ab Ecclesia]
The Lordship of Shap; Manner of Sleddale \ S.W. 1 mile & ½; / Thorneship hamlet ½ a mile {?}; Keld \ hamlet ½ a mile. /

[Fair]
The 1[t] fair at Shap was the 23 of September 1687.[4]

[Town of Shap. Dr John Mill]
The town of Shap gave life to the learned Dr John Miln, somtimes fellow of Q[ueen's] Coll. in Oxford \ Prebendary of ~~Chi~~ Exeter / & Chaplain in Ordinary to K. Charles the 2[nd] & afterward Principle of \ St / Edmon[d] Hall \ Oxon, & Parson of Bletchington near O[xford].[5] He maryed Pric[i]la,[6] one of the daughters of Sir Edward Palmer of [Blank] Baronet about the beginning of April 1684, who dyed within a year, and left him a good estate in money but not any Isue.

[III.313]

[The Church]

The steple \ is towerwise / within 4 passes square, having a clock & 3 bells in it,[7] \ but the battlements, both of it & the church, {so exceeding low that the des[…]}[8]
The body of the church is in length 16 paces, broad 12, with a row of 3 smal round piller, 2 pillasters, & betwixt them 5 halfe round arches. And at the end of the S[outh] Ile is a large pew called Resgil Quier \ & / in the E. window of the same quier is a piece [of] broken but late painted glass, the remainder or fragment of a coate of armes: namely: On the Crist of an Helmet, a Semidragon Vert isuing out of a wreath Argent & Vert*. & something like the paw of a Drag[on] seemes to have bin in the Scutchion also. The pavement is with irregular limestone: Rep[air] indif[ferent].

---

[1] Choop, Choup, Chupe: the fruit of the wild briar, or dog-rose. *Dictionaries of the Scots Language*. Online.
[2] This margin comment is written in a different (possibly18th-century) hand.
[3] Shap: hēap 'heap, pile', might denote 'a heap of stones', from the ruins of an important megalithic monument, a stone circle, which lies on the main road up Shap Fell a mile south of the town, and a line of stones, amongst which are Goggleby Stone and Thunder Stone. 'The change of hēap or hēp to Yhep, Yhap and then to Shap, arises from stress-shifting in the diphthong and the substitution of Sh - for Hy': see *Westmorland Place-Names*.
[4] 'A charter for a market and 3 annual fairs (23 & 24 April, 1 & 2 August, 17 & 18 September) was obtained on 24 June 1687, by Philip Lord Wharton, and on 14 December 1687, Lord Wharton, in consideration of one year's customary rent paid by the tenants, granted freedom from toll to them and their heirs.' *N&B1*, 477.
[5] John Mill was rector of Bletchingdon near Kidlington in Oxfordshire from 1682 to 1707. Oxford Record: Mill, Queen's Coll., matric. 14 Nov. 1661, aged 16 (as Milne); BA 1666, MA 1669, BD 1680, DD 1681, as Mill; principal St Edmund Hall 1685-1707; biblical critic 'known as Dr Mill'; chaplain to Thomas Lamplugh, bishop of Exeter, and minor canon 1677; chaplain in ordinary to Charles II; canon of Canterbury 1704; died 23 June 1707. CCED.
[6] Priscilla. See Machell's correspondence with Mill: 'Dr Mil about his marriage with Priscilla the daughter of Sir Edward Palmer', in Part 3, Ch.2, Correspondence, I.313B.
[7] In the MS, this sentence is repeated.
[8] The margin comment comes to an abrupt halt here.

The Quier is l[ength] 10; broad 6. The East […][9] window stands irregular to the N. side & not in the midle, & has 3 lights in it – in the 2 first of which are these coates of arms. [1st] Argent, Gules.

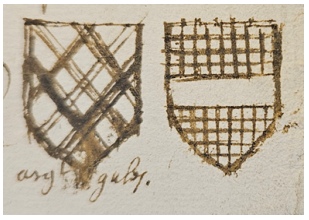


Figure 1.22.1. Shap Church. Coats of arms. III.313.

[Machell's Notes: III.313 and III.315}

*(Q. if not Lowther? Non.)
[III.315] [10]
b.12}
l. 16} round pillars x3
l. 16}
b. 6} steple 4 sq. 3 bells, clock
east windo[w] 3 lights to the N. side.
In the [first coat of arms] Argent & Gules.
In the [blank] Clifford.
Rosgil Quier: in the end of the Ro are helmet with a Semidragon Vert isuing out of a wreath Argent & Vert.

[Shap Abbey]

[I.312A][11]

The seal of Shap (and Shap Abbey) impressd, is to be found in a green box with a draw lid in the Evidence Chest at Apalby.

[I.165]

Ad Shap Abby: Sigillum Commune \ mon / beate Mariae Magdal. De Hepp. Penes Lancelotum Mauchel de Crakenthrop Armiger. Appensum Literis. Testim. Thome Sawleman clerici.[12]

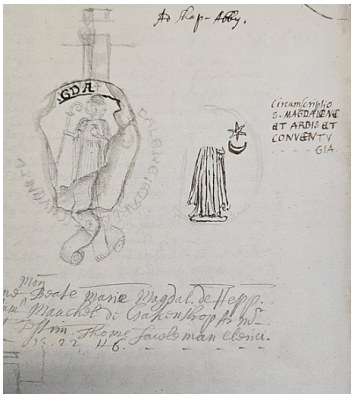


Figure 1.22.2. Seal 'Ad Shap Abbey'. I.165.

[9] There are 2cm of illegible text here.
[10] A page of pencilled notes, gathered for the information on III.313.
[11] A small slip of paper pasted to a letter cover; text possibly written in another hand.
[12] 'In relation to Shap Abbey, the common seal of the monastery of the Blessed Mary Magdalen of Shap. In the possession of Lancelot Machell of Crackenthorpe, Esquire; compared with the letters in the testimony of Thomas Sawleman, cleric.'

[Bells]
The quantity of the bells att Shap Abby may be guessed att from Overton bells, the greatest whereof was but consonant to the 3rd bell att Shap. But as to number of them I know not anything.

[I.185]

[Abbot of Shap]
The Abbot of Shap was I finde usually writ Lord Abbot. He kept 5 horses in his stable, as appear from an inventory which I have seen.

[I.312]

{Advowsons of Shap Abby; Tur. Lond.}
It appear by inquisition (in bundello escaet de anno 18 Edward 3) that the Advousans of the Abby of Hepp, together with the churches of Kirkbythore, Marton & Browham, did belong to Robert de Clifford.at: 1444 i.e. 22. H. 6.

[I.311]

[Foundation of Shap Abbey]
I suppose that Shap Abby as well as other places was allmost demolished in the time of King Edward the 2. [1307-1327]. And Robert de Clifford, bestowing on it the advousan of Warthcop, was looked upon as the Founder. For upon the back of that parchment roll in Scipton Castle, elsewhere spoke of, which was an Inquisition bearing date 43 Edward 3 [1369-1370], is this remarke:
'Anno Domini MCCCxiiii in vigelia Sancti Johannis Baptistæ quæ tunc Dominica dies erat, in crastino Commissum est prœlium Inter Regem Angliæ et Regem Scotiæ quo prœlio Dominus comes Glouĉinæ, et Robertus de Clifford et alij nobiles quam plures interfecti sunt & comes de Hertford et comes de, et ~~comes~~ [blank] et Dominus Johannes de Ferrars et multi alij magnates capti sunt. Sicque Rex Scotiæ (viz.) Dominus Robertus Bruce in Bello prævaluit & Rex Angliæ dectus Edwardus devictus est, cum partibus vix evasus. Iste Roburtus contulit nobis ecclesiam de Warthcop Anno Domini MDDDvi et erat filius Rogeri Clifford junioris, fundator hujius monasterij et reputatur (frosan pro) Reparator. {Vide Gospatricius, sed nescio an quid ad rombum Præfatio MS fol. 54. Answer nihil iste enim fuit filius Maldred (ut ibi apparet) hic filius Orms.'}[13]
But it was founded (long before this time) by Thomas, {cald Mack} the son of Gospatric, the sone of Ormes,[14] and was rated at the desolution, 166: 10^{s}: 6^{d} ob. [see] Speed.[15] I have an inventory of goods in Carta Machellorum*.

[Gospatrik, earl of Cumberland]
A little after William was crownd (which was in 1066)[16] and had re\c/onciled himself to the Kentish men, [Gospatrick, earl of Cumberland] was one of those \ great ones / which [William] tooke along with him into Normandy to secure peace in England†.

[13] 'In the year 1314, which in that year was a Sunday, on the following day was joined a battle between the King of England and the King of Scotland, in which were slain the Earl of Gloucester, Robert de Clifford and very many others of the nobility, and the Earl of Hertford and the Earl of [Blank], and Lord John de Ferrers and many other powerful men were captured, so that the King of Scotland (to wit, the Lord Robert Bruce) prevailed in this war, and the King of England (the said Edward) was overcome, and with difficulty escaped with his party. This Robert [De Clifford] gave us Warcop Church in the Year of Our Lord 1306 and was the son of Roger Clifford the younger, founder of this Monastery and thought to be its restorer (perhaps). {But I do not know whether the Preface of MS Folio 54 is anything to the point. Answer. No! For the one was the son of Maldred (as there appears); the other, the son of Orms.}' [The battle was Bannockburn].
[14] Dugdale's *Monasticon* epitomises information relating to the foundation. 'This Priory (of the Order of Premonstratenses) was first founded in honour of St. Mary Magdalen at Preston, by Thomas Son of Gospatric, and by him endow'd with divers Lands; among other things he gave the Canons here as much Wood as they would take out of his Woods, and to grind at his Mill toll-free. The said Thomas gave them also Pasture in and about Swindale, for sixty Cows, twenty Mares, five hundred Sheep, &c. With other Possessions in the Territory of the Town of Heppe where this Convent was new erected. Confirm'd by Robert de Veteriponte. Valued at 154li. 17s. 7d. ob. per Annum.' See Dugdale, *Monasticon*, 594-95.
[15] £166 [MS: 1~~0~~66] 10s 6½d. See Speed, *Historie*, Book 9, Chap.21, 'A Catalogue of the Religious Houses, Colledges and Hospitals sometimes in England & Wales': Westmorland.
[16] This date appears to have been added later.

[Machell's Notes: I.312]

*{Tamen dubito – vide in cartis de Hep collect è Dugdal *Monasticon*, et in collect meis Shap p. – è Registro de Wed[derhal]. P.1b et 14a.}[17]

This monastery, seated near to the river Lowther (alias Sleddall), was founded by Thomas the son of Gospatrik, the son of Orms, where there is a fountain or spring that ebbs and flows many times a day: S[peed] & Ca[mden]. {Orms = Gospatrick. Temp. Conq[uest].[18] = Thomas}

†Speede p.416 ~~cap 2~~ §9, in his Account of W[illiam] C[onqueror] circa anno 1606.[19]

Vocatur monasterium Beatæ Mariæ Magdelenæ de Hepp, in carta penès Lancelotium Machel armigerium ubi etiam videre è sigillum commune istius monasterii, sed paulisper an fractum. Dat. 1444 (Cur. 22. Henry 6.) vide in hoc libro St Lawrence, Apleby.[20]

[Machell's Collection of Shap Abbey Charters, some copied from Dugdale's *Monasticon*][21]

[VI.307][22]

Prioratus de Heppe in agro Westmorlandensi Carta fundationis eju\s/dem jmo apud Preston*.[23]

{e Dugdale, *Monasticon Anglicanum* 2. P.594. This is onely epitomiz'd.}

Thomas filius Gospatricis dedit et concessit et hac praesenti carta sua confirmavit Deo et Sanctae Mariæ Magdalenæ et Canonicis de Preston, qui sunt de ordine Præmonstratensi, in liberam, puram, et perpetuam elemosynam, pro Salute animæ suæ, et sponsæ suæ et omnium Antecessorum suorum, unam portionem terræ suæ in Preston in Kendale, ad faciendum quandam mansionem Canonicorum (viz.) totum dominicum parcu[m] meu[m] subtus Lackslot[24] et in Lackslot usq[ue] viam quæ venit de Prestonuthreedas inde sequendo viam de Holme; et ita sequendo viam de Holme usq[ue] ad Sicum, quæ venit de Hasaldmire; et per ipsum Sicum usq' aqua[m], quæ est divisa inter duas Prestonas, & ita ascendendo usq' ad prænominatam via[m] de Lackslot.

---

[17] 'I doubt this, however: see in the Shap charters extracted from Dugdale's *Monasticon* and in my collections from the Register of Wetheral [Priory].'

[18] Here, several words have been crossed through and awarded a question mark. The words 'Temp Conq[uest]' have been added in different ink.

[19] The passage quoted by Machell appears to be this: 'All things established for Englands securitie, and subjection now to the Normans; hee ordained his halfe brother by the surer side, Odo Bishop of Bayeux (whom he created Earle of Kent), and his cosen William-Fitz-Osburne (by him made Earle of Hereford), to bee Governours in his absence over the Realme; and in the Lent following sailed into Normandy, leading with him many pledges for their fidelity, besides other Nobles, especially such as he feared to be too potent; amongst whom, Stigand the Archbishop of Canterbury, the two great Earles Edwin and Morcar, Edgar surnamed Etheling, Fretherik Abbot of S. Albans, Agelnothus Abbot of Glastenbury, Waltheof the sonne of the warlike Siward Earle of Northumberland, Roger Earle of Hertford, Rainulph Earle of Cambridge, and Gospatricke Earle of Cumberland, were the men of greatest note.' See Speed, *Historie*, Book 9, 416.

[20] 'It was called the Monastery of the Blessed Mary Magdalen of Shap: see deed in the custody of Lancelot Machell Esq., where one can also see the common seal of that house, but only in small pieces; dated 1444 (22. Henry VI.). See in this book, St Lawrence Appleby.'

[21] Not one of this collection of charters is in Machell's hand. There is no known original charter, although the cartulary of the abbey was at Naworth Castle in the possession of Lord William Howard, when, in June 1638, Roger Dodsworth made copies of 59 charters. His manuscripts are now in the Bodleian Library, Oxford (MSS. Dodsw. 1-76, 78-115, 116-20, 120B, 121-61). Copies of the Shap charters are in Dugdale, *Monasticon,* and in *N&BI*, 469-71. In addition to the Dodsworth copies there are approximately a dozen abbey charters, or copies thereof, in the Lowther Papers (for example, DLONS/L/5/1/33/1,3), some of which were transcribed and translated by Frederick Ragg, and printed in CWAAS *Transactions*. For example, 'Two Documents relating to Shap Abbey', *CW2*, 9 (1909), 271-281; 'Shap and Rosgill and some of the Early Owners', *CW2*, 14 (1914), 1-63; 'De Culwen', *CW2*, 14 (1914), 343-427. A distillation of these sources written by Harry Hawkins, 'Records of Shap Abbey', remains unpublished in book form but is available in Pdf at harry.hawkins68@btinternet.com. I am very grateful to Harry Hawkins for this and much else, Ed.

[22] Also numbered p.1.

[23] 'Priory of Shap in the land of Westmorland. Foundation Charter of the same, though kept at Preston.'

[24] Insecure transcription. There is a field near Shap named 'Langesclac', but no other name listed in *Westmorland Place-Names* (either in the Preston area near Kendal, or in Shap rural), fits this particular word formation.

Præterea dedit eis tota' terra' subtus viam de Nathsudden usq[ue] Stainbridge usq' ad Brackenthwait, sicut Sylvas dividit & planum, et ita usq' ad terram Richardi filij Siguth, et sic ad viam quæ venit de Stainbridge usq' ad divisam de Farleton; id est totam terram quæ fuit Michalis filij Helenæ, et ita sequendo divisam de Farletone usq' in divisam inter duas Prestonas†, & ita ascendendo usq' ad praedictam viam de Wathsudden, excepto dimidio prato de Miresbrigge, & decem acras apud Siggelthwait ad salu[te]m eoru[m]. Et totam terra[m] de Sursu[m] Wathsudden silicet ubi Capella fuit infirmorum habebunt etiam de bosco suo, quantum voluerint capere, & nunc habuerint, sine visu forestarioru[m] suorum et cortices lignoru[m] quæ praeciduerint ipsoru[m] erunt. Concessit etiam eis libera[m] communiam infra metas de Preston, cu[m] omnibus alijs assiamentis & libertatibus quæ pertinent ad predicta[m] villam de Preston, in bosco & in plano, in vijis & in semitis, et in aquis et in molendinis, et pasturam porcorum suoru[m], sive plenagioru[m], & decimam panagij mei. Et molent et molendinu[m] meu[m] sine multura, quando venerint, et tam[?] Mezca fuerit evacuata; Et equu[m] proprium habuerint molendinarium, / ad meu[m] molendinu[m] cessabunt hominu[m] p[rae]nominatum, / volo quod p[rae]dicti canonici habeant & teneant eam in pace et plenarie et honorifice, in libera[m], pura[m] et perpetua[m] Elemosynam, sine omni seculari servitio consuitudine et exactione. Et ipse et hæredes sui warantizabunt eis hanc donantionem contra omnes homines imperpetuu[m]. His testibus &c.[25]

[Machell's Notes: VI.307]

*{Vel exemplari penes Jacobi Bellingham […] durat. This at Preston: a friary or Priory as I sup[pose], belonging to the other.}[26]

†{forsan sic vocat Preston Ulfred & Preston Patric quer. Tamen.}[27]

[25] (Translation, mainly taken from H. Hawkins, 'Records of Shap Abbey', 46, including a comment on a corrupt section of the Latin text): 'Thomas son of Gospatric has given and granted and by this present charter confirmed to God and to St Mary Magdalen and to the canons at Preston who are of the Premonstratensian Order in free, pure and perpetual alms for the salvation of his soul and those of his wife and of all his ancestors one part of his land in Preston in Kendale for making a house of canons, namely: all my demesne park below Lackslot and in Lackslot as far as the road which comes from Prestonuthreedas [Preston Richard?], and then following the road as far as the road which comes from Holme, and so following the road from Holme as far as the stream which comes from Hasaldmire, and by the same stream as far as the water which is the boundary between the two Prestons, and so going up as far as the afore-named road from Lackslot. Moreover I have given them all the land below the road from Wath Sutton as far as Stainbridge, and all the land from Stainbridge as far as Brackenthwait as it separates the woodland and the open country, and so as far as the land of Richard son of Sigith, and so to the road which comes from Stainbridge as far as the boundary of Farletone, that is, the whole of the land which belonged to Michael son of Helen, and so following the boundary of Farletone as far as the boundary between the two Prestons, and so going up as far as the aforesaid road from Wath Sutton, except for half the meadow at Miresbrigge and ten acres at Siggethwait for their welfare, and all the land above Wath Sutton, that is, where there was a chapel for the sick. They shall also have from my woodland as much as they wish to take and now shall have without the permission of my foresters, and the bark of the trees which they have cut shall be theirs. I also grant them free common within the boundaries of Preston, in woodland and in open country, in the roads and the paths, and in waters and mills, and pasture for their pigs or pannage, and the tithe of my pannage. And they shall grind at my mill without paying multure whenever they come and the hopper is empty, and they shall have their own mill-horse at my mill* […] I wish that the aforesaid canons should have and hold this [land] in peace and in full and honourably, in free, pure and perpetual alms, free of all secular service, custom and exaction. And he himself and his heirs will guarantee this gift to them against all men forever. These being witnesses, etc.'

'*… [The text here from "et equum …" to "… prenominatum" is corrupt. Possibly "equum" (horse) has been read for an original "quum" (= "cum", when) and the following words have been modified to fit this sense, though "cessabunt hominum prenominatum" makes no sense as it stands. Since the mill was fairly certainly a water-mill the use of a "mill-horse" seems strange. Perhaps the original sense was, "… and when they have their own milling at my mill, other men will cease in favour of the aforesaid". This requires only minor changes to the endings of the words in the text, and these endings were usually indicated only by superscript or subscript signs that were easily misunderstood.'

[26] 'Or in a copy in the possession of James Bellingham ... it survives. This at Preston: a friary or Priory as I sup[pose], belonging to the other.'

[27] 'Perhaps by this he means Preston Ulfred and Preston Patric – but check.'

[III.317][28]

Convenc[i]o: Inter Chr[ist]oferu[m] Curwen milite[m], et Hugo[n]e[m] Salkeld: 7. H6. 1428 { p[er] Tho: fil[ium] Gospatr[icij]}[29]

Universis sanctae matris Ecclesiæ filijs, presentibus et futuris, cartam istam visuris vel audituris, Thomas filius Cospatricij sempieternam in domino Salutem: Noverit universitas vestra, me dedisse, concessisse, et hac mea praesenti carta confirmasse Deo et ecclesiae beatæ Mariæ Magdalenæ de valle Magdalenae, et canonicis Premonstratensis ordinis ibidem Deo servientibus, totam terram quae fuit Karl, scilicet per has divisas: de vado de Karlewath, ascendendo per Lowther apud Austrum, usque ad Langeschabeck, et sic ascendendo per Langeschabeck, usque ad semitam quae venit de Kendall, et sequendo semitam illam versus Aquilonem, usque dum veniat ad Stanirase iuxta Rafland,[30] et ita per semitam illam usque ad Rasatt, et sic descendendo extra nemus, usque ad magnum lapidem ubi homines solebant facere Lestablie, et ita descendendo usque in Lowther, et sic ascendendo per Lowther, et ultra, usque ad divisas de Rossegill penes orientem, de longo in longum, apud Austrum per supercilium montis de Creskeld et sic, usque ad Almebanke. Preterea, dedi eis vallum cum Bruhuto in orientali parte contra ecclesiam suam, tendens in longum per supercilium montis usque ad domum quae fuit quondam Willielmi King: et ita usque ad terram quae fuit Matthei de Hepp, et sic descendendo versus occidentem usque ad predictum vadum de Karlewath. Dedi etiam eis communem pasturam cum hominibus meis qui manent in Rasatt, et pasturam in Thanibord, et in Swindall ex utraque parte, usque ad supercilium montis desuper Briberh, et ex altera parte de Swindall, ultra Theniheved, ex utraque parte, ubi voluerint, et usque in Sleddall, per ita et eo amplius quod animalia sua cum voluerint et opus fuerit, possint die et nocte, infra dictam pasturam moram facere, et ad abbatiam, et ad vaccariam suam, cum necesse fuerit, ire, et redire, cum libero introitu et exitu. Hanc praedictam pasturam dedi eis et concessi, scilicet, vaccis sexaginta, et equabus sylvestribus viginti, et quinque centum ovibus, cum sequela trium annorum, et quinque carucatis boum. Praeterea dedi eis Trubarram, et Peteram, et Quarreram, ubicunque invenire poterint in territorio villae de Hepp, et viam liberam eundo et redeundo ad turbariam et peteram et ad Quarreram praedictam, et ad Abbathiam suam: Dedi etiam eis licentiam capere neccesaria, ad abbathiam suam, in bosco meo, ad aedificandum, et Comburendum, et Claudendum, ubi melius voluerint, et invenire potuerint, et cetera necessaria, sine visu Forestariorum, cum omnibus Communibus, aysimentis, et libertatibus predictae villae de Hepp pertinentibus; haec omnia supradicta dedi Deo et praedictis Canonicis, habenda et tenenda, in puram, liberam, et perpetuam elemosinam, pro salute animae meae, et sponsae meae Gretiae, et heredum meorum, et omnium antecessorum et successorum meorum. Et ego et heredes mei warrantisabimus omnia supradicta predictis Canonicis, totia omnes gentes imperpetuum. Hiis testibus etc. – 2. Dugd[ale] *Mon[asticon*], 594.[31]

---

[28] This charter was also copied by another hand on MS.VI.307, 309.

[29] 'Agreement between Christopher Curwen, Knight, and Hugo Salkeld. 7. H6. 1428. {Made through Thomas son of Gospatric}'. A grant made on the removal of the monastery to Shap from Preston in Kendale; see also *N&BI*, 470.

[30] There is a tumulus there, known as 'Stainraise in Ralphland': John F Curwen, 'Parishes (West Ward): St Michael, Shap', *The Later Records Relating to North Westmorland or the Barony of Appleby*, CWAAS Record Series 8 (Kendal, 1932), 358-76.

[31] '{[In] Covenant between Christopher Curwen, Knight, and Hugo Salkeld, 7. H6: 1428: Charter of foundation of the monastery of Shap by Thomas son of Gospatrick.}' "To all the children of holy mother church, present and future, who shall see or hear this charter, Thomas son of Gospatrick gives eternal greeting in the Lord. Your company shall know that I have given, granted and by this my present charter confirmed to God and to the church of the blessed Mary Magdalene of the vale of Magdalene, and to the canons of the Premonstratensian order who serve God there, all the land that was Karl, that is to say, along these boundaries: from the ford at Karlwath, ascending by [the river] Lowther on the south, as far as Langeschabeck [now Lanshaw Hill] and so ascending by Langeschabeck as far as the track that comes from Kendall, and following that track towards the north right till it reaches Stanirase next to Rafland [now Ralfland] and so along that track as far as Rasatt [now Rayside], and so descending outside the wood as far as the great stone where men were accustomed to perform Lestabilie, and thus descending right down to the Lowther, and so ascending along the Lowther and beyond, as far as the boundaries of Rosgill on the east side, lengthwise to the south over the crest of the hill of Creskelde Sike [a field in Shap parish] as far as Almebanke [now Elmbank]. Moreover, I have given to them the boundary-wall with a hedge on the eastern side, opposite their church, extending lengthwise over the crest of the hill as far as the house that once belonged to William Kinge: and so as far as the land that belonged to Matthew of Hepp,

[IV.76A]

{Shap, Culwen, Lowther}
The Baliwick of the forrestry of Shap \ with pasture & the tenements & forest being formerly given to Thomas de Preston of Shap \ & his heires / by Sir Gilbert de Culwen, was made over to Hugh de Lowther, Lord of Lowther, 23. Ed. 3. [1349-1350]. Witnesses, Thom. De Strickland, Thom. Le Engleys, Willielmus de Threlkeld militibus, Johe de Harrington de Thrimby, John de Harrington de Saldecotis, Roberto de Buteler & Henry de Culndale, Johe de Bradley & alij.

[Machell's Notes: [IV.76A]
N.B., I take this Culwen who \ 1st / gave this gift, to be the same name with Curwen nowe. {It is so.} & their ancestors were the founders of Shap Abbey for [they have] the same Armes, & for a controversy about 18. Hen. 8. [1526-1527] about 3 messuages in Shap between John Curwen Esq., late of Caton in Lancashire, & the Abby of Shap, whereof 2. wer adjudgd, by the arbitrator, to Curwen, & 1. to the monastry.

[III.318]

{Carta fact[a] monachis de bella landa} {Not in Burn}[32]
Eboracensi Archiepiscopo totique Cap[ito]l[i]o S[anct]i Petri et o[mn]ibus S[anc]te ecclesie filijs Thomas fil[ius] Gospatricii salutem. Sciatis me dedisse et hac mea Carta confirmasse deo et sa[nc]tae Mariae de Bellanda tota[m] illa[m] p[ar]tem terre mee de Hepp que inter has divisas continetur: A Slegeterna us[que] Turneterna[m], et inde us[que] Blaterna[m], sursum p[er] sicum, us[que] ad Capud eiusdem sici, et inde p[er] divisas, quas ego cu[m] monachis p[er]ambulavi, ex occidentali p[ar]te de Tringefell p[er] fundu[m] de Langesclac, us[que] ad vadu[m] de Thornbec et inde us[que] ad fossa[m], in qua alba spina statt : et inde ex occidentali p[ar]te de Wrainsedre, us[que] ad occidente[m] p[ar]tem de heppeshaw : et inde us[que] ad p[ro]pinquiore[m] semit[am] ex oriente de withcastelgila et p[er] semita[m] illam us[que] blabec, et sic sursum p[er] blabec us[que] ad viridem plateam, ultra scaturiginem de Blabec : et inde sicut aqua cadit de Musseto inter Wacedalia et Sleddalia, us[que] Ierlesett ita q[uo]d Ierleseta erit monachor[um], et inde p[er] ciliu[m] de Ierlesleta us[que] ad Capud de haropes [Harrop Pike] et greneopes [Grenopes], quamdiu vallis durat versus Le West, us[que] ad magna[m] rochera[m], et inde p[er] ciliu[m] mont[is] us[que] ad Capud sup[er]ius de Borhra, us[que] ad via[m] magna[m] que venit de Kendala versus westmerland, et p[er] eande[m] via[m] us[que] Wascedala bec, subtus wascedala terna, et deorsum p[er] wascedala bec[k?], us[que] ad Capud inferius de wascedala bec. Et inde per divisas, quas p[er]ambulavi inter Hepp, et Crossby, us[que] ad Caldegata, e p[er] Caldegata[m] versus Le Northe, us[que] ad magnu[m] lapide[m] que[m] ostendi eis metam et inde p[er] magnos lapides in fundo vall[is] us[que] Slegileternam. Hanc donacione[m] eis dono, et confirmo, in pura[m] et p[er]petua[m] elemosina[m] soluta[m] p[ro]pria[m], et quieta[m], ab o[m]ni terreno servicio, et exactione seculari libera[m] a me, et ab he[re]dibus meis et omnibus alijs he[re]dibus cu[m] omnibus que inter has divisas continentur in terra,

---

and so descending towards the west, as far as the aforesaid ford of Karlewath. I have given to them also common pasture along with my people who remain in Rasatt and pasture in Thanibord [now Tailbert], and in Swindall [now Swindale] on either side, as far as the crest of the hill above Briberh [now Binbarh, a field in Shap Parish] and on the other side of Swindall, beyond Theniheved [now Thengeheved, a field in Shap parish] on either side, wherever they wish and right into Sleddall [now Wet Sleddale] and even further, on the understanding that they may be able, by day and night, to let their beasts linger within the said pasture when they wish and as need be, and to go and return between the abbey and their vaccary when necessary with free entry and exit. I have given to them this pasture aforesaid and indeed I have made a concession for sixty cattle and twenty fell-pony mares and five hundred sheep, along with their offspring of three years, and five teams of oxen. Moreover, I have given to them turbary rights and peat rights and quarrying rights wherever they are able to find them in the lands of the village of Hepp, and free passage for going and returning to the aforesaid turbary, peat and quarry, and to their abbey. I have given to them also licence to take what is needful for their abbey in my woodland for purpose of building, for fuel, and for enclosure, wherever they choose and are able to find it, and other necessities, without supervision by my foresters, with all the common rights, easements, and liberties pertaining to the aforesaid village of Hepp. All of the above I have given to God and to the aforesaid canons, to have and to hold, in full, free and perpetual charity, for the salvation of my soul and that of my wife Gretia, and the souls of my heirs and of all my ancestors and successors. Both I and my heirs will guarantee all the above to the aforesaid canons, against all men, forever. Witnesses as follows etc." 'See Dugdale, *Mon[asticon]*, 2, 594.' [See also *N&BI*, 471.]

[32] A pencilled note in an unknown hand, written after the publication of *N&B 1 & 2*. in 1777.

et aqua, in bosco, et plano, in vijs, et semitis, in pascuis et pasturis, et o[mn]ibus alijs aisiament[is], et libertatibus, cum feris et avibus, sine o[m]ni detentamento ad faciendu[m] inde quicque voluerint imp[er]p[etuu]m: [....] hec etiam dedi eisde[m] mo[n]achis Communia[m] pasture in Withcastelgila inter semita[m], et magna[m] via[m] que transit [.....] Kendala, ad Capud de West de Withcastelgela, et liber et exitus et introitus illic sibi, et averijs suis, us[que] ad pastura[m] sua[m] et ita q[uo]d inter has p[re]d[ic]tas vias, nec ego, nec he[re]des mei, sed nec monachi edificabimus, sed inter nos Communes Remanebunt: dedi etiam eisde[m] mo[n]achis, Maneriu[m], et cetera aisiamenta ad illum locum necessaria per totu[m] boscu[m] meu[m] de Ragerthescoch imp[er]p[etuu[m]. hanc donac[i]on[em] feci eis p[ro] salute a[n]i[m]e mee, et patris, et matris mee, et omni[um] antecess[orum] meorum, et he[re]du[m]. Et ego, et he[re]des mei, hanc donac[i]onem manutenebimus illis et warrantisabimus [....] eos heredes imp[er]p[etuu]m. Et si aliquando eveniet q[uo]d non possi[mu]s ego vel here]des mei donac[i]o[n]em ista[m] illis warrantisare, dabimus eis esiament[um] ad valencia[m], et omnia aisiamenta in terrura de Hepp antequam disseisiont[em]: his testibus Rob[ert]o Decano Eboracensi, widone m[a]g[ist]ro scholar[um], Geraldo Canonico, Meinardo, Stephano de Roma, Canonicis, Ric[ard]o Noblet, Alano, Capellanis Nigello de Molbrai, Rogero de Damill, Alano, et Adam filijs Gospatricij, Murda[n]o Decano, Vmfrido Makaell.[33]

[VI.309, 311]

Carta Roberti de Veteriponte de sede & loco vallis Magdalenæ

{ex registro Abb. de Hepp, nuper penes Dominus William Howard de Naworth. Ibid. p.595.}[34]

---

[33] 'Charter made for the monks of Byland.'

"To the Archbishop of York and the entire Chapter of St Peter and all the sons of the Holy church, Thomas son of Gospatrick send greetings. Know that I have given to God and St Mary of Byland, and have confirmed by this my charter, all that part of my land of Shap which is contained within these boundaries: From Slegil Tarn to Turne Tarn, and from there as far as Blea Tarn, up the syke as far as the head of the syke, and from there along the boundaries which I walked with the monks, from the western side of Tringfell along the bottom of Langesclac as far as the ford of Thorny Beck and from there to the ditch in which stands a white thorn-tree. From there, from the western side of Wreynsethe as far as the western side of Shapshaw; and then to the nearer path coming from the east from Wichcastel Gile, and along that path to Blea Beck, and so upwards along Blea Beck to the green level beyond the springs of Blea Beck. From there, as the water falls from the Moss between Wasdale and Sleddale as far as Yarlside [Earl's Seat], in such manner that Yarlside shall belong to the monks, and from there along the brow of Yarlside up to the head of Harrop Pike and Grenopes, as far as the valley extends towards the west, up to the great rock. From there along the brow of the hill of Yarlside to the upper head of Borren Crag as far as the high road that comes from Kendal towards Westmorland, and along that road to Wasdale Beck below Wasdale tarn, and then below Wasdale Beck as far as the lower head of Wasdale Beck. From there along the boundaries which I walked between Shap and Crossby as far as Caldegate and along Caldegate towards the North, as far as the great stone which I indicated to them as a marker, and from there, by the great stones in the valley bottom, up to Slegil Tarn. [...] This gift I give to them and I confirm it, in full and perpetual charity, to possess peaceably without imposition, free from tenant service and from civil dues on my part and on the part of my heirs and all other heirs, along with everything included within these bounds, in the earth and water, in woods and fields, in roads and paths, in grassings and pastures, and all other easements and liberties, along with the beasts and birds, without any restriction, to do there whatever they wish, in perpetuity: and this also I have given to these same monks, namely common of pasture in Wichcastel Gile between the path and the highway that crosses from [...] Kendal to the head of the west of Wichcastel Gile, with free exit and entrance there for them and their beasts to their pasture, and in such a way that neither I, nor my heirs, nor yet the monks, shall build between the aforesaid roads, but they shall remain common between us. I have given also to these same monks a manor, and the other easements necessary for that place through the whole of my woodland of Ragerthescoch in perpetuity. This gift I have made them for the salvation of my soul, and that of my father and my mother and all my ancestors and heirs. And I and my heirs shall hold to this gift for them, and we shall guarantee [...] those heirs in perpetuity. And if ever it shall happen that we are not able, I or my heirs, to safeguard this gift for them, we shall give them compensation to its value, and all easements in the land of Shap before the dispossession.

Witnesses: Robert, Deacon of York; Wido, master of the school; Canon Gerard; the Canons Meinard and Stephanus of Rome; the Chaplains Richard Noblet and Alan; Nigel de Mobrai; Roger de Damill; Alan and Adam, sons of Gospatrick; Deacon Murdanus; Umfrid Makaell."

[34] This epitome is taken from Dugdale's *Monasticon*. It is also reproduced in *N&BI,* though with some differences in tenses and spelling, see *N&BI*, 471-72.

Robertus de Veteriponte dedit & confirmavit deo & beatæ Mariæ Magdalenæ, de valle Magdalenæ &c. Sedem & locum prædictæ vallis Magdalenæ in territorio villæ de Hepp cum omnibus pertinentijs et rebus suis, quæ continentur in Cartis Thomae filij Gospatricij et in Cartis Thomae filij Thomae, filij sui, quas de p[re]dictis om[ni]bus habent: Et totam villam de Renegill cum o[mni]b[u]s pertinentijs suis (etc) sicut etia{m de Maulds Meab[urn]} carta Matildis matris meae, et confirmatio Hugonis fratris mei, quas inde habent, melius testantur. Dedit etiam dictis Ecclesiae et Canonicis, villa[m] tota[m] Grangia de Milleburne, sicut Monachi de Holmo, melius eandem villam, aliquando tenuerunt, cum Grangia vocata fuit, cum om[ni]b[u]s pertinen[tij]s alijs et rebus etc. Quam villam Nicholaus de Stuttevill sibi dedit et confirmavit sua charta, qua[m] cartam habet, et p[re]dictis canonicis dedit (&c.) Dedit etiam dictis Canonicis omnes decimas sibi pertinentes omnium molendinorum suorum, de tota Westmeria, et omnes decimas novationis bestiarum, quae captae erunt, de caetero, in om[ni]b[u]s forestis suis in Westmeria, per se, vel per homines suos, de domo, vel de Manerijs suis, sive per arcus sive per canes (etc.). Testibus Gilberto filio Rogeri, filij Reinfredi*; Wydone de Hellbec; Willielmo filio Ranulphi; Eudone de Bellocampo, tunc Vicecomite Westmarie; Henerico de Redeman, Seneschallo de Kendall; Radulpho Daincurt; Anselmo de Furnesio; Henerico de Cundall; Willielmo de Morvilla; Willielmo Anglico; Willielmo de Thirneby; Johanne de Hardela; Alano Pincerna; Waltero de Meaburn. data apud Cliburne Anno decimo tertio Regis Johannis octavo Kal: Maij die Sabati.[35]

[Machell's Notes: VI.311]

*A \ great / family in or about Kendall. See my collections out of the Records in the Tower p.4. 5. 6.

[IV.32]

[Gift of part of Knock to Shap Abbey]

'I John de Veteripont, have given to the Canons of Shap one piece of my demesne land in the field of Knocksalcock; witnessed by Thomas the son of John then my Sheriff, Geoffrey de Neovile, Henry de Suleby, Robert de Hellebeck.'[36] It seems Knock did anciently belong to Viponts & from them it came with other Lands by marriage to the Cliffords

[IV.38]

Robert de Veteripont dyed about the 12th year of Henry III [1227-1228]. John de Veteripont his son & heir, dyed about the 26 year of Henry III [1241-1242], buryed as is supposd at Shap; leaveing his son a ward who continued so some years, being committed to the care & custody of the Prior of Carliol, as appears before, out of the Inquisition. His son was Robert.[37]

[35] 'Robert de Veteripont gave and confirmed to God and the Blessed Mary Magdalen of the Valley of Magdalen etc. the seat and place of the aforesaid Valley of Magdalen in the territory of the vill of Hepp with all appurtenances and matters which are contained in the charters of Thomas son of Gospatrick and in the charters of Thomas son of Thomas, his son, which they hold of all the aforesaid. And the whole vill of Renegill with all its appurtenances (etc.) just as also the charter of my mother Matilda {of Maulds Meaburn}, and the confirmation of my brother Hugo, which they hold from there, surely testify. He also gave to the Church and Canons the whole vill of the Grange of Millburn, just as the Monks of Holm at one time surely held that same vill, when it was called Grange, with all appurtenances and other matters etc. This vill Nicholaus of Stuttvill gave to himself and confirmed by his charter, which charter he holds and has given to the aforesaid canons (etc.). He also gave to the aforesaid Canons all the tithes relating to himself from all his mills in the whole of Westmorland, and all the tithes of the re-stocking of the beasts which should be caught, from the remainder, in all his forests in Westmorland, by him or by his men, at home or in his manors, whether by the bow or by dogs (etc.). Witnesses: Gilbert son of Roger son of Reinfred; Wydo of Hellebeck; William son of Ranulph; Eudo of Beauchamp, at that time earl of Westmaria; Henry of Redeman, Steward of Kendall; Radulph Daincurt; Anselm of Furness; Henry of Cundall; William of Morvill; William English; William of Thirneby; John of Hardale; Alan Pincerna; Walter of Meaburn. Issued at Cliburn in the thirteenth year of King John, on the eighth of the month of May, Saturday.'

[36] Translated from Machell's original Latin text.

[37] This particular passage (bound into Volume IV) has been epitomised in this edition.

[III.322]

Carta Rob[er]ti de Egglesfeld[38]

Rob[ertus] de Egglesfeld omnibus amicis suis et ho[min]ibus terrae suae tam [?] quam [?], salute[m]. Sciatis me dedisse et concedisse et hac p[re]senti carta confirmasse Dolphino filio Gilmichaelis de Egglesfeld una[m] carucata[m] terrae in Egglesfeld cu[m] om[n]ib[u]s p[er]tinentijs in bosco in plano in p[as]c[u]is in pasturis in om[n]ib[u]s ais[amentis] et lib[er]tatib[u]s p[er]tinentib[u]s ad eandem terra[m] tenendam de me et h[er]edibus meis [libere] et q[ui]ete annuati[m] reddendo xij den[arios], sex ad pentecosten et sex ad fest[u]m s[an]cti marti[ni] p[ro] om[n]i servicio q[uo]d ad me p[er]tinet excepto q[uo]d medietas h[uiu]s carucatae dabit mult[uram] et faciet opus molini et altera medietas lib[er]a erit et soluta ab op[er]is molini multura et dom[inu]s eius molebit ad molin[um] meu[m] sine multura. Set si p[ro]no[m]i[n]at dolphinus ut h[er]edes eius alieni ext[ra] dom[um] sua[m] comoda[verint] sive aliq[uo] alio mo[do] tradiderit de illa dimidia carucatae q[ua]m lib[er]am tenet ab op[er]e molini et mult[ur]a, quere[n]t ei molinu[m] ubicunque volueri[n]t. Et hac autem donac[i]one ut rata sit et stabilis p[re]vibat[us] dolph[inus] dedit mi et sol[vit] et absolute dimisit mi et he[redibus] meis ip[s]e et heredes eius q[ui]cq[ui]d iuris ut siq[ui]d iuris clamav[er]int ut undique heredes debueri[n]t in aliq[ua] alia t[er]ra in Egglesf[eld], quare volo et p[er]cipio ut sepedictus Dolph[inus] et h[er]edes ei[u]s h[abe]ant et teneant p[re]fata[m] terram de me et h[er]edibus [meis] [in] feodo et h[er]editate lib[er]e et q[ui]ete et honorifice p[er] p[re]d[i]c[tu]m servici[um] faciendo forinsec[um] serviciu[m] quantum p[er]tinet ad unam carucata[m] terre

Hijs testibus: Armo de [?] tu[n]c senesc[allo], pat[r]icio] brun, Ricardo de Merton, Simone de Ros, Joh[ann]e de Dene, Gerardo de Bramthait, Thoma M[a]rescaldo, Th[oma] de [?], Walt[er]o fil[io] Trotan, Ketello fil[io] Ald[er]j et Michaele f[rat]re eius, Walt[er]o cl[er]ico cu[m] multis alijs.[39]

[38] Written in an unknown hand and part of Machell's Shap Abbey collection. As it relates to Robert Eaglesfield's possessions in Cumberland, it is unclear why it was placed here. Eaglesfield founded Machell's alma mater, Queen's College, Oxford, as related by Sir Daniel Fleming: 'Egglesfield gave name to an ancient family of which was Robert de Egglesfield chaplain to Queen Philippa wife of Ed. III who founded upon his own ground Queen College in Oxford recommending the patronage thereof to his Lady the Queen and the succeeding Queens of England, endowing it with revenues for the maintenance of a provost and twelve fellows.' See G.F. Duckett (ed.) *A Description of the County of Cumberland taken in the year 1671 by Daniel Fleming*, CWAAS Tract Series I (London & Kendal, 1882), 11. Machell refers to the founding of Queen's College elsewhere in his volumes; see, for instance, his Preface, I.748.

[39] 'Robert of Eaglesfield sends greeting to his friends and to all men [...] of his land. Know that I have given and granted and by this present charter confirmed to Dolphin son of Gilmichael of Eaglesfield one carucate of land in Eaglesfield with all its appurtenances in woodland in field in grassings in pastures in all easements and liberties belonging to this same land, to hold from me and my heirs freely and peaceably, by rendering yearly 12 denarii, 6 at Pentecost and 6 at the festival of Saint Martin, in return for all service which pertains to me, except that: half of this carucate shall give payment and shall do the work of the mill and the other half shall be free and released from payment of the work of the mill and its lord shall grind corn at my mill without payment. But if Dolphin declares that his heirs from outside his own house shall profit or if in any other manner he hands over from that half of the carucate which he holds free from the work of the mill and from payment, they shall seek a mill wherever they wish. And so that, by this gift, it may be authorised and fixed, the aforegoing Dolphin has given to me and paid and entirely surrendered, to me and my heirs, whatever rights, or if any rights, he himself and his heirs shall claim, as his heirs from anywhere are owing in any other land in Eaglesfield; wherefore I wish and order that the oft-mentioned Dolphin and his heirs should have and hold the aforesaid land of me and my heirs in fee and inheritance, freely and peaceably and honourably by the aforesaid service, by doing foreign service as far as pertains to one carucate of land.Witnesses: Armo of [?], at that time steward; Patrick Brown; Richard of Merton; Simon of Ros; John of Dene; Gerard of Bramthwaite; Thomas Marescald; Thomas of [?]; Walter son of Trotan; Ketell son of Alder and Michael his brother; Walter the cleric; with many others.'

[I.312]

[Standing Stones near Shap Abbey]

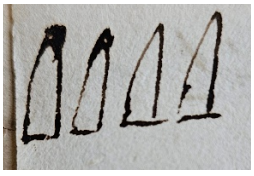


Figure 1.22.3. Standing Stones, 'near to Shap Abbey'. I.312.

Jacob sometimes dwelling about the Tower Eder {Ender puto?}[40] (which stands 7 miles south off \ from / Jerusalem) buryed Rachel his wife about a quarter of a mile distant from the place, and for a monument pitched 12 stones upright upon her grave*. And we have one not much unlike this near to Shap abby, where it is thought som notable act of atchievment has bin don; for theire are huge stones in forme of pyramids, some 9 foot high and 14 foote in lenth thick rainged for a mile directly in a row and equally distant, which might seem to have bin pitched there purposely in memory thereof; but what the act was is not knowne but quite worne out \ of minde / by the injoury of time†.

[Machell's Notes: III.312]

*{!} *Itin.* Script. de Bethlehem p.422.[41]
†Speed & Camden.[42] {See the explication of this: MS of Cumb[erland], part 1st, pag.2.} Memorandum to draw them.

[III.313]

Shap Abby [buildings]
N.W. \ 1 mile / in a little blinde gill \ not worth the name of a vally / on the west side of the River L[owther] where the tower & East End \ of the [abbey] Church / are standing, and a […][43] little farme house, which has bin formerly som of the Offices; a mill & 2 bridges: the higher, wood, and the lower, stone; having one arch, just below the ruines of an old bridge somewhat nearer the abby; the pillar whereof in the midle of the water is yet remaining. & hence assends a lane N. east which leads to an house called Grange House, which belongd to the abby & is not distant ½ a mile from it.

[40] 'Ender, perhaps.'
[41] 'Itinerary written from Bethlehem, p.422.' Many pilgrims and travellers to the Holy Land wrote travelogues/itineraries, one of which, written in AD 333 and printed in 1538, was eventually added to the Antonine Itinerary. Other itineraries include that of Bishop Arculf (AD 700): '… the tomb of Rachel, rudely built of stones, without any ornament, presenting externally the form of a pyramid.' Benjamin of Tudela (AD 1163) described Rachel's monument as '… the monument which points out the grave of Rachel. This monument is constructed of eleven stones, equal to the number of children of Jacob'. Sir John Maundville (AD 1322): 'From Jerusalem to Bethlehem it is but two miles … And in that way is the tomb of Rachel, the mother of Joseph the patriarch, who died immediately after she was delivered of her son Benjamin; and there she was buried by Jacob her husband, and he caused twelve great stones to be placed over her in token that she had borne twelve children* (*two children … but by them she had twelve grandchildren).' See Thomas Wright (ed.) *Early Travels in Palestine* (London, 1848), ix, 6, 86, 164.
[42] 'Hard by Shape, in times past Hepe, a little monasterie built by Thomas the sonne of Gospatrick, sonne of Orms … there be huge stones in forme of Pyramides, some 9 foot high, and fourteene foot thick, ranged directly as it were in a row, for a mile in length, with equall distance almost betweene: which may seeme to have beene pitched and erected for to continue the memoriall of some act there atchieved; but what the same was, by the injurie of time it is quite forgotten.' See Camden, *Britannia,* tr. Holland (1637), 762; see also *N&B1*, 477; and see James Simpson (vicar of Shap), 'The Antiquities of Shap in the county of Westmorland', *Archaeological Journal* 18 (1861), 25-38.
[43] Text measuring 1½cm is illegible at this point.

[IV.vii]

[Dissolution of Shap Abbey]

[Addition 1. Anno 30 Henry 8 A.D. 1540.][44]
[Commissioners' preliminaries for the Dissolution of Shap Abbey &c.]
Our duties in most humble wise to your Lordship premised, pleaseth it the same to be advertised that upon Friday being the 9th day of this instant month of January we did repair to the King's Highness's town of Carlisle whereas the Warden with other the gentlemen of those parts did meet us in two miles without the town, garnished and accompanied with a goodly sight of horsemen and spears; and the mayor with his brethren the Aldermen did also very worshipfully entertain us both with their behaviour and presents also. And all the Borders in those parts are in very good order and quietness insomuch that in that behalf we are so bold as to make report of the same to your Lordship. We have also in executing the King's Highness's Commission, there entertained the Prior according to your commandment by the contents of your letter directed unto us in his favour, as we trust he will report unto you; and we have fully put into execution the Commission directed unto us of all other the monasteries in Yorkshire, Westmorland, Cumberland and the Bishopric of Durham; the Monastery of Shap only excepted, whither we do intend to repair upon Tuesday next ensuing, and from thence towards Westchester and from thence to Shrewsbury; and so to Wenlock, which is the last House in our Commission; and thence straight to London, and we think that it will be about the beginning of Lent before that we come thither; at which time we shall declare unto your Lordship all our proceedings, with which we trust that your Lordship will be contented. And thus Our Lord ever preserve Your Lordship in much honour.
At Carlisle the 12th day of January.
By Your Lordship's command, Walter Hendle, Richard Layton, Thomas Legh, Richard Watkins
Unto the Right Honorable my Lord Privy Seal be these d[elivere]d.

[**Addition 2.**]
Rymer, Tom. XIV, p. 663 et 668. *Fœdera*.[45]
Omnibus &c. Richardus Baggot Abbas Monasterii Beatæ Mariæ Magdalenæ de Heppa, alias Shappe Ordinis Præmonstratensium in Com Westmerl. & ejusdem loci Conventus Salutem in Domino sempiternam. Noveritis &c. In quorum Testimonium Nos præfati Abbas & Conventus huic præsenti scripto nostro Nomina nostra manibus propriis subscripsimus, Sigillumque nostrum Commune apposuimus. Dat. In Domo nostra Capitulari decimo Quarto die mensis Januarii, Anno Regni prædicti Invictissimi Principis & Domini nostri Regis Henrici Octavi Tricesimo primo. Et memorandum quod Die & Anno prædictis venerunt prædicti Abbas & Conventus in Domo sua Capitulari apud Heppa prædictam, coram Richardo Layton uno Clericorum Cancellariæ dicti Domini Regis, & Recognoverunt Scriptum prædictum ac omnia & singula in eodem contenta in forma prædicta.[46]

---

[44] Though added to the MS after Machell's death, these two extracts have been allowed to remain here as useful additions to Machell's own Shap Abbey collection.
[45] Extract from Thomas Rymer, *Fœdera*, Vol. 14 (London, 1712). During the early 18th century many official documents were officially transcribed and published in Thomas Rymer's *Fœdera*. Volume 1 was published in November 1704; further volumes appeared at regular intervals: Volume 14 was published in 1712, see A. Sherbo, 'Rymer, Thomas (1642/3-1713). *ODNB*. As the extract could not have been added before Volume 14's publication in 1712, this suggests the earliest possible date for the first binding of Machell's volumes; yet Nicolson had written and dated his 'Introduction' to Machell's Volume I in the flyleaf of the bound volume on 10 August 1711 (see Editor's Introduction). Perhaps the *Foedera* extract was added later, in a rebinding exercise, or perhaps the difference in dating might be explained by the change from the Julian to the Gregorian calendar. Although this was made officially in 1752, many 17th-century writers had already adopted it.
[46] 'To all etc. Richard Baggot, Abbot of the Monastery of the Blessed Mary Magdalen of Hepp, also called Shap, of the Order of the Premonstratensians in the county of Westmorland, and the Members of this House of the same place, send eternal greetings in the Lord: You know etc. To the testimony of which we the aforesaid Abbot and Members of the House, have subscribed our names in our own hands in this our present document, and we have affixed our common seal. Dated: In our Chapter House on the fourteenth day of the month of January, in the thirty-first year of the reign of the aforesaid most invincible Prince and our Lord King Henry VIII. And it should be noted that on the day and in the year aforesaid, the aforesaid Abbot and Members of the House came, in their own Chapter House at Shap aforesaid, in the presence of Richard Layton one of the clerics

[IV.76A]

[Machell's Notes on the last Abbot of Shap Abbey]

Kirkbythuer. 31. Hen. 8. [1539-1540]
I finde Mr Richard Bagget otherwise Evenwood, parson of Kirkbythure. ~~Maybe it is as Mr Harrison said~~. He was abbot & parson & [in] his time it was given appropriate to the abbey, salva vicaria,[47] by Henry Earl of Cumberland, the true & undoubted Patron, with the consent of the King Hen. 8. He tooke care to procure [it] to himselfe during his life nat[ural] but providence prevented its being a vicaria by dessolution of abbys.

[III.319] [48]

Articles of instrument from the Abbott of Shapp to Thome Jolye
Concerninge the apparacion[49] of Kyrkby Thore.[50]

Inprimis. The said abbot doth send to the same Thomes iiij deids unseald concerning the same apparacion.
Item. His other instrument sealed by the jentylmen, Church wardens & other of the saide parishinge in the name of the whole parishinge
Item. To remembere my Lord of Cumberlande for sealinge of his deide of grant under the seal of his armes for your going up.
Item. To remember my said Lord (forsomiche as my lorde bishop of Carliell comith nott down) to write a loving letter for sealing of his deide & for the redy expedicon & settinge forwardz of such busynis as appertanyth to him in that behalf.
Item. A like letter to Mr William Hogyll, Archidiaconery of Carliell, for the sealing of such wrytyngs as belongith to his office.
Item. To remember all other writings nott yit maide nor sealed eyther[51] by the Kings highness my Lorde of Cantorbury, or any other necessary or regnisit to be hade in the premisses
Item. I do sende you by my servant this berer the residue of the fyne to the King's hig[h]nis for the same Kyrkbithore, x^{li}.
Item. I do send you over & beside the said fyne with this same berer for dispachinge other chargiezs as sealing of wrytyngs with other necessariez appertaining your discrecon to be payede & laide down appon a rackonyng thereof to be made by you of the same 10^{li}.
Item. That you remembere to thanke Mr Hughes for his payns heretofor taking in these premiss & desyer him of his goode continuance in the same & according to Mr Blenkansops premiss & that he shall have such a nagge as I truste shall content him to be delyvrde at such tyme as you thinke goode to sende for the same.
Item. Desireinge you to remembere a promise to be obteyned that I may have & perceive the frutts of the sam Kyrkbithore duringe my lif nat\ ur /al in discharge of my pensione.
Per me Ricard. Abbote.

---

of the Chancery of the said Lord King, and acknowledged the aforesaid document and the contents in it, all and singular, in the form aforesaid.'

[47] 'Excepting only the vicarage.'

[48] This page is written in an unknown hand.

[49] 'Appropriation.'

[50] For this text see *N&BI*, 373-74, where it is quoted verbatim without citing Machell as a source. These are instructions from Richard Evenwode, Abbot of Shap (after 1526, Rector of Kirkby Thore), to his agent. The appropriation was on the verge of completion when the Abbey was dissolved in 1540.

[51] Here there is an interlineated 'T' with a rising and falling wedge on either side, written in yet another hand, but with no obvious relation to the text.

[VI.310]

See in my collection out of the Registry of Wederhall[52]

= Matilda de Veteriponte
|
Robertus de Veteriponte anno 13. regis Johannis [1211-1212]

Ivo de Veteriponte

Gospatricius
|
Thomas filius Gospatricij =
|
Thomas fil = Thomæ files sui circa 13. regis Johannis
~~Thomas filius Tho~~

Grecia uxor ejus

[VI.370]

Registrum de Wetherhal \ Priory / nuper penes Mr Howard de Na[worth] Registrum Abbatiæ de Hep – penes Mr Howard p.2 \ pa. hujus 23 / p. Cartularium de Lanercost – penes Mr Will. Howard 14.[53]

Index

A-G[54]

H. Hep Abby p. 2. When or by whom founded uncertain, but supposed to be by Tho. Son of Gosp. Bec. Rob. de Vet. Confirmed the suite of it and all other things which was concerned in the Ch. of Tho. Son of Gosp. & Thomas, son of Thomas, his son. 13^0 Johan, ergo founded 3 generations before, as I suppose. There was one Mettheus de Hep mentioned in the boundary (p.2. Col.1) is said before it to have \ had / lands there […] & the monks themselves had lands there also before the Ch. of T. fil. Gosp. Contra suam, wherefore I say it is uncertain.

I-Q [Blank]

R. Religiouse Houses in Westm'land: The Abby of Shap, p.2, coll.2. The Priory of Preston, Ibid, Col.1. Mem. also, a Priory at Apelby; & see my collection Cart. Crak. Query also if they did not belong to Whetherall.

Shap, see Hepp

T-V[55]

Westm'land & Cumberland: see Religiouse Houses therein, their dedications, foundations, orders & values at the desolution. Speed. Sub Titilo Carliol p.288; Westm'land, 199.[56]
X-Y [Blank]

[I.311]

[Rosgill]

I finde Thomas Salkeld junior, Lord of Rosgill, 8. Edward 4. [1468-1469] in a deed of 12 acres of land in Ormesheved, together with a tenement by William Bryce to ~~his~~ Thomas Salkeld senior. Witnesses inter alios William Salkeld, Roger Salkeld 1st. Richard Redman Abat of Shap, J. Brystbeck.

[52] MS.IV.407 to IV.532.
[53] Some of these page numbers are obscured by the margin; thus they are insecure.
[54] Left blank.
[55] Left blank.
[56] See 'Catalogus Religiosarum Ædium ex Anglico Ioannis Speed, Latinus', in N. Harpsfield and E. Campion, (ed. R. Gibbon), *Historia Anglicana Ecclesiastica* (Marcus Wyon, Douai 1622), 750 (Carliol), 776 (Westmorlandia).

Cristianis, wife of Hugh de Salkeld had a son called Hugh, who had Rosgill by deed of his mother, & I thinke this after the date of the form[er], tho sine die, for I finde Ormesheved mention'd therein […][57] Gilbert, the son of Gilbert Culwenne, Knight (I will not be soe ridiculous as to / derive this from Conran King of Scots (p.35 MS 1st part) released & quit clamd to the Abbat & Convent of ~~Shap~~ Hepp, all the right which he had in all lands & tenements in Shap, which he had the gift & infeofment of Hugh de Lowther, Knight, in the vill. of Shap. Viz. which, the said Hugh, he had of Thomas de Preston, dated apud Hep de temp. 34. Edward 3. [1360-1361].

[I.188]

{Culwen}
Gilbert the son of Gilbert de Culwenne Knight, released clame in some Tenements in Shapp &c. 34. Edward 3.and sealed with a frett & chiefe charged with a crescent. This I take to be the same as Curwen & descend from Gospatricus.

[I.311]



Figure 1.22.4. Gilbert Culwen, sigillum. I.311.

[Machell's Notes on Rosgill: I.311; I.313]
If Rossegill be in Shap Parish, memorandum that I finde John de Rossegill witness to a deed with Sir Michael Hardclay, who livd about the 20th (as I take it) of Henry 3rd [1235-36], for he was father to Sir Andrew. [I.313][58]
Rossgil I finde writt \ Rosegil, temp. Henry 3. [1216-1272] / Roskeld in the 5. Edward 4. [1465-1466] Sc. Salkeld nuper de Roskeld.[59] Query: when Salkeld left it & whether there be a spring, well or keld adjoyning? The manner belongd to Patritius the son of Thomas &c. vide ante in manerio de Bampton,[60] Sub Tit. Knype. Ubi sigillum ipsius occurrit.[61] One of the name de Rosgil in hoc libro.[62] Family de Rosegill, John de Rosegill K[nigh]t, Temp. Henry 3. [1216-1272].

[57] As the paper here has perished, one word is illegible.
[58] Also numbered p.38.
[59] 'Salkeld, lately of Roskeld.'
[60] 'See above, in manor of Bampton.' See Part 1, Ch.4, Bampton, I.369.
[61] 'Where his seal occurs.'
[62] 'In this book.'

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 23]

[Parish of Warcop]

[I.315][1]

To Warcop belongs
1. Warcop, Bleatarne, Burton, Sandford.
Isabel, widow of Roger de Clifford, obteined licence from King Edward 1.18. [1289-1290] to bestow the advousans of Warcop upon the Abbot & Convent of Shap (de Hep) in fre Almes after the Statute of Mortmane.[2] Hiltons, I thinke, were at Burton Anno Edward 1. 21. [1292-1293], for the indenture whereby the wardship of Johan, daughter & heir of William de Sulleby was committed to John de Helton & Agnes his wife, was dated there. Hilton of Burton & Hilton, se p.3. Cr. 1.

Name of Warcop
Warcop (anciently Warthecop) has given name to a family in this County whose Armes allude to the name, as tis of later yeares falcely writ Warcop & storye (which I lieve to others) of the Ancestor being cup-bearer to William the Conqueror.
William de Warthcop test. 27. Henry 3. [1242-1243], vide Lamberset in Kirkby Stephen.[3]
Thomas de Warthcop of Lambersete, vide 4. Henry 4. [1402-1403].
Thomas Warthcop de Lamberset: 3. Edward 4. [1463-1464].

[I.586]

[Lammerside Hall]
Lambersette Hall was formerly a seat of the Warcops. Thomas de Warthecop de Lambersete, a juror in the Inquisition de Matilda filia Beauchamp relict Clifford. 4. Hen. 4.
Item. John de Lancaster de Brampton & John de Helton de Burton.
Thomas Warthcop de Lamberset – 3. Ed. 4.

{Burton}
Burton gave name to an ancient family.
Afterward it came to the Heltons. Family of Helton: John de Helton de Burton, juror in inquisitione de Matilda Beauchamp, relict [...] Clifford. 4. Henry 4. [1402-1403].
{See \ more / in Bongate parish & Ormside parish.}

{Sandford}
This place gave name to an ancient family:
Robert de Sandeford temp. Johannis Regis Angliæ [1199-1216], Willielmus ejus filius.[4]
Thomas de Sandford. 15. King John [1213-1214].
Richard de Sandford. 14. of King Edward I. [1285-1286]*

[Machell's Notes: I.315]
*(è cartis antiquis penes Comitissa Cumb[erland]., vel Blenk[insop], vel utrisque.)[5]

[I.317]

The Roman Way

{☞The Romane Way which leads towards Apleby}
{The Romane Way towards Brough ☜}[6]

Castle near Coupland Beck Bridge

[1] Also numbered p.39.
[2] For the statutes of Mortmain, see the English Glossary.
[3] Lammerside: see 'Lammerside Notes' in Part 1, Ch.13, Kirkby Stephen, I.486, I.596.
[4] 'William, Robert's son.'
[5] 'From ancient deeds in the possession of the Countess of Cumberland, or Blenkinsop, or both.'
[6] In the MS, this heading is placed vertically down the page.

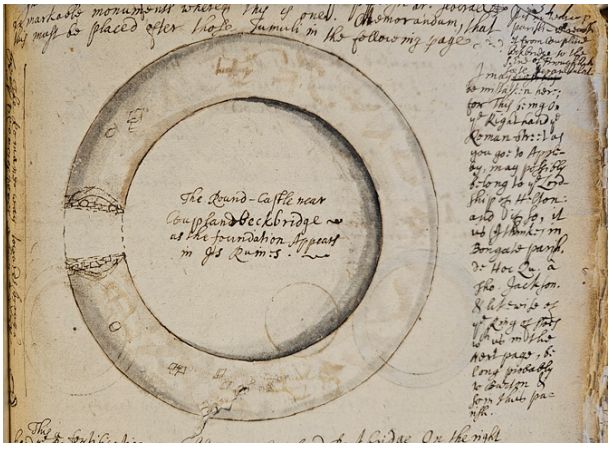


Figure 1.23.1. 'The Round-Castle near Coupland Beckbridge as the foundation Appears in Its Ruines' I.317.[7]

In the Lordship of Sandford in Warcop Parish* are severall remarkable monuments, whereof this is one†. This a Fortification or Castle near Coupland Beck bridge on the right hand \ the Roman Way as you goe towards Apleby / the diameter whereof within the walls is 40 passes[8] and the breadth of the walls, if the rubbish upon the ruines thereof hathe not considerably contributed therunto, 10 yards; so that the whole circumference must bee about 9 score passes. There have bin a great many cart loads of stone lately digged out of the foundations there of a read colour for the most part and very strongly cemented with lime and sand‡.

Over against this but nearer to the Bridge & water close by the Romane Way, is a square which I take to be the vestigia of an Hospitall with the Garden thereto belonging, for I have rett in old writeings of one hereabouts.[9]

The whole platt is about 30 passes within the hedges, which have bin duble-diked so that the whole extent thereof has bin much about 6 score passes within the hedges. The House has stood nearer towards the Roman Way, on which side ther has bin onely a court wall before it without any hedges. And ther have bin great store of sheep folds hereabouts all along from the Hospitall up the hill close by the edge of the Romane Way.

[Machell's Notes: I.317]

*{It is in Warcop parish, which reaches from Coupland Beckbridge to the south end of Brough High […][10] See Sc. Perambulat[ion]. I may ~~perhaps~~ be mistaken here; for this being on the right hand the Roman Street as you go to Appleby may possibly belong to the Lordship of Helton, and if so, it is I thinkes in Bongate Parish: de Hoc. Q. à Thomas Jackson;[11] & likewise of the ring of stones which is in the next page, belong probably to Burton, & so in this Parish.}

†Memorandum: that this must be placed after those tumuli in the following page.

‡March 15, 1688. I saw stones diged up cemented with lime ~~T.M~~.

[I.318]

Near to Sandford field corner after you are over the little Brooke and has mounted the hill, on your lef-hand close to Romane Way are 3 or 4 Tumuli whereof 2 are large ones, and the other which lay betwixt them are very much \ defaced, / one of them being scarce disernable now to be of that sort. The 1st is 4 score & eleven passes about, measuring in the midle of the Trench, and therfor the circumference must be more by the out side the Trench, but not very much, for the Trench is not above one passe broade; the 2nd not above 40. The 3rd being disfigured I tooke not much notise of, but the 4, which is highest, is in circumference 4 score & 6 and the distance twixt this & the 1st is 54 passes.

[7] Note that the tear at the bottom of this sketch represents damage done to the paper, not a deliberate mark.
[8] For 'passes', see the English Glossary.
[9] Whether 'seen writ' or 'read', the meaning is still clear.
[10] The page has perished here.
[11] 'About this, query of Thomas Jackson.'

The figure with these tumuli is the same with those I showed in Marton Parish; onely they differ in this: That these are wholly of the earth and the other are of cobbles & pible stones.[12]

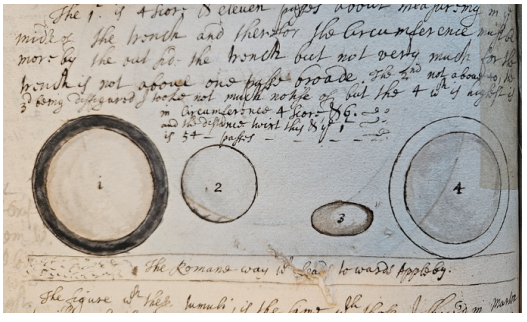


Figure 1.23.2. Warcop tumuli and 'the Romane Way which leads towards Appleby'. I.318.

About 6 score passes from the 4th tumulus is an other monument \ on the right hand the way at a little distance over about 2 yards / of orbicular forme also;[13] but is onely a ring made of earth and stones a little surmounting the level it is reared upon, and there are pitched severall great stones allmost att equall distance, and some agane of a lesser sise are placed betwixt them after this manner following:

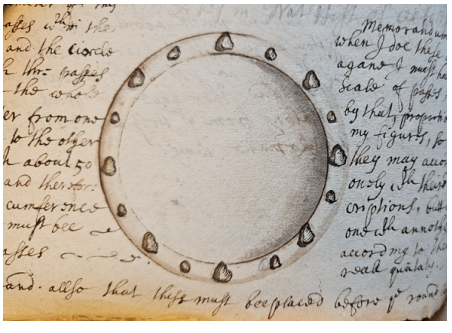


Figure 1.23.3. 'A ring made of earth and stones'. I.318.

The diameter of this is 24 passes within the circle, and the circle in bredth three passes so that the whole diameter from one out side to the other is much about 50 passes: and therefore, the circumference of it must be 150 passes.

[Machell's Notes: I.318]

Memorandum: that when I doe these over agane I must have a scale of passes, and by that proportion all my figures so that they may accord not onely with their discriptions, butt allso one with annother according to their real quantity.

Memorandum allso that these must bee placed before the round castle.

[I.322]

[Warcop Hall]

The Hall is a ~~very~~ sweat seat very much improved with gardens & orchards by Mr Richard Brathwate.[14] There is a grove beyond the houses & gardens about 12 score distant, with a fish pond att the end thereof.

[12] Pible or pibel: (middle English) pebble stone. *OED*.

[13] Orbicular: round; circular.

[14] MS: '~~that [in…us] Gentleman~~ Mr Richard Brathwate'. The unclear word is possibly 'ingenious', as Machell regularly used it as a compliment when he deemed individuals inventive.

[I.319]

In the dineing roome att Warcop Hall are these coats of arms.



Figure 1.23.4. Coats of arms at Warcop Hall. I.319.

Upon the 1st is a rude helmet & over that, upon a wreath, a grahund couchant collered with a line from the coller surrounding his body. And under-neath, the motto CVM SPE AC ML: ME TV in a kind of long scrowle; & under-neath that these letters S^{r}T^{B}E, for Sir Thomas Brathwate & his lady.
This coat of the Brathwates is wrong don through the ignorance of the workman, for the armes are crosletts upon a cheveron \ & the grahound couchant. / Sir Thomas B. marryed the daughter of Sir John Dalston of Dalston,[15] which Sir John marryed a Warcop, whereupon they had Smardal Hall &c. \ where the Dalstons sometime lived / & hereupon it is that Warcops Armes are here inserted – not for any match with the Brathwates*. The Brathwates of Burneshide are of a younger house, for Richard of Burneshide was younger brother to Sir Thomas. Both ~~sons of Thomas Brathwate~~ \ forsan of Robert ut infra / sic. inform. Richard Brathwate.[16]
The 2nd is Sir Thomas Dakers his coate, of Abbey of Lanercost, and was put up here I suppose upon his marrying a Brathwate, daughter to Sir Thomas.[17]

[Machell's Notes: I.319]

*Note: To ancient arms there belongeth no crest; in that grant of a crest by Edmond, Knight Norroy dated 22 of November in 34th of Queen Elizabeth 1591, in which he grants to their ancient armes (which were Gules on a cheveron Argent 3 cross croslets fitche Sable, to which he added as followeth:
To Thomas Brathwate of Warcop in the County of Westm'land, Gentleman, son & heire of Robert Brathwate of Ambleside in the county aforesaid, Gentleman: which Robert was the son of Richard Brathwate in the said county, Gentleman; who was descended of an ancient house & family long time bearing Armes, that is to say i.e. Gules &c. have granted unto the said Thomas Brathwate, Gentleman, to his said ancient arms by way of or increase – upon a helme on a Torse,[18] white & black, a grayhound couchant Argent, his coller & line Gules mantled Gules, dubled Argent. But noe devise, tho I meet with one after put up in the dineing roome.

[Warcop Church]

[III.327]

The \ body of the / church: long 19 passes \ broad 12 / having one Ile with 2 pillars & 3 arches. ~~The~~ \ and 2 / portches opposite; that on the S. belonging formerly to Warcop Tower, but now the People by the permission of Mr Fother[gill], late owner thereof, who gave them leave to place their seates there upon the condition of repareing it. The other on the N. side belongs to the House of Burton within this Parish and the Chancel is Long – 13 passes – & in breadth 6. So, the whol Length is XXXII passes or

[15] Sir John Dalston of Dalston Hall, 2nd baronet (1639-1711), Sheriff of Cumberland 1686: See *CFH*, 83.
[16] 'Perhaps of Robert, as above. Information from Richard Braithwate.'
[17] MS: 'his coate of Abber Lennarcost and was put up here I suppose upon his marrying a Brathwate, daughter to Sir Thomas.' Presumably this was Lanercost Abbey, as c.1630 Henry Dacre of Lanercost married Dorothy Brathwaite of Warcop; Henry Dacre was knighted c. December 1633: see Henry Summerson, 'Dacre Family 1542-1716'. *ODNB*.
[18] Torse: a wreath; a twisted roll of fabric laid around the top of the helmet and the base of the crest. See A.C. Fox-Davies, *A Complete Guide to Heraldry* (New York, 1978), 402-06.

yards; the whol Breadth across about XX broad with these porch[es] ex transverso,[19] being built in manner of a †. And at the west end is a Timpanum[20] with 3 little bells hanging in this wise, which is very pleasant & delightful to loke upon in passing the road. There is maden hare on the church walls.[21]



Figure 1.23.5. Church bells, Warcop. III.327.

[I.320]

Warcop church has had [in] it windows of painted glass but they are now utterly defaced, there being only remaining: In the West End 2 windows whereof take this account:
The 1st, which is next the porch, has 3 lights toward the top of 1st, an Escutchion in a plane Roundell Black and white, in which are 3 Horse shoes. This I take not to be any coate because there are no proper colours, the field and charge being both of a colour, i.e. Argent; But onely a fancy for some benefactor, perhaps a smith who has bin at the cost with glase[22] that window;[23] \ except it be for Warcop for they bare 6. S. in a field Argent, 3 peradventure formerly, as Viponts & Hellebecks did.

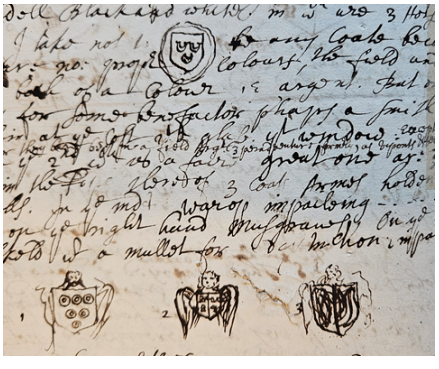


Figure 1.23.6. Four coats of arms in Warcop Church windows. I.320.

In the 2nd, which is a faire great one, are 3 lights, and in the tops thereof 3 Coats Armes holden by Angells. In the midst Warcop impaleing [blank], and on the right hand Musgraves. On the left hand Threlkeld with a mullet for distinction, impaled by[24] the:
1. Azure, 6 annulets Or.
2. Per pale: 1. Sable 3 cups Argent; 2nd. Sable 3 haukes.
3. Argent a manche Gules upon a mullet of the 1st. This is impaled.

[19] Crosswise.
[20] Timpanum or tympanum: the area enclosed by a pediment, whether triangular or circular, often adorned with sculpture. *OED*.
[21] Similar information about the church (written in pencil in note form) is given on MS.III.327: not transcribed.
[22] Glazing.
[23] Horseshoes are fairly common heraldic symbols; see Fox-Davies, *Heraldry*, 202.
[24] Here there is a small sketch of a coat of arms, almost obscured by the binding.

[Hiltons Quire]
In Hiltons quire, which is on the north side of the church, is a through with a marble upon it whereon has bin 2 Escutchions in brasse & Bras inscription of some buried there \ but lost. / W[e]st side severall gravestone carved in the old fashon with cross & rose towards the head. On the outside above the window this:



Figure 1.23.7. Nevill Coat of Arms, Warcop Church. I.320.

which I take to be Nevill, Earle of Westmorland.
There are 2 little bells belonging to this church.[25]

Parsonage House
The ~~parsonage~~ \ vicaredg / house has bin moted about with all the garden, orchards, barne &c. in an oblo[n]g figure, and some can ~~yet~~ remember a drawbridge to have bin at the gate.[26] Over the doore of the right side is IHS, i.e. Jhesus hom. Salvator.[27] Un the other side, is great M for Maria.[28] The present vicar: Mr Crow.[29]

[Chapels]
To this church has belonged the chaple of Sandford and of Bleatarne: inform[ant] Mr Crow, vicario.

In this parish were 4 villages: Warcop, Sandford, Burton, Bleatarne; 6 Gentlemens Seats & one abby, the stones whereof some would make us believe built Hartley Castle.

[I.321]

In Warcop
A fair bridge near the tower \ over Eden, / & a mile near the hall upon the little beck, the Castle, the ancient seat of the Earles of Westmorland*.
? 3. The Hall, the seat of the Brathwate of Warcop; their armes [blank]
? 2. The Tower, the seat of the Warcops of Warcop anciently, now of Fairer. The arms [blank]

Sandford
In Sandford \ a chaple. / New Hall by the mireside: an old house now being in the possesion of the Warcops.

[25] Machell's error; there are three, as his sketch on III.327 shows.
[26] See *N&B1*, 602, for similar text.
[27] IHS: Iesus Hominum Salvator - Jesus, Saviour of men.
[28] MS: 'On the other side great is M. for Maria.'
[29] Charles Crow, vicar of Warcop, 1663-82. CCED.

One Hall, now demolished, in the midle of the towne; anciently the seat of the Sandfords \ to which family it gave that sir name above 300 yeres.[30] / The Lordship is now turned into freehold, sold by Andrew Wharton, part whereof belongs to Richard Brathwate of Warcop Esq.[31]

[VI.462A][32]

Memorandum: A horse rase at Sandford More, where the forrest of Coppland[33] was formerly, which belongs to Ap[leby], for a plate, att the cost of the major[34] of the towne. It is to be delivered in Apleby to him that wins it. This horse rase, upon the Wednesday before Whit Sunday.

[I.321]

Burton

Att Burton, one Hall belonging the Hiltons of Hilton, Burton & Ormside.

Bleatarne

\ Chaple / There is one Mr Midleton lives there. The towne is a lordship & belongs now to Mr George Fothergill of Tarnehouse in Russendall.[35] Her[e] they say has bin a Abby†. It is supposed, or at least pretended, to have belonged to Byland Abby in Yorkshire \ near Thirske / Informante: Richard Brathwate, Armig[er]. As to the particular fam[ilies] vid [blank]

[Machell's Notes: I:321]

*Query? Their armes.
†sed de hoc q. plura.[36]

[I.336]

An annuity of 8li per annum paid out of a place calld Burton Powes to the Power[37] of Warcop minister; church rates of Warcop Parish of 5 marke*.

The Castle

The Castle at Warcop has conteined above an acre of land, and some part of the walls which I have seen digged five passes broad of fair hune stone wrought with a broad pick & well cemented with lime & sand.[38] It is now a tenement payd 4s 6d fineable rent to Mr Brathwate. The house, most of it built out of it, & many of a huen stone remane in the hedge wall; and they say Kirkby church tower was built of stones fetched from hence, and that this was the Seat of the Earles of Westm'land: temp. Henry 8. Mr Brathwate, Mr Farer etia[m] informa[nte].[39]

---

[30] The seat of the Sandfords, later of Askham Hall. Edmund Sandford (historian of the Cumberland gentry) was Machell's contemporary; a copy of his small book (1675), is bound up in Volume 6 of Machell's History (VI.539-67), as 'A Cursory Relation of all the Antiquities and Familyes in Cumb'land', though Machell does not appear to have known that Sandford was the author. William Nicolson rectified this situation by adding a note in the Index to Volume 6: 'Mr. Edmund Sandford, Great Uncle to W Sandford, Esq., the present proprietor of the House of Askham, and Chief of the name 1709.' See the published text in R.S. Ferguson's scholarly edition, *A Cursory Relation of all the Antiquities & Familyes in Cumberland by Edmund Sandford, circa*, *1675,* CWAAS Tract Series 4 (Kendal, 1890).

[31] MS: 'In Sandford, 2. \ a chaple / one Hall now demolished in the midle of the towne, anciently the seat of the Sandfords \ to which family it gave that sir name above 300 yeres. / The lordship is now turned into freehold sold by Andrew Wharton, part whereof belongs to Richard Brathwate of Warcop Esq. now being 2. New Hall by the mireside an old house \ 2 / in the now \ 1 / in possesion of the Warcops.' Machell clearly decided to reorder his paragraph by numbering where he wanted his sentences to be placed.

[32] Also numbered p.101. This page is torn at the foot.

[33] There are two words here, one superimposed over the other.

[34] Major = mayor.

[35] Ravenstonedale, see Part 1, Ch.21, Ravenstonedale: III.308. See also *N&B1*, 616.

[36] 'But about this, more information is required.'

[37] To the poor? Or to the use of the minister?

[38] Repeated in *N&B1*, 606, which reports: 'Mr Machel says that he had seen some of the walls dug up, which were fifteen-foot-thick, and of fair hewn stone, well cemented with lime and sand.'

[39] MS: 'This was the Seat of the ~~Nevills~~ Earles of Westm'land: Mr Brathwate, Mr Farer etia[m] informa[nte]., temp. Henry 8', translates as, 'This was the seat of the earles of Westmorland in the time of Henry VIII; Mr Brathwate; Mr Farer also gave information.'

Warcop Hall was purchased to the Brathwates & dem[ained] with tenents from Sir Simon Musgrave,[40] Lord Philip Wharton[41] & Sir John Lowther,[42] Joint Lords, as I suppose, by marriage.

[Machell's Notes: I.336]

*But nothing to those.

[I.322]

Warcop Tower

The tower I suppose to have bin built either by Lowther or Musgrave upon the division of the Lordship & marriage of 3 coheires (ut puto),[43] for there are above the midle window in the front thereof these 2 coates



Figure 1.23.8. Warcop Tower window. Coats of arms. I.322.

which tho they be not impaled yet I take the one to be husband and the other wife. But because both Musgraves & Lowthers bear 6 annuletts and there are no colours to distinguish them by \ upon the stonework / I know not which family to fix it upon. But for the 2nd coate it is certanely Warcops, and one Edward Warcop liveing there in my time. It is onely a freehold estate now, whatever it has bin formerly, and does sute & service at the Court Baron of Mr Brathwate who has allso som tennants yet in Sandford, and soe has Mr Burton.

[Machell's Notes: I.322, 324A & 325]

Query? What fineable rent Warcop.
{Parish of Warcop. Memorandum: to see stones on Sandford more and to mention the horse rase & hospital if there.}



Figure 1.23.9. Margin sketch beside a description of Thomas Warcop of Colby. I.333.

[40] Sir Simon Musgrave (1579?-1658), of Fairbank.
[41] Philip Lord Wharton (1613-96), Westmorland's leading puritan baron: see Part 1, Ch.21, Ravenstonedale. See also G. F. Trevallyn Jones, *Saw-pit Wharton: The Political Career from 1640 to 1691 of Philip, Fourth Lord Wharton* (Sydney, 1967).
[42] Sir John Lowther II (1605-75).
[43] 'As I think'.

[Further Notes: I.333 & III.326B]
{Memorandum: to see the account of Bongate, Apleby}
{Wheatfloor, white of egg & will joyn pot.}
{Boundarys, see my paper}
[III.326B]
Mr Thomas Burton Chancelour of Carleol 1581.
Mr Knipes will kept at Warcop.

[III.326B]

[Warcop School]

February 8. 1640.
John Simpson of Sandforth[44] by his last will & testament bearing date as above said doth give a legacy of 5s per annum to be paid every other year to the schoolmaster of Warcop, & in case there be no schoolmaster there, it to go to the schoolmaster of Crosby. The same is to be paid by Barthol[omew] Scaife & Robert Peart[45] both of Sandforth, & to be paid to the church-wardens.

[III.326D][46]

Ad {Warcop school founded. {Crosby-Garret school.}[47]

[III.327]

Warcop Parish {Petrified Shokles}[48]

There is a cave in Midlefell {North-east from the church at 1½ m. distance} found by Mr Hough Raw of Kirkby [Stephen] in sinked \ ing / a shaft for lead-ore, after he had sunke 12 fathom deepe – in lengthe 20 yards, in breadth 5 or 6 yards, about 7 foote high – a flat celing with ~~shockells of~~ petrified shokles*, som as thick as a mans legg, which stood like pillars on a round bassis upon the ground; others of the like, the thickness of mans arme; som like a staff; som like candles; som like a tobacco-pipe; & other shorter like shockells of ice so thick that a man could not pass betwixt them, but they broke like ice.[49] There was a lime stone above it & a peat moss hardby, & out of a \ black / cranny came a drop of water which had framed the condensed and petrified liquor into the forme & bigness of ~~a~~ glass bottle~~s~~, 4 being larger than quart bottles, others less, the necks about 1-inch ¼, with an hollow at the top where the water passed, like the mouth of a bottle. These were as hard as flint stone. Mr Raw thought the workemen had got bottles there & was strangely surprised when he went to ciese on them & could not remove them from the ground.

[Notes: III.327]

*{They were masses of stalactites.}[50]

[III.329]

[Burton and Burton Hall]

Burton, so calld from the plenty of birches* that gro there aboutes, is a smale hamlet at the skirt of Romanfell, consisting \ only / of 3 or 4 houses which lye~~s~~ dispersedly and are customary tenants to Burton Hall, an old ruinous building \ on the E side of [blank] sike or beck / which fronteth southwards & hath but a narrow & confined prospect, impeded by a barne which standeth opposite to the court gate. The main of the house is a great Hall & ~~drawing room~~ parlour, and above them, a dineing roome & drawing rome. At the east end is a ruined chappell adjoyning to the house, and at the

[44] Sandford.
[45] 'Peart' is unclear; the name could well be 'Grant'.
[46] Reverse of III.326B.
[47] See Crosby Garrett: III.165, 166, 166A.
[48] 'Shokle'. '1500s schokle**,** (1600s sheckle**),** a lump of ice; an icicle. Scottish and northern, now rare'. *OED*.
[49] In the margin at this point is a fairly illegible note, which appears to read, '[?] N. there bottles} enters 6 ascend to hall.'
[50] 'This margin comment was added later in another hand; it appears, from various examples in the volumes, to be Bishop Lyttleton's.

west an additional building by Mr Thomas Hilton in 1622, as appears by those figures under the water table of the upper story;[51] & also these letter $I^{H}M$ for John & Mary Hilton: & this coat of arms.



Figure 1.23.10. Coat of Arms at Burton Hall. III.329.

There is nothing more remarquable in or about the house but this coate of armes in glass, in the \ great window of the / dineing roome.



Figure 1.23.11. Coat of arms in the great window of the dining room at Burton Hall. III.329.

The blazon:
1. Sable: a fess Argent between 2 saltiers in chiefe & 3 annulets in Bass, Or.
2. Argent: 3 wings [blank] Gules.
3. Azure: a bend Argent between 6 martlets, Or.
Under it – John Hylton and Mary his wife.

An this other [is] on ~~south west~~ the highest stone of the S. West angle of the great window, wherein the oblong is but a lacuna, or piece left unfinished by the carver.

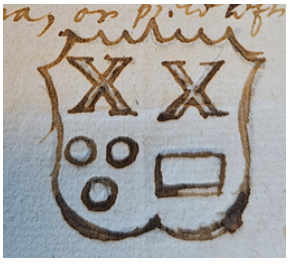


Figure 1.23.12. Detail on 'the highest stone of the S.W. angle of the great window' of Burton Hall. III.329.

[51] 'Water table': a drip moulding, i.e. a horizontal projecting ledge or moulding with a sloping top, set along the side of a wall to throw off rain. *OED*.

This Burton Hall is the ancient seat of the Hiltons ~~of Ormside Esq~~; and now belongs to Ciprian Hilton of Ormside Esq. by descent from his ancestours.
The Owners
1.Hilton of Burton, 2., 3.

[Machell's Notes: III.329]

*{? of burrs.}

[III.326A]

[Landholding]
1. In Warcop, fam[ilies] 52, of which freehold 4. Lords: Mr Brath[waite] & Vicar. 4. 1 hall, 1T[enement].
2. In Burton ½ mile N[orth ab Ecclesia]. Fam[ilies] 12.
3. Of which freehold 2. Lords: Mr Hilton.
4. In Sand[ford] W[est ab Ecclesia] ½. Fam[ilies] 31. Freeholds 19; and Lords: Mr Wharton. Apleby school 2?
5. Bleatarn S.W[est ab Ecclesia] 1 [mile]. Fam[ilies] 22. Freeholds 7. Lords: Sir Christopher Musgrave. Gentlemens houses 3.
In Sandford Lord Wharton 1 tenement; Mr Burton 5 tenements.

[Machell's Notes: III.326C] [52]
Query: How many familyes; number of free[holders]

[The Bounder]

[III.336A][53]

[1.]
From Greskelde or Grasgil all along down the water call'd Ormside beck, adjoining to the parish of Asby 'till it comes to a place called Crooks; from thence down the said water thro' Horngil & from the north corner thereof in a direct line on the east side of a hill call'd Brackenber by an old mound or dyke, & so thro' Thricklebanks to Peter-Wood adjoining to the river Eden; bounded all along by the parish of Ormside.

[III.338][54]

[2.]
For his most honoured friend Mr Thomas Machell
At Kirbethure
These.

[III.337][55]

Sir
After my servise presented unto you, these are to aquainte you that acordinge to my promise I have done my indevor to gitt you this abstracte of Warcop parishe. Sir if I may any further be serviseable to you, you may frely command him who is yours to serve you.
Nicho[las] Harrison.

A Perfect Bounder of Warcope Parishe
Beginning on the North with Bongate Parish from which tis divided from Cowplanbeck, from the foote where it runs into Eden, you ascend CB[56] where it runs into Eden, to George-gill-sike foot all the way to Umfregd Heade & so up the Storth-Sike & through Lowgill banke;[57] thence in a dyrecte

[52] Scrap page measuring 4½cm x 2cm: possibly the smallest page in Machell's MS.
[53] Scrap page measuring 8cm x 21cm; written on lined paper in a hand resembling that of a second bounder provider, see foot of III.337.
[54] Address sheet of the letter from Nicholas Harrison.
[55] Boundary text written and signed by Nicholas Harrison, with annotations in Machell's hand.
[56] This is Machell's text, apparently correcting Harrison's first line which reads, MS 'Beginning at Cowplanbecke foote'.
[57] Machell's text corrects that of Harrison in this paragraph. MS: '\ Beginning on the North with Bongate Parish from which tis divided from Cowplanbeck / from the foote ~~adjoyning to Bongate parish~~ where it runs into Eden, you ascend CB adjoyning with Eden \ where it runs into Eden / you ~~by George~~ \ to George-gill-sike / on the N.

line up Wastergill to the top of Romanfell; & so over Romanfell to Swindaille-Fauldes; then descends \ downe to Sisegill foote; thence ascends up Sisegill (in a dyrecte line) to \ currock / top of the littell fell; thence in a dyrecte line ~~from lile fell~~ through Phillops-read-mose* on the north of it, to Arnside Boore,[58] adjoyninge all this way to Bongate parish \ on the north of it. / And so from thence easteward up the Mickell Fellend to a curack \ of stones / on the sunn-side of the Mickellfell and there adjoynes on the east side with Rumachurch {Rumakirk} parishe \ in the county of York / {on the S. with Musgrave parish.} And from thence descends downe southward in a dyrecte line by the Haire-Crage to a sealle-tree[59] neare Force-becke & adjoyning on the sunn side to Musgrave parish;[60] and from thence forward (in a dyrecte line) to the Raven-Crage; & from thence ~~decending downeward~~ (in a dyrecte line) to a thorne-tree ~~in~~ growing in a crage in Midellfell Side; & from thence descend ~~downward~~ to a house calld Towansons house in a dyrecte line, & all the way adjoyneing to Musgrave parish; & from thence† to the South end of Broughhill; & from thence in a dyrecte line westward to the A[le] house of one Steadmans. And from thence (in a dyrecte line) by a burtere-tree[61] in the Sand Field[62] to Eden; & from thence in a dyrecte line over Eden to a wathe upon Bleatarne-Maske called Sandwath adjoyninge to‡ \ Soulbe parish on the south side⸸. / And from thence in a dyrecte line westward to a place called Horngill adjoyning on the west to Ormside parish; & from thence in a dyrecte line northward to a place called Blacksike foote‖ adjoyninge to Eden. And so ~~eastwards~~ downe Eden all the way to Coppelenbeck-foot ~~in a dyrecte line~~ where we began.

[Machell's Notes: III.337]

*{?}
†(by what)
‡Adjoining to the parish of Crosby Garret on the south side; & from Sandwath to Grasegill, where it adjoins to the parish of Kirkby Stephen; from thence down the rivulet ~~to Horngill~~ where it adjoins to the parish of Asby, to Horngill; from Horngill, adjoining on the west to Ormside parish, to a place called Black Sike, adjoining S[E] to the river Eden, & so down Eden all the way to Coppelenbeck foot, where we began.[63]
⸸On the S. Soulby. No parish}
‖Query foote? {which runs down into Eden?}

Curruck, commonly called Hurruck, from Hurles, which signifies to throw and ruck or rick, a stack, heape or cock of hay, which it resembles. {From leading in a cart or waine.}[64]

On the top of Brough fair-hill are 2 or 3 tumuli upon one of which the fair is wont to be proclaimed. And it is somewhat odd that Brough fair should be kept so remote from the town of Brough, being [blank]? miles distant & in another parish: Sc. in Warcop.

[III.339]

Blea-Tarn

Blea-Tarn is an hamlet rather than a village, the houses lying confusedly scattered, which are in number about XXII: 22, of which ~~they~~ are[65] freeholds VII, the rest arbitrary to Sir Christopher

~~& North East~~ with Bongate parish from which tis divided by Cowplan beck from the foote; thence up George Gill Sike \ ~~adjoyning to Bongate parish all the way~~ to Umfregd Heade & so up the Storth-Sike & through Lowgill banke.' The body text above attempts to offer an accurate version of this difficult passage.

[58] Boore? There is a field in Warcop known as 'Boron Brow': see *Westmorland Place-Names*. Alternatively, in *Dictionaries of the Scots Language*, Online, a 'bour' is an elder tree, a dwelling place, an inn. *OED* suggests a boar, but see below, fn.61.

[59] Sealle tree. Old English 'sealh' or 'sallow': a willow tree. *OED*.

[60] Sun side: the side of a place or object which receives or tends to receive the most sunlight. *OED*.

[61] Possibly the 'borra' or 'bour' tree (*Dictionaries of the Scots Language* Online); 'bour' or 'burtree'. *OED*. All are Scots or Northern English words for the 'elder tree'.

[62] A field in Warcop called 'Sand Pen' is noted in *Westmorland Place-Names*.

[63] Another version of the latter part of the bounder, not in Machell's hand and not in the hand of Nicholas Harrison, who provided the bounder information from the top of III.337 (excluding Machell's interventions and interlineations).

[64] Currack or Currock: a pair of open wooden or wicker frames slung pannier-wise on each side of a horse, for carrying a load of corn, hay, or other bulky material. *OED*.

[65] Some text (4cm) has been crossed through here and is therefore illegible.

Musgrave of Hartley Castle,[66] purchased lately of Mr George Fothergil of [blank] in Russendale, whose familyes you have an account of in Hartley & Russendal, as their fixed seates.
This place is seated (for the most part of it) on the sunny side of a banke, betwixt which and the common or pasture adjoyning, is a ~~wetish~~ \ wet / bottom, standing sometimes of the year with water in manner of Tarne, whence it may seem to be called Blea-Tarne.

[Machell's Notes: III.336]

Blatern – Musgrave
Chapel
Common i.e. Musgrave

[III.333]

[County Court ruling relating to common pasture at Bleatarn and Musgrave belonging to Byland Abbey in Yorkshire] From a copy taken by Mr George Fothergill of Tarn House.[67]

Hec compositio facta est inter Thorphinum filium Roberti et Robertum filium Petri et Monarchos de Beghland et Wallenum de Wardcop et Rob[ertum filium fidis. De calumnia quam Robertus filius Petri habuit de Communi pasture inter Blaternam & Musegrava. Quod pro pace ista remanebit Roberto filio Petri in proprium octoginta due acre terre. Scilicet a spina super Hobergham in transversam del Sijc Subtus Manrebergha usque ad ductum versus Musegravam. Et a predicta Spina totum remanebit Monachis in proprium versus grangiam et usque ad ductum juxta Capellam per divisas quas fecerunt et perambulaverunt; et averie Roberti Musegrave nunquam infra has divisas intrabunt nec Averie Monachorum infra proprium Roberti. Robertus etiam habebit unum exitum averijs de Musegrava super Manrebergham inter culturam Monachorum et vallem subtus Hobergham. A divisis quas fecerint et perambulaverint juxta pratum. Et inde habebit Robertus Communem pasturam usque ad vivarium et inde usque ad viam Super Cressekelde que vadit versus Appelb et usque ad quadradriam, et inde usque ad caput vivarij per divisas quas perambulaverunt et fecerunt. Totum hoc erit in Communam pasturam averijs de Musegrava, et averijs Monachorum . Sed monachi arabunt culturam juxta fossatum molendini usque ad vivarium, sicut perambulaverunt et divisas fecerunt. Et habebunt culturam suam super Maurebergh & pratum in proprium sicut habuerunt ante istam compositionem, et nichil amplius ibi

[III.334]

Arabunt. Et Averie de Musegrava in his locis nunquam intrabunt. Et Thorphinus et Robertus coram conprovincialibus affidaverunt quod ipsi et heredes eorum tenebunt hanc compositionem fideliter et sine malo ingenio in perpetuum. Sed si contigerit quod Averie de Musegrava intrent in proprium Monachorum dabunt unum denarium pro 20 averijs secundum consuetudinem Provincie Similiter dabunt monachi si averie eorum intrent proprium Roberti. Hec compositio facta fuit in Curia Domini Regis apud Appelby coram Williellmo filio Huei ballivo, et Murdaco decano, et Thoma de Hellebec, et Thoma filio Gospatricij, et Roberto de Kabergh, et Johanne Tailleboys, et Conano de Aske, et Williellmo de Ascheby, et Richardo Anglico, et Henrico de Cund[le], et Stephano de Tyrnaby, et Rogero Winkenel, & Roberto filio Richardi, et Williellmo de Lather, et Thoma fratre ejus; et Huberto Clerico, Michaele de Harclay, et Waltero filio ejus, & ceteris probis hominibus qui tunc fuerunt ibi presentes.[68]

[66] Hartley Castle was the chief seat of the Musgraves before the marriage of Thomas Musgrave (d. before 1467) to Joan (born c.1414), elder daughter and co-heir of William Stapleton of Edenhall. See *CFH*, 237, 322-23.
[67] This sentence was originally placed on the following page.
[68] [Not in Machell's hand] Translation of the agreement of Thorfinn and others with the monks of Byland Abbey and others (see also *N&B1*, 615-16): 'This peace-settlement was made between Thorphin the son of Robert and Robert the son of Peter, and the monks of Byland and Wallen de Warcop and Robert son of Fidis, concerning the ill-feeling suffered by Robert the son of Peter relating to the common pasture between Bleatarn and Musgrave. It is agreed that Robert the son of Peter shall have for his own use 82 acres of arable land, viz. from the thorn-tree above Hobergh, across the sike below Maurebergh, as far as the water course leading towards Musgrave; and from the said thorn-tree towards the Grange, and to the water-course near the chapel, all shall be the monks' property, by the boundaries which they have made and walked; and the draught beasts of Robert Musgrave shall never enter this land, nor those of the monks enter the private land of the said Robert. And Robert shall have one outlet for the draught beasts of Musgrave upon Maurebergh between the monks'

cultivated ground and the valley below Hobergh, by the bounds which they will have made and walked next to the meadowland. And Robert shall have common of pasture thence as far as the fish-pond and thence up the road above Cresskeld which goes towards Appleby, thence to where the four roads meet, and thence to the head of the fish-pond by the bounds which they have walked and made. All this shall be in the common pasture for the draught animals of Musgrave and of the monks. But the monks shall plough the farmland near the mill-ditch as far as the fish-pond, on the bounds that they have walked and made; and they shall continue to have as their private property their farmland above Maurebergh, and the meadow just as they had before the making of this agreement, and they shall not extend their ploughland there; and the draught animals of Musgrave shall never enter these places. And Thorphin and Robert have sworn their oath in the presence of the district's inhabitants, to uphold this agreement faithfully, they and their heirs, without evil intent, for ever. But if it should happen that the draught animals of Musgrave should enter the monks' private land they will give one penny for 20 draught animals according to the custom of the district. Likewise, the monks will give [the same] if their own draught animals intrude into Robert's land. This agreement was made in the Court of Our Lord the King at Appleby in the presence of William the son of Hugh the Bailiff, Murdo the deacon, Thomas de Hellebec, Thomas son of Gospatric, Robert de Kabergh, John Tailleboys, Conan de Aske, William de Ascheby, Richard English, Henry de Cundale, Stephen de Tyrnaby, Roger Winkenel, Robert son of Richard, William de Lathes, Thomas his brother, Hubert the Clerk, Michael de Harclay, Walter his brother and other honest men then present.'

Part 2. Barony of Kendal

[Chapter 1]

[II.1]

Pars 4ª. MS.
Collect[iones] Antiq[us] Comitatus Westmarie
{T.M. Vol. II}

sive

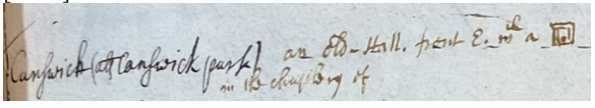
tract. specialis de Baronia de Kendall.

Commonly called The Baronie for distinctio[n] from the Bottome of Westmorland

[1. Villare Alphabeticum relating to the Barony of Kendal]

[II.3]

[A.] Index. Paroch. Manner houses marked xx.[1]

Town or Place. Barony. Ward \ et locorum. /	Parish	Lordship
⊙Ambleside. Part in Windermer & part in Applethwayte	in the parish of Gresmere Windermere	payd
⊙Burnashed	Kendal	
1[t] to Bur: til Ed. 2., then to Belling. till Hen.8. vide notes on the ped.[2] Then to Machel. Then to Brathwate		
⊙Bethom. To the Bethoms […][3]	Bethom	
⊙Barbon in	K. Loansdal	
⊙Brigstere	Kendal	
⊙Burton. A market town & parish	Burton	
⊙Cunswick (alias Cunswick park)	Kendal	
an old hall. Front E. with a gatehouse.[4] In the chapelry of [blank]		
		
Figure 2.1.1. 'Cunswick, an old Hall.' II.3.		
⊙Chapellon (no Chapple. Ith Ing? Holme. Mr Phill[ipson]	? Kendal	
~~Claperiet in the~~ map pro		
⊙Clapper-yeat	Gresmer	
(Mr Phil.) at Windermer Head near Am[b]leside		
⊙Crosthwaite	Heversham	
⊙Crossecrake	Kendal	
Casterton	K. Lonsdal	
⊙Crooke (alias, nuper, Thwatterden hall)	Kendal	
⊙Cowgarth or Calgarth	Windermer	
St Catherines	Windermer	
an old demol[ished] Chaple near W[indermere]		
Dockeray, an Hall house at the N. end of K.	Kendal	
⊙Delake		
	Kendal	

[1] Manor houses do not appear to have been marked with 'xx' here, though some of the text is obscured by the binding. Machell's other symbols, such as ⊙ and 0, denoting size of settlement, have been reproduced as Machell drew them, together with further symbols such as 'x' and '#'. See another experimental approach to recording settlement in Machell's Preface, I.41A.

[2] 'See notes on the pedigree.'

[3] There is an illegible sentence here.

[4] Note the tiny image. The gatehouse is all that is left of the 17th-century hall and its earlier buildings. For Cunswick Hall, see Jeremy R. Robinson and Kevin Grice, 'Cunswick Hall: An archaeological and historical survey of a Lakeland manor', *CW3*, 18 (2018), 149-68.

Delaker	
Farleton	Burton
Firbanke alijs Frithbanke	Kendal
Fawset	
Forresthall (~~dub an non in Baron de Apleby Mr Phil~~)	Kendall
Grayrigg	Kendal
Gresmere (vulgo Grosmer Mr Ph.) a village & parish	Gresmire

[II.4]

Halling hall	Kendall
Hay	
Hayfell, a common belonging to the corporation of Kendal	Kendal
Hutton ith' Hay, a village	Kendal
Haverbrake (alijs Dallan Tower nup[e]r)	Bethom
Heversham village & parish	Heversham
Hellsington village ad Helston Leathes	Kendal
Helston Leathes	
? Hinkaster vil.	
Holme, village & parke belongs to Peston, \ oth' manner /	Burton
? Holmesvales	
~~Howhar (in Lane puto~~)	
Hutton new vil.	Kendal
Hutton Old vil Parke opinor[5]	
Hutton Roofe – Hall	
X Hutton Ith' Hay supra. Ham.	
Hugill vil. in Ing Chapelry in	Kendal
⊙Kendall - a Market Town & Parish	
# Kendal Castle	
Kirkland by Kendal vil. At the S. End.	
Kentmere – a Chapelry Hall & Hamlet in	Kendal
Kent Flu	
Kettle – forsan Strickland Kettel	
Killington – Vil. & Chap. & Hall in	Kendal
Kirkby Loansdale – a market T[own] & Parish	Kirkbyloa[n]sdale
St Katherines, a chap. near Cawgarth in	Windermer
Langdale (~~an in Kend?~~) great & little in	Gresmer
0L~~anrigg~~ or Lambrig vil & parke	Kendal
Leavins hal or Upper Leavins h[all]). Nether Leavins hall to Preston oth[er] manner {not vill but manner house}	Heversham
Long-Sleddall vide Sled.	Kendall
Leaun flu	
Loansdale – Dale in the S. part of Kendal Barony	Kirkby Loansdale
Loughrigg in	Gresmer
Lupton Lordship	Kirkby Loansdale

[II.5]

Mansergh	K. Loansdale
0Meathop (or Methop)	Heversham P.
⊙Midleton manner – vill	Kirkbylonsd.
Millthorpe (v[u]lga \Mil/Throp)	Heversham
Natland Vil. \ Natland forrest /	Kendall
Neather ~~Stanley~~ (pro Staveley x) Vill. vid Staveley & Upper Staveley a vill: a vill. & Chap. formerly a manner!	Kendall
New Hutton vill –	
~~Ova~~ map. (pro Owva \8va /) a Marish & Hamlet	Hersham
Parkes how many?	
Patton Village and Hall	Kendal
Preston (Patrick)	?
⊙Preston (Richard) query an in Bethom vel Kendall (Chapple)	

[5] 'Opinor': as I think.

Q.	
Rydall	Gresmer
⊙ Sellside (or Selsed-hall) Ham. & Chapple in	Kend.
Sidghwick or Seggeswick village	Kend.
Sisergh, an Hal or Manner – Siser fellside an Ham.	
St Catherines (vide Cather.) near Caugarth Hall	Wind'mer
? Skeelmere. ~~Hall & Hamlet~~ pro Skelsmere Hall	~~Kendal~~ R.

[II.6]

⊙ Sledall Vill. Sledall Long (vid. Long Sl.) village	Kendall
⊙ Staveley (Over) (Nether & hall) formerly a market.	Kendall
Staveley Chaple	
Skelmirgh (& Skelsmerhal) vil. ad Labourn	Kendal
Ska\w/(l)thwayte Rigg. Ham.	Kendal
Strickland Vil.	Kendal
Stricland Rog[e]r. Ham.	Kendal
Stainton & vill. ~~& demaisne~~	Heversh.
Sellett hall & demaisne	Hershom
# Troutbeck	Windermer
Undermilnb[e]ck (~~et Overmel.~~) alijs under Milbeck	Windermer
Under Barrow (from Barowfell a vill –)	Kendall
\ barrow ie brow, contra[6] of burrow	
⊙ Witherslack vil. In	[Blank]
⊙ Whinfell vil or Hamlet	Kendal
⊙ Watland forsan per Natland	Wind'mer
⊙ Windermere – a Lakeside Parish – Windermerwat[e]r a lake 10 miles long)	Wind'mer
Winstar Chapple in	K?
~~⊙ Whinfell~~	

[II.7]

Index nominum[7]

A
Bateman
Bellingham
Beck
Bethom
Brathwayte
Bradley
Briggs
Byndlose
Carus
Chamber
Curwen
Duckett
Fisher
Fleming
Gilpin
Guy
Godsave
Harrington sive antique Haverington for ad Bar[ony] De Kend.
J
K
Labourne
Lancaster

[6] This word is unclear but is probably a shortened form of 'contraction'.
[7] 'Index of names.'

Langdale?
Leauins.
Midleton

[II.8]

N
O
Phillipson
Preston – of Biggins hall Westm'd. 4 descents. Heralds office visit. Durham p.16.
Q
Readman
Rosse
Sandes
Sedgewick
Sleddall?
Strikland
Stockdal
Thornburrow
V
Winsor
~~Woulston~~
Willson

[II.354]

{!!! Methodas}
et
de Baronia de Kend. In Genere
e Referenda e Lib Sir Dan. Fleming[8]

[II.356]

The
Barony of Kendal And
Division thereof
Into
Kendal Ward and
Loansdal Ward

Anno Domino 1692

[Miscellaneous Notes relating to the Barony of Kendal]
In describing of Chappelry consider How they ly, that you may proceed in som orderly method – either Round or Lengthway.
In describing of Places – give 1[t] Their site & beareing; 2. What they have bin of old: 3. What they are now. With The places of note, tenure & Customs.
And also the same with the Coate marked 3. And for the Crist a Demy-Horse with a Ducal Crownet Coller – Az[ure] belonging to Bindlose.[9]

[II.1][10]

A O from Windermer

x.1. Kentmere	p.43	
x.2. \ Long / Sleddal)	p.41	
3. Selside	p.39	0:0:6
1. St Johns ruin in Skelsmer	p.5	0:0:2
2. Burneside	p.31	0:6:2

[8] Here Machell demonstrates his dependence on Sir Daniel Fleming's research library.
[9] Written on a small scrap of paper (11cm x 6cm), attached to the foot of II.356.
[10] In the MS, most of these notes are written around the edge of the title-page of the 'Barony of Kendal' section, at the beginning of Volume II.

Laid at Hooke nose[11]
3. Staveley p.51 0:0:2^{d} & 6^{d}
4. Ings p.53 2^{d}.
Windermer given Tho. 2^{s}.6 & 1^{d} ob, & 1^{d}.

{Old Peter Birket of Hugill by Ing Chappel says that Cawgar[t]h was formerly the Birkets of which he has seen deeds.}

1. Natland. Mr. Wilson yeoman (Sheph[erd) olderly hooke nose.)[12]
2. Maidenhead.
3. Hutton. Mr. Nicholson good like Mr Edmondson. Dawson down locked (Th. Strikland) at the Brig end.
4. Kirkby. L. at Mr Briges. Mr Hen[ry] Denton wifes. Mr Applegarth will.}[13]

N.B.

Mr Robert Phillipson of Cawgarth informed mee that there are 2 Foes[14] in the Barony of Kendall, Sc. the Marquess foe, & Richmond foe; under which foes all there lands thereabout are held. He told mee also, of a particular exemption which the people in his parish have from being cited to Richmond; they being to make there appearance att the spirituall court at Kendall. {Charta penes Mr Phillipson.} Of these things I was inform'd by him at London. March 1675/6.[15] Sed de his quaere plura? [16]
vix creditur a T. Dixon.[17]

{Stone moss makes corke for dying; an ill purple. Made out of old oake trees; a brown. Wooddus i.e. wood wast; yallow.}

[II.2]

Worth of Land
{Under Barrow} Att Underbarrow in the parish of Kendal, there is meadow called Grigs-medows worth 50s per annu[m] an acre; & belongs to tennent.
Measure of land see in Gresmere – page 1^{t} there.

[11] The phrase, 'hook nose', is written twice on this page, even though Machell seems to be describing two different men. The phrase appears again in Machell's narrative on the Chapelry of Burneside, in a description of his informant there. 'N.B. Tho. Dennison of Lo\w/thwate late Balif: Hook nosed, my kinde & ingeniouse Landlord & informer' [II.91]. This would be the 'hook nose' at whose house he 'laid', as told here on II.1. The phrase is indicative of Machell's interest in physical details of appearance.
[12] Machell met Mr Wilson ('a courteous gentleman') at Natland, during his 'Itinerary' or tour of the Barony of Kendal in 1692: see Part 2, Ch.10, Itinerary, II.382.
[13] Machell listed three points but wrote four. As they are all difficult to decipher, the transcription cannot be accepted as completely accurate.
[14] A version of 'fee', from the Latin 'feodem' and Middle English, 'fe, feo, fey'; the term – either fee or foe –is used by Machell in relation to feudal landholding and obligation: see the English Glossary.
[15] Notes relating to Machell's visits to London are scattered throughout the volumes. He worked on ancient deeds relating to Cumberland and Westmorland in the Tower of London and elsewhere from at least 1674 to the time he finally left Oxford for his rectory at Kirkby Thore: see the footnote below. See also Part 3, Ch.2, Machell's Correspondence; and the Editor's Introduction.
[16] 'But make further inquiries about this?'
[17] 'T. Dixon's information is scarcely credible.' Thomas Dixon was a contemporary of Machell at Queen's College, Oxford. Son of Thomas Dixon of Windermere, he matriculated, 1664-5, aged 15; B.A. 1669; M.A. 1672-3; B.D. 1682, *OAD*. In a letter to Daniel Fleming, 5 November 1677, Dixon remarked, 'I suppose you have heard that Mr Machell is upon his year of grace, having got Kirkby Thure in the north. I have taken in his friend Mr Nanson of Appleby in his room.' See Maxwell Lyte, Stanley Hughes Le Fleming, James Arthur Bennett and Richard Ward (eds), *The Manuscripts of S.H. le Fleming Esq. of Rydal Hall* (London, 1890), 139. Philip Nanson, son of Robert of Appleby, went to Queen's College Oxford; matriculated 1665 aged 18; B.A. 1669-70; M.A. 1673; fellow 1674; rector of Dogmersfield Hants, 1680, *OAD*. Prior to 1680, the rector was Andrew Whelpdale (died 1678/9), whose widow, Elizabeth, presented Nanson to the living. In 1680, Elizabeth married Thomas Machell and left Hampshire for Kirkby Thore. See C. Roy Hudleston, 'Thomas Machell, his wife and children and his Whelpdale stepchildren', *CW2*, 70 (1970), 110-45, at 116.

Measure of Corn. Value
A bushel at Kendal is 20 Gallon. At Oxon but 8. Kirby Loansdale – 24 Gallon.
Measure of Hay. Value
About Kendall the measure by trusses. A trusse is an horseload – 30 stone more or lesse.
There is land by the river side twixt Kendal & Kirkbyloansdal which will bring forth corne for 3 or 4 yeares. & when they fallow it shall bring forth hay the very next year. An acre brought forth 26 bushel of Big the 1[t] year;[18] and the next year 30 truss of hay.

[II.11]

[3. Correspondence relating to Machell's Research at Kendal]

[Letter to Thomas Machell from his relation, John Thwaites of Appleby.]

Dear Cosen
My kind respects salute you. I have endeavourd to satisfie your desires to give you an account of the Charter of Carlisle (a.) & Kendall & their Immunityes,[19] but cannot prevaile therein.[20] In a paper inclosed, I have given you an account of ours, and an answeare from Thomas Jackson of Dufton to one of your Queries: All your frends here are in good health. My wife & daughter doe present ther love & service to you, and soe doth,

[Machell's Notes: II.11]
{a. I know not when its Charter was granted but Henry 1. made it an episcopal sea. Write Mr Edmondson about Carlile.}[21]
{Referate ad Kendal}[22] Memorandum. It was Emma Tyson a bakers wife in Kendal who hindered her husband when he was redy to shoot the King, for which she is to be had in everlasting remembrance. A relation of which intent when the King was passed through the Towne, came to his & Prince Ruperts eare; where upon the Prince would have the Towne have sufferrd as much for this disloyalty as Appleby formerly had don for its fidelity to Kings of England. But the king sayd noe, it should not be burned, all should not suffer for one mans sake & bes[ee]ched God to forgive him.[23]

[18] Big[g] = barley.
[19] Earlier Crown grants of a market and fair were confirmed by Elizabeth I's charter of incorporation in 1575, and by Charles I's charter of 1636, giving Kendal the right to name an alderman as mayor. A new charter was granted in December 1684, giving the Crown increased powers over the corporation in line with Tory policies: C.B. Phillips, 'The Corporation of Kendal under Charles II', *Northern History* 31 (1995), 157-77, at 171. See also Cornelius Nicholson, *The Annals of Kendal: being a historical and descriptive account of Kendal and the Neighbourhood: with biographical sketches of many eminent personages connected with the town* (London and Kendal, 2nd edn, 1861 [1st edition, 1832]), Ch.5: The Corporation.
[20] In some parishes, Machell experienced difficulty in securing information. In a letter to Daniel Fleming, 1 August 1677, he wished that all were as ready to assist him as was Fleming. 'Many are cold. If this continues I shall have to retire from the whole enterprise.' See Lyte, Hughes et al (eds), *The Manuscripts of S.H. le Fleming Esq. of Rydal Hall*, 139.
[21] According to R.S. Ferguson, the first two Carlisle charters (Henry II and Henry III) were burnt, leaving the city with no title deeds. These charters were followed by others: in 1293, 1316 and 1353. Ferguson lists 11 subsequent charters from the reign of Richard II to that of James I. Charles I's charter of 1638, known as the 'governing charter', set out how the city was to be governed. Such charters had generally expanded Carlisle's powers of self-governance, but in 1664 Charles II's amendment to his father's charter exemplified the Crown's effort to increase royal control of borough personnel after the Commonwealth era by requiring officers to take the oath of obedience and supremacy, and the town clerk and recorder to be approved by the Crown. Thwaites probably wished to see this particular charter; the tenor of the letter suggests a period in the early 1670s when Machell was beginning his research. See R.S. Ferguson and W. Nanson (eds), *Some Municipal Records of the City of Carlisle*, CWAAS Extra Series, 4 (Carlisle, 1887), Ch. I: The Corporation and Charters. See also Michael Mullett, *Carlisle in Revolution and Restoration, c.1648-1688*, CWAAS Tract Series 30 (Kendal, 2022), 11-14. For the surrender and re-grant of this charter in 1684, giving the Crown powers of removal and appointment of corporation personnel, subsequently allowing James in 1688 to eject opponents of his toleration policies and install supporters, see Mullett, *Carlisle in Revolution*, 97-117.
[22] 'Keep this for the Kendal section.'
[23] In 1651, Charles II and his Scottish army stopped to rest at Kendal on their route south to the Battle of Worcester. Regarding Emma Tyson, local tradition has it that 'when Charles II marched his army into the town … a baker named Tyson attempted to assassinate him.' See the *Westmorland Gazette*,

{Kendal gives Title to the Eldest son of the Duke of Espernon[24] in France; who is called Duke of Candalle: Out of a *Geographical Dictionary* Translated out of Mounsier du Val, London 1678.[25]
But query if no such place as Candalle in the Kingdom of France. Qu. also which the Duke of Yorkes children by Chancellor Hides D[aughter] was Duke of Kendal, of the Heralds. Qu. also of the Duke of Cumberland.}[26]

[II.14]

[Letter to Thomas Machell in an unknown hand.]

Mr Thomas Machell
One of the Fellows in Queenes Coll
This.
In the 1ᵗ year of R[ichard]1. [1189-1190], in consideration of 60 marks payd to the K. by this Gilbert was acquitted for himselfe & his heires from a certaine Tribute called neatigeld,[27] which he used to pay out of his lands of Westmorland & K[endal] (note the destinction), & from suit to the County Court, Hundred Court, & Titheing. Likewise, from Aid to the Sherif & all his Bailiffs &c. Dugdale *Baronage* (1.Vol.?) p.422.[28] But it seems this would not hold for William the son of Gilbert.

This descent there	Ivo Talboys = Ethered = Ketell Gilbert = William = who probably as governor of Lancaster Castle did first assume the sʳname of Lancaster.	Gundred wid. of Roger Earle of Warwick, daughter to William, 2 Earle of Warren	Temp. Stephen
	|	|	
	William de Lancaster fil. Et heres = 2. Helewise de Stutevil fil	[Blank] d. marryed to Richard de Morevil	
A charter from suit of Com. Court	Gilbert = filius Rogeri Fitz Remfride. 1. R.1. [1189-90] & anno	Helewise de Lancaster – T[emp]R.1.	

https://www.thewestmorlandgazette.co.uk/news/18291644.nostalgia-famous-visitors-kendal-centuries. This appears to be true, but the rest of Machell's tale has been embroidered, for, according to Roger Bingham, 'Charles II came through in 1651 but by that time Rupert was in exile…' Roger Bingham, *Kendal, A Social History* (Milnthorpe, 1995), 353.

[24] Épernon.

[25] Pierre Duval (1618-83), *A Geographical Dictionary, In which are Described the most Eminent Countreys, Towns, Ports, Seas, Streights, and Rivers in the whole World. Very Useful for the Understanding of the Modern Histories* (Paris, 1651; 1st English edn, 1662; 3rd edn, 1678).

[26] James II married twice; first to Anne Hyde, daughter of Edward Hyde, duke of Clarendon. Anne produced eight children, only two of whom (both female) survived infancy. Of the male children, the third, Charles (1666-1667) was created Duke of Kendal, but lived only 10 months. J. Miller, 'Anne [née Anne Hyde], duchess of York (1637-1671), first wife of James II'. *ODNB*.

[27] Neat/nowt/neot geld: see the English Glossary.

[28] Written in Dugdale's *Baronage* as, 'This Gilbert in 1. Ric. 1. in consideration of sixty marks of Silver, then paid to the King, was acquitted for himself and his heirs, from a certain Tribute called Nutegeld, which he did use to pay out of his Lands in Westmorland, and Kendall; Also, from suit to the County-Court, Hundred-Court, and Tithing. Likewise, from Aid to the Sheriff, and all his Bailiffs. And moreover obtained a Grant of Free-Forest in Westmorland, Kendale, and Furnesse in as ample manner, as William de Lancaster Son of Gilbert … enjoyed the same; and by those very Bounds: Also, that Forest which King Richard had granted to him and his Heirs in Kendale, with six pounds Land … and that whatsoever was wast in the Woods of Westmorland, and Kendale, in the time of the before-specified William de Lancaster, the Son of Gilbert, should continue so still.' Dugdale, *Baronage*, Book I, 421.

ejus[dem] obtend a grant durante bene placito Regis of the custody of the Hon. of Lancaster. Obijt 4^0 Hen. 3. [1219-20][29]

1. William = filius Gilberti – vulgo W de Lancasters. Anno 4^0 ad 30. Hen.3.[30] In which year he had the custo[dy] of that Honour of Lancaster to his trust S.P.[31] So his Lands descended to his next Heires, Peter de Brus & Walter de Lindesey.	Agnes de Brus	2. Roger brother | Helewise de Lan--caster maryed to Peter de Brus	Alice maryed = to Walter de Lindesay

[II.9][32]

[4.] The Barony of Kendall*

[Written in another hand, with Introduction and Notes by Machell]

It is devided into two Wards or hundereths, which is kno\wne/ by the name of Kendall Ward and Lonsdall Ward, to which there is to either of them one High Constable and to Kendall Ward 39 Petty Constables, and to Lonsdall ward 12. vizt.

Kendall Ward

Gresmire	Kentmire	Greyrigge	Beathom or Farleton
Langdall	Long Sleddall	Lamb rigge	Milthroppe Hev[er]sham
Rydall & Loughrigg	Over Staveley	Docker	& Hav[er]bracke
Ambleside	Neither Staveley	Skelsmergh & Patton	Hincaster
Troutebecke	Underbarro\w/	Strickland Roger & Kettle	Leavens
Applethwaite	Crosthw[ai]te & Lyth	Scalthwatrigg	Stainton
Undermilne becke	Witherslack Meathopp	Hay & Hutton ith' Hay	Sidgewike
Crook	Ova[33]	New Hutton	Natland
Hugill	Fawcett Forest	Old Hutton & Holmscales	Helsington
	Whinfell & Selside	Preston Patrick	Kirkland
		Preston Richard	

Lonsdall Ward

Killington	Midleton	Kirkby Lonsdale	Lupton
Firbanke	Barbon	Hutton roofe	Burton
Dillicar	Mansergh	Casterton	Holme

Parish Church viz.
Gresmire chapels of ease, two.
Windermire, one church of ease called Troutbecke Church.[34]
Kirkby Kendall, Thirteene Chappells of ease.

[29] 'And in the same year, obtained a grant during good pleasure of the king, of the custody of the Honour of Lancaster. He died 4. Henry 3.'
[30] 'In the 4th to the 30th year of Henry III.' 1219-46.
[31] He died without issue.
[32] Tabulation in this page is in another hand but it was headed and annotated by Machell. The page, 35cm x 30cm, forms a large folded sheet inserted into the volume vertically and read crossways. The text then continues to II.11.
[33] Ulpha.
[34] MS: 'Windermire, one church of ease called Troutbecke Church. Windermire, one church of ease called Troutbecke Church.'

Heversham, one church of ease called Crosthwaite Church.
Beathome, one church of ease called Wither[slack] church which church was given by Doctor Borrike[35] Deane of Pauls and consecrated by Bish\ope /~~Phipps~~ Wilkins late bishop of Chester in the yeare 167[?][36] – ask Mr Dixon.[37]
Burton chapel, none.

{Markett Townes}
As for the towne of Kirkby Kendall, it is the Eminent towne of this Barrony, both for resort of people as alsoe for trade, the manufacture whereof (which is the main cause) is a sort of woollen cloth commonly called and knowne by the name of Kendall Cottons,[38] by which the whole Parrish hath beene formerly imployed with makeinge thereof. And now of late the ingenuitie of the people hath sett up and found out a trade of makeinge a sort of stuffes which is called Kendall druggetts, which brings in money, very great store, to which is added to trade of Knitinge of Gerses[39] stockins which at this time doth keepe a great many children at worke†.

Kirkby Kendale – 2 fairs in the yeare.
Ambleside – 2 fairs in the yeare.
Burton – 2 fairs in the yeare.
Kirkby Lonsdall – 2 fairs in the yeare.
Milthroppe \ noe Markett / onely one faire which is kept upon the first day of May constantly.

[Machell's Notes: II.9]
*{vid. MS. T.M. part 5. p.11[a]. 13[b]. 23[a]. 37.}
†{p. 71.}

[II.10B]

[Rivers and Bridges in Kendal Barony]
You have in this Barrony two very fine large and wholesome Rivers which are called Kent & Loyne. And as for Kent it derives its name for Kent meare (of which I shall let you know hereafter). It hath two other smale rivers which cums into it about a mile above Kendal aforesaid, vizt. Mint and Spritt. And in the river of Spritt there are very great water fall which is called Garnett watter fall, by which the people doth commonly take notice when as sounds thereof is heard downe wards, that towards Kendall, they \ know / that it will be faire weather.

And in Kent, beneath Kendall about three myles, there is another such water fale which is called the \ force / and when as the sound thereof is heard topwards then they expect to […][40]
[It takes] it name from the place of it[s] spring until it coms into the sea which is below Milthropp. Upon which river stands
A. eleaven corne milns, vizt: at Burneshead two; at Kendall two; at Helsington Laths two; at Hawes one; at Lakerige two; and Force two.

[35] Witherslack's original church (St Mary's) was destroyed in the Civil Wars. In his will, John Barwick (dean of St Paul's, London, died 1664) left money to provide a burial place in Witherslack, the village of his birth, as a means of avoiding difficulties when funeral corteges were obliged to cross the estuary to the mother church in Beetham. The new church (a chapel of ease to Beetham) was consecrated in 1671. Hyde & Pevsner, 696. *N&BI*, 232.
[36] John Wilkins, bishop of Chester, 1668-72. See J. Henry, 'Wilkins, John (1614-1672), theologian and natural philosopher'. *ODNB*.
[37] Presumably this is Thomas Dixon, see above, II.1.
[38] That is, woollens.
[39] 'Gersey' or jersey or jarnsey: Wool which has been combed and is ready for spinning, used especially in reference to the knitting of stockings and other worsted articles. *OED*.
[40] A repair in the MS here has resulted in 13cm of largely illegible text.

[B.] And over the said river is 9 bridges. Vizt. […][41] Barly Brigge,[42] Boulston Brigge, Burneshead Brigge, Stramondgate Brigge, Neither Brigg,[43] Millne brigge,[44] Hawes Brigg, Fforce Brigge[45] and Leavenes brigge.

And for the river Loyne it hath its beginning or spring from a place in the bottome of Westm'land called Birkbeck fells. The towne of Kirkby Lonsdall stands upon it and Lancaster; at which place or there abouts it goes into the sea. And over it is 7 briggs, vizt. Streight brigge, High Loynes brigge, Firbanck brigge, Low Loynes brigg, Murthwate brigge, Kirkby brigge & Lancaster brigge; but Lancaster brigg is within said county of Lancaster.

[II.10C][46]

{Kendall Ward}

Manner houses	Demesnes	Parkes & Forrests
Kentmire	one	one
Staveley	one	one
	Troutbecke parke	
Rydall hall	one	
Conswicke	one	one
	Witherslacke parke	
Syzer	one	one
	Brigstere parke	
	Lakerigge parke	
	Natland parke	
Leavens	one	one
Forrest	one	one forrest
Burneshead	one	one parke called Cowhunhead
Skelsmergh	one	one
Grayrigge	one	one forrest
Docker Demesne	one parke	
Lambe rige	Parke onely	
Preston	one	
Bethome Hall	one	

{Loansdal Ward}

Manner houses	Demesnes	Parkes & Forrests
Killinton Hall	one	one
	Dillicar Parke	
Midleton Hall	one	one
Casterton	one	
Burton	–	–
	Holme Parke	

{Halls}
Bigins Hall, Underly Hall, Ambleside Hall, Calgarth Hall, and Crooke Hall.

[People]
Wee looke upon these to be Anciently[47] of good family in this barony. Vizt. Midleton of Midleton, Layburne of Skelsmergh, Strickland of Sizer, Gilpin of Kentmire – which is now gone out of the name. Bellingham of Forrest, Phillipson of Calgarth, Brathwaite of Burneshead.

[41] Here is one illegible crossed-through word.
[42] Barley Bridge at Staveley.
[43] Nether Bridge.
[44] Now, Miller Bridge.
[45] Force Bridge, Sedgwick.
[46] This page is in the same hand as that in the previous page.
[47] This word is unclear.

The Commonaltie of this barony is a people very well bred and goes very hansome and decently in their apparel; brings up their children very well in soe much that very many of them is fit for the universitie before the[y] leave schoole.

[Meres]
This Barrony of Kendall of ours have fouer meares or standing waters. Vizt. Winder-Meare, in which is a fish which is called Chares which is said there is not the like of them in England; this watter or meare is in length seaven miles or there abouts and about a mile broad; Which said watter hath beene of late frozen over soe strongly that the inhabitants have led timber over it with draughts of eight beast a peece in.[48]

[II.10D]
There [is also] Kentmire meare or watter which has very great store of trouts in it; alsoe Langdall watter & Gresmire watter. In the Barrony about: Langdale, Loughrigge, Ambleside, Troutebecke, Ridall; and there about is mount[ains], in which places the[y] keepe very many sheepe. We have in and about Kendall good store of arable grounds, and in Lonsdale ward there is more; for the most there is pasture and arable; they breede there very good cattell.

[Beacons]
{For Beacons wee have onely three; that [is] Whinfell, Kendall & Fareleton. Wee \ have / some salt made with us at a place, Meathopp.}[49]

[5. Notes on Baronial Families]

N.B. Ivo Talebose held lands in Norfolk. Tempus Conquest Williel[mus] Talebose [held lands] in Lincoleshire.
Azeline uxor Tailgebosch[50] in Boching hamshire.
Johannes Tailebois witness to a deed sans date of Will[iam] Mauchael of Crackenthorp; testis item Robertus, fol. Copsie.[51]

È MS Cumberland part 1, p.19, §2.
William de Lancaster was a great Baron: & a great commander under King Henry the 2nd in the wars against David King of Scots, & Earle Henry his son in Cumberland & the parts thereabouts; And helped the recover[y] the Countyes of Northumberland & Cumberland from the Scots which King Stephen had given them.

See in the pedigree of the Barrons of Brough on the Sands in Cumberland – tis said that Richard de Morvil, a 2 brother, maryed the daughter of William de Lancaster proxima 16. Henry 2. [1169-1170]. If this was Helewisia, Reyn-feyd maryed her a widow when she was at least 55 years of aige – Query ergo if he had not 2 daughter. Hew Morvil, nephew of this Richard, maryed one Helewish, with whom he had Kirkoswald & Lastrigby – But she is sirnam'd de Stutevil. Se the pedigree of Stut.[52]

[II.15][53]
That Barony of Kendal was given to (a.)[54] Ivan Tayleboys Earle of Anjou (by William the Conq.) who was the 1t Baron of Kendall ~~which~~ I read of; which Ivo~~n~~ had isue (b.) Eldred, who had isue Ketellus, to whome William Meschens gave (for services) Kelton-Salter, Workinton & Salterby, not long after the Conquest; which were ~~as I take it~~ in the Barony of Eggermont or Cowpland in Cumberland. And William the son of Gilbert de Lancaster who was (c.) lineally descended (i.e. by the mothers side)

[48] A team of eight oxen.
[49] Whinfell is in the Barony of Westmorland; for a fuller list of beacons see Machell's Preface, II.454.
[50] MS: 'Ta~~lebois~~ilgebosch.'
[51] 'Witnessed in the same way by Robertus in the book of Copsie.'
[52] Machell's notes on baronial families on II.10D are in his own hand; the rest of the page is in another hand, the owner of which appears to be the informant who provided answers to Machell's queries.
[53] Also numbered p.11.
[54] Machell's own numbering system for notes: see 'Machell's Notes' at the foot of this page.

from this Ivo Taleboys, held the said barony in the 11 year (d.) of Henry son of King John (i.e. Henry the 3[d]) [1226-1227], att which time there was som difference betwixt him & Robert de Veteripont Lord of Honour of Appleby & Baron of Westmorland, about sute of court att \ the County Court / Apleby, which \ William / de Lancaster Baron of Kendal denyed to pay; but ~~they aggred upon~~ an \ aggrement was made / betwixt them at Apleby in (e.) Quindensis S[ti] Hillary;[55] wherby the said William stood oblieged to doe sute &c. in the County Court of Robert de Veteripont, by himselfe or his stuard*.
Martin Patishill, John de Sauul,[56] Will de Insuela, Richard Duckett: Justitiarijs (intelligo itinerantibus enim 4[r] fore solebant.)[57]

This William had a daughter & heire whose name was Helwisia, maryed to Gilbert fils Reynfed some years before this, Sc. anno 8[0]. regni Johannis† [1206-1207]; and was (as is expressed in an Evidence dated die Sancti Hillaris, undecimo Hen. 1. (pro 3[1] procul dub[i]o na[m] eadem est carta ni fallor)[58] the son of Gilbert, the son of Roger, the son of Kenefrid (Kenefrid di filus). But not withstanding this heiress, I finde one William de Lancaster descended possibly of an uncle to this William, possesed of the Barony of Kendal in the reign of (g.) King Ed. 1. \ Hen. 3: the same man may be, / as appears out of the Booke of Knights Foes in Westmorland mentioning allso Roger de Lancaster de Baronia de Kendal, & Walter de Lancaster de eadem;[59] the particular whereof I shall here insert because it shows planely how & by whome the Knights foes in this county were held & how many of them.
And thus, it is Walterus de Strickland & Robertus de Hellebeck: collectores reditus computati de auxillio assiso, et collectione, in hac comitatu Reddunt Computum &c.[60] They give an account of 8 markes for 4 foes, of John de Veteripont, for his Barony of Westmorland (this was in the second place) & of 4 markes of 2 foes of William de Lancaster for his Barony of Kendall. And of 2 markes of one foe of Ralph de Aincourt, and this must be all the same, William injoying his lands during his life tho Helwisia was his daughter & heire ‡.

[Machell's Notes: II.15]

{(a.) 2 Lib carta MS penes Comit Penb.}[61]
{(b.) MS Liber Antiquit. Cumberland: c.d.e.f.}[62]
(g.) x é inquisition post mortem Willielmi de Lancaster Talber fits Reyfeyd} {! x}
*{It must be in the reign of Hen. 3. for John de Veteripont dyed about the 26. of Hen. 3.}
†{See Sir Daniels book 57. MS A, & Dug[dale's] *Baronagium*. Will. 3. de Lancaster in lib. Feodum militum in scaccario sub custod. Rememoratoris Regis.}[63]
‡ {Inde forsan distinctio feodum}[64]

{Ivo Taleboys=
Eldred ~~Tal~~. =
Ketellus ~~Taleboys~~}
{Ketefridus = ?
Rogerus = ?
Gilbertus =
Willelmus de Lancaster vixit temp Hen. filis Joh. sc. 3[1]
= Helwisia m. to Gilbert fits Reynsed 8[0] Johanis}

[55] 'In the fifteen days after St Hilary's Day'. St Hilary's Feast-day is held on the Sunday nearest to the 13 January each year.
[56] Unclear word.
[57] 'Justiciaries (I assume itinerant, as there were four of them).' Machell includes an unclear Latin word in this phrase.
[58] '(As is expressed in an evidence dated St Hilary's Day, 11. Henry I. ([erroneously] for III.): 13 Jan. 1226-27, beyond doubt, for it is the same document, unless I am mistaken).'
[59] 'of the same'.
[60] 'Collectors of the revenue calculated for aid of the assizes, and collection in this county.'
[61] 'See the 'Book of Deeds' in the custody of the Countess of Pembroke'.
[62] 'See a manuscript, Book of Antiquities in Cumberland, c, d, e, f'.
[63] 'In the Book of Knights' Fees in the Exchequer in the custody of the King's Remembrancer.'
[64] 'Hence, perhaps, the distinction of the fees.'

{See more of the name of Tayleboys pag.7, part 5æ MS Westmorland.}[65]

[I.171]

Thomas Taylboys of Hurworth, his seale: had Westlaton by deed of Alice Blount the daughter of Warrin de Wassington, 5. Richard 2nd [1381-82], which I thinke came to the \ Wil. / Threlk. of Mel. \ Esq. / about the 16. of Henry 6. [1437-38], who conveyd them to Rookeby of Northum[berland] Esq.

[II.16]

And Patrick the son of Thomas de Baronia de Kendall {i.e. Patricius de Cullewen qui vixit temp Henry 3. & Ed. 1.}. And 4s for the 10th part & 20th part of one foe of Roger de Lancaster de eadem. And of 16d &c.*. (May be som lands about Midleton) For his grandfather Gospatric son of Orms changed Midleton in Loansdal, with which William de Lancaster, for Workington in Cumberland; & tis not unlikely that he had other lands in the Barony of Kendal. Whence it appeared that in the Bottom or Barony of Westmorland are conteined 4 Knights foes. In the Barony of Kendal in all 3 with 18, 20th parts; and one tenth of a Knights foe†. But of these, 2 foes only ~~entre~~ [in the] \ hands of the / Barony; the rest parcelled out in little cantons as hath bin showne. And that wee may the better understand the quantity of these estates it may here be not amisse to reminde you of the meaning of a Knight foe (wich is so much), vide in progress notes in Spelmans *Glossarie*,[66] & Blounts *Law Dictionarie*.[67]

[Machell's Notes: II.16]

*vide pag.23. MS Antiq. West. Part 5.
†Inde forsan distinctio feodum Marquess Richmo[n]d.[68]
The [blank] came to the Roses concerneing whom see MS. Cumb. Part 2. p.3.
Par[r] of Kendal. See the pedigrees.[69]

Lancashire Road

1. Natland
2. Crosscrake S. & by E.
3. Hutton
4. Burton. Preston church in Burton
5. Kirkby Loansdell
6. Beathom
7. Dallan Tower Mr Bankes at Kirklands
8. H[e]v[er]sham.
9. Leavins
10. Sisars

Cockermouth Road

1. Burnashed & Hall
2. Staveley church
3. Ings church.

Kentmere

Penrith Road

1. Selsside
2. Skelsmire & Hall

Selside Hall
Sleddal
Kentmer
Ambleside
Gresmere

3. Windermer

Winstar Chap.

[65] This note appears on MS.I.171.
[66] Henry Spelman, *Glossarium Archaiologicum* (1626, completed by William Dugdale 1664). For 'fee' or 'foe', see the English Glossary.
[67] Thomas Blount, *Nomo-Lexikon, A Law-Dictionary and Glossary: Interpreting Such Difficult and Obscure Words and Terms, as are Found Either in Our Common Or Statute, Ancient Or Modern, Laws. With References to the Several Statutes, Records, Registers, Charters, Ancient Deeds, Manuscripts, and Law-books, Wherein the Words and Terms are Used* (1670).
[68] 'Hence perhaps the distinction of the fees, the Marquess fee and the Richmond fee.'
[69] On MS.V.125-26.

[II.17] [70]

6. Parish of Kendal [Things of Note]

Kendal from Kent dirives its name,
And Kent from Kentmere springing fountain came.
{Poet Brathwat} [71]

It hath on the E. \ Orton, / Sedb., & Kirkby. S. {Kirkby, Burton, Heversham; W. Heverham & Windermer; N. Windermer & Gresmer.}

[Church]
Payes – Tenths. IX li od money.[72] Query of Synodals.
It is appropriated to Trin[ity] Colledge in Cam[bridge] by exchange of colledge lands as tis saied? Which K. H. 8. And they have all the advowsons of the vicar.

{An old Rithme}
{Henricus Octavus
Tooke more than he gave us.} [73]

There are in the precincts of the mother church, the town of Kendal, ~~which payes~~ the tenancy whereof is distributed amongst diverse Lords: The Queens – Graham – \ Mr / Topham of Aglethorp near Bolton Castle in Yorkshire. {Ephraim Sandford, Jack Aglionby} They pay no fines in Kendal but only their annual rents calld the Lords Rent.

{Things of Note}
1. Dockeray Hall – Cald Stean \ in the midst of the town instead of a cross.[74] / An house near it in the West Row; now converted to a dwelling house called St Anns ~~Ha~~ Chapple; & which by its windows & fabric seems to have bin one. {Trad[ition} Mr Shepherd.} & Another stood at the Bank head upon an Hill call'd Chaple hill – pulld down by the now Richard Weshtor who bought the Close – q. of Stephen Rowlandson.}

The hospital & library – Allhallow Chap. now converted to a dwelling.

Castle How Hill – a mount on the ~~edge~~ \ west side /of a square fort, as it should seem by the bulworkes \ & trench / which yet do appeare upon the north of the Bowling Fell. \ I can see no signes of a Roman forte.

---

[70] A note-page on which Machell has written his 'music' expenses. 'Music: 1s expend. 1s 6d; more 6d; more 10s.'
[71] Richard Brathwaite of Burneside (1587/8-1673): see Part 2, Ch.3i, Burneside, II.93; see also Part 2, Ch.9, Windermere, II.319, II.339.
[72] Od[d] money: possibly a surplus over a definite sum of money: additional, extra; e.g. from 1657, in *Misc. Sc. Hist. Soc.* VII. 14, '3 pund sterlinge and som od munie'. *OED*.
[73] Quoted by Adam Fox as an example of a 17th-century historical aide memoire: Fox, *Oral and Literate Culture in England, 1500-1700* (Oxford, 2000), 26. The rhyme is said to have been coined at Eton College after an exchange of lands during the Reformation, during which Eton narrowly escaped being closed down but in return lost St James's Priory in London to Henry VIII: see the *Aylesbury News*, 19 July 1856; see also M.R. James, *Eton and the King's Recollections, mostly trivial, 1875-1925* (Hastings, 2017), Ch.24. In 1858 James Payn referred to it as 'a monkish couplet' when discussing the Reformation and the monks of Furness Abbey: James Payn, *Furness Abbey and its Neighbourhood* (Windermere and London, 1858), 23.
[74] Cald Stean: 'The Town's Cross, or Market Cross, stood opposite the covered market, an obstruction in the street. There remains a remnant of it in a stone at the corner, vulgarly called "Cold Stone", where the charters [etc.] were usually proclaimed. Cold stone is a corruption of "call stone"; an appendage common to most ancient towns; all public matters were "called" there, prior to the institution of "bellman".' See Nicholson, *Annals of Kendal*, 127.

{It might be a battery against the Castle since Gunns were invented – & there were pieces of Musket Barrell found therein.[75] They have hills somthing like this at K[irkby Lons]dal & Setber (which they say were made against Scottish invasions) called Castlehows to[o]. But no signe any castles there. They could not wall the town, rather the}[76]

The Castle & Castle Parkes, of which the upper & nether graveships are a part, are in the proper præcincts of the mother church.

Familyes, Kendal: People all freeholds.

Strickland Gate		119
Kendal Highgate		090
Stramongate		091 {in all 300}
Kirkland	about	85 Blindbeck – mentiond in Kirkland.
Kendal Parke at Upper Grave		03
Nethergrave		04
Helsington W. & b[y] S.1m.		31
New Hutton E. & by S.1m ½.		26}
Old Hutton E. & by S. 2m.		38}as Hutton Chaple
Hutton ith Hay 1m. E.		35}

[In Nature]
{Bleaberryes which [they] call here Bilberryes. Raspberryes common. Curranberryes in gardens.[77]
Crone Berryes browne, as big as strawberryes.}[78]
Trout – Taken with angle by Mr George Sedgewick? 16?
Betwixt Watercrooke & the bridge, an ell long.
Lizards – as long as a Tob[acco]-pipe – black?

[II.19][79]

[Notes on Kendal Parishes]

In the Barony of Kendal are 6 parishes, besides Kirkby Loansdale which I take to be in the Barony allso? {It is.} Sc.
V. 1. Kendal (commonly called Kirkby Kendall).[80]
R. 2. Windermere (which pay a pension to the vicar of Kendal having been chapels olim). I have it but?
R. 3. Gresmer. I have it but q. Ambleside.
V. 4. Kirkby Loansdale. Slender. View the ch[urch].
V. 5. Burton. Done. I have it. I have viewd.
V. 6. Bethome.
V. 7. Heversham.
? Query: if Warton Church in Kendale – mention'd inter Recorda: {see my MS. VI. p.70}
[Answer.] It is in Lancashire, 10m. from Kendal (only mistaken to be in Kendal because it belongs to the Barony of Kendal as I suppose).
{They come to Kendal to chose Crowner[81] for that side the fell.}

[Notes on Kendal Church]

{When the feast or wake kept [?]}

[75] See II.369C.
[76] The rest of this sentence (at the page edge) has perished.
[77] Possibly, the currant bush, as in a 1649 'Survey of the Manor of Wimbledon': 'The borders of which grass plots are coran trees'. *OED*.
[78] Possibly, the croneberry (cranberry) bush: a dwarf shrub, *Vaccinium Oxycoccos*, a native of Britain. *OED*.
[79] Also numbered p.13.
[80] V. = Vicarage; R. = Rectory.
[81] Coroner.

The church is dedicate to [Blank][82] & is commonly known by the name of Kendal Church from the towne adjoining; but the houses thereaboute separated by Blind Beck (a little rivulet which runs but sometimes) ~~and~~ are of a distinct jurisdiction. By whome the church was founded I have not yet learn'd, but they say there was a chaple before the church was built [which] stood N. West from the church ~~& distant from it~~ near the head of Well Sike in Kirkland; allso from which ~~chaple~~ \ place / there is a lane which leades to the great street called Cappelane from the said Cappela.\ But this, I take it, has rather bin the / Chappel of som Religious House.
{No. Som private chaple for mi[…],[83] this being a P[arish] church.}

The church is very spaciouse, having 2 Iles on each side the body thereof & such like in the ~~Quire~~, \ Chancel / where they obteine the name Quires.[84] And the utmost on the south side is called Lord Parrs, the inner on the same, Strickland; the utmost on the north side, Bellinghams, & the inner on the same is called \ the / Alldermans \ Quire / because the Aldermen satt there \ as they do yet, / before it ~~was made~~ \ became / a Maior Towne.[85] \ Monuments, see in Dugdalls *Visit[ation*] 1664.[86] / The Patrone hereof is Trinity Coll. In Cambridge, to which place it is impropriate, & they present a vicar to it.[87]

{<u>The vicaridge house</u> is within 10 yards of [the] church, adjoyneing the church yard wall on the S. side near the S.W. corner of the church.}
{<u>The school house</u> stands a little without the N. side wall of the church yard near the N.W. corner of the church.}
{<u>Church monuments and armes</u>: see in my bundell.}[88]

[II.14]

The rus[h]bearing is on St James day;[89] yet some thinke it is called Trinity Ch[urch.]
In Kirkland in K[endal], dead mens bones [at] a place cald St Maryes; covered with the rubbish.

[II.19]

<u>Kendal Parish: Chap[els] of Ease</u>[90]
~~The par~~ It has 13 Chaples of Ease belonging to it: Sc.
1. <u>Natland</u> distant about a mile \ S. & by East.[91] / }
2. <u>Crosscrake –</u> about two S.E. & by East. } with both in a row
3. Hutton Caple – about 2 & ½ \ E. / inclineing to the S. /
IIII. Underbarrow – about 2 miles & ½ \ W. /
V. Crook Chaple 3 miles distant \ W. /
VI. Staveley 4 miles distant \ N.W. /
VII. Inges-Chaple 5 miles distant \ N.W. /

[II.20]

VIII. Kentmire Chaple – 7 miles distant \ N. West & by N.}
VIIII. Sleddal Chaple 7 miles distant? \ N. / {Mr Farrington?}[92]

---

[82] Kendal parish church is dedicated to the Holy Trinity.
[83] This word has perished.
[84] Kendal Church is one of the broadest in England, having five aisles. It is the largest church in Cumbria: Hyde & Pevsner, 428.
[85] Kendal was granted a mayor in 1636, see https://www.kendaltowncouncil.gov.uk/heritage.
[86] See Joseph Foster, *Pedigrees recorded at the Heralds' Visitations of the Counties of Cumberland and Westmorland made by Richard St George, Norroy, King of Arms in 1615, and by William Dugdale, Norroy, King of Arms in 1666* (Carlisle and Kendal, 1891).
[87] For another version of this comment, see II.17, above.
[88] See in Part 2, Ch.2, Kendal Town.
[89] 25 July.
[90] For a history of the Kendal chapelries, see John Hodgkinson. *The Greater Parish of Kendal, 1553-2002 during the patronage of Trinity College Cambridge* (Kendal, 2002), Ch.4.
[91] MS: '\ (~~X) ab ecclesia S. & by East~~ /.'
[92] 'Mr Farrington' was one of Machell's informants; In Machell's Itinerary (Part 2, Ch.10, II.389) Farrington was the school-master at Kendal; in his chapter on Burneside chapelry (Part 2, Ch.3i, II.91) Farrington was the curate of Burneside chapel.

X. Burniside 2 miles (½) North-West? \ by North. /
XI. Skelsmir~~e~~ 3 miles distant N.\ St Johns Chapel whereby Milbeck springs, now demolished. /
XII. Grarig Chapple 4 miles distant \ N.E. / {25 l[ong], 7 broad}.[93]
~~XII~~ (Preston Chaple \ in Burton / about 4 & ½ \ S. / East).
XIII. ~~Delaker~~ \ Selside / Chap. 3 miles distant \ N.E. from Kendal 5.[94]
XIV. Winster Ch. VIIIm. ab Ecclesia W.

Concerning all which we shall speake in their proper places.
{Q. Mr Farrington nos 9. & 12.} (Query: if one at Hutton roof, 7m. from Kendal near K. Loansd.}

[Lordships]

Sc. Bounde in this parish of Kendal are 14 Lordships.
1. Kirkland by Kendal \ so called / has a court kept once in the year, at a common hal or courthouse where the tenants doe suit & service & are not finable at the death of the Lord. They belong to Bellingham of Leavins \ Col. Ja. Graham; 4^{r} Baronny, the Queen ¾; / but I cannot finde that there is any demaisne or manner house. The soyle is a limestone but there is no Common belonging to the place.

[Places remarkable]

1. Abbats Hall, which formerly belongd the Phillipsons of Crooke \ now to Ch. Wilson, tanner, & has anciently bin a place for ~~som Abbots~~ residence \ of som monks; / query? whether the Abat of Shap \ or York / had any thing to do here.
2. The Anckerress \ N. W. a bow shot / where the Well Sike springes \ which runs down Kirkland / and semes by its name to have bin a place of Ancorites.
3. A Courthouse, about 8 score 2 stone casts N.
[4.] The Town Jaol, ~~where they kept thieves debter & vagabonds & till they can conveniently be removed to Apleby~~, is the Court Lofts, the Town Court over against it, by Cald Stean in the heart[95] of the T[owne].

[Villages, gentlemen's houses and manors]

Brigstear. This place being out of the Maiors Liberty is much resorted to by tradesmen that are not free of the Towne: who therefore give good rents for their house & set up here.

Blindbeck which divides it from the T[own], is remarkable in this: that it never runns in a shower though the raine falls 3 day. But after it ceaseth, the current bursts out like a torrent & continues sometimes 2 or 3 d[ays] ~~raines~~ \ according to the continuance of the Ranes; & is an infallible prognostication to the inhabitants, when its begin to flow, of fair weather ensuing.[96]

{Manners}
1. Kirkland
2. Burnised
3. Kentmere
4. Crooke
5. Grarig: Dugd. & F.[97]
6. Preston?
7. Sisers

[93] Probably, paces.
[94] The distance appears to be 3 miles, as the numeral '3' on the same line overwrites the numeral '5'.
[95] Machell has placed a symbol here, shaped like a heart.
[96] Machell breaks off his description of the fourteen Lordships here, returning to it later in the narrative.
[97] Machell is referring to two of his sources: 1. Dugdale, probably *Baronagium*; and 2. a manuscript of an Inquisition (MS.TM 4) in his family collection. See Machell's Notes, on II.357.

Gentlemans House:
1. Helston Leathes[98]
2. Crooke[99]
4. Tranthwate
5. Staveley &
6. Cunswick
7. Kentmere
8. Burnished
9. Skelsmegh hall
10. Grarig
11. Preston
12. Spittle H.
13. Docker H.
14. Whitehal }
15. Blackhal } in Kendal
16. Sleddal Hall by Kendal att Stramongate Bridge
17. Forest Hal
18. Halling Hall
Selside Hall

[II.22][100]

[7. Barony of Kendal: Introductory Narrative]

Locorum.[101] Virorum.[102]

The more southerly part of Westm'land is called the Barony of Kendal and vulgarly the Barony only. It lies betwene the river of Lone or Leün & the lake \ Water / of Windermere; fertill enough in the Bottoms & valleys; but elswhere full of rocky mountanes which yet afford good pasture for sheep; but has noe ~~any~~ mines\ in it / that I hear of.

It takes its name, sayes the learned Camden, from the River Kan quasi Vallis ad Kanum;[103] which I could willingly assent to ~~him in~~ if \ being this countryman[104] / I did not know the name of that river to be Kent & the place \ calld / Kentmere ~~from~~ \ out of / which it ~~descendeth~~ \ cometh / whence the Bottom groundes on each side the river is called Kent-dale, & for smoothness, Ken-dale. I could indeed have wished it otherwise, for the sake of Concangij – an old Brittish people whom he sought long after and at first placed here;[105] ~~a notion that author was once~~ \ being very fond of \ the notion at first / & would have bin more so, had he discovered those noble remains of \ a / Romane Station which I ~~found~~ \ met with / at Water Crooke, & yet want a name for ~~since he has thought for the place then elsewhere, Sc. 1~~[t] \ But afterwards he translated them ~~to the Cangii~~ hence / into Somersetshire by Ochy-hole, where several townes \ seem to / carry in them the name of that people as Canings, Cannington, Cangton, Winicanton &c.

Haulton. And then of Chesher, somewhere about Haulton ~~by the~~ not far from the sea which lyes towards Ireland, there being a leaden inscription discover'd with CEANG upon it. But as he hath don, so I leave every man to make his conjecture whether those or this was the ancient seat of the Concangijs.

[Machell's Notes: II.22; II.357]

[98] Helsington Laithes.
[99] Machell omitted no. 3.
[100] Also numbered p.15 and arranged in three columns. For earlier drafts see I.43A, 44A, 44B, 44C: all scribbled on scraps of paper. Each draft eulogised the north, which Machell regarded as superior to the south of England.
[101] Places.
[102] People.
[103] As if 'valley sloping to Kan'. See Camden, *Britannia* tr. Holland (1637), 759C.
[104] 'Being a man of this county'.
[105] Camden, *Britannia* tr. Holland (1637), 759F.

{See the places agane – there is something of joyning with the Brigantes. But at the last he fixes them in the C[ounty].}[106]
[II.357]
I must begin the History of the Barony of Kendal from Dugdal *Baronagium* & my Inq. MS TM 4.
And note upon Will[iam] de Lancasters buying of Nutegeld, & \ Suit of / Court – was null & voyd & Agreed Wast' – see MS TM. 4. Kendal.
Then the note of the mariage, afixd to the following page, of the coheires &c.

[II.358]

{1. In General}

{Bounder}
The more Southerly, but more mountainous Part of the County of Westmorland,[107] is the Barony of Kendal; which is divided from the Barony of Westmorland commonly called the Bottom of Westmorland by a Ridge of Mountaines \ as heaven water deales / from Glenkwen Beck in the West, by Kirkstan in the head of Hartsop \ Dale / and so on South East till you com at Burrow beck; which divides them agane till it Runns into Leün, on the East Side of W. This Part is commonly calld the Barony, for Distinctions Sake from the Bottom of Westm'land; & Kendall Barony from the Castle of Kendal which is Caput Baroniæ or the Chiefe Seat there, of which all the rest may seeme to have holden*.

{What it affordes}
{Few or no mines, little corne but plenty of pasture for sheep on the m[ountains] & for cattle in the Dales! And is much inriched by the Kendal Trade which hath bin the Rise of diverse good families.}
{N[ote.] Few Roman fortif[ications] in it; only at Ambleside & Watercrooke & perhaps at Loansdale. For these mountainous parts they left to Brittanes: & only had these for little Garisons to keep the country in subjection.}

{Cap. Mess.}[108]
This Castle is situated on the East-side of the river Kent, just over against the Town of Kendall. {It is moated about with very deep Trenches & is situate on a fine round hill}[109] which stands on the West Side, having a pleasant and delightful prospect of the Town with the water & meadow, though confined with the Mountaines on the E. & W.; and was heretofore so surrounded with Trees standing in the midest of a Parke, that no part of the House but a single Turret could bee seen afar off. But now there is neither Wood nor Deere. And the very Castle is become a Ruin;[110] which has bin the seate of som noble familyes & wherein the famous Queen Katherine was born, the 6 & last [wife] of K. Henry the 8., being the daughter of Sir Thomas Par, & sister to William Marquess of Northampton – whom the said King maryed at Windsor Castle in 1543,[111] being then the Relict John Lord Latimer &c.†.

---

[106] Machell was correct in finding Camden's understanding of the Concangii faulty: see *Britannia* tr. Holland (1637), 759F. He placed them in Somerset (231) and then, quoting Ptolemy and Tacitus, in Cheshire (43, 611). Tacitus seems to have been the original source for Machell's query relating to Concangii involvement with the Brigantes: see *Britannia* tr. Holland, 611E.
[107] Here, in a rare occurrence, Machell spells the word in full as 'Westmorland'.
[108] Capitale Messuagium: chief house on an estate; mansion-house of a manor.
[109] MS: 'The castle ~~is situate~~\ stands upon a Round Hill in the midst of a Parke, ~~facing~~ & hath an easy ascent of that to which it is fronted / on the East-side of the River Kent, just over against the Town of Kendal. {~~It is moated~~ about with very deep trenches (~~an fronts to~~)}.'
[110] MS: 'having a pleasant ~~prospect but somewhat somewhat confined~~ \ and delightful prospect of the / Town of Kendal with the water & m[eadow] ~~confined both of water & meadow and of the Town~~ \ though confined with the Mountaines on the E. & W. / and was hertofore so surrounded with ~~wood~~ \ Trees / ~~It~~ standing in the midest of a Parke; that no part of the House, but a single \ Turret / could bee seen ~~for It from~~ afar off; But now [Blank] ~~But there are neither Trees nor Deere~~ \ now / But now There is neither wood nor Deere, ~~now~~ And the very Castle is become a Ruin.'
[111] MS: 'T~~his Anciently held~~ which has bin the seate of som noble familyes & wherein ~~Queen Katherine~~ \ the famous Queen Katherine was born / the 6 & last of K. Henry the 8 ~~was borne~~ being the d[aughter] of Sir Thomas Par, & sister to William Marquess of Northampton – whom the said King maryed, ~~in her viduity being wife (to John) Nevil Lord Latimer~~ at Windsor Castle in 1543.'

[Machell's Notes: II.358]

*{? See Camden in Lancashire de Furness.}
†See Speed p. 105. 6.[112] {Consider whether better here; or in the Parish of Kendal to speake of the Barons.}
{Descent. John Nevil.}[113]

[II.359B]

[Dockray Hall Coat of Arms]
In Plaster over the Hall chimney at Dokeray. The supporters are 2 Cat a Mounts.[114] The Bearing 0 if not broken of.
N[ote] There the same with Crist and Supporters neatly cut in stone, in a side wal versus orientem.[115]
It is said once to have belongd the Dockerayes whose Armes these were – after to the Swainesons; & thence to the Brathwates of Burnishead; & by vertue of a m[arriage] from them, is now in the hands of Sir John Otway*.



Figure 2.1.2. 'In Plaster over the Hall chimney' at Dockray Hall. 'R \ W / S. 1621.' II.359B.

[Machell's Notes: II.359B]

*Q. if not to the Weshtons by R \ W /S.[116]

[II.360][117]

Ad Richmond foe*
Anno reg 22 whose D[aughter] Margaret was married unto Edmund E[arl]of Richmond: who had the said Lands (which Bedford enjoyd) granted unto him by Act of Parliament. 33. Hen. 6. [1454-1455].
1. Jo Be[d]ford (son of John of Gaunt) was made E[arl] of Somerset, & had Isue John Duke of Somerset; whose d[aughter] Margaret Countess of Richmond & mother to Kg Hen. 7. held these Lands dureing his Reigne; & was wife to Staneley E[arl] of Darby.
{John of Gaunt
|
Jo[hn] Be[d]ford E[arl] of Somerset
|
Jo[hn] E[arl] of Somerset

[112] Speed, *Historie*.
[113] John Neville, 3rd Baron Latimer (1493-1543), married Katherine Parr as his third wife in 1534, previously having married Elizabeth, daughter of Sir Edward Musgrave of Hartley and Edenhall. See Machell's scored-through text in a footnote above. See also Keith Dockray, 'Neville, John, third Baron Latimer (1493-1543), nobleman'. *ODNB*.
[114] Wild cats.
[115] 'In a side wall facing east.'
[116] For Sir John Otway, see Part 2, Ch.3iii, Hutton, II.87; see also Part 2, Chap.4, Beetham, II.278.
[117] Scrap of paper approx. 18½cm square added during a rebinding; damaged along the right-hand edge.

Margaret C. of Richmond}

ad Killington.	Tho. De Pickering went to Killington Hamlett &c. 3. Ed. 2. MS. A. 129 Sir Daniels.[118]
ad Windermer	St Mary Holm: 6li per Annum out of Richmond fee. To the Stuart 5li, Land Sergiant 10li, sometimes of Troutbeck fees 43s. Richmond Borwick Bowbear of Troutbeck: 3: 1: 6d.
Crooke	Simon de Gripe tenet iiij partem Hamletts de Crooke in […][119] + servicium 5s 11d ad Cornagium;[120] et Reddit per pa[s]ture 6s per Annum.[121]
Ad Marquess fee	X?[122] Phillipson of Calgarth Esq. was made Recei[ver][…][123] of the \ Rents of the / Lands granted in farme to Sir William Parr (who was made Marq. of Northampton by King Ed. 6. & had these Lands granted unto him). He was attainted 1^{0} Mariæ & dyed without Isue, save of Ann his sister & heire who was married to William Herbert E. of Penbrooke & after Earle of Huntingdon, who had onely Isue – Elizabeth maryed to Ch. Somerset 1^{t} Earle of Worcestershire w[h]ose […][124] posterity held the Castle & Parke till of late years, that was sold to Sir Frances Anderton of Lostock in Lunedal Baronet.

[Machell's Notes: II.360]

*Sir Daniel MS A.\ p. / 129 – Kg. Hen. 6. (after the death of John Duke of Bedford) gave them to John Duke of Somerset. Bring in before this my Inquisition de Kendal (MS. 5.) p.62. §1.

[II.361]

The Tenants of Great Langdale appear at the Queens Court Baron in Grasmere: And there are no Freehold Lands but som of Mr Leonard Bensons of Elterwater water which House is in Basebrowne.[125]

[II.362]

[8.] [Notes]To make out the hist[ory]of the Descent of this Barony

1. Camden – County.[126]
2. My Inq. MS Antiq. West. pt 5. John Duke of Bed[ford] held a moyity[127] of the manner of Kirkby (in Kendal not Loansdale) by the service of one Knights fee which lately belongd to Dame Philippa Sc. Duchess of Ireland, wife to Rob de Vere, E. of Ox. & Duke of Ireland, but divorced from him for lack of children.[128]

~~The other parts in severall others there mentioned. This is done in the margin.~~[129]

[II.361]

De Lancaster.

Gulielmus filius ~~Reinfridi~~ Gilberti filij Reinfridi = Helevisia ~~de Lane~~ Agnetam de Bruise
Obij[t] sine pr[ole]

[118] A manuscript belonging to Sir Daniel Fleming.
[119] The following word has perished.
[120] Cornage: see the English Glossary.
[121] 'Reddit': renders; gives back.
[122] Christopher.
[123] The paper at the margin is damaged; the unfinished date 14[…] occurs here; also, the numeral, 27.
[124] The damaged edge of the page here contains 'his son - - ton in – q. wh[at] of Sir'.
[125] This paragraph has been crossed through.
[126] This word is unclear.
[127] Moiety: a small or lesser share, portion, or quantity (see the English Glossary).
[128] Repeated below at the page foot.
[129] There is a note here in red pencil, overwritten in ink, which appears to read, 'referr ending'.

Qua ra[ti]one 3es sorores dicti Guelielmi
1. Helevesia duxit Petrum de Brus seniorem
2. Alicia duxit Gulielmum de Lindsey
3. Sarota duxit Alanum de Multon[130]

Petrus de Brus Senior, genuit Petru[m] et iiij filias
Petrus Junior obijt s[ine] p[role] {Petrus de Brus 2[us] obijt A.D 1267.}
Prima soror \ Petri / \ Margareta / duxit Robertum de Wark {Sc. Rossum}
2[a] Sc. Agnes duxit Walt Fauconbrige \ berge /
3[a] Lucia – Marmaducum de Threng.
4[a] Ladarnia – dom[inum] Joh[ann]em de Staveley alias de Bellaragum. sive Bolton*{sed de hiis, & see Camd. *Brit.*}[131]

[II.362]

{M[anor] de Winandermer Casterton et ½ M[anor] de K[irkby] Kendal were in Ed. 3., who gave them for Term of Life to Johanna the wife of John de Coupland. The reversion to Ingelram de Coucy E. of Bedford & Isabel his wife, the said Kings Sister, & to their heires Esc de Anno 49. Ed. 3. [1375-76]. In the 6. year of K. Hen. 6. [1427-28] ~~Lord~~ John Duke of Bedford (who was 3. Son of K. Hen. the 4[th], brother to K. Hen. 5[th], Uncle to K. Hen. 6. the whole time he was Regent) & Regent of France in the time of his Nephew, K. Hen. 6., Duke of Anjou ~~& and other Places~~}, and amongst other titles, Earle of Kendale &Vicount Beamont; held the moity of the Manner of Kirkby Kendal (not that in Loansdal) with all its app[urtences] & members, by the Service of one Knights fee. Ex. Inq. Capt. Ad Apalby Temp. H. 6. See my MS of Antiq. of Westmorland pt. 5, belonging to Dame Philippa Duchess of Ireland, wife to Rob de Vere Earle of Oxford and Duke of Ireland, from whom she was divorced for lack of children.[132]

Their other moyity was had as followeth – Sc.
1. Thomas Parr, Son & Heir of Joh. Parr deceased \ held of the King in capite / ¼ Manner of K[irby Kendal] per serv. ¼ of one Knights fee, & this sometimes belongd to Tho. Ross Knight.
2. Tho. Lumley, ward to the King, son & heir of John Lumley Knight deceased, \ held of the King in capite / the moyity of all those Lands & Tenements &c. in Kendal, which sometimes belongd to Tho. De Thyvenge, parson of the church of Bethom, 1 serv. ¼ of a Knights fee. & is parcell of the ~~fore~~ said Manner.
3. Walter Pennardine Knt. &c. John Elerkar held \ of the King in capite / the other moyity of the said Thomas Th~~o~~yvinges \ Lands / per serv. ⅛ of a Kt fee parcell of the same Manner.
4. Tho. Stapleton, ward to the Kg & son of Brian Stapleton diseasd, held \ of the K. in capite / Kentmer in Kendal, parcel of the said Manner per serv. ¼ feodi militis.[133]
5. John Lancaster Knt (? ward to the King) \ held of him in capite / Rydal in Kendale, Parcell of the said Manner per serv. ¼ feodi militis.
6. Tho. Strikland Kt. held of the aforesaid Thomas Lumley ⅓ part of a Knights fee in Helsington, Haversham, Burton, Longher, Whale, Hacthorp & Strickland-Ketilke.
(And there are no more Knights fees or parcels of Kts fees within Westm'land – but the iij Knights fees in the Bottom of W.)

---

[130] 'De Lancaster. William son of Gilbert son of Reinfrid = Helevisia de Lane Agnes de Bruise
He died without issue. For which reason three sisters of the said William: 1. Helevesia married Peter de Brus senior. 2. Alicia married William de Lindsey. 3. Sarota married Alan de Multon.'

[131] 'Peter de Brus the Elder, was father to Peter and four daughters. Peter the Younger died without issue {Peter de Brus the Second died A.D 1267.} The first sister \ of Peter / \ Margareta / married Robert de Wark {Sc. Rossus}. The second, that is Agnes, married Walter Fauconbrige \ berge /. The third, Lucia – Marmaduke de Threng. The fourth, Ladarnia – Lord John de Staveley alias de Bellaragum. or Bolton {but of these, see Camden's. *Britannia*}.'

[132] MS: 'See my MS of Antiq. of Westmorland pt 5 ~~which tells us also that it~~ lately ~~belongd~~ belonging to Dame Philippa Duchess of Ireland, ~~who was~~ wife to Rob de Vere Earle of Oxford and Duke of Ireland, from \ whom / she was divorced for lack of ~~Isu~~ children.'

[133] 'Knight's Fee.'

This was in the Time of H. 6. who (after the Death of John Duke of Bedford) gave Bedfords moyity to John Duke of Somerset, Anno Regni Ejus 22^0 [1443-44];[134] who Daughter Margaret being maryed to Edmund Earle of Richmond, he had the said Lands leised upon him by Act of Parl[iament]. & the said Margaret Countess of Richmond, daughter of Jo[hanna] Duchess of Somerset (son of John Bedford,[135] son of John of Gaunt) & mother to Kg H. 7. held the said Lands dureing his Reigne; whence they came to be called R[ichmond] fees.

II.365[136]

Out of a copy of an Inq[uisition] penes Dom[inum] Danielem Fleming militem. Ex Bundello Escheatore de Anno 49. Ed. 3. No. 29.
Die Sab[bati] prox[imo] post festum Corp[oris] Xt. Joh[ann]e Savill Escheatore – per Sacramentum Thomæ de Redeman, Rogeri de Levens, Rolandi de Thornburg. Joh[ann]is de Chambre de Kendal, Rob[er]t[i] de Docura. Rich[ard]i Carous Will[ielm]i Dannis Rich[ard]i Walker Will[ielm]i de Gilpin, Rogeri de Strickland, Henrici de Griype et Joh[ann]is de Strickland.[137]

{Manerium de Wynandermer valet 144 li.}
{Johanna, quæ f[uit] uxor Joh[ann]is de Coupeland} tenuit ad terminum vitæ suæ in concessione Domini Regis[138] […] cum membris et pertine[n]tys suis – Sc. Hamletta (a) de Langden! Loughrigge Grismer, Hamelside Troutbeck Applethwate Crosthwate, Strickland Kett. (b) et Hoton (c); et {M[anerium] de Casterton, m[anerium] de Ki[r]kby in Kendal} cum pertinentys. Ac etiam medietatem cum pertinent[ijs]. Revertione inde (post mortem prædictæ Johannæ) Domino Ingelramo de Coucy Comiti Bedfordiæ et Isabellæ uxori ejus, fil[io] Dicti Domini Regis et heredibus &c.[139]

{a. ergo those are but hamlets, & members of the manner of Winandermer.
b. forsan Ketell.
c. Not Hoton Roof, for that is below.}
{N.B.} Extenta foedorum militum quae fuit uxor[is] Joh[ann]is de Coupland defunct[i] ad Terminum vitæ. Iidem Juratores dicunt sup[er] sacramentum suum Quod –[140]

{Manerium de Bethom}
Radulphus de Bethom […] Tenuit de eadem Johanna manerium de Bethome cum pertinentijs per homagium et fidelitatem et servicium, 32s per Annum, ut de manerio suo de Kirkeby in Kendal.[141] & (T.M.) Note she had but ½ of the said manor of which these & the rest are members.

{Nicholas de Haverington} {Manerium de Farleton}
Tenuit de Rad[ulph]o de Bethome manerium de Farleton &c. per Homagium et fidelitatem et

[134] MS: 'This was in the Time of H. 6. ~~(& the copy out of which I tooke this Inq. was examind in the Enq. – but I have neglected the particular dates~~) who (after the Death of John Duke of Bedford) gave Bedfords moyity to John Duke of Somerset Anno Regni Ejus 22^0.'
[135] Part of this word is blotted; its transcription is unsafe.
[136] A note in William Nicolson's hand at the top of II.363 urges the reader to begin the Inquisition at II.365.
[137] 'Out of a copy of an Inq[uisition] in the possession of Lord Daniel Fleming Knight. From an Escheator's bundle of the year 49. Edward 3. no. 29: On the Saturday next after the feast of Corpus Christi, John Savill being Escheator – on the oath of Thomas de Redeman, Roger de Levens, Roland de Thornburg, John de Chambre de Kendal, Robert de Docwra, Richard Carous, William Dannis, Richard Walker, William de Gilpin, Roger de Strickland, Henry de Griype and John de Strickland.' Escheator: see the English Glossary.
[138] The following word is too blotted to be legible.
[139] '{The Manor of Windermere is worth £144}{Johanna, who was wife of John de Coupeland} held at the end of her life by grant of the Lord King with their parts and appurtenances – Sc. the Hamlets (a) of Langden (!) Loughrigge Grismer, Hamelside Troutbeck Appelthwaite Crosthwaite, Strickland Kett. (b) also Hoton (c) also {the Manor of Casterton, manor of Ki[r]kby in Kendal} with their appurtenances. And also a moiety with appurtenances by reversion thence (after the death of the aforesaid Johanna) to Lord Ingelramus de Coucy, Earl of Bedford, with Isabella his wife, son of the said Lord King, and to his heirs etc.'
[140] '{N.B.} Value of the knights' fees which belonged to the wife of John of Coupland deceased at the end of her life. The same jurors say on their oath that [blank].'
[141] '{Manor of Bethom} Radulph of Bethom [...] He held of the same Johanna the manor of Bethom with its appurtenances by homage, loyalty and service at 32s a year, like his manor of Kirkby in Kendal.'

servicium, ij merc. per Annum; ut de manerio suo de Bethome et Idem Radulphus ultra de Eadem Johanna [blank]? per Idem Servicium.[142]

{Will[ielm]us Windesore}
Tenuit de prædicta Joh[ann]a {manerium de Haversham Morland et Grarigge}? Per homagium et fidelitatem et per servicium, 13s 4d per annum ut de manerio suo prædicto de Kirkby-Kendal.[143]

{Mattheus de Redman} {manerium de Levens et Lupton}
Tenuit de prædicta Joh[ann]a (per hom[agium] et f[idelitatem] et ser[vicium] ij merc) ut de manerio suo prædicto.[144]

{Tho: Adamson} {Tenementa in Midleton}
Tenuit diversa Tenementa in Midleton de prædicta Joh[ann]a per h[omagium] et fid[elitatem] et per servic[ium] iiij Solid per Annum ut de ma[nerio] suo prædicto.[145]

{Radulphus Lasells}{manerium de Barburne 30s 7d}
Tenuit de Eadem &c. per hom[agium] et fid[elitatem] et serv[icium] 8d ut de manerio suo prædicto.[146]

{Hugo de Moresby} {manerium de Hoton Roof}
Tenuit de Eadem &c. per hom[agium] fid[elitatem] et serv[icium] 8s per Annum ut de manerio suo de praedicto.[147]

{Tho. de Redman?} {diversa tenementa in Kirkslack per Annum (ubi?) }
T[enuit] de Eadem, diversa tenementa in Kirkslack ut de hereditate de Sturnel, per hom[agium] fid[elitatem] et servicium, 3s 4[d] ut de manerio suo prædicto.[148]

[II.363]

{Willi[elm]us de Boardale. Man[or] Inter Hartsop & Martindale}
Tenuit de Eadem diversa Tenementa ut de m[aneri]o suo predicto sub. Villa de Kirkby 16d.[149]

{Simon de Heversham}
Tenuit diversa Tenementa &c. in Hoton Roofe per hom[agium] fid[elitatem] et servic[ium] 3s 4d ut de man[erio] suo de Kirkby.[150]

---

[142] '{Nicholas de Haverington} {Manor of Farleton} He held of Radulph of Bethom the manor of Farleton etc. by homage, loyalty and service, at 2 marks a year; like his manor of Bethom, and the same Radulph, his overlord, of the same Johanna [Blank]? by the same service.'
[143] '{William Windesore} He held of the aforesaid Johanna {the manor of Haversham Morland and Grarigge}? by homage, loyalty and service, at 13s 4d a year, like his aforesaid manor of Kirkby-Kendal.'
[144] '{Matthew de Redman} {the manor of Levens and Lupton} He held [it] of the aforesaid Johanna (by homage, loyalty and service, at 2 marks), like his aforesaid manor.'
[145] '{Thomas Adamson} {Tenements in Midleton}. He held various tenements in Midleton of the aforesaid Johanna by homage, loyalty and service at 4 shillings a year, like his aforesaid manor.'
[146] '{Radulph Lasells} {the manor of Barburne 30s 7d} He held [it] of the same [lady] etc. by homage, loyalty and service at 8d, like his aforesaid manor.'
[147] '{Hugo de Moresby} {manor of Hoton Roof} He held [it] of the same [lady] etc. by homage, loyalty and service at 8s a year, like his aforesaid manor.'
[148] '{Thomas de Redman?} {various tenements in Kirkslack per year (where?)}He held of the same [lady] various tenements in Kirkslack, as of inheritance of Sturnel, by homage, loyalty and service at 3s 4d, like his aforesaid manor.'
[149] '{William of Boardale. Man[or] between Hartsop & Martindale.} He held of the same [lady] various tenements, like his aforesaid manor at the town of Kirkby, at 16d.'
[150] '{Simon of Heversham} He held various tenements etc. in Hoton Roof by homage, loyalty and service, at 3s 4d, like his manor of Kirkby.'

{Prior de Watton et Johanna de Haverington} {Man[erium] de Thornby}[151]
There is Thornton near Ingleton which holds of Kendal.}
Tenuêrunt de Ead[em] Per hom[agium] fid[elitatem] et serv[icium] 5 merc per Annum, ut de ma[nerio] suo de Kirkb [y]
{Matthew de Redman} {med[ietatem] villæ de Quinfell et diversa tenement[a] in Selsa.}[152]

Tenuit medietatem villæ de Quinfell et diversa ten[emen]ta in Selsat[153] per hom[agium] fid[elitatem] Et serv[icium] viijs 2d per Annum ut de m[anerio] suo de Kirkby {med[ietatem] villæ de Quinfell et diversa Tenementa in Selsa[t] per Hom[agium] et fid[elitatem] et servic[ium] viijs 2d per Annum ut de ma[nerio] suo de Kirkby {Margareta quae fuit = uxor Rog[er]i de Lancastre} {Diversa Tenementa in Bravandesdale forsan pro Ravensdale. There is Bannerdale}
Tenuit de Eadem, ut de man[erio] suo de Kirkby per hom[agium] fid[elitatem] et service[ium] 7s per Annum.[154]

{Rob[er]tus de Bellingham}
Tenuit Diversa Tenementa in Strickland de Eadem Joha? Ut de ma[nerio] suo de Kirkby per hom[agium] fid[elitatem] et servic[ium] viijs per annum.[155]

{Rob[er]tus de Strickland}
T[enuit] Diversa Ten[emen]ta in Strickland Ketell per fid[elitatem] et servic[ium] 8d per Annum.[156]

{Rob[er]tus de Docura}
Tenuit de Eadem, diversa Tenementa in{Kirkby in Kendal}ut de m[anerio] suo de Kirkby per fid[elitatem] et serv[icium] 7s.[157]

{Adam Thorstarson}
Tenuit unum Tenementum in{Strikland Kettell}de Eadem, ut de m[anerio] suo de ~~Kendal~~ Wynandermer per fid[elitatem] et servic[ium] XXd per An[num].[158]

{Gresemer (Chapel)}
Item dicunt q[uo]d Eadem Johana obijt seisita ad Terminum vitæ suæ ut prædictum est de advocatione Capellæ de Gresemer quæ Taxatur ad Xli. Et de Avocatione Capellæ de Wynandermer quæ Taxatur a[d] Cls.[159]

---

[151] '{The Prior of Watton and Johanna of Haverington} {Manor of Thornby}'. The Priory of Watton in the East Riding of Yorkshire was founded in 1150, see Michael Stephenson, *The Gilbertine Priory of Watton*, Borthwick Paper 116 (York, 2009).
[152] 'They held of the same [lady] by homage, loyalty and service at 5 marks a year, like the manor of Kirkby {Matthew de Redman} a moiety of the town of Winfell and various tenements in Selsat ...' The last word here is obscured by the binding.
[153] Selside, Kendal: historical name, Selesat(e); see *Westmorland Place-Names*, Selside Hall.
[154] 'He held a moiety of the town of Winfell and various tenements in Selsat by homage, loyalty and service at 8s 2d a year, like his manor of Kirkby {a moiety of the town of Winfell and various tenements in Selsa[t] by homage, loyalty and service at 8s 2d a year, like his manor of Kirkby {Margaret who was wife of Roger de Lancaster}{various tenements in Bravandesdale perhaps for Ravensdale. There is Bannerdale}'
[155] '{Robert de Bellingham} He held various tenements in Strickland of the same Joha[na] like his manor of Kirkby by homage, loyalty and service at 8s a year.'
[156] '{Robert de Strickland} He held various tenements in Strickland Ketell by loyalty and service at 8d a year.'
[157] '{Robert de Docwra} {Kirkby in Kendal} He held of the same [lady] various tenements, like his manor of Kirkby, by loyalty and service, at 7s.'
[158] '{Adam Thorstarson} {Strickland Kettell} He held one tenement of the same [lady], like his manor of Kendal Wynandermer by loyalty and service at 20d a year.'
[159] '{Gresemer (Chapel)} Likewise they say that the same Johana died possessed at the end of her life as said previously of the advowson of the Chapel of Gresemer which is assessed at £10. Also of the advowson of the Chapel of Windermere which is assessed at 150s.' The amount (150s) is unclear.

Et de Advocatione Capellæ de St Mary Holm (Chapel) infra Lacum de Winandermer, quæ nihil valet quia terra de Qua prædicta Capella: fuit Antiquo Tempore seisita est in manum Domi[ni] et jacet, ~~et jacet~~ infra Parcum del' Calvegarth {Therefore Windermer is part of et in Calvgarth parke – [er]go nihil.}[160]

Reversio omnium praedictorum Ingelramo de Coucy Com[iti] Bedford, et Isabell[ae] uxori ejusdem et Heredibus de Corporibus eorundem exeunt[ibus] totaliter spectant Ex concessione Domi[ni] Regis sicut patet per cartam sua[m] In cujus rei Testimonium Juratorum prædict[orum] sigilla sua apposuimus.[161]

Examd per D[ominu]m Dan[ielum] Fleming. Convenit cum Recordo – Gulielmus Ryley. 6^0 Aug. 1692.[162]

[II.366][163]

And of the aforesaid Thomas Parr

Of the said Thomas (who as it first seems had Kendal Castle with the Parke adjoyneing) descended Sir Thomas Parr of Kendal in the time of King Henry viij. who had isue Sir William Parr, & Katherine \ as after Q[ueen] / Par, \ the / 6^{th} & last wife of King Henry viij, whom \ is said / they ~~suppose~~ boast to have bin borne in this place.

The 14. of May in 27. year of Hen. 8. [1535] Christopher Philipson of Calgarth Esq. \ of whom is descended Sir Christopher Phil. of C. / was made Receiver of the \ Rents / of those Lands ~~hereabouts~~ which were granted in farme to Sir William Parr (but what they were I have not ~~s. or~~ heared) \ who was made Lord Parr,[164] say Hollines,[165] translation by K.H.8. {MS A. p.129 penes Dom Dan. Fleming militem};[166] who being created Marquess of Northampton (Southampton sayes Speed)[167] by King Ed. 6. had the said Lands Granted \ unto / him – ~~but being both attainted in the 1st of Queen Mary & dying without Isue~~.[168]And from this William as I suppose came the Marquess fee in contradiction to the Richmond foe, which are the 2 honors in K. Barony. ~~This William~~ He was attainted, Mariæ, & dyed without isue, leaveing Ann his sister and Heire, who was maryed to \ the / Lord Will Herbert \ then / Earle of Penbrooke & after of Huntington, \ by / whom \ he had / isue onely one daughter \ named / Elizabeth, who was ~~given in mariage to~~ \ wife of / Ch. Somerset first Earle of Worcester &c., In

[160] 'Also of the advowson of the Chapel of St Mary Holm (Chapel) within Windermere Lake, which has no value because the land of this aforesaid Chapel was of old possessed and in the hand of the Lord and lies within the Park of Calvegarth {Therefore Windermer is part of and in Calvgarth park –therefore nothing.}'

[161] 'The reversion of all the aforesaid belongs to Ingelramus de Coucy Earl of Bedford and to Isabella his wife and to the heirs that issue of their bodies, by grant of the Lord King as is clear through his charter. As testimony of the aforesaid jurors in which matter we have appended their seals.'

[162] 'Examined by Lord Daniel Fleming. It agrees with the Record – William Ryley. 6^0 Aug. 1692.'

[163] A page of notes, many altered or extended. Some text overwrites previous text written in pencil. The second and third paragraphs have been scored through; interlineations have been added in both pencil and ink. Accordingly, some words are illegible.

[164] Above this phrase is an illegible pencilled comment.

[165] Machell was referring to Raphael Holinshed, *Chronicles*, *the firste volume of the chronicles of England, Scotlande, and Irelande conteyning the description and chronicles of England, from the first inhabiting unto the conquest : the description and chronicles of Scotland, from the first original of the Scottes nation till the yeare of our Lorde 1571 : the description and chronicles of Yrelande, likewise from the first originall of that nation untill the yeare 1571 / faithfully gathered and set forth by Raphaell Holinshed.* (London, 1577; enlarged 1587).

[166] MS. A. was held in Sir Daniel Fleming's extensive and well-catalogued library/muniment room. As Fleming explained in the third person in his memoirs, 'MS. A. This is a large Manuscript in Folio, bound up in White Velume, with MS. A. writ in the first Page thereof, containing divers *Pedigrees &c with Rentals* and other Memoires collected out of the Evidence belonging unto Sir Daniel Fleming of Rydal Knight.' See Scott Sowerby and Noah McCormack, *The Memoirs of Sir Daniel Fleming of Rydal Hall from 1633 to 1688*, CWAAS Record Series 23 (Kendal, 2021), Appendix B, 344-46.

[167] Speed, *Historie*.

[168] There are pencilled corrections above the crossed-through words, but they are illegible.

whose posterity the castle & parke have \ still / ~~continued~~ (till of late years) continued, that ~~It~~ \ then / was sold to Sir Fran. Anderton of Lostock in Lancashire {who now holds the same, sayes Dugdal.}[169] But the ~~Barony~~ Title of Baron ended the line of the Lancasters \ then Mr Camden affirmes that thither devolved from / the Rosses upon the Parrs in the Barony of Kendal;[170] (from ~~the Ba~~ / Dugdal. *Baronagium* p.423 at §2 the line of this will […][171])

[Herbert Silver]
I finde there was a sort of duty to the Sheriff of Westmorland from the Barony Kendal & Loansdal Ward calld HERBERT-Silver, which it seemeth being left unlevyed in the time of K.H.8. by Sir Roger Bellingham, then Sh. of W;[172] whereupon King H. ~~Hen the 8th~~ isued out a Special Præcipe vel mandate, order, p[re]script in the 14. year of his Reigne [1522-23],[173] on the Behalfe of Hen. Lord Clifford for the payment thereof; which Henry allso let to farme to Sir Thomas Parr in the 3 year of the said Kings Reigne, the profits of his Shrivalty \ of Westm'land arriseing / in the Barony of Kendall for iiij li per Annum. See MS T.M. V. Antiq. West. p.62.[174]
But this \ Herbert Silver / cannot take name from the Lord William Herbert as ~~some there~~ payable out of the Lands \ which he held, / because it was not leised \ there / till the 1t of Queen Mary. Query if it be not Halbert Silver or Harbour Silver?

[II.368][175]

Of the Marquess & Richmond foe

{General Custom of Richmond & Marquess f.}
{The Tenants of Barony & Lordship of Kendal to pay fines certain, Sc. for 2 years old Rent upon ~~death~~ \ change / of the Lord by death; & 3 years old Rent upon change of the Tenant by death or alienation. Except Ambleside and Troutbeck which pay but 1. years rent upon change of Lord by death; 2 years Rent upon change of Tenant by death or alienation}

Nota – out of the Decree (penes Domini Danielem Fleming Militem[176] out of MS F. which I would peruse for the freehold estates – & to finde out the True exteant of the Barony) made in the Court of Chancery Inter Sir John Walter Knight Attorney General of ~~the most~~ the most excellent Prince Charles Complanant, & Gawen Brathwate & others the Tenants of the Barony & Lordship of the Kendal Defendents Inrolld in the said Court. Begining thus –
"Whereas on the 28th of October 1619. Sir John Walter &c. for the sum 2700 li.
That the eldest sister &c. ut supra – That the eldest daughter/ sister/cosan inherrits without copartnershipp – in Tenancy to pay for their several Tenements several certain yerely Rents and fines certain,[177] i.e. every of them: 2 years old Rent only for a fine upon change of the Lord by death, and 3 years old rent only for a fine upon change of every Tenant by death or allienation; except the Tenants of the Townes of Ambleside & Troutbeck, who are to pay fine certaine likewise, viz. every of them 1 years Rent only upon change of Lord by death; & 2 years Rent (upon change of Tenant by death or alienation) for a fine.

[169] A crossed-through interlineation here states, 'Dugdal says that'.
[170] Camden, *Britannia* tr. Holland (1637), 759, D-E: 'By … Peter Brus his daughter, the sister and heire of Peter Brus the third, came this Barony to the Rosses of Werke, and from them by right of inheritance this possession was devolved upon the Parres, of whom Sir William Parr was made Lord Par by King Henry the eighth.'
[171] Some blotted words here are illegible.
[172] MS: 'HERBERT-Silver ~~which it seems, which it seems was left~~ which being left [illeg.] unlevied \ in the time of K.H.8. / by Sir Roger Bellingham, ~~when UnderSherrif~~ \ then Sh. of W. /'
[173] 'A special Praecipe'. The meaning of "Praecipe" is given in the three English synonyms Machell then offers: 'mandate, order, prescript.'
[174] A reference to Machell's library of manuscripts.
[175] This is a page of notes, many of which have been altered or extended. Some of the text overwrites previous text written in pencil
[176] 'Knight' from Latin, 'miles'.
[177] 'Fine Certain': a fixed sum. See the English Glossary.

{The Custom of Widdowhood & Heriots General in these foes – Richmond & Marquess foes.}
And upon the death of every Tenant dying siesed of a Tenement, leaveing a widow behind him, An Heriot, for which she is to enjoy her Husbands Customary Estates dureing her widowhood only. Decreed on Thorsday 4. of November Anno Jac. $1^{\cdot}$ 17^{0} [1618].
The Prince, then Lord of the Barony i.e. of the Marquess & Richmond foe thereon, who was to Receive of his said Tenants such Heriots, Suites of Court, dutyes & services as is therein specified & being Subject to such other Customs as have bin used in the said manners.

[II.370]

[9.] The Division of the Bar[ony]

This Barony of Kendall for the distribution of Civil justice is divided into 2 Wards \ or Hundreds,[178] / Sc. Kendale Ward & Kirkby Ward, which have 2 High Constables – Sc. one in each of them and these of Kendal Ward.

1. Of Kendal Ward & the Parishes in It
Kendal Ward ~~is~~ so called from the Chiefe dale of that corpus of the said Dales,[179] Sleddale, Windermer, Grarigg &c.[180] And is divided into Parishes. Sc.

1. Kendal	a Vic[arage]
4. Windermer	a Rec[tory]
5. Gresmer	a Rec.
2. Beathom	a Vic.
3. Hersham	a Vic.
6. Burton & Loansdall	both Vic.

In which there are 39 Constablewicks being confu[se]dly intermix'd in several parishes, which I shall therefore not mention;[181] & so proceed to speake particularly of the Respectives Parishes with the manners &Townships conteined in them.

[Machell's Notes: II.370]

[Ecclesiastical Jurisdiction]
{As to Ecclesiastical jurisdiction \ it apear / is all within the Diocess of Chester, but for in 2 Denaryes: Sc. Kendal & Lonesdal: And accordingly, it is divided \ for the better diff[erence] / into 2 Wards of the same names: Sc. Kendal-Ward & Kirkby W.} {Qu. if Loansdal be a distinct Denary from that of Kendal. [It is] so in Adams *Villare*.}[182]
Qu. of Kendal it selfe, if not a distinct Constablewick from that of Natland.
{I am of opinion, that before the Town of Kendal [k]new great Trade, & by that means made the Neighbourhood populous – it was no bigger in effect than Loansdall Ward. But since that time it has bin deforested & so well peopled that it had many chaples, & 2 of those chaples now converted into parish churches. Put them in order as they fall in Parishes & chap[els]. as in Loansdal Ward,} that I may proceed to speake of those respective parishes. And of Kendal.[183]

[178] MS: 'This Barony of Kendall ~~for~~ the ~~better~~ distribution of \ Civil / justice ~~in both kindes~~, Is Divided Into 2 Wards \ or Hundreds. /'
[179] MS: 'Kendal Ward ~~is~~ so called from ~~the Towne of Kendale, the chiefe Place in It and of the whol Barony~~ \ the Chiefe dale of that corpus / of the said Dales.' The word 'corpus' is unclear.
[180] Here, Machell added marginalia but then corrected himself: '{& forrest like ground, store moores & mountains – No not soe for wee speake of the Barony \ ward / only & it[s] division.}'
[181] MS: '\In / which ~~are subdivided into~~ \ there are / 39 Constablewicks being confu[se]dly intermix'd in several parishes ~~which I shall content myself to mention & so~~ which I shall therefore not mention.'
[182] John Adams, *Index Villaris, or, an alphabetical table of all cities, market-tons, parishes, villages, private seats in England and Wales* (London, 1680, reprinted with additions, 1690 and 1700).
[183] The last sentence is preceded by seven lines of text, crossed through. A table of parishes has been started here. It contains the names, 'Kirkland Kendal, Helsington, Natland, Sedgewick, Stainton, Levins'; but although the table is numbered 1 to 29, it is otherwise blank.

[II.372]

[2.] Of the Parish of Kendal & the Chapelryes & Manners there

The parish of Kendall is a large tract of ground, and hath bin larger; for it formerly conteined in it also both Gresmer & Windermer which are now distinct Parishes & the only Rectoryes in the Barony of Kendal, paying yet to the Vicars of Kendal an Annual Quit Rent – 1 marke per Annum every Easter.

{Bounder}
But the Parish of Kendal as it now lyeth, is Bounded on the N. with [Blank]

[Chapels]
To this church and belonging within which Libertyes are conteined XIV Chapels. Sc.
1. Kentmer at the head of the River
2. Chapel I'th Ing upon a Beck that runs into Kent
3. Staveley (upon another?)
4. Burnaside; at the meeting of Kent & Sled.
5. Sleddal up the River
6. Selstrad near the River Sled.
7. Skelsmer – down near the Riv. Sleddal
8. Grayrig up Grang-beck from Grarig by a road through Kendal to 9.
9. Hutton. Thence by Milthrop Roade to
10. Cros-crake. Thence by Kendal Road to
11. Natland. Thence by Windermer Road to
12. St Katherines Under Barrow. Thence by the same to
13. Crooke Chapel – Thence to a sort of dependant ch[apel].
14. Winstar chapel (near) adjoyneing to which is

Windermer Parish – One of Those Rectoryes which depend upon Kendal (as having bin formerly a chapel unto it. In which has bin
1. St Maryes \ !!! /chapel; thence up the lake to
2. St Catherines; thence up the River Trout[beck] to
3. Jesus Chapel,[184] which adjoynes upon Ambleside, part of which is in this parish Under Stock, & part in
Gresmer Parish –The other Rectory which belongd to Kendal Church heretofore as one of her chapells but the d[aughter] is now afore the mother. It hath appertaineing:
1. Up the water Rothey, Gresmer Ch.; thence down.
2. Ambleside. Thence up Roathey [to] Lang dale.

[II.373]

So down Windermer into the Sea, or where it meets with Kent Sands – to the Parish of Bethom.
Thence up the water to Heversham Parish – correpte[185] Hersham – which hath ? fam[ilies].
Chapels: both parochial: 1. Witherslack up Winstar. 2. Up a mos to Crosthwaite*.

And so much of Kendal Ward. Now wee will proceed to speake of Kirkby [Lonsdale] Ward – which lyes on the East Side of the Barony of Kendal.

[Machell's Notes: II.373]

*Memorandum – to place it in the map.

[184] For Jesus Church at Troutbeck, see Hyde & Pevsner, 640.
[185] 'Shortly', 'briefly'.

[II.374]

[3.] Of Loansdale Ward[186]

Loansdal Ward \ which is Loansdale of the River Loane / so called from the Chief dale in it & thus of Loan, which springs.
Kirkby Ward is so called of the Town of K.[187] being the Chiefe Place in it, lying distant from Kendal [blank] miles South East*.

This Ward is divided into 2 Parishes onely, and those not very great ones. Sc.
1. Kirkby Loansdale
2. Burton

And those subdivided for Administration of Civill Justice into XII Constablewicks. Sc.
1. Kirkby Loansdal }
2. Delakar[188] }
3. Firbanke }
4. Killington }
5. Midleton } in Kirkby Loansdal Parish
6. Barborne }
7. Manserge }
8. Casterton }
9. Hutton Roofe }
10. Lupton }

11. Burton } In Burton Parish
12. Holme }

Which I shall speake of more particularly under their Respective Parishes, & 1ᵗ of Loansdal.

{Ad Kendal}
And the reason why Kendal Ward is so \ much / greater, may possibly be that it was formerly most of it forrest, uninhabited.[189] And being disforrested since the division into wardes & now growne more populous, whereas it had but 3 Parishes formerly, now it hath 5, with a number of Chappels belonging unto it.}

[Machell's Notes: II.374 & II.375]

*(Describe the Town so placed at, which stands on the banke of the River Loune in the Road towards London)
{non –} And {This is much the better ground. & better may [blank]}

[II.375][190]
If I might not com under his Bo[…][191]
I would not com under his Belt.

[186] MS: 'Of ~~Kirkby~~ \ Loansdale / Ward.'
[187] Kirkby Lonsdale.
[188] Dillicar.
[189] This is followed by approximately nine illegible words, thoroughly crossed through.
[190] This page is empty, apart from the presence of a small rectangular scrap of paper (5½cm x 3cm) affixed to the centre.
[191] The last word of the first line of this proverb is heavily blotted; just conceivably it might begin with 'Pre' for 'Presence', or if 'Bo' it could be 'Board'.

Part 2. Barony of Kendal

[Chapter 2]

Kendal Town

[II.23][1]

Platform of Kendal



Figure 2.2.1. John Speed's Map of Kendal, scale about 2.5 miles to 1 inch. From Speed's Theatrum Imperii Magnae Britanniae (1611-12)*. II.* 23.[2]

[Kendal Castle Notes]
Castle – from the gate NND to the turret SSO – 70 yards.
The buildings (a) are on the wrong side of the Castle yard.

[II.26]

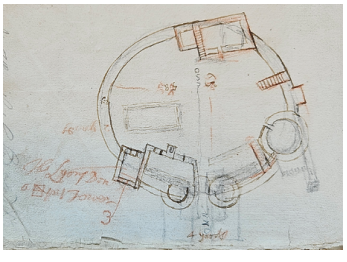


Figure 2.2.2. Machell's Plan of Kendal Castle. Detail. II.26.

[1] This page contains a print of John Speed's illustration of Kendal Castle (plus a key). A number of faint pencilled notes on local descents (such as Parr) below it, have not been transcribed.
[2] For a coloured version of this map, see The Armitt Library: ALMC2008.14.5, or, *The Counties of Britain: a Tudor Atlas by John Speed* (London, 1988), 182-83.

{Thomas Smith Shoomaker}
Ditch 5
Advance 5
.
.
.
. 17

[II.27]

[Notes on the Town of Kendal]

{A most famous Town for its Industry and the Wollen Trade.}[3]

[II.10B]

The said towne of Kirkby Kendall is seated upon the west side of the river Kent with a very faire old and very ancient castle on the east side thereof; which said Castle belongs to the Lord Parr of Ragland in Wales,[4] whose anchestors was borne here.

[II.27]

[Description of Kendal, taken largely from Camden's *Britannia*]
On the western Banke of this River standeth Kendal, or rather, as it is anciently writ – Kirkby in Kendal. i.e. Ecclesia in Valle ad Kent.[5] Which consists of 2 streets considerably long, intersecting each other – Lanificij gloria & industria ita præcellens, ut eo nomine sit celeberrimum[6]– so excelling for industrie & the woollen \ trade / that in this respect it is most famous. For the inhabitants \ thereof do / vend their cottons into most parts of England. And for the better incouragement whereof, Queen Elizabeth ~~1ᵗ of an~~ made ~~this laborious & thriveing Town~~ It a Corporation. And afterwards King Charles the 1ᵗ for \ Its / the Better Government and Regulation made it a Maior Town &c.[7]

[Machell's Notes: II.27]

*The church stands as is described before.[8]
Corne paid: some in kinde, some Meal Silv[er.][9]
Hay: som in kinde &c. Hay Silver.

[II.10A][10]

[Kendal Corporation]

The government of this Corporacon was formerly by an alderman, twelve brethren, one recorder, two serjants at mace & twenty foure burgesses & three constables. But now, since the yeare 1636, it is governed by a maior {Mʳ Thomas Sleddall first maior} a recorder, twelve aldermen (whereof the two senior[11] aldermen are justices of the peace within the same), one towne clerke, one sword bearer, two serjants at mace, two chamberlains, three constables, twenty burgesses or common counsel men. The maior is elected every yeare forth of the said aldermen, upon Monday before Michaelmas day, and sworne the Monday after. They have within themselves seseions quarterly, three weeke courts and tryalls common[12] every 9 or 12 weeke; which court will carry noe more but 20li. As alsoe the Court Right and Bylaw Court which they keepe accordingly twice every yeare.[13]

[3] Another note reads, {Kendal Church gives […]to Kirkby in Kendale ~~Town~~}; some of the words are unclear.
[4] Raglan, Monmouthshire.
[5] 'The church in the valley of the river Kent'.
[6] Camden's description of Kendal, *Britannia* (1587), 518. Machell gives the translation. The next sentence also quotes Camden, see *Britannia* tr. Holland, 759.
[7] 'Regulation' = of Kendal's cloth manufacture.
[8] Information on Kendal church is given throughout Volume II. See below.
[9] Meal-silver: see the English Glossary.
[10] The text on this page is not in Machell's hand.
[11] The page has creased here; a word, which could be 'senior', is unclear.
[12] Court of Common Pleas: see *N&B1*, 68.
[13] For Kendal Corporation's Royal Charters, 1575 and 1636, see *N&B1*, 68; and see Part 2, Ch.1, Barony of Kendal, II.11.

[II.250]

Fairbanke mayor of K. 1693.

[II.27]

[Sandes Hospital]

There is in this Town a Pretty Library founded by – Mr Sandes – in his Hospital.

[II.26]

[1. Hospital Notes]
8 Widdows 1 sh[illing]
East of the Castlehow hill
Library. Schoolmaster.

[2. Sandes: Arms]
He had no Armes when this was built; but afterwards made use of Sandes – his Coate of Armes of Hawkeside – a practise too frequ[ent] & which ought to be punished. & Mr Sandes, thinke to get som thing of him for this usurpation, reminde him of this; telling that he had used [blank][14]



Figure 2.2.3. Kendal Hospital. Arms. II.26.

[II.27]

He was a man of accute wit, {as may appear from the Answer he gave to Mr Sandes of Hawkside in Lancashire;[15] questioning him for assumeing[16] a Coat of Armes on a Seale; being Armes to which he had no manner of Title (being but meanly descended), for which he told him he could bring him in Trouble,[17] \ thinkeing / thereby to bring suit to a comp.[18] 'Thou shalt never trouble me nor thyselfe,' replyed old Sandes about such a matter; 'for as for thy Armes, I leave the[e] them to get thy living \ by; / & for thy Coate, I would not be in it for 100 li.'}[19]

[II.31]

[Machell's Queries: sent out to his informants]

{Kendal – Qu. of Mr Farrington}[20]
In the East window of the Quier called Parrs; what colour are the water-budgets.[21]

[14] The text ends abruptly here but takes up the narrative again. below, II.27.
[15] Hawkshead.
[16] This word has partly perished.
[17] In trouble with the heralds at the Heralds' Office.
[18] Perhaps, 'compertorium': a judicial inquest in the civil law, by delegates or commissioners, to find out and relate the truth of a cause. *Jacob's New Law Dictionary*: CO.
[19] The following page [II.29] contains only one sentence, 'Kendal Parish: see more in my Itinerary.' Machell was referring to his tour of the Barony of Kendal, in 1692, see Part 2, Ch.10.
[20] For Farrington, see Part 2 Ch.3i, Burneside, II.91.
[21] Water budget: a bottle in which soldiers formerly fetched water to their camp. In heraldry it was also called a water bouget and represented a pair of water bags suspended on a yoke. *OED*.

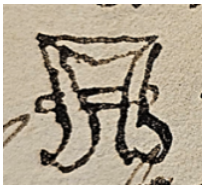


Figure 2.2.4. Water-Budget. II.31.

And what colour the field? – In the Coate inversed? Q. also, if the same Coate be not in the 4th Quarter. And if the 2nd quarter be not in a bord[ure]. {N. Those at Sizerge has no Bordure.}
What Armes are on Judge Nichols Monument in the said quier; Scratch them out as well as you can with a pen, & send me them, with their proper Colours?

{Upper Levins. Mr Guy – or – Mr Webster}[22]
What Colour are the Bores Heads in Sandfords Armes the 4th Course in the End window?
Are there any more Coates of Armes in the House, than those in the Lower Hall, The upper Hall & parlour dineing Roome. And if there be can you finde what are called Becks Arms which are lost out of the 6th Course in the Bow-window which is in the Dineing Roome?[23]

{Under Levins – Mr Webster}[24]
Qu. whether Prestons Armes in the 1t Impaleing of the 4th Coate of Armes in the Dineing Roome window, have a Crescent in Chiefe; as well as the other Impaled with it?
And if Preston impaleing Curwen be not in the Hall window as well as Dineing Roome.
Allso. In what place or Roome is the Coate of Preston impaleing Bradley, & what are the Colours in Bradleys Armes ther?

{Hersham School – Mr Green}[25]
The Armes & monuments
Is not Kings Exhibition in Q[ueen's] College.
The vertues of the medicinal well; who & when cured by it & of what diseases.
How far distant ab Ecclesia E.W.N.S.?

[II.30]

[Kendal Church]



Figure 2.2.5. View of Kendal Church from the west; small sketch 4cm x 4cm, pasted onto II.30.[26]

[22] For Henry Guy of Watercrook, see Part 2, Ch.3vii, Natland; see also Eric Birley, 'The Guys of Kendal and Watercrook' *CW2*, 58 (1958), 94-104. For 'Mr T. Webster', see Part 2, Ch.7, Heversham, and Machell's Itinerary, Part 2, Ch.10, II.389.
[23] Beck, later Alcock-Beck, see *CFH*, 383. One 'Thomas Alcock Beck' (1795–1846) was the author of *Annales Furnesienses* (London, 1844).
[24] For Under (or Nether) Levens, see Part 2, Ch.7, Heversham, II.163.
[25] Green was the master of Heversham School, see Part 2, Ch.7, Heversham, II.169; II.174.
[26] Written in ink over pencil.

[II.39]

Kendal Church
8 Pillars in a row, of which 4 rowes.
51 Long; 36 Broad.
5 Large Bells.[27]

[Kendal Church Monuments]

[II.14]

Before the high Altar
Under the Comm[union] rale

> PATER ROBERTUS DAWSON Episcopus / Clonefertensis et Ducensis Hibernicus. Qui obijt die Decima tertia / Ap - / Rilis – 1643.[28]

Upon a piece of Brass one foote long affixed to an old marbel stone, which lyes in the midle as you ascend up to the Altar: HIC IACE.[29]

[II.35]

[Quires]
These are: Lady, Alderman, High, Lord Parr quier*.

In the Castle Quier, Vulgo' Parr's
In the East window of the said Quier Is this Quarterly Coate of Armes Inversed.



Figure 2.2.6. Parr's Quire. II.35.

On the North Side is the following Monument, all of Gray-Marble. [with coats of arms 1. 2. 3. 4.]

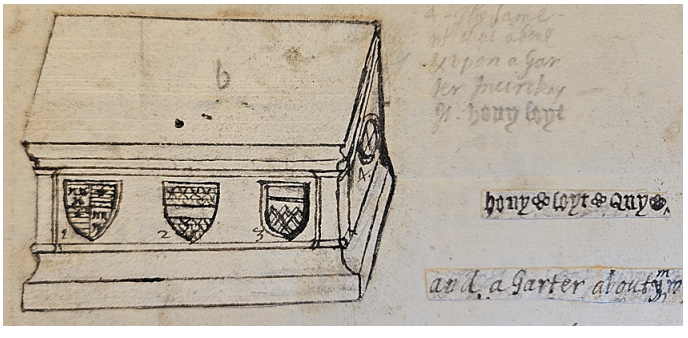


Figure 2.2.7. Monument, north side of Parr's Quire. II.35.

4. The same with that above. And upon a Garter incircling it. hony coyt

[27] MS. II.33 gives the same information: '4 rows of viij pillars \ each; / Long 51, Broad 36; Bells 5 large,' In this version the length was originally 50 but was overwritten to become 51.
[28] 'Father Robert Dawson, bishop of Clonfert and a duke in Ireland, who died 13 April 1643.'
[29] Part of 'here lies'.

And a garter about them with HONY. COYT. QUY.

And near unto it, in the N.E. corner, is a Black Marble Monument set up in the Wall which gives an Account of: Sr Augustine Nicholis[30] of Faxton in Northampton-shire Knight (2nd son of Thomas Nicholis Esq.); who was of the Midle-Temple London and Reader there in the last of Queen ELISABETH, of whom He Received his Writt of Serjiant at Law. & was afterwards Sergiant to Prince Henry & the Queen, his mother.[31] And \ one / of His Majesties Justices of Common-Pleas and Keeper of the Broad-Seal to Prince CHARLES; who having bin a Reverend & Just Judge IV years; fell under the heavy burthen of it here (at Kendal) sitting then Justice of Assize. Anno Domini 1616. 3^0 August XIV^0 Regis JACOBI [1616-17] & 77 ætatis."[32] On which are these Arms:
[On the left-hand coat:] virtute non vi.[33]



Figure 2.2.8. Part of the monument of Sir Augustine Nicholls of Faxton. II.35.

[Machell's Notes: II.35]
*1a. Mr Farrington. Write for the Colours of the Sheld & Waterbudget.}

[II.36]

In Sizergh Quire commonly called Stricklands Quire
which lyes betwixt Parrs and the High Altar on the South Side, there is in the East window a Fragment, i.e. a Quarter of a Coate of Arms, misplaced through the Glaziers ignorance, as if inversed, which I have here rectifyed.



Figure 2.2.9. In Sizergh or Strickland's Quire. II.36.

Upon an Alabaster Stone[34] set in a wooden Post on the N. Side of the Lady Quire near the foote of Bellingham Tomb.
1. Ermin & Gules.
2. Argent on a c~~rown~~ charged with b. gl.; a + of the 1^t.
3. Argent. Gules. Argent.
4. Or. & Argent.

[30] For the English judge, Sir Augustine Nicolls/Nicholls (1559-1616), see W. Prest, 'Nicolls, Sir Augustine'. *ODNB*; see also *N&BII*, 76.
[31] Anne of Denmark (1574-1619) was wife to James I (VI of Scotland). Their first surviving son, Henry, born 1594, died in 1612. See M. Meikle & H. Payne, 'Anne [Anna, Anne of Denmark] (1574-1619). *ODNB*.
[32] 'And 77 years of age.'
[33] 'By virtue not violence.' In the margin here, written in faded pencil and mostly perished, is the following, '{Qu. of the Ke[perished] if true see these Antiq. For They are wrong h[perished]}'
[34] MS: 'Upon an Stone[2] Alabaster[1],' The numbers indicate that the writer wished to reverse the word order.

5. Argent. Sab[le.] Gules.
6. Argent. G[ules.] Argent.[35]

[II.36A]

1. At the Spring, or footing of the Arch 'twixt Parrs and Stricklands-Quier, at the End next the East, are these Coates of Armes in stone; whereof the second is defaced by setting up the Screen or Partition.



Figure 2.2.10. Between Parr's and Strickland's quire. 3 coats of arms in stone, one defaced. II.36A.

2. On the N. side of the said Quier is a Gray-Marble Tombe supported with Hewne Stone.

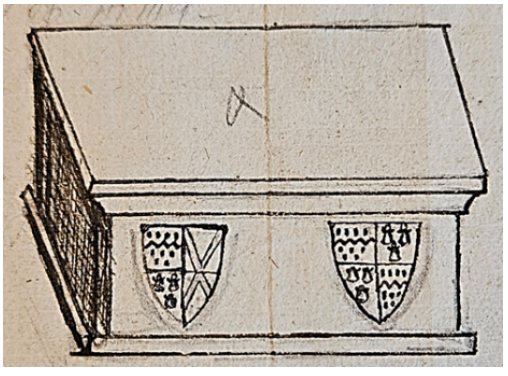


Figure 2.2.11. 'North side of the quire: gray marble tomb supported with Hewne Stone.' II.36A.

[II.359A]

In Stricklands-Quire, which lyes betwixt Parrs and the High Altar, there is a Monument like to the former,[36] of a Gray Marble but \ also / supported with Hewen-Stone. On the side of which are these Coates of Armes:

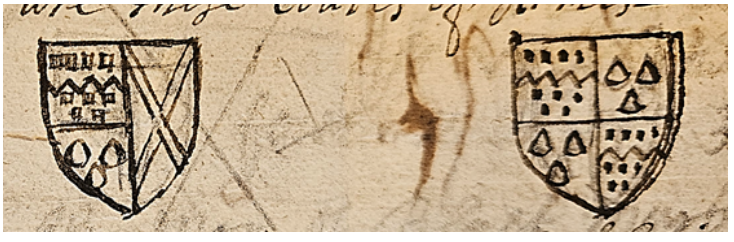


Figure 2.2.12. Coats of Arms. II.359A.

3. A dilicate Table Monument of Curiouse Black Marble inlaid with white, stands under the window; being supported with 4 speckled Pillars. And having beneath it the Figure of a Childe in Alabaster wrap'd in his shroud; & above (on the Table) this following Inscription:

[35] This paragraph has been cut out of a piece of paper, 7cm x 6½cm, pasted onto this page.
[36] This probably refers to the same monument; the coats of arms are the same, although the sentences were written on two different pages of notes: II.359A and II.36A.

Gualterus filius natu maximus Thomæ Strickland de Sizerge Militis. Obijt 20. Sept. 1653.[37]

And at the corner is this Coate of Arms.

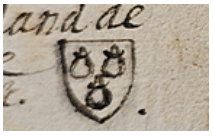


Figure 2.2.13. 'And at the corner is this Coate of Arms'. II.36A.

[II.36B][38]

Of Goods & Chatells

To ~~pd~~ a deed of gift \ of goods & chatels / 20 April – 21. Ed. 3. [1347] of Will. de Strickland to Will. de Crakenthorpe. This seal is appendant;



Figure 2.2.14. Seal to a deed of gift, 21. Ed. III. 'which is not much unlike this in Strickland's Quire'. II.36B.

which is not much unlike this in Strick[land's] Quire; ergo this Seale may seeme to have bin the antient Coate – & that in after times they have varyed from it by the errour or ignorance of painter or carver! {An see at in a Roundel upon the nale ad Ellerkar.}[39] The scallops I take to be the Coat of Armes of som other family resideing at Sisiers before the Stricklands, who heiress being mary[ed] by Strickland he might thence be oblieged to assume these Armes – as in the case of Lucy &c. Those who lived near to fisheryes often tooke the escallop of Dacres &c.

[II.37]

In the High Quier: vulgo' Bel[linghams]

(c.)



[37] 'Walter, the eldest son of Sir Thomas Strickland of Sizergh, knight, who died on 29 September 1653.' According to Bellasis, the date is 1656: see Edward Bellasis, *Westmorland Church Notes: being the Heraldry, Epitaphs, and other Inscriptions, in the Thirty-two Ancient Parish Churches and Churchyards of that County, Vol. II.* (Kendal, 1889), 62, for the complete inscription. Machell omitted the inscription around the edge of the top slab, which Bellasis gives as, 'This pure refined structure does containe / Natures compleatest peece where every graine / Waits for a glorious union and appeares / Shrind in Parentall Sighs and Marble teares.'

[38] Text here is written on the reverse of a sealed letter paper.

[39] This information does not appear on accounts concerning Ellerkar (in Crackenthorpe Lordship) elsewhere.

(d.)



(e.)

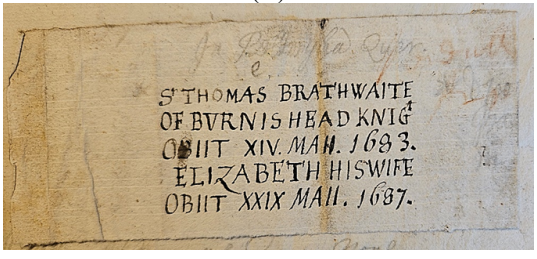


Figure 2.2.15. Pasted images of monument and inscriptions, c., d. and e. II.37.

(c.) In the Lady-Quier. On the S. Side, a Gray Marble Stone formerly inlaid with Brass & susteined with Hewn-Stone.

(d.) [Coat of Arms and Inscription]

[Arms]
2. Argent on a Chief chargd with 4. g. a + of the 1^t.[40]
3. Argent. Gules. Argent.
4. Or. Argent.
5. Argent.
6. Argent. Gules. Argent.[41]

Inscription*

On earth three \ score / & ten years spent
or nigh thereabouts. This Lyffe
changed | Dame Thomasin Thorn
burgh hence went | Heavenly
Joyes to joy expected | wife
to Sir William Thornburgh,
knight | whilst on earth he was

[40] Written faintly in pencil, and unclear.
[41] Written faintly in pencil ,and unclear; the last word could be ‘Azure’ or ‘Argent’.

remaynynge | Sir Robert
Bellingham Gentle Knight |
Hir father was; with whom,
Ending | she desired, sepult
ed to be | As here Hir corps,
hir hope fruing[42] underlyeth
as youe may see | Hir Spirit
with the blessed beying the elevent[43]

(e.) In Bellingham Quiere

SR THOMAS BRATHWAITE
OF BURNISHEAD KNIG^{T}
OBIIT XIV. MAII. 1683.[44]
ELIZABETH HIS WIFE
OBIIT XXIX MAII. 1687.

In the Aldermens Quier. None.

[Machell's Notes II.38]

*{I had as good draw the mo[45] about this inscription.}
In the Lady Quier
This Quire was rebuilded by [Blank]
1. Armes in the windows if any.
2. Thornburgh monument & Armes.
3. Brathwaite Monument.

[II.39]

High Quier
On a white marble Monument set up in the wall at the Vestery doore, is this inscription.



Figure 2.2.16. Marble monument near the vestry door. II.39.

[42] Bellasis interprets this as 'serving': see Bellasis, *Westmorland Church Notes I*, 66.
[43] According to Bellasis, the inscription continues, 'the eleventhe of August she expired a yeare of Christ on thowsand fyve hundreth eightie too this world she left (there of not loth) almightie God hir sowle receave to hevenly blis she humblye craved.' Bellasis, *Westmorland Church Notes I*, 66. See also the pedigree of Thornburrow of Selside, Part 2, Ch.3viii, II.404.
[44] Bellasis gave his age at death: 'et ætatis suae LXVI.' Bellasis, *Westmorland Church Notes I*, 11.
[45] The monument.

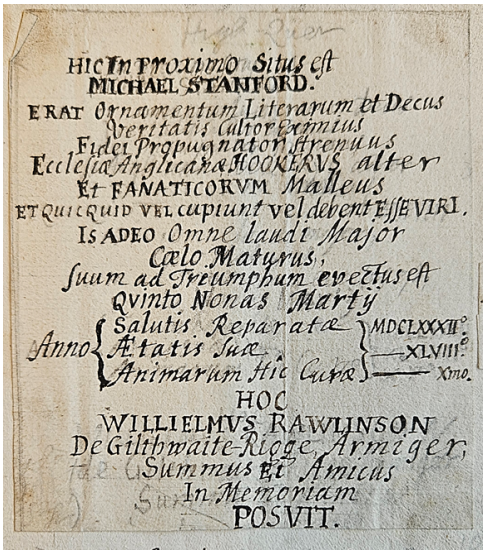


Figure 2.2.17. Memorial to Michael Stanford. II.39.

Hic in proximo situs est
MICHAEL STANFORD
Erat Ornamentum Literarum et Decus
Veritatis Cultor Eximius
Fidei propugnator strenuuus
Ecclesiæ Anglicanæ HOOKERUS[46] alter
Et FANATICORUM Malleus
ET QUICQUID VEL capiunt vel debent Esse VIRI
Is ADEO Omne laudi Major
Coelo Maturus,
Suum ad Triumphum evectus est.
Quinto Nonas Martij

Anno {Salutis Reparatæ } MDCLXXXII^{0}
{Ætatis Suæ } XLVIII^{0}
{Animarum Hic Curæ } Xm^{0}.

HOC
WILLIELMUS RAWLINSON
De Gilthwaite-Rigge, Armiger,
Summus Ei Amicus
In Memoriam
POSUIT.[47]

[46] Richard Hooker (1554-1601) author of, *Of The Laws of Ecclesiastical Polity,* 8 vols (1594-1648).
[47] 'Near this spot lies MICHAEL STANFORD. He was an adornment and glory of Literature, a distinguished follower of Truth, a vigorous protagonist of Faith, a second Hooker in the Church of England, and a hammer of FANATICS, and one who was whatever men wish or ought to be. He was borne up to his triumph in Heaven in due time, already far honoured, on the 6 March in the year of our Redemption 1682, in the 68th year of his age, and the 10th year of his cure of souls here. This monument was placed here to the Memory of his greatest friend, by WILLIAM RAWLINSON of Gilthwaite Rigg, Esquire.'

{[Arms] a gorge[48] or waterbudget.}

[Thomas Sandes]
In the Body of the Church, upon the iiijth Pillar in the second North-Side Alley, is a very fair monument made of white marble with som black veines upon it, in memory of Mr Tho. Sands who founded the Hospital & Library in Kendal. Being a \ very / fit emblem of his life; which though the Author of his Epitaph has don what he can to make it all white, yet diverse black strokes & staines were found in it; for he got his welth by Sequestration;[49] and had no Armes but what hee tooke up against the King, tho his monument is adorn'd with the Arms of the Sandses of Cartmel to whom he had not any relation. Yet to give him his due he did many good & charitable Acts: Had it not bin ~~because they were~~ don with ill-gotten goods \ for which cause / I shal take no more notice of him. But that he dyed A.D. MDCLXXXI. Aetat Suæ LXXI. Died in 1681, aged 71.

[II.39A]
G[ules] a fess charged with 3 Escallops a. betwene 3 [lozenges] Pierced of the field within a bordure Or charged with ooo Gules.

[II.40]
There is also in the Body of the Church hard by, upon a plane Grave Stone in memory of a worthy Gentleman who sometimes served the Countess of Penbroke.

MR GEORGE SEDGWICK OF COLLINFIELD
1685. ÆTATIS 67.

[Machell's Query: II.40]

Q. for Mr Guyes on Brass.[50]

[II.41][51]
[Dr Hay]
Dr. Haius[52] {He tooke the sirname Gray from a Brother in Law of that name who designed to make him his heire}.



Figure 2.2.18. Seal detail. University of St Andrews. II.41.

[48] Gorge? 'G. Legh, *Accedens of Armory* (1597), 103: He beareth Sanguine, a Gorge, Argent. Thoughe this seeme unlikely to be a water-budget, yet hath it long time bin so taken, and so blazed, and neuer of anie other fashion, then ye see in this escocheon.' Thus, a gorge appears to look like a water budget. *OED*.
[49] Sequestration (in law): the appropriation of the income of a property in order to satisfy claims against the owner; especially ecclesiastical; a writ diverting the income of a benefice to the advantage of the creditors of the incumbent; a writ of Chancery empowering commissioners or a sheriff to seize the property of the person against whom it is directed. *OED*. In 1643, Parliament set up a Sequestration Committee in every county to confiscate the estates of Royalists who fought against Parliament. Gavin Robinson, *Horses, People and Parliament in the English Civil War: Extracting Resources and Constructing Allegiance* (London, 2012, 2nd edn, 2016), 100.
[50] Machell was seeking the epitaph of William Guy of Watercrook, thrice mayor of Kendal, who died in 1683 aged 84: see Bellasis, *Westmorland Church Notes II*, 27; see also *N&BI,* 78-79.
[51] Paper 7cm x 18cm, cut from another source and pasted onto the page. Contains a seal.
[52] Dr Hay.

Dr Haius in Artibus m[agister …] was Doctoratus Medicinæ Gradû auctus et ornatus; made Dr in Phys[ic] in the University of St Andrews in Scotland in 1683.[53] Ex chirographo dat Andreanopli X^0 K. Octorbris anno Æ C. M.DC.LXXXIII;[54] the original of which under the seal of the said university, I saw at Kendal 25º July, 1692.

This family was rased from the valour & conduct of one Haius & \ his / 2 sons, who by their Personal Valour, tho but husbandmen then, were the occasion of a great victory over the Danes at Loncarty near St Johnstons; for which they \ were / advanced into the Nobility, endowed with lands which som of the name enjoy som parcells of till this day.[55] And has given for their Armes, Argent 3 escutchons field Gules, p.183. {Quæ insignia (sayes Buchanan) hoc opinor indicant salutem publicam trium hominum singulari in prœlio vi[r]tute fuisse defensam.}[56] {Initio R[egni]temp. Kennethi 3^{t} qui obijt anno DCCCC. XCIIII.}[57]

[Machell's Notes: II.42]

Kendal: charters, marcet, fair.

See Marc[et] in Parchm[ent Book].

{Kendal Charter: see more in the Parchment Book. Mr Farringtons? Sp[r]int}

[II.43][58]

Kendal. Kirkby in Kendalia

{1. Charter of the Free Burgers of Kendal}

"Petrus de Brus tertus. Confirmes liberis burgensibus suis partis suæ de Kirkeby in Kendalia omnes libertates et liberas consuetudines quas habuerint de dono Willielmus de Lancastria avunculi sui sicut carta ejus testatur. Tenendas &c. integre et in pace in perpetuum sine contraditione sui vel heredum suorum, with warrantis." Testibus: {Domino Gilberto de Lanc.; Lamb[er]to de Langtona; Adame de Henecaster; Alano filio Delfini; Rogero de Brunolvisheved;[59] / Randulf de Pattona; Johe de Kentemere; Toma de Howijs; Nicilao de Lee, clericus; & multis alijs."}[60]

{2. The Seal ut Brus his Charter}

The seal is green wax, 2 inch & ½ diameter, having a man on horseback with a sword in his right hand & a shild upon his breast, on which there appears to me a lyon rampant, & is writ about SIGILL … … O C … DERCI.

{3. Fairs & Markets}

They have weekely a Satterday merkat & 2 fairs per annum: Sc. 25 April \ being / St Mark; 28 of

---

[53] 'Dr Hay Master of Arts [words blotted] was made a Dr of Medicine, elevated and decorated in the profession, made Dr in Physic.'

[54] 'Seen in a chirograph deed dated at St Andrews, 10 days before the kalends of October, 22 September AD 1683.' A chirograph deed is a medieval document written in duplicate or triplicate on a piece of parchment with the Latin word chirographum written across the middle, then cut through to separate the parts. *OED*.

[55] For the Hay family's involvement in the battle of Luncarty (c.990), see *The New Statistical Account of Scotland by the Ministers of the Respective Parishes: Vol. X Perth* (Edinburgh and London, 1845), 174-75, quoting the author, George Buchanan, for whom see below.

[56] 'Which insignia (says Buchanan) show I think that the safety of the realm was due to the signal excellence in battle of three men'. George Buchanan (1506-1582), *Rerum Scoticarum historia* (1582), translated by J. Fraser in 1690 as *The History of Scotland … Faithfully rendered into English* (British Library). Buchanan was Scotland's foremost humanist scholar of the period. *ODNB*.

[57] [The family was extant] 'at the beginning of the reign of Kenneth III. He died in 994.'

[58] An unclear pencilled note appears on this page: MS. 'Mr Far[r]ington. Saint Nicholas [two words illeg.] in Felside ab Ecclesia N.W. 2 bowshots.'

[59] MS: 'Rogero de Burrol \ Bruno /sheved … Brunolvisheved'.

[60] 'Peter de Brus the third confirms to his free burgesses of his part of Kirkby in Kendal all the liberties and free customs which they should hold by gift of his uncle William de Lancaster, as William's charter testifies. To hold etc. undiminished and in peace for ever without interruption from him or his heirs, with warranty. Witnessed by Gilbert, Lord de Lancaster, Lambert de Langton, Adam de Hencaster, Alan the son of Delfin, Roger de Burneside [?] Randolf de Patton, John de Kentemere, Thomas de Howys, Nicholas de Lee (cleric) and many others.'

October being St Simon & Jude. And their forthnight dayes continue ~~from St Marks Day throughout the year~~ \ betwixt them. /

{4.[61] Pretended Charter & priv[ileges]}
The[y] talke of another more antient charter from John of Gaunt[62] ~~but nore not so kinde as to let me see it~~;[63] and say they have power by their later charters to acknowledge stat[ute] merchant,[64] & to keep a Quarter Sessions within themselves distinct from the County; the Maior, Recorder & 2 senior Aldermen being Justices of Peace by virtue \ there/of; and that they pay a Charter Rent (as tis vulgarly called) to Mr Topham of Aglethorp in [Blank][65] which was purchased out of the Crown. But (haveing not seen their Authority for any more of their Charters) I can only relate these things upon here say.}[66]

{5. Their Trade}
Their trade consists of \ 1. / Kendal-cog-ware, alias cottons; \ & 2. / of Lindsey woolses[67] or Kendal stuffs, which are otherwise \ called / Kidderminsters from being sold there; & \ 3. / of stockens, which be lately comdup. And all these wares are sent upon to London every weeke by 4 Kendal carryers, which set out from thence every Monday by turnes.[68]

[II.46]

Charity

[1.] [Letter to Thomas Machell from Thomas Gilpin]

To Mr Maitchell
Kirbe Thuer
Present

[II.45][69]

{Ad Kendal town puto et fam. Gilpenandi}[70]

Skelsmirgh Hale: Sep.

Hon. Sr
Your delegent enquirie after antient remarkable passages heare; I remember that a predecessor of ours cald Nicholas Gilpin (Stuard to Mr Alan Belingham purchaser of Leavens) toke a loane[71] of the said Mr Belingham, of certaine Lords Rent belonging to the chapel of St Ann in Kendall, the yearly rent of $3^{£}$ 7^{s} 8^{d}, for the tearme of 1000 years at the price of 30 years purchas. & by his last will dated in 1561 leaves it to 2 Gilpins the nearest of his kinrid; & at their death to apoynt other two of the nearest of their kinrid ~~and name~~ to distribute it to the poore in Kendall, the nearest of the kinrid, and name at their discretion; which dole hath continued ever since from ancestor to heire; and none comed into my hand & Robert Gilpin my brother (none in Kendall) & if you please to place this amongst the rest of your great paines & to let me know if this comes to your hand it wil be a great keinds to Sir

[61] MS: '3'.
[62] John of Gaunt, duke of Aquitaine and duke of Lancaster, styled King of Castile and León (1340-1399), prince and steward of England, was the fourth son of Edward III (1312-1377) and his wife, Philippa of Hainault. See S. Walker, John, duke of Aquitaine and duke of Lancaster'. *ODNB*.
[63] For Kendal councillors' reluctance, see John Thwaites to Machell, Part 2, Ch.1, B. of Kendal, II.11.
[64] 'Statute merchant': bond of record acknowledged before the chief magistrate of a trading town, by which a creditor has the power of seizing a debtor's lands in case of default. Cf. statute staple: a bond of record, acknowledged before the mayor of the staple, by which a creditor has the power of seizing a debtor's lands in case of default. *OED*.
[65] For the Tophams of Aglethorpe in Coverham in the Honour of Richmond, see Dugdale, *Visitation of Yorkshire* (Clay edition, Vol. 3, 1919), 448-49.
[66] See fn.63, above. Machell and his informants appear to have found difficulty in gaining information from councillors.
[67] Linsey-woolsey was originally a textile material woven from a mixture of wool and flax (linen). *OED*.
[68] See *N&BI*, 66, for a list of 354 weekly pack-horse carriers.
[69] II.45 is a small page, 15cm x 18cm, comprising a letter.
[70] Machell marked the letter on II.45 with this heading, translated as, 'Kendal town perhaps Gilpin family'.
[71] Loan: gift or grant from a superior; obsolete term. *OED*.

Your obliged servant
Thomas Gilpin.[72]

[II.47] [73]

[2.] Foundation of Kendal Hospital

This Indenture made the 6[d] of September in the Two & Twentieth yeare of the Reign of our Soverainge Lord Charles the 2[d] [1670] by grace of God King of England Scottland France & Ireland defender of the Faith, between Thomas Sandes of Kirby Kendal in the County of Westmorland Gentleman of the one party; And the Major & Aldermen & Burgesses of the Borough of Kirby in Kendal in the said County of Westmorland on the other party. Witnesseth that whereas the said Tho. Sandes hath gained a considerable share of his temporall Estate by bying & selling of Woollen Cottons commonly called Kendal Cottons & by his frequent trading therein & being mindfull to set apart one convenient dwelling house within the Burrough of Kirby Kendal aforesaid for the use of 8 power widdowes womin successively for ever for to exercise Spin\in/g & Carding of woule & weaveing of Rawe peeces of cloth for cottons, called Kendal Cottons aforesaid; And also for the use of one Schoolmaster forever, There to read & say prayers constantly morning & evening in the said house befor the said Widdowes, & also there to watch & instruct, power chil[dren] until prepared for the Free Schoole of Kirby Kendall aforsaid or elsewhere; And being also mindfull to setle certaine Landes Revenues & hereditaments hereafter mentined, expressed for the better manytenance & subsistence of the forsaid persons & to & for the use heareafter in the presents mentined & declared. This Indenture therefore wittnesseth that the said Tho Sandes for the consideration aforesaid \ & in consideration / of the speci\all/ trust & confidence that he the said Tho. Sandes, hath & Reposeth in the said Major, A[ldermen] & Burg[esses] & there sucesersours & for diverse other good causes & considerations here unto moveing, Hath given sold & concined & conveyed:

[II.49]

And by there presents, doth for himself & his heires give granted & Enfeoffed sold consined & conv eyed, unto the said Major, Al[dermen]: & Burr[gesses]: & there sucessours for ever, al that Burgage & house messuage & Tenement, two Gardens & one Croft \ with the appurtenances / scituate lying & being upon the West sid[e] of one gate or street called Highgat within Kirby Kendall aforesaid, now or late in the Tenuer or occupation of the said Tho. Sandes his Assignes or Ass[ociates]. Being of the Antient Yearly Rent of sixteen shilling all that messuage & Tenement Lands Closes Grou[nd] with the appurtenances scituate lying & being in Skelsmerge in said County of Westmorland commonly called Edgerbank, And the Moyetis\ & / one half of all the messuage & tenement apurtanance lying & being at Wasdallhead in the said County holde of Christopher Crackenthropp Esq. of the yearly Rent in the whole of nine shillings eleven pence latly by the said Thomas Sandes purch. To him & his heires of Tho. Gilpine of Barkergarth within Houldernesse in the County of York, one other messu[age] & tenament with apurtenances lying within Strickland Roger in the County of Westmorland aforesaid; att a place there called Baxton-Holme, together with one fulen Milen thereunto, which he the said Tho. Sandes purched to him & his heires of one Peter Colinson. And also one Close of Arable medow there unto adjoyning with appurtenances commonly called Kettle Croft, likewise also purchased by him the said Tho. Sandes to him & his heires forever of Ed. Holme & James Atkinson. All which

[72] Thomas Gilpin of Skelsmergh Hall acted as Machell's Skelsmergh informant: see II.119-20. Machell wrote a short note relating to the substance of Gilpin's letter in his Itinerary: 'To refer Gilpins charity to [Blank]': Part 2, Ch.10, II.414. Thomas Gilpin was referring to a charity known as Gilpin's Rents, 1561. William Gilpin, steward to Alan Bellingham of Levens, purchased from him rents belonging to the Chapel of St Anne, of £3 7s. 8d. a year, at thirty years' purchase; and by his will, dated 1561, bequeathed the same to two Gilpins: 'the nearest of his kindred, successively to distribute the same to the poor in Kendal, of his name and family for ever.' Apparently the documentary evidence relating to this charity went missing but the rents were regularly collected and distributed until 1804. See Cornelius Nicholson, *The Annals of Kendal: being a historical and descriptive account of Kendal and the Neighbourhood with biographical sketches of many eminent personages connected with the town* (London and Kendal, 2nd edn, 1861), 211-12.

[73] II.47-65: copy of the foundation deed of Kendal hospital, written in another hand with interlineation by Machell. A few words of the deed (crossed-through in the MS) have been omitted from this edition. For another Kendal charity see I.342A.

messuage Landes & Tenements are now in the tenure \ & / posesion of him the said Tho. Sandes his Assignes farmers & Tenaments together also with all houses, Edifices,

[II.51]

Buildings Barnes Stables Orchards Gardens Landes medowes pastures Crofts Curtlags Comons of pasture Turbary Mores Moses Hedges fences ditches woodes and the ground & soyle thereof provledges, Advantages Emoluments Members Jurisdictions & apurtances whatsoever, unto the said Burgess-house messuage & tenement in Kendall afor\said / \ the / said messuage & tenement called Edge bank said messuage Tenement of Barton-Holme, & the said Close called Kettle Croft. The said fulen milen and the said Moyety of messuage Tenement of Wastdall head. and to all & to every the before granted premises with \ the appurtenances / or to any of them belonging, lying or in any wise apurtaning. And al the estate right Tytle Interest use possesons clame & demandes whatsoever of him the said Tho. Sandes, of, in, or to the same evry or any of them with all, Evidences Excerpts Muniments & writtings which he hath or may lawfully come by touc\hing / & conferring of the same, And all those goods \ Utensills of house / hold stufe Husbandry-geare of him, the said Tho. Sandes, being & remaining about the said Burgage house, messuage & Tenement \ mentioned / inn a Schedule to these presents annexed, To have & to hold of the said Burgage house & tenement two Gard[ens] & one Croft within Kirby Kendall afor said, the messuage & tenement with the appurtences called Edge-banke, the moyety of the said tenement on Wastdall head; The said Messuage & Tenement with the appurtenances lying att Barton Holme; with the fulen milne thereto belonging, the said Close called Kettle Croft, And all & singler premises with apurtenences thereby, granted barganed & sold or to be hearein or heareby granted & sold with there or evry of there right or members & appurtenances whatsoever, unto the said Major Alder[men] Burgesses there sucessors \ to / the use & behoofe of them & there \ sucessors / for ever.

[II.53]

Neverthelese, upon special trust & confidence \ & / the intent that all the Rents Issues & profits of all & singler the houses in Landes, Tenaments & [here]diments & other premises with apurtenances, before heareby granted & bargained is sold & shall for ever heareafter from time to time, & truly & faithfully be distributed & Imployed by the said Major Al[dermen] Bur[gesses] & there sucessors forever. To & for of Reparacion & Continuance of the said Burgage \ & other Houses / belonging unto all & singular that be foregranted premisses & paying such asesments as shal be due \ & imposed upon the same / other then are to be payed by the sevrall Leases thereof; And for & towards the maintenance of the said power widowes & Schoole Master of and in that said Burgage for the time being at all times heareafter & from time to time, forever according to the true \ intent & meaning / of the said Tho. Sandes & the Tenor & purport heareafter, in these presen\te/ specified, And to no other Trust considerate, intent purpose Imployment whatsoever. And the said Tho. Sandes doth hereby manifest, publish & it is fuly & absolutely bye the said partyes to there presents condescended into agreed upon, for themselves & for heires of the said Tho. Sandes, And the sucessers is the said Major & Aldermen & Burgesses by these presents; & the true intent & meaning of them \ & of / there presents \ is /in maner & form following. That is to say thear shal be 8 power widdowes wom[en] of the age of fifty two yeares \ or upwards / who have been of a good \ carriage / reputation, also bene exercised in carding or spining of woole & weaving of Raw peces \ of cloth / to be fited & prepared for cottons, aforesaid; chosen out of the \ places / Townes & Hamletts heareafter mentined, That is to say, 3 of 8 wid[ows] to be chosen out of Strickland-gate within the Burrow of Kirby Kendal & 3 other of the said 8 wid[ows] to be chosen out of Stramengate & Highgate in the same \ Burrow / & one other of the said 8 wid[ows]out of the Hamlett of Strick[land] Roger & Strickland Kettle within the Burrow \ of K[endal] / & one other of the 8 wid[ows] out of Skelmerge & Paton in the same Burrow & the like proportion to the places aforesaid for ever heareafter

[II.55]

\ shall be / observed & kept, in chosing any one or more of the said wid[ows] upon the vacancy of the former; provided that if at any time \ when / occasion requires, there cannot be had is chosen if like proportion \ of widdows / out of the places \ aforesaid / as before is specified & intended. \ Then / said number of the 8 wid[ows] shal be made up out of the foresaid places Tow[ns] stre[ets] Ham[lets] in l[ike] \ respect / proportion \ to the aforesaid / as neare as may be, which election \ is now already made by the said T.S. / And it is intended & meant that the power of election shall be in the Tho. Sandes during his life, And after his decease there orders ensuing shal for ever heareafter be observed,

& kept by the Major, Aldermen & Burgesses \ & there sucessors / of any vacancyes, shall nominate duble the number of the widows which are to be chosen out of the place Towns & Streets & Hamletts respecting unto the said Major, Aldermen & Burgesses & \ there / sucessors And that out of the number so nominated & proposed as aforesaid shal chose & elect the said wid[ows] & so many of them as shal make up the said number of wid[ows] 8; & for want of such nomination of the said overseares of the power of the places, that then the said Major Senior Al[dermen] Viccar & Schoolemaster for the time being or the major part of them (whereof the major to be one) shall according their best discretion choose & elect the widowes according to the true meaning of these presents, & every widow hereafter to be chosen shal within a month after the death \ departure or deprivation / or if other of any of the said 8 wid[ows] & there sucessors, And the said 8 wid[ows] elected by the said Trustees & there sucessoures \ shall have assiyned them by the Trustees / convenient Rome & places in that said Burgess house which shall \ hereafter / be called an house of Manufacture for carding & spinning of woule,

[II.57]

\ working, weaving and / making of Raw peces, as aforesaid \ & for their habitation / and also the said 2 gardens to be equaly devided amongst them \ for to manure improve sow & use to their own best / advantage & that the said Romes & gardens \ & the profits thereof / to goe the 8 wid[ows] & there sucessors for ever for the intents aforesaid. And the said 8 wid[ows] \ & their sucessors / evry Saturday morn in evry week for \ ever / have payd them 12 \ pence / a week of lawful English money by the said Trustees & their sucessors by such persons as they shall apoynt out of the Rent Issues & profits of be foregranted, \ Premisses / towards there mantenance & for the better encuragment of them in the work of manufacture, And also shall \ hereafter / have payed them yearly evry year forever upon the Eve of the feast of the Assention of our Lord & Saviour Jesus Christ & upon the Eve of the feast of Penticost 8 pence more against ether feast to make up there \ severall / allowance fouer Markes apece (per annum); And that also that evry widow shall have brought them yearly forever in that week next befor the Nativity of our Lord & Saviour Jesus Christ by the Lessees \ & / under Tenants thereof theire Assigne or Assign\es / of the said Messuage Landes & Tenament appurtenances scituate lying & being in Skelsmerge & Strickland Roger aforesaid: One good horse-load of wood, & unto the Schoole Master (there, for the time being) & his successors, fouer good horse load of wood. Two whereof to be feuel for his \ own / chamber, & two whereof to be for feuel for the Library of ~~well disposed~~ \ where the Bookes of / peple there ~~they may~~ \ to / be placed; \ viz. / 8 loades of wood \ thereof / to be brought by the tenant or farmer of the lands in Skelsmerge, & the other \ 4 / by Tenants in Strickland Roger, And that the said Schoole Master & his sucessors

[II.59]

shall att least evry quarter of any yeare bestow twel[ve] pence in peats, to be for fewell in the said great Rome for Airing that said Rome & for beter keeping \ of / the Books there in place & \ due to be placed / from harme, And that weekly allowances of 12p which shal grow due from the time of death \ departure or / deprivation of any of those wid[ows] aforesaid until the election of the other \ widow / in her or there place or stead, shal goe & accrue to the use of the suceding widows respectively to be elected there \ as / aforesaid, And the said Tho. Sandes doth \ hereby / manifest \ & / declare his minde to be, & it is fully & absolutely by all the said partyes to these presents, condescended unto \ & / agreed upon \ for themselves & their heires & / there sucessours by these presents, And is the true intent & meaning of them & of these presents in maner & firme following \ viz. / That they shall have \ but one / a fit & neat person both for learneing & good maners chosen by the said Sandes during his life, & afterwards by the Major Senior Aldermen Viccar & Schoole Master for the time \ being / or the major part of them \ whereof the maior to be one, / to Read & say prayers unto the said wid[ows] in the said Burgess house evry day for ever att such \ at such times & seasons as in a Table of Order hereunto annexed is set down. /[74] And to teatch children there, in good Literature, until they be fitted for the Free Schoole of Kendalle, or else where. And the aforesaid Tho. Sandes dureing his life & the said Major senior Aldermen Viccar & Schoole Master for the time being or the major part of them. Whereof the major for the time being to be one,

[74] Much of this interlineated sentence is blotted.

[II.61]

shall after the death of the said Tho. Sandes forever hearafter elect ever[y] other Schoole Master of the like Qualification aforesaid within one month after the death, departure or deprivation of the former Schoole master or as sone as conveniently they can; the said Schoole Master & his sucessours to be elected as aforesaid shall have the benefit of one convenient place within the said Burgess house for to teatch, in which shall be called by the name of a Schoole house; And the benefit & use of one Chamber adjoyning to the said Schoole house for his and there habitation, And that the said Schoole Master shal have & his sucessours shall have the Custody & keeping of the Library erected in the same house & shal keep the same decently & the Bookes there \ put / shal preserve as well as he can \ from / inbezelment & Coruption & shal be careful all the orders both relating to himselfe & the said widows (which shall apeare in a Table of Orders hearunto annexed) And all other Orders heareafter to be made touching the said house & the government thereof by the said Thomas Sandes during his life and or by the said Trustees & there sucessours after his death well & truly from time to time; & att all times forever, to be observed keept. And that also the said Schoole Master & his sucessours shall have to his & there owne use & benefit the Remainder of all the Rents Issues Revenues & profits yearly & evry year for ever of all the before heareby granted premises after the weekly allowances \ & / all other if before heareby mentined Alowances for the said wido[ws] the Rent or Rents due to the respective Lord or Lordes out of all the before heareby granted premises the Reparation of the Burgage house;

[II.63]

And the Rest of the house belonging unto all and singler if before hearby granted premises, & such assesments as shall be due for & inposed upon if same (other then such as the under Ten\n/ants or Leases of the Landes & Tenaments in Strickland Roger & Skelsmerge by these presents granted & mentined now are or hearafter shall be bound to Repare & pay \ when / need requireth,) are first discharged & reducted; And that from & after the time the death, departure & deprivation of the former Schoole Master, the said Trustee & there sucessours or such \ person or / persons whom they shall nominate & appoynt shall pay or cause to be paied out of the yearly Revenues & profits of the before granted premises, The said weekly allowances & other the before hearby mentined allowance\es / unto the said wid[ows] according to the proportion in maner hearin before specified. And to see the houses aforesaid kept in good repaire, And it is fuly condescended unto and agreed upon by the said parties to there presents, And the true intent & meaning of them \ & / of these presents is, that it shal not be lawful at any time or times heareafter to the aforesaid Trustees[or] theire successours to charg convey imploy or convert the said Land or Tenaments premises with the appurtenances or any part thereof or the Rente, Issues & profits thereof, or of any part thereof, to any other use intent or purpose whatsoever therat befor hearein is specified & declared, And further it is \ fully / agred upon by all the said parties to these presents, And it is the full intent & meaning thereof that it shal & may be lawful for the said Tho. Sandes during his life & after his decease, for the said Trustees & those sucessours the maior part of them from time to time as they shal thinke meet) to make new Orders for the better Government of the said house Library & Widowes

[II.65]

& Schoole Master & there & his succcessours. Provided always & it is the true intent & meaning of these presents, that it shall & may be lawful to & for the said Tho. Sandes & his assignes at all tymes heareafter & from time to time during his life, to cut down take & carry away all such Timber & trees & other woodes whatsoever growing, upon any part of the before granted premises he shall thinke fit, with free Egress & Regress for taking & carrying away the same, Any thinge hearein contained to the contrary in any wise notwithstandinge.

In Witnesse whereof to the other side of these present Indentures remaineinge with the said Tho. Sandes; The said Major Aldermen & Burgesses have caused the seal of the said Corporation to be heare unto put the day & the yeare first above written. Anno Do. 1670.
Sealed with the Towne Seale & delivered by Thomas Fisher Esq. then Major, for & on the behalf of himselfe &c. in the presence of us, vizt:
William Brownsword
Thomas Jackson
James S. Simpson

Stephen Birkett
George Holme
Richard Appleby

[Machell's Notes: II.66]

The foundation of Kendall hospital with the library.
See the Gassendus de libra et Asse Romana.[75] Dr Gray.[76]
See the B. of pedegrees.

The [shield upon the] hospital at Kendal
S
T K
1661[77]

[II.67]

Constitutions & Order Table Observed in the Hospital

Every sister:
To hold her place onely during pure viduity[78] & exciser spinning & carding & making of raw whites (sine impedimento legali).[79] Not to be absent all night out of the house without the like cause – and to be 2ce at prayers every day (except Sunday & holidays when they shal goe to church) to hear divine service read by the schoolmaster without like cause to be allowd of by the said Reader and to behave her selfe decently & reverently \ otherwise. / For the 3[rd] offence in any of these cases (after 2ce admonition given by the founder or feoffees in trust \ she is / to be deprived.

Item. That none of them fall out with or abuse one another but be assistant both in sickness & health, nor shal lock or open one anothers dooers without consent but in case of great danger.
Item. By turns to cleanse the streat & backside of the house every week. & every one to cleanse their owne dooers. Nor no uncleanness by them or the Master, Sc. subpoena deprivationis[80] after 2ce admonition & to husband \ dress / \ cultivate / their gardnes every year upon pain of forfeiture: to the most careful \ widow / by the judgmente of the persons aforesaid.

Item. That they have no reteine[rs] unless one in som case of necessity & that a female to allowd of when they are sick by the said partyes upon pain of deprivation; if not removed within a fortnight after notice give by &c.

Item. The fore dooer not to be opened till 6 a clock in the morning betwixt the 11th March & Michael[mas] nor stand open betwixt that spacke after 7 a night. And from Michaelmas

[II.68]

till the 11th of March – not to be opened before the day breake, nor unshut after the day is gon; unless upon extraordinary occasion at the discretion of the schoolmaster subpoena deprivationis.

Item. That the schoolmaster & his successors be payd afore hand half a years rent for distributeing to the widows accord[ing] to the grant, for which at his first enterance he shall give good security to the said persons to distribute the salary. And that what remains with him over & above not disposed of as it ought to bee, shal be deliverd to the said persons to be deliverd in case of a vacancy to the succeeding schoolmaster to be distributed according to the donors intent.
And what shall in charity be given to ~~any of~~ the said widdows joyntly shall be deposited in the Poore mans box in the said house & divided without partiality amongst them \ & the schoolmaster / on Xt

[75] Pierre Gassendi (Petrus Gassendus), 1592-1655; philosopher and scientist. Machell was referring to the weight of Roman coinage. Gassendi's attempt to ascertain the value of the Roman libra using a congius (a measure for liquids containing the eighth part of a Roman amphora, or about seven pints. *OED*), is described in Antoine-Yves Goguet, *The Origin of Laws, Arts and Sciences, and their progress among the most ancient nations Vol. III* (Edinburgh, 1775), 252-53.
[76] Dr Gray: Dr Haius. See II.41, above.
[77] In the MS, this is placed within a shield.
[78] Widowhood.
[79] 'Without legal impediment.'
[80] 'Upon pain of deprivation.'

Eve, & the eve of Penticost. & 6d per Quarter to \ be / deteined out of their salary towards bying of \ blew / gownes for Sundays & holliday; & what is awanting to be made up by the schoolmaster & Reader [with] forth of the overplus, of the revenues and rents isueing out the lands – which at the departure of any of them is to goe to her successor.
The schoolmaster carefully to reade divine service 2ce every day in the schoolhouse \ sine impedimento legali[81] / at 7 in the morne & 5 in the evening twixt Easter & Mich[aelmas] & at 9 in the m. & 3 in the Evening from thence til Easter except Sundays & holydays when he & they are to goe to church. & to instruct them in the Principles of Religion & holy living & shall (& to) teach poore boys gratis to write & read, to keep the\ booke[s] in the / library & a catalogue of them – & suffer men of

[II.69]

quality to have free accesse to, & study \ & peruse / any booke therein, & register the names of succeeding benefactors.

Item. To inform of any offence don by any of the wid[dows] & keep the manufacture in good repare, & the messuages belonging thereto, which the under tenants are not bound to repare, & pay the wid[dows] their sallarys – and the chiefe lords of these lands their rents, & such Sesses as shall fall due for him.
And these orders \ to be read (I sup[pose]) / to the widdows monthly; & if he offend against the said orders he shuld be punished according to the merit of ~~his~~ \ each /offence, \ or / by Deprivation by the judgement of the said Mr Sands and after his Death the major part of the feofees.

Item. For Strickland Roger, St. Ketle, Skelsmerge & Patton (whence the lands lye which belong to this Hospital) when occasion shal be of Electing a wid[dow] forth of the said places – if there be not in them a \ widdow / qualified according to the orders of the house / the trustees may choose ~~out~~ \ forth / of ~~either~~ \ any of these / places, a single woman aged above 50 of good demeanure & reputation, & that worketh wool &c. ~~&~~ \ who is / not to mary. Subpoena deprivationis.

Item. That the apparel, beding & household-stuf of any ~~widow~~ \ person /dying within the said H[ospital] (or so much as possibly can be spared by the next of kin) shall remane to the successor or so much \ of them / as such person shal need – she paying for them as the rest of the widows shall appoint & judge fit.

[II.71]

Kendal Castle

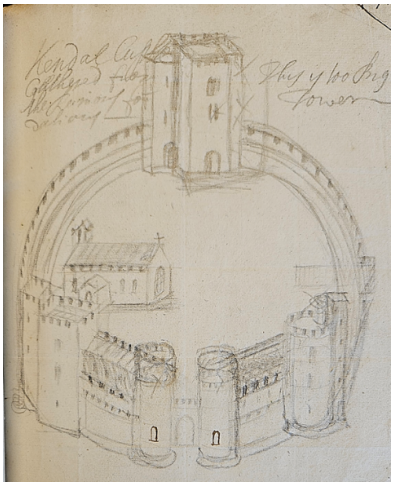


Figure 2.2.19. Kendal Castle. II.71.

[81] 'Without legal impediment.'

Gathered from the Ruines Foundations. This is too big a Tower.[82]

[II.75][83]

This place has been honoured by give Title both to D[ukes] E[arls] & Barones.
The Duke of K. was the fowerth son of James Duke of York, afterwards King of England.[84]

> Cambridge is Dead & Kendals Rideing Post.
> What fitter sacrifice for Denham[s] ghost.[85]

{Spoken upon occasion of som injury don De[n]ham even unto death*.}

The Earles were 3.
Sc. 1. John Duke of Bed[ford`] was by his br[other] King Henry the Vth made Earl of Kendal.[86]
2. John Duke of Som[er]set.[87]
& 3. John de Foix (of that illustrious family of the Foxes[88] of France) who King Henry the VI advanced to that honour for his faithful service in the French wars. Whence perhaps it is that som of this family yet in France are called de Candalia.

{Kendal Castle. Caput Baroniæ}[89]
These were only titular but the barons were purely her owne†; the \ 1[t] / of which is said to have bin Ivo Talbois – whose descendent William, by the consent of King Henry 2. called him selfe Will[iam] de Lancaster. Whose nece & heiress married Gilbert the son of Roger the son of Reinfrid. By whose daughter (the son of William being dead) the inheritance passed to Peter Brus Lord of Skelton, & Will[iam] Lindesay – from whom by the mothers side Ingelramus, Lord of Couscy in France, is said to be descended, by the account which we meet with in the History of Furness Abby. {See in the Inq[uisition] This Ingelramus maryed King Ed. the [blank] d[aughter] & was to have part of Kendal.} But by the daughter of Peter Brus, this Barony came to the Rosses of Werke; and by them the Honour lay

[Machell's Notes: II.75]

*de q. qu[ery]?}[90]

---

[82] Machell's comment on his sketch of Kendal castle.
[83] Also numbered p.19.
[84] The Duke of Kendal (1666-67), third son of James II and his wife, Anne Hyde, died aged only 10 months.
[85] This epigram was written by the poet Andrew Marvell (1621-1678), see G.A. Aitken (ed.), *Satires of Andrew Marvell, sometime Member of Parliament for Hull* (London and New York, 1892), 62. Marvell disliked the Earl of Clarendon and his son-in-law, the Duke of York; the lines were published after the death of the Duke of York's infant son (the Duke of Kendal) in May 1667, and during the grave illness of another young son (the Duke of Cambridge, who died in June 1667). The 'ghost' was that of Lady Denham (wife of Sir John Denham (1614/15-1669), surveyor general of the works), with whom the Duke of York was having an affair. When she was said to have been poisoned by drinking a cup of adulterated chocolate, Marvell accused the Duchess of York of the crime (though John Aubrey claimed that she was poisoned by the Countess of Rochester). See an account in the *Spectator*, 15 February 1873, 210. The Duchess of York was said to be haunted by the ghost of Lady Denham, and is rumoured to have bitten off part of her tongue in fear during the ghost's visitation. See Brendan O. Hehir, *Harmony from Discords: A Life of Sir John Denham* (Berkeley and Los Angeles, 1968), 207.
[86] John of Lancaster (1389-1435) was the third son of Henry IV. On 16 May 1414, he was created Duke of Bedford and Earl of Kendal, and on 24 November, Earl of Richmond. See J. Stratford, J., 'John [John of Lancaster], duke of Bedford (1389-1435), regent of France'. *ODNB*.
[87] John Beaufort (1401-1444), duke of Somerset, won favour from Henry VI, who saw him as a surrogate leader of the 'royal' army in France and awarded him the Barony of Kendal with lands to the value of £400 per annum. See G. Harriss, 'Beaufort, John, duke of Somerset, magnate and soldier'. *ODNB*.
[88] MS: 'Fuxes'. Jean de Foix (c.1415-1485), knight of the garter, was Captal (ruler) de Buch in Gascony; he was made first Earl of Kendal (Gallicised into 'Comte de Candalle') for services to Henry VI in France during the Hundred Years' War. See Douglas Richardson, *Plantagenet Ancestry: A Study In Colonial And Medieval Families* (Baltimore, 2nd edn, 2011), 284.
[89] 'Chief seat of the barony.'
[90] 'Of which, query.'

†{e Camdeno ni fallor.}[91]

[II.77][92]

in the Right of Inheritance, the Honour descended upon the Parrs whose Castle opposite to the town (the River Kent running betweene them) was grown old & decayd in Camdens time: & nothing now, but the carcass of it, is to be seen.[93] This castle is the Caput Baroniæ which has descended &c. ut ante.[94] And of this house was Katherine Par Queen of England, the 3 & last wife to King Henry the VIII.

Kendal Castle ~~now~~ \ was lately / in the hand of Sir Charles Anderton of Lostock in Lancashire.[95] Purchased of Lord Herbert, Marquess of Westm'land,[96] with the Parkelands adjoyneing thereto ? of George Walker of Kirkland Ralf*.[97]

The Marquess of Westm'land is now Duke of Burford.[98] [Informant] Mr Shepherd.[99]

{Church}

A large church with ~~an H~~ 4 r[ows] of pillars viij in a range – 3 of which make up the chancel which has consisted of iiij heretofore. An high steple with 5 noble bells†.

{Dedication}

The greatest bell is called St Michael {ergo the church‡. The rush bearing is St James⸸, & on that day they set up their poll.

{Beacon}

On the top of Dobfrier - on the W. side of the town: blewish gray-marble there for grave stones. All there Porise limestone.[100] No freestone nearer than Hutton Roofe. Blew slate from Kentmer & Ambleside. Gravel.

[Machell's Notes: II.77]

*?

†Mon[uments] & monumentall inscriptions, see in my papers – as also the length and breadth.

‡So, at Apalby: their greatest bell was calld St Lawrence. Which was lately cast into the least. Send to see the inscription about it?}

⸸ideo q.[101]

Q? of Mr Joseph Dawson, when and where the swallows!

---

[91] 'Out of Camden, unless I am mistaken.' Machell is correct: see *Britannia* tr. Holland (1637), 759D-E.

[92] II.77 is also numbered p.21.

[93] 'As for the Castle, the ancient Seat of these Lords, standing over against the towne, it runneth to decay through age and neglect.' Camden, *Britanni*a tr. Holland (1637), 759E.

[94] 'As before.'

[95] Sir Charles Anderton, 2nd Baronet, was born in 1657, the son of Sir Francis Anderton, 1st Baronet, and Elizabeth Somerset. He succeeded as the 2nd Baronet of Lostock, Lancashire on 9 February 1678 and died on 30 December 1691. http://www.thepeerage.com/p12319.htm.

[96] There were close familial relations between the Parrs and the Herberts. Anne Herbert née Parr (c.1515-1552), countess of Pembroke, was the second daughter and youngest surviving child of Sir Thomas Parr (1478-1517) and Maud Green (1492-1531). Her elder siblings were Katherine (Queen of England) and William Parr (Marquess of Northampton). Sometime after November 1537, Anne married William Herbert (1506/7-1570), second son of Richard Herbert (d.1510) of Ewyas, Wales, a gentleman usher to Henry VII. Within months of the marriage of Henry VIII and Katherine Parr, William Herbert received a knighthood, and, with Anne, was granted estates in Wiltshire. The Herbert star was to rise. In 1551 Herbert was made lord lieutenant of Wales, and next day was promoted to Earl of Pembroke. See N. Sil, 'Herbert, William, first earl of Pembroke (1506/7-1570).' *ODNB*. See also, S. James, 'Herbert [née Parr], Anne (c. 1515-1552), countess of Pembroke. *ODNB*.

[97] The transcription, 'Ralf', is insecure.

[98] On 18 September 1691, the Hon Sir Vere Fane (1645-93) of Apethorpe, Northamptonshire, and Mereworth, Kent, succeeded his half-brother, Charles (1635-1691), as fourth earl of Westmorland, http://www.historyofparliamentonline.org/volume/1690-1715/member/fane-hon-sir-vere-1645-93. His father, Mildmay (1602-1666), was the first of the family to be styled Lord Burghersh. See S. Wright, 'Fane, Mildmay, second earl of Westmorland (1602-1666)'. *ODNB*.

[99] For 'Mr Shepherd', see Part 3, Ch.2, Correspondence, I.525-26.

[100] Porous limestone.

[101] 'For this reason, query.'

[II.369B]

[Civil War at Kendal, 1646][102]
And in the breakeing out of the Civil War circa Anno 1646 – when the soldjers cast a Trench upon the Top of the Mound \ at Kendal, / they found in the earth som broken pieces of Musquet Barrells which confirmes my opinion that it was cast up as a Mount or Battery against the Castle.[103]



Figure 2.2.20. Mound at Kendal. II.369C.

[II.122]

[Machell's Checklists][104]

See in Kendal
X Docker Hall which q? & John the Philos!
? Mr Farringtons Narrative about the Sprint River.
X Thornbur Arms.
X Inscription Dr Gray.
Si[?][105] write.
Most knowing men.
q. Strange Aciden[t]s by Thunder or any curiosityes.
? Epitaph ad Hersham. Mr Green farmer.
X Families in the Chapels of Kendal.
The Method from Hersham or Bemol[106]– consider curiosityes before descents of Manner is the Better way.
X Mr Mayor Church Benefactor.
Fam[ilies] in the chaples of Kendal.
Hospital Monuments.
Bensons House Adjoyneing the wall.



Figure 2.2.21. Kendal Church. 'In Strickland, quier window'. II.122.

[102] This date appears historically incorrect because the First Civil War began in 1642. The numeral '6' has been created by heavy overwriting of some other digit. The reason for this is unclear.
[103] Roger Bingham suggests that the event Machell described here probably took place in the autumn of 1643, Roger Bingham, *Kendal, A Social History* (Milnthorpe, 1995, reprinted 1996), 354.
[104] This note page has been used as a check list; many of the entries have a cross beside them. X appears to denote a task completed.
[105] Unclear word.
[106] Unclear, shortened word. Bethom (Beetham)?

	X Kendal Church – p.12. 13	4^s 6^d & 4^s & 2^s
Lancashire Road	X Natland p.23	4
	X Crosscrake p.25	0: 1^s 6^d
	X Hutton Ch. p.27	0: 2^s 6^d
	X Preston Church in Burton p.2	
	- ~~Christopher~~[107] ~~Hopkings at Holm~~	0: 2^s 6^d
	X Levins & 10 Sizars. Ibid.	

Item.
K. Loansdal \ in Bundello / Bethom \ in Bund. / \ Dallan Tower /Hersham. Crosthwate in Bundello.[108]

Cockermouth Road	Burniside 31
	Staveley p.51.
	Ings p.53
	Ambleside in Gresmire p.33
	Windermere \ parish & in Bundello / p.35
	X Crooke Church p.37 a. b.
	X Winstar – Winstardale
Penrith Road	Selside Chapl. 39.
	Longsleddal q? Ch. – 41.
	Kentmer Chap. p.43.
Apalby Road	Grarig p. 45. Lamrig & in Bundell
	Underbarrow 47. a. b.
	Ings Chaple p.49} Ings & Hugill
	Witherslack p.22. P.

Guide – 0: 5: 0 &

Dokar & Dillikar Referend p.47
Skalethwate Rigg Ref. p.49
Skelsmergh & Patton p.51.

[II.77]

So much for Kendal. Now to chapples which are in this parish.

[107] MS: Xt.
[108] In bundello: 'in a bundle.'

Part 2. Barony of Kendal

[Chapter 3i. Parish of Kendal: Burneside]

Burnaside Chapel & Hall

[II.91][1]

Initial Notes
Burnaside Chapel & Hall, 2m. ab Ecclesia N.W. & by N.
Fam[ilies]. Strickland Roger [&] Strickland Kettle} 72.
In Casting Lotts, those that get the worse (in this Barony) say the[y] have got Kettleside – But if it relates to this place is not known.

[Burneside Chapel]

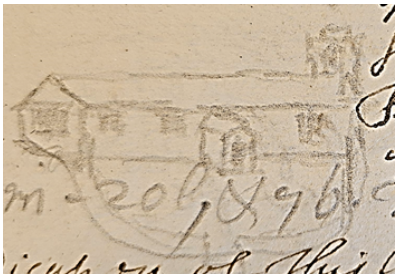


Figure 2.3i.1. Pencil sketch of Burneside Chapel. II.91.

Within, 20 L[ong], & 7 b[road]. Tis boarded & in pretty good Re[pair]

1. Dedication
The Dedication of this chapel is not known, nor can it be discovered. Q. of the churchwardens in the chest. There is a well, now calld the millers, formerly St Oldswalds[2] well {a Capella 30 yards N.E. but the bell is St Gregory. Ed. Tovey Schoolmaster – no salary – has his vic[tuals] and get 30 per Annum.}[3]

[2. Places in the Chapelry]
There is the foundation of a chapel scarcely discoverable at a Place called Chaple le Wood[4] near Hundhow – a Capella 1m. N.W. & from the Hall 1m. W. \ There is Tenant right house, formerly called Strickland now Godmond Hall, near unto it, which has an Old Tower.
Both side of the cappelry are calld Strickland, yet when they are particularly mentiond, that on the S. Side is calld Strickland Keattal, that on the N. Strickland Rogeras. But when you speake of the Chapelry it is calld by one name, Burnaside Chapelry.

[3. Endowment]
The Chaplin is Mr Alex. Farington (Schoolmaster of Kendal. It hath noe house belonging it but an Ancient Sallary of about 6 li per Annum, q[uery]of Mr Farrington.)[5] Antiently, 20 nobles, lay'd upon the Chaplery by seates ~~in the quire~~.[6]
Burnsite seat 10s.

---

[1] Also numbered p.31. a margin comment in Machell's hand states, MS. 'N.B. See Staveley Chapel in the parish of Kendal & mem[orandum] the elaf skin.'
[2] The church is dedicated to St Oswald.
[3] '30' is unaccompanied by any information on its value.
[4] Chapeltree Wood: Smith, *Place-Names 1*, 158.
[5] Alexander Farington, born c.1660, son of Lawrence Farington of Preston; graduated Oxford BA 1680; headmaster of Kendal Grammar School aged 21 in 1681 until after 1691; vicar of Penrith from 1695 until his death in 1699. CCED; see also *OAD*, although both fail to record Farington having been chaplain at Burneside.
[6] A noble was worth 6s 8d (a third of a pound).

[2.] The next seat ~~9s & […]~~
3. 1 & 6 an house.[7]
Next xvi[d]. Next 14[d]. Next 10. & so on to the lowest seates, which are 4[d] a seate for man & wife.

The people has the Recommendation and the vicar the Approbation of a Chaplain. But they give a voluntary augmentation for Preaching & 5 markes per Annum out of Lands in Stavely, given by Mr Rob. Kitchen, Alderman of Bristol, for a preaching minister; for defect to a Decon; for [defect] to a School; for def[ect] to the poore: \ a / tradition.
{Sir Barthol. Jennings, in Memory – a Reader only.}

[4. Tithes]
For Corne they pay Meale Silver to the farmers under Trinity College, being Sir John Otway;[8] Hay Silver to the Vicar with their Easter Reconinges & all other smal Tithes.[9] Wool in kinde to Rectory. For a Tithe Lamb, a prescription of 14d – (5 is 7d and 6 is 1s.)[10]

[The Chapelry]

{5. Bounds}*
It is Bounded on the E. with ~~Grarig divided~~ Skelsmegh – by the Bounder there taken; on the S. with the precincts of the mo[ther[church to the Lib[erties] of Kendallà from which tis divided by Acke End Sike; on the west with Underbarrow (?) divided by Caple rig†; on the N. with Crooke & Long Sleddall.

Machell's Notes: [II.91]

{*N.B. Tho. Dennison of Lo\w/thwate late Balif: Hook nosed, my kinde & ingeniouse Landlord & informer.}

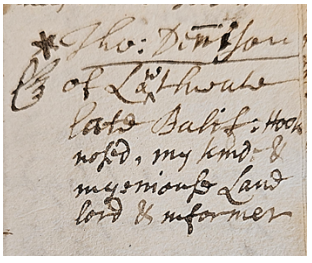


Figure 2.3i.2. Thomas Dennison. 'Hook nosed, my kinde & ingeniouse Landlord & informer.' II.91.

[II.92]

{Lords of the Marquess foe & Richmond foe, Lumley foe.}[11]
He[12] sayes the last of the Lancasters, Baron[s] of Kendal, had Isue 4 daughters (the Booke shews their names), whereof one dyed unmaryed. The other 3 were: one of them maryed to the Duke of Richmond, & those that held under him were calld Richmond foe.[13] Another to the Marquess of

[7] The numerals here are unclear.
[8] For Sir John Otway see Part 2, Ch.4, Beetham, II.278.
[9] Meal-silver: see the English Glossary,
[10] In the margin here, Machell listed more headings which he incorporated into text on II.92-94.
[11] William II de Lancaster (d.1184) left a daughter, Helwise, who married Gilbert Fitz-Reinfred. Their son, William, assumed his mother's name, de Lancaster, but failed to produce an heir, so in 1246 the barony descended through his sisters to his nephews, Peter de Brus (d.1272) and Walter de Lindsay (d.1271). The Lindsay half of the barony became known as the Richmond Fee, while the Brus share was further divided to become the Marquis and Lumley Fees. See Sarah Rose, 'The Barony of Kendal', *CW3*, 15 (2015), 45-56.
[12] Presumably, Thomas Dennison.
[13] In 1531/2, John, Lord Lumley, agreed with Henry VIII to exchange his part of the barony for land in the South. Henry granted the Lumley lands to his natural son, Henry Fitzroy, duke of Richmond. See Rose, 'Barony of Kendal', *CW3*, 48.

Northampton (forsan Par), and those under him were calld Marquess foe.[14] The third was maryed to the Lord Lumley and those under him were calld Lumley foe, which last was in Bellingham & is now in Mr Graham.[15] Being quarter Barron.
The other 3 are in the Crowne – whereof 2 partes were calld Richmond foe, & the 3 – Marquess foe*.

{Manner Houses and Halls}
There are in this Chaplery = 1. Burneshead. 2. And the Queen \ Dowager / has some Tennants in Strickland Roge[r], & som in Kettle†.

Manner of Burnaside

{Tenants}
The Tennants are generally Customary, Arbitrary & Heriotable: Excepting 4 or 5? that have long agoe purchased themselves to a Fine Certane.[16] {The boones purchased of[f] to a certane sum of money calld Service Money.} ~~And~~ Sir Christ. Phillipson ~~was~~ is called as a freehold[er] of this manner, perhaps for Helsfell; & Mr Strickland for Garnet House. None keeps any Courtes but Mr Brathwate, who keeps a Court Baron at Burnshead Hall. The Queens Tennants which hold 11 or 12 Tenements in Strickland Roger, being Marquess foe, appear at Kendall.

[Machell's Notes: II.92]
{*He has a Booke of it. Richmond Foe. Memorandum: Tis said Katherine Par [was] Borne in Staveley Park; her mother being taken ill a hunt[ing]. Inform[ant] Capt. Leonard Airay.}[17]
{† Strickland Kettle is said to be so calld from an hollow place below the Bridge ~~a~~ near that side of the water.}

[II.94]

{Burnaside Boones}
They pay Hens & Capons to Burn-hall: There were Bellinghams, the ancient Tenants; Knipes & Batemans, which 2 last ran into Bellingham agane; & are now Grahams. Test. Ch. Phil[lipson].[18]

[II.93]

[Burneside Hall]
The Manner House is B[urneside] Hall where the Courtes are kept: which formerly belongd to Sir Roger Bellingham who had a son calld Robert who lived at Milhow by Burnaside hall, where 3 ladyes, his daughters, were borne – amongst whome tis said the Estate was divided. \ This is Tradition only. / ~~Afterwards~~ \ The Ped[igree] sayes in, / it was in the Machells [possession] in the Time of Queen Mary, as the people talke of it yet †.
{2 Pond[s] afore the gate with a bridge betwixt, & 2 Ilands with 2 Plane Trees. Stored with Tench Trout & Eale.} {More game[19] but scarce on Potter fell.}

[14] On the death of Thomas de Ros, the fee passed to the Parr family through the marriage of his granddaughter, Elizabeth de Ros (d.1395) to Sir William Parr (d.1404). The Marquis fee descended through four generations before coming to William Parr (d.1571), brother of Queen Katherine Parr, who was created Baron Parr in 1539, earl of Essex in 1543, and marquess of Northampton in 1547. This division of the barony obtained its name from the last title. See Rose, 'Barony of Kendal', *CW3*, 48.
[15] The de Thweng family owned land in Kendal Barony in the 14th century. At the death of the last male de Thweng (1374), it passed to three female heirs, then to a grandson, Robert de Lumley, and then to his brother Ralph (1383). This portion of Kendal Barony became known as the Lumley fee. It was purchased piecemeal by the Bellingham family. In 1689, Alan Bellingham (d.1693) sold it to Colonel James Grahme (d.1730). See Rose, 'Barony of Kendal', *CW3*, 47-48.
[16] Paid a lump sum for the property. For 'fine certain', 'heriotable' etc., see the English Glossary.
[17] Katherine Parr was born either at Great Kimble, Buckinghamshire, or Blackfriars, London. See S. James, 'Katherine [Kateryn, Catherine] [née Katherine Parr] (1512-1548), queen of England and Ireland, sixth consort of Henry VIII'. *ODNB*.
[18] 'Witnessed by Christopher Phillipson'.
[19] Moor-game birds: grouse, particularly the red grouse. See F.T. Buckland, *Birds and Bird Life* (London, 1863), 81-89.

[Helsfell Hall]
There is another Hall cald Helsfell Hall: An Ancient freehold – Long in the Phillipsons {All the Free Holds & the Lords of Bur[neside] pay Free Rent to the Queen circa 30.}

{Waifes}
{The Queens Balif take up all except in the dem[aine] of Burnashed.}

[II.94]

[Strickland Roger and Strickland Kettle]
All the freehold in Strickland Roger was formerly given by Robert de Mustel to Gi[l]bert de Lancaster for his homage & Service, paying 4^{s} viii^{d} Rent yearely to Lord Gilbert son of Rogeri. And then it was only calld Strickland, without the distinction (from a copy of the Deed).

[II.93][20]

And Halfe a Duszen in Strikland Kettle or thereabouts, being Crown Tenant & of Richmond foe, appear there also: being Customary Tenants & Heriotable, but at Fine Certane. Sc. 3 years old Rent on the Death or Alienation of \ every / Tenant. ~~&~~ \ Rent / upon the Kings Death onely double the ~~right~~ Rent. And these have belongd to the Crowne ever since the Rebellion in Queen Elizabeth Time?[21]
Mr Bellingham had, & Mr Graham now has, 4 Tenants in Strikland Roger; & som in Strickland Ketle. who are Customary Arbitrary & Heriotable, but free from bonds. And these appear at Crooke beyond Staveley at som of the Tenants houses ther where the Lord doth appoint.

[Machell's Notes: II.93]
{(Ambleside Ch[urch] – a Gresmer 2 m ½ N.W.) See Gresmer in my paper – & memorandum, it payes a portion to Kendal there.}
† Query if Fitswilliam never had it for he was owner of Cowan Parke \ Head / \ A[nswer]. / It was Purchased by Mr. Thomas Brathwate a Lawyer. Who has Isue:
1. Thomas to whom he gave Warcop.
2. Rich[ard] \ the Poet / to whome he gave Burnishead. which Richard had Isue Sir Thomas Brathwate who had Isue Thomas Brathwate Esq. the present proprietor.
Poet Brathwate q. what books he writ.[22]

[II.94]

The River (Spri[n]t) from Sleddall ends ¼ m. S.E. from the Chappel, dischargeing itselfe into Kenet ther.

[Bridges]

[Sprint]
Wadshow
Chap-Brig. A wood bridge had below […] abov.[23]
Bitchill Brig.
Another [of] wood, called Brigend.
Another of wood calld Dalend-Brig.[24]
Another below calld Garnet brig: Garnet Stang
W. Sprint.

{Kent}
S. Stram[on]gate: stone
Milbrig W. Kendal
Netherb[rig] stone
Haes-brig by Sisar: stone
Forcebrig: stone
Levins b[rig].: stone
All these last:[25] Kent.

[20] Also numbered p.33.
[21] Machell was referring to 'Dacre's Raid' (1569), a result of Leonard Dacre's 'double dealings' with government and rebels during the Rising of the North. See R. S. Ferguson *A History of Cumberland* (London, 1890), 249-50; see also Machell Part 1, Ch.1, Appleby Town and Parishes, I.341, III.55.
[22] Originally placed on MS II.94. For the poems of Richard Brathwaite (born Burneshead Hall, second surviving son of Thomas Brathwaite, barrister, and Dorothy Bindloss), see J. Sanders, 'Brathwaite, Richard (1587/8-1673), poet and writer'. *ODNB*. Sanders argues that although Brathwaite's works became unfashionable, his '*œuvre* is evidence of a gentleman's literary activity in the 17th century as well as of particular approaches to social and political issues.' See also Machell, Part 2, Ch.9, Windermere, II.319, II.339.
[23] Text is crammed into the gutter of the page here; some words are unclear.
[24] Dale End bridge.
[25] From Stramongate onwards.

{Curiosities in Art, Nature}

On Potter Fell at a place calld Laythwate (an even piece of ground) are 2 Round Cirques of Stone about a Yard above ~~ground~~ the surface of the Earth and a~~bout~~ an Arrow shot distant from one another.

{? A calfe in Underbarrow 6 years agoe, would have sucked with each mouth; which they kild.}

Robert Hodgson the informants former \ servant / is above 100 years of age; & mowed & \ sheard / reaped the last year; & goes a foote to Kendal market.

{Limestone plenty in Strickland Kettle but none in Roger. Rags & Rag slate.}

Cowan Head Parke, had formerly dear as is reported; & there yet remanes the walls of an old lodge. Clean marts & wildcats. The wood demolished all but Rammell – i.e. Garding or Rise.[26]

They digd for Lead at Potter-Fell, but found none but a little white spar.

{Great store of Crevesses in Ackeron beck which comes from Potter Fell to Bowston bridge. Trouts & eales.}[27]

{Sledall. Store of peat & wood. Som Juniper – Laurels & Bayes. Raspberryes. Ble[berryes] a[nd] som straw[berrye]s.}

[26] Rammell? Longsleddale has Ramslack Gill, a ramm = hollow. Smith, *Place-Names 1*, 163.
[27] Crevis or crevice: the crayfish. *OED*.

Part 2. Barony of Kendal

[Chapter 3ii. Parish of Kendal. Crook and Winster]

[II.99][1]

Crooke Chappel in Kendall
15 Oct. 91

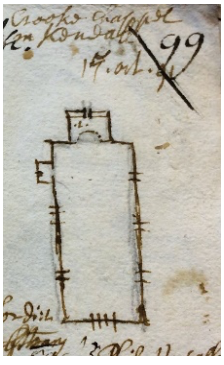


Figure 2.3ii.1. Plan of Crook Chapel. II.91.

{A Curvitate forsan montium circum ambientium}[2]

Crooke Chapl. W. from K. 4 miles. 20 yards long – is 7 broad – a Tower with 1 Bell. In neat repare excepting the floore. Qu. if they bury &c.

Bounded on the S. with Underbarrow; the \ W. / with Windermer Parish; on the N. with Stavely in Kendal; on the E. with Strik[land] chapelry.[3]

{Sall[ary] 3li per Annum – at a Certane Rent from every house. But the Quakers making ill payment,[4] he only receives about 40s – a small subsist[ence] where 4li is p[ai]d for diet.
{Mr Dennison a pretty neat young man & writes a good hand.}

There [are] 2 hamletts in it. One called Crooke,[5] where the Tenants are Arbitrary. It belongs to Mr Graham. Queen none: nor Sir Ch?[6] And another cald Winstar – distance a Capella 1 mile ½ West. The Tenants mostly belongs to John Phil[ipson] of Calg[ar]th.

{Crooke Hall}

{Phil[ipson's] Hall cald Crooke Hall may seem to have bin the manner house in. And it hath som Tenements belonging unto it; but they all appear ~~to inda~~ \ at / Mr Grahams being lately purchased of Mr Bellingham. And this is the Seat of Sir Christopher Phil[ipson].} Sir Christopher Phillipson informeth me that Crooke Hall was formerly called Thwatterden, of which, & to whom it belongd, see more at Windermer in the Account of the family of Phillipsons.[7]

---

[1] This page was written using several shades of ink; it was clearly added to several times.
[2] Crook is so called, 'possibly from lying within the curve of the surrounding mountains.'
[3] Burneside.
[4] That is, refusing to pay tithes.
[5] MS: '~~But~~ One ~~Hamlet~~ called Crooke.'
[6] Sir Christopher Philipson (1646-1709) of Crook Hall; elected to Parliament for Westmorland in 1679; defeated in 1681 and 1685; knighted by Charles II in May 1681; died in debt due to straitened circumstances. He was the last male of the Philipson line at Crook Hall. See Scott Sowerby and Noah McCormack (eds), *The Memoirs of Sir Daniel Fleming of Rydal Hall* from *1633 to1688*, CWAAS Record Series 23 (Kendal, 2021), 450.
[7] See Windermere Parish, II.309A-312, 323, 330-334, 338-339, 343. For another account of the Philipsons, see E.W. Brunskill, 'A Westmorland Family: Fortunes of the Philipsons', published as a series of three articles in the *Westmorland Gazette*, 3 September 1927, 24 September 1927, 1 October 1927.

And to this Hall there are yet belonging 14 Customary Tenants – arbitrary & heriotable – who pay Boones also – as shearing &c. – to Sir Christopher Phillipson [in] person {ipse dixit.}[8]

{Gent. Houses}
Crooke Hall – Sir Christopher Phillipson. No more freeholds.
{Qu?} q. what freeholds in Crooke: how many fam[ilies]? Winstar: how many fam[ilies]? In all 34 fam[ilies].[9]
Which customary tenants – to whom. Where they Answer?
What Manner House, Hall or Castle in Winstar – none.[10]

{Rarityes in Nature}
One Robert Browne of this place lived to 120 yeares of age; of which all the neighbourhood & Sir Thomas Brathwate his selfe \ being curiouse in these things / was satisfied by undenyable circumstances which the man could Remember. He was buried about 20 years ab anno Dom.1672.

[II.97][11]

[Further Notes]

In Kendal [parish]. Fam[ilies] in both – 34.

Crooke Chappel I have, & they talk [of] Winstar-Chappel being an Appendage to it*.
Both Crooke & this has but one chapel-warden, & these pay the Sallary, 4li: 15s: 0d., of which 12s per Annum is in Land; and one Mr \ Rich. / Dixon clames the chaple yard†.
13s per Annum in Stock. The rest is [charged] at so much an house, som paying 12 some 9s, according to a ancient Booke which they have amongst the[m]; now in custody of Richard Grisedal \ now / Curate there.[12]

The Chappelry
The Chappelry Recommends & the Vicar of Kendal Approves of the Chaplain there. And part of the Hamlet of Cartmel Fell \ in Lanc[ashire] / payes to the Chaplain but is not in the Lordship of Winstar, nor Parish of Kendal, but in the Chapelry; it being only for Ease of the neighbourhood, which pay all their dues to the respective Parishes.



Figure 2.3ii.2. Winster Chapel. II.97.

{Winstar Chap[el]
15 [long] 8 [broad]; 1 Bell; a large steple.[13] {About 30 year since the stones fell upon Sunday morning. And som of the stones fell upon ~~Agnes~~ Ann Comston. But she was not harmed.}

[8] 'As he says himself.'
[9] This phrase, written in pencil, is Machell's answer to his question, after due enquiry.
[10] This word is written in pencil – another answer to a query.
[11] Also numbered p.37.
[12] Richard Grisedale: ordained deacon; curate and schoolmaster at Crook Chapel (1692-1733). CCED.
[13] MS: '1 Bell – a large ~~with the~~ steple.'

[School]
6d per quarter of all the chap[elry]. For teaching of the rest, 12d or as they can agree & so doe farmers.}

[House?]
The House is Cawgath in Windermer Parish, a Capella 3m. N., where they pay Boone\s/‡.[14] Each Tenement One. Rents Fines & Heriots. But have a Court Barron kept at Winster in any [house] which the Stuart appointes. Ergo no manor house.

{Bounded}
It is bounded on the E. ~~S. & N.~~ with Crook Chaple[ry] \ in Kendal / to the repare of which it has payed of late⸸, & from which tis divided by the Bounds of the Lordship; on the ~~SW &~~ S.E. & S with Crosthwate in Hersham, divided by the B[oundary] of the Lordship; on the S. West with Cartmel fell Chaple[ry] from which tis divided by the River Winstar which divides the County yet so that Hight of Cartmell[15] payes sallary to it – & belong to the chaple but neither to the Parish nor County; on the West with the Highe End of Cartmel fel; on the N. with Windermer parish||.

{Mr Rich. Dixon & the Schoolmaster, Informers}

[Machell's Notes: II.97]

*q[uery]? How.
† de quo qu?[16]
‡ Shearing & Capons.
⸸{no but a gift given?}
|| {Forsan High End being near adjacent payes to the salary & have rights in the chappl.}

[14] MS: '? The ~~Manner~~ House is Cawgath \ in Windermer Parish a Capella 3m. N. a Capella / where they ~~appear, &~~ pay Boone & Capons.'
[15] 'Cartmel Height': Cartmell Fell's high ground and its inhabitants.
[16] 'On what grounds?'

Part 2. Barony of Kendal

[Chapter 3iii. Parish of Kendal: Old and New Hutton]

[Old and New Hutton]

[Initial Notes]
2m. E. Ecclesia inclining S.
{Ex[penses]: 0:0:3 more.}[1]

Families
Old Hutton 38.[2]
New Hutton 26, a Capella E. ½ m. Hutton ith Hay 35,[3] a Capella ¼ m. N.W.
No freeholds. These 2[4] belong to the Church. Both Queens tenants pay rent heriot; best land good.
Fine 3 pl[…][5] upon death of Queen.

Tithe: Meal silv[er];[6] no hay.
& Holm Scale 14; in Burton parish but in the chappelry & Constablewick of Old Hutton ratio.[7]

[Chapels and] Scholl Endowment
The mother churches are kept indemnify.[8]

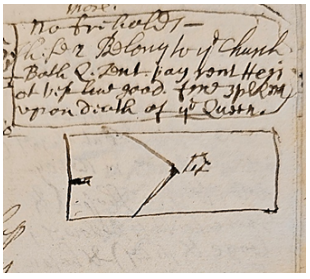


Figure 2.3iii.1. Hutton Chapel. II.87.

Rushbearing – on St James day.
One Bell.
In the Chapleyard ~~at~~ \ near / the West End of the chaple Mr Henry Bateman of Bleas[9] within this chapelry gave Floddenhill to it – worth about 6 or 7 per Annum.[10] And every house payes a proportion according to their Estates, amount to above 5li per Annum, which is the Ancient Sallary time immemorial.

A chappel, at St Sunnendayes Water, W. Capella ¼ [known] onely by tradition. And one ~~at~~ \ near / Hutton a little beyond the Bridge End – And an old stone house has belongd to the chaple with freestone windows & Iron bars with great plankes. {James \ Dawson / has seen the timber on it.}[11]
Bou[n]ds

[1] This appears to be a note of expenses made during Machell's Itinerary; see also Part 2, Ch.3vii, Natland, II.79.
[2] This number has overwritten '26'.
[3] Hutton i' th' Hay: a hay was an enclosed space; enclosure; park. From Old Engish *hege* or *haga*. *OED*.
[4] New Hutton and Hutton ith Hay.
[5] Unclear word.
[6] See the English Glossary.
[7] By reason (of its proximity).
[8] Indemnified against loss of dues from the chapelries, which were semi-autonomous entities.
[9] Bleaze Hall.
[10] Flodding hill, also Floddenhill, was glebe-land. A field in the parish of Kendal is called Flodder; there is also a Flodder beck. See Smith, *Place-Names 1*, 128. As Machell's 'r' often resembles his 'n', this word could be either Flodden or Flodder.
[11] James Dawson was the miller whose ingenious machinery captivated Machell, see below, II.88.

On the East side Killington Chappel; on the S. to Preston Ch[apel] in Burton; on \ S. & / West Crosscrake; North, Grarig chapelry.

The Lordship of Hutton
The Lordship of Hutton onely consisting of Old Hutton & Holm Scale.
Tythe Corne – None but Tithe Meal Silver 7 or 8^{d} for 10li per Annum. No hay nor Hay Silver. Payable to Trinity College & leasd by Sir John Otway.[12] But wool in kinde & xiiij^{d} a Lamb to the Vicar.

Hall & Gentlemens houses
A place on the Com[mon] called White, N. a Capella ½. But no ap[pearance] of any building – But there is a House calld the Town House a Capella ¼ N. which is supposd from the name to have bin the Manner – & now it belongs to Mr Pricket.[13]

[A Lightning Strike]
In ~~Cockhead~~ \ Cocklehead[14] / pasture a Capella 1m. N.E. – where they get Peates or Turfe – 10 years agoe – \ an houre / after a Great Thunderclap & a shower, a streame of lightning came unperceiveably upon 3 men, a woman & a Dog (but seen by others), which struck one man Dead – Rich[ard] Whitehead – & a Dog dead. & the 2 men & woman

[II. 88]

were struck astonishd as dead; & when the[y] came to them selfes, they found them selves burnd in a wonderful manner. The womans feete at the toe \ underneath / & the heal were burnd with the stockings – the shews being unharmed – And their clothes were burned as with tobacko ashes or pale shot. There came out of the wounds \ of the womans toes / like White Sand – Agnas Gilpin, cur[e]d by Mrs Bateman, being the party informed of this; in presence of diverse witness who remember the Accident.[15]

[Becks and Tarns]
Cockhead beck comes from the peat moss by Beathom Hall on the N. of it, & so to Milthrop Sands. St Sundayes runs by Bleas-Hall at the W. side of – & to Milthrop.[16]
Hud-Ridding-Tarne [17] \ a Capella ½ m. E. / b[readth] – 200. l[ength] – 200. Pikes, troutes, which [fetch] 1d & 2d a piece – like charrs. Eales. Tench lately put in.
Lang-Tarn a Capella 1m. N.E. l[ength] 200 – b[readth] 100. The same except Tench – Many pikes & large – som a yard long.

[12] Sir John Otway: c.1620-1693. 1st son of Roger Otway of Birkside Hall, Middleton, Westmorland by his 2nd wife Anne, daughter of John Mayer, headmaster of Sedbergh School. Educated at Sedbergh 1631-36; St. John's, Camb., adm. 3 June 1636, aged 16, BA 1640, MA 1643; Gray's Inn 1638; fellow of St. John's, Camb. 1640-3. Otway's ancestors (Visitation of Yorkshire, 1664), had been settled at Middleton for four generations. Though Otway was born at Birkside Hall, his father acquired Ingmire Hall, which became the family residence. Otway embraced an academic career but in 1643 after rejecting the Covenant he was expelled from his fellowship. He served with the royalist forces in the first Civil War, after which he qualified as a barrister and succeeded in living down his Cavalier record so well that the Rump made him a J.P. and a militia commissioner. As an intimate friend of the royalist agent Dr John Barwick on the one hand, and the brother-in-law of two roundhead colonels on the other, he rendered important services in winning over George Monck and the Irish brigade to the Restoration. See *History of Parliament*, Online. See also Part 2, Ch.4, Beetham, II.278.
[13] Prickett: a lawyer and governor of Hutton School, see Machell's Itinerary, Part 2 Ch.10, II.387. Alan Prickett Esq. of Natland Hall is listed as a recorder of Kendal in 1673, see Cornelius Nicholson, *The Annals of Kendal: being a historical and descriptive account of Kendal and the Neighbourhood with biographical sketches of many eminent personages connected with the town* (London and Kendal, 2nd edn, 1861), 176, 287. See also *AWL*, 239.
[14] Cocklea Wood and Cocklehead are referenced in Smith, *Place-Names I,* 127.
[15] For another version, see Machell's Itinerary, Part 2, Ch.10, II.383.
[16] St Sunday's Beck (OS Grid: SD545885) runs into Stainton Beck. Near Milnthorpe, Stainton Beck joins Peasey Beck to form the River Bela. https://co-curate.ncl.ac.uk/stainton-beck-st-sundays-beck/.
[17] Hoodridding, see *Westmorland Place-Names*.

~~Lill~~ Toft Tarne – a Capella ½ E. l[ength] 150[18] – b[readth] ½ as much. Trout Eales & no pikes. & Cocland water has the same fish.
Ponds.

[In Nature]
Martes of both sortes.
Raspberryes in abundance all over.
\ No / limestone – Blew hard walling stone. Gravel.

[Mill]
{!!! A Mil at Brig End – E.? from the Chap. – 1m. Preast Mill – A most ingenious Mill which does not only grinde on the inside but turns 3 grindestones in the Cog-hole, which is a shop – (& there he has his Bellows, forge & Stiddy[19]) – & has an engine for ~~grindeing~~ Boare of Gunns.} & Rasor-Grindstone & Glazeing wheal.
{In the ~~Low~~ \ High / Mill is a Sweap or Horse, which being made with long Polls & Running on an Axel Tree, takes up a load of corne, as shut of horseback & pulls it up to the Hopper; where opening the poake,[20] it runns in of it selfe and is discharged into the Arke of the Low Mill which receives the meal. And there they have a dressing cive[21] which moves by the wheale & water as of it selfe. And for meldar,[22] a pipe to Discharge unto the outside where a Hoval 2 coll[ecting] fann[s].}[23]
Per James Dawson {Born at Preston nere by the Chaple-cock. […]}[24]

[Bateman of Blease Hall]
They were all in Tenancy, Rent Fine Heriot & dues, but purchased themselves free \ above / 60 years since, to a foe farm as they call it – paying their ancient Rent only. Purchased of Mr Vaughan of Derwen near Yorke, there being no freeholds before. There were 4 purchasers that cheated the tenants – Reserving these Rents to themselves; & within a few years, X or so – they fell into Decay – & now there is not one of those names to be found or heard of. But they sold of[f] the Rent, which was Resold – and at length came into the hands of Roger Bateman of Bleas Hall. Yet they do not Esteem him Lord of the Manner.

Mr Hen[ry] benefactor to the chapel = d. of Mr Rawlinson of [Blank][25]
|
Roger B[ateman] = Knipe. Broughton.
|
Mr Hen[ry] B. = Mrs Allison {1w[ife] Mr Hen. Bateman. 2 wife.}
= Mrs Standard
|
Jane

{Bleas Hall ½ a mile S.W. a Capella., on the Banke of St Sun[day's Beck]: a little house before the purchase.}

[18] 150 superimposes 200: perhaps 200 was an earlier estimate.
[19] A 'stiddy' is an anvil: *Dictionaries of the Scots Language*, Online.
[20] A bag, as in 'poke', formerly used as a measure of quantity, varying according to the quality and nature of the commodity. *OED*.
[21] A sieve, for sifting any dry material, liquid, etc., also specifically for separating the finer from the coarser grains of some loose material: *Dictionaries of the Scots Language*, Online.
[22] Meldar or melder: the quantity of corn taken to a mill by a customer to be ground at one time, *Dictionaries of the Scots Language*, Online.
[23] A hovel was a receptacle for grain; fans were winnowing devices. *OED*.
[24] The rest is obscured by the binding but the words might be, 'watches' and 'joyner'. The passage radiates Machell's enthusiasm for all things mechanical; see references to his study desk, his font-cover, his family nick-name: 'Thomas the contriver', and much more in Part 1, Ch.14, Kirkby Thore and Newbiggin, I.537, I.561, I.563; Part 1, Ch.1, Appleby, III.82.
[25] In the MS here, one other pedigree was attempted, but crossed through.

[Old Hutton School]

[II.88B] [26]

Westmorland, Old Hutton
To Mr Jackson Cheif Master of the Free School at Applebie
These

[II.88A]

Old Hutton School

Sir
Upon the Reseipt of yours & Mr Wase's paper;[27] upon enquiry I found that our School writeings were in Mr Stanfords hand of Kendall, who at that very juncture of time was gone a journey to London, so that I could not possibly give you an exact account till his Return, then upon examination we found something disputable who should be the right governours, for though we had them by our writeings particularly appointed & named, yet the death of some, & others that are become concern'd in paying the school wage (who cannot be properly governours) put us to some trouble in giving you the precise number; but now though all Mr Wase's introgatories are not Answerable, yet as many as are, you have truly given in as follows by
Sept. 16. 76.
Yours to serve you to's power
Edm. Lodge.

1. The Free Grammer School of Old Hutton in Westmorland founded Anno 1613.[28]
2. The founder: Edward Miller of K. Kendall yeoman.
3. Endowed by his last will with 20li a year.
4. The present schoolmaster Edmund Lodge.
5. The governours. Allan Prickett Esquire, Roger Bateman, Henry Wilson Gent, Robert Robinson, William Speight, Thomas Robinson, Mathew Mitchell, John Gathorn, James Dawson, James Beck yeoman. Nicholson.[29]

[II.88]

[Further Brief Notes]
There is a woman here called Margaret Whitefield above 100. & many live long.
{A journeyman for 40d. & 59d. worke.}
{Killington has it fee simple.}

[II.89]

Preston Ch. a Burton 3m½ N. & N.E. See Mr Tim Bankes at Crooklands.
Kirkby Loansd. See 8 E. & 6. S.
The papers Mr Briggs.
Bethom vide p. [blank]
6m. S. & 6. W.
Mr Jackson Dallem Towers.
Hersham 4m. a Kendal S.
Mr Farmer.
Levins.
Sizars.

[26] Letter (1676) to Richard Jackson, Appleby schoolmaster, from Edmund Lodge, relating to Old Hutton School.
[27] Christopher Wase's Westmorland Schools Survey (issued from 1673) was contemporaneous with Machell's research. See P.J. Wallis, 'Westmorland schools about 1676: Christopher Wase's Survey', *CW2*, 67 (1967), 168.
[28] This text is not in Edmund Lodge's hand; the writer was probably the recipient, Jackson.
[29] This name was added in Machell's hand. Nicholson was the curate and schoolmaster at Hutton, see Machell's Itinerary, Part 2, Ch.10, II.382.

Part 2. Barony of Kendal

[II.121][1]

[Chapter 3iv. Parish of Kendal: Ings and Hugill]

Ing-Chappel

{Ings & Hugill}

35 [families]
There is a Ruine of an old Chapl. Calld St Anns \ at / Gers garth, i.e. grass yard: a Capella ¼ N.W.
{Mr Robi[n]son Curate - I was not in this Chapel; neither was he at home.}[2]

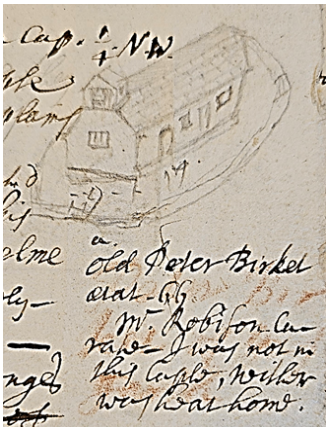


Figure 2.3iv.1. Chapel at Ings. II.121.

[II.121]
It is an Appendant to Stavely chapl where the people have Seates, Christen & Bury, & pay something to the Chaplains Sallary. It was not known by what name it was Dedicated but their Rush bearing formerly was on St James his day.[3] The Bell was given 15 years agoe by Mr Helme of Totron alijs Higher fair banke; \ ½ of / which was lately Mr Gayes – & is now sold to Mr Robinson the curate. The House ~~ner~~ \ adjoyneing / the chapl yard on the West belongs the chaplaine (or curate) & an Ancient Sallary was 7 nobles[4] \ 2: 6: 8 / of which every house payes a proportion on, greater or less according to their seates; which sallary was Augmented with 5 markes per Annum, pay'd yearly at Michaelmas by the Kings or Queens Auditors, and 12li per Annum given by Mr (Rowland) Wilson of \ the Low Hall in / Grass Garth, where he was borne,[5] & who first Advanced the familyes of the Wilsons. This was given towards the maintaineing a Free School at the Ings, in consideration of which he teaching all the chapelry free; without any Quarterpence.[6] But of strangers, he has as they can agree. They pay their corne [tithe] in Meal Silver[7] to Sir[8] the farmer \ or farmers / under Trinity Colledge in Camb[ridge] They pay Hay Silver with their Easter Reckonings to the Vicar = Wool in kinde to the Rector; & for Lam[b] – a prescription of 14d for every Tithe Lamb.

---

[1] Also numbered ~~p.49~~ [crossed through] and p.53.
[2] Written in ink over red crayon. Machell often used red crayon when out and about. As he related, when he visited Ings chapel, the curate was not at home, so he could not gain the information he needed. He returned the following year to complete his task.
[3] 25 July.
[4] MS: 'Ancient Sallary ~~of 5 marke per Annum~~ was 7 nobles.'
[5] For a fuller but slightly contradictory narrative, see below, II.413.
[6] See *N&B1*,140.
[7] See the English Glossary..
[8] In the MS, this word is encircled but no name is given.

{Manner}
There [are] 3 Lords that keep each a Court Baron at their Tenants House – Sc. 1. The King or Queen. 2. Collonell Graham of Levins. & 3. Mr Bra\thwates/ of Burnaside.

{Tenur}
de 1[0].[9] The Kings Free Holdes \ are /
Peter Birket of the House in Grassgarth next to St Anns Chapl (who say all the Hamlet belongd to his Ancestors, de quo que.?[10]) {Old Peter Birket ætat 66.} Roger Harrison – who holds a Tenement in Ruston. {An house at the high end of Garth – east from St Anns about 40 yards, which belongs to Mr Crisp of Low Hall, who had them both by his \ grand / mother – who was Brave[11] Wilsons daughter.} The rest of the Kings tenants are Customary: at Fine Certaine, Sc. ~~2d fine rent~~ \ years rent at / death of the Lord & 3 yeares Rent upon death or alienations, & heriotable.

2. Mr Grahams Tenants are Customary \ at / Fine Arbitrary & Heriotable. Purchasd of Bellinghams.

3. Mr Brathwates are Customary &c. Not known of whom purchased.

The Sh[eriff] Has W[aif] & St[ray]: Q. of Lords.[12]

[II.413]

[**Text added in late March 1693**]

Since this, I visited it in the End of March 1693. And it a good handsom chapl well seated & in Good Repare. All which was don. & the chapel itselfe they say builded by one Rowland Wilson, a Poore boy in this ~~Parish~~ \ Hamlet / who went into the S[outh] to try his fortune, & when he came at London had nothing left but a Groat in his Pocket; yet afterwards came \ rise / to a Great Estate, by the Blac[k]well hall traid, as som \ doe / Report.[13] & disposd of much of it to Piouse uses – for \ he / built (or at least Repar'd) & endowed this chapel in th' Inges, setting upon it for Reading prayers & Teaching School there, most part of the Tenement calld Low-hall which he builded himself. As appears from som sentence writ on the wall in the Best Chamber, where with much adoe I made out these lines, which shew that he was a labourer at first in the County of Kent.

> Thys hous was buylded by me Rowland Wilson Laborer into Kente
> As God had appointed my life to be Spent.
> Being of the age of XX …

By this I hopd to have found out his age – there being som lime daubd over the figures – But (alas) it had broke out before, so that it could not be retrievd agane. & by this it should seem he was only a Labourer. Tis said that when he had builded this house he dined in this Roome all the neighbourhood in a most sumptuouse [manner] haveing wine of all sorts. & that he would not (such was his humility) sit down amongst them, but stood at their backs to serve & wait on them. Thus, God Exalteth the humble & meeke.

[9] 'Concerning the first'.
[10] 'Concerning which, enquire'.
[11] This word appears to be 'Brave'. Presumably, this was Rowland Wilson, see below.
[12] For the Sheriff of Westmorland's claim for waif and stray, see Part 2, Ch.3ix, Staveley, II.414.
[13] Blackwell Hall in the City of London was the centre for the English wool and cloth trade from the middle ages until the 19th century; cloth manufacturers and clothiers from provincial England brought their material to Blackwell Hall to sell to merchants and drapers: see N. Bateman, 'From rags to riches; the wool cloth trade and Blackwell Hall, c 1450-1790: a brief survey', *Post-medieval Archaeology* 38.1 (Museum of London Archaeology, 2004), 1-15.

[II.428]

March 29 1693

Coat-how; Low-hall

~~Thys \ hous / was byelded by Mr Rowland Wylson labourer in Kente as God has appointed my life to be spente being of the age of ȝȝ~~

[II.413A]

{Insert at Vol. 2 p. 413.}[14]

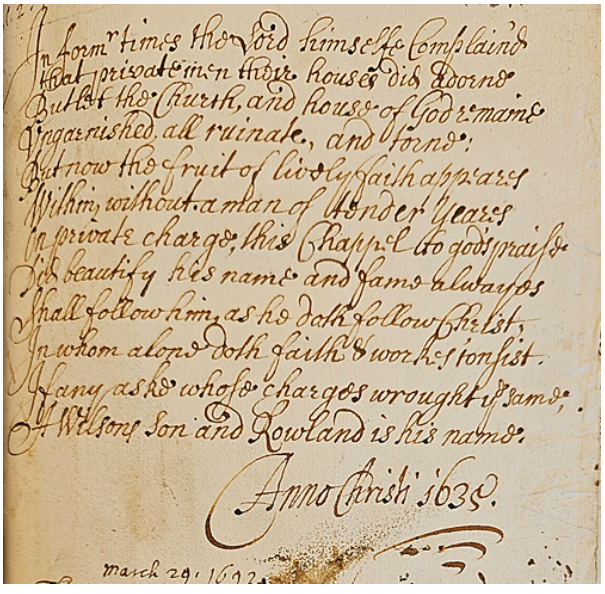


Figure 2.3iv.2. Lines on Rowland Wilson, copied by James Robinson, chaplain. II.413A.

In former times the Lord himself complain'd
that private men their houses did adorne
But let the Church, and house of God remaine
Ungarnished all ruinate, and torne:
But now the fruit of lively faith appeares
Within, without, a man of tender yeares
On private charge, this Chappel to God's praise
Did beautify his name and fame always
Shall follow him, as he doth follow Christ,
In whom alone doth faith & works consist.
If any aske whose charges wrought ye same;
A Wilsons Son and Rowland is his name.
Anno Christi 1635.[15]

March 29 1693[16]

These verses were formerly writ on the place where the Kings Armes now stand betwixt the chancel & body of the chapel; but being obliterated had bin utterly lost, but that they were preserved by

[14] Written later in a different hand. For discussion on when the volumes were bound, see Editor's Introduction.
[15] This poem was written by James Robinson, chaplain. He is recorded curate at Staveley Chapel from 1676 to 1701, and curate at Hugill Chapel, where he was also schoolmaster, from 1701 to 1712. CCED.
[16] The handwriting from this point is Machell's.

Mr James Robinson now chaplain there, who writ them \ down / from the mouth of ~~one of the Inhabitants~~ \ a neighbour / who had got them memoriter[17] when he was a boy.[18]

[II.414]

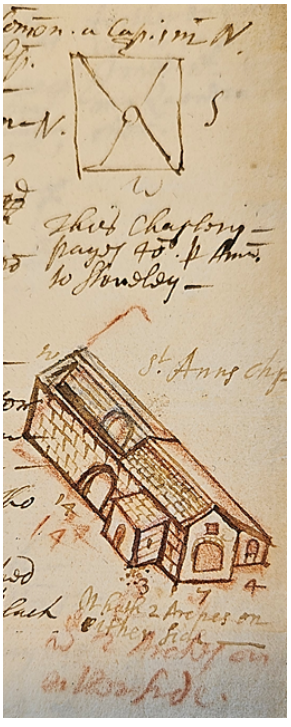


Figure 2.3iv.3. St Ann's Chapel Ings from the south-east; sketch in red pencil and ink. II.414.

[Notes on] Ings Chapel and Chapelry]

It hath 2 Arches on either side.
{This chapelry payes 40s per Annum to Staveley.}
{Custom}
The wid[ows] have the 3[19] of the Personal Estate – and all the tenant right land of her Husbands dureing pure viduity.
{Manner Houses}
None that are known of.
They teach the School at the Chappel Ith Ings.
No hall but Low hall that bears that name. A pond at Low Hall in Mr Wilsons time.
{Bounds}
It is bounded on the E. with Sleddal chapelry. And divided from it South with Staveley Chapelry; from which it is divided by the Bounder of Staveley. On the West with Windermer parish; from which tis divided at Broad gates – a Tenement in Hugill; on the North with Kentmere – divided ~~they know not how~~ by Kentmer Parke ~~parke~~ \ wall. /

[Things of Note]
An heape of stone called White Rayes upon Hugil Common, a Capella 1m. N.
Raspberryes.

[17] 'By heart.'
[18] Traces of further text appear at the foot of the page, but the words have been removed by cutting during the shaping of the paper.
[19] Third.

Limestone none, but fetched 4 miles on Horseback. Ragg enough – Black blew slate – of Rag – a Capella ½ E. at Ruston.

[Things General]
24 li per Annum.
A vi[n]tner gave 190000 li. For […][20] Abby of St Martins in Kent.[21] Had but 4d in his Pocket when he came at London – Lost in a Guiney Ship 7000;[22] & by Sir Thomas Fairfax 7000 lent money.[23]
Qu. of another St Anns in Kendal Town?
To refer Gilpins charity to [Blank][24]

[II.437A]

[Further Queries]

March Ult[25] 1693 coming from Ridall q[uery] Rothydale
Query of a place in Cartmel called Ulverston or Ouston (memorandum: the river Ouse, Ousepit; & a place called Ulsthwate near Ubarrow in Sleddal, or near Kentmer Hall, where the Knipes – Sir Daniel Fleming.

[20] Unclear word.
[21] St Martin's, Canterbury, became a parish church after the dissolution of the monasteries. Possibly, Machell was referring to St Martin's Priory, Dover. In the dissolution events of the autumn of 1535 the Priory was closed; the lands passed to the Archbishop of Canterbury and were leased to various tenants. https://www.dover-kent.co.uk/st_martins_priory.html.
[22] A Guinea Ship: From the 17th to the 19th centuries, slave ships were specially built or converted for the purpose of human trafficking to and from the Guinea coast in West Africa. See John Atkins, *A Voyage to Guinea, Brasil and the West Indies,* 2nd edn (London, 1737), 176-80.
[23] Sir Thomas Fairfax, 3rd Baron Fairfax (1612-1671), born in Denton, Yorkshire. Commander-in-chief of the Parliamentary army during the Civil Wars. https://www.britannica.com/biography/Thomas-Fairfax-3rd-Baron-Fairfax-of-Cameron.
[24] See Gilpin's letter to Machell, Part 2, Ch.2, Kendal Town, II.45, 47.
[25] 31 March.

Part 2. Barony of Kendal

[Chapter 3v. Parish of Kendal: Kentmere]

[Kentmere]

[II.105][1]

{Fam[ilies] 31.}

[Kentmere] Chapel

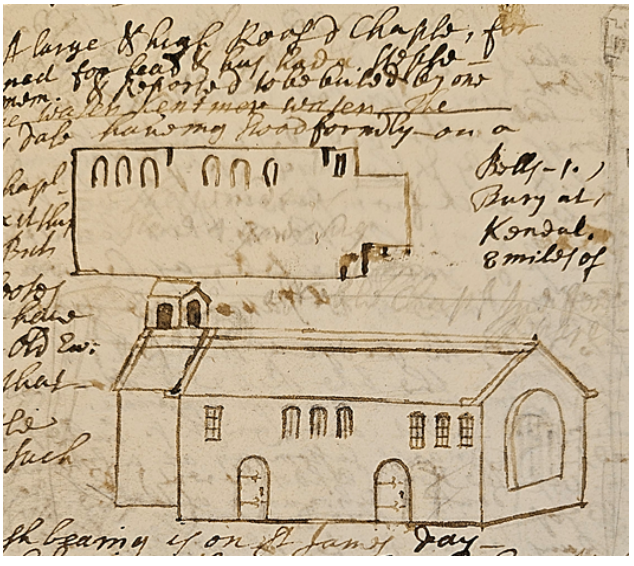


Figure 2.3v.1. Kentmere Chapel. II.105.

Long on the outside 32. b[readth] 12.
A large & high roofd Chaple, formerly designed for lead & has had a steple – but non in mem[ory] – & reported to be builded by one Aray of this dale, haveing stood formerly on a place calld Chapl how betwixt this & the Hall. But this Chapl lookes so ancient, haveing allso an old ewe tree in it, that there is little ground for such reports.
Bells – 1.
Bury at Kendal 8 miles of[f].
The windows stand 4 yards high!
Their Rush bearing is on St James day.[2]

[Reader's Salary; Tithes]
No house belonging to the Reader – but he has the Chaple, the Yard, & a Sallary of 6^{li} per Annum, at 1s every noble Rent. Called by the name of Sallary. The Inhabitants recommend the Reader & the Vicar approves. They pay meal money to the College for their Corne; & Hay Silver to the Vicar for hay;[3] & wool in kinde to the College.[4] But Lamb per 4d a Tithe lamb &c. 1d a sheep for all sold after Candlemas.

---

[1] Also numbered p.43.
[2] 25 July.
[3] Meal and hay silver: see the English Glossary.
[4] The Parish of Kendal was under the patronage of Trinity College, Cambridge. See the plaque outside the parish church, which states, 'In 1553 Queen Mary gave the living to Trinity College, Cambridge.' See also John Hodgkinson, *The Greater Parish of Kendal, 1553-2002*, *During the Patronage of Trinity College Cambridge* (Levens, 2002).

Kentmere Hall



Fig 2.3v.2. Kentmere Hall. Ab Ecclesia Kendal 8m. N.W & by N. II.105.

The Hall is an old building with a Antique Tower standing under a mo[n]strouse craggy mountaine yards from the house, out of which Kentmer water springs.[5] This Hall belongd to 2 Sisters. Sir Christopher bought ½ of Mrs Copley of Hawkside Hall. Mr Carus of Sellet near Kirkby Loansdall has the other in marriage with Judah Nicholson.[6]



At Kentmer Hall in the Hall window: Fide non Fraude

[Key]
1. Or [&] G[ules]
2. Arme & gauntlet Argent.
[Helm] Or & Sab[le]
3. [Plumes} G[ules] A[rgent] g. a. g.
Shield [chevron] Erm[ine] [3 bores heads] G[ules] Erm[ine]
[motto] FIDE NON FRAVDE

It is reported that the 1t Gilpin was a Scotchman, who comeing into Sleddal and killing a wilde-boare there, \ others say in Gilpinbeck which tooke name from thence, / the King bestowd Kentmer hall upon Him*, and that they were great commanders against the Scots. [The hall receives] 42li Rent per Annum†.

.

Figure 2.3v.3.'Kentmer Hall; in the Hall window'. II.105.

[5] A scored-through comment near the beginning of II.105 states: '~~They call the water Kentmere Water~~.'
[6] See Judith Nicholson on the page below.

[Machell's Notes: II.105]

*In Skel[s]mer re T. Gilpin Informant.[7]
†Informers. Stephen Cowpathwate a countryman. John Grisdale Chaplane or Curate.

[II.106]

[The Manor]

{The mere}
{Kentmere Water – alias Braid Watter, & sometimes the Tarne – hath a Boate. It belongs to the Hall – L[ength] ¼ l[eague][8] & 200 Broad – Troutes & Gray Troutes? ~~Pike~~ Eales & Tenches. It hath store of Swans in winter: 37 at a time. Great Store of w[ild] Duck.}

{Kendal from Kent dirives its name.
And Kent from Kentmere's springing fountains came.
Brathwate}[9]

{Kent has 2 Heads – one little one ½ m. west from the Hall in the top of the Clints which runs on the West End of the H[all]. The Other Chiefe head 3 miles North a Capella at a place calld Grove head & Stephens Cross Grove where it may run thro a q't pot.[10] Thence S. to Kentmere (3m.¼) Thence S. to Stavely & Strickland &c.}

{Templehurst [Park]}

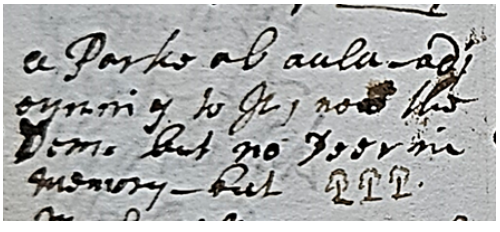


Figure 2.3v.4. 'No Deer in memory - but trees'. II.106.

{A Parke ab aula adjoyning to it,[11] now the Dem[esne] but no Deer in memory – but trees.[12] Marle in ground 2ce 12 sc[ore] N.W a Capella.[13] White clay. No, it will not melt.}
{Limestone all over. Blew Slate 2m. N. a Capella. 1[d] a stone & 16[d] a load. Very fine.}

{! No Orchards \ no / Juniper! Bleaberryes & Straw berryes. Peats with[in] ½ a m. plenty.}

[Bounds]
It is bounded on the E. with Sleddall chapelry fro[m] which it is div[id]ed by the ridges of Green Quarter fell & Hallowbanke as heaven water divides. On the South Side with Stavly & the Ings chapelryes, divided by Black beck from Stavely, & Howgil Ford from the Ings. On the W. It is

[7] Thomas Gilpin of Skelsmergh Hall. See his letter to Machell relating to Gilpin's Rents of 1561: Part 2. Ch.2, Kendal Town, II.45. For the Gilpin family, originally of Kentmere Hall, see Machell's Itinerary: Part 2, Ch.10, II.400.
[8] A league was 3 miles.
[9] This rhyme first appears in Part 2. Ch.1, Barony of Kendal, II.17. The poet was Richard Brathwate of Burneside (1587/8-1673), see Part 2. Ch.3i, Burneside, II.93.
[10] Quart pot.
[11] 'A park extends from the hall adjoining to it.'
[12] Here, Machell has drawn a symbol consisting of three deciduous trees, see Figure 2.3v.4.'No Deer in memory – but trees'. II.106.
[13] Twice 12 score = 480 [yards] north-west of the chapel.

bounded with the Top of Garburne fell, as heaven water divides. On the N. with Patterdale, from which tis divided by the ridge of the fell; & Mardall in Shap by the like Ridges. Noe Hurrocks.

Division [Lordship]
[It has] but one Lordship calld Kentmere – The Tenants customary at a Fine Certain of double the Rent (besides the Rent) but none they say upon death or alienation of the Lord, nor no consent requird to their Deeds. They keep Court Barron at an house of Mr Fishers purchased of T […][14] – pay no Bownes – but heriots, Sc. the best quick[15] – & if none, a competent summ as required.[16]

[II.105]

The Tenants sold to Fisher of Stean Bank green near Kendal.

[II.106]

It was purchased by the Fishers of Stean banke green[17] (as tis said) of Sir John Lowther, called the Gleed[18] – Sc. This Sir Johns great grandfather – & by them? of the Stapletons of Templehurst in Yorkshire (Tr. old men);[19] & so is now in Mr John Shepherd sometimes scholar of Queens College in Oxford.[20]

[Airay and Gilpin Families]

{D. Ayray Provost of Queens, borne at Long houses a Capella ¼ m. S. Gave for a monthly sermon 40li per Annum.}[21]
Oliver Gilpin[22] is reported to be borne at Laythait in Stricland Roger, which place ~~in memory~~ belongd to the Gilpins – But ~~old Barnard~~ old Barnard Gilpin the famous Preacher in Hen[ry] the 8th Time &c. is said to have bin born at this Hall.}[23]

The Hall & Demaine was Anciently in the Gilpins, yet is reported to have bin Tenancy & sold to a Free Rent of [£]10 per Annum payable to the Lord of the Soyle, dischargd from Heriots & all other dutyes.[24]
It passed from Xt[opher] Gilpin, to Nathaniel Nicholson of Hawkside Hall,[25] who daughter he had maryed – from whom it came to his eldest son Daniel – who mary Bridget daughter of Mr Pennington of Seaton– & had only 2 daughter:
[1.] Beatrix maryed to \ 2 attorneys / 1[st] to a younger son of / Mr Sands of Grathwate whose child died: afterwards into Mr John Copley a younger brother of Gosphath near Eggermont – by whom she had – 1. a girle. 2. John. But sold her part to Sir Xt[opher] Philipson. circa 1692.

---

[14] The rest of the word is obscured by the binding.
[15] As in 'alive'.
[16] 'They pay no boons but they do pay heriots'.
[17] Stainbank Green, see Smith, *Place-Names 1*, 121-22.
[18] Gleed: having a cast in one or both eyes; squint-eyed. *OED*. For another possible (negative) meaning as applied to Sir John Lowther, see Part 1. Ch.11, Crosby Ravensworth, III.176.
[19] Traditional lore, remembered by the old men of the chapelry.
[20] The only documented John Shepherd at Queen's College, Oxford, took his MA in 1575; however, a Robert Shepheard, son of Christopher of Kentmere, took his BA at Queen's in 1674-75, *OAD*.
[21] Henry Airay (c.1558-60-1616), an eminent defender of evangelical Calvinism in Oxford, was born, probably at Kentmere, the son of William Airay (d. 1596?) who was either the brother-in-law or a favoured servant of Bernard Gilpin (1517-1583), the Apostle of the North; so-called for his notable preaching and charitable activities. At Queen's College, Oxford, Airay was mentored by Henry Robinson (bishop of Carlisle from 1598) who, in 1599, ensured that Airay would follow him as provost of Queen's. By his will, proved 1616, Airay left land in Garsington to the college; £40 to support the schoolmaster of Kendal; £40 for a preacher in Kentmere chapel; a gilt bowl of 30 ounces to his successors in the provostship; his books to the college, and a number of lesser legacies. See A. Hegarty, 'Airay, Henry (1558/60-1616), college head'. *ODNB*.
[22] MS: '~~Barnard~~ \ Oliver / Gilpil'.
[23] Oliver Gilpin was the fourth son of William Gilpin, who lived during the reign of Edward IV. [1461-1483]. For this and the Gilpin family pedigree, see *N&BI*, 136-37.
[24] The Lord of the manor is the Lord of the Soil of the manor of common right. See J.H. Thomas, *A Systematic Arrangement of Lord Coke's First Institute of the Laws of England…Vol. 3* (Philadelphia, 1836), 458.
[25] See *AWL*, 216.

[2.] The other heiress was Judith Nicholson m. to Mr George Carus of [Blank] & had 7 or 8 ch[ildren] Boys & girles.

[II.107][26]

[General Notes]
Apalby Road Grarig Church.

Fam[ilies]	Grarig	41.
	Whinfell	34.
	Lamrig (parke)	21. q. if in this chapelry.

[26] Also numbered p.45.

Part 2. Barony of Kendal

[II.103][1]

[Chapter 3vi. Parish of Kendal: Longsleddale]

Long Sleddall Chapel? & Hall?

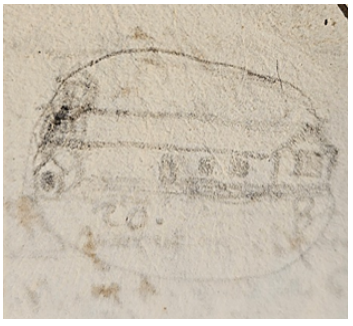


Figure 2.3vi.1. Longsleddale Chapel. II.103.

A fine little Dale wooded on both sides with young trees.
{Fam[ilies] 39.}

[Chapel]
L[ength] 20; b[readth] 8. Bell 1.[2] Good repare all but seats & flags. Their rushbearing is on St James his day.[3]

{Tithes}
For Tithe Corne they pay Meal Silver[4] – everyone a particular sum according to the Ancient Booke – which is due to the College: Sir John Otway Leasor.[5]
Hay money is payed to the vicar with all small tithes.
Wool in kinde: every 10th flees \ to the Coll[ege.] /[6]
iiij is 2d.
V. is ½s.
6 is 1s.
vii. is xii ob[7]
So on ob[8] advance to 10.
Lamb: a prescription of 14d. A Tithe lam – half a L[amb]. And so for od[d] ones, as \ is / of wool.
[Informants] {a. Jonathan Haton chaplaine}[9] b. Xt[opher] Tod.

{House & Sallary} {Out of the B[ook]}[10]
There is no House belongs to the Curate but in former time times there was one on the back side of the Chappl. The ancient Sallary is 5li per Annum known by the name of Sallary. ~~According to the~~ [Chapel goers pay] accord to their forms in the Chaple, the 1 forme being 3s; the 2nd, 2s viijd; the 3d, 2s & 4d; the 4, 1s 10d; the 5., 1s viijd; 6., 1s 5d. (They Generally Cottagers) as 1s 1d – sits as they will.

[1] Also numbered p.41.
[2] Notes written in red pencil.
[3] 25 July.
[4] See the English Glossary.
[5] For Sir John Otway, see Part 2, Ch.3iii, Hutton, II.87; see also Part 2, Ch.4, Beetham, II.278.
[6] Trinity College, Cambridge: the patron.
[7] Presumably, 12½d.
[8] Presumably, ½d increase each time up to 10.
[9] Jonathan Hayton was curate at Longsleddale (1682-1691) and schoolmaster there (1682). CCED.
[10] The Easter Book.

{Patron}
The Hamlet Recommends & the Vicar of Kendal approves.

{Boundes}
This Chappelry is Bounded on the E. with Selside Chaplry; from which tis divided by the top of Hallfell & Whiteside; on the S. with Strickland Roger in Burneside Chapl (Kendal), from which tis divided by the top of Potter fell as Evenwater[11] divides. On the West it is adjoyned with Stavely & Kentmer, from which it is separated by ~~a Wall~~ the outside of Gowderbarrow wall, & from Kentmere by the outside of Cockley fell wall. On the North it is Bounded by Mardell belonging to Thornthwate, divided by the tops of the Mountaines to the Standing Stone on the top of Gate Scarth{q. in what parish.}[12]

[II.104]

{Division into Manners &c.}

{Sleddall}
There ~~are~~ \ is / in this Chappelry but one Entire Lordship called Long Sleddall, wherein the Tenants are generally Customary, Arbitrary & Heriotable: Excepting 2 that are at Fine Certane paying only double their Rent, Sc. Kilstone & Tenterhow.[13] And 3 freeholds, Sc. Moorthwates, Dale End & Nether house – a Capella 1m.½ S.

{Customs}
Noe Boones,[14] being formerly cut of[f] for lack of being furnished with a Bul a Bore & stone Horse.[15] The wifes have all that their husbands dyed tenants of, dureing celibacy.[16]

{Lords}*
The Lords of this Manner were anciently the Thornburrows – sold by them to Sir James Bellingham of Upper Levines: And some, Sc. 5, were the Harringtons of Woolakes in Cumberland.[17] But Bellingham only kept Court Barron here. An Allane (the son of James, the son [of] Alane of Gathorne, son of Sir James the purchaser) sold his Tenements & Royallty to Collonell James Graham.[18] And Harrington has his Tenements still, who neither appear by himselfe nor his Tenants. \ The Kings has som Right in Tenement of Sadgill, and appear at Sta[…];[19] and also Graham.[20] / No Manner house[21] belongs to Mr Graham, nor no Demane Lands except Iron-craw {vulgò Arn

[11] 'Heaven water', a watershed; see the English Glossary.
[12] The site of the margin comment is close to a reference to Mardale.
[13] For 'arbitrary', 'customary' and 'heriotable', see the English Glossary.
[14] Boons and boon-days: see the English Glossary.
[15] 'A bul, a bore and stone horse'. In Scots, a 'stane hors' is a male horse: uncastrated, entire. See *Dictionaries of the Scots Language*, Online. All three here are male animals, needed for mating. If the tenants were not paying boons for the reason stated, it sounds as though it was the lord of the manor's responsibility to provide these male animals (bull, pig and horse) for use by the community (the 'parish bull' is a known example), and the boons were paid in recognition of this. My thanks to Angus Winchester for this suggestion.
[16] In their widowhood until remarriage.
[17] Wooloaks, or Woolakes, at Hesket-in-the-Forest near Penrith: see A.M. Armstrong, A. Mawer, F.M. Stenton & Bruce Dickins, *The Place-Names of Cumberland* 1 (Cambridge, 1950), 204-05.
[18] MS: '~~By Alan, son of~~; And some ~~them~~ Sc. 5 were the Harringtons of Woolakes in Cumberland – But Bellingham only kept Court Barron here. (~~who~~) an Allane (the son of James ~~of Gathorne~~ the son Alane of Gathorne son of Sir James the purchaser – sold his Tenants & Royalty to Collonell James Graham.'
[19] This word is obscured by the binding but is probably 'Staveley'.
[20] Written at right angles to the rest of the text. James Grahme (Graham) (1650-1730) of Levens was the second son of Sir George Grahme, baronet (c.1624-1658), of Netherby, Cumberland, and his wife, Lady Mary Johnston. A favourite of James II, James Grahme held posts at the royal court. He bought Levens for £24,000 in 1688, after which he was involved in several Jacobite plots. He was MP (for Carlisle, then Appleby, then Westmorland) between 1685 and 1727. See E. Cruickshanks, 'Grahme, James, courtier and politician'. *ODNB*. See also, Michael Mullett, *Carlisle in Revolution and Restoration, c. 1648-1688*, CWAAS Tract Series 30 (Kendal, 2022), 143-44.
[21] MS: '~~Manner House~~ No Manner house.'

Craw}[22] may be thought soe, being mostly forrest ground – a Capella N. 1m. & ½ above Little London.[23]
There is another place call'd EwBarrow Hall†, with free lands thereto belonging – which tis said payes 1s per Annum to the Crown. And belongs Mr Harrington, the Lord of those Tenants above specified: But neither these nor Iron Craw lands being tax'd with Dem[esne] in the Booke of Rates, wee know not well by what name to call them. I[24] never Remember waife & stray taken up by any. But the Chief Manor House is Selside Hall, where they formerly did suit & service till the Tenements were sold, the Demane being Reserved to Mr Thornburrow.[25]

[Rivers]
{Sleddal Beck alias Spret[26] Springes in Wrang Dale head, a Capella 4m. N.W. Thence S. on the West End the Chaple [and] Eubarrow Hall – Thence S.[27] on the East of Burniside Hall. & ½ a mile below in Heg Holme it enters Kent.}

[In Nature]
{Store of Clean Marts & fowle; foxes too many. Wild cats = plenty.
Skettles \ Water:[28]/ a standing pool, l. & b. 200, a Capella N.W. 2m. Pikes – Eales, perches or Bass.
Great store of moore game.
Some swans. An Airy[29] of Spar[row] H[awks] at Hall Wood by Ewbarrow.
No Juniper? Nor orchards.
Raspberryes near the Chapl. Bleab[erries] Str[awberries] {Memorandum: Whorlehow,[30] a woody hill}
{Som Free Stone near Stockdale alias Little London.
Plenty of Lime Stone being like wad before burning.}[31] 4 or 6 inches thick & more. Broader than a table, a fine blew, ergo marble.
{Fine Blew Slate} Wrangdale, a Capella 4m.
Plenty of peat but not near.

[Machell's Notes II.104]

*q[uery] of Laburnes ¼ Lords[hip]}
†{An ancient Tower, the walls 2 yards thick. Given to a Godson by the ~~Laburnes~~ \ Harringtons[32] / and so not forfeited with Harrington Estate being in a childe.[33]}

[22] Ancrow Brow: Smith, *Place-Names 1*, 160-61.
[23] Stockdale in Longsleddale was also known as Little London, or Li'le Lunnon: See William Parson and William White, *History, Directory, and Gazetteer, of the Counties of Cumberland and Westmorland, with that Part of the Lake District in Lancashire, forming the Lordships of Furness and Cartmel* (Leeds, 1829), 652.
[24] This letter could be 'I' (possibly Machell's informant) or 'T' (Testators/witnesses); the letter is unclear.
[25] The last three words here were added in pencil. Thornburrow [?] has been shortened to 'Thub'.
[26] Sprint.
[27] This letter is unclear.
[28] Skeggles Water?
[29] Aerie or eyrie: the nest of a bird of prey, especially that of an eagle on a mountain; more widely, a nest of any large bird, especially one that nests high on cliffs or in tall trees. *OED*.
[30] Whirl Howe. In 1577 it was called 'Wharlehowemyer, meaning a circular mound, this being a small tumulus near the Sprint at grid 83–485053': Smith, *Place-Names 1*,164.
[31] 'Wad' is plumbago or black lead.
[32] Unclear word: blotted.
[33] The estates of minors were subject to the Court of Wards and Liveries: https://www.nationalarchives.gov.uk/help-with-your-research/research-guides/land-inheritance-court-of-wards-liveries-1540-1645.

Part 2. Barony of Kendal

[Chapter 3vii. Parish of Kendal. Natland and Watercrook]

[II.79]

Natland Chaple
(See som Notes of Watercrooke)

{Natland July Friday after the fast, 1692}[1]

{Ex[penses]: 0:7. More: 0:0:6.}[2]

Initial Notes
1 mile \ ¼ / ab Ecclesia S. & by East.
{!} Fam[ilies] 33. Buly sayes but 30.
{?} Ward. Kendal Ward – & \ so / all the parish.[3]

[II.81]

{Natland Chappelry in Kendal. This 17.[4] Oct. 91}

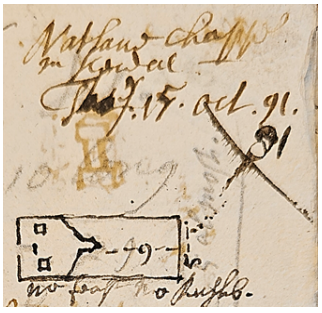


Figure 2.3vii.1. Natland Chapel. II.81.

10 long, 5 almost [broad]
No feast, no rushb[earing]} {? What salary, how raised, who presents.}

[II.79]

{Chaple}
Long 9, broad almost 5.[5]

[1] National fasts were held in England from Tudor times. Fasts were intended to win God's favour and avert divine judgement by staging days of mortification and prayer. An annual calendar of fasts and thanksgivings was established at the Restoration, after which the English were required to gather in their churches three times a year on the anniversary of significant occasions in the country's history. On 30 January they fasted to atone for the execution of Charles I in 1649. On 29 May they gave thanks for the return of Charles II in 1660. 0n 5 November they celebrated the discovery of the 1605 Gunpowder Plot. These occasions provided opportunity for mass propaganda, and after 1688 they were adapted to carry a Williamite message. In 1689, after the start of the war with France, it was decided that a public fast be held on 5 June to secure God's blessing on England's armies. In 1690 a royal proclamation ordered that a fast be held on the third Wednesday in every month for the duration of William's war in Ireland. Monthly fasting was revived in 1691 to cover summer campaigning against France. Fasts were held on the third Wednesday of each month from April to October 1691. Monthly fasts were repeated in 1692 between April and October; in 1693 fasts began in May and the day was moved to the second Wednesday in each month. See Anthony M. Claydon, *Courtly Reformation: Williamite Propaganda after the Glorious Revolution in England* (A thesis submitted for the PhD, London University, 1993), 105-06, 111.
[2] Expenses incurred during Machell's Itinerary in July 1692.
[3] Two notes on Watercrook are contained on this page: 'See som notes of Watercrook' and '{Papers}'.
[4] '7' appears to have been superimposed on '5'.
[5] Note the slight difference in chapel length.

1 Little Bell.
No chaple yard now nor formerly.
A School somes times Taught \ in the chapel / but no Sallary.
There was a chappel formerly which was faln into decay – to repareing of which Miles Troughton of Kendal – a Burgess Cordwender[6] – gave 3. Who only had one Close calld Yorkfield.
5 years since it was repard – this 1692. And som now Liveing can Remember prayers & Seates in the o[l]d chaple and prayers Read their by their Schoolmaster, having 4rge[7] of the P[arish] nothing a Vic[arage].

[Manor]
No court service.
Tythe ~~hay &~~ Corne in Kinde in dry Stooke. No Hay – nor nought for it.
Peates at Sinderbarrow 3m. west a Capella.
Iron tis thought in Helm or Natland fell ½ q. of m. a Capella E.

[Seals]

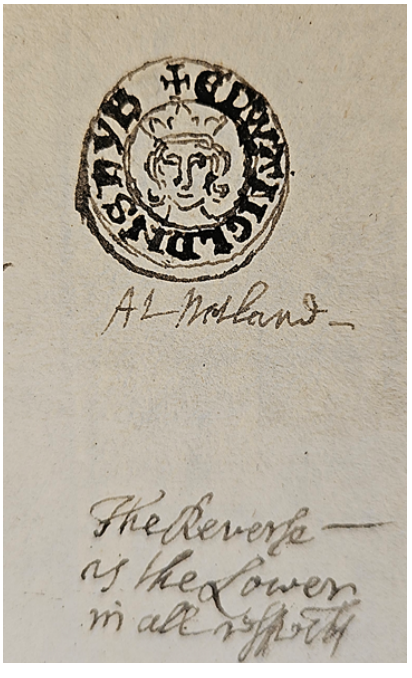


Figure 2.3vii.2. 'At Natland, the reverse as the lower in all respects.' II.79.

[6] Another form of the word, 'cordwainer': a shoemaker. *OED*.
[7] Quarterage of the parish: a payment made quarterly [by parishioners]. *OED*. It is similar to 'Quarter-pence', a payment by parents towards the schoolmaster's salary. For example, 'The parson, with the parish-officers, as assessors, were, on the appointment of each new master, to fix the rate of quarter-pence, which was to be not less than 2d. nor more than 4d. per week', this quotation taken from a speech by Lord Brougham in Parliament, 28 June 1820. See Hansard, 'The Education of the Poor' (Volume 2), column 77. https://hansard.parliament.uk/Commons/1820-06-28/debates/7d773019-40a4-4b69-9808-cae8fe59798c/EducationOfThePoor.



Figure 2.3vii.3. 'Found at Broadflat S. a Capella 12 score, in May 91.' II.79.[8]

[II.80]



Figure 2.3vii.4. 'Found near Mr Guyes ¼ m. N. a Capella. 16 years since.' II.80.[9]

[II.81]

{Natland Chappelry}
is bounded on the N. with the mother church of Kendal from which it is distant about 1 mile; on the E. with Hutton Chappell; on the South with Hersham parish; on the West with Underbarrow chapelry in this parish of Kendal. It is but one hamlet constable wick & Lordship ~~wich of~~ \ consisting / of about 30 families* & one entire manor ~~the tenements of which~~ \ in which / there is a parke yet remaneing, tho long since disparked, of about 80 acres ~~of ground~~ walled 6 quarters high,[10] which I looke upon as

[8] Placed underneath the second seal sketch.
[9] Henry Guy of Watercrook: see Eric Birley, 'The Guys of Kendal and Watercrook' *CW2*, 58 (1958), 94-104.
[10] A quarter is 9 inches, i.e. a quarter of a yard: https://www.kylesconverter.com/length/quarters-to-inches.

the ~~Maner House de~~ manner, the tennants of which being all customary ~~and heriotable and~~ \ the land was heriotable & the tenants / paying to their lord an abitrary fine, & for want of a manner house ~~amongst them made their~~ appearing at Sisars. and paying all ~~their~~ dues & dutyes as bondes: reaping, plowing, harrowing, mowing, bounder-dutyes, pout hens & the like ~~to Sisar Hall~~ till they bought themselves free of Sir Thomas Strickland[11] ~~60~~ \ 16 / years since at 60 years purchase;[12] so that now they are freehold[er]s \ new freeholders / {Sc. 16 ab anno 1691.}[13]

[Machell's Notes: II.81 and II.82]

*{3 held yet in tenancy under Mr Pricket; purchase of Sir Thomas}[14]

{They call their gravel which they mix with sand, sammell.}[15]

{Swinefoot clawes dryed & powdered (Mr Thomas Shepherd seman). Take for the stone.}[16]

[Watercrook]

[II.82]

{My journey from Watercrook}

West 1 q[uarte]r [mile] – Helston Leaths Hall (Note about a mile from the one fell to the other) Fertil at Kendal and banky, except N.E. end of the towne where the plane is above ½ a mile \ almost a mile / and here at Watercrooke where there is a pretty pice of plane ground[17] on which the Romanes may seem to have incamped 1[t] and afterwards to have built a colony.) Thence up the fell Bradleyfield. Thence down Barrow Fell to Underbarrow \ a pike of / rocks & wood, and on the right hand Harringtons of Witherslacke. Thence over an other lesser fell to Crosthwaite. Thence over the pow to [Blank] and so back to Crosthwaite Chapel. So back N.W. [to] Underbarrow Chapel: Ew,[18] well, juniper. Thence N. to Crooke \ chaple – seates:[19] Sir Xtopher Phillip[son].[20] / Thence East or S.E. to Kendal; thence S. to Watercrook.

[II.81]

[Watercrook. Narrative 1.]

The most remarquable place for antiquity that I finde in this, is at Watercrooke[21] {a Capella circa ½ m. and as much S. from Kendal church; which situation as it should seem the Roman soldiers having observed, tooke advantage of it, and placed a fort or station here}* ergo a piece of good land as most in this Barony, and a sweet situation which takes its name from the \ River / Kent almost surrounding it like \ after the manner of / an horse-shooe, as the River Eden doth som part of Appelby; which the Romans ~~takeing~~ \ ~~offering~~ /~~advantage~~ observing this sweet situation and advantagiouse crooke of the water ~~of~~ have ~~thought fit to~~ sat down and ~~placed themselves here~~ due builded a colony (the main fort (of which vide*) rather than in that larger plane which is at the N.E. end of Kendall.)

---

[11] Sir Thomas Strickland (1621-1694) of Sizergh (MP for Westmorland in 1661) and his wife, Winifred Strickland, née Trentham (1645-1725), were Roman Catholic Royalists who fled to France following the collapse of King James II's regime: see J. Callow, 'Strickland, Thomas John Francis (c. 1682-1740), Roman Catholic bishop of Namur and diplomatist'. *ODNB*.

[12] '60 years' purchase': sold at 60 times their annual rent as customary tenants, see George Miller, *On Fairness and Efficiency: the privatisation of the public income during the past millennium* (Bristol, 2000), 230.

[13] A note on MS.II.82 underlines this: '{Tenants of Natland now free.}'

[14] Originally placed on MS.II.82. See Part 2, Ch.3iii, Hutton, II.87, for more on Pricket, a lawyer; see also Machell's Itinerary, Part 2, Ch.10, II.387. For the Pricket pedigree, see *AWL*, 239.

[15] 'Sammel: hard loamy gravel', William Rollinson, *Cumbrian Dictionary of Dialect, Tradition and Folklore* (Otley, 1997), 140.

[16] A remedy for kidney stones etc. 'The stone: a hard morbid concretion in the body, esp. in the kidney or urinary bladder, or in the gallbladder'. *OED*.

[17] MS: 'glound'.

[18] Yew tree.

[19] Unclear word.

[20] Sir Christopher Philipson (1646-1709) of Crook Hall was deputy lieutenant of Westmorland. See Part 2 Ch.3ii: Crooke, II.99.

[21] MS: '~~And amongst these tenements there is one~~ The most remarquable place for antiquity that I finde in this is at ~~place of neck & called~~ Watercrooke.'

{Urnes a fathom about at Watercrook}
For that it has bin a Roman colony, station or hold, appears from several fragments of Ro[man] brick, \ part of / which was stampd with the tread of a Lyons paw. And Urnes, and earthen potts with romane floore potts, one of which had this broken inscription: SILLA forsan pro Drusilla; and Roman plaster upon the walls, which were facd on both sides & run with cement and stones and Rubish in the midle – Artificial stone of a great sise.

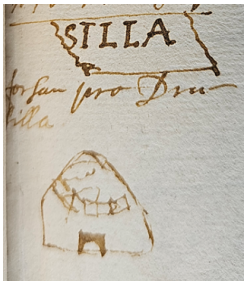


Figure 2.3vii.5. 'A piece of a pot with this broken inscription', and an 'oven' at Watercrook. II.81.

An oven underground, being build with bricking tile on the inside and being cupled into another, run over with cement ½ foot thick. I think the bottom paved with Br[ick] a foote broad & 3 inch thick

[Machell's Notes: II.81]

*{Q. Different. Colonia et Statio}[22]

[II.82]
som of which [bricks] were stampd with a Lyons pawe \ of which I saw one; / a floore of stone flags supported with collums made of art-ficiall stone & set upon an underfloore of Romane cement made with pounced Brick,[23] which I take to have bin som sort of sepulcher. ~~with this inscription thrown down & coverd with 3 other~~.

{Wall}
There were also in the walls great coines[24] of artificial stone as well of huen stone, which were in length [blank] in breadth [blank] in depth [blank] and are now in the N. corner of the granary end. The walls were about 3 foote thick: huen on the outsides but fild up in the midle with rubbish cem[ent] and unhuen stone; and the partician walls were plastered with three coates: the 1^{t} course cement 3 i[nch], the midle finer \ 2 in. / & the outmost finest of all about 1 inch well mixd with brick. Great stones at the oven mouth.

{Floore}
1. Roman cement floore
2. Pillars cast of Artificial Stone
3. Flaggs laid upon & supported by them.
4. Floores he sayes agane.
Then another roome with a Rom[an] floore layd in three course. The 1^{t}, cement of lime & sand with som pounced brick about 9 in[ch]. Then a course of Gr[a]vel & pebbles, about 4 [inch]. Then a course of true Rom[an] cement with great store of pounded brick in it, about 3 [inch]. In all 16 inches.

{Sinke}
And from hence went a sinke of the same like materials, being good Romane cem[en]t which held water in it as it were stone.

[22] See II.83.
[23] Pounced brick: Powdered brick. *OED*.
[24] Quoins.

{Repositories}
And from that, turning square a trough or spout made of hewnstone, \ in the second course / to another roome where was discovered a ~~course~~ \ row / of Ovens as they doe termed them: but were only Holes with mouthes like to Ovens, divided by a thin brick betwixt them, & stood in the form of a cimicircle, which I take \ to have bin / to be rather Repositories for the urnes and monuments of the disceased, though there was nothing att all remain'd in them. I saw there were also several \ fragments / urnes and \ earthen / plattens, amongst was one had written there \ SILLA / But before ~~these things~~ all this that hath \ bin / mentioned, there were diged up These Things or Remarqable [blank]

[II.83]

[Watercrook. Narrative 2.]

N.B. Query of Tim Bankes of Crookelands, Steward of Courtes in the Barrony. Master of Arts.[25]

At Mr H. Guyes[26] of Watercrooke, which is S. from the church about ½ a mile, there are the fou[n]dations of \ an / an old Rom[an] fort as may be discovered by a Great Bulwarke (where the markes of the Trenches do yet appear) 7 score yards square, wherein the foundations of houses are found in great abundance, which wee may conclude were demolished \ destroyd / by fier from the black / sooty colour of the mold casten up within these pr[e]cinct of the Fort, which is contrary to the Soyle of that Country.

It Standeth in a field call'd the Crooke, conteineing viii Acres \ about 60 yards from the dwelling house / and beside the Artificial Strength of it, is surrounded with water on every side except the South E., whence it is called Water Crooke.[27]
The Angles of this Fortification are rounded of[f] (more Romano than I have observed in other places \ at Kirkby Thore, Crackenthorpe & the Pi[cts] Wal /) and diagonal lines being drawn through the Square will point directly to the East, W. N. & S. so that the sides are S. East \ & / N. West; N. East \ & / South West.

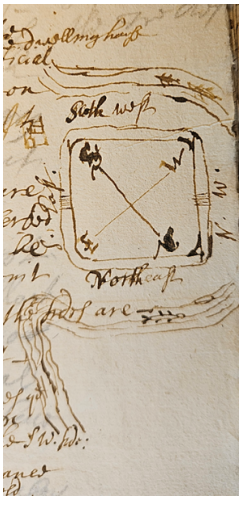


Figure 2.3vii.6. Watercrook Roman fort. II.83.

(Near the S. corner at 60 yards distance stands the now dwelling house \ calld Water Crooke, the Seat of &c. / flanking almost with the S.W. side) and near the N. corner at 70 yards distance are lately

[25] Scrawled in pencil at the top of the page.
[26] Henry Guy of Watercrook, see 'The Guys of Kendal and Watercrook', *CW2*, 58 (1958), 94.
[27] For a Roman inscription found at Watercrook in 1688 and recorded by William Nicolson, see Eric Birley, 'A Roman Inscription from Watercrook', *CW2*, 55 (1955) 46.

discovered the foundations of an old \ som old outer / Roman buildings \ 2 or 3 / in a brest – 1 extending in lengthw[ise] towards the S.W. with 3 roomes on a flooer of 5 yards square,[28] \ & fronting & / flankeing with the N. East side \ of the Great Romane fort / where several fragments of Roman Antiquities have bin discovered.

{Let this be last for the Inscription sake}
In the 1ᵗ roome, which lyeth N.E. was an Oven found, as they informed me, floored with Bricks of 1 f[oot] diameter & 3 inches thick, which they have imployd to the same use as formerly \ one of which was impressd of a Lyons paw as true and exact as if a Lyon had trod on the clay before it was baked. / But the arching was made on the inside \ concave / with thin Brick in tiles fixed one into another, and on the convex with Roman cement a foote thick, ~~so fixed them together~~ which so incorporated the whole mass together that ~~to stooke & to close them~~ no one single tile of whol and entire that they could procure ~~without breakeing~~, but brooke them in pieces.
Near the oven mouth \ were / 3 large flags caer\le/sly laid upon another, & the Lowest had \ the / inscription on the face Turned downe wards. The stone was flags – supported.[29]

[II.84][30]

That this has bin a Romane station and that the Legio Vi Victrix (the Victorious Legion) fixd in this place; & that Aelius mentioned both in the great Inscription and the little Altar, did sacrifice here.[31]



Figure 2.3vii.7. 'The Little Altar', 2 ft 1/2 high. II.82.

June 26 1692
The rest sent and I may [send] other collections of \ finds & / Inscriptions to Dr Mill of Edmund Hall Oxon to be returned.[32]

[28] Machell drew a square symbol, here.
[29] See *N&BI*, 105.
[30] Contains pencilled notes, most illegible, on Natland and Watercrook.
[31] A scribbled pencilled note, very unclear, particularly the word, Aelius.
[32] See Part 3, Ch.3, Roman Antiquities.

Part 2. Barony of Kendal

[Chapter 3viii. Parish of Kendal. Selside and Skelsmergh]

[Selside and Skelsmergh]

[II.101][1]

In Penrith Road. Anciently Selshead: Selside* Chapel & Hall 3m. N.E. a Kendal.
{Fami[lies]} Selside – & Fawcet Forrest – 44.

[The Chapel]
Outside L[ength] 12 B[readth] 8.[2]

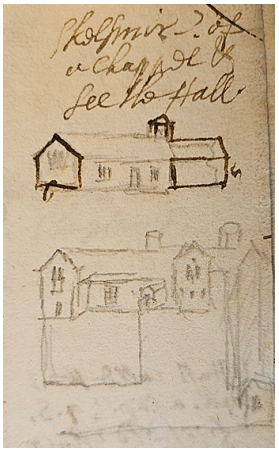


Figure 2.3viii.1. Selside Chapel and Hall. II.101.[3]

{? Dedicated}
The Dedication of this Chapel is not known, but there is a place in the Hamlet of Skelsmergh which belongs to & \ is / distant from this chapple about ½ a quarter S[ou]th West calld Patterdale,[4] whence it may be supposed \ to be / St Patricks Chapl. \ See the Rea[der]? / [5]

{2. House & Sallary}
There is no House belongs to the Reader: but ~~an ancient~~ Sallary of 5 marke \ 3: 6: 8 / per annum laid according to the Priority of Seates; so that those that sit within the quier pay 1s 8d per annum;[6] thence to the Bellroape 1s per House = & beneath the Bellroape 8d per House. {Mr Will. Thornborrow; Anth. Hall. Brackenrigg.}[7]

---

[1] Also numbered p.39.
[2] According to the sketch, 7 + 5 = the full length (12); '5' represents the length of the chancel.
[3] The chapel at Selside was described in 1709 as joined to cow-houses and stables at Selside Hall. The lower drawing appears to be a mixture of two attempts but must be the Hall with its cross-wings, so the top drawing represents the neighbouring chapel: see LANCAT, ARR/2/4/5/3, Faculty Cause Papers, c. 1709, 'Selside: petition to demolish and rebuild the chapel which is now ruinous; the present building is also joined to cowhouses and stables so the entrance to chapel has become noysome and offensive'. My thanks to Tony Cousins for this information.
[4] The Patterdales were fields on top of Skelsmergh Fell, where Watchgate water works are now situated.
[5] 'See the Chapel Reader.' Possibly Machell planned to check the dedication. Selside is dedicated to St Thomas.
[6] There is a blot over this figure. '1' is visible but might well have been changed to or from '2': unclear.
[7] Brackenrigg is a house in Selside, formerly a farm. The Hall family were occupants in the 17th century; see CASCAT, WDX 25, Whitwell and Selside. Land Tax 1647 etc. The 1647 Land Tax cites 'Robert Hall for Brackenrigg'.

{3. Patrons}
The Inhabitants Recommend a Reader to the Vicar of Kendal ~~Church~~; who has the Approbation ~~of him &~~ Confirmation of him.

4. Tithes}
Corne Tithe is payd in Kinde to ~~Trinity Coll~~ Mr Rowland Thornburrow of Me~~thap~~dup?[8] in Witherslack & Parish of Bethom: who payes a certaine Annual Rent of 3li 13: 4 to Trinity College in Cambridge for it (but doth not hold it by lease as they say, but by Inheritance. The Lady Thomasin Thornb[orrow] gave it by will to her eldest son Will. by the name of Tithe of Inheritance, & the lessee of the Rectory commensd a suit for it about 6 years agoe: but thought fit to let it fall.[9]
Hay money is paid to the Vicar of Kendal, with all other smal dues – Lamb 14d a Tythe Lamb. & wool in kinde to Sir John Otway – who farmes All the Rectory of the said College.[10]

[5. Bounder]
It is bounded on the East with Grarig Chapel: from which tis divided by Whin fell Beck: on the S. with Skelsmer\gh/ Chapl: divided by walls & waters. On the west it adjoynes on part of Skelsmergh – & the foote of Sleddal: divided from them by the outside of Catbarrow Wall – On the N. with Shap – & Orton parish in the Bottom of Westm'land; from the former of which (Sc. Shap) it is divided [by] Borrowbeck; & from the latter, Sc. Orton, by the same beck.

[Machell's Notes: II.101]
*{Skelsmir? Of a chappel & see the Hall.}[11]

[II.102]
{6. Division into Manors}[12]
It is divided into 2 Lordships – 1. Seshead[13] & 2. Fawcet Forrest:

{7. Tenure. Customary Fre Boones}
In Selside the Tennants are Customary; \ All but Mr Thornburrow \ who ret[ains] the demaine. / Thomas Cock is free[hold]/ \ & / as many as belong to Coll. Graham[14] are Arbitrary & Heriotable. But all Mr \ Rowland / Thornburrows \ Tennants / are at Fine Certaine (Sc. double the rent) excepting the Tenements of Brackenrig & Greengate Foote. And Mr Wilsons tenants are all Fine Certaine – Sc. an 8d fine – i.e. viii times double the Rent. The Wid[ows] pay the Heriots & have all the Estate their Husbands dyd ciesd of as Tenantright Land, so long as she continues in pure viduity.[15]

{Fawcet Forest}
The Tenants are Customary Arbitrary & Heriotable; But there are parcells ~~which Dispersd towards~~ which lye at Green \ Side / which pay noe Heriots \ nor Serv[ices] more than appear [at the Manor Court] / but [pay] a certaine free Rent amongst them all, of 12li per annum. These belong to

[8] Meathop Hall was a Thornburgh seat in the 17th century; for the Thornburgh family of Selside see *AWL*, 295.
[9] Lady Thomasin née Bellingham, wife of Sir William Thornburgh, d. 1582.
[10] Farmes = leases. Sir John Otway's reach is also mentioned in Part 2, Ch.1, Barony of Kendal, II.359B); the Kendal chapelries of Longsleddale (Part 2. Ch.3vi, II.103), Burneside (Part 2, Ch.3i, II.91) and Hutton (Part 2, Ch.3iii, II.87); the parish of Beetham (Part 2, Ch.4, II.278); the Parish of Grasmere (Part 2, Ch.6, II.125-26); and the Parish of Windermere (Part 2, Ch.8, II.318).
[11] See Machell's Itinerary (Part 2, Ch.10, II.406); see also Blake Tyson, 'St. John's Well and Chapel, Skelsmergh: their location and present condition', *CW2*, 98 (1998), 156-67.
[12] For the text of a medieval deed relating to Selside see MS.IV.139.
[13] Machell might have intended to use an earlier version of the Selside name, e.g. Selsed(e) and Selshed(e).
[14] For Colonel Graham (Grahme), see Part 2. Ch.3vi, Longsleddale, II.104.
[15] 'As long as she does not remarry.'

Mr Graham & Forrest Hall (which has halfe of the forrest lying in [the] Demane) is the manner house which has bin in the Bellinghams time out of mind being their first Seat[16] when they came hither.[17]

{8. Lordship & Descent}
There are 3 Lords, each of which keeps a Court Barron, ~~&~~ \ whereof / the Forest is Court Leet & Barron – Sc. Rowland Thornburrow Esq. whose \ grandfather William / sold those Tenants – which Mr Graham has – to Sir James Bellingham: And those of Wilson, to Henry Wilson of Underley. ~~whose~~ And [Blank]* Son of Thomas, Son of Henry the Purchaser, doth now enjoy them.

{9. Manner Houses & Halls}
But the Rest he reserved ~~being intaled~~ with the Demaine & Manner house which he afterwards sold to his Cosan William Thornburrow, father of Frances, father of William, who now doth enjoy them; At w[hose] House the Tenants of Sleddall[18] formerly appeard \ & / Patton[19] & Whinfell (& som of Skelsmer belonging to Mr Rowland Thornburrow) did & do yet appeare at this Hall by the consent of the owner of it.
{1. Hall calld Whitwill,[20] a Capella ¼ q. S. A freehold Estate belong Mr W. Thornburrow after his mothers death; anciently the Thornburrows. 2 ew trees near the Hall} Cos[in] Thornburrow† \ workes / watches & silvere plate.[21]

{No Juniper. Raspberryes alias hawberryes. Strawb[erries] Turfes peat at hand & plenty, but in som parts scarce. No limeston but fetched from Skelsmer 1m. S., & coale from Regil. Rag stone – Fawcet Forrest manner. Slate a Blackish blew – ruff & heavy, 1m. N.W. on Whiteside‡.}

{10. Curiosityes}
Isabell Warriner of Bowthwate[22] – a Capella ¼ m. S.E. – dyed about 4 years agoe; being of the age of 106. & after she was 100 years old, she skaled \ all the / swathes ~~for a~~ \ in a day / that 2 mowers mew[23] & could thred a needle to her dying day having never usd spectacles.

The Dem[aine] is all called the Parkes & replenishd with wood & Deere in the mem[ory] of man.

[Machell's Notes: II.102]
*{q. If not the Land oner Harry.}
†{Pedigree.}[24]
‡See Shap Kirk Booke.
{Briam Thornburrow alias Sheepshanks in Kirkby Lonsdal. Picklock.}[25]

[16] Alan Bellingham (c.1517-1578) acquired and lived at Forest Hall, but the family had been in the area much longer. See Tony Cousins, 'Fawcett Forest', VCH Draft parish/township histories (2017), https://www.cumbriacountyhistory.org.uk/sites/default/files/fawcett_forrest_draft_full_history.pdf
[17] A heading: 'Customs', has been left blank.
[18] Earlier name for Longsleddale.
[19] Paton.
[20] Whitwell.
[21] George Thornburgh, brother of William, was apprenticed in London as a Westminster watchmaker: see the Thornburgh pedigree, Part 2, Ch.10, Itinerary, II.404; see also LANCAT, DDTY/1/2/4: Lease of messuage and tenement at Lindall by George Thornburgh of Laisterfields, Westminster, co. Mddx, watchmaker etc. 19 Jan. 1704/5.
[22] Bouthwaite is still a Selside farm.
[23] In one day she spread out all the lines of hay that two mowers had mown; for skale/scale, see William Rollinson, *Cumbrian Dictionary of Dialect, Tradition and Folklore* (Otley, 1997), 141.
[24] See the pedigree in Machell's Itinerary (Part 2, Ch.10, II.404).
[25] This snippet of information, which relates more to Kirkby Lonsdale, probably occurred to Machell as he described the profession of his 'Cos Thornburrow'.

[Machell's Notes II.115]

In Kendal
Docker: & Dilliker f[amilies] = 25. In the proper place?[26]
Scalthwate-Rigg in the precincts of Kendal Church: f[amilies] 18. Q. in what Chapel – if not Selside.

[26] Docker and Dillicar belong with Grayrigg.

[Skelsmergh]

[II.119]

F[amilies]50.



Figure: 2.3viii.1A. '{St. Johns Well Running through Skelsmer Chaple from E. to W. Raspberry & Maden Hair grown out of the walls.}'

The Chapel {On the outside long 12 By 7½ [broad]} is Dedicated to St John Baptist; And a well springing out the East of it (which runns quite through the Chaple, into the High way which leads from Garth Row to Kendall) calld St John Well. It was standing about 50 years agoe, and the Runnell of the water was planked over & som Seates Remaneing in the quire – But has not been used in the memory of man. Yet The Great Bible was seen by the Informer {Thomas Gilpin of Skelsmergh Hall farmer æt 70}. And an Image of St. John with a Great Long beard. {Tithe}

{Tithe}
They pay their Tithe thus – Corne in kinde to Lesses of Trinity College in Cambridge – farm'd by Mr Laburn of Witherslack – Hay S[ilver] nothing at all. Wool in kinde to the Rectory; for a Tithe Lamb 14^{d} &c. All other small Tithe to the Vicar of Kendall.

{Ind[owment]}
No House ever Belongd to the Chaplane nor no Chapl yard. But an ancient Sallary – The Sum unknown. So much an h[ouse] But whether proportion'd by Rent or Seates is not now [known]. Xtpher Gilpin (father of Thomas, who lived to 95 years of Age a strong & active man to the last) told his son Thomas That he had seen It. { Thomas Gilpin of Skelsmergh Hall farmer aet 70.} The Vicar is supposed chose the ch[aplain] whom they calld priest, & one Sir Uter Gilpin was chaplain here before the Reformation; as appears by Will drawn by his hand. {not viewd.}

{Bounder}
It was Bounded on the ~~N. with Selside~~ East with Grarig Chaple[1] (being divided from It) in The S. with ~~the manner~~ Scalthwaterig belonging to the Mother church of Kendal divided by Mint-Water. On the W. with Burnaside chapelry from which tis divided by Sleddall Water, allis Spret[2] (as is supposd by a

[II.120]

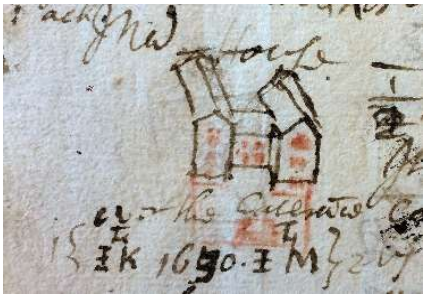
Bridge of that name as you go hence to Burnaside on the N. ~~& W~~ \ E. / Sledal & Selside: from the formers of which It is divided by Sledal Beck: & from the Latter – By the Bounder of Selside. & note That Skelmer were in the Note of the Chaplaines Sallary, by which it appears to have belongd unto them alone. according the foresaid Bounder.

{Lordship}
It is one Entire Manner or Lordship calld Skelmirgh[a 3] The Tenants are generally Customary Arbitrary & Heriotable; Except about 9 or 10 is Freehold Lands Sc ~~Doding Green~~ \ Mr Ro[bert] Stephensons, / Milbeck \ Mr Peter Mawson / Milbeck & Gilthwate Rig \ Lawyer Rawlinson, / Mast hill \ Thomas

[1] Chapelry.
[2] Sprint.
[3] i.e. Thomas Gilpin as before, aged 70.

Cook / and severall others. Gilthwate Rig is of the Marquis Fee & holds under the Queen. For Tenant Right estates the Widow has It all dureing her pure viduity.

{The Manor}
The Manor was anciently in the Labourns from whom a Parcell of the Tenants were transmitted to the Bellinghams of Levins; & by the late Mr Allan Bellingham to Coll. Graham: Another parcel to the Brathwates of Burnaside who hold them still. The Bellinghams kept a Court Barron ~~at any place~~ formerly in memory of […?] at the Chappell: & since the demolishing thereof, at any of his Tenants House. ~~But the Courtes were anciently kept at the Ha~~. The Manner House is Skelsmer hall a capella a ~~¼~~ ½ m. S. near a mire or moss on the S. West of It called the Car. Whence possible It was called Skelmire, & perhaps from Scales[4] formerly upon their common, which was formerly large. This House with the Demaine was Reteined by Mr Labourne when he sold the Tenants (who suffered for Popery in Queen Elizabeth's time),[5] & Is now the Joynter of Mrs Labourne[6] after whose discease It descends to Mr George Labourne, now of Wither Slack, the chief of that family.



Over the Enterance: J \ L / K 1690 J \ L / M
1. John Laybourne & Katherine his first wife.
2. For John & Mary his second wife.

Figure: 2.3viii.1B. Skelsmergh Hall.[7]

{Tarnes}
Brabbon Tarne belongs to Graham a capella ¼ S.E. L[ength] 7 score br[eadth] 7 score but much growne up now.
Great Tarn to Graham. Had a Eal arke. L[ength] 400 b[readth] 400 a capella S.E. ¼ [mile] stored with Tench, Eal & Roach. {[They]Water The Chap[elry?] well by help of a sleuce above tarnes 2 mils with a mile of the head.}

[Notes]
{Gilthwate Rig is an ancient h[ouse] formerly belongd to Mr Richard Ducket descended from Grarig – who sold it to ~~The~~ Edward Turner Alderman of Kendal who resold to Sir William Rallison, a lawyer, now one of the Lords Com[missioners] for the Broad S[eal.}
{John Gilpin of Garthwain[8] in this manor – livd to 100 years of age – he died about 40 years Ab Anno Domini 1692.}
{Meadow from 10[s] to 20 – Arable from Idem– Pasture = a. 8 to 12.[9] Free Stone in the River Mint Read [stone] a capella ¾ [mile] S. Peates scarce and far afield but the Halls moss bough[t] in Crook Dale. Hay Straw & Raspberryes. Lime stone plenty Rag [stone].}

[4] Scales were huts or shielings constructed for the watchers of cattle in summer: *OED*.
[5] Informant: Thomas Gilpin, as above.
[6] Jointure: The holding of property to the joint use of a husband and wife for life or in tail, as a provision for the wife, in the event of her widowhood: *OED*.
[7] The date appears as 1690, but has been altered. The hall is older than this. There is a C15 Pele tower, a late C16 south wing, a wing to the east of the early C17 and a later extension: https://historicengland.org.uk/listing
[8] Perhaps, 'Garthwham'.
[9] Meadow from ten shillings to 20 per acre per annum; arable, from the same; pasture from eight to twelve shillings per acre.

Part 2. Barony of Kendal

[Chapter 3ix. Parish of Kendal. Staveley]

Staveley Chapelry

[II.112]

[Notes]

Staveley Chapel[ry]
is Bounded on the East with Sleddal Chappel[ry] and is divided by the Ridge of Potter fell; on the S. with Underbarrow Chapel, divided by the Top of Rod-Rad (on which stands the signe of Rod-Rad but in Burnaside Chapelry; on the West with Crooke Chaple[ry], divided by \ the Ridge of / Brackenthwate fell; on the N. with Kentmire Chaple[ry], being divided by ~~Kno~~ \ Black / beck which runns by Milrig.

{Thinges of Note in Natur}
On Friday the 8 of July 1692, at Birkfield in Over Stavely – ~~as belief~~ e Capella E. 1m. {Richard Stephensons sons cow – a Quaker –} a calfe was calved, haveing 2 Heads – 4 Eyes – 2 Mouthes – & 3 Eares, the Heads being joyned together & the 2 ~~Head~~s Eares in the Midle Knit together by nature the Hollows inward, & seemd even down. It was with great difficulty pulld from the cow by the Help of Roapes & was alive, but the woman who assisted at it told me they killd it with working & helping the cow, which is now recoverd.[1]

There is a Parke called Staveley Parke wherein Staveley Hall stands, now all in Tenancy: Customary. ~~Arbitr~~ & Heriotable; & all the Lords have Tenents in it. Not replenishd in memory, but there are clean martes & wild cats, foxes, otters &c.[2]

Sheckles-Water, 11 score every way, is a Tarne – a Capella = 2m. N.E.; & lyes in 3 Lordships. Sc. Kentmer, Sleddal & Upper Staveley. Stored with Bass, Pikes, Eales – moore-game som.

{Ing-beck} has 2 heads: one at Hewgil a Capella 2m. N.W. Another – out of Applethwate fell in Windermer par[ish]. The head at Hewgil at High house* (formerly the Brathwates of Ambleside) runs thence S.E. to the Chaple of Ings on the westside; thence E. To Stavely, where it meets with Kent.

{Some Ewe at Burntknot. Store of Juniper; some Holly large – Raspberryes & Straw[berryes]} (& blea[berries] som).

Red stone none. Blew rag enough. Black blew Rag Slate – a Capella ½ m. W. at Rasell.
Turfe near but scarce. Meadow from 15 to 20s. Arable from 5 to 13s: 4d. Pasture from 3s to 6s.

[II.113]

Soyle: gravel.

[Machell's Notes: II.112]

*{Where the other branch meates it.}

[II.113][3]

A Paroch. Staveley Chaple

Ab Ecclesia N. & b[y] W. 4m.
{Bells.[4] Steple 4½. Body 27. Total 31½. Broad on the outside, 11. [Roof] lead.}

---

[1] Also noted on MS.II.113: '{Qu. of a Calfe Mo[ou]t[h]}'.
[2] MS: 'Not replenishd in memory, ~~But ther was \ is / if a place which~~.'
[3] Also numbered p.51. Note pencilled comments in *Figure 2.3ix.1*
[4] Three bells: *N&B1*, 140.



Figure 2.3ix.1. Staveley Chapel. II.113.

Fam[ilies] – Over Staveley 31
Nether Staveley 38
A pretty village; neat chaple in a plane; church yard a † at the gate, & a s[tone] bridge hard by.[5]

{In the East wind[ow]}



{The 1. \ being in the midle light [of the] E. w[indow] / is Standley. Sc. Ar[gent] a Bend – chargd with 3 Bucks, head cab[ossed] Or. & a mullet in chiefe for distinction &c. with its quartering impaleing Harrington.
The 2. Is Parr? in the 2nd light of the S. quire window; & there was another of these lately in the 3rd light of the East window.
The 3. Is in the South window next to the quire; & so is the 4th. And in the opposit window on the North side are 2 of the same; as at fig. 4th.}

The Dedication of this Chaple is not now known: But from this Inscription about one of the Bells I take it to ~~be~~ \ have / be[e]n St. Margarets.

\ Margeretam / CONCREPAT Illa Divam voce sonoram.[6]

And about the Greatest is writ: in the Name of God Amen – 1589.
The Communion Table is raled in, & there is besides a Pulpet, an Homily Desk on the left hand without the Quier dooer – octangular with Rale & Ballister in the forme of a Pulpet; with a Turneing Desk upon it for the Booke to Lye on.[7] \ It was made in 1618 & the Com[munion] T[able] Raled. / The walls are in Canonical Repare and so are all things about it.[8] But the Seats are old, & the floore of Blew rag[stone] – like unto marble, but in uneven & unequal courses.

Figure 2.3ix.2. Arms in Staveley Chapel East Window. II.113.

[5] The MS here also contains a pencilled phrase, 'a village; a † afore the steeple'.
[6] 'Let it make Blessed Margaret resound with its sonorous tones.' The modern church (consecrated 1865) is dedicated to St James, but the older church, dedicated to St Margaret, was founded by Sir William de Thweng in 1338; only its tower (1589) and churchyard remain, Hyde & Pevsner, 628-29.
[7] See Machell's turning table in his study at Kirkbythore: Part 1, Ch.14, I.537.
[8] Canonical repair: 'in conformity with, or having reference, to ecclesiastical edict or canon law'. *OED*.

50^{s} every good Friday given to the poore of Nether Staveley chapel chiefly by Mr Fleming; and Householders chargd upon Broadfold Ibidem – is 10^{s} per Annum yearly to the poore of the Brow & Gate chargd upon Longclose by [blank]

(William Harrison of Bampton Schoole – Curate – or Chaplaine – shewd me a pice of fire stone found in Borradale fells in Cumberland.)[9]
{The inhabitants cho[o]se [a curate or chaplain] & the vicar of Kendal approves.} There is no Dwelling house belonging him, but an Sallary \ ancient Ras'd by Seates / of XX nobles (6:13:4), and 10^{s} per annum (given by Hen[ry] Nicholson late of Pik'd-how in Over Staveley) for a yearly sermon on St. Thomas Day.[10] But hee teacheth School in the Chappel by permition; for which he has 1^{s} per Quarter, & of some 18^{d} as they can agree. But for the Tithes: they are payable to the Rectory & Vickaridge of Kendall thus.

{Division}
There are in this Chappelry,
3 Courtes Baron kept by 3 Severall Lords; & the Tennaments lye intermixt & dispersed;[11]
& Thre Hamlets belonging to it. Sc. Upper Staveley & Nether Staveley: in Mr Brathwate Poem called Staflay – from a woman laying down her Staff.[12] The 3rd, Hugil. & the Tenants intermixd.
[1.] The chiefe Lord is the King: & his Tenants are of the Marquess fee. (The rest hold?) all customary, fine certaine – 1d at the Death of the Queen, & 3 penny, i.e. 3ple[13] the Rent at death or alienation of the Tenant, & Heriotable; & Has Waife & Stray in that Lib[erty].
[Informant] Mr Gay.

[II.114]

2. Is Coll. Graham, who purchased late of Mr Allane Belingham which family had long enjoyd them; & are all Customary, Arbitrary & Heriotable (No Boones) – No Freeholds.
3. Mr. Brathwate of Burnaside; purchased of Gilpins of Kentmer Hall, as is reported about 100 years agoe. No freeholds – but all Customary fine arbitrary & Heriotable. & No Boones. All pay Greenhew,[14] & the Lords clame the wood – & they have House Hedge & Harrow boote,[15] & crop for the fire on their own Tenements. They all take Wafe in their Respective libertyes: & the Sherif of Westmorland has clamed of late – and appointed a Deputy.

[9] William Harrison appears in CCED as schoolmaster at Staveley in 1677 and curate there from 1712. He resigned in 1724. CCED.
[10] 21 December.
[11] A margin comment here is largely obscured but contains the words, 'William Rob … in Staveley'.
[12] Richard Brathwate (also spelled as Brathwaite, Brathwait and Brathwayte) c.1587/8-1673, poet. His father, Thomas, was a barrister and recorder of Kendal, who inherited the family estate at Burneside. Richard Brathwate was his second surviving son. In two of his poems, Brathwate speaks of Kendal as his 'native place.' According to Anthony Wood, he matriculated as a 'gentleman's son' and 'became a commoner of Oriel College A.D. 1604, aged 16'. He remained at Oxford for several years, enjoying a scholarly life, until his father desired him to take up the law. He was sent to Cambridge, and on leaving he removed to London, where, according to his own account in 'Spiritual Spicerie: containing sundrie sweet tractates of Devotion and Piety' (1638), he devoted himself to poetry and dramatic writing. After his father's death in 1610, he inherited his estate. For this account, and a select list of his poetry, see Edmund Gosse, Braithwaite Richard, *Dictionary of National Biography* (Archive Edition), *1885-1900.* Vol. 6. See also his volume of Latin and English doggerel verse, *Barnabæ Itinerarium, or Barnabee's Journal*, under the pseudonym 'Corymbæus' (1638; reprinted as *Drunken Barnaby's Four Journeys to the North*, during the 18th century). Brathwate's authorship of this work was ascertained by Joseph Haslewood, who edited the work in 1818.
[13] Triple.
[14] Greenhew: the right to cut greenery for fodder.
[15] House, hedge and harrow boots were 'estovers': the right to cut wood for repairs. The Old English word for estover was bote or boot, meaning 'good'. The various kinds of estover were house-bote, cart or plough-bote, hedge or hay-bote, and fire-bote: *The Tradesman's Lawyer and Countrey-man's Friend* (London, 1703), 206.

[Houses]

~~The Old Hall~~ ~~calld~~ Staveley Hall \ in Over Staveley, / a Capella ¼ m. N. has bin called the Manner House of Upper Staveley, which now is falln – nothing being standing but the wall which belongs to Mr. Will. Birket being on his Tenement – & in that part which belongs to the Crown.

Another calld the Old Hall in Nether Staveley, a Capella 1m. S.W. Nothing standing but the vaults & walls – which belongs to Mr Brathwate: & another calld Hall within 2ce[16] 12 Score [yards], with a Demane in the Libertyes of which both Halls are conteined. & belongs Mr. Brathwates. This Estate belonged once to the name of Carus. And the Court is kept here for Mr. Brathwate or at any of his Tenants houses.

There are other Houses calld –
In Nether Staveley
[1.] John Philipson of Calgarth Esq. at Hollin How where a Hall of that name.
(2. E[s]q[ui]r[e] Bra[thwate] a Law[yer])
3. Xt[opher] Philipson of the Ashes & Roberth both freeholds, but no Hall.
4. Henfield – Broadfold no H[all].
5. Henry Mackreth – Crag & Sandy Hill, no H[all.
6. Robert Chamber Goosegreen Yeat, no H[all].
7. Roger Harrison of Stockbridge No Hall.
8. Rob. Harrison – Moss Side No H[all].
9. Mr Gay \ Far / Fair Banke, an Hall,[17] & Mr Sands [owner] \ of / the other halfe, by marriage of the d[aughter] & h-eir] of Mr. Will. Knipe.

[In Over Staveley]
Freholds in Over Staveley – none.

In Hugil. Freeholds:
1. Peter Birket – Grestgarth.
2. Roger Harrison – Ruston.[18] Qu. of whom they Hold.

[II.472A]

[De Thweng; Market]

De Thweng[19] {Tome 2.[20] of Dugdalls *Baronage*, p.30.}[21]

2. Marmaduke de Thweng brother & heir of Rob. Summond to Parliament 35. Ed. 1. [1306-1307] till the 16. Ed. 2. [1322-1323]. Justifibly dyed that year.	= Isabell d. of Will. de Ross of Igmanthorp in Com. York.	Robert de Thweng.
|		
William to whom his father gave Lands in Hesslington, Kirkeby in Kendal, Warton & other places with the manor of Thweng. 16. Ed. 2. [1328-1329] ætatis 30.		

[16] Twice.
[17] Machell's informant, see II.113, above.
[18] Now known as High and Low Reston, *Westmorland Place-Names*.
[19] William de Thweng [died 1340-41], lord of the manor, owned a park and a hall at Staveley: *N&B1*, 138.
[20] Volume 2.
[21] For references to the de Thweng family, see Part 2, Ch.1, Burneside, II.92 and fn.

{Staveley made a market town 2. Ed. iij. [1328-29]}

This William Thwengs died in the 2nd of Ed. 3. Obtained a grant for a mercat every week upon the Friday. And a fair yearly on the Eve day & morrow of St Luke the Evangelist[22] – at Staveley in Kendal in Com. Westmorland. And he was summond to Parliament 12. of Ed. 2. [1318-19]: but never afterwards.[23]

[22] Feast of St Luke: 18 October.
[23] Nicolson and Burn referenced John Denton when reproducing some of this information (see *N&BI*, 140), but it can also be found here, in Machell II.472A. Machell owned a copy of John Denton's MS: see MS.VI.146 -76.

Part 2. Barony of Kendal

[Chapter 3x. Parish of Kendal. Underbarrow]

Under Bar[row]

[II.109]

Ab Ecclesia W. 1m.½. See my Paper. Fam[ilies] 74.

[II.111]

[Name][1]
{Barrow […][2] Barrow? Barrowby.
Brough Brou.
Thorow. Through. Throw.
Thornbrough, brow, burrow}

Underbarrow Chapel[ry] Bounder
2m & ½ West ab Ecclesia.[3] Joynes on the East to \ West part or Lordship / Kendal, the mother church; on the South to Brigstere in Kendal; West on Crosthwate in Hersham parish; North on Crooke and Staveley Chaplryes.

{Underbarrow Chappel in Kendal 19. Oct. 91.}

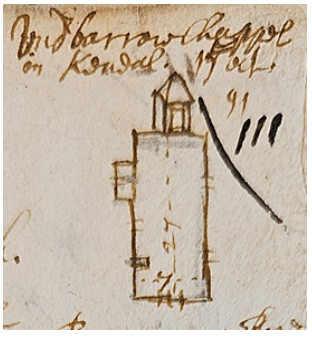


Figure 2.3x.1. Underbarrow Chapel. II.111.

Sall[ary] xi^{li} per Annum at so much a seate \ ab antiq. / a certaine rent upon every house.

[In the Chapel yard are] 6 ewe trees, 3 on each side. & one before the Gate, 24 yards in Diameter paced underneath.[4] & 3 or 4 Seates one above another like the staires of a Crosse.[5] These trees doe so shelter and over shadow the Chappell & yeald such a verdure & gloomy shade that it makes it looke \ solemn / like a place of devotion, and if it were a burying place (as it is not) might well be called a gloomy sepulcher.[6]

~~Tis~~ Only one Hamlett belong \ to this chaple / & the Tenents are part the Queens who Answer at Kendal and part Mr Grahams, who Answer at Hels[ing]ton Leathes. & the Queens [tenants pay] \ Fine / Certain. The other are {as in Crosthwate} so that that there is no Manner House; nor Houses of note

[1] Underbarrow: 'under beorg'; (land) under the hill. The hill is one of those like Knott or Helsington Barrows, forming the long ridge between Underbarrow Beck and the Kent, see *Westmorland Place-Names*.
[2] Followed here by three unclear words, 'a Bord …'
[3] See II.109, where the chapelry is stated as being 1½ miles from the parish church.
[4] MS: 'pavcd underneath.' Paced or paved?
[5] Machell appears to refer to a Calvary Cross: in heraldry, a cross set on three steps. *OED*.
[6] Scored-through notes on this page, relating to the above, are, '~~A Gloomy Sepulcher~~; ~~X The Chapel len 27 broad 7~~.'

{excepting 2} \ tho many fair houses, som of which have assumed the naim which may seem / to hav bin a Manner House but hath no tenants now appear here.[7]

Cunswick

E. a Capella 1m.½; now hath no tenants. Now Mrs Bradleys dureing her life; is then Mrs George Labourne of Witherslack \ in which name fam[ily] it hath long continued. / A little above the house northwards is a Tarne.

Men of note

[1.] {Bishop Labourn; sent about by King James 2. Brother of George.
2. Another they say like to be Cardinal sed q[uery]!} [8]

Tranthwate

E. a Capella ¼ m. A small estate with som \ few / tenants which belong to \ one / Thomas Bateman & \ hath bin pretty / long in the name, but of no great accounte.

Mangy-well.[9]

N.W. a Capella 1 quarter [mile]. Cures the Itch.[10]

The foundation of a chaple within 3 yards of it. This has bin an Hermitage (as I suppose) in the Times of Popery.

This abounds with Juniper instead of whins all over the Lordship – & hath a Long-Skar which extends its selfe from N. South on the Top of a very high mountaine; which I suppose has bin calld Barrow – corruptly from Burrow, whence our Brow, & has given name to the place which lyes beneath it calld Under Barrow. A little below this notable precipice is an Long Hutt[…][11] of wood, which belongeth to Mr Grahame \ presently to Mr Bellingham; / and here and there are divers little Tufts of Trees, with many Hollyes, Ewes & the like below in the chapelry, which being intermixt with \ craggy / rocks \ which are there very plentifull, and pieces here [&] there of green ground / makes it very delightfull on a sun-shine day. But how \ well / it becomes it[s] winter garment I cannot tell.

[7] The text here is very disjointed; the last word is unclear.

[8] The history of the Leyburn (Labourne, Layburne) family parallels difficulties experienced by the Roman Catholic Church in England in the 17th century. Cunswick-born John Leyburn, President of Douai College in 1672, served as James II's Catholic vicar apostolic and bishop from 1685 to 1688, during which time, he organised the funding of Catholic chapels, clergy and education. In July 1687 he began a national tour to dispense the sacrament of Confirmation to Catholic laity. This involved 12 confirmations at Corby in Cumberland, 23 at Greystoke, 28 at Sizergh, 37 at Dodding Green near Kendal, and 161 at Witherslack: see Michael Mullett, *Carlisle in Revolution and Restoration, c. 1648-1688*, CWAAS Tract Series 30 (Kendal, 2022), 119-120. As Alison Wright has remarked, 'It gives an idea of how close-knit this community was that only six of the sponsors of the communicants mentioned out of the 45 on his progress were not related to him in some way, or neighbours in the North West or had not been educated at Douay.' Alison Wright, 'Loyalty and Tradition II: Networking among the north-western Catholic Gentry, 1640-1720: The Case of the Layburnes', *CW3*, 14 (2014), 103-24, at 113. The efficiency of Bishop Leyburn's social and political networking in 1687 can be gauged from *The Diary of Dr Thomas Cartwright, Bishop of Chester commencing at the time of his elevation to that see, August M. DC. LXXXVI. And terminating with the visitation of St. Mary Magdalene College, Oxford, October M. DC. LXXXVII.* (Camden Society, London, 1843). The last Leyburn to inherit Cunswick was another John Leyburn. He joined the 1715 Jacobite rising at Preston, where he was taken prisoner. In London, he was tried and attainted for treason, although not executed. See Alison Wright, *The Layburnes and their World circa 1620-1720, The English Catholic Community and the House of Stuart*, PhD Thesis (University of St Andrews, 2002), 25-27.

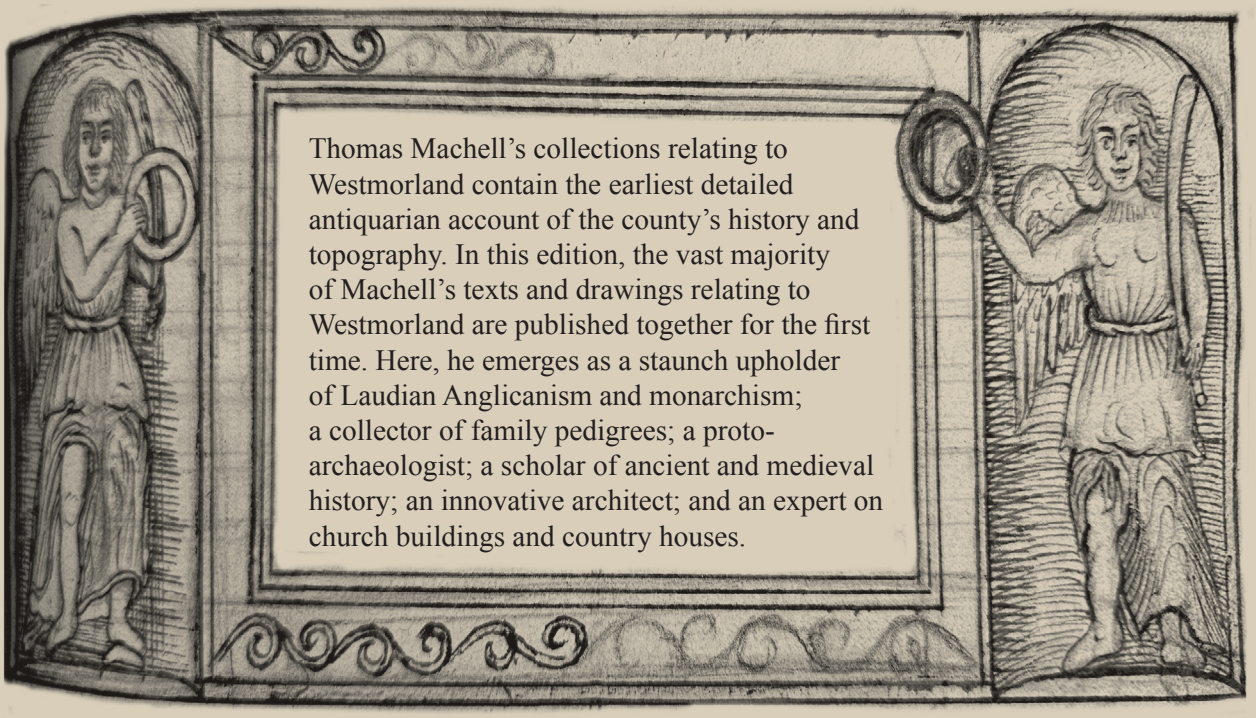
[9] Mangy: suffering from, or having the appearance of suffering from, the mange; of the nature of or caused by the mange; formerly also, scabby. *OED*.

[10] The itch: a contagious disease in which the skin is covered with vesicles and pustules, accompanied by extreme irritation, now known to be produced by the itch-mite; scabies. *OED*.

[11] Insecure transcription; possibly a shortened form of a longer word.

Dr Jane Platt FRHistS is an author and editor whose main interests lie in Church and local history. She was a researcher at the Centre for Methodism and Church History at Oxford Brookes University until it closed in 2024 and was one of the editors of CWAAS Transactions until 2025.

CUMBERLAND AND WESTMORLAND
ANTIQUARIAN AND ARCHAEOLOGICAL SOCIETY



More significantly, perhaps, this edition invites readers to explore Machell's other interests. His descriptions of the local, the commonplace and the every-day in Westmorland are vital to the collection. His deep interest in place-names and dialect; games and traditions; folklore and humour; local politics and local characters; his comedic or tragic anecdotes; and his ventures into tales of the occult offer an alternative dynamic which reveals even more of the period and place in which he lived. The importance of Machell's research is that it stands at an intersection between late-seventeenth-century antiquarianism, erudition, religion, lore and tradition.

Machell's History is made particularly valuable by the fact that his early death prevented the publication of a completed work. Had it been published, many of the unique delights of this edition: Machell's correspondence; his trenchant opinions; his unguarded comments; his frequent criticism of his peers, would almost certainly have been edited and lost. The unfinished nature of Machell's History also reveals important aspects of seventeenth-century antiquarian scholarship, including the development of research methods; the building of evidence to provide argument; the careful citation of sources; and the experimental composition of early drafts, which involved copious textual alteration. This transcription of Machell's work-in-progress will be appreciated, not only by those who are already conversant with him as a northern gentleman-antiquary, but also by a greater constituency of scholars and a wider public, to whom some of the hitherto impenetrable content will be revelatory.